



THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
NEW ZEALAND

# 2002 CALENDAR

Te Whare Wānanga o Tāmaki Makaurau

The University of Auckland



INGENIO ET LABORE

ISSN 0112-8337

**Official Address:**

The correspondence of the University of Auckland is conducted by the Registrar, and all communications on University matters should be addressed as follows:

The Registrar  
The University of Auckland  
Private Bag 92019  
Auckland  
New Zealand

**Telegrams and Cables:** University Auckland

**Facsimile:** 64-9-373 7400

**Telephone:** 64-9-373 7999 (switchboard operators)  
64-9-373 7599 and appropriate extension (automated attendant)

**Internet:** <http://www.auckland.ac.nz>

Information contained in this publication is correct at the time of going to press, but may be subject to change. While all reasonable efforts will be made to ensure listed courses are offered and regulations are up to date, the University reserves the right to change the content or method of presentation, or to withdraw any course of study, or impose limitations on enrolment should circumstances require this. For the latest information visit our website at [www.auckland.ac.nz/calendar](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/calendar).

Editor:	Kim Slattery
Regulations Officers:	Neil Wright, Clinton Gill, Lincoln Jaques
Cover:	The Registry Building. Reproduced from an original sketch by Sir Michael Fowler, with his permission.
Cover design:	Susan Hogg
Printer:	Oliver Young

---

# Contents

---

Introduction	1
Calendar Year 2002	8
Academic Statutes and Regulations	12
General Statutes and Regulations	38
Regulations	48
Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts	49
Arts	72
Business and Economics	115
Engineering	135
Law	148
Medical and Health Sciences	156
Science	188
Theology	209
Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas	213
Conjoint Degrees	227
Other Programmes	239
Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees	243
Schedule of Prescriptions	254
Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts	257
Arts	283
Business and Economics	408
Engineering	448
Law	471
Medical and Health Sciences	485
Science	513
Theology	569
2002 Course Availability	581
Acts of Parliament and University Statutes	597
Scholarships and Prizes	613
Staff and Student Information	622
University Personnel	630
Glossary of Terminology	671
Directory	672
Maps	675
Tamaki	
City	
Index	678

The University of Auckland  
**Academic Year 2002**

**Summer School – 2002**

Orientation Day .....Friday 4 January  
Lectures Begin .....Monday 7 January  
Auckland Anniversary Day .....Monday 28 January  
Waitangi (NZ) Day .....Wednesday 6 February  
Lectures End .....Thursday 14 February  
Examinations .....Monday 18 February – Wednesday 20  
February  
Semester Ends .....Wednesday 20 February

**Semester 1 – 2002**

Semester 1 Begins .....Monday 4 March  
Easter Break .....Friday 29 March – Tuesday 2 April  
Mid Semester Break .....Monday 22 April – Saturday 27 April  
ANZAC Day .....Thursday 25 April  
Graduation .....Monday 29 April – Friday 3 May  
Queen's Birthday .....Monday 3 June  
Lectures End .....Saturday 8 June  
Study Break/Exams .....Saturday 8 June – Saturday 29 June  
Semester 1 Ends .....Saturday 29 June

**Inter Semester Break** .....Monday 1 July – Saturday 20 July

**Semester 2 – 2002**

Semester 2 Begins .....Monday 22 July  
Mid Semester Break .....Monday 2 September – Saturday 14  
September  
Graduation .....Thursday 26 September  
Lectures End .....Saturday 26 October  
Study Break/Exams .....Saturday 26 October – Saturday 16 November  
Labour Day .....Monday 28 October  
Semester 2 Ends .....Saturday 16 November

**Semester 1 – 2003**

Semester 1 Begins .....Monday 3 March 2003

Blank Page

---

# INTRODUCTION

Welcome to The University of Auckland. This Calendar provides details of the University regulations and programmes, together with general information about the University and its staff, and the facilities and services which are available to staff and students.

## The Academic Year

The academic year at The University of Auckland is divided into two semesters. Each semester covers a period of about 15 weeks comprising approximately 12 teaching weeks followed by three weeks for study and examination. The first semester starts at the beginning of March and the second semester in mid-July. Each semester has a mid-semester break which lasts for one to two weeks. During the three weeks after the end of lectures, there is a period of study followed by the examinations for the courses studied during that semester. There is a three-week inter-semester break during which results will be published and any further admissions and enrolments processed. At the end of the second semester, there is a 13-week break. A small number of specialist courses may be taught during the inter-semester break. A Summer School comprising six weeks operates from the beginning of January. A limited number of courses are available.

## The Points System

The value allocated to each course has been standardised and is given as a number of points, each degree, diploma or certificate being made up of a specified number of points. For instance, the programme for some bachelor's degrees requires the completion of a total of 42 points, some honours degrees 56 points and some master's degrees 28 points. The points value for diplomas and certificates varies according to the discipline and content and full details are listed in the regulations.

## Planning a Programme

In this Calendar you will find the regulations and requirements for each faculty's degrees, diplomas and certificates. The details for each course are listed by faculty, in alpha-numeric order in the Schedule of Prescriptions followed by a summary of course availability for 2002. In addition, there is a range of Interfaculty and Conjoint degrees which comprise planned programmes and are administered and supervised across the faculties. It is important to read the regulations for the programme you plan to take and to ensure that you will complete the prerequisites required for your subsequent study. Students planning a programme are also advised to consult Faculty and Departmental handbooks and seek advice where necessary through the Faculty Offices. Advice about programme and course options is available. Intending students should telephone 0800 61 62 63 for general course advice and for information on how to access more specific course advice from Faculties.

## Admission and Enrolment

The University of Auckland has an on-line system for admission and enrolment. All new students, and those not enrolled in 2001, who are intending to study at the University in 2002, should complete the on-line Application for Admission ([www.auckland.ac.nz/apply-now](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/apply-now)). If students do not have access to on-line facilities, Application for Admission forms are available by phone, by mail, or in person from: ClockTower Student Information Centre, The University of Auckland, 22 Princes St, Private Bag 91346, Auckland, New Zealand, email [studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz), phone 0800 61 62 63.

# THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

## Arms of the University of Auckland



### Heraldic Description

Azure between three Mulletts Argent an open Book proper edged and bound Or with seven clasps on either side Gold on a Chief wavy also Argent three Kiwis proper. On a scroll set below the Arms appear the words '*Ingenio et Labore*'.

### Symbolism

The open book together with the motto '*Ingenio et Labore*', freely translated as 'by natural ability and hard work', indicate in a general way the aim of the institution and combined with the three stars express the idea of learning pursued under the sky of the Southern Hemisphere. The kiwis are indicative of New Zealand as the bird is absolutely confined to its Islands and the silver wavy chief upon which they are set directs attention to the fact that Auckland is on the sea coast.

The shield, minus the ribbon containing the Latin motto, is used in combination with the logotype 'The University of Auckland' and bar elements to form the University Mark. Guidelines for the Mark are prescribed in the University's *Visual Identity Manual*.

## History of the University of Auckland

As early as 1862 an unknown writer, 'J.G.', proposed in Chapman's *New Zealand Monthly Magazine* that a university should be established in Auckland. No one took up the suggestion. In the South Island, where the inhabitants were wealthier and keener on education, a university was established in Otago in 1869 and a college in Canterbury in 1873. In 1870, Parliament passed legislation to create the University of New Zealand as an examining body with affiliated teaching colleges. An Auckland politician, later Speaker of the House of Representatives, Maurice O'Rorke, tried to induce Parliament to place the University in Auckland, but he failed. The University of New Zealand had no fixed abode; its Senate met in the main towns in turn.

The citizens of Auckland did nothing to establish a college, but some so-called 'university' instruction

was provided at the Auckland Grammar School. One student, Kate Edger, in 1877 became the first woman to graduate B.A. at a British university.

In 1878, O'Rorke was appointed chairman of a Royal Commission to report on higher education. It recommended that University Colleges should be established at Auckland and Wellington. In 1882, the Auckland University College was set up by Act of Parliament. Thus the College was a creation, not of the citizens and local government, like those in the south, but of the state.

The applicants for the first four chairs, of Classics and English, Mathematics, Natural Science, Chemistry and Physics, were interviewed in England by the New Zealand Agent-General and some of the most famous scientists and scholars of the day, including the great Benjamin Jowett of Balliol College, Vice-Chancellor of Oxford University. The men appointed formed an impressive group. The chemist, F.D. Brown, had studied both in France and at Leipzig as well as London, and taught at Oxford and London. He had published a dozen papers. Algernon Phillips Thomas, the biologist, was a Balliol man who had discovered the life history of the liver fluke. The classicist, T.G. Tucker, was to become a famous scholar. When he left to go to Melbourne University in 1885 he was succeeded by Hutcheson Macaulay Posnett, an Irishman who had written several books, including one on comparative literature, what would now be called the sociology of literature, a subject which he is now credited with inventing. The first professor of Mathematics was drowned shortly after he reached Auckland and he was succeeded by W.S. Aldis, who had been the senior wrangler at Cambridge and was the author of several mathematical books.

The College was formally opened on 21 May 1883 in the Choral Hall, then the largest hall in Auckland. The Governor, Sir William Jervois, announced that the College was to be a thoroughly democratic institution, open to all, women as well as men, and to all classes. He remarked that the first College building was a barn. It was, in fact, a disused courthouse.

When O'Rorke had first tried to secure a University for Auckland, in 1872, he had suggested housing it in Government House, left empty when the capital was moved to Wellington in 1865. This immediately aroused opposition in the newspapers, for many Aucklanders hoped that the capital - and the governor - would eventually return to Auckland. These conflicting ambitions lay at the basis of a recurrent feature of the history of the College, the great 'site row' which raged with particular violence in the years 1909-12, with the College trying to get at least part of the grounds of Government House while numerous citizens strongly opposed it. One result was that for years the College has no permanent site or permanent buildings. Instead, it acquired the disused Admiralty House and a building which had been the original Parliament House. In 1907, the Choral Hall was purchased. In

1917, the College occupied the deserted Grammar School. Not until 1926 did it acquire its first permanent building, now the Clock Tower Building, in Princes Street.

The College was poor: its statutory grant was for many years only £4,000 a year, while educational reserves were of such poor land that they brought in very little. It was small: there were 95 students in 1883; 156 by 1901. Many of the students had not passed the matriculation examination. Most of them were part-time, trainee teachers and Law clerks, Music students from 1888 onwards, Commerce students by 1905. The College was dominated by the lay members of Council, especially by Sir Maurice O'Rorke, who was its chairman from 1883 to 1916. When Professor Aldis complained in 1892 that he had found the College stables occupied by O'Rorke's son's polo ponies he was dismissed! Despite a prolonged public controversy, Council would not reinstate him. Posnett also left, in 1891.

Some of the best professors departed. Most of the remainder grew increasingly out-of-date in their subjects. There was no system of sabbatical or study leave until the 1920s. The teachers simply handed on traditional knowledge: research was not expected and was rarely done. The staff lectured for very long hours. In some subjects research was impossible. For instance, the library took no mathematical journals, so the mathematicians knew little about recent work. Some students, however, carried out good research, notably in Chemistry. In general, the students were given a good, traditional undergraduate education, but standards were not rigorous and had in some subjects declined by the 1920s.

In that decade and well into the 1930s the College was ruled by a Registrar, Rocke O'Shea, and a new Chairman (President after 1924), another former Cabinet Minister, Sir George Fowlds. Under their not always benevolent dictatorship some improvements were made. The first New Zealand graduates with postgraduate education abroad were appointed to the staff, notably the very able economist, Horace Belshaw, the philosopher, R.P. Anschutz, and the physicist, P.W. Burbridge. An excellent researcher, W.F. Short, was appointed as a lecturer in Chemistry.

Some advances were made in providing professional education. The only such education offered at the College was in Law, which attracted large numbers of students. The only 'professional schools' recognised by the University of New Zealand were Medicine at Otago and Engineering at Canterbury. In 1906, the College established a School of Mining, which covertly by degrees was turned into a 'School of Engineering'. After fierce battles with Canterbury, fired by provincial rivalry, the Auckland School received University recognition for its teaching in the first two professional years. Students then had to go to Canterbury to complete their final year of education. In the course of this battle, in 1917, the College also began instruction in Architecture.

During the depression of the early 1930s there were great disputation and rancour. The temporary

appointment of a lecturer in history, J.C. Beaglehole, later a world famous scholar, was terminated, his friends believed, because of a letter of liberal or radical tendency, to a newspaper, defending the right of Communists to distribute their literature. This episode led to a Council election in which a liberal, Hollis Cocker, displaced a conservative. The College Council now adopted resolutions in favour of academic freedom and received the undeserved congratulations of the flower of the British academic establishment, including Lord Rutherford and Wittgenstein. At this time, in a modern terminology, the College 'came alive'. For instance, some students, led by James Bertram, established a new literary journal, Phoenix, which was the focus for the first literary movement in New Zealand history: Allen Curnow, A.R.D. Fairburn, R.A.K. Mason and other writers, later distinguished, wrote for it.

The College received a great intellectual stimulus in 1934 when four new professors arrived, H.G. Forder, a very able mathematician, Arthur Sewell, a brilliant lecturer in English, a classicist, C.G. Cooper, and a new historian, James Rutherford.

The College had never had academic leadership. Cocker came to dominate it before and during World War II as much as had O'Rorke and O'Shea. But Council now appointed the first Principal (later Vice-Chancellor) K.J. Maidment. He came in 1950 and remained for two decades. He was a Classics don from Merton College, Oxford.

The 1950s was a very difficult period in the history of the College - The University of Auckland, as it was called from 1958 onwards. There was a further, fierce 'site row'. Council wanted to move to a larger site out of town. The National Government in 1956 offered Government House to the College as a compensation for staying in Princes Street. Another 'save Government House' campaign followed. Both academic staff and the public were deeply divided over the issue, which was resolved in 1960: The University was to stay where it was.

The 'site row' held up the building programme for about six years, while student rolls rose rapidly, to 4,000 by 1959, with the result that there was bad overcrowding in quite inadequate buildings - army huts for instance, were erected. Universities everywhere were expanding rapidly. New Zealand salaries were low and many able Auckland staff were recruited by Australian or other universities. Despite these problems, there was significant progress. New subjects were introduced: Geography, Anthropology, Maori Studies, Fine Arts. There was a new emphasis on staff research. Many of the new and younger academics became very active researchers, as could be seen in the growing lists of staff publications.

A general improvement in conditions was spearheaded by a Committee, the Hughes Parry Committee, which reported on University conditions. Staff salaries were raised. For the first time the students were given fairly generous bursaries, which led to a rapid increase in the proportion of full-time students. The government grant to the University rose rapidly. There was a massive university building programme, and over the next

two decades the campus was transformed as one large building after another was erected: Fine Arts, Science, Engineering buildings, a Student Union, a new Library. A number of new subjects were introduced, including Political Studies, Art History, and Sociology. In 1968, teaching commenced in the new Medical School, which was the most important 'new development'. The period of intensive new construction ended with completion of the new School of Music in 1986 and the Marae complex in 1988. A new precinct to the north of Waterloo Quadrant houses Education, and the Law School which moved into its new premises in 1992.

By the end of the 1960s Auckland had the largest University Library in the country, whereas it had usually been the smallest. Most of the credit for this belonged to Kenneth Maidment. One other change must be mentioned. In 1962, the University at last became independent, when the University of New Zealand was abolished.

When Dr Kenneth Maidment departed in 1970, there were 9,300 students. His successor, Dr Colin Maiden, was an Auckland engineer who headed a research division of General Motors in Michigan. One of the first things that struck him in Auckland was the paucity of student facilities. He pushed ahead to get them a theatre, a splendid gymnasium and recreation centre, and a large playing field 'complex'. The entire administrative organisation, from faculties and committees to deputy vice-chancellors, was reformed. The academic boom of the 1960s continued well into the 1970s and several new buildings, like Human Sciences, were built and new subjects, like Management Studies and Computer Science, were introduced.

The 1970s brought numerous social changes: an increase in the proportion of Maori and Polynesian students and in the proportion of women as well as in the proportion of older students. Only in the years 1975-81 were the first two women professors appointed, Marie Clay and Patricia Bergquist. At a time of high inflation the government grant to the University rose rapidly, to \$95.2 million by 1989. Nevertheless there was a certain austerity by then, in a bleak economic climate, but after a century of growth the University seemed sufficiently strongly established in the community to withstand hard conditions.

Its position was indeed to be challenged in the following year. The wide-ranging restructuring of education undertaken by the Labour government encompassed the universities, and their autonomy and their identity were seen to be threatened. As a result of efforts by the universities, supported by alumni, some changes were secured in the Education Amendment Act 1990, but the University Grants Committee was abolished, the universities were placed directly under the Ministry of Education, and the composition of the Council was altered.

Anxious to respond to the demand for university education, the University offered papers at other tertiary institutions in Auckland and Northland. Acquiring buildings from the Commonwealth

Games Village, it began to develop a second campus at Tamaki, initially offering teaching in Commerce. It was obliged, like other universities, to introduce quotas for all first-year papers in 1992, breaking the historic policy of 'open entry'.

Tamaki is now being developed as an innovation campus specialising in such areas as environmental science, information technology, manufacturing, biotechnology and sports science. In 2001, a campus was established on the North Shore to make the University more accessible to people in this fast-growing region.

From the mid-1990s, the University introduced semesters, launched its first major fund-raising appeal and inaugurated its Summer School. It joined Universitas 21, an international network of research-intensive universities in Australasia, Asia, North America and Europe, as a foundation member.

Following the appointment of Dr John Hood as fourth Vice-Chancellor in 1999, alliances were forged with Auckland University of Technology and Manukau Institute of Technology (where bachelor degrees are now offered in Arts, Business and Information Management, Teaching and Visual Arts), Nursing, Pharmacy and Software Engineering degrees were introduced.

By 2000 the student roll had reached 28,000 and research and consultancy revenue totalled \$76 million. On-line enrolment, the first at a New Zealand university, began operating in 2001 while the School of Creative and Performing Arts opened at former broadcasting premises in central Auckland. In August 2001, the University hosted with the New Zealand Government a major international conference on 'Catching the Knowledge Wave'.

---

## The University

The University now has four campuses with seven faculties representing each of its main disciplines: Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts; Arts, Education and Music; Business and Economics; Engineering; Law; Medical and Health Sciences; and Science. In addition, Theology is offered through a Joint Board of Studies. There is a growing number of teaching departments, ranging from Accounting and Finance to Surgery. Some departments are associated with more than one faculty.

Many courses and research activities reflect Auckland's and New Zealand's place in the world. Pacific archaeology, ethnology and languages, for example, are stressed in the Anthropology Department. Geographers carry out fieldwork in the Pacific Islands while University scientists make frequent study trips to the Antarctic. Asian languages – Chinese, Japanese and Korean – are taught and Pacific Island languages have been introduced since 1991. New Zealand's concerns and problems are addressed in subjects as diverse as sociology, medicine, engineering and architecture. The Geothermal Institute is one of four international centres which provide training in geothermal technology.

Almost all teaching staff engage in research which attempts to advance the frontiers of knowledge and understanding. Research is also vital to sustain university teaching. Over 4,000 students are enrolled for postgraduate studies (non-doctoral) and around 900 for doctorates. While research is more often basic than applied, what is discovered may ultimately prove eminently practical. The Yacht Research Institute's contribution towards New Zealand's campaigns for the America's Cup is one notable example. A research laboratory at Leigh, east of Warkworth, carries out marine fieldwork. Various research centres cross disciplinary boundaries. The School of Medicine is one of the largest single research institutions in New Zealand.

## Structure of the University

### The Council

The University's governing body is the Council, a mixture of elected staff, students and graduates, and outside appointees. The Vice-Chancellor, the University's chief academic and administrative officer, is also a member. Council is chaired by the Chancellor who is a lay member of the Council.

### The Senate

On academic matters Council is bound to consult the Senate which the Vice-Chancellor chairs. This body includes all the professors, some non-professorial staff and student representatives. The Senate takes advice from the Education and Research Committees, and from specialist committees, dealing for example with the Library, Information Technology, and the Faculties.

### The Faculties

Each faculty is a subcommittee of Senate and is headed by a Dean who is usually supported by a Faculty Registrar, Administrative Officer and other administrative staff. The Dean is responsible for coordinating the academic and research activities of individual departments and liaises with both the Registry and the Senate committees on regulations, staff appointments, buildings, research funding, library facilities, timetabling etc. The faculty and departmental offices provide assistance to students who are encouraged to contact the relevant staff for information and advice. Handbooks are available from both faculty and departmental offices. Most departments also provide handouts giving specific information about their courses of study; for example, lists of prescribed and recommended texts.

### Central Administration

Day-to-day central administration is performed by the Registry. It is divided into information technology systems and services, finance, human resources, student administration and property services sections.

## The City Campus

The City Campus, established in 1883, is in the heart of Auckland City, separated from the tower blocks of the central business district by historic Albert Park on its western flank. To the southeast

lie the trees and open spaces of the Auckland Domain. Its proximity to the cultural and commercial amenities of the country's largest city, attractive green setting and harbour views bestow advantages enjoyed by few inner city campuses anywhere.

The City Campus has developed extensively over the last 118 years. Today it occupies close to 18 hectares of land, including 10 leased properties, and is spread over 13 city blocks separated by busy thoroughfares.

A major building programme will be implemented over the next five years including extension to the Library, a Student Amenities and Information Commons complex and new facilities for Science, Engineering, Business and Economics, and Arts. All faculties except Medical and Health Sciences offer courses on the City Campus.

## The Tamaki Campus

In 2001, the Tamaki Campus was relaunched as a campus in pursuit of the New Zealand knowledge economy. It will have a culture with the following characteristics: research-intensive, postgraduate-intensive, interdisciplinary, entrepreneurial and creative. Its future development will be based on six themes related to international foresight and to export growth areas for New Zealand through to 2010.

The Campus is located on a 32-hectare site at the corner of Merton and Morrin Roads in Glen Innes, 12 kilometres from the City Campus. It overlooks the Tamaki River estuary and includes the excellent playing fields, spacious clubrooms and other facilities of Colin Maiden Park. A major new building programme will be undertaken over the next few years and steps have been taken in 2001 to improve the appearance and social infrastructure (e.g. new student lounge, staff café) for the Campus.

Courses are offered at Tamaki in the Faculties of Science, Business and Economics, and Arts. The Campus is one of the sites where the Faculty of Business and Economics is offering its new Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM) degree. It is anticipated that the Faculties of Medical and Health Sciences, and Science joint programmes in Health Sciences will be introduced at Tamaki within the next two years. Strong continuing growth is expected in Computer Science and Information Technology and Psychology as well as Environmental Science, and Sport and Exercise Science. There has been a substantial increase in postgraduate student enrolment in these areas in recent years.

The relaunch of the Campus in 2001 as an integrated and innovative campus and technology park is focused on six themes relating to the knowledge economy:

- Information Technology, Telecommunications and Electronics;
- Environment, Resources and Energy;
- Manufacturing and Materials;
- Food and Biotechnology;
- Health, Psychology and Sports;
- Information Management.

This is an exceptional opportunity unlike any in New Zealand. It will be unique in terms of its university-industry-CRI (Crown Research Institutes) integration and also its culture – entrepreneurial, interdisciplinary and research-led. This will provide opportunities for collaborative research.

For students, this development provides practical examples of problem solving from a commercial environment, work opportunities, and an insight into the business ethos of our allied partners. Tamaki is the perfect location for the knowledge economy and to develop the skills required by employers in today's business environment.

Tamaki has generous access to high quality computing and other teaching facilities. The Centre for Image Technology and Robotics has computer research laboratories that specialise in computer vision, data compression, data communications, cryptology, robotics and computer architecture. The Department of Sport and Exercise Science has new research and teaching laboratories located in Colin Maiden Park.

The Tamaki Library has a growing collection of books, serials and videos covering the courses taught on the Campus. The Library is linked to the computerised catalogue (Voyager) on the City Campus. The audio-visual area of the Library has a direct feed of 12 international television stations from the Satellite Receiving Station at Tamaki (UniSat) that receives and records international television programming for education and research at the University of Auckland.

There is a regular shuttle bus service between the City and Tamaki campuses. The lectures at Tamaki begin 30 minutes past the hour to allow staff and students to teach and to attend classes on both campuses.

Parking on Tamaki Campus is free for staff and students but requires a parking sticker issued by the Campus Registry.

---

## The Grafton Campus

The School of Medicine was established on the 2.2 hectare Park Road site in 1968 and in 1995 this site was recognised as a separate Medical and Health Sciences Campus. It is located opposite Auckland Hospital and houses most departments of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences, plus the Department of Optometry. The Faculty also occupies space in leased buildings in Grafton Road and Symonds Street.

Some departments are also partially accommodated in Auckland, Starship, National Women's/Green Lane, North Shore and Middlemore Hospitals. The Departments of Physiology and Pharmacology are also part of the Faculty of Science. The Liggins Institute, a multidisciplinary medical research institute, moved into the premises at 2-6 Park Avenue in 2001.

---

## The North Shore Campus

The North Shore Campus was established in 2001 at 132 Hurstmere Road, Takapuna.

The Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM) degree is offered on the North Shore and Tamaki Campuses but not on the City Campus.

---

## The Library

The University Library system is a distributed one comprising the General Library on the corner of Princes and Alfred Street, together with 12 specialist libraries: Architecture, Audio-visual, ClockTower, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Leigh Laboratory, Te Hukātai (Maori Studies), Medical and Health Sciences, Music, Takapuna and Tamaki. The prime focus of the General Library is to serve the needs of the staff and students of the Faculties of Arts, Science, and Business and Economics. Access to electronic resources is available at all times via the Library's electronic resource network (LEARN) – <http://www.auckland.ac.nz/lbr/libhome.htm>. Hours of opening are available in the printed guides or via LEARN.

---

## The University of Auckland Foundation

In commemoration of the Centenary of the University, the University of Auckland Foundation was established for the advancement of education in New Zealand in ways which extend the University's ability to meet the higher educational needs of the community.

The Trustees apply the income of the foundation from time to time in fulfilling within the University District and elsewhere in New Zealand the purpose for which the Foundation is established:

- 1 To encourage the transfer and exchange of knowledge among scholars and the dissemination of knowledge among the community.
- 2 To encourage overseas scholars to visit New Zealand and New Zealand scholars to visit overseas to carry out study and research and to exchange and impart their knowledge and experience.
- 3 To arrange the movement within New Zealand of resident and visiting scholars.
- 4 To facilitate those visits and movements of scholars to, from and within New Zealand, assisting to arrange the temporary exchange or occupation of academic posts in New Zealand and (where New Zealand scholars are concerned) overseas.
- 5 To arrange the giving of lectures and the promotion of educational discussion and debate in New Zealand before invited or public audiences by scholars from both within and without New Zealand and to arrange itineraries and accommodation for the participants; and in encouraging, arranging and facilitating those activities the Trustees may make such grants, pay such fees, cost of travel and accommodation and make such other expenditure as they consider necessary or desirable.

*Note: 'New Zealand Scholar' means a scholar resident in New Zealand who is pursuing their career here. 'Scholar' includes a person engaged in any discipline in the study*

*or practice of administration and of technology and in the management or custody of libraries.*

Donations to the Foundation should be sent to:

The Registrar,  
University of Auckland,  
Private Bag 92019,  
Auckland  
New Zealand.

A form of legacy for the Foundation, or for the University as a whole, is available on request from the Registrar.

---

## **The University of Auckland Alumni Association (Inc.)**

The Alumni Association was established in 1991 to encourage interaction between the University and its graduates, former students and former staff; to engender support for the University and its various undertakings from members at large; to inform members of the Association about the activities of the University; and to provide a means whereby organisations of former students based on faculties, departments, associated institutions, other special interests, or based in particular countries or cities, may promote the common object of the welfare of the University.

Members receive regular mailouts including a magazine, as well as social and commercial benefits. A wide range of memorabilia for sale has been developed. Those eligible to join the Association are all past students, graduate or non-graduate, of the University of Auckland and Auckland University College, all members and past members of the Senate and Council, present and past staff

members, and anyone who, through association with the University, contributes towards its development and achievement.

The Alumni Office will be pleased to receive membership enquiries or to give further information about the activities of the Alumni Association.

---

## **Auckland UniServices Ltd**

Auckland UniServices Ltd is a company legally separate from the University of Auckland but its shares are held in trust by the University. All profits made by UniServices will be returned to the University of Auckland. The objectives of UniServices are to:

- Commercialise University-sourced technology and innovations.
- Provide specialist consulting, testing and teaching services on a commercial basis.
- Carry out research contract work for outside organisations.
- Undertake any other commercial work considered to be advantageous.
- UniServices owns the intellectual property of the University which arises from research activities.
- UniServices will evaluate the commercial potential of new ideas, innovations and inventions produced by University staff and students and, where there is judged to be a good possibility of commercialisation, will arrange patent protection or advise on copyright and/or confidentiality agreements.

The main office of UniServices is located in UniServices House, 58 Symonds Street, and is open during normal working hours, phone 373 7522.

# THE CALENDAR YEAR 2002

## Academic/Calendar Dates

## Meeting Dates

### January 2002

<b>Tue 1</b>	<b>New Year's Day</b>
<b>Thurs 3</b>	Registry opens
<b>Thurs 3</b>	Summer School enrolment
<b>Mon 7</b>	Summer School begins
<b>Mon 28</b>	<b>Auckland/Northland Anniversary Day</b>

### February 2002

<b>Wed 6</b>	<b>Waitangi Day</b>	<b>Mon 4</b>	3.00pm	Tamaki Board
<b>Wed 20</b>	<b>Summer School ends</b>	<b>Tues 5</b>	9.00am	Biological Safety C.
			2.00pm	Occupational Health & Safety C.
		<b>Mon 11</b>	9.00am	Postgraduate & Scholarships C.
		<b>Tues 12</b>	9.00am	Academic Programmes
		<b>Wed 13</b>	9.00am	Equal Opportunities C.
			9.00am	Schools Liaison C.
			1.00pm	Human Subjects Ethics C.
			3.00pm	Runanga
		<b>Mon 18</b>	9.00am	Education C.
		<b>Tues 19</b>	9.00am	Teaching & Learning Quality C.
			10.00am	Research C.
		<b>Wed 20</b>	9.00am	Information Technology Strategy & Policy C.
			2.00pm	A.U. Press C.
		<b>Fri 22</b>	8.45am	Animal Ethics C.
		<b>Mon 25</b>	10.00am	Student Affairs C.
		<b>Tues 26</b>	3.00pm	Capital Planning & Budgeting C.

### March 2002

<b>Mon 4</b>	Semester 1 begins	<b>Mon 4</b>	3.00pm	Tamaki Board
<b>Fri 29</b>	<b>Good Friday</b>		4.00pm	Senate
		<b>Tues 5</b>	9.00am	Academic Programmes
			9.00am	Biological Safety C.
			3.00pm	Staff Prof. Development C.
		<b>Wed 6</b>	9.00am	Equal Opportunities C.
		<b>Thurs 7</b>	4.00pm	Finance C.
		<b>Mon 11</b>	9.00am	Postgraduate & Scholarships C.
			3.00pm	Staff Advisory C.
		<b>Tues 12</b>	9.00am	International C.
			2.00pm	University Internet Board C.
		<b>Wed 13</b>	8.00am	Audit C.
			1.00pm	Human Subjects Ethics C.
		<b>Mon 18</b>	9.00am	Education C.
			4.00pm	Council
		<b>Tues 19</b>	9.00am	Library C.
			10.00am	Research C.
		<b>Wed 20</b>	9.00am	Information Technology Strategy & Policy C.
		<b>Fri 22</b>	8.45am	Animal Ethics C.
		<b>Mon 25</b>	10.00am	Student Affairs C.
		<b>Tues 26</b>	3.00pm	Capital Planning & Budgeting C.
		<b>Wed 27</b>	2.00pm	A.U. Press C.

### April 2002

<b>Mon 1</b>	<b>Easter Monday</b>	<b>Wed 3</b>	9.00am	Equal Opportunities C.
<b>Tues 2</b>	<b>University Holiday</b>	<b>Mon 8</b>	9.00am	Postgraduate & Scholarships C.
<b>Mon 22</b>	Mid-Semester Break 22-27 April		3.00pm	Tamaki Board
<b>Thurs 25</b>	<b>ANZAC Day</b>		4.00pm	Senate

<i>Academic/Calendar Dates</i>		<i>Meeting Dates</i>	
Sat 27	Mid-Semester Break ends	Tues 9	9.00am Biological Safety C. 9.00am Teaching & Learning Quality C.
		Wed 10	9.00am Schools Liaison C. 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C. 3.00pm Runanga
		Mon 15	9.00am Education C. 4.00pm Council
		Tues 16	10.00am Research C. 2.00pm Occupational Health & Safety C.
		Wed 17	9.00am Information Technology Strategy & Policy C.
		Fri 26	8.45am Animal Ethics C.
		Mon 29	Graduation
		Tues 30	9.00am Academic Programmes 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C.

### May 2002

		Wed 1	Graduation
		Fri 3	Graduation
		Mon 6	3.00pm Tamaki Board 4.00pm Senate
		Tues 7	9.00am Biological Safety C. 3.00pm Staff Prof. Development C.
		Wed 8	9.00am Equal Opportunities C. 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C.
		Mon 13	9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C. 3.00pm Staff Advisory C.
		Tues 14	9.00am International C.
		Wed 15	9.00am Information Technology Strategy & Policy C.
		Thurs 16	4.00pm Finance C.
		Mon 20	9.00am Education C.
		Tues 21	10.00am Research C.
		Mon 27	10.00am Student Affairs C.
		Tues 28	9.00am Academic Programmes 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C
		Wed 29	2.00pm A.U. Press C.
		Fri 31	8.45am Animal Ethics C.

### June 2002

<b>Mon 3</b>	<b>Queen's Birthday</b>	Tues 4	9.00am Biological Safety C.
Sat 8	Lectures end	Wed 5	9.00am Equal Opportunities C.
	Study Break/Exams 8-29 June	Mon 10	9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C. 3.00pm Tamaki Board 4.00pm Senate
Sat 29	Semester 1 ends	Tues 11	9.00am Teaching & Learning Quality C. 2.00pm Occupational Health & Safety C. 2.00pm University Internet Board C.
		Wed 12	9.00am Schools Liaison C. 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C. 3.00pm Runanga
		Mon 17	9.00am Education C. 4.00pm Council
		Tues 18	9.00am Library C. 10.00am Research C.
		Wed 19	9.00am Information Technology Strategy & Policy C.
		Tues 25	9.00am Academic Programmes 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C.
		Fri 28	8.45am Animal Ethics C.

**Academic/Calendar Dates****Meeting Dates****July 2002**

Mon 1 Inter-Semester Break 1-20 July  
 Sat 20 Inter-Semester Break ends  
 Mon 22 Semester 2 begins

Mon 1 3.00pm Tamaki Board  
 Tues 2 9.00am Biological Safety C.  
 3.00pm Staff Prof. Development C.  
 Wed 3 9.00am Equal Opportunities C.  
 Mon 8 9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C.  
 3.00pm Staff Advisory C.  
 Tues 9 9.00am International C.  
 Wed 10 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C.  
 Mon 15 9.00am Education C.  
 Tues 16 10.00am Research C.  
 Wed 17 9.00am Information Technology Strategy &  
 Policy C.  
 Wed 24 8.00am Audit C.  
 Fri 26 8.45am Animal Ethics C.  
 Mon 29 4.00pm Senate  
 Tues 30 9.00am Academic Programmes  
 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C.  
 Wed 31 2.00pm A.U. Press C.

**August 2002**

Mon 5 3.00pm Tamaki Board  
 Tues 6 2.00pm Occupational Health & Safety C.  
 Wed 7 9.00am Biological Safety C.  
 9.00am Equal Opportunities C.  
 Mon 12 9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C.  
 Tues 13 9.00am Teaching & Learning Quality C.  
 Wed 14 9.00am Schools Liaison C.  
 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C.  
 3.00pm Runanga  
 Thurs 15 4.00pm Finance C.  
 Mon 19 9.00am Education C.  
 4.00pm Council  
 Tues 20 10.00am Research C.  
 Wed 21 9.00am Information Technology Strategy &  
 Policy C.  
 Tues 27 9.00am Academic Programmes  
 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C.  
 Fri 30 8.45am Animal Ethics C.

**September 2002**

Mon 2 Mid-Semester Break 2-14 September  
 Sat 14 Mid-Semester Break ends

Mon 2 3.00pm Tamaki Board  
 4.00pm Senate  
 Tues 3 9.00am Biological Safety C.  
 3.00pm Staff Prof. Development C.  
 Wed 4 9.00am Equal Opportunities C.  
 Mon 9 9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C.  
 3.00pm Staff Advisory C.  
 Tues 10 9.00am International C.  
 2.00pm University Internet Board C.  
 Wed 11 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C.  
 Mon 16 9.00am Education C.  
 Tues 17 9.00am Library C.  
 10.00am Research C.  
 Wed 18 8.00am Audit C.  
 9.00am Information Technology Strategy &  
 Policy C.  
 Tues 24 9.00am Academic Programmes  
 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C.  
 Thurs 26 Graduation  
 Fri 27 8.45am Animal Ethics C.  
 Mon 30 10.00am Student Affairs C.

<i>Academic/Calendar Dates</i>	<i>Meeting Dates</i>
<b>October 2002</b>	
Sat 26 Lectures end Study Break/Exams 26 Oct-16 November	Tues 1 9.00am Biological Safety C.
<b>Mon 28 Labour Day</b>	Wed 2 9.00am Equal Opportunities C. 2.00pm A.U. Press C. 4.00pm Finance C.
	Mon 7 3.00pm Tamaki Board 4.00pm Senate
	Tues 8 9.00am Teaching & Learning Quality C. 2.00pm Occupational Health & Safety C.
	Wed 9 9.00am Schools Liaison C. 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C. 3.00pm Runanga
	Mon 14 9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C.
	Tues 15 10.00am Research C.
	Wed 16 9.00am Information Technology Strategy & Policy C.
	Mon 21 9.00am Education C. 4.00pm Council
	Tues 22 9.00am Academic Programmes
	Fri 25 8.45am Animal Ethics C.
	Tue 29 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C.
<b>November 2002</b>	
Sat 16 Semester 2 ends	Mon 4 3.00pm Tamaki Board 4.00pm Senate
	Tues 5 9.00am Biological Safety C. 3.00pm Staff Prof. Development C.
	Wed 6 9.00am Equal Opportunities C.
	Mon 11 9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C. 3.00pm Staff Advisory C.
	Tues 12 9.00am International C. 2.00pm University Internet Board C.
	Wed 13 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C.
	Mon 18 9.00am Education C.
	Tues 19 9.00am Library C. 10.00am Research C.
	Wed 20 8.00am Audit C. 9.00am Information Technology Strategy & Policy C.
	Mon 25 10.00am Student Affairs C.
	Tues 26 9.00am Academic Programmes 3.00pm Capital Planning & Budgeting C.
	Fri 29 8.45am Animal Ethics C.
<b>December 2002</b>	
<b>Wed 25 Christmas Day</b>	Mon 2 9.00am Postgraduate & Scholarships C. 3.00pm Tamaki Board 4.00pm Senate
<b>Thurs 26 Boxing Day</b>	Tues 3 9.00am Biological Safety C. 2.00pm Occupational Health & Safety C.
	Wed 4 9.00am Equal Opportunities C. 10.00am A.U. Press 1.00pm Human Subjects Ethics C. 4.00pm Finance C.
	Mon 9 9.00am Education C. 4.00pm Council
	Tues 10 10.00am Research C.
	Wed 11 9.00am Information Technology Strategy & Policy C. 9.00am Schools Liaison C. 3.00pm Runanga
	Fri 13 8.45am Animal Ethics C.

---

## Academic Statutes and Regulations

- 13 Admission and Enrolment 2002
- 14 Admission Regulations
- 15 Enrolment and Programme Regulations
- 19 General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates
- 19 General Regulations – Master's Degrees
- 21 Credit Regulations
- 23 The Limitation of Entry Statute 1991
- 23 Enrolment Limitations 2002
- 26 Fees Statute
- 29 International Students
- 30 Examination Regulations

## ADMISSION AND ENROLMENT 2002

The University of Auckland has an on-line system for admission and enrolment.

### Admission to The University of Auckland

All new students, and those not enrolled in 2001 who are intending to study at the University in 2002, are required to complete an **Application for Admission form**. **The form may be completed on-line at [www.auckland.ac.nz/apply\\_now](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/apply_now) or be obtained by telephoning 0800 61 62 63.** For students who do not have access to internet facilities, a Help Lab is available in:

ClockTower Student Information Centre  
The University of Auckland  
22 Princes St  
Auckland  
New Zealand  
Email: [studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:studentinfo@auckland.ac.nz)

All Applications for Admission will be acknowledged. Students will receive written offers of places in programmes (diploma, degree or certificate) for which their admission is approved. This **offer of a place must be accepted on-line before the student proceeds to enrol** in the course/s of their choice.

### Enrolment at The University of Auckland

Students must enrol in courses on-line, from a remote site, or one of the Help Labs at the University.

### Admission and Enrolment Timetable

Applications for Admission can be submitted at any time throughout the year, but must be received by published deadlines.

Students must enrol as soon as possible after acceptance of an offer of place, as many University of Auckland courses are very popular and have a limited number of places available. The deadline for enrolment is 14 February, annually.

### 2002 Closing Dates for Admission and Enrolment

The following dates apply, except where different dates are set out in the Limitations Schedule (refer to page 24).

Summer School	Admission	1 December 2001
New & Returning Students	Admission	8 December 2001
New Students	Enrolment	14 February 2002
Returning Students	Enrolment	14 February 2002

## ADMISSION REGULATIONS

### Application for Admission

All students intending to study at the University of Auckland for the first time, and those students not enrolled at the University of Auckland in the previous calendar year, must submit an Application for Admission. Students whose admission is approved will receive a written offer of a place and on acceptance of this offer may proceed to enrol on-line in courses.

### Prerequisites and Conditions

- 1 Subject to the Council's statutory powers to decline admission and enrolment (whether for insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers or for other cause) and to Regulation 2, a person is eligible to be admitted to the University and to be admitted as a student if that person:
  - a has satisfied the requirements for entrance to a university in New Zealand
  - or
  - b is granted Special Admission
  - or
  - c is granted Provisional Entrance
  - or
  - d is granted admission at entrance with credit or with graduate status based upon study at a secondary institution overseas or another tertiary institution.
- 2 Unless the Senate approves otherwise, a person who has not reached the age of 16 years by 31 December in the year preceding that in which admission is sought will not be eligible to be admitted to this University.
- 3 A person seeking to be admitted to the University must:
  - a comply with these regulations
  - and
  - b sign the declaration on the Application for Admission form which includes the words: 'I promise to abide by the Statutes and Regulations, and comply with the reasonable requirements of the University of Auckland'.

### Requirements for Entrance to a University in New Zealand

- 4 a Bursaries examination.
 

Up to and including 1986: an aggregate total of 160 marks in four subjects.

From 1987 to 1992: four individual subjects with D grades or higher. (Practical Art up to 1988 counts as two subjects for this purpose.)

From 1993: three individual subjects with C grades or higher plus Higher School Certificate, or an 'A' or 'B' Bursary.
- b UE gained before 1986.
- c Up to and including 1992, a combination of credits, in a minimum of four subjects, gained from UE before 1986 and/or Bursaries Examinations since. A credit required a mark of at least 40% in 1986 or a

D grade or higher from 1987 on. (Practical Art up to 1988 counts as two subjects for this purpose.)

From 1993: a combination of credits in three individual subjects in the Bursaries Examination plus Higher School Certificate.

- d 13 credits in three different approved subjects at level 3 or above on the National Qualifications Framework and Higher School Certificate.

*Note: Credits in approved subjects from the National Qualifications Framework, and grades C or better in NZUEBS or equivalent, may be combined to make up the equivalent of three C passes.*

### Special Admission

- 5 a A person who does not hold a university entrance qualification but who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident and has attained the age of 20 years on or before the first day of the semester in which a proposed programme is offered is eligible to be granted Special Admission.
- b A person seeking Special Admission to the University has to apply for it in accordance with the Admission Regulations and submit evidence of age and educational qualifications.
- c The Senate may waive the age requirement where an applicant is in its opinion otherwise fit to be admitted and, in particular, has satisfied any qualification for admission specified in the regulations for that programme of study.
- d A person seeking to be admitted to the University of Auckland who wishes to be granted credit for any prior learning must apply under Regulation 7 (Admission at Entrance Level or with Credit).

### Provisional Entrance

- 6 a It is possible for a person who is a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident but who does not hold a university entrance qualification to be granted Provisional Entrance to any programme if that person:
  - (i) does not qualify for Special Admission
  - and
  - (ii) has received secondary schooling to at least New Zealand Year 12 level, or its equivalent overseas, and been awarded Sixth Form Certificate in at least one subject, or its equivalent
  - and
  - (iii) has not, in the year of application, entered examinations in more than two subjects of the NZUEBS qualification except as provided in 6b.
- b A student at a New Zealand secondary school, who has entered examinations in more than 2 subjects of the NZUEBS qualification, may apply for provisional entrance in the same year for the purpose of enrolling in a programme offered in a

summer school by the University. Any person admitted under this regulation who does not in the following January gain an entrance qualification based on NZUEBS will be required to withdraw from the University and may apply for admission at mid-year. Students required to withdraw may complete their summer school programme before doing so but any courses passed will not be credited to a programme until a University Entrance qualification is gained.

- c The entrance qualification shall cease to be provisional when the student has passed courses totalling not fewer than 12 points.
- (i) While the entrance qualification remains provisional a student may enrol only in courses of the programme for which permission is granted.
  - (ii) When the entrance qualification ceases to be provisional the student may enrol for any other programme subject to any requirement for enrolment for that programme.
- d A person seeking Provisional Entrance to the University must apply by completing the requirements prescribed on the Provisional Entrance form.

#### Admission at Entrance Level or with Credit

##### 7 a From a New Zealand university

A student from another university in New Zealand, including a student who had enrolled at the University of Auckland previously, who wishes to reapply to the University of Auckland must submit an Application for Admission form and may apply for credit under the provisions of the Credit Regulations.

##### b From another tertiary institution in New Zealand or overseas

A person who wishes to be admitted to the University of Auckland and who has gained appropriate qualifications validated by the New Zealand Qualifications Authority or

from an overseas institution may be granted admission by this University:

- (i) at entrance level
- or
- (ii) with credit towards a certificate, diploma or a Bachelor's Degree for work which in the opinion of the Senate is substantially equivalent and is in accordance with the Credit Regulations.

c A person seeking admission under this regulation has to apply by completing the requirements on the Application for Admission form.

- 8 a Credits may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may include permission to advance in specified subjects or courses.
- b Prerequisite courses or programmes may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or other qualification.

#### Students Enrolled at Another Educational Institution

- 9 a When they enrol, students are required to declare if they are intending to enrol concurrently during the year in question at any other educational institution.
- b A student at a New Zealand secondary school who satisfies the admission requirements and who has the specific written approval of the institution's principal may, with the approval of Senate or its representative, enrol in up to 2 points per semester.

#### English Language Competence

- 10 The University does not accept responsibility for students who fail courses as a result of their lack of competence in English.

*Note: Students, particularly those whose first language is not English, are advised to consider taking courses in English Language Acquisition to ensure that they have adequate language skills to undertake study at university level.*

## ENROLMENT AND PROGRAMME REGULATIONS

### Academic Calendar

- 1 a There will be a Summer School and two semesters in each year.
- b The Summer School will begin on the second working day after the New Year break and will end with examinations held over three days commencing the third Monday in February.
- c The academic year will begin on the ninth Monday of the calendar year and end on the day preceding the ninth Monday of the following calendar year.
- d The first semester will begin on the first day of the academic year and end on the Saturday preceding the 26th Monday of the calendar year, the final three weeks of which will be a study and examination period.
- e The second semester will begin on the 29th Monday of the calendar year and end on the

Saturday preceding the 46th Monday, the final three weeks again being a study and examination period.

- f Each semester will include a break of at least one week after about six weeks of teaching.

### Definitions of Full-time Study

- 2 Full-time study is defined as a student workload of:
- a not fewer than 12 points over two semesters in one year
- or
- b not fewer than 6 points in one semester
- or
- c not fewer than 2 points in Summer School.
- 3 Part-time study is defined as a student workload of:
- a fewer than 12 points over two semesters in one year

- or  
 b fewer than 6 points in one semester  
 or  
 c fewer than 2 points in Summer School.

**Points**

- 4 a (i) A student may enrol in up to 20 points in an academic year for a bachelor's degree, diploma or certificate, subject to the provisions of the Academic Progress regulations.  
 (ii) Provided the 20 point limit is not exceeded, a student may enrol in:  
 (a) up to 9 points in each of Semesters 1 and 2  
 (b) up to 4 points in a summer school.

*Note: A recommended full-time programme in Semesters 1 and 2 would normally comprise a total of 14 points.*

- b (i) For a master's degree, PhD or other doctorate, where another programme is included in the enrolment, a limit on points may be determined by the Dean of the Faculty or delegated representative in any particular case provided that the master's, PhD or doctoral programme will always comprise more than half of the total points for which the student has enrolled.  
 (ii) Students who are eligible to claim student allowances and/or an additional student loan entitlement and wish to enrol during the summer vacation period in order to work on their thesis, dissertation or research topic are required to complete a Course Alteration Form.

*Note:*

a *This regulation provides the opportunity for master's students to include their thesis, dissertation or research topic in their enrolment together with the required courses in any academic year.*

b *Before completing a master's degree or submitting a thesis, a student needs to have enrolled in, and paid the specified fees for at least the minimum number of points as set out in the relevant degree course regulations.*

**General Programme Provisions**

- 5 a For the purposes of this section of the Regulations a representative of the Senate includes a Dean, and the Deputy, or Associate of a Dean; and a Head of Department and the Deputy or Associate of a Head of Department.  
 b Subject to the Admission Regulations and to the express provisions of any other statute or regulation, every student for a certificate, diploma or degree programme must:  
 (i) be admitted to the University; and  
 (ii) follow the prescribed programme in the order prescribed or indicated in accordance with the regulations governing that programme; and  
 (iii) comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations.

- c Each student must ensure that, before confirming their enrolment, their proposed programme and enrolment:

- (i) complies with the regulations of the qualification to which they have been admitted; and  
 (ii) does not involve lecture or examination clashes.

- d The Senate or its representative may in exceptional circumstances approve:

- (i) a proposed enrolment which does not in every particular satisfy the regulations for the for which the student is intending to enrol; or  
 (ii) a variation in the programme to avoid lecture or examination clashes.

- f Where an approval of a proposed programme as a whole is declined by a representative of the Senate the student may appeal to the Senate whose decision shall be final.

- g Where electives are prescribed for a the Senate may at its discretion determine which of them shall be available in any semester provided that sufficient electives are available to enable students to complete their programme.

- h A student who has enrolled for the second semester in a course or courses that have a first semester prerequisite or corequisite and who fails the prerequisite/corequisite course(s) may not proceed with the second semester enrolment unless a concession is granted by the relevant Dean.

- i Where in the opinion of a Head of Department an insufficient number of students has enrolled in a course taught in the Department or where there are insufficient staff to teach it, that Head of Department may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, cancel that course not later than one week after the beginning of the semester in which it would have been taught, if the essential prerequisites for any student's enrolment are not thereby affected. A student is not to be charged a fee for any alteration to enrolment required because of the cancellation of a course.

**Restrictions**

- 6 a A student may not normally enrol in the same semester for more than two different programmes.

- b (i) A student may not enrol in the same semester for courses the content of which is substantially similar.

- (ii) A student may not enrol for any course the content of which is the same as, or substantially similar to, any course for which credit has been received, provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit such enrolment for a Certificate of Proficiency.

- (iii) Work submitted for credit towards the result in any course may not be resubmitted in respect of any other course.

- c A student who has twice enrolled in, but has failed to be credited with a pass in a course is not entitled to enrol again in that course other than in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate or its representative.
- d A student may not be admitted to a programme for a qualification for which the requirements have been completed or which has already been awarded or conferred, unless specific provision is made in the regulations for the relevant programme or special approval is given by the Senate or its representative.

### Enrolment

- 7 a Following acceptance in a programme of their choice, students can enrol in courses on-line. For late enrolment see the Late Enrolment provisions in this section.
- b Students whose dissertations or theses for a diploma or degree are incomplete are required to be enrolled until the dissertation or thesis is presented.
- c (i) Students for the Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology must complete a normal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.
- (ii) Students for Part III of the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery must complete a formal enrolment not later than 15 November or such date as approved by the Senate or its representative for the commencement of Part III, and pay the prescribed fees in accordance with the University's enrolment requirements.

### Late Enrolment

- 8 a An enrolment may be accepted after the day prescribed, subject to the availability of courses.
- b The choice of courses for students who enrol after the closing date for enrolment will be determined by the Senate or its representative and will not necessarily be those proposed by the students concerned. In determining such courses, the Senate is to have regard to the prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of those students who have enrolled at or before the prescribed time.

### Not-for-Credit Courses

- 9 a Subject to the Admission and Fees Regulations, a student who has a personal interest in a course and for whom enrolment for a Certificate of Proficiency is deemed inappropriate, may apply for enrolment in a Not-for-Credit course.
- b Enrolment is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Changes to Current Enrolment

#### Deadlines for Additions and Deletions

- 10 The last dates for additions and deletions under Regulations 11 and 12 are set out below:

Semester courses enrolled in	Deadline for additions/deletions
1st semester courses	2nd Friday of semester
2nd semester courses	2nd Friday of semester
Double semester courses	4th Friday of 1st semester
Summer School courses	2nd Friday of Summer School

#### Note:

- a It is not sufficient for a student to notify an addition or deletion solely to the Department – it must be done on-line.
- b Amended fees invoices (including credits) for any changes to enrolment will be issued after the close of the official alteration period.
- c Where special circumstances apply, a student may apply for an exemption from additional fees from the Director, Student Administration or delegated authority.

### Additions

- 11 Students wishing to add a course to their current enrolment may do so on-line, where the approved limit has not been reached or where the available resources have not reached capacity.

### Deletions

- 12 a A student wishing to delete a course may do so on-line.
- b The course will be deleted from the student's academic record.
- c Late applications to delete will be considered by the Director, Student Administration (or delegated authority) only in exceptional circumstances (such as illness, injury or events beyond the control of the student) and upon submission by the student of appropriate evidence.

### Substitutions

- 13 a Where a Department directs a student to substitute one course for another in the same subject, the student may do so on the appropriate form and with the approval of the Dean of the appropriate Faculty.
- b Courses may be substituted up until three weeks before the end of lectures for the semester in which the course is taught.
- c A course may only be substituted with a course which is of the same duration, same points value and taught in the same semester.

*Note: Where students are directed to take a more/less advanced second-semester course in place of a first semester course, they will be permitted, if necessary, to make a late deletion.*

- d The substituted course will be removed from the student's academic record.
- e There will be no adjustment to the student's tuition fees. If there is a variation between charges payable in respect of the substitute and the substituted course, the student will be required to pay only the difference in those charges.
- f There will be no refund of any fees or charges for the substituted course.

### Withdrawals

- 14 a Any student wishing to cease attendance in a programme or course after the period

specified for deletion may apply to do so by obtaining the approval of the relevant Head of Department and the Dean of the Faculty for that programme up to three weeks before the end of lectures for the semester in which the course is taught, or in the case of Summer School, up to one week before the end of lectures. Application must be made on the Course Alteration Form.

- b The course will remain on the academic record and show as a withdrawal.
- c All fees will remain owing.
- d For calculation of Satisfactory Progress (under Regulation 17' of these regulations) withdrawal will be counted as a failure.
- e For selection in a limited-entry course, a withdrawal is counted as a failure.
- f Where withdrawal from a course will not reduce the student's enrolment to less than 12 points over the academic year, the withdrawal from that course will not affect selection in limited-entry courses.
- g For student allowances the course will count as a failure and automatically reduce the number of points in which the student is deemed to be enrolled.
- h If a student who ceases to attend lectures fails to complete the Course Alteration Form, the course(s) will be recorded as "Did not sit" and will count as a failure for all purposes.

#### Refund of Fees

- 15 a Where a student applies, before the dates specified in Regulation 10, to delete all courses of the current enrolment a full refund of all tuition fees and the Student Services Fee will be made.

*Note: A student who has deleted all courses is no longer deemed to be enrolled.*

- b Where a student applies, before the dates specified in Regulation 10, to delete one or more but not all courses of the current enrolment a refund of the fees for the course(s) deleted will be made but there will be no refund or reduction of the Student Services Fee.
- c Where a student has been permitted by the Director, Student Administration, under Regulation 12c, to delete a course after the prescribed date because of illness, injury or exceptional circumstances beyond the student's control a refund of tuition fees will be granted in accordance with the Tuition Fees Refund Guidelines below, provided that the Senate may in its discretion increase this percentage, but there will be no refund of the Student Services Fee.

*Note: Tuition Fees Refund Guidelines:*

- a For single semester courses which are deleted:
  - (i) before the commencement of the mid-semester break for that semester: 50%
  - (ii) thereafter no refunds will be granted
- b For double semester courses which are deleted:
  - (i) before the commencement of the mid-semester break for the first semester: 75%
  - (ii) before the end of the first semester: 50%

- (iii) before the commencement of the mid-semester break for the second semester: 25%
- (iv) thereafter no refunds will be granted.

#### Academic Progress

- 16 a Regulations concerning academic progress apply to all programmes at the University of Auckland unless otherwise specified in the particular regulations for certificates, diplomas and degrees printed elsewhere in this Calendar.
- b The application of these regulations includes students intending to transfer to the University of Auckland from any other New Zealand university and those students applying for admission having previously studied at another tertiary institution.

#### Requirements for Satisfactory Progress

- 17 A student is required to have passed, in the last two semesters of study, courses worth half or more of the points in which they were enrolled. If a student has enrolled in Summer School, courses taken in Summer School will also be taken into consideration for assessing satisfactory progress.

#### Unsatisfactory Progress

- 18 a A student who fails to meet the requirement of satisfactory progress will, in the next two semesters of enrolment and any related Summer School enrolment, be automatically restricted to a minimum full-time load, i.e. a maximum of 6 points in each full semester and not more than 3 points in Summer School.
- b A student whose enrolment is restricted under the provisions of Regulation 18a, and who fails to pass half the points enrolled for in the next two semesters of enrolment or any related Summer School enrolment, will be suspended from enrolment at the University of Auckland for the next two semesters and the related Summer School.
- c Students suspended from enrolment under these provisions may apply to the Senate for reconsideration of the suspension where they consider that medical or other exceptional circumstances should be taken into account. Where such reconsideration is given, the Senate or its representative (the Dean of the Faculty concerned) may:
  - (i) confirm the suspension
  - or
  - (ii) permit a student to enrol under specific conditions.
- d A student permitted to re-enrol under conditions specified by the Senate or its representative, but who fails to satisfy those conditions during their next two semesters of enrolment and the related Summer School, will be automatically suspended from enrolment at the University of Auckland for the next two semesters and the related Summer School.

- e A student is entitled to re-enrol without any restriction that might be imposed under these regulations where any condition(s) imposed in a previous year have been satisfied.
- f A student who fails on a second or subsequent occasion to meet the requirements for satisfactory progress, will be excluded from enrolment at the University of Auckland for the next six semesters and the related Summer School sessions.
- g A student excluded under Regulation 18f must apply for readmission to a programme.
- h Students excluded from enrolment under these provisions may apply to the Senate for reconsideration of the exclusion where they consider that medical or other exceptional circumstances should be taken into account. Where such reconsideration is given, the Senate or its representative may:
  - (i) confirm the exclusion
  - or
  - (ii) permit a student to be readmitted under specific conditions.
- i Where a student has not been enrolled at a tertiary institution for a period of five or more years, any conditions previously applicable in respect of that student's failure to make satisfactory academic progress will be cancelled.  
*Note: Any specific conditions applied by Senate or its representative are to take precedence over the requirements set down in Regulations 18a, b and f.*

and  
 d reach the Director, Student Administration by the closing date for admission applications for that semester.

- 20 Any student declined readmission at this University under the Unsatisfactory Progress Regulation may within 14 days appeal to the Council against the decision of the Senate.
- 21 Provided that the student is enrolled in no other course, Regulations 16–20 do not apply to a student enrolling in any one of: case study, dissertation, original investigation, practicum, thesis or the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

**Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers**

- 22 a The Vice-Chancellor may give such direction, or make such provision as he or she thinks fit for the relief of undue hardship where it is shown to his or her satisfaction:
  - (i) that an alteration or amendment to statutes or regulations involving a change in a programme or in examination requirements has caused a student hardship
  - or
  - (ii) that official advice has been given in writing and acted upon, and it is later found that the courses the student has taken do not accord with the programme regulations and that hardship would be caused if the student were to be compelled to comply with the full requirements of the regulations.
- b A student may appeal against any decision of the Vice-Chancellor under this Regulation to the Council by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within fourteen days of being notified of the decision. The Council shall have the power to make such provision as it may think fit. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

- 19 Applications to Senate must:
  - a be made on the appropriate Unsatisfactory Progress form
  - and
  - b if special consideration is sought for medical or other exceptional reasons, include evidence
  - and
  - c state the programme for which the student intends to apply, should the application for readmission be successful

---

## GENERAL REGULATIONS – DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

---

**Deadlines for Completion**

- 1 Diplomas and certificates are to be completed following the Deadlines for Completion unless the individual regulations specify otherwise.
- 2 Enrolment in diplomas and certificates not completed by these deadlines will require approval by the Senate or its representative.

Points Value	Deadlines for Completion
7 points:	within two semesters of initial enrolment
14 points:	within four semesters of initial enrolment
21 points:	within six semesters of initial enrolment
28 points:	within eight semesters of initial enrolment

---

## GENERAL REGULATIONS – MASTER'S DEGREES

---

*The following regulations take precedence over the specific regulations for each master's degree published elsewhere in this Calendar. They are to be read in conjunction with the specific degree regulations for each master's degree and the Guidelines for masters' students. Students first enrolled in a master's degree in 1998 or earlier will finish their programme under the regulations applicable at the time of first enrolment or as otherwise specified prior to the coming into force of these regulations.*

**Note:**

For the purposes of these regulations:

- (i) a Thesis is worth 10 points or more
- (ii) a Dissertation or Research Project is worth up to 9 points.

**General Requirements**

- 1 A student enrolled for a master's degree at this University must:
  - a Pass the full points value specified in the degree regulations, but the total enrolment may not exceed the minimum points requirement for the degree by more than 4 points.
  - b Complete the requirements for the degree as follows:

**2 Deadlines for Completion**

Degree Points	Initial Enrolment	Final Semester		Submission of Thesis	Short Extensions
		Full-time	Part-time		
	Semester in Academic Year for Initial Enrolment	Final Semester from the Date of Initial Enrolment		Due Date following Final Semester for Submission of Thesis	Due Date for Short Extensions
28	1st Semester 2nd Semester	4th 4th	8th 8th	15 December 1 May	28 February 15 July
14	1st Semester 2nd Semester	2nd 2nd	4th 4th	15 December 1 May	28 February 15 July
21	1st Semester 2nd Semester	3rd 3rd	6th 6th	1 July 15 December 15 December 15 July	30 September 28 February 28 February 30 September

**Notes:**

- 1 For these purposes, a nominal starting date for the first semester is **1 March** and for the second semester **15 July**.
- 2 In all cases for the calculation of due date, the semester of initial enrolment is deemed to be the first semester in which the student enrolled for the programme.
- 3 **Graduation:** students should note that where they submit by 15 December or 1 May respectively, it is expected that they should be able to graduate in the next scheduled graduation ceremony. Students who submit on 15 July or have a short extension beyond these dates will be advised which graduation ceremony they should be able to attend.
- 4 Part-time study is defined as a student workload of fewer than 12 points over two semesters in one year or fewer than 6 points in one semester.
- 5 Where the enrolment in the programme is partially full-time and partially part-time, the maximum time for completion is to be based on the period for completion for part-time study provided that one semester of full-time study counts as two semesters of part-time study for the purposes of calculation of the completion date.

**Completion of Requirements****3 a Thesis**

- (i) A student whose programme includes a thesis must complete the requirements in accordance with the schedule in Regulation 2. However, the Head of the Department concerned may approve a

short extension of time as shown in the schedule.

- (ii) If, in exceptional circumstances beyond the student's control, the thesis has not been able to be completed by the specified deadline (including any approved extensions given under Regulation 3a(i) above) the Senate or its representative acting upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, may approve a limited extension of time, not normally exceeding one semester, for the work to be completed.

**b Dissertation or Research Topic**

- (i) A student whose programme includes a Dissertation or Research Topic needs to complete the requirements by the last day of the final semester calculated in the schedule above.
- (ii) If, in exceptional circumstances beyond the student's control, the Dissertation or Research Topic has not been able to be completed by the above deadline, the Senate or its representative acting upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, may approve a limited extension of time, not exceeding three months.

**c Courses only**

- (i) A student whose programme does not include a Thesis, Dissertation or Research Topic must complete the requirements by the end of the final semester shown in the schedule above.
- (ii) Extensions of time to complete work in examined courses or 100% coursework courses will not be granted beyond the end of the semester(s) in which the course is offered.

**Tuition Fees for Extensions of Time**

- 4 Where an extension of time for the submission of a Thesis, Dissertation or Research Topic is approved under Regulation 3a(ii) or 3b(ii), students will be required to be enrolled and pay tuition fees at the rate of 1 point for each two-month period or part thereof. This will only apply when the student's current enrolment period in the course has ended.

**Honours**

- 5 Where the regulations provide for the award of honours, a master's degree may be awarded with honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Eligibility for Honours**

- 6 Where the requirements for the degree have not been completed in accordance with Regulations 3a(ii) and 3b(ii), a student's eligibility for honours will lapse. However, on

the recommendation of the Head of Department, the Senate or its representative may approve the retention of eligibility for Honours.

### Submissions of Theses and Dissertations

- 7 a The student is to submit two hard bound copies of the thesis to the Graduate Centre by the date indicated for completion in the Schedule. A short abstract not exceeding 350 words, together with a library thesis consent form, are to be bound into each copy.
- b Dissertations are to be bound as specified by the Faculty and submitted to the supervisor in accordance with Regulation 3b.
- c The Head of Department is to transmit the submitted copies to the examiners.
- d On completion of the examination the supervisor of the thesis will be responsible through the Head of the Department for the deposit of two copies with the University Library.

### Substitutions and Failed Courses

- 8 Master's students may not change their enrolment in a course after the last date approved for deletions, except in exceptional circumstances as provided for in the Enrolment and Programme Regulations under Changes to Current Enrolment.
- 9 A master's student may not normally resit a failed course except as provided for in the regulations relating to aegrotat and compassionate passes. In exceptional circumstances, the student may apply to Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of Department for permission to resit the course and where approval is granted, the result achieved in the first attempt will not be considered in arriving at the overall grade for the programme.

- 10 Except as provided in Regulation 9, calculation of the overall grade will include the grades given for all courses attempted in the degree. For the purposes of grade or mark calculation, Withdrawal, Did Not Sit and Did Not Complete will count as zero.

### Suspension

- 11 Enrolment for a master's degree will normally be continuous. In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of Department may grant a period of suspension from enrolment not normally exceeding two consecutive semesters. In such cases the period of suspension will not count towards the time limits for the degree.

### Cross-Credits and Reassignments

- 12 Courses may not be cross-credited into a master's degree, but may with the approval of the Head of Department be reassigned as specified in the Credit Regulations. Any credit will be in accordance with the Credit Regulations.

### Certificate of Proficiency

- 13 The Certificate of Proficiency regulations under 'Other Programmes' apply.

### Transitional Certificate

- 14 The Transitional Certificate regulations under 'Other Programmes' apply. A Transitional Certificate course may not be reassigned to a master's degree.

### Variations

- 15 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to the regulations for a master's degree.

---

## CREDIT REGULATIONS

---

### Credits

- 1 a A student may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative and on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Statute, be granted credit towards a programme approved by the Dean of the Faculty concerned under the provisions of these regulations.
- b A student may not be granted further credit for work already credited under this Regulation.

### Credit from Another Tertiary Institution

- 2 a **New Zealand**  
A student who applies for admission to the University of Auckland and has undertaken a programme at another tertiary institution may be granted appropriate credit towards a degree or other qualification of the University of Auckland on the basis of work successfully completed in the previous programme.

### b Overseas

- (i) A student who has gained an appropriate qualification, or credit towards a qualification, validated by the New Zealand Qualifications Authority or from an overseas institution, and who is granted admission by this University, may be granted appropriate credit towards a certificate, diploma or bachelor's degree on the basis of work successfully completed previously.
- (ii) Credit may be granted to the status of a diploma holder or degree holder with the right to be admitted for a specific higher qualification with or without Honours, subject to any conditions which the Senate or its representative may impose.
- (iii) (a) Such credits may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may include permission to advance in specified subjects or programmes.

(b) A prerequisite programme may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or other qualification.

c Where appropriate, the limits set down for cross-credits in Regulation 10 will apply.

### Concurrent Enrolment

3 A student who is enrolled at the University of Auckland and who concurrently enrolls and completes courses at another tertiary institution which they wish to credit to their University of Auckland qualification must:

a Seek the prior approval of the Dean of the relevant faculty that the courses will satisfy the regulations and requirements for the programme for which the student is enrolled at this University and that appropriate credit may be granted.

b Apply for credit in accordance with these regulations when the official results are known. Any credit granted from study at a summer school will be added to the current year of study at this University.

(i) Credit for enrolment under these regulations will normally only be granted for courses at Stage I and Stage II.

(ii) Only in exceptional circumstances will credit be granted for courses taken at another tertiary institution at Stage III or for a masters degree or a diploma.

*Note: Where prior approval has not been sought, credit may not be granted.*

4 A student enrolled for a bachelor's degree at the University of Auckland may enrol for a maximum of 4 points each summer at a summer school run by another New Zealand university or tertiary institution provided that by such enrolment the maximum points limit specified in the Enrolment and Course Regulations is not exceeded.

### Extramural Study

5 a Anyone qualified to enrol at a university in New Zealand who satisfies the Senate or its representative that they should not be required to attend classes at the University may apply to enrol extramurally in that year.  
b Approval for extramural study of courses offered by the University of Auckland will only be granted in exceptional circumstances.

6 A student may not be enrolled extramurally at the University of Auckland for:

a any Stage III course

or

b any work for a master's degree

or

c any work for a diploma

or

d any course requiring practical or laboratory work

or

e any course or other work which, in the opinion of the Senate, requires internal tuition at a university.

7 A student must:

a Apply in writing to the Senate or its representative setting out the circumstances for the application and specifying the course or courses for which approval for extramural study is sought.

b Ensure that the University's regulations are satisfied and submit an Application for Admission form.

c Pay the prescribed fees.

*Note: These regulations do not apply to students enrolling in courses delivered by distance education.*

### Cross-credits

8 a In this Regulation 'cross-credit' means a course which is common to two diplomas or bachelor's degrees and is credited to both.

b A student taking two programmes may be permitted to designate as cross-credits no more than the maximum allowed for one programme or the other but not for both.

c A course which is designated a cross-credit may not be credited to more than two programmes.

9 a When calculating cross-credits between a second and third programme, points from previously granted cross-credits may not be used. The maximum number of cross-credit points that may be granted is based on one-third of the points not previously designated for cross-credits.

b A Stage III course that fulfils the Stage III requirements of one programme may not be designated as a cross-credit to meet the Stage III requirement of another programme.

c A student may not designate as a cross-credit any course passed with a conceded pass. If that course is compulsory, another course may be substituted for it as the Senate or its representative may approve.

d The Dean of the relevant Faculty will determine the designation of cross-credits, or give appropriate direction to the application for cross-credits where it is:

(i) not otherwise covered by this Regulation or by special provisions made elsewhere in the Regulations of the University

or

(ii) subject to any doubt or difficulty in the interpretation of these or any other Regulations of the University.

### Limits

10 Subject to any other provisions of the relevant Programme Regulations:

a In the case of a bachelor's degree, cross-credits may not total more than one-third of the total points value of the degree.

b In the case of a diploma, cross-credits may not total more than one-third of the points value of the diploma.

c In the case of master's degrees, doctorates and certificates, no cross-credits are available.

**Limits on Cross-credits for Conjoint Degrees**

- 11 a A conjoint degrees combination is considered to be two degrees for the purpose of calculating cross-credits.
- b (i) A maximum of 10 points may be cross-credited from a completed conjoint degrees combination to another programme.
- (ii) A maximum of 10 points may be cross-credited from a completed programme to a conjoint degrees combination.
- (iii) The apportionment of the points to the components of the conjoint degrees combination is subject to the approval of the relevant Deans or their representatives.

**Reassigned Courses**

- 12 a A student may apply, by submitting an Application to Reassign Courses form, to reassign courses passed for, and assigned to, one programme to another programme for which the courses are available.
- b A student may not reassign courses passed for one programme of study to another once the qualification for which the courses were passed has been awarded.
- c Courses which are reassigned cease to be credited to the former programme.

---

## THE LIMITATION OF ENTRY STATUTE 1991

---

*At the University of Auckland this 18th day of February 1991. Pursuant to Section 224 of the Education Act 1989, as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990, the Council of the University of Auckland hereby makes the following Statute:*

- 1 a This statute may be cited as the Limitations of Entry Statute 1991.
- b This statute came into force on 1 January 1991.
- 2 Where the Council is satisfied that it is necessary to do so because:
  - a students cannot be allocated places in appropriate lecture rooms or laboratories at times when they can reasonably be expected to attend
  - or
  - b the number of teaching staff does not ensure all students expected to seek a place in a particular programme or course can be adequately taught
 there shall be deemed to be an insufficiency of accommodation or of staff.
- 3 The maximum number of students that may be enrolled for any such programme or course shall be determined by the Council from time to time after considering any recommendations from the Senate and be published in a schedule to this Statute.
- 4 In determining such maximum number of students the Council may, after securing a recommendation from the Senate:
  - a prescribe academic standards to be achieved as a prerequisite for enrolment for any such programme or course
  - and
  - b prescribe other criteria for selection of students to be permitted enrolment for any such programme or course.
- 5 The Limitation of Entry Statute 1985 is hereby repealed.

**Approved Limitations**

- 1 Students must apply for a place in any Limited Entry Programme. Unless otherwise specified in the notes column below, **the closing date for Application for Admission is 8 December 2001 and for Enrolment is 14 February 2002. The closing date for Summer School is 1 December 2001.**
- 2 Application for places in any limited entry programmes and/or courses will be made on-line, or in person.
- 3 Applications received after the specified closing dates will be given reduced priority in consideration for a place in a limited-entry programme and/or course.
- 4 All those applying for open entry programmes and who are eligible for admission will be accepted, although they may not be selected into all courses of their choice as some Arts and Science courses have a limit on the number of students that can be accepted.
- 5 Where the number of applicants for a place in a limited-entry programme or course exceeds the approved number of available places, the Faculty or Department concerned will select students in accordance with criteria that have been approved by the University Council.
- 6 Where a course is taught in both semesters, the Selection Committee will allocate students to the first or second semester where numbers of applications for one semester exceed places available.
- 7 Selection criteria will be available from the Faculty or Department concerned for the information of students. In general, selection will be based upon academic merit. In those cases where the scholastic record is insufficient, e.g. Provisional Entrance and Special Admission, other criteria such as the recommendation of the School Principal or Advisor, or employment history, will be taken into account. Account will also be taken of the University's Equal Educational Opportunity objectives. Limitations on programmes and courses are listed below.

---

### Enrolment Limitations 2002

**Limited-Entry Programmes and Courses**

Because of insufficient accommodation and restrictions on staffing there will be a limitation on the number of students who can be enrolled for certain programmes or courses at the University in 2002.

## Limitations Schedule

Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit
<b>A. LIMITED ENTRY PROGRAMMES</b> (admission by selection)					
<b>Architecture, Property, Planning &amp; Fine Arts</b>					
For selection and limited entry information, please consult the Head of Department.					
BAS (for the first time)	85	Software Engineering	100	(Architecture students only)	
BProp (for the first time)	65	<b>Law</b>		ARCHTECH 414	20
BPlan (for the first time)	35	LLB Part 1 (LawInt)	425	(non-Architecture students)	
MPlanPrac (for the first time)	35	(Course LAW 101)		ARCHTECH 416	20
Apply by 1 October for the following year:					
BFA - Studio I	100	LLB Part 2	270	ARCHTECH 417	20
Apply by 1 November for the following year:					
MFA (for the first time)	30	<b>Medicine</b>		(non-Architecture students)	
PGDipFA	10	DipOccupMed	25	PROPERTY 111	5
MFA (Distance)	12	DipPaed	60	(non-Property students)	
Apply by 1 October for the following year:					
<b>Arts</b>		MAud	12	PROPERTY 141	5
BPerfArts (Dance)	20	Apply by 1 October for BHBI & II, BNurs, BPharm			
<b>Education</b>					
Apply by 1 November for the following year					
BE4(Tchg)		BHB I	90	See Fine Arts in Part A of this Schedule	
- Primary Option	150	BHB II	115	Studio courses available ONLY to students	
- Secondary Option	30	.BHSc	180	enrolled for Fine Arts degrees or diplomas	
BMusEd	50	BNurs	65	FINEARTS 201	20
DipTchg (Primary)	150	BPharm	100	FINEARTS 301	65
DipTchg (Secondary)	140	MPH	25	FINEARTS 302	20
Apply by 1 November for the following year:					
DipCouns, DipCouns (Theory), MEd (Couns)	(combined approved limit) 18	CertHSc	70	FINEARTS 303	20
<b>Commerce</b>					
Minimum entry standard of 2.7 GPE					
Equivalent to Bursaries total of 270					
BCom (for the first time)		PGCertPH	25	FINEARTS 305	30
BBIM (for the first time)		PGDipPH	25	<b>Arts</b>	
BCom(Hons), PGDipCom, MCom/MA (for the first time)		<b>Science</b>		<b>Anthropology</b>	
Economics	35	Apply by 1 December for following year:			
International Business	20	BSc (Sport & Exercise Science), BOptom		ANTHRO 317, ANTHRO 737	
Management & Employment		BSc (Sport & Exercise Science)	85	(combined approved limit)	15
Relations	25	MSc		<b>Arts: General</b>	
Marketing	20	Food Science	20	ARTSGEN 750	30
BCom(Hons), PGDipCom, MCom		Forensic Science	20	ARTSGEN 751	30
Accounting	35	Optometry	40	<b>Chinese</b>	
Finance	35	Polymers & Coatings	25	CHINESE 100 (Summer School)	30
Information Systems & Operations Management & Operations Research	35	BTech		CHINESE 100	150
MComLaw	12	Biotechnology	25	CHINESE 101	150
BCom(Hons) Taxation, MTaxS	15	Materials	25	CHINESE 200	75
Master of International Business	30	Industrial Maths	25	CHINESE 201	75
<b>Engineering</b>					
Minimum entry standard of 3.7 GPE or A Bursary					
BE Part I		Information Tech	25	<b>Dance</b>	
Minimum entry standard of 5.4 GPE					
Equivalent to Bursaries total of 350					
BE Part I (Software Engineering)		Optoelectronics	25	DANCE 101	20
Apply by 1 September (International Students) for the following year:					
DipGeothermTech	35	BOptom Part 1	40	DANCE 201	20
Apply by 1 November for the following year:					
MEMgt	20	Apply by 1 October for the following year:		DANCE 203	20
<b>B. LIMITED ENTRY COURSES</b> (admission by selection)					
<b>Architecture, Property, Planning &amp; Fine Arts</b>					
For selection and limited entry information, please consult the Head of Department.					
See also Part A of this Schedule for programmes other than BAS, BArch:					
ARCHDRC 300 (BArch students only)	30	DCLinPsych Year 1	11	DANCE 204	20
ARCHDRC 302 (BArch students only)	20	Apply by 1 November for the following year:		DANCE 250	20
ARCHDRC 303 (BArch students only)	30	BSc(Hons) (Psychology)	50	DANCE 766	20
ARCHHTC 100-400 (non-Architecture students)	20	BA(Hons) (Psychology)		DANCE 770	15
ARCHPRM 301 (non-Architecture students)	20	MA (Psychology)		<b>English</b>	
ARCHPRM 303 (Architecture students only)	20	MSc (Psychology)		ENGLISH 328	15
ARCHTECH 301 (Architecture students only)	16	<b>Film, Television &amp; Media Studies</b>			
ARCHTECH 306 (Architecture students only)	25	FTVMS 201	24	ENGLISH 331	60
ARCHTECH 307 (Architecture students only)	16	FTVMS 301	12	<b>Film, Television &amp; Media Studies</b>	
ARCHTECH 307 (Architecture students only)	16	FTVMS 303	15	FTVMS 201	24
ARCHTECH 401 (Architecture students only)	12	FTVMS 304	12	FTVMS 301	12
ARCHTECH 402 (Architecture students only)	12	FTVMS 311	15	FTVMS 303	15
<b>German</b>					
GERMAN 101(Summer School) 28					
<b>Japanese</b>					
JAPANESE 130 200					
JAPANESE 131 (Summer School) 30					
JAPANESE 131 (Semester 1 & 2) 130					
JAPANESE 131 (Semester 2) 150					
<b>Language Teaching and Learning</b>					
LANGTCHG 724 (Summer School) 25					
<b>Maori Studies</b>					
MAORI 240 (Summer School) 20					
MAORI 240 (Semester 1) 20					
MAORI 340 20					
MAORI 342 20					
<b>Music</b>					
Apply by 1 July for the following year:					

Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit	Faculty/Subject	Approved Limit
MUSIC 120/125	35	<b>Health Psychology</b>		PHARMCOL 303	72
MUSIC 206	20	HLTHPSYC 714	15	PHARMCOL 304	140
MUSIC 210/211	15	HLTHPSYC 715	15	PHARMCOL 305	48
MUSIC 214	20	HLTHPSYC 716	15	PHARMCOL 306	72
MUSIC 216	20	<b>Human Biology</b>		<b>Physiology</b>	
MUSIC 306	10	HUMANBIO 111	600	PHYSIOL 210	208
MUSIC 310/311	8	HUMANBIO 122	415	PHYSIOL 220	208
MUSIC 316	8	HUMANBIO 142	840	PHYSIOL 301	80
<b>Psychology</b>		<b>Managed Care</b>		PHYSIOL 302	48
<i>See listing under Faculty of Science</i>		MGCARE 611	10	PHYSIOL 303	75
<b>Statistics</b>		MGCARE 612	10	PHYSIOL 304	64
<i>See listing under Faculty of Science</i>		MGCARE 613	10	<b>Psychology</b>	
<b>Theatre Studies</b>		MGCARE 614	10	PYSCH 108	750
THEATRE 201	30	MGCARE 615	10	PYSCH 109	750
THEATRE 301	20	MGCARE 701	30	PYSCH 128	240
<b>Commerce</b>		MGCARE 702	30	PYSCH 129	240
<i>See Commerce in Part A of this Schedule for BCom limits.</i>		MGCARE 703	30	PYSCH 201	250
<i>For BCom, DipCom</i>	<i>GPE</i>	MGCARE 704	30	PYSCH 202	260
ACCTG 211	2.0	MGCARE 705	30	PYSCH 203	225
MGMT 310	{Quota} 20	MGCARE 706	30	PYSCH 204	300
MGMT 316	6.0	<b>Molecular Medicine</b>		PYSCH 206	320
MGMT 323	3.5	MOLMED 201	227	PYSCH 261	120
MGMT 326	4.5	<b>Nursing</b>		PYSCH 262	120
MGMT 336	{Quota} 20	NURSING 711	20	PYSCH 301	100
MGMT 338	5.0	NURSING 712	20	PYSCH 305	80
MGMT 339	6.0	NURSING 713	20	PYSCH 307	40
INFOSYS 222	2.0	<b>Psychiatry</b>		PYSCH 310	260
INFOSYS 340	5.0	PSYCHIAT 740	20	PYSCH 311	160
INFOSYS 375	5.0	PSYCHIAT 741	20	PYSCH 312	95
MKTG 312	5.0	<b>Science</b>		PYSCH 314	40
<i>For courses other than BCom:</i>		<b>Biological Sciences</b>		PYSCH 316	60
<b>Accounting &amp; Finance</b>	<i>GPE</i>	BIOSCI 101	1024	PYSCH 317	45
ACCTG 101	2.7	BIOSCI 106	840	PYSCH 319	40
ACCTG 191	2.7	BIOSCI 107	1024	PYSCH 321	50
<b>Commercial Law</b>		BIOSCI 201	300	PYSCH 361	60
COMLAW 101	2.7	BIOSCI 202	300	PYSCH 362	40
COMLAW 191	2.7	BIOSCI 203	300	PYSCH 364	40
<b>Economics</b>		BIOSCI 204	300	<i>Apply by 1 November for the following year:</i>	
ECON 101	2.0	BIOSCI 742	50	PYSCH 602	10
ECON 111	2.0	<b>Chemistry</b>		PYSCH 603	10
ECON 191	2.7	CHEM 100	100	PYSCH 701	16
<b>Management &amp; Employment Relations</b>		<b>Computer Science</b>		PYSCH 702	16
MGMT 101	2.7	COMPSCI 101 (Summer School)	225	PYSCH 703	14
MGMT 191	2.7	COMPSCI 101 (Tamaki Campus)	225	PYSCH 704	10
<b>Management Science &amp; Information Systems</b>		COMPSCI 101 (Semester 1)	550	PYSCH 705	10
INFOSYS 110	2.7	COMPSCI 101 (Semester 2)	550	PYSCH 707	16
INFOMGMT 191	2.7	COMPSCI 111 (Semester 1)	260	PYSCH 708	14
<b>Statistics</b>		COMPSCI 111 (Semester 2)	260	PYSCH 709	14
STATS 191	2.7	COMPSCI 280 (Semester 1)	200	PYSCH 710	16
<b>Engineering</b>		COMPSCI 280 (Semester 2)	200	PYSCH 711	10
<i>See Engineering in Part A of this Schedule</i>		COMPSCI 314 (City Campus)	350	PYSCH 714	16
<b>Law</b>		COMPSCI 314 (Tamaki Campus)	120	PYSCH 716	16
<i>See Law in Part A of this Schedule</i>		COMPSCI 334 (Semester 1)	240	PYSCH 717	12
<b>LLB (Hons) Seminar courses</b>		COMPSCI 335 (Semester 2)	240	PYSCH 721	14
LAW 341-399	15 per course	COMPSCI 340	275	PYSCH 734	12
LAW 447	52 per stream	COMPSCI 372	275	PYSCH 735	15
<b>LLM Seminar courses</b>		COMPSCI 766	20	PYSCH 737	15
LAW 701-787	15 per course	COMPSCI 7xx (except 766)	40	PYSCH 738	15
<b>LLM(Envi) Seminar courses</b>		<b>Food Science</b>		PYSCH 741	12
ENVLAW 701-729	15 per course	FOODSCI 703	20	PYSCH 811	11
<b>Medicine</b>		FOODSCI 704	20	PYSCH 812	11
<i>See Medicine in Part A of this Schedule</i>		FOODSCI 707	20	PYSCH 894	11
<b>Behavioural Science</b>		FOODSCI 708	20	PYSCH 896	11
BEHAVSCI 721	20	FOODSCI 796	20	<b>Sport &amp; Exercise Science</b>	
BEHAVSCI 722	20	<b>Forensic Science</b>		SPORTSCI 102	85
BEHAVSCI 729	20	FORENSIC 703	30	SPORTSCI 103	85
BEHAVSCI 730	20	FORENSIC 704	30	SPORTSCI 104	85
<b>Community Health</b>		FORENSIC 705	30	<b>Statistics</b>	
COMHLTH 710	25	FORENSIC 706	30	STATS 108	250
COMHLTH 720	25	<b>Mathematics</b>		STATS 208	230
COMHLTH 731	25	MATHS 102	40	STATS 210 (Semester 1)	No Limit
COMHLTH 732	25	MATHS 202	30	STATS 210 (Semester 2)	No Limit
COMHLTH 733	25	<b>Optometry</b>		STATS 210 (Tamaki Campus)	30
		OPTOM 680	20	STATS 301	100
		<b>Pharmacology</b>		STATS 301 (Tamaki Campus)	75
		PHARMCOL 201	200	STATS 302	100
		PHARMCOL 301	140	STATS 303	100
		PHARMCOL 302	72	STATS 340 (City Campus)	120
				STATS 340 (Tamaki Campus)	80
				STATS 350	50

## FEES STATUTE

### 1 Title and Commencement

This statute may be cited as the Fees Statute 2001 and came into force on 1 January 2001.

### 2 Interpretation

In this statute unless the context otherwise requires:

'Act' means the Education Act 1989.

'Council' means the Council of the University of Auckland.

'Domestic Student' has the meaning given in the Act.

'Enrolment' means enrolment in a programme or course at the University.

'Enrol' has a corresponding meaning.

'Fees Invoice' means an invoice for the fees and charges payable by a student on enrolment.

'Foreign Student' has the meaning given in the Act.

'Staff Member' means a member of the staff of the University.

'Student' includes a Domestic Student and a Foreign Student who is:

a Duly enrolled as a student of the University;

or

b Applying to enrol as a student of the University.

'Student Loan' has the same meaning as it has in section 2 of the Student Loan Scheme Act 1992.

'University' means the University of Auckland constituted under the University of Auckland Act 1961.

### 3 Tuition Fees

3.1 The Council may prescribe from time to time Tuition Fees payable by:

a Domestic Students; in compliance with section 227 of the Act; and

b Foreign Students or any categories of Foreign Students; in compliance with section 228 of the Act.

3.2 Tuition Fees may be prescribed either by resolution of the Council or by a schedule to this statute.

3.3 The Tuition Fees prescribed by the Council at the date when this statute comes into force apply until other Tuition Fees are prescribed in place or in addition to them.

### 4 General Fees

4.1 The Council hereby prescribes the General Fees specified in the schedule.

4.2 The Council may from time to time by resolution vary the amount of, or delete, any General Fee specified in the schedule or prescribe any additional General Fee.

4.3 Any such variation, deletion, or addition shall apply from the date specified in the amending resolution.

### 5 Additional Fees/Charges

5.1 Faculties and Departments of the University

may impose charges to recover costs in providing Students with:

a Copies of study material and other material relevant to a course or a programme or the means of access to that material;

b Services incidental to courses or programmes as, for example, field trips and site visits.

### 6 Payment of Fees and Charges

6.1 Tuition Fees, General Fees and any charges imposed pursuant to section 5.1 that are included on the Fees Invoice rendered to a Student shall be paid by the student forthwith on receipt of that Fees Invoice.

6.2 Charges imposed on a Student pursuant to section 5.1 that are not included in a Fees Invoice shall be paid by the Student on demand.

6.3 Any instalment of a Student Loan (within the meaning of the Student Loan Scheme Act 1992) that is available to a Student and received by the University in respect of his or her enrolment shall be applied toward payment of the Fees Invoice rendered to that Student on the occasion of that enrolment.

### 7 Refunds

7.1 The Council may by resolution prescribe from time to time in accordance with sections 227 and 228 of the Act;

a The circumstances in which Domestic Students and Foreign Students are or may be entitled to a refund of all or any part of the Tuition Fees and General Fees paid or payable to the Council; and

b The quantum of those refunds.

7.2 The circumstances in which a refund may be made and the quantum of that refund that pertains when this statute comes into force, continues until a change is prescribed by resolution.

7.3 The Council will take all reasonable steps to ensure that both Domestic Students and Foreign Students are given written notice of the circumstances in which they are or may be entitled to a refund of all or any part of the fees that have been paid or are payable by them to the Council.

7.4 The refund of all or any part of a Tuition Fee or a General Fee that was paid by an outstanding Student Loan shall be applied in reduction of that loan.

### 8 Non-payment of Fees and Charges

8.1 Where a Student does not pay;

a The Fees Invoice rendered to that Student on receipt of that Invoice; or

b A charge for that Student imposed under section 5 on demand;

then, until those fees and charges are paid in full and without prejudice to the right to recover the unpaid fees or charges at law; the Council may:

- (i) Delete the enrolment of that Student from a course or courses;
  - (ii) Withhold the formal notification of the results of any examination of the Student;
  - (iii) Decline to re-enrol the Student;
  - (iv) Decline to release the Student's academic record;
  - (v) Exclude that Student from the University;
  - (vi) Withhold any Degree or Diploma certificate from that Student.
- 8.2 A Student upon whom a penalty is imposed under section 8.1 may by giving written notice to the Director, Student Administration within eight days of the penalty having been imposed, apply to the Council or duly constituted

Committee of the Council to review the imposition of that penalty. The notice must set out the reasons for the review. The decision of the Council or its Committee is final.

## 9 Non-attendance

- 9.1 A Student who stops attending lectures or classes in a course or courses remains liable for the fees prescribed for that course or courses.

## 10 Revocation

- 10.1 The Fees Regulations are hereby revoked.
- 10.2 Notwithstanding the revocation of the Fees Regulations, the Council may recover any unpaid fees or charges levied under those Regulations and impose any of the penalties prescribed in section 8.1 until those fees or charges are paid in full.

### Schedule – Part A

(Subject to approval by University of Auckland Council)

#### General Fees (Inclusive of GST)

##### Admission and Entrance Fees

Graduate status or with credit from an overseas institution	\$120.00
Entrance based on an overseas qualification	\$60.00
Provisional Entrance	\$60.00

##### Extramural Enrolment

In a University of Auckland course – 50% of tuition, examinations and research fees for the current year.

##### Applications for Credit

Each application from any study undertaken at another institution (e.g. Summer School, concurrent enrolment) \$60.00

##### Student Administration

ID cards replacement	\$20.00
Academic transcripts and letters	\$10.00
Each additional copy	\$5.00
Special statements (e.g. admission to the Bar)	\$30.00
Unsatisfactory progress appeal	\$30.00

##### Reassignment and Credit

Reassignments	No fee payable
Cross-credits based on study at Auckland	No fee payable
Internal credit based on study at Auckland	No fee payable

##### Replacement of Degree or Diploma Certificate

Lost or Damaged	\$45.00
Change of name	\$60.00
Courier charges within New Zealand	\$10.00
Courier charges to Australia	\$20.00
Courier charges to other overseas countries	\$50.00

##### Examination

Recount of marks, each course (refundable if successful)	\$50.00
Aegrotat and compassionate (consideration payable on application to Student Health)	

Each course	\$10.00
Maximum	\$40.00

##### Examinations sat in New Zealand but out of Auckland

Single examination per venue	\$90.00
Each additional examination at the same venue	\$15.00

##### Examinations sat outside New Zealand

Single examination per venue	\$120.00
Each additional examination at the same venue	\$15.00

##### Course Materials Fee

Departments may charge fees for field trips and site visits. These charges will be included on the Fees Invoice together with the standard materials fee charges.

##### Student Services Fee

Student Services Fee \$167.00  
All students with the exceptions listed below are required to pay the Student Services Fee. For students enrolled in one semester only, the fee is \$83.50. For students enrolled in the Summer School period only, the fee is \$28.00.

##### Exceptions

- The following students need not pay the Student Services Fee unless they wish to use the Student Services:
  - Students living outside Auckland and not using the University facilities other than the Library who are enrolled for a thesis or dissertation. Apply in writing to Director Student Administration.
  - Students enrolled in programmes taught by distance learning or other such programmes as may be advised by the Director, Student Administration from time to time.
- Students sponsored by the United Nations for DipGeotherm Tech; students under approved University exchange schemes and students enrolled in Wellesley Programme may use the Student Services without payment of the fee.

*Note: Full-time Staff Members who are enrolled for programmes may not use the Student Services except on payment of standard charges for non-student users.*

### Schedule – Part B

(Subject to approval by University of Auckland Council)

#### Tuition, Examination and Research Fees (Inclusive of GST)

For New Zealand Citizens and Permanent Residents of Australia and New Zealand.

##### Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

Bachelor of Architectural Studies – except Studio and Design courses	\$240 per point
Bachelor of Architectural Studies – Studio and Design courses	\$320 per point
Bachelor of Architecture – except Studio and Design courses	\$275 per point

Bachelor of Architecture – Studio and Design courses	\$320 per point
Master of Architectural Studies	\$275 per point
Master of Building Science	\$275 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science	\$275 per point
Bachelor of Property	\$275 per point
Bachelor of Property (Honours)	\$275 per point
Master of Property	\$275 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Property	\$275 per point
Bachelor of Planning – except Studio and Design courses	\$240 per point

Bachelor of Planning	
- Studio and Design courses	\$320 per point
Master of Planning Practice	
- except Studio and Design courses	\$275 per point
Master of Planning Practice	
- Studio and Design courses	\$320 per point
Master of Planning	\$240 per point
Master of Architecture	\$240 per point
Bachelor of Fine Arts	
- Undergraduate Arts courses	\$240 per point
Bachelor of Fine Arts	
- FINEARTS 100-399	\$320 per point
- FINEARTS 400-499	\$320 per point
Bachelor of Visual Arts (Year 1)	\$226.71 per point
Bachelor of Visual Arts (Years 2 to 4)	\$247.78 per point
Master of Fine Arts	
- Graduate Arts courses	\$240 per point
Master of Fine Arts	
- Studio and Studio Distance	\$260 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts	
- Studio	\$260 per point
- FINEARTS 890 Fine Arts	\$240 per point

**Arts (including Education and Music)**

Undergraduate and Graduate Arts courses	\$240 per point
Undergraduate Performance courses and Science-based courses	\$260 per point
Graduate Performance courses and Science-based courses	\$275 per point
Diploma in Teaching (Primary and Secondary)	\$240 per point
Other Diplomas	\$275 per point

**Business and Economics**

Undergraduate courses and 700-level courses	
	\$275 per point
Master of International Business	\$508 per point
Master of Management	\$1,181 per point
Master of Taxation Studies	\$330 per point
Master of Business Administration	\$548 per point
BUSADMIN 729	\$1,656 per point
BUSADMIN 730	\$1,656 per point
Graduate Diploma in Business	\$548 per point

**Engineering**

Undergraduate and 700-level courses	\$320 per point
-------------------------------------	-----------------

**Law**

All courses	\$275 per point
Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies per point fees charged at the respective rate for the subject.	

**Medical and Health Sciences**

Bachelor of Health Science	\$275 per point
Bachelor of Human Biology (Year 1 & Hons)	\$275 per point

Bachelor of Nursing (Year 1)	\$275 per point
Bachelor of Pharmacy (Year 1)	\$275 per point
Masters 700-level courses	\$275 per point
Diploma 700-level courses	\$275 per point
Bachelor of Human Biology (Years 2 & 3)	\$689 per point
Bachelor of Medicine/Bachelor of Surgery	\$689 per point
Bachelor of Nursing (Years 2 to 4)	\$265 per point
Bachelor of Pharmacy (Years 2 to 4)	\$265 per point
Diplomas 600-level courses	\$235 per point
Diploma in Obstetrics & Medical Gynaecology	\$1,000 per annum
Diploma in Paediatrics	\$1,000 per annum
Certificate in Health Sciences	\$34 per point

**Science**

Undergraduate and 700-level courses	
- Maths and Statistics	\$240 per point
All other undergraduate and 700-level courses	\$275 per point
Bachelor of Optometry	\$500 per point
Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology	\$500 per point

**Theology**

Undergraduate and 700-level courses	\$240 per point
-------------------------------------	-----------------

**Doctorates**

Doctor of Education	\$3,360 per annum
Other Doctorates	\$2,800 per annum

**Other Courses**

Wellesley Programme	\$21 per point
---------------------	----------------

**Interfaculty**

Graduate Diploma in Arts Management	
- Management courses	\$548 per point
Graduate Diploma in Arts Management	
- Arts courses	\$240 per point
Diploma in Environmental Management	\$400 per point

All other Interfaculty programmes per point fee charged at the respective rate for the subject.

**Other fees for all courses**

Building Levy	\$4 per point
Student Services	\$167 per annum
Material and Resource Fee	\$10 per point

**Exceptions to Material and Resource Fee**

All Law courses	\$20 per point
Business & Economics 700-level courses	\$20 per point
Bachelor of Optometry	\$20 per point
Master of Fine Arts (Studio - Distance)	\$20 per point
Bachelor of Visual Arts	\$46.43 per point

**No Material and Resource Fee charged for:**

Master of International Business, Master of Management, MBA, Graduate Diploma in Business, PhD and Higher Doctorates.

**Schedule - Part C**

(Subject to approval by University of Auckland Council)

**Tuition, Examination and Research Fees (inclusive of GST) For International Students.****Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts**

Architecture Undergraduate	\$1,375.00 per point
Architecture Postgraduate	\$1,572.00 per point
Property Undergraduate	\$982.00 per point
Property Postgraduate	\$1,179.00 per point
Planning Undergraduate	\$1,179.00 per point
Planning Postgraduate	\$1,375.00 per point
Fine Arts Undergraduate	\$1,179.00 per point
Fine Arts Postgraduate	\$1,375.00 per point

**Arts**

Undergraduate - standard - Humanities	\$785.00 per point
Undergraduate - high resource	\$982.00 per point
Languages	\$982.00 per point
Commerce	\$982.00 per point
Mathematics	\$982.00 per point
Social Science	\$982.00 per point
Undergraduate - very high resource - Science-based	\$1,146.00 per point
Postgraduate - standard	\$1,146.00 per point

Postgraduate high resource - Lab/fieldwork-based	\$1,338.00 per point
--------------------------------------------------	----------------------

**Business and Commerce**

Undergraduate	\$1,071.00 per point
Postgraduate	\$1,286.00 per point
MIntBus	Flat rate \$23,100.00
Executive Programmes	TBA
(Not available for International students unless on a work permit)	

**Engineering**

Undergraduate	\$1,375.00 per point
Postgraduate	\$1,571.00 per point
DipGeothermTech	TBA

**Law**

Legal Systems	\$785.00 per point
Undergraduate	\$982.00 per point
Postgraduate	\$1,178.00 per point
Professional Legal Studies	TBA

**Medical and Health Sciences**

BHB	\$1,964.00 per point
MBChB	\$2,671.00 per point

*(BHB and MBChB are only available to International*

*Students by special arrangement)*

DipObstMedGyn & DipPaed	\$1,100.00 per point
Nursing	\$1,253.00 per point
Pharmacology	
Postgraduate research-based	\$1,178.00 per point
Pharmacy	\$1,429.00 per point

#### Science

Undergraduate – high resource	
Mathematics	\$981.00 per point
Computer Science	\$981.00 per point
Commerce	\$981.00 per point
Undergraduate – very high resource	
Science	\$1,179.00 per point
Technology	\$1,179.00 per point
Postgraduate – standard	\$1,179.00 per point
Postgraduate – high resource – Lab/fieldwork-based	\$1,375.00 per point
	\$1,572.00 per point
Optometry I	\$1,375.00 per point
Optometry II-IV	\$2,043.00 per point

#### Theology

Undergraduate	\$786.00 per point
---------------	--------------------

Postgraduate	\$1,179.00 per point
Study Abroad	Flat rate \$8,250

#### PhD and Higher degrees

As per the Postgraduate subject rate

#### Interfaculty

GradDipArtsMgt	\$1,179.00 per point
DipEnviMgt	\$1,375.00 per point
All other degrees	as per the subject rate

#### Other fees for all courses

Building Levy	\$4 per point
Student Services	\$167 per annum
Material and Resource Fee	\$10 per point

#### Exceptions to Material and Resource Fee

All Law courses	\$20 per point
Business & Economics 700-level courses	\$20 per point
Bachelor of Optometry	\$20 per point
Master of Fine Arts (Studio – Distance)	\$20 per point

#### No Material and Resource Fee charged for:

Master of International Business, Master of Management, MBA, Graduate Diploma in Business, PhD and Higher Doctorates.

## INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS

The following notes are intended to be a general guide for international students wishing to be admitted to the University of Auckland. Further information and application forms are available from the International Office.

### Admission

International students must apply for admission on the appropriate application form. Intending applicants should note the following general points:

- All international students enrolling in an undergraduate programme must hold, as a minimum requirement, an acceptable university entrance qualification.
- All international students seeking admission to graduate or postgraduate programmes must hold a recognised first degree in a relevant discipline.
- Applicants whose first language is not English will be required to provide satisfactory evidence of their proficiency in English. Minimum scores required are 550 in TOEFL with a TWE of 4.5, or 6.0 in IELTS with no band less than 5.5. Please note that individual Faculties and Departments may require higher scores, especially for admission to postgraduate programmes. Detailed minimum English language entry requirements are available on request from the International Office.
- The majority of international students must have a student visa before entering New Zealand, although students from some countries may enter New Zealand without a visa. All students must have a valid student permit for the duration of their studies. Further information regarding the various requirements of the New Zealand Immigration Service can be obtained from the nearest New Zealand diplomatic office.

- An offer of a place at the University does not guarantee that the student will be issued with a student visa.
- Permanent residents of Australia and New Zealand, Australian citizens, and students from the Cook Islands, Tokelau or Niue who are New Zealand citizens, are eligible for enrolment on the same basis as New Zealand students and do not need to apply for admission as international students.

### International Student Fees

- The above fees apply to students who:
  - are not New Zealand Citizens
  - do not hold permanent residence status in New Zealand
  - have been granted a New Zealand Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade Fees Scholarship
  - are being fully funded under the New Zealand Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade Official Development Assistance programme.
 Current fees can be obtained from the International Office of the University.

### Scholarships and Financial Assistance

The Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade awards a limited number of study awards and fees scholarships to students from identified developing countries. For information about undergraduate awards, please enquire at your nearest New Zealand diplomatic office. Graduate students should write directly to the University and ask for a NZ ODA Postgraduate Scholarship Application Form.

Enquiries regarding courses, fees or scholarships should be made to the International Office: email [international@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:international@auckland.ac.nz), phone 64-9-373-7513, fax 64-9-373-7405.

## EXAMINATION REGULATIONS

*These regulations should be read in conjunction with other examination publications which contain more detail and particular instructions. The publications are:*

*For staff: Instructions to Examiners and Assessors.*

*For students: Examination Instructions – Regulations and General Information. (These are mailed to all examination candidates before each examination period.)*

### Requirements

- 1 In order to be credited with a course, a candidate needs to have:
  - a enrolled in accordance with the Enrolment Regulations  
and
  - b attended classes to the satisfaction of the Senate  
and
  - c completed to the satisfaction of the examiners such oral, practical, written or other tests or assignments as have been prescribed for completion during the course  
and
  - d completed to the satisfaction of the examiners and in accordance with these regulations any examination prescribed by the Senate  
and
  - e made any payment due by that candidate to the University.

*Note: Candidates are to be informed by each Department of the specific requirements for courses in that Department and the extent to which coursework will be taken into consideration in assessing final results. In some cases candidates may not be permitted to sit the examination, as a result of unsatisfactory or incomplete coursework.*

### Work Other than Examinations

- 2 a It is the responsibility of each candidate to ascertain the nature of the requirements for each course from the Department or Faculty concerned.
  - b Provided that candidates have met deadlines set for this work, examiners should normally have determined and returned interim or definitive grades for this work before sitting of the examination, if one is prescribed.
  - c Unacknowledged copying or plagiarism in completing this work is treated as an examination offence.

### Time of Examinations

- 3 a The examination will be held at the times specified in the timetable each year.
  - b A candidate may not be examined in any course or part of a course at any time other than that set down for them in the timetable, except when, with the approval of Senate, a different time may be approved because of special circumstances.

### Place of Examinations

- 4 All students have to sit their examinations at Auckland except when, with the approval of the Senate, a different examination centre may be established because of special circumstances, provided that there is the payment of the extra fee prescribed in the Fees Regulations.

### Special Examination Conditions

- 5 A candidate who is permanently or temporarily disabled in a manner which affects their ability to undertake examinations under the prescribed examination conditions may, upon production of the appropriate evidence, obtain from one of the following bodies a recommendation which, subject to the approval of the Senate or its representative, will enable that candidate to be examined under conditions which take account of the particular impairment: Student Health; Student Counselling; Disabilities Coordinator or Student Learning Centre.

### Direction of Examinations

- 6 a The examinations will comprise such written, oral and practical examinations as the examiners may determine.
  - b Where degree regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate, upon such conditions as it thinks fit, approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination release to the candidates the whole or part of the examination paper in advance of the sitting of the examination.
  - c Candidates will write out answers to the questions in the presence of a supervisor, who is to be appointed or approved by the Coordinator, Examinations Office in accordance with detailed instructions furnished by the Examinations Office.

### Materials Permitted in the Examination Room

- 7 a A candidate must not bring to an examination any written or printed matter or any blank paper except by direction of the examiner.

*Note: Candidates are to be informed by each Department of the specific books or materials allowed for particular examinations. Details are also explained in the Examination Instructions – Regulations and General Information.*

- b (i) All books and papers not approved for use in the examination, along with any spare personal belongings brought to the examination must be left in such part of the room as the supervisor directs.
  - (ii) The University does not guarantee safekeeping of students' possessions in any circumstances, inside or outside examination rooms. Students concerned about the security of valuable possessions, briefcases etc. during examinations will need to make alternative arrangements for

their care, or ensure that they do not bring these possessions to campus on days when they are required to attend examinations.

- c A candidate may not bring into an examination an electronic calculator except by direction of the examiner. A calculator is defined as an electronic device, capable of processing, storing or retrieving information, which has the primary purpose of mathematical calculation. Any calculator permitted to be taken into an examination must be hand-held, self-powered and noiseless. It must not make use of an audible alarm or facilities for 'wireless' transmission or reception of information.

*General Conditions:*

(i) *other than spare batteries and calculator, supplementary material (e.g. operating manuals) related to the use and operation of the calculator will not be permitted in the examination room*

and

(ii) *in all cases it is the responsibility of the candidate to maintain the operation and operating power of the calculator.*

*Note: Candidates are to be informed by each Department of the specific types of calculators allowed for particular examinations. Details are also explained in the Examination Instructions - Regulations and General Information.*

- d No other electronic device is allowed in the examination room unless specified by the examiner.
- e Cellular telephones are not permitted in an examination room.
- f Audible alarms may not be used on any devices permitted in the examination room.
- g Where specified material or calculators are permitted under items (a) and (c) above, examiners are required to be present at the commencement of the examination to check material brought into the examination room.
- h Candidates will be asked to show their student identity cards on entry for verification purposes and must display them on their desk for the duration of the examination.

#### **Timekeeping of Examinations and Conduct**

- 8 a (i) A candidate will not be allowed to enter the room later than exactly halfway through the period specified for writing the examination.
- (ii) Latecomers will not be given any extra time for the examination.
- b Candidates will be allowed to read their examination papers for a period of not more than 10 minutes before the examination commences but may not use any writing materials until the room supervisor announces that they may do so. During this time and during permitted resting periods, no reference is to be made to any book in an examination where books are allowed.
- c Candidates must write out answers to examination questions in the official script book that is provided by the University

unless otherwise directed by examiners in the exam instructions. No part of the script book may be torn out or removed from the examination room.

- d A candidate must not communicate with an examiner in regard to an examination either in the script book or otherwise, except through the Director, Student Administration.
- e A candidate must not communicate with another candidate in the examination room or copy from another candidate's answers.
- f Candidates will not be readmitted to the examination room after they have left it unless, during the full period of their absence, they have been under approved supervision.
- g All paper used during the examination must be handed to the supervisor before the candidate leaves the examination room.
- h A candidate will not be permitted to leave the examination before 15 minutes after half of the period specified for writing the examination has elapsed and then only with the permission of the supervisor and upon handing in the script.
- i No candidate will be permitted to leave the examination room during the last fifteen minutes of the examination.
- j A candidate must not continue writing an answer after the supervisor has announced the expiration of time. In no circumstances is any time over and above the time allotted to any course to be allowed to candidates for reading over their scripts or making any amendment or addition to scripts.

#### **Misconduct**

- 9 a Any complaint that a candidate has committed an examination offence will be referred to the Senate to determine whether the complaint should be investigated. For the purposes of this Regulation an 'examination offence' includes any breach of rules relating to the conduct of examinations and any dishonest practice occurring in the preparation or submission of any work (whether in the course of an examination or not) which counts towards the attainment of a pass in any subject, or otherwise occurs in connection with any examination.
- b If the Senate determines that a complaint against a candidate should be investigated, it will refer that complaint to the Discipline Committee.
- c Where the Discipline Committee is satisfied that a Candidate:
- (i) has committed a breach of these regulations
- or
- (ii) has been notified that he or she has failed to comply with any Statute or any other Regulation of the University and (where the failure is capable of remedy) has been given a reasonable time to remedy the failure without having done so then the Discipline Committee may:

- (iii) suspend for such time as it may prescribe the release to the candidate of the results of any examination
  - (iv) decline to credit to the candidate's programme any course or courses
  - (v) cancel any pass with which that candidate may have been credited in the course or examination in respect of which the breach occurred
  - (vi) disqualify the candidate from sitting any examination for such period as it may prescribe
  - (vii) impose any one or more of these penalties.
- d The Discipline Committee may also impose, in the circumstances stated in clause 9b of this Regulation, the following penalties prescribed in clause 9d of the Disciplinary Statute, that is to say:
- (i) a fine not exceeding \$1,000
  - (ii) a limitation or prohibition on attendance at any Class or Classes or the use and enjoyment of any of the Facilities
  - (iii) a suspension from attendance at the University or any Class or Classes for such a period as it thinks fit
  - (iv) cancellation of Enrolment of a student at the University or in a programme or training at the University
  - (v) a penalty in the form of requiring the offender to remove any defacement to University Premises or property or to render services to the benefit of the University or its students
  - (vi) any one or more of these penalties.
- e A candidate upon whom a penalty is imposed under these regulations may apply for a review pursuant to section 11 of the Disciplinary Statute.

### Missed Examinations

- 10 a A candidate who has missed an examination by reporting for it at the wrong time cannot sit that examination at another time except for candidates enrolled for Master's or Bachelor's Honours degrees for whom special arrangements may be made.
- b Candidates other than those enrolled for Master's or Bachelor's Honours degrees may apply for a special pass in the missed examination by completing the appropriate form and submitting it to the Director, Student Administration not later than one week after the missed examination.
- c In considering a special pass application, the Senate or its representative may take into account the candidate's work in that course or in that subject or a particular element of hardship as it sees fit.
- temporary illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond their control, if the following conditions are satisfied:
- (i) They must be enrolled for the course.
  - (ii) The application form must be submitted to the University Health and Counselling Service within one week of the date that the examination affected took place, or if more than one examination has been affected, then within one week of the last of those examinations.
  - (iii) The medical certificate or statement of exceptional circumstances on the application form must be completed in accordance with regulations 11b and 11c below.
- b In the case of illness or injury, a registered medical practitioner must:
- (i) State when the practitioner saw the candidate. This should be on the day of the examination, or if this is not possible, on the day before or the day after. For impaired preparation, the medical certificate should cover a period within the fortnight immediately preceding the examination, unless special circumstances apply.
  - (ii) Give sufficient detail of the illness or injury to show clearly that the candidate was not responsible for the illness or injury.
  - (iii) State whether, in the practitioner's opinion, the illness or injury of the candidate at the time either prevented the candidate from taking the examination, or was likely to have seriously impaired the candidate's preparation for it or performance in it.
- c In the case of exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control, the statement of circumstances must be supported by suitable evidence.
- d The application will be considered by the Senate or its representative only if the medical or counselling adviser to the University reviews the evidence submitted and confirms that:
- (i) the candidate was not responsible for the illness or injury or exceptional circumstances
- and
- (ii) because of the illness or injury or exceptional circumstances the candidate was either prevented from being present at the examination or the candidate's preparation for or performance in the examination was likely to have been seriously impaired.
- e The candidate may be granted an aegrotat or compassionate grade by the Senate or its representative if the above conditions are satisfied and there is a recommendation for an aegrotat or compassionate grade from the appropriate Head of Department or Dean.
- f To make a recommendation for an aegrotat or compassionate grade, the Head of Department or Dean must certify that:

### Aegrotat and Compassionate Consideration

- 11 a An application for Aegrotat or Compassionate Consideration may be made by candidates who have been prevented from being present at an examination or who consider that their preparation for or performance in an examination has been seriously impaired by

- (i) the candidate's coursework in the course was well above the minimum pass standard or, where relevant, the minimum standard for a class of Honours
- and
- (ii) for a candidate who sat the examination, the mark attained in the examination was lower than expected taking into account the candidate's coursework in that course
- and
- (iii) the candidate is in their opinion clearly worthy of a pass in the course or, where relevant, to be awarded First or Second Class Honours.
- g If a recommendation is required for a course with no coursework, the Head of Department or Dean may take into account the coursework and examination performance in any other courses for the same degree, where this is available to them.
- h When considering the application, the Senate or its representative may take into account the candidate's work in other courses, or approve an aegrotat or compassionate grade other than that recommended, as it sees fit.
- i The above is subject to the restrictions that:
  - (i) Honours may not be awarded to a candidate who has been granted an aegrotat or compassionate grade under this Regulation in respect of more than one third of the total points value of the degree or diploma.
  - (ii) A candidate for a master's degree in which Honours is available may:
    - (a) instead of applying for aegrotat or compassionate consideration, apply to sit or resit all of the courses affected
    - or
    - (b) apply for aegrotat or compassionate consideration in courses worth up to the points limit specified above, and to sit or resit any other affected courses in order to retain eligibility for Honours.
- j A candidate who has applied for Aegrotat or Compassionate Consideration in any course may, in exceptional circumstances and on a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned, be granted permission by the Senate or its representative to take another examination in that course.
- k The provisions of Regulation 11 apply to:
  - (i) Any final written examination presented for a course for a degree, diploma, or certificate.
  - (ii) Any final practical examination presented for a course for a degree, diploma, or certificate, other than a Music Performance examination.
- l The provisions of Regulation 11 apply (with necessary changes) to:
  - (i) The final submission in each year of

work for the practical subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, or the Degree of Master of Fine Arts.

- (ii) The final submission in each semester of studio work for the Degrees of Bachelor of Architectural Studies and Bachelor of Architecture as if such final submission were an examination and as if the date upon which such final submission was due were the date of examination.

*Note: The fees for Aegrotat and Compassionate Consideration are listed under the Fees Regulations in this Calendar.*

### Reconsideration

- 12 a Following the decision of the Senate on an application for Aegrotat or Compassionate Consideration, the candidate may apply to the Director, Student Administration for reconsideration of that decision.
- b An application for reconsideration must be made:
  - (i) in writing to the Director, Student Administration no later than four weeks after the student is notified of the Senate's decision
  - and
  - (ii) must be accompanied by further evidence in support of the application for aegrotat or compassionate consideration.

### Written Tests

- 13 Where a percentage of the marks awarded for a course is allocated to a prior written test, and candidates are prevented by temporary illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond their control from sitting the test, or consider that their performance in the test has been seriously impaired by any of those causes, then, if the conditions in Regulations 11c to 11f (with the necessary changes) are complied with, the candidates may on application and at the discretion of the Senate:
  - a be permitted to sit another written test
  - or
  - b receive a mark for the test based on the average of marks awarded for other coursework
  - or
  - c take a viva voce examination
  - or
  - d have the percentage of marks allocated to the test reallocated to the examination.

### Results Determination

- 14 In determining a candidate's result the examiners:
  - a may take into consideration the work done by the candidate during the course
  - b are to give due weight to reports on practical work done by the candidate wherever these are required
  - c are to include marks obtained by the candidate where the Senate has allotted a percentage of marks for on-course assessment in that course.

**Grades and Marks****15 Pass Marks**

- a Bachelor's Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates a pass mark is 50% or over.  
 b Master's Degrees a pass mark is 50% or over. A pass is to be obtained in each of the components of the degree.

**16 Pass Grades**

There are 10 pass grades:

- A+ high first  
 A clear first  
 A- bare first  
 B+ high second  
 B clear second  
 B- bare second  
 C+ sound pass  
 C pass  
 C- marginal pass  
 Conceded pass

**17 Fail Grades**

There are three fail grades:

- D+ Marginal Fail  
 D Clear Fail  
 D- Poor Fail

**18 Conceded Passes**

- a Conceded passes apply only to courses taken towards a Bachelor's degree (other than a Bachelor's (Honours) degree) or toward a diploma comprising not fewer than 28 points.  
 b A candidate may, at the discretion of the relevant Faculty, be considered for a conceded pass. No application by the candidate is required.  
 c A conceded pass, if granted, may not be declined by the candidate.  
 d A conceded pass will apply only to the programme for which it is awarded and may not be transferred or credited to any other programme.  
 e A candidate granted a conceded pass in a course who wishes to take that course again may do so only for Certificate of Proficiency.

**f For the degrees of:**

- BA BMusEd  
 BCom BProp  
 BEd BSc  
 BEd(Tchg) BTheol  
 BHSc LLB  
 BMus

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Examiners for the Faculty concerned, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has the power to award where such power is authorised by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions.

One course to a maximum value of 4 points may be conceded provided:

- (i) the concession will allow the student to complete the degree  
 (ii) the course conceded is not a course counting towards the student's major requirements

- (iii) the student obtained a grade of D+ in the course  
 (iv) the result was achieved in the last two semesters of enrolment, one of which may be a summer school.

*Note: a conceded pass will not be given for a course failed at another university.*

**g For the degrees of:**

- BArch BE  
 BAS BFA  
 BPlan BOptom  
 BTech

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Examiners for the Faculty concerned, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has the power to award where such power is authorised by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (i) that by the award of a conceded pass the student will complete a Part or all courses enrolled for in that year

and

- (ii) a maximum of 3 points per Part and a maximum of 3 points in any one academic year may be conceded

and

- (iii) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass in any course the student must have achieved a grade of D+ and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in that year.

**h Diplomas**

For all diplomas comprising 28 points or more a conceded pass may be awarded by a meeting of the Examiners for the Faculty concerned, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has power to award where such power is authorised by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions.

One course to a maximum value of 3 points may be conceded provided:

- (i) that the conceded pass may only be awarded where it would permit the student to complete his/her diploma

and

- (ii) that the student has obtained a grade of D+ in that course.

**i Conjoint Degrees**

For all conjoint degrees consideration for the award of conceded passes will be in accordance with the provisions for the particular degree as set out in (f) and (g) of this section.

**j Medical and Health Sciences****(i) For the degree of BHB, Parts I, II and III:**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Committee of BHB Examiners, provided that the Dean has the power to award where such power is authorised by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (a) that by award of a conceded pass the student will complete that Part

and

- (b) a maximum of 3 points in any one Part be conceded

and

- (c) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass the student must have achieved a grade of D+ in that course (or courses) and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in that Part.

Where a candidate has a fail grade of D or D+ in a course (or courses) and the Examiners deem that the failure(s) may be redeemable by satisfactory completion of additional work then a pass in that Part may be awarded under the following provisions:

- (d) that the award of a grade for that course (or courses) be deferred until a prescribed course of additional study and/or examination be completed to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and

- (e) deferred results be limited to a maximum of 3 points in any Part

and

- (f) that to be eligible for a deferred result a student must achieve an overall GPA of 2.5 or better

and

- (g) that the reassessed grade in that course (or courses) be no greater than a grade of C+.

(ii) **For the degree of MBChB:**

Conceded passes in components of each course will be awarded by a meeting of the MBChB Examiners for the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences, provided that the Dean of the Faculty has the power to award where such power is authorised by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

**Parts I and II**

The student is required to pass each Part as a whole. Where a student has not achieved a pass in a particular component or components of a Part the Examiners may:

- (a) withhold the result pending the completion of specified additional work and/or examination to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and/or

- (b) grant a conceded pass for a single component of the Part.

If in the opinion of the Examiners for MBChB a particular weakness in a component or components is such that it cannot be addressed by the setting of additional work and/or examination, the student will fail that Part.

**Part III**

The components of this Part are assessed departmentally during clinical attachments. A candidate will be deemed to have completed Part III successfully if passing assessments from each of the periods of that academic year are obtained. If a candidate fails to obtain a

pass assessment a further period of assignment to that department will be required. This will involve postponement of qualification beyond the end of the Sixth Year.

(iii) **For the degree of BNurs, Part I:**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Committee of BNurs Examiners, provided that the Dean has the power to award where such power is authorised by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (a) that by award of a conceded pass the student will complete that Part

and

- (b) a maximum of 3 points in the Part be conceded

and

- (c) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass the student must have achieved a grade of D+ in that course (or courses) and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in the Part.

Where a candidate has a fail grade of D or D+ in a course (or courses) and the Examiners deem that the failure(s) may be redeemable by satisfactory completion of additional work then a pass in that Part may be awarded under the following provisions:

- (d) that the award of a grade for that course (or courses) be deferred until a prescribed course of additional study and/or examination be completed to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and

- (e) deferred results be limited to a maximum of 4 points in any Part

and

- (f) that to be eligible for a deferred result a student must achieve an overall GPA of 2.5 or better

and

- (g) that the reassessed grade in that course (or courses) be no greater than a grade of C+.

(iv) **For the degree of BPharm:**

Conceded passes will be awarded by a meeting of the Committee of BPharm Examiners, provided that the Dean has the power to award where such power is authorised by the Examiners, in accordance with the following provisions:

- (a) that by award of a conceded pass the student will complete that Part

and

- (b) a maximum of 2 points in any one Part be conceded

and

- (c) that to be eligible for the award of a conceded pass the student must have achieved a grade of D+ in that

course (or courses) and an overall GPA of 2.5 or better in that Part

- (d) a maximum of two conceded passes are awarded for the degree.

Where a candidate has a fail grade of D or D+ in a course (or courses) and the Examiners deem that the failure(s) may be redeemable by satisfactory completion of additional work then a pass in that Part may be awarded under the following provisions:

- (e) that the award of a grade for that course (or courses) be deferred until a prescribed course of additional study and/or examination be completed to the satisfaction of the Examiners

and

- (f) deferred results be limited to a maximum of 4 points in any Part

and

- (g) that to be eligible for a deferred result a student must achieve an overall GPA of 2.5 or better

and

- (h) that the reassessed grade in that course (or courses) be no greater than a grade of C+.

### Deferred Results

#### 19 Bachelor of Optometry

Where a weakness occurs in the clinical practice component in certain double semester Stage III and Stage IV courses, the result of the course or courses will be deferred. In these circumstances, the candidate will be required to complete additional work to the satisfaction of the examiners. The work will be examined in the following February.

### Recount of Marks

- 20 By making application within four weeks from the date of the mailing of their official result of the examinations, any candidate sitting an examination may have the marks awarded for their examination script recounted. A recount of marks covers a careful rechecking of the marks recorded by the examiner and ensures that no answer, or any portion of an answer, submitted by a candidate has been overlooked. No information relative to the application will be placed before the examiner. Candidates may apply for a recount of marks for written examinations only.

*Note: For the prescribed fee for an Application for Recount of Marks see the Fees Schedule in this Calendar. The fee is not refundable.*

### Availability of Scripts

- 21 By making application not later than three months after the date of the examination, a candidate may obtain a photocopy of their examinations script.

*Note: Examination scripts will normally be retained only for approximately four months after the examination period and thereafter be destroyed.*

### Theses and Dissertations

- 22 Where a thesis or dissertation is required as part of an examination the following conditions apply.

#### a **Diplomas, Bachelor's and Honours Degrees**

Binding requirements for Diplomas, Bachelor's and Honours Degrees will be defined by the Faculty.

#### b **Master's Degrees**

Details of the submission and binding requirements for a thesis or dissertation for a master's degree are listed in the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

#### c **Degree of Doctor of Philosophy**

- (i) Details of the submission and binding requirements for PhD theses are contained in the PhD regulations and guidelines.

- (ii) On completion of the examination, the candidate is to submit three hard bound copies of the thesis to the Graduate Centre. A short abstract not exceeding 350 words is to be bound into each copy of the thesis. The Graduate Centre is to deposit two copies with the University Library. The disposal of the third copy shall be at the discretion of the Head of the relevant Department.

- 23 In any thesis or dissertation, unacknowledged copying or plagiarism is not acceptable and is treated as an examination offence.

*Notes:*

- a *In the case of PhD theses, once the degree has been awarded a further unbound copy of the thesis and abstract may be supplied to the University Library if the candidate wishes to have the thesis published by University Microfilms International. Information regarding this will be forwarded to the candidate when the degree is awarded.*
- b *Candidates are recommended to obtain the booklet Guide to the Presentation of Theses from the Library before proceeding with the typing and binding of the thesis or dissertation. A clear, legible type style is to be used.*
- c *Authors of theses or dissertations have a right to impose conditions restricting the reproduction of their work for such a period as they may stipulate without however curtailing the University Librarian's right to make and supply copies thereof in terms of Section 56 of the Copyright Act (1994).*
- d *Where a thesis contains commercially sensitive material the author may request from the Senate or its representative a restriction of access to the thesis for a limited period. Such a period shall normally be for one year but may be renewed for a further year.*
- e *Where it is suspected that a thesis or dissertation contains defamatory material the University Librarian may restrict access to the thesis or dissertation subject to confirmation by the Library Committee.*
- f *Supervisors are requested to notify the University Library when a thesis or dissertation is submitted if it is believed to contain material which could be considered defamatory.*

g Where a thesis or dissertation has been presented as part of a degree which:

(i) has been awarded but the thesis or dissertation itself is failed, that thesis or dissertation is not to be deposited in the Library

(ii) has not been awarded, the thesis or dissertation is not to be deposited in the

Library irrespective of whether the thesis or dissertation itself has been given a pass or fail grade.

#### References to the Senate

24 For the purposes of these regulations 'Senate' indicates any duly empowered delegate of the Senate.

---

## General Statutes and Regulations

- 39 Conferment of Academic Qualifications and Academic Dress Statute 1992
- 41 The Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991
- 42 The Honorary Degrees and Awards Statute 1998
- 43 Guidelines for the Award of Honorary Degrees and Fellowships
- 44 Information Technology Systems and Services
- 44 Computer System Statute
- 45 Library Regulations

# GENERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

## Conferment of Academic Qualifications and Academic Dress Statute 1992

- 1 Every degree and every diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded in pursuance of a resolution of the Council and at a meeting of the Council.
- 2 Every degree and every diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded by the Chancellor, or if they are absent from the meeting or incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, by the Vice-Chancellor or Pro-Chancellor. The Council may also authorise another person to confer degrees or award diplomas at a particular ceremony.
- 3 Every recipient of a degree shall receive a certificate in appropriate form, under the Common Seal of the University, that their Degree has been conferred and stating the class of Honours (if any awarded).
- 4 Every diploma shall be in appropriate form under the Common Seal of the University.
- 5 At a specified time or times each year the Council shall meet in Convocation of the University to confer Degrees and award Diplomas. Persons wishing to have their degree conferred or diploma awarded (whether in person or in absentia) at such a ceremony shall make application to the Registrar not later than the date specified in the Calendar for this purpose.
- 6 The form of words to be used by the Chancellor, the Vice-Chancellor, Pro-Chancellor or such other person as may have been appointed by the Council to confer degrees shall be as follows: *"By the authority vested in me by resolution of the University of Auckland Council I [NAME] confer the degrees stated upon those who, within their several faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University."*
- 7 The form of words to be used by the Chancellor, the Vice-Chancellor, Pro-Chancellor or such other person as may have been appointed by the Council to award diplomas shall be as follows: *"By the authority vested in me by resolution of the University of Auckland Council I [NAME] award the diplomas stated upon those who, within their several faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University."*
- 8 The academic dress worn by members of the University at any public ceremony of the University shall be the costume appropriate to their degree, but doctors may on special occasions wear a scarlet gown and graduates admitted ad eundem statum may wear the academic costume of their own university. Unless the holder of a diploma is also a graduate the only academic dress they may wear is an undergraduate gown and the scarf appropriate to their diploma.
- 9 The academic costumes of the University of Auckland shall be as follows:
  - a The robe for the Chancellor of the University is a blue damask gown with facings of gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms of the University. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold lace and tassel. The robe for the Pro-Chancellor is a black gown with facings of blue silk and gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold tassel. The robe for the Vice-Chancellor is a blue silk gown with facings of silver lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with silver lace and tassel. The robe for the Registrar is a gown of black silk with facings of blue silk, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with a black silk tassel. The robe for the Kaumatua and the Kuia is the Fellows gown of the colour University blue to be worn with a black scarf lined with the colour University blue bearing on each lapel the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with a black silk tassel.
  - b The gown for a Bachelor's degree is as for the Cambridge Bachelor of Arts. The gown for a Master's degree is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for every degree is the size and shape as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for a Bachelor's degree is lined with coloured satin and bordered with white fur. The hood for a Master's degree is lined with coloured satin only. The hoods for the Bachelor's and Master's degrees are as follows:
 

<b>Architecture Property Planning and Fine Arts</b>	
BAS, MAS	lemon lining
BArch, MArch	lemon lining; two 25mm lemon bands, 25mm apart, on the outside edge of the hood
MBldgSc	lemon lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
BFA, MFA	gold lining
BProp, MProp	silver grey lining
BProp(Hons)	silver grey lining; 25mm silver grey band on the outside edge of the hood
BPlan, MPlan	chartreuse green lining
MPlanPrac	chartreuse green lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
BVA	gold lining; 25mm jade green band on the edge of the satin
<b>Arts</b>	
BA, MA,	pink lining
BA(Hons)	pink lining; 25mm pink band on the outside edge of the hood
MCPA	pink lining; 25mm white band on the edge of the satin
BMusEd	emerald green lining; 25mm white band on the edge of the satin
MLitt	pink lining; 75mm pink band on the outside edge of the hood
<b>Business and Economics</b>	
BBIM	apricot lining

BCom, MCom	orange lining
BCom(Hons)	orange lining; 25mm orange band on the outside edge of the hood
MComLaw	orange lining; 25mm light blue band on the edge of the satin
MintBus	orange lining; 25mm light brown band on the edge of the satin
MMgt	orange lining; 25mm tan band on the edge of the satin
MTaxS	orange lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
MBA	burgundy lining
<b>Education</b>	
BEd, MEd	emerald green lining
BEd(Tchg)	emerald green lining
<b>Engineering</b>	
BE, ME	dark violet lining
MEngSt	dark violet lining; 25mm light brown band on the edge of the satin
MEMgt	dark violet lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
<b>Interfaculty</b>	
BScEd	emerald green lining; 25mm dark blue band on the edge of the satin
BTech	dark blue lining; 25mm taupe band on the edge of the satin
MEdMgt	emerald green lining; 25mm orange band on the edge of the satin
MHealthMgt	lilac lining; 25mm orange band on the edge of the satin
MOR	dark violet lining; 25mm taupe band on the edge of the satin
<b>Laws</b>	
LLB, LLM	light blue lining
LLB(Hons)	light blue lining; 25mm light blue band on the outside edge of the hood
LLM(Envir)	light blue lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
<b>Medical and Health Sciences</b>	
BHSc, MHSc	lilac lining
BHB, MHB, MMedSc	crimson lining
BHB(Hons)	crimson lining; 25 mm crimson band on the outside edge of the hood
MBChB	crimson lining; two 25mm crimson bands, 25mm apart, on the outside edge of the hood
BNurs	navy blue lining
BNurs(Hons)	navy blue lining; 25mm navy blue band on the outside edge of the hood
MAud	lilac lining; 25mm dark brown band on the edge of the satin
MPH	lilac lining; 25mm crimson band on the edge of the satin
<b>Music</b>	
BMus, MMus	white lining
BMus(Hons)	white lining, 25mm white band on the outside edge of the hood
<b>Science</b>	
BSc, MSc	dark blue lining
BSc(Hons)	dark blue lining; 25mm dark blue band on the outside edge of the hood
BOptom	blue-green lining
<b>Joint Board of Studies</b>	
BTheol, MTheol	forest green lining

c The hood for a Bachelor with Honours degree is as for the relevant Bachelor's degree, with the addition of a 25mm ribbon band on the outside of the hood, alongside the fur. The colour of the ribbon band is the same colour as the lining.

The hood for a Bachelor's degree for which the prerequisite is another Bachelor's degree

within the same Faculty, is as for a Bachelor with Honours degree, with the addition of a second 25mm band at a distance of 25mm from the first band. Both bands are the same colour as the lining.

Where there is more than one Master's or Bachelor's degree within a Faculty, the hoods for such degrees are lined with satin in the colour approved by Council. The first such degree will have no ribbon band, but subsequent degrees of this nature will be distinguished by the addition of a 25mm band on the edge of the satin. The colour of the ribbon band for the first subsequent degree within a Faculty will be dark brown, and any further subsequent degrees of this nature within the Faculty will be in another colour which is not taupe, nor unless otherwise approved, the colour used to line the hoods for any other degree.

The hood for an Interfaculty Bachelor's degree or Master's degree is lined with the colour of the Faculty primarily responsible for the degree, with the addition of a 25mm ribbon band on the edge of the satin. Where there are two Faculties involved, the colour of the ribbon band is the colour of the hood lining of the second Faculty. Where more than two Faculties are involved, the colour of the ribbon band is taupe.

d The gown for the degrees of Doctor of Clinical Psychology, Doctor of Education, Doctor of Fine Arts, Doctor of Medicine and Doctor of Music is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts with the addition of facings of 50mm wide satin. The hood is made wholly of satin and this and the facings of the gown are of the following colours for the different degrees:

<i>Clinical Psychology</i>	dark blue
<i>Education</i>	emerald green
<i>Fine Arts</i>	gold
<i>Medicine</i>	crimson
<i>Music</i>	white

e The gown for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts, with the addition of 100mm satin facings, made up of 75mm of scarlet edged with 25mm of gold. The hood is made wholly of scarlet satin.

f The gown for the degrees of Doctor of Engineering, Doctor of Laws, Doctor of Literature, and Doctor of Science is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts, but is made of black silk, or scarlet silk or cloth. The hood is made wholly of satin, and are of the following colours for the different degrees:

<i>Engineering</i>	dark violet
<i>Law</i>	light blue
<i>Literature</i>	pink
<i>Science</i>	dark blue

g The cap for all graduates other than Doctors and the officers of the University is a black trencher with a tassel. The cap for all Doctors other than officers of the University is as for the full dress Cambridge Doctor of Philosophy, namely a round black velvet bonnet with a gold cord around the crown ending in tassels.

*Note: The colour of the lining of the hood for the degree of Master of Philosophy is that of the Master's degree to which the MPhil relates.*

- h. The scarf for a diploma is to be made of the same black material as the gown with a band of colour in plain satin as in existing hoods down the centre edge. The colour is to match the degree cluster most closely associated with the diploma. The lining is to be the same colour as the band. The width of the scarf at the base is to be 140mm in total, the black being 100mm and the colour 40mm, and narrowing behind the neck. A band of the lining colour is to be stepped down from the inside edge to the outside edge of the black material at the base of each side of the scarf. The diploma scarves are as follows:

<i>Architecture</i>	lemon band and lining
<i>Property</i>	silver grey band and lining
<i>Planning</i>	chartreuse green band and lining
<i>Arts</i>	pink band and lining
<i>Commerce</i>	burgundy band and lining
<i>Education</i>	emerald green band and lining
<i>Engineering</i>	dark violet band and lining
<i>Fine Arts</i>	gold band and lining
<i>Law</i>	light blue band and lining
<i>Music</i>	white band and lining
<i>Medicine</i>	crimson band and lining
<i>Science</i>	dark blue band and lining
<i>Theology</i>	forest green band and lining

- i. The gown for the honorary degrees of Doctor of Engineering, Doctor of Laws, Doctor of Literature, Doctor of Music, Doctor of

Science and Doctor of the University of Auckland is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts, but is made of scarlet satin. The hood is made wholly of satin, and is one of the following colours for the different degrees:

<i>Engineering</i>	dark violet
<i>Laws</i>	light blue
<i>Literature</i>	pink
<i>Music</i>	white
<i>Science</i>	dark blue
<i>University of Auckland</i>	University blue

- 10 The gown for a Fellow of the University of Auckland will be an Undergraduate Gown of the colour University Blue bearing on the left front lapel the coat of arms of the University. No hood or cap shall be worn.

### Availability of Academic Dress

The Auckland Branch of the New Zealand Federation of Graduate Women owns a stock of Academic Gowns, Hoods, Scarves, Trenchers and Tudor Bonnets. These are available for hire and sale Tuesday to Thursday from 10.00am until 2.30pm throughout the year. Details may be obtained from the Academic Dress Hire, 35 The Strand, Parnell, phone 379 6108. A student completing the requirements for a degree or diploma will receive information regarding the hire of academic dress for the Graduation Ceremony with their Application for Conferment of Degree Form.

## The Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991

At the University of Auckland this 18th day of February 1991.

Pursuant to section 194(1)(g) of the Education Act 1989, as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990, the Council of the University of Auckland, after consulting the Senate, hereby makes the following statute:

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Degrees and Diplomas Statute 1991.
- 2 The Council shall have power to confer the following degrees on any person who completes a course of study in accordance with the provisions of the regulations for that qualification.

Bachelor of Architectural Studies	BAS
Bachelor of Architecture	BArch
Bachelor of Arts	BA
Bachelor of Arts (Honours)	BA(Hons)
Bachelor of Business and Information Management	BBIM
Bachelor of Commerce	BCom
Bachelor of Commerce (Honours)	BCom(Hons)
Bachelor of Education (Teaching)	BEd(Tchg)
Bachelor of Engineering	BE
Bachelor of Fine Arts	BFA
Bachelor of Health Science	BHSc
Bachelor of Human Biology	BHB
Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours)	BHB(Hons)
Bachelor of Laws	LLB
Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery	MBChB
Bachelor of Music	BMus
Bachelor of Music (Honours)	BMus(Hons)
Bachelor of Music Education	BMusEd

Bachelor of Nursing	BNurs
Bachelor of Nursing (Honours)	BNurs(Hons)
Bachelor of Optometry	BOptom
Bachelor of Pharmacy	BPharm
Bachelor of Planning	BPlan
Bachelor of Property	BProp
Bachelor of Property (Honours)	BProp(Hons)
Bachelor of Science	BSc
Bachelor of Science (Honours)	BSc(Hons)
Bachelor of Technology	BTech
Bachelor of Theology	BTheol
Bachelor of Visual Arts	BVA
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Commerce	BA/BCom
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Engineering	BA/BE
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Fine Arts	BA/BFA
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Health Science	BA/BHSc
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Music	BA/BMus
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Property	BA/BProp
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Science	BA/BSc
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Theology	BA/BTheol
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Laws	BA/LLB
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BA/LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Education (Teaching)	BCom/BEEd(Tchg)
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Engineering	BCom/BE
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Health Science	BCom/BHSc
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Music	BCom/BMus
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Property	BCom/BProp
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Science	BCom/BSc
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Laws	BCom/LLB
Bachelor of Commerce/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BCom/LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Education (Teaching)/Bachelor of Science	BEd(Tchg)/BSc
Bachelor of Engineering/Bachelor of Property	BE/BProp
Bachelor of Engineering/Bachelor of Science	BE/BSc
Bachelor of Health Sciences/Bachelor of Laws	BHSc/LLB

Bachelor of Music/Bachelor of Science	BMus/BSc
Bachelor of Music/Bachelor of Theology	BMus/BTheol
Bachelor of Property/Bachelor of Science	BProp/BSc
Bachelor of Property/Bachelor of Laws	BProp/LLB
Bachelor of Property/ Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BProp/ LLB(Hons)
Bachelor of Science/Bachelor of Theology	BSc/BTheol
Bachelor of Science/Bachelor of Laws	BSc/LLB
Bachelor of Science/Bachelor of Laws (Honours)	BSc/LLB(Hons)
Master of Architectural Studies	MAS
Master of Architecture	MArch
Master of Arts	MA
Master of Audiology	MAud
Master of Building Science	MBldgSc
Master of Business Administration	MBA
Master of Commerce	MCom
Master of Commercial Law	MComLaw
Master of Creative and Performing Arts	MCPA
Master of Education	MEd
Master of Educational Management	MEdMgt
Master of Engineering	ME
Master of Engineering Management	MEMgt
Master of Engineering Studies	MEngSt
Master of Fine Arts	MFA
Master of Health Management	MHealthMgt
Master of Health Sciences	MHSc
Master of International Business	MIntBus
Master of Laws	LLM
Master of Laws in Environmental Law	LLM(Envir)
Master of Literature	MLitt
Master of Management	MMgt
Master of Medical Science	MMedSc
Master of Music	MMus
Master of Nursing	MNurs
Master of Operations Research	MOR
Master of Pharmacy Practice	MPharmPrac
Master of Planning	MPlan
Master of Planning Practice	MPlanPrac
Master of Professional Studies	MProfStuds
Master of Property	MProp
Master of Public Health	MPH
Master of Science	MSc
Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice	MSLTPrac
Master of Taxation Studies	MTaxS
Master of Theology	MTheol
Doctor of Clinical Psychology	DClinPsy
Doctor of Education	ED
Doctor of Engineering	DEng
Doctor of Fine Arts	DocFA
Doctor of Laws	LLD
Doctor of Literature	LittD
Doctor of Medicine	MD
Doctor of Music	DMus
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Science	DSc

and to award the following diplomas:

Diploma in Counselling	DipCouns
Diploma in Engineering	DipEng
Diploma in Engineering (Transportation)	DipEng(Transp)
Diploma in Environmental Management	DipEnvirMgt
Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology	DipGeothermTech
Diploma in Mathematics Education	DipMathsEd

Diploma in Music	DipMus
Diploma in Music (Advanced)	DipMus(Adv)
Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology	DipObstMedGyn
Diploma in Occupational Medicine	DipOccupMed
Diploma in Operations Research	DipOR
Diploma in Paediatrics	DipPaed
Diploma in Performing Arts	DipPerformArts
Diploma in Professional Ethics	DipProfEthics
Diploma in Public Health	DipPH
Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology	DipPulpPaper
Diploma in Science Education	DipSciEd
Diploma in Teaching (Primary)	DipTchg(Primary)
Diploma in Teaching (Secondary)	DipTchg(Sec)
Diploma in Technology Education	DipTechEd
Graduate Diploma in Arts	GradDipArts
Graduate Diploma in Arts Management	GradDipArtsMgt
Graduate Diploma in Business	GradDipBus
Graduate Diploma in Commerce	GradDipCom
Graduate Diploma in Education	GradDipEd
Graduate Diploma in Theology	GradDipTheol
Graduate Diploma in Translation Studies	GradDip TranslationStud

and to award the following Postgraduate diplomas:

Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology	PGDipAppPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Arts	PGDipArts
Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science	PGDipBldgSc
Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology	PGDipClnPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce	PGDipCom
Postgraduate Diploma in Community Emergency Medicine	PGDipComEmMed
Postgraduate Diploma in Education	PGDipEd
Postgraduate Diploma in Educational Psychology	PGDipEdPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts	PGDipFA
Postgraduate Diploma in Forensic Science	PGDipForensic
Postgraduate Diploma in Geriatric Medicine	PGDipGeriatricMed
Postgraduate Diploma in Health Psychology	PGDipHealthPsych
Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences	PGDipHSc
Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching	PGDipLT
Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies	PGDipLS
Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science	PGDipMedSc
Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice	PGDipPharmPrac
Postgraduate Diploma in Property	PGDipProp
Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health	PGDipPH
Postgraduate Diploma in Science	PGDipSci
Postgraduate Diploma in Sports Medicine	PGDipSportMed

3 The Council shall have the power to confer the following Honorary Degrees in accordance with the provisions of the Honorary Degrees Regulations 1998.

- Doctor of Engineering
- Doctor of Literature
- Doctor of Laws
- Doctor of Music
- Doctor of Science
- Doctor of the University of Auckland
- A Master's Degree in any Faculty of the University

4 The Degrees Statute 1990 is hereby repealed.

## The Honorary Degrees and Awards Statute 1998

Pursuant to sections 192 and 194 of the Education Act 1989 and section 20 of the University of Auckland Act 1961 the Council of the University makes the following statute:

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Honorary Degrees and Awards Statute 1998 and shall come into force on the 16 March 1998.
- 2 The Council may at its discretion:
  - a Confer the following honorary degrees:

- Doctor of Laws
- Doctor of Science
- Doctor of Literature
- Doctor of Music
- Doctor of Engineering
- Doctor of the University of Auckland
- A Master's Degree in any Faculty of the University; and
- b Award the title "Fellow of the University" ("Fellowship").

- 3 The University Honours Committee of the Council shall consider nominations and make recommendations to the Council for the conferring of any Honorary Degree or Fellowship under this Statute.
- 4 The University Honours Committee shall henceforth consist of:
- a the Chancellor who shall be the Chair of the Committee
  - b the Vice-Chancellor
  - c the Pro-Chancellor
  - d one member appointed by the Council
  - e two members of Senate elected by the Senate
  - f the President of the Auckland University Students' Association.
- 5 The Council may, from time to time, approve guidelines for the award of Honorary Degrees and Fellowships and, in making its recommendations, the University Honours Committee shall ensure that it complies with all those guidelines.
- 6 The Council may also, in its discretion and on the recommendation of the University Honours Committee:
- a award the title "Professor Emeritus" to a retired member of the academic staff who held the office of a Professor of the University immediately before his or her retirement
  - b award the title "University Librarian Emeritus" to a retired member of staff who held the office of University Librarian immediately before his or her retirement and who has a record of long and distinguished service to the University as the University Librarian.
- 7.1 The University Honours Committee may recommend to the Council, for the conferment of an Honorary Doctor's Degree:
- a Any person who:
    - (i) is academically distinguished, or has made a distinguished contribution in creative or artistic fields, and has, or has had, some intimate connection with the University
    - or
    - (ii) has shown strong interest in the well-being of the University by benefactions, or in other appropriate ways
    - or
    - (iii) is of international repute and is visiting, or has visited the University in an official capacity
  - b Any other person approved for the purpose after consultation with Education Committee on behalf of the Senate.
- 7.2 The University Honours Committee may recommend to the Council, for the conferment of an Honorary Master's Degree:
- a any member of the general staff who has given long and distinguished service to the University
  - or
  - b any member of the academic staff who does not hold a degree
  - or
  - c any other person approved for the purpose after consultation with Education Committee on behalf of the Senate.
- 7.3 The University Honours Committee may recommend to the Council, for the conferment of a Fellowship, a person who:
- a has made a unique and valuable contribution to the University
  - and
  - b is not a permanent member of staff.
- 8 A nomination for the conferment of an Honorary Degree or a Fellowship may be made by any three persons each of whom is a member of the Council or of the Senate or of both these bodies; and shall be made confidentially to the Vice-Chancellor in accordance with the relevant provisions of the guidelines in force under clause 5 of this Statute.
- 9 The Honorary Degrees Regulations 1978 and The Fellow of the University of Auckland Statute 1992 are both hereby repealed.

## Guidelines for the Award of Honorary Degrees and Fellowships

- 1 A nomination for an honorary degree or for the award of a Fellowship shall be made confidentially in writing to the Vice-Chancellor and signed by three persons each of whom shall be a member of the Council or of the Senate or of both these bodies.
- 2 Each nomination shall be accompanied by a statement outlining in sufficient detail the career, standing and qualifications of the nominee and the grounds under clauses 7.1, 7.2 or 7.3 for conferring the degree or awarding the Fellowship.
- 3 The Vice-Chancellor shall refer each nomination and the accompanying statement to the University Honours Committee of Council.
- 4 If Council approves a recommendation that an honorary degree be conferred or a fellowship be awarded the Vice-Chancellor shall invite the nominee to accept the award.
- 5 The conferring of honorary doctorate degrees shall not be confined to a Graduation Ceremony but shall be arranged at the discretion of the Council.
- 6 The conferring of an honorary master's degree will, except in very exceptional circumstances, take place at a Graduation Ceremony.
- 7 The award of a Fellowship shall be arranged at the discretion of the Council.

## Information Technology Systems and Services

ITSS provides core information technology services to the University. ITSS develops and manages the data and telephone networks throughout the University. It operates computer systems providing appropriate access to academic, financial, library and personnel records. These services operate continuously and may be accessed from any computer attached to the University network.

ITSS supports teaching and learning by supporting multimedia development, and by providing Internet access, email and computing facilities for students. The IT and Electronic Campus HelpDesks advise and assist users of the University's computing resources.

Many departments, schools and faculties also maintain computer systems and facilities for use by staff and students.

## Computer System Statute

Pursuant to section 194 of the Education Act 1989, the Council of the University makes the following statute:

1 This Statute may be cited as the Computer System Statute 2000. The Statute came into force on 1 January 2000.

2 In this Statute, unless the context otherwise requires:

**'System'** means any Computer, Computer Systems, other Information Systems, Telecommunication equipment or device controlled and operated by the University, whether on the premises of the University or elsewhere.

**'Director'** means the Director Information Technology Systems and Services and includes, in relation to any System, the person authorised by the University to control that System.

**'Duly Authorised Person'** means a member of the University staff with the authority to approve expenditure incurred in the use of the System.

**'Guideline'** means a rule of conduct on the use of any System or on the care of any equipment forming part of a System of which notice has been given:

a by publication in the University Calendar

or

b by other means

or

c to the person charged with misuse of a System before the alleged misuse has occurred.

3 A student, or any other member of the University, may not:

a without authority of the Director gain access or attempt to gain access to the System

or

b obtain or attempt to obtain from the System any information which they have not been authorised to access

or

c use the System to make unauthorised use of any other system, whether in the University or outside it

or

d wilfully impede or attempt to impede the operation or activity of any other authorised

user of that System or of any other system, whether in the University or outside it

or

e use or attempt to use the System so as to cause costs to be incurred

(i) by the University, without the consent of a Duly Authorised Person

(ii) by any person or organisation other than the University, without the consent of that other person or organisation

f use the System to display, to transmit or to make available for transmission through computer networks, any work or publication, including files containing any text, image, sound or multimedia, that:

(i) is abusive or defamatory; is likely to threaten the safety of any person, or causes racial disharmony, sexual harassment or racial harassment in terms of the Human Rights Act 1993

(ii) contravenes the rights of any person under the Privacy Act 1993

(iii) reproduces all or part of any electronic or other publication in breach of copyright

(iv) has been composed knowingly so as to appear to have been produced by another person

(v) knowingly misquotes, abridges or alters the publication of any other person so as to alter the meaning of that publication without either the prior approval of that person or a clear statement as to the identity of the author of the altered publication

or

g breach any Guideline that may, from time to time, be issued by the Director.

4 a Any breach of clause 3 is also an offence under the Disciplinary Statute 1998. In addition to the penalties that may be imposed under that Statute, the Discipline Committee may:

(i) terminate access to the System by a person in breach of clause 3

and

(ii) require any such person to make restitution for any loss or damage for improper use of the system.

b Where the Director excludes any person from use of the System:

- (i) the Director shall report the exclusion immediately to the Vice-Chancellor or to any person the Vice-Chancellor has nominated to receive such a report
- (ii) on receiving such a report the Vice-Chancellor (or the nominee) may refer the matter reported on to the

- Disciplinary Committee to be dealt with under the Disciplinary Statute
- (iii) any person so excluded may appeal to the Council against the exclusion.

*Note: The 'Guidelines' referred to in this statute are available from Information Technology Systems and Services.*

## Library Regulations

*The name of the Library is the University of Auckland Library. It may also be described by its Maori name: Te Tumu Herenga. Variants of this name may be used to describe the individual libraries in the library system.*

- 1 These Regulations may be cited as the Library Regulations 1970 and came into force on 1 January, 1971.
- 2 Except where otherwise stated:
  - a these Regulations apply to all sections of the University Library, and 'Library' where used in these Regulations refers to all sections of the University of Auckland Library, including such other areas as may be under the control of the Library
  - b in these Regulations 'books' includes all types of printed, written, photographic, audio-visual and machine-readable material.

### Hours of Opening

- 3 The hours of opening are posted in each Library and are to be found for all libraries on the Library's website:  
<http://www.auckland.ac.nz/lbr/hours.htm> or by using the telephone services offered. These hours may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian and any variation will be appropriately notified.

### Readers

- 4 a All members of the University Council, all University staff and all enrolled students of the University, are deemed readers for the purpose of these Regulations and may:
  - (i) use all sections of the Library
  - and
  - (ii) on completion of such registration formalities as the University Librarian requires, borrow books from it, provided that no person shall be deemed an undergraduate member of the University unless they are currently enrolled as such.
- b By special permission of the University Librarian any person not included among those authorised by clause (a) of this Regulation may be a reader and accorded full or partial use of Library facilities.
- c Persons admitted as readers under clause (b) of this regulation may be charged fees according to a schedule which will be determined by Council on the recommendation of Library Committee from time to time. No fee will be charged to retired members of the University staff or

- such categories of persons as the University Librarian may be permitted to exempt.
- d The University Librarian may at any time require from any reader as a condition of that reader's use of the Library and borrowing facilities that they pay to the University a sum of not more than \$500 as a deposit to be applied in payment or part payment of any sum for which they may become liable under Regulation 6c. Any balance of the deposit shall be refunded on the termination of their use of the Library.

### Borrowing

- 5 a No reader may borrow any book otherwise than in accordance with these Regulations.
- b The hours during which books may be borrowed may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian. Borrowers must present each book at the exit for issuing, along with their University identity card. The due date is set at the time of issue, renewal, or recall. Borrowing ceases 15 minutes before closing.
- c Any person on leaving the Library must on demand present all books and personal property for inspection.
- d Unless a book on the open shelves is marked 'Not to be borrowed' or is otherwise restricted, it may be borrowed for 60 days or for such shorter periods as the University Librarian may decide. Glass Case books and other restricted collection items without 'Not to be borrowed' labels may be borrowed for not longer than seven days non-renewable. All other materials are to be used only in the Library except that periodicals which are borrowable may be issued for seven days non-renewable loan, and theses for 60 days. Borrowers are required to return or renew books by the date due.
- e All books are subject to recall within 24 hours at any time during the year, including study breaks and summer vacation. Borrowers who fail to respond to a recall notice within 24 hours incur a fine (including GST) of \$3.00 plus \$3.00 for each further 24 hours that the book is overdue. Borrowers who retain other books beyond the due date for return incur a fine (including GST) of 25c per day whether a notice has been sent or not.
- f The University Librarian is under no obligation to notify borrowers when books are overdue; a fine may still be charged when

- books are returned after the due date, even though no notice has been received.
- g Books may be renewed at the expiry of a loan period at loans desks, or by using the renewal facility available via Voyager (the on-line catalogue). Renewal will be refused if the book is reserved and may be refused at the discretion of an authorised librarian.
  - h Readers may reserve books which are on loan. The length of loan allowed depends on the number of other readers who are waiting for the book. Borrowers who return limited loan reserved books late incur a fine (including GST) of \$3.00 per volume for each 24 hours the book is overdue. Excessive numbers of reservations may be refused at the discretion of an authorised librarian.
  - i Books which are in heavy demand may be available in short loan collections. These books will be issued for a specified period and normally may not be removed from the Library except in the case of overnight or 3 day loans. Failure to return short loan books on time incurs a fine (including GST) of 5c per volume for each minute for which the book is not returned.
  - j When the Library is closed books may be returned through after-hours slots where provided (e.g. the main concourse outside the General Library building).
  - k Staff and graduate students may apply to borrow books from the library of another institution through the Interlibrary Loan and Document Delivery Service. Undergraduate students may apply with the endorsement of a member of the academic staff. Such books are subject to the conditions imposed by the owning library.
  - l Library books may be taken out of New Zealand only with the prior permission of the University Librarian.
  - m Authorised librarians may refuse to issue excessive numbers of books to any one reader.
  - n Identity cards are not transferable; any loss must be immediately reported to the Library in order to block unauthorised use.
- book, if lost, is subsequently found and returned in good order.
- (ii) The loss of a book must be reported immediately to an authorised librarian.
  - (iii) A lost book remains the property of the University, notwithstanding payment of the bill for its replacement, and must, if found, be returned. A refund (in whole or part, according to the condition of the book on return) will be made for it but the administration fee may be retained.
- d A reader must not deface or mark any book or any piece of library furniture or property.
  - e The reservation of seats in the Library is not permitted. Books and any other articles left for any length of time on chairs or tables may be removed by any of the Library staff. No responsibility is accepted for personal belongings left in the Library.
  - f There is to be no noisy or disruptive behaviour in public reading areas. Cell-phones must only be used in designated areas.
  - g Bottles of ink must not be brought into the Library.
  - h Readers may not smoke or consume food or drink, other than water in approved non-spillable containers, in any part of the Library open to readers. Any authorised librarian may confiscate food and unapproved drink brought in a consumable state into the Library.
  - i A warning signal will be given 15 minutes before closing time; all readers must vacate the Library by closing time.
  - j Library fines or bills should be paid at the loans desk of the Library concerned.
  - k Where a fine or charge is not paid within 14 days of becoming due:
    - (i) the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from the reader in default for such period as the University Librarian thinks fit.
    - (ii) the Discipline Committee may impose on the reader any of the following penalties: prohibition of the sitting of examinations; withholding of examination scripts; refusal of re-enrolment for the next academic year; disqualification from graduation.
  - l A reader can not borrow from the Library while fines or charges are outstanding in excess of specified sums (currently \$10 for students and \$50 for staff).
  - m In the case of any reader who acts or behaves in the Library in a disorderly or improper manner or otherwise in breach of these Regulations.
    - (i) an authorised librarian may require that person to withdraw from the Library and, if that person is a staff member or student, may impose a fine, not exceeding \$10, on that person

### Discipline

- 6 a Under no circumstances may a book be passed on to another reader without being reissued in that reader's name. Where this regulation is broken the reader in whose name the book is issued remains liable for all fines or fees payable by reason of failure to return a book which is overdue, recalled, or lost.
- b Every reader must inform the Library at once of any change of their address.
- c (i) Readers are responsible for, and are to make good, any loss of or damage to books on loan to them or being used by them in the Library. In addition to the cost of replacement or repair, readers may be charged an administration fee of \$15 (including GST) whether or not the

and

- (ii) the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from that person for such period as the University Librarian thinks fit.
- n A reader must not knowingly fail to identify themselves if required to do so, or to comply with such directions as may be reasonably made, by any authorised librarian in order to maintain good order and discipline.
- o Where a penalty is imposed on any reader under these Regulations, the Council, if requested by that reader, is to arrange for a review of the amount of the penalty.
- p Nothing in these Regulations limits the application to the Library (where relevant) of the Disciplinary Statute 1998.

*Note: The unauthorised borrowing, removal or defacement of books is regarded as a serious disciplinary offence.*

### **Copyright**

- 7 Every reader using copying facilities in the Library must duly comply with the laws on copyright.

*Note: A copyright owner is entitled to take legal action against a person who infringes their copyright. Unless otherwise permitted by the*

*Copyright Act 1994, unauthorised copying of a work in which copyright subsists may infringe the copyright in that work.*

*Where making one copy of a work or part of a work is fair dealing under Section 43 of the Copyright Act 1994 making that copy is not an infringement of the copyright in that work.*

*To determine whether copying for research or private study is fair dealing it is necessary to have regard to the following matters:*

- a the purpose of the copying*
- b the nature of the work copied*
- c whether the work could have been obtained within a reasonable time at an ordinary commercial price*
- d the effect of the copying on the potential market for, or value of, the work*
- e where part of a work is copied the amount and substantiality of the part copied taken in relation to the whole work.*

*Nothing in this Section of the Copyright Act 1994 authorises the making of more than one copy of the same work or the same part of a work on any one occasion.*

*Staff wishing to make multiple copies of copyright material for use in a course of instruction must ensure such copying complies with the guidelines set out in the brochure 'Copyright on Campus' distributed to all staff.*

---

## Regulations – Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

### Architecture

- 49 The Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies – BAS
- 50 The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture – BArch
- 51 The Degree of Master of Architectural Studies – MAS
- 52 The Degree of Master of Architecture – MArch
- 54 The Degree of Master of Building Science – MBldgSc
- 55 Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science – PGDipBldgSc

### Property

- 56 The Degree of Bachelor of Property – BProp
- 57 The Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) – BProp(Hons)
- 58 The Degree of Master of Property – MProp
- 60 Postgraduate Diploma in Property – PGDipProp

### Planning

- 61 The Degree of Bachelor of Planning – BPlan
- 62 The Degree of Master of Planning Practice – MPlanPrac
- 64 The Degree of Master of Planning – MPlan

### Fine Arts

- 65 The Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts – BFA
- 66 The Degree of Bachelor of Visual Arts – BVA
- 67 The Degree of Master of Fine Arts – MFA
- 68 The Degree of Doctor of Fine Arts – DocFA
- 70 Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts – PGDipFA

## REGULATIONS – ARCHITECTURE

### The Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies – BAS

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree needs to pass courses chosen from each of Parts I, II and III as follows:

##### Part I

##### Core courses (14 points):

ARCHDES 100 Design 1  
 ARCHDES 101 Design 2  
 ARCHDRC 100 Introduction to Architectural Computing  
 ARCHDRC 101 Architectural Drawing 1  
 ARCHHTC 100 Introduction to Modern Architecture  
 ARCHHTC 101 Introduction to Architectural Theory  
 ARCHTECH 100 Construction and Structure 1  
 ARCHTECH 102 Introduction to Architectural Science A  
 ARCHTECH 103 Introduction to Architectural Science B

##### Part II

##### Core courses (12 points):

ARCHDES 200 Design 3  
 ARCHDES 201 Design 4  
 ARCHDRC 200 Computer-aided Design  
 ARCHDRC 201 Architectural Drawing 2  
 ARCHTECH 200 Construction and Structure 2  
 ARCHTECH 202 Environment and Services A  
 ARCHTECH 203 Environment and Services B  
 and at least 2 points from ARCHHTC 200–229

##### Part III

##### Core courses (7 points):

ARCHDES 300 Design 5  
 ARCHDES 301 Design 6  
 ARCHPRM 300 New Zealand Building Industry  
 and 2 points from ARCHHTC 300–329  
 and 1 point from ARCHTECH 308 or 309  
 and 4 points from ARCHDES 374–377  
     ARCHDRC 300–377  
     ARCHHTC 300–377  
     ARCHPRM 301–377  
     ARCHTECH 300–377

or from courses listed for other programmes as approved by the Head of School.

#### Variations

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

*Note: The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture was previously a five-year degree, recognised by the Architects Education and Registration Board and the New Zealand Institute of Architects for registration and professional membership. It has been subdivided into the three-year Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies followed by the two-year Degree of Bachelor of Architecture. A student wishing to qualify for registration and professional membership must now satisfy the requirements for both the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies and the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.*

## The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture – BArch

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies at this University
  - or
  - b gained an equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of the School of Architecture.

- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies but who, for that degree, has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part III

may, with the approval of the Head of School enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Architectural Studies must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies not be completed in this time, the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 4 a A student needs to pass courses from each of Parts I and II as follows:

#### Part I

**Core courses** (10 points):

ARCHDES 400 Design 7

ARCHDES 401 Design 8

ARCHPRM 401 Project Management A

ARCHPRM 402 Project Management B

ARCHTECH 400 Construction and Structure 3

**Electives** (at least 4 points from):

ARCHDES 474-477

ARCHDRC 400-477

ARCHGEN 400

ARCHHTC 400-477

ARCHPRM 401-477

ARCHTECH 401-477

#### Part II

**Core courses** (9 points):

ARCHDES 500 Design 9

ARCHDES 501 Design 10

ARCHPRM 501 Practice Management A

ARCHPRM 502 Practice Management B

**Electives** (at least 5 points from):

ARCHDES 574-577

ARCHDRC 570-577

ARCHGEN 590-595

ARCHHTC 570-577

ARCHPRM 570-577

ARCHTECH 500-577

- b Of the electives:

(i) 2 points must be from the electives ARCHHTC 400-473

(ii) 1 point must be from ARCHTECH 401, 404, 419, 500

- (iii) with the approval of the Head of the School of Architecture, up to 4 points may be from courses listed for Part III in the Schedule to the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies, but not already passed for that degree, and/or courses in other programmes as approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 6 Where a student's average grade is sufficiently high, this degree may be awarded with Honours. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

*Note: The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture was previously a five-year programme which has now been subdivided into the three-year Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies followed by the two-year Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.*

---

## The Degree of Master of Architectural Studies – MAS

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies
  - or
  - b the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
  - or
  - c any equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of the School of Architecture.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
- a no more than 4 points left to complete
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification

may, with the approval of the Head of School, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of:
- a (i) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods
  - (ii) Electives:
    - 4 points approved by the Head of the School of Architecture as relevant to the topic of the Thesis or Research Report from:
    - ARCHDES 770-777
    - ARCHDRC 770-777
    - ARCHHTC 770-777
    - ARCHPRM 770-777
    - ARCHTECH 770-777
  - (iii) (a) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)

- and  
8 points from electives listed in Regulation 4a(ii) above  
or  
(b) ARCHGEN 701 Research Methods 2 (2 points)  
ARCHGEN 792 Research Report (8 points)  
12 points from elective courses listed in Regulation 4a(ii)
- or  
b Sustainability:  
(i) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods  
(ii) 12 points from:  
ARCHTECH 704 Sustainability of the Built Environment (4 points)  
and/or  
ARCHTECH 705 Energy and the Built Environment (4 points)  
and  
Electives approved by the Head of School of Architecture as relevant to the topic of the thesis from:  
ARCHTECH 770-777 (up to 8 points)  
(iii) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)
- c In place of the electives required under Regulations 4a(iii) or 4b(ii) above, a student may substitute appropriate courses from those listed in the schedule  
(i) for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture but not already passed for that degree  
or  
(ii) for the Degree of Master of Planning Practice but not already passed for that degree  
or  
(iii) with the approval of Head of School of Architecture, for any other courses provided such courses are deemed to be related to the student's programme and appropriate for this degree.

**Thesis**

- 5 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.  
b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.  
c The thesis is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture.

**Research Report**

- 6 a The research report is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.  
b The topic of the research report needs to be approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.  
c The research report is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 Where a student's average grade is sufficiently high, this degree may be awarded with Honours. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002 and replaced the 1997 Regulations.

---

**The Degree of Master of Architecture – MArch**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
  - or
  - b gained any other equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Architecture and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of the School of Architecture.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
  - a no more than 2 points left to complete
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification

may, with the approval of the Head of School, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Architecture will be suspended until they have been completed.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of:
 

*either*

  - a (i) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)
  - or
  - (ii) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods (2 points)  
ARCHGEN 790 Research Report (8 points)  
4 points from courses approved by the Head of the School of Architecture for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies or the Degree of Master of Building Science or the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, but not already passed for that degree, or any other programme as approved by the Senate or its representative.

or

  - b Sustainability:
    - (i) ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)
    - or
    - (ii) ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods (2 points)  
ARCHGEN 790 Research Report (8 points)

*and either*

ARCHTECH 704 Sustainability of the Built Environment (4 points)

or

ARCHTECH 705 Energy and the Built Environment (4 points).

### Thesis

- 5
  - a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
  - b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.
  - c The thesis is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture.

### Research Report

- 6
  - a The research report is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
  - b The topic of the research report needs to be approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.
  - c The research report is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002 and replaced the 1997 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of Building Science – MBldgSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies
  - or
  - b the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
  - or
  - c the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
  - or
  - d any equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of the School of Architecture.

- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
- a no more than 4 points left to complete
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification

may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Building Science will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
- a ARCHGEN 700 Research Methods
  - b Electives:  
8 points approved by the Head of Department from:  
ARCHTECH 700 Fire Protection  
ARCHTECH 701 Building Health  
ARCHTECH 702 Building Intelligence  
ARCHTECH 703 Facilities Management  
and ARCHTECH 770-777
  - c ARCHGEN 793 Thesis (14 points)  
and  
4 points from electives listed in Regulation 4b above.
  - d In place of the electives required under Regulation 4c above, a student may substitute electives from those listed in the schedule:
    - (i) for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, but not already passed for that degree
    - or

- (ii) with the approval of the Head of the School of Architecture, for any other programme provided such courses are deemed to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken for this degree.

### Thesis

- 5 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.
- c The thesis is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture.

### Research Report

- 6 a The research report is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The topic of the research report needs to be approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.
- c The research report is normally to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations Master's degrees.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science – PGDipBldgSc

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Architectural Studies  
or
- b the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture  
or
- c the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering  
or
- d any equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and have achieved a sufficiently high average grade, as determined by the Head of the School of Architecture.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for one of the qualifications listed in Regulation 1 but who, for that qualification, has:
- a no more than 2 points left to complete  
and
- b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at the highest level of that qualification

may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the qualification must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should this requirement not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Postgraduate Diploma in Building Science will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student for this diploma needs to pass:
- a ARCHGEN 600 Research Methods 1A
  - b 8 points from ARCHPRM 670-677, ARCHTECH 670-677
  - c 4 points from:
    - (i) ARCHPRM 670-677  
ARCHTECH 670-677
    - or
    - (ii) from courses for the Degree of Master of Architecture
    - or
    - (iii) from courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture but not already passed for that degree
    - or
    - (iv) with the approval of the Head of the Department of Architecture, for any master's degree provided such courses are relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken for this diploma and have not already been taken for any other programme.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## REGULATIONS – PROPERTY

### The Degree of Bachelor of Property – BProp

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass each of Parts I, II and III as follows:

**Part I**

PROPERTY 111 Valuation 1  
 PROPERTY 141 Construction  
 STATS 108 Statistics for Commerce  
 ACCTG 101 Accounting Information  
 COMLAW 101 Law, Commerce and Government  
 ECON 101 Microeconomics  
 ECON 111 Macroeconomics

**Part II**

PROPERTY 211 Valuation 2  
 PROPERTY 221 Property Marketing  
 PROPERTY 231 Property Management  
 PROPERTY 241 Land Use Planning and Controls  
 PROPERTY 251 Property Finance  
 PROPERTY 261 Property Economics  
 PROPERTY 271 Property Law

**Part III**

14 points to be selected from the following including PROPERTY 371 or 372:  
 PROPERTY 311 Valuation 3  
 PROPERTY 312 Plant and Machinery Valuation

PROPERTY 321 Advanced Property Marketing  
 PROPERTY 331 Advanced Property Management  
 PROPERTY 333 Facilities Management  
 PROPERTY 342 Property Development  
 PROPERTY 344 Advanced Construction  
 PROPERTY 351 Advanced Property Finance and Investment  
 PROPERTY 363 Property Research Methods  
 PROPERTY 371 Property Project  
 PROPERTY 372 Applied Valuation Project  
 PROPERTY 373 Advanced Property Law  
 PROPERTY 381 Building Economics  
 PROPERTY 382 Maori Land Issues  
 PROPERTY 383 Special Topic  
 PROPERTY 384 Special Topic

- b A student will not normally be permitted to enrol for Part II unless Part I has been completed, or to enrol for Part III unless Part II has been completed. However, a student who has failed to pass one of those parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next part.

### Practical Requirements

- 3 A student for this degree must participate in skills workshops as required by, and to the satisfaction of, the Head of the Department of Property. A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Head of the Department of Property confirmation that the student has complied with this requirement.

### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996, and replaced the 1993 Regulations.

## The Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) – BProp(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student must have completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and in addition have achieved an average grade of B- or higher in the courses taken for Part III of that degree.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years (inclusive of the three years, or equivalent, required for the Degree of Bachelor of Property) and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points (inclusive of the 42 points required for the Degree of Bachelor of Property), unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 3 A student for this degree needs to satisfy all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and in addition pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points as follows:
- a at least 4 points from the Degree of Master of Property
  - b up to 4 points from courses offered for any other Honours or Master's degree, provided they are related to the study of Property and approved by the Head of the Department of Property
  - c PROPERTY 788 Honours Research Project
  - d PROPERTY 789 Honours Dissertation

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Award of Honours**

- 5 This degree will be awarded only where a student's average grade in the additional courses required under Regulation 3b is B or higher.
- 6 a A student has normally to complete the requirements for this degree within 12 months of the initial enrolment following the completion of the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property. In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
- b A student may be enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis only if approval is given by the Head of the Department of Property. Such a part-time student has normally to complete the requirements for this degree within 24 months of initial enrolment, following the completion of the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property. In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may further extend this period.
- 7 A student who chooses not to complete this degree, or who does not complete the requirements for this degree within the period specified in Regulation 6, or whose work does not satisfy the standard specified in Regulation 5, may apply to have the Degree of Bachelor of Property conferred.

**Classes of Honours**

- 8 This degree will be awarded with Honours where the student's average grade is sufficiently high, as specified in Regulation 5, and the requirements for this degree are completed within the period specified in Regulation 6. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of Property – MProp

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and achieved an average of B- or higher in the courses taken for Part III of that degree
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and achieved an average of B- or higher
  - or
  - c completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours)
  - or
  - d completed the requirements for any other appropriate bachelor's degree or equivalent qualification, as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, provided that the average grade in the final year of study was equivalent to B- or higher.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property but who, for that degree, has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part III
- may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Property must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Property enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) but who, for that degree, has:

- a passed courses with a total value of at least 54 points  
and
- b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points at master's level

may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Property (Honours) must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours) not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Property enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

- 4 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property but who, for that diploma, has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 12 points  
and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for that diploma
 may, with the approval of the Head of Department enrol for this degree.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 5 A student enrolled for this degree has to:
  - a follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points, if entering with the Degree of Bachelor of Property or its equivalent
  - or
  - b follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass a thesis having a value of 14 points, if entering:
    - (i) with the Degree of Bachelor of Property (Honours)
    - or
    - (ii) having completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and having reassigned courses from PGDipProp under Regulation 8.

#### Structure and Content

- 6 For a student who needs to complete 28 points for this degree, the programme consists of:
  - a PROPERTY 793 Thesis (14 points)
  - b 14 points from:
    - (i) PROPERTY 713 Seminar in Valuation  
PROPERTY 714 Plant and Machinery Valuation  
PROPERTY 723 Seminar in Property Marketing  
PROPERTY 733 Seminar in Property Management  
PROPERTY 734 Seminar in Facilities Management  
PROPERTY 743 Seminar in Property Development  
PROPERTY 753 Seminar in Property Finance and Investment  
PROPERTY 763 Seminar in Property Economics  
PROPERTY 764 Seminar in Building Economics  
PROPERTY 783 Special Topic  
PROPERTY 784 Special Topic
    - (ii) Up to 4 points may be taken from courses for any other master's degree with the approval of the Head of the Department of Property
    - (iii) An appropriate research methods course (or courses) approved by the Head of Department is to be taken as part of this degree unless it or an equivalent has already been passed.
- 7 A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree needs to pass PROPERTY 793 Thesis.

#### Transfer from Postgraduate Diploma in Property

- 8 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and has not been awarded the Postgraduate Diploma in Property and is eligible to be admitted to this course of study under Regulation 1b may reassign to this degree the Honours or Master's courses passed for that Postgraduate Diploma.

#### Thesis

- 9 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b Before enrolment in the thesis, the thesis proposal needs to be approved by the Head of the Department of Property.
- c A student is to submit the thesis in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

- d In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend the periods indicated above.

#### Variations

- 10 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 11 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 12 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1998 and replaced the 1997 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Property – PGDipProp

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property
  - or
  - b gained any other qualification approved by the Senate or its representative that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Property.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property but who, for that degree, has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part III

may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this diploma. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Property must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this diploma. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Property not be completed in this time, the Postgraduate Diploma in Property enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are normally to be completed within 36 months of the initial enrolment, but this period may be extended to 48 months at the discretion of the Head of the Department of Property.
- c In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may grant a further extension of the period specified in Regulation 3b above.
- d A student who has commenced study for this diploma may suspend that study for a period of up to 12 months.
- e A student may be enrolled for this diploma on a part-time basis with the approval of the Head of the Department of Property. Such a part-time student has normally to complete the requirements for this diploma within 48 months of the initial enrolment.
- f In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may grant a further extension of the period specified in Regulation 3e above.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 Of the 14 points required for this diploma:
- a at least 8 points must be from courses for the degree of Master of Property and for this diploma
  - b up to 6 points may be from courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Property and not already taken for that degree
  - c PROPERTY 691 Dissertation (4 points), may be included, on a topic approved by the Head of the Department of Property

- d PROPERTY 671 Research Project (2 points), may be included, on a topic approved by the Head of the Department of Property
- e up to 4 points may be taken from courses listed for any other diploma or for any Master's degree provided they are deemed by the Head of the Department of Property to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this diploma.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## REGULATIONS – PLANNING

### The Degree of Bachelor of Planning – BPlan

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student must pass courses from each of Parts I, II, III and IV, as follows:

##### **Part I**

##### **Core Planning Context courses** (8 points):

PLANNING 100 Introduction to Planning  
 PLANNING 101 Institutional Framework  
 PLANNING 102 Society and Economics  
 PLANNING 103 Environmental Context of Planning

##### **Core Technical Skills courses** (4 points):

PLANNING 110 Fundamental Skills  
 PLANNING 111 Foundations for Policy Analysis

##### **Core Planning Studios** (2 points):

PLANNING 120 Studio 1A  
 PLANNING 121 Studio 1B

##### **Part II**

##### **Core Planning Context courses** (8 points):

PLANNING 200 Settlement Planning  
 PLANNING 201 Introduction to Planning Legislation  
 PLANNING 202 Planning Physical and Social Infrastructure  
 PLANNING 203 Design and the Built Environment

##### **Core Technical Skills course** (2 points):

PLANNING 210 Research and Methods for Policy Analysis

##### **Core Planning Studio** (2 points):

PLANNING 220 Studio 2

##### **Elective courses:**

2 points from PLANNING 230–239 or any courses from other programmes as approved by the Head of the Department of Planning

##### **Part III**

##### **Core Planning Context courses** (8 points):

PLANNING 300 Maori and Resource Management  
 PLANNING 301 Planning and Resource Management Law  
 PLANNING 302 Environmental Issues  
 PLANNING 303 Planning and Design

##### **Core Technical Skills course** (2 points):

PLANNING 310 Methods for Policy Analysis

**Core Planning Studios (2 points):**

PLANNING 320 Studio 3A

PLANNING 321 Studio 3B:

**Elective courses:**

2 points from PLANNING 330-339 or any courses from other programmes as approved by the Head of the Department of Planning

**Part IV****Core Planning courses (5 points):**

PLANNING 400 Planning Theories and Professional Practice

PLANNING 401 Sustainable Futures

PLANNING 402 Gender and Equity in Planning

PLANNING 403 Housing

**Core Research course (2 points):**

PLANNING 410 Research Project

**Core Planning Studio (2 points):**

PLANNING 420 Studio 4

**Elective courses:**

5 points from PLANNING 430-439, or any courses from BPlan Part III, or any other programmes as approved by the Head of the Department of Planning.

- b Each part must normally be completed before the next part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass one of those parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next part.
- c A student who has previously passed courses for another programme that are substantially similar to any of the Part I core courses required under Regulation 2a above may, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Planning, take other courses in lieu of those core courses.

**Variations**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve an application from a student for a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 4 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996, and replaced the 1993 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of Planning Practice – MPlanPrac

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 a In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - either
    - (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's or master's degree of this University other than the Degree of Bachelor of Planning
  - or
    - (ii) gained any other equivalent qualification, provided that the Senate or its representative is satisfied that the prior degree or other equivalent qualification is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Planning.
- b The Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Planning, require a student with insufficient background in Planning to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I of this degree, as under Regulation 4d below.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for a bachelor's or master's degree of this University (other than the Bachelor of Planning) but who, for that degree, has:

- a no more than 4 points left to complete
- and
- b for a bachelor's degree achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 6 points for Stage III or in the final Part for the degree
- or
- c for a master's degree achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 6 points for the degree

may, with the approval of the Head of Department, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the prior degree must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the prior degree not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Planning Practice enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 a A student for this degree needs to pass courses for each of Parts I and II as follows:

##### Part I

##### Core Planning Context courses (8 points):

PLANNING 700 Planning Theory and Method  
 PLANNING 701 Advanced Planning and Design  
 PLANNING 702 Legal and Institutional Context of Planning  
 PLANNING 704 Resource Management and Maori

##### Core Technical Skills courses (4 points):

PLANNING 710 Methods and Practices for Policy Development  
 PLANNING 711 Methods for Policy Assessment in Planning

##### Core Planning Studio (2 points):

PLANNING 720 Studio 1  
 PLANNING 721 Studio 2

##### Part II

##### Core Planning courses (9 points):

PLANNING 703 Infrastructure and Planning  
 PLANNING 705 Theories and Practice for the Planning Professional  
 PLANNING 706 Futures in the Context of Sustainability  
 PLANNING 707 Planning's Response to Gender and Equity Issues  
 PLANNING 708 Shelter, Housing and Society  
 PLANNING 709 Resource Management and Planning Law

##### Research course (2 points):

PLANNING 712 Research Project

##### Planning Studio (2 points):

PLANNING 722 Studio 3

##### Elective courses:

1 point from courses PLANNING 730-741, or Stage III or equivalent from another programme as approved by the Head of the Department of Planning.

- b A student may not enrol for Part II until Part I has been completed, unless special approval is given by the Head of the Department of Planning.
- c A student who has previously passed courses for another programme that are substantially similar to any of the core courses required under Regulation 4a above may, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Planning, take:
  - (i) in place of core courses for Part I, courses chosen from:
    - PLANNING 732 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 733 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 734 Special Topic
  - (ii) in place of core courses for Part II, courses chosen from:
    - PLANNING 730 Designing Settlements
    - PLANNING 731 Community and Economic Development
    - PLANNING 735 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 736 Special Topic
    - PLANNING 737 Special Topic

## PLANNING 738 Special Topic

## PLANNING 739 Special Topic

- d Where a student is required to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I, under Regulation 1b above, those courses
- (i) are to be taken for Certificates of Proficiency
  - and
  - (ii) will include Case Studies seminars PLANNING 740 and PLANNING 741 and any other courses specified by the Head of the Department of Planning
  - and
  - (iii) are to be passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.

*Note: A student taking PLANNING 740 (2 points) and PLANNING 741 (2 points) will be unable to take the whole of Part I at the same time. The Head of the Department of Planning will specify which Part I course is to be deferred and taken with Part II.*

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 6 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

**The Degree of Master of Planning – MPlan**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning
  - or
  - b gained any other equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Planning.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning but who, for that degree, has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 54 points
  - and
  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 8 points for Part IV

may, with the approval of the Head of Department enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the Bachelor of Planning must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Planning enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The course of study consists of:
- a PLANNING 797 Thesis (14 points)
  - or
  - b PLANNING 780 Research Project (8 points) and 6 points in the following Planning courses:
    - PLANNING 750 Advanced Planning Theory
    - PLANNING 751 Equity Issues and Planning
    - PLANNING 752 Advanced Planning Techniques
    - PLANNING 753 Planning issues
    - PLANNING 754 Environmental Issues and Planning
    - PLANNING 755 Advanced Planning and Resource Management Law
    - PLANNING 756 Urban Design and Planning

PLANNING 757 Heritage Conservation Planning  
 PLANNING 758 Development and Planning for Small Economies  
 PLANNING 759 Tourism Planning  
 PLANNING 760 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 761 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 762 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 763 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 764 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 765 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 766 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 767 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 768 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 769 Special Topic  
 PLANNING 770 Case Study Report

### Thesis

- 5 a The thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The topic of the thesis has to be approved by the Head of the Department of Planning prior to initial enrolment for the degree.
- c
  - (i) The thesis is normally to be submitted within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.
  - (ii) For a part-time student the Head of the Department of Planning may extend the period for submission to a maximum of 24 months following initial enrolment for this degree.
  - (iii) In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a further extension of the period for submission.

### Research Project

- 6 a The research project is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The area of study of the research project has to be approved by the Head of the Department of Planning before initial enrolment for the degree.
- c
  - (i) The research project is normally to be submitted within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.
  - (ii) For a part-time student the Head of the Department of Planning may extend the period for submission to a maximum of 24 months following initial enrolment for this degree.
  - (iii) In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a further extension of the period for submission.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

---

## REGULATIONS – FINE ARTS

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts – BFA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass courses for each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:

**Part I****Core course:**

10 points: FINEARTS 100 Studio 1

**Elective courses:**

at least 4 points from Stage I Art History courses

**Part II****Core course:**

10 points: FINEARTS 200 Studio 2

**Elective courses:**

at least 4 points from courses offered for other programmes at this University, as approved by the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

**Part III****Core course:**

10 points: FINEARTS 300 Studio 3

**Elective courses:**

at least 4 points from courses offered for other programmes at this University, as approved by the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

**Part IV**

either

- (i) 14 points FINEARTS 400 Studio 4A

or

- (ii) **Core course:**

6 points: FINEARTS 401 Studio 4B

**Elective courses:**

- at least 2 points from Art History courses above Stage I
- at least 2 points from Art History courses above Stage II
- at least 4 points from courses offered for other programmes at this University, as approved by the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

- b (i) Each part must normally be completed before the next part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I and II in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next successive part.
- (ii) A student may not enrol in Part IV until Parts I, II and III have been completed in their entirety.

**Variations**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1994 Regulations.

**The Degree of Bachelor of Visual Arts – BVA**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass courses for each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:

**Part I**

VISARTS 150 Contextual Studies 1

VISARTS 160 Drawing 1

VISARTS 170 Studio 1

**Part II**

VISARTS 250 Contextual Studies 2

VISARTS 260 Drawing 2  
 VISARTS 270 Major Studio 2  
 VISARTS 271 Minor Studio, 2A  
 VISARTS 272 Minor Studio 2B

**Part III**

VISARTS 350 Contextual Studies 3  
 VISARTS 360 Drawing 3  
 VISARTS 370 Major Studio 3

**Part IV**

VISARTS 470 Studio Practice

- b Each part must normally be completed before the next part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I, II and III in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to resubmit work for a course or courses needed to complete that part prior to enrolment in the subsequent part.

**Variations**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

## The Degree of Master of Fine Arts – MFA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts  
and
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for one of the options for these regulations  
and
  - c achieved an average grade of B+ or higher in the prerequisite courses.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the relevant Head of School, approve the admission of a student whose average grade in the prerequisite courses is B-.
- 3 A student who has gained any other equivalent qualification may be admitted, provided that the Senate or its representative is satisfied that the prior degree or other equivalent qualification is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Fine Arts.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of two consecutive full-time years and achieve an overall pass in 28 points.
- 5 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted has normally to follow a programme of three consecutive part-time years and achieve an overall pass in 28 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 6 A student must select courses for one of the following options:
  - a **Option A:**  
14 points: FINEARTS 754 Studio 5D  
14 points: FINEARTS 763 Studio 6C
  - b **Option B:**  
14 points: FINEARTS 754 Studio 5D  
8 points: FINEARTS 762 Studio 6B  
6 points: FINEARTS 791 Dissertation
  - c **Option C:**  
8 points: FINEARTS 753 Studio 5C  
6 points from master's level courses approved by the Head of School of Fine Arts  
14 points: ARTHIST 796 Art History Thesis

**d Option D:**

8 points: FINEARTS 753 Studio 5C

6 points from master's level courses approved by the Head of School of Fine Arts

14 points: FINEARTS 797 Fine Arts Thesis

**Thesis or Dissertation**

- 7 a Where a thesis or dissertation forms part of the requirements, it is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic needs to be approved by the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts on the recommendation of the relevant Head of School.
- c A student who is required to include a thesis or dissertation in the course of study must:
- (i) if enrolled on a full-time basis, normally submit the thesis or dissertation by the last day of classes of the fourth semester following initial enrolment for this degree
- or
- (ii) if enrolled on a part-time basis, normally submit the thesis or dissertation within 36 months of initial enrolment for this degree provided that in exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 9 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b A student whose examination performance is seriously impaired by circumstances which fall within the Aegrotat Pass or Compassionate Pass provisions may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to sit a subsequent written examination in order to remain eligible for the award of Honours.
- c Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 36 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1994 Regulations.

**The Degree of Doctor of Fine Arts – DocFA**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a candidate needs to:
- a have completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts of this University unless an alternative qualification is approved by the Senate under the Admission Regulations
- and
- b demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the Head of the School of Fine Arts, adequate training and ability to follow a course of advanced study in studio practice.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A candidate enrolled for this degree normally has to follow a programme of 24 full-time months and pass a course of advanced study in Studio.
- b After the initial two years of enrolment, a candidate must apply through the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts to the Senate for permission to continue for up to a further 36 months part-time.
- c In exceptional circumstances, the Senate may permit a candidate, who has held the accepted prerequisite qualification for over five years, to proceed directly to apply to be examined.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 a Each candidate is to complete the advanced course FINEARTS 894 Studio, unless approval is given to proceed directly to examination.

- b The work undertaken during this degree must be to the satisfaction of the Head of the School of Fine Arts and the supervisor or supervisors.
- c The supervisor or supervisors shall submit a brief report to the Senate on the progress of each candidate at the end of each year of study.
- d Should such a report be unfavourable, the Senate may terminate a candidate's enrolment for this degree.

#### Content of Examination

- 4 a The work submitted by the candidate for examination is to be clearly original and substantial in the chosen specialised studio area.
- b The format for submission will normally be an exhibition, performance or publication of creative work in the chosen area of specialisation. This is to be supported by written documentation focusing on such aspects as origins of the work, structures and techniques used and artistic theories underpinning the work. Written documentation may be supported by other media such as photographic, audio and video recordings if this is deemed appropriate by the supervisor or supervisors.
- 5 No work shall be considered for this degree if the work, or a major part of it, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university or tertiary institution.
- 6 With the application to be examined, each candidate must also submit:
  - a three copies of the written and other documentation  
*and*
  - b a statement of availability of the studio work for assessment by exhibition, performance or publication  
*and*
  - c a statutory declaration which is to:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own and, in the case of joint work, identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own  
*and*
    - (ii) state what portion, if any, of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of this or any other tertiary institution  
*and*
    - (iii) declare that the work, in substantially its present form, has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other tertiary institution nor is it being submitted for a degree or diploma in any other tertiary institution.

#### Examination Following Full- and Part-time Study

- 7 A candidate is to apply in writing to the Registrar to be examined for the Degree within five years of initial enrolment.
- 8 After the candidate's application to be examined has been accepted, the Senate is, on the recommendation of the Head of School, to appoint as examiners:
  - a the supervisor or supervisors  
*and*
  - b one person, other than the supervisor, as oral examiner, who is usually to be a member of staff of another university in New Zealand  
*and*
  - c one person who is usually resident outside New Zealand provided that the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of School, appoint a further examiner and, in exceptional circumstances, two further examiners.
- 9 Each examiner is to:
  - a assess the submitted work  
*and*
  - b report independently to the Senate on the quality of the work  
*and*
  - c recommend to the Senate whether or not the Degree of Doctor of Fine Arts should be awarded.
- 10 The supervising examiner and the oral examiner together are to examine the candidate orally on the submitted studio work and supporting documentation and on the general field to which the work belongs. The oral examination is to be held after the reports from all examiners have been received and will not normally be sooner than six weeks after the submission by the candidate. The oral examiners are to make a joint report to the Senate on the whole examination.

- 11 Where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the Examiners may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date.

#### Direct Examination

- 12 Candidates who are eligible under Regulation 2c to apply to be examined directly, must comply with the requirements set out in Regulations 4, 5 and 6.
- 13 As soon as possible after the application is lodged, the Senate is to appoint a Moderator who is to:
- a consider the work and submit to the Senate, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which indicates whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application
- and
- b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners.
- 14 The Senate is to consider the Moderator's report and decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination is not to proceed or that the degree is not to be awarded, the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree before five or more years have elapsed since the date of the Senate's decision. Should the Senate decide not to proceed with an examination, a candidate is entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid on application to be examined.
- 15 For a candidate who is eligible under Regulation 2c to apply to be examined directly and where it is agreed that the examination is to proceed:
- a the Senate is to appoint two independent external examiners of whom at least one is normally resident outside New Zealand
- and
- b the Senate may appoint an additional examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland
- and
- c the contents of the Moderator's report are not to be communicated to the examiners.
- 16 In this case, the duties of each examiner are:
- a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to the discipline
- and
- b to recommend whether or not the degree is to be awarded provided that where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date. A resubmission has to be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 17 The reports are to be sent to the Registrar who is to refer them to the Moderator.
- 18 The Moderator is to consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report which, together with the reports of the examiners, is to be placed before the Senate which is to determine whether or not the degree may be awarded.

#### Conflicting Examiners' Reports

- 19 Where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, the Moderator or the Head of School, as appropriate, is to submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner. The Senate is then to appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner who is to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 9 or Regulation 15. This report is to be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

#### Commencement

- 20 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts – PGDipFA

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- either.
- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts
- and

- (ii) achieved a grade of B+ or higher in FINEARTS 400 or 401 of the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts
  - or
  - b had not less than five years' experience and practice deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the relevant Head of School, approve the admission of a student whose grade in FINEARTS 400 or 401 of the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts is B or lower, if that student is otherwise qualified for admission.
  - 3 A student on whom the Degree of Master of Fine Arts of this University has already been conferred may not be awarded the Postgraduate Diploma in Fine Arts.
  - 4 A student who has completed some or all of the requirements for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts but on whom that degree has not yet been conferred may enrol for this diploma and apply to the Senate to have courses taken for that degree reassigned to this diploma.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 5 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 6 A student must select courses from one of the following options:
  - either
  - a **Option A:**  
FINEARTS 651 Studio (14 points)
  - or
  - b **Option B:**  
FINEARTS 652 Practical (6 points) and FINEARTS 690 Dissertation (8 points).
- 7
  - a A student has to carry out work to the satisfaction of the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts within an individually-planned personal programme approved by the Head of the School of Fine Arts, including the presentation of an exhibition of his or her work and printed catalogue deemed adequate by the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts.
  - b This personal programme is to be completed not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or by such other date as may be approved by the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1994 Regulations.

## Regulations – Arts

### Arts

- 73 The Degree of Bachelor of Arts – BA
- 79 The Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) – BA(Hons)
- 82 The Degree of Master of Arts – MA
- 89 The Degree of Master of Creative and Performing Arts – MCPA
- 90 The Degree of Master of Literature – MLitt
- 91 Certificate in Arts – CertArts
- 91 Diploma in Performing Arts – DipPerformArts
- 92 Diploma in Professional Ethics – DipProfEthics
- 93 Graduate Diploma in Arts – GradDipArts
- 94 Graduate Diploma in Arts Management – GradDipArtsMgt
- 94 Graduate Diploma in Translation Studies – GradDipTranslationStud
- 95 Postgraduate Diploma in Arts – PGDipArts
- 96 Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching – PGDipLT
- 96 Postgraduate Certificate in Advanced Interpreting – PGCertAdvInterp

### Education

- 97 The Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching) – BEd(Tchg)
- 98 The Degree of Master of Education – MEd
- 100 The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt
- 100 The Degree of Doctor of Education – EdD
- 101 Diploma in Counselling – DipCouns
- 102 Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd
- 102 Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd
- 102 Diploma in Teaching (Primary) – DipTchg(Primary)
- 103 Diploma in Teaching (Secondary) – DipTchg(Sec)
- 104 Diploma in Technology Education – DipTechEd
- 104 Graduate Diploma in Education – GradDipEd
- 105 Postgraduate Diploma in Education – PGDipEd
- 106 Postgraduate Diploma in Educational Psychology – PGDipEdPsych

### Music

- 107 The Degree of Bachelor of Music – BMus
- 107 The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) – BMus(Hons)
- 109 The Degree of Bachelor of Music Education – BMusEd
- 110 The Degree of Master of Music – MMus
- 111 The Degree of Doctor of Music – DMus
- 113 Diploma in Music – DipMus
- 114 Diploma in Music (Advanced) – DipMus(Adv)

---

## REGULATIONS – ARTS

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Arts – BA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points required for this degree, a student must pass:
  - a at least 34 points in subjects listed in the BA Schedule
  - b at least 22 points in courses above Stage I
  - c courses in a minimum of three subjects
  - d one or more majors, including at least 6 points at Stage III in each major, selected from the majors listed in the BA Schedule
  - e
    - (i) a minor of at least 12 points, including at least 8 points above Stage I from one of the subjects in the BA Schedule
    - or
    - (ii) a second major of at least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III from another of the subjects in the BA Schedule.
- 3 A student may include up to 8 points from other programmes offered at this University.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Special Cases

- 5 For language courses, a student with previous knowledge of the language may be required:
 

*either*

  - a to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s)
  - or
  - b to take advanced course(s) where both beginner's and advanced level courses are offered at Stage I.

In such cases, if the student fails the Stage II or advanced course(s), they may be credited with the appropriate Stage I or beginner's level courses if they are certified by the examiner as having reached the standard of a pass for such courses.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

---

### Bachelor of Arts (BA) Schedule

---

Subjects available for majors and minors:

#### Ancient History

- Stage I courses:** ANCHIST 100–103  
**Stage II courses:** ANCHIST 200–250, CLASSICS 270, 280  
**Stage III courses:** ANCHIST 300–350, CLASSICS 370, 380  
**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III  
**Major must include:**
- at least 4 points from ANCHIST 100, 102, 103
- Minor must include:**
- at least 4 points from ANCHIST 100, 102, 103

#### Anthropology

- Stage I courses:** ANTHRO 100–104, MAORI 130  
**Stage II courses:** ANTHRO 200–243, MAORI 230  
**Stage III courses:** ANTHRO 300–347, MAORI 330, WOMEN 303  
**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III  
**Major must include:**
- at least two of: ANTHRO 100, 101, 102, 103, 104; and
  - at least one of: ANTHRO 200, 201, 203
- Minor must include:**
- at least one of: ANTHRO 100, 101, 102, 103, 104

## Art History

**Stage I courses:** ARTHIST 101–112

**Stage II courses:** ARTHIST 201–224, MAORI 240

**Stage III courses:** ARTHIST 301–324

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Chinese

**Stage I courses:** CHINESE 100–130, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** CHINESE 200–278

**Stage III courses:** CHINESE 300–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- CHINESE 130, ASIAN 100; and
  - either CHINESE 300, 301, 304 and 305; or CHINESE 310
- Native speakers of Chinese should consult Department about content of major

## Classical Studies

**Stage I courses:** CLASSICS 110–140, ANCHIST 102, 103

**Stage II courses:** CLASSICS 210–285, ANCHIST 202, 203, 212, 213, 222, 250, PHIL 204

**Stage III courses:** CLASSICS 310–385, ANCHIST 302, 303, 312–314, 322, 324, 350

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 10 points with a CLASSICS number

## Cultural Heritage and Museums

**Stage I courses:** ANTHRO 100, 101, 104, ARTHIST 102, 103, 108, HISTORY 122, 123, MAORI 130, SOCIOL 101

**Stage II courses:** HERITAGE 200, 201, ANTHRO 207, ARTHIST 205, 213, HISTORY 218, 227, MAORI 240

**Stage III courses:** HERITAGE 300, ANTHRO 312, 315, 340, ARTHIST 305, 317, 318, MAORI 340, 342

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- HERITAGE 200 and at least 2 courses at Stage III in the same subject from the courses listed in the programme

## Dance Studies

**Stage I courses:** DANCE 101, 102, MUSIC 145

**Stage II courses:** DANCE 201–203, MUSIC 273

**Stage III courses:** DANCE 300–306

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- DANCE 102, 202, 302, 304

**Minor must include:**

- DANCE 102, 202

## Dutch

**Stage I courses:** DUTCH 100–161, EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** DUTCH 201–278, ARTHIST 203, EURLANG 201, 211, 221

**Stage III courses:** DUTCH 301–378, EURLANG 301

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- EURLANG 100 and DUTCH 301

**Minor must include:**

- DUTCH 201

## Economics

**Stage I courses:** ECON 101, 111

**Stage II courses:** ECON 201–273

**Stage III courses:** ECON 301–381

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- ECON 101 and 111; and
- ECON 201 and 211

Students must also pass MATHS 108 (or equivalent) to take a major in Economics

**Minor must include:**

- ECON 101 and 111

Students must also pass MATHS 108 (or equivalent) to take a minor in Economics

## Education

**Stage I courses:** EDUC 101–103

**Stage II courses:** EDUC 201–224

**Stage III courses:** EDUC 301–385, MATHS 302

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I; and
- at least 4 points at Stage II

**Minor must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I

## Employment Relations and Organisation Studies

**Stage I course:** MGMT 101

**Stage II courses:** MGMT 211, 212, 223–232

**Stage III courses:** MGMT 311–322, 324–338, PSYCH 312, ECON 302

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- MGMT 101

**Minor must include:**

- MGMT 101

*(Note: some Management and Employment Relations courses are not available for BA major or minor)*

## English

**Stage I courses:** ENGLISH 100–155, LINGUIST 100

**Stage II courses:** ENGLISH 200–256, LINGUIST 200–202

**Stage III courses:** ENGLISH 302–351, LINGUIST 300–305, 310

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I; and
- at least 4 points at Stage II including at least one of ENGLISH 200, 202, 210, 213; and
- at least one of ENGLISH 302, 307, 308, 310, 314, 315, 320, 336, 337

**Minor must include:**

- at least 4 points at Stage I; and
- at least 4 points at Stage II including at least one of ENGLISH 200, 202, 210, 213

## Ethics

**Stage I courses:** PHIL 102, 103, 152, PSYCHIAT 102

**Stage II courses:** PHIL 205, 210, 211, 217, 250, MGMT 232

**Stage III courses:** PHIL 304, 310, 317, 318, 337, 350, POLITICS 320, 325, MGMT 331, LAW 440

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least one of PHIL 102, 103, 152; and
- at least two of PHIL 205, 210, 211; and
- at least two of PHIL 304, 318; PHIL 310 or POLITICS 320

**Minor must include:**

- at least one of PHIL 102, 103, 152; and
- at least one of PHIL 205, 210, 211

## European Studies

**Stage I courses:** EURLANG 100

- Literature and Cultural Studies: CLASSICS 110, GERMAN 120, ITALIAN 111, POLISH 101, RUSSIAN 112, SPANISH 103

- History: ANCHIST 102, 103, HISTORY 101, 102, 109, 110, 140, 150

- Political Studies and Philosophy: CLASSICS 120, PHIL 152, POLITICS 109

- Art History and Music: ARTHIST 101, 104, 105, MUSIC 141

**Stage II courses:**

- Literature and Cultural Studies: CLASSICS 210, EURLANG 200, 201, 205, 211, 221, FRENCH 231, ITALIAN 210, POLISH 210, RUSSIAN 250, SPANISH 202
- History: ANCHIST 203, HISTORY 215, 235, 240, 245
- Political Studies and Philosophy: CLASSICS 250, 260, PHIL 209, 215, 220, 221, POLITICS 209, 215
- Art History and Music: ARTHIST 201, 203, 207, 210, 211, CLASSICS 270, 280, MUSIC 240–244, 246, 247

**Stage III courses:**

- Literature and Cultural Studies: EURLANG 302, 303, 311, RUSSIAN 350, 390
- History: ANCHIST 314, 324, HISTORY 317, 324, 336, 337, 343, 365
- Political Studies and Philosophy: PHIL 329, 335, 340, 341 POLITICS 327
- Art History and Music: ARTHIST 301, 302, 306, 311, 315, MUSIC 341–347

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at Stage I: EURLANG 100 and one of the following: ANCHIST 103, HISTORY 101, 102; or 109, 110, 140, 150. Students who have taken EURLANG 100 for their School of European Languages and Literatures (SELL) major will have to substitute another Stage I Literature and Cultural Studies course for EURLANG 100
- at Stage II: POLITICS 220 and 4 points from two of Literature and Cultural Studies, History, Political Studies and Philosophy, Art History and Music; or HISTORY 219 and 4 points from two of Literature and Cultural Studies, Political Studies and Philosophy, Art History and Music
- at Stage III: at least 6 points from subjects studied at Stage II
- majoring students must have passed at least 8 points in a European language other than English, or have equivalent competence in such a language

**Film, Television and Media Studies**

**Stage I courses:** FTVMS 100, 101, 110, 111, 112, CHINESE 124, 125, ENGLISH 109, GERMAN 120, ITALIAN 111, POLITICS 113, SCAND 107, WOMEN 101, MUSIC 145

**Stage II courses:** FTVMS 200–203, 210–212, ARTHIST 204, ENGLISH 230, EURLANG 200, LATINAM 201, POLITICS 231, 233, SCAND 205, SOCIOI 211, WOMEN 203

**Stage III courses:** ANTHRO 320, FTVMS 300–322, ARTHIST 320, ENGLISH 331, FRENCH 339, HISTORY 364, MAORI 332, POLITICS 328, SCAND 307, SOCIOI 318, WOMEN 304, 305

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- FTVMS 100 and 101; and
- FTVMS 200; and
- at least one of FTVMS 300, 302, 310, 312, 313

**Minor must include:**

- FTVMS 100 and 101; and
- FTVMS 200

**French**

**Stage I courses:** FRENCH 100–162, EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** FRENCH 200–278

**Stage III courses:** FRENCH 300–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- EURLANG 100; and
  - FRENCH 200 and 300
- FRENCH 151 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- FRENCH 100 or 200

**Geography**

**Stage I courses:** GEOG 101–152

**Stage II courses:** GEOG 201–255

**Stage III courses:** GEOG 302–353

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 6 points from: GEOG 101, 102, 151, 152, 201, 202, 251, 252;

and

- GEOG 204; and
- at least one course from: GEOG 315, 330, 353

**Minor must include:**

- at least 6 points from: GEOG 101, 102, 151, 152, 201, 202, 251, 252

**German**

**Stage I courses:** GERMAN 101–120, EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** GERMAN 201–290, EURLANG 205

**Stage III courses:** GERMAN 301–393

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- EURLANG 100 and GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120; and
- GERMAN 201 and 301

**Minor must include:**

- GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120; and
- GERMAN 201

**Greek**

**Stage I courses:** GREEK 100, 101

**Stage II courses:** GREEK 200–204

**Stage III courses:** GREEK 300–305

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- GREEK 100 and 101; and
- GREEK 200 and 201 and 202; and
- GREEK 300 and 301 and 302

**Minor must include:**

- GREEK 100 and 101

**Health Social Sciences**

**Stage I courses:** ANTHRO 100, 102, 104, GEOG 102, HISTORY 123, MAORI 130, PHIL 102, 103, POLITICS 107, SOCIOI 100, 103, WOMEN 100

**Stage II courses:** ANTHRO 215, 222, GEOG 202, HLTHSOC 200, HISTORY 210, PHIL 210, POLITICS 221, 222, SOCIOI 201, 220

**Stage III courses:** ANTHRO 316, 324, GEOG 305, HLTHSOC 300, HISTORY 329, MAORI 335, PHIL 317, POLITICS 336, SOCIOI 310, 317, 320, 321, 333

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- 4 points from Stage I courses; and
- HLTHSOC 200; and
- HLTHSOC 300 and 4 points from ANTHRO 316, 324, GEOG 305, HISTORY 329, SOCIOI 333

**Minor must include:**

- 4 points from Stage I courses; and
- HLTHSOC 200; and
- HLTHSOC 300

**History**

**Stage I courses:** HISTORY 101–150, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** HISTORY 200–245, ANTHRO 204, FRENCH 231, POLITICS 229

**Stage III courses:** HISTORY 300–365, WOMEN 303, ANTHRO 304

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**History and Philosophy of Science and Technology**

**Stage I courses:** HPST 100, BIOSCI 100, HISTORY 150, PACIFIC 103, PHIL 152, PHYSICS 101, SCIGEN 101

**Stage II courses:** HPST 200, HISTORY 210, 240, PHIL 200, 250, 260, 261, 263, 264, GEOG 205, 255, SCIGEN 201

**Stage III courses:** HPST 300, ANTHRO 300, HISTORY 361, PHIL 317, 320, 361, 363, 364, SOCIOI 311, GEOG 320, 352

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Minor must include:**

- 4 points chosen from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201

## Indonesian

**Stage I courses:** INDO 101–182

**Stage II courses:** INDO 201–299, DUTCH 202

**Stage III courses:** INDO 301–399

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- INDO 230 or 231

## Italian

**Stage I courses:** ITALIAN 106–167, EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** ITALIAN 200–278

**Stage III courses:** ITALIAN 300–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- ITALIAN 107 and EURLANG 100; and
- ITALIAN 200 and 201; and
- ITALIAN 300

ITALIAN 106 and 166 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- ITALIAN 107

## Japanese

**Stage I courses:** JAPANESE 130–150, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** JAPANESE 222–278

**Stage III courses:** JAPANESE 307–390

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- JAPANESE 150, ASIAN 100; and
- JAPANESE 330 or 332 or 339

**Minor must include:**

- JAPANESE 230 or 232 or 239

## Korean

**Stage I courses:** KOREAN 100–121, ASIAN 100

**Stage II courses:** KOREAN 200–278

**Stage III courses:** KOREAN 300–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- ASIAN 100
- KOREAN 200 and 201

**Minor must include:**

- KOREAN 100

## Latin

**Stage I courses:** LATIN 100, 101

**Stage II courses:** LATIN 200–205

**Stage III courses:** LATIN 300–305

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- LATIN 200 and (201 or 202); and
- LATIN 300

**Minor must include:**

- LATIN 200

## Latin American Studies

**Stage I courses:** SPANISH 103, 105, 108

**Stage II courses:** LATINAM 200, 201, HISTORY 231, POLITICS 234, SOCIO 210, SPANISH 205, 211–213, 216

**Stage III courses:** LATINAM 301, HISTORY 310, POLITICS 332, SPANISH 305, 311–314, ECON 342

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- SPANISH 105 or 108 (for students not also taking a major or minor in Spanish)
- LATINAM 201
- At least one of HISTORY 231, POLITICS 234
- At least one of SPANISH 211, 213, 216

- no more than 3 courses in any one discipline, except by permission of the Programme Coordinator

- No more than 1 Spanish language course

**Minor must include:**

- SPANISH 105 or 108 (for students not also taking a major or minor in Spanish)
- LATINAM 201
- At least one of HISTORY 231, POLITICS 234
- At least one of SPANISH 211, 213, 216
- no more than 2 courses in any one discipline, except by permission of the Programme Coordinator
- No more than 1 Spanish language course

## Linguistics

**Stage I courses:** LINGUIST 100–103

**Stage II courses:** LINGUIST 200–205, ENGLISH 202, EURLANG 201

**Stage III courses:** LINGUIST 300–320, ENGLISH 304, 317, 337, EURLANG 301

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- LINGUIST 100 or 103; and
- LINGUIST 200 and 201; and
- LINGUIST 300

**Minor must include:**

- LINGUIST 100 or 103

## Linguistics and English Language Teaching

**Stage I courses:** LINGUIST 100, 101, 103

**Stage II courses:** LINGUIST 200–203, and LANGTCHG 202

**Stage III courses:** LINGUIST 302–305, 307, LANGTCHG 300–302

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- LINGUIST 100 or 103, and 101; and
- LANGTCHG 202; and
- LANGTCHG 300–302

## Logic and Computation

**Stage I courses:** COMPSCI 101, 105, LINGUIST 100, 103, MATHS 152, PHIL 101, 105

**Stage II courses:** COMPSCI 220, 225, 230, LINGUIST 200, MATHS 255, PHIL 201, 216, 219

**Stage III courses:** COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, 365, LINGUIST 300, 302, MATHS 315, 326, 381, PHIL 305, 315, 316

**Major must include:**

- COMPSCI 101, PHIL 101
- COMPSCI 225, PHIL 201

**Minor must include:**

- COMPSCI 101, PHIL 101
- COMPSCI 225, PHIL 201

## Maori Studies

**Stage I courses:** MAORI 101–191, COOKIS 101, 102, POLITICS 107

**Stage II courses:** MAORI 201–292, ANTHRO 207, ARTHIST 205, COOKIS 201, 202, HISTORY 227, POLITICS 221, 229, MGMT 232

**Stage III courses:** MAORI 301–394, ANTHRO 311, COOKIS 301, 302, LINGUIST 306, POLITICS 325, GEOG 321, MGMT 303

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 6 points from Maori language courses

## Mathematics

**Stage I courses:** MATHS 101, 102, 108–162

**Stage II courses:** MATHS 202–270, COMPSCI 225

**Stage III courses:** MATHS 302–320, 326, 328, 331, 340, 347–370, 381–389, STATS 391

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

*(Note: some Mathematics courses are NOT available for BA major or minor)*

## Music

**Stage I courses:** MUSIC 100, 102, 103, 109, 141–154, MUSED 160, ANTHRO 103

**Stage II courses:** MUSIC 201–251, MUSED 260, 264, 267, ANTHRO 214, 219, 232, 233, 238, 272, 273

**Stage III courses:** MUSIC 301, 302, 303, 341–358, MUSED 360, 366, 367, ANTHRO 308, 323, 332–334, 343

*(Note: some Music courses are NOT available for BA major or minor)*

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- (MUSIC 103) and MUSIC 102 and (MUSIC 141); and
- MUSIC 201

Majoring students must participate in School of Music choir or orchestra. (Points from Orchestra and Choral Ensemble courses may be counted as non-Arts points towards the BA, provided that there are not more than 8 points altogether from non-Arts courses)

**Minor must include:**

- (MUSIC 102 or 103) and (MUSIC 141)

## Pacific Studies

**Stage I courses:** COOKIS 101, 102, PACIFIC 103, SAMOAN 101, 102, 103, TONGAN 101, 102, 103, ANTHRO 104, LINGUIST 102

**Stage II courses:** COOKIS 201, 202, 203, PACIFIC 201, 202, 203, 204, SAMOAN 201, 202, TONGAN 201, 202, ANTHRO 204, 234, 238, ARTHIST 213, EDUC 207, HISTORY 230, MUSIC 273, WOMEN 202

**Stage III courses:** PACIFIC 300, COOKIS 301, 302, SAMOAN 301, 302, TONGAN 301, 302, ANTHRO 304, 306, 308, 316, 325, 326, ARTHIST 307, 317, EDUC 309, ENGLISH 335, HISTORY 315, LINGUIST 306, WOMEN 303

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least one of ANTHRO 104, LINGUIST 102; and
- at least one language course at Stage I from Cook Islands Maori, Samoan, Tongan

**Minor must include:**

- at least one of ANTHRO 104, LINGUIST 102; and
- at least one language course at Stage I from Cook Islands Maori, Samoan, Tongan

## Philosophy

**Stage I courses:** PHIL 100–152

**Stage II courses:** PHIL 200–266, CLASSICS 250, 260

**Stage III courses:** PHIL 302–365, POLITICS 320, 325, HPST 300

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Political Studies

**Stage I courses:** POLITICS 106–120

**Stage II courses:** POLITICS 204–240, PHIL 205, MAORI 250, HISTORY 227

**Stage III courses:** POLITICS 312–341, MAORI 330, 335

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Psychology

**Stage I courses:** PSYCH 108–129

**Stage II courses:** PSYCH 201–263

**Stage III courses:** PSYCH 301–364, SPORTSCI 304

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

Students must pass a Stage I Statistics course to major in Psychology

## Russian

**Stage I courses:** RUSSIAN 100–121, EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** RUSSIAN 210–278

**Stage III courses:** RUSSIAN 310–390

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- EURLANG 100 and (RUSSIAN 101 or 112); and
- RUSSIAN 210

RUSSIAN 100 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- RUSSIAN 101 or 112; and
- RUSSIAN 210

## Scandinavian Studies

**Stage I courses:** SCAND 101–162, EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** SCAND 201–290, EURLANG 205

**Stage III courses:** SCAND 301–390

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- SCAND 102 and EURLANG 100

**Minor must include:**

- SCAND 102

## Sociology

**Stage I courses:** SOCIOL 100–105

**Stage II courses:** SOCIOL 200–224, WOMEN 200

**Stage III courses:** SOCIOL 303–334, SPORTSCI 307

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

## Spanish

**Stage I courses:** SPANISH 101–110, EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** SPANISH 200–211, 213–278

**Stage III courses:** SPANISH 300–311, 313–378

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- SPANISH 105 or 108; and EURLANG 100; and
- SPANISH 200 and 201; and
- SPANISH 300; and
- at least two of: SPANISH 202–205, 209–211, 213–216, 301–307, 310, 311, 313, 315–317

SPANISH 104, 107, 212, 221, 309, 312, 320 may not be included in major

**Minor must include:**

- SPANISH 105 or 108

## Statistics

**Stage I courses:** STATS 101–110

**Stage II courses:** STATS 201–255

**Stage III courses:** STATS 301–391

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

*(Note: 2 points from Mathematics courses may be included for a BA major or minor in Statistics)*

## Theatre Studies

**Stage I courses:** THEATRE 101, CLASSICS 110, ENGLISH 109

**Stage II courses:** THEATRE 201, CLASSICS 220, ENGLISH 213, EURLANG 205, ITALIAN 231, 232, MUSIC 240

**Stage III courses:** THEATRE 301, CLASSICS 320, ENGLISH 310, 315, 331, 332, FRENCH 342, MAORI 393

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- THEATRE 101 and 201 and 301

**Minor:** At least 12 points including at least 8 points above Stage I

**Minor must include:**

- THEATRE 101 and 201

## Women's Studies

**Stage I courses:** WOMEN 100, 101

**Stage II courses:** WOMEN 200–205, ANTHRO 211, ARTHIST 207, ITALIAN 203, PHIL 213, POLITICS 213, SOCIOL 214, 222

**Stage III courses:** WOMEN 300–306, EDUC 305, ENGLISH 326, FRENCH 329, HISTORY 320, 343, MAORI 360, SOCIOL 314, 324, MGMT 313, 324

**Major:** At least 16 points including at least 6 points at Stage III

**Major must include:**

- at least 10 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN, of which 4 points must be at Stage III

**Minor must include:**

- at least 6 points from courses with the prefix WOMEN

## Subjects available for minors but not for majors:

**Asian Studies**

**Stage I courses:** ASIAN 100, ANTHRO 103, CHINESE 124, 125, 130, HISTORY 103, INDO 130, JAPANESE 150, KOREAN 120, 121

**Stage II courses:** ASIAN 201, 202, ANTHRO 232, 233, ARCHHTC 207, 214, CHINESE 220, 221, 222, HISTORY 221, 222, 226, INDO 230, 231, JAPANESE 240, 270, KOREAN 230, 240, PHIL 214, POLITICS 226, 228

**Minor must include:**

- ASIAN 100

Any of ANTHRO 305, 332, 333, ARCHHTC 307, 314, ECON 343, GEOG 322, HISTORY 312, 313, 346, 348, JAPANESE 324, 341, 381, 385, 390, KOREAN 340, SOCIOL 313, may be included for the minor in Asian Studies

**Comparative Literature**

**Stage I courses:** COMPLIT 100, CHINESE 124, 125, CLASSICS 110, 130, RUSSIAN 113, WOMEN 101

**Stage II courses:** COMPLIT 200–204, CHINESE 221, 222, CLASSICS 210, 220, 230, ENGLISH 230, EURLANG 205, 211, 221, KOREAN 230, SOCIOL 211, SPANISH 212, THEATRE 201, WOMEN 201, 203

**Stage III courses:** COMPLIT 300

**Minor must include:**

- at least 4 points from COMPLIT courses
  - no more than 4 points from other courses with the same subject
- Minor is available only to students taking at least 4 points in courses with a literary content with texts in a language other than English

**Cook Islands Maori**

**Stage I courses:** COOKIS 101, 102

**Stage II courses:** COOKIS 201–203

**Stage III courses:** COOKIS 301, 302

**Ethnomusicology**

**Stage I courses:** ANTHRO 103, MUSIC 145

**Stage II courses:** ANTHRO 214, 219, 232, 233, 238, 239, MUSIC 245, 272, 273

**Stage III courses:** ANTHRO 308, 323, 332–344

**Minor must include:**

- ANTHRO 103 and 219

**Medieval and Early Modern European Studies****Schedule A Language Acquisition Courses:**

**Stage I courses:** DUTCH 100, 101, FRENCH 100, 110, 151, 152, 160, GERMAN 101, 102, 104, GREEK 100, 101, ITALIAN 106, 107, 166, 167, LATIN 100, 101, RUSSIAN 100, 101, SCAND 101, 102, SPANISH 104, 105, 107, 108

**Stage II courses:** DUTCH 201, 210, 277, 278, FRENCH 200, 277, 278, GERMAN 201, 277, 278, GREEK 200, ITALIAN 200, 201, 277, 278, LATIN 200, RUSSIAN 210, 277, 278, SCAND 201, 277, 278, SPANISH 200, 201, 277, 278

**Stage III courses:** DUTCH 301, 377, 378, FRENCH 300, 377, 378, GERMAN 301, 302, 377, 378, 390, GREEK 300, ITALIAN 300, 377, 378, LATIN 300, RUSSIAN 310, 377, 378, SCAND 301, 377, 378, SPANISH 300, 377, 378

**Schedule B:**

**Stage I courses:** ARTHIST 101, ENGLISH 100, HISTORY 140

**Stage II courses:** ARTHIST 203, 224, CTHTHEO 250, EURLANG 205, ENGLISH 200, 202, 210, 213, HISTORY 200, 215, 219, ITALIAN 209, 210, MUSIC 241, 242, 246, PHIL 204, SPANISH 202

**Stage III courses:** ARTHIST 301, 304, 306, 315, ENGLISH 302, 310, 314, 315, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, EURLANG 311, FRENCH 306, GERMAN 330, HISTORY 332, 336, 343, ITALIAN 302, 303, PHIL 302, SPANISH 301, 302

**Minor must include:**

- 4 points from Schedule A
- 8 points from Schedule B, including at least one of: ARTHIST 203, 224, HISTORY 215, 219

**Music Education**

**Stage I course:** MUSED 160

**Stage II courses:** MUSED 260, 264, 267

**Stage III courses:** MUSED 360, 366, 367

**Minor must include:**

- MUSED 160 and MUSED 264

**Samoan**

**Stage I courses:** SAMOAN 101–103

**Stage II courses:** SAMOAN 201, 202

**Stage III courses:** SAMOAN 301, 302

Courses from the following subjects are also available for the BA, although no major or minor can be taken in these subjects:

**Biological Sciences**

**Stage I courses:** BIOSCI 100

**Computer Science**

**Stage I courses:** COMPSCI 101, 105, 111

**Croatian**

**Stage I courses:** CROATIAN 100, 101

**English as a Second Language**

**Stage I courses:** ESOL 101, 102

**Stage II courses:** ESOL 200–202

*(Note: available only to students from non-English speaking backgrounds)*

**English Writing**

**Stage I course:** ENGWRI 101

**European Languages and Literatures**

**Stage I course:** EURLANG 100

**Stage II courses:** EURLANG 200, 201, 211, 221

**Stage III course:** EURLANG 301

**Hebrew**

**Stage I course:** BSTHEO 135

**Language Teaching and Learning**

**Stage II course:** LANGTCHG 202

**Stage III courses:** LANGTCHG 300, 301, 302

**Physics**

**Stage I courses:** PHYSICS 101, 102, 107

**Polish**

**Stage I courses:** POLISH 100, 101, 102

**Stage II course:** POLISH 210

**Tongan**

**Stage I courses:** TONGAN 101–103

**Stage II courses:** TONGAN 201, 202

**Stage III courses:** TONGAN 301, 302

## The Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) – BA(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or any other equivalent qualification as approved by Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the subjects listed in the schedule below with an average of B- or higher in the 6 points at Stage III
  - and*
  - c approval from the relevant Head of the Department or Programme Coordinator.
- 2 A student who has not completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts but who has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points for that degree
  - and*
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the subjects listed in the schedule below with an average of B- or higher in the 6 points at Stage III

may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, enrol for this degree. The remaining courses for the Bachelor of Arts degree must be passed within the first semester of enrolment for the Bachelor of Arts (Honours). The Bachelor of Arts (Honours) degree will not be awarded until the requirements for the Bachelor of Arts have been completed.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3
  - a A student enrolling for this degree has to follow a programme for one full-time year or two consecutive part-time years and pass courses with a value of 14 points.
  - b The total enrolment for this degree may not exceed 18 points.
- 4 The requirements for this degree must normally be completed within two years of initial enrolment for the degree.

### Structure and Content

- 5 In consultation with the relevant Head of Department or Programme Coordinator, a student is to choose at least 14 points as specified for one of the subjects listed in the schedule. With the approval of the Heads of all Departments concerned, up to 6 points from appropriate master's level courses from other subjects may be included in these 14 points.

### Research Component/Dissertation

- 6 Where a dissertation is included in the programme:
  - a the dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by Senate or its representative
  - b the dissertation topic must be approved by the relevant Head of Department or Programme Coordinator before enrolment for it
  - c the dissertation must be submitted by:
    - (i) the last day of semester of the second semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a full-time basis
    - or*
    - (ii) the last day of semester of the fourth semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a part-time basis.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8
  - a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First or Second Division.
  - b Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999.

## Bachelor of Arts (Honours) (BA(Hons)) Schedule

### Ancient History

**Prerequisite:** A major in Ancient History or Classical Studies, or a major in Greek or Latin plus 12 points in Ancient History or Classical Studies. Students must have passed at least one of ANCHIST 310, 340, GREEK 101, LATIN 101

**Requirement:**

- at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; and
- up to 10 points from ANCHIST 700–780

### Anthropology

**Prerequisite:** A major in Anthropology

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731
- 10 points from ANTHRO 700–740, MAORI 731

*or*

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731
- 6 points from ANTHRO 700–740, MAORI 731
- 4 points: ANTHRO 780 Honours Dissertation

### Art History

**Prerequisite:** A major in Art History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from ARTHIST 702–720, 793

*or*

- 10 points from ARTHIST 702–720, 793
- 4 points: ARTHIST 790 Honours Dissertation

### Chinese

**Prerequisite:** A major in Chinese, including either CHINESE 301 and 305, or 310 and 311

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from CHINESE 700–732

*or*

- 10 points from CHINESE 700–732
- 4 points: CHINESE 780 Honours Dissertation

### Comparative Literature

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of: Chinese, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, or Spanish, and a minor in another of these or Korean. Students will need to satisfy the Head of any Department in which they wish to take master's level literature courses that they have an adequate language ability for studying such courses

**Requirement:**

At least 14 points from master's level courses as follows:

- at least 4 points from COMPLIT 700–703 (any student who has not passed undergraduate courses in Comparative Literature will be required to take COMPLIT 700)
- at least 4 points from master's level literature courses in the subject of the student's BA major
- at least 4 points from master's level literature courses in a subject other than the student's BA major from: Chinese, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori, Russian, Spanish

### Drama

**Prerequisite:** A Bachelor's degree containing advanced level courses in Drama or Theatre

**Requirement:**

14 points from master's level courses including:

- 4 points: DRAMA 701
- At least 6 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720–721, ENGLISH 706, 709 as approved by the Coordinator of Drama Studies and the Head of the Department of English

### Economics

**Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics including at least 6 points at Stage III. Students must have passed the following courses with a grade of at least B- in each: ECON 201, 211, 381 and either 321 or 322

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723
- 6 points from ECON 702–783
- 2 points: ECON 789 Research Essay

### Education

**Prerequisite:** A major in Education

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772

*or*

- 8 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772
- 6 points: EDUC 785 Honours Dissertation

### Employment Relations and Organisation Studies

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Employment Relations and Organisation Studies

**Requirement:**

- 2 points: MGMT 789 Research Essay
- 2 points from MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 8 points from:
  - Organisational Change and Innovation: MGMT 721–724
- or*
- Organisation, Culture and Business: MGMT 731–737
- 2 points from MGMT 714–736

### Film, Television and Media Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Film, Television and Media Studies

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from FTVMS 702–733, ITALIAN 733

### French

**Prerequisite:** A major in French

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from FRENCH 700–750

*or*

- 8 points from FRENCH 700–750, EURLANG 700
- 6 points: FRENCH 785 Honours Dissertation

### Geography

**Prerequisite:** A major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- 2 points: GEOG 701
- 8 points from GEOG 711–779
- 4 points: GEOG 789 Dissertation

### German

**Prerequisite:** A major in German

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: GERMAN 701
- 10 points from GERMAN 702–727

*or*

- 4 points: GERMAN 701
- 6 points from GERMAN 702–740, EURLANG 700
- 4 points: GERMAN 780 Honours Dissertation

## Greek

**Prerequisite:** A major in Greek

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: GREEK 700
- 10 points from GREEK 701–713

## History

**Prerequisite:** A major in History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: HISTORY 710
- 12 points from HISTORY 701–761

*or*

- 2 points: HISTORY 710
- 8 points from HISTORY 701–761
- 4 points: HISTORY 780 Honours Dissertation

## Indonesian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Indonesian including INDO 230 or 231

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from INDO 700–780

*or*

- 8 points from INDO 700–780
- 6 points: INDO 785 Honours Dissertation

## Italian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Italian

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: ITALIAN 700
- 10 points from ITALIAN 701–734, EURLANG 700

*or*

- 4 points: ITALIAN 700
- 6 points from ITALIAN 701–734, EURLANG 700
- 4 points: ITALIAN 780 Honours Dissertation

## Japanese

**Prerequisite:** A major in Japanese

**Requirement:**

- 14 points: JAPANESE 704–751

## Latin

**Prerequisite:** A major in Latin together with GREEK 100 and 101

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: LATIN 700
- 10 points from LATIN 701–713

## Linguistics

**Prerequisite:** A major in Linguistics

**Requirement:**

- 12 points from LINGUIST 707, 720–735, 740–741
- 2 points: LINGUIST 709

## Logic and Computation

**Prerequisite:** A BA major in Logic and Computation

**Requirement:**

At least 14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:

- COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
- LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
- MATHS 713
- PHIL 736, 737, 738
- LOGICOMP 701, 702
- LOGICOMP 780 Honours Dissertation (4 points)

## Maori Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Maori Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from MAORI 700–745, MGMT 771

*or*

- 8 points from MAORI 700–745, MGMT 771
- 6 points: MAORI 785 Honours Dissertation

## Mathematics

**Prerequisite:** Mathematics 445.231 or 445.252 or (MATHS 253 and 255) or equivalent courses approved by the Head of Department plus at least two of COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 201, 210, 255, and at least 8 points in courses at Stage III or higher approved by the Head of Department including at least 6 points at Stage III or higher in Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from MATHS 701–794

## Medieval and Early Modern European Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of Art History, Christian Thought and History, Dutch Studies, English, European Studies, French, German, History, Italian, Music, Philosophy, Political Studies, Russian, Spanish

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: MEDEMS 700; plus
- 12 points from ARTHIST 709, ENGLISH 700, 706, 712, 718, 719, 721, 741, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 754, FRENCH 701, 712, 713, GERMAN 718, 719, HISTORY 722, 736, ITALIAN 706, 710, 711, 720, PHIL 752, 753, RUSSIAN 719, SPANISH 701, 703, 720, 730

*or*

- 2 points: MEDEMS 700; plus
- 8 points from ARTHIST 709, ENGLISH 700, 706, 712, 718, 719, 721, 724, 737, 741, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 754, FRENCH 701, 712, 713, GERMAN 718, 719, HISTORY 722, 736, ITALIAN 706, 710, 711, 720, PHIL 752, 753, RUSSIAN 719, SPANISH 701, 703, 720, 730; plus
- 4 points: MEDEMS 780 Honours Dissertation

## Music

**Prerequisite:** A major in Music including MUSIC 301, at least one of MUSIC 341–344, and at least one of ANTHRO 308 and MUSIC 350

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: MUSIC 750 or ANTHRO 727; and

*either*

- 8 points from MUSIC 750, 751, ANTHRO 727, (MUSIC 701 and 702), (740 and 741), 744, 745, (752 and 753); plus
- 2 points from MUSIC 746, 747, 757, 758, 759 and any of the courses listed above

*or*

- 4 points from MUSIC 750, 751, ANTHRO 727, (MUSIC 701 and 702), (740 and 741), 744, 745, (752 and 753), plus
- 2 points from MUSIC 746, 747, 757, 758, 759 and any of the courses listed above
- 4 points: MUSIC 789 Dissertation

## Philosophy

**Prerequisite:** A major in Philosophy

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from PHIL 720–769, POLITICS 723

*or*

- 10 points from PHIL 720–769, POLITICS 723
- 4 points: PHIL 780 Honours Dissertation

## Political Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Political Studies

**Requirement:***either*

- 14 points from POLITICS 703–758

*or*

- 10 points from POLITICS 703–758
- 4 points: POLITICS 780 Honours Dissertation

**Psychology**

**Prerequisite:** Either (a) 18 points in Psychology including PSYCH 306 and 6 further points at Stage III, or (b) in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department, 16 points in Psychology, including PSYCH 306 and 4 further points at Stage III

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from PSYCH 701–745
- 4 points: PSYCH 789 Honours Dissertation in Psychology

**Russian**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Russian including RUSSIAN 310, 311, 312 and 313

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from RUSSIAN 710–726

**Sociology**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Sociology including one of 315.312, SOCIOL 320, 321

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from SOCIOL 700–735

**Spanish**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Spanish including at least two advanced literature courses, one of which must be at Stage III

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: SPANISH 700
- 10 points from SPANISH 701–750

**Statistics**

**Prerequisite:** STATS 210 and one of 445.252, MATHS 208, 230, plus 8 points at Stage III or above approved by the Head of the Department of Statistics. At least 6 of these 8 points should be from courses in Statistics.

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: STATS 730, 782
- 8 points from STATS 708–787, 792–795
- 2 points: STATS 789

**Women's Studies**

**Prerequisite:** A major in Women's Studies

**Requirement:***either*

- 14 points from WOMEN 700–706

*or*

- 8 points from WOMEN 700–706
- 6 points: WOMEN 785 Honours Dissertation

**The Degree of Master of Arts – MA**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate  
*and*
  - (ii) passed the prerequisite courses for the intended subject as specified in the schedule to these regulations with an average grade of B– or higher in the 6 points at Stage III

*or*

  - completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) in the intended subject, with at least Second Class Honours, First Division, or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate.
- A student who has not completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts but who has:
  - passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree  
*and*
  - passed all the prerequisite courses for the intended subject as specified in the schedule to these regulations  
*and*
  - achieved an average grade of B– or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses

may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, enrol for this degree. The remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts must be passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for the Degree of Master of Arts. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts not be completed in this time, the enrolment for the Degree of Master of Arts will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of:
  - two consecutive full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts or equivalent

*or*

  - one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) or equivalent.

- 4 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted normally has to follow a programme of:
- a four consecutive part-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts or equivalent
  - or*
  - b two consecutive part-time years and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts (Honours) or equivalent.

### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree must choose, in consultation with the relevant Head of Department, courses totalling at least 28 points and meeting the requirements for a subject listed in the schedule to these regulations.
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree must choose, in consultation with the relevant Head of Department, either a thesis or a research portfolio with a value of 14 points, or a thesis with a value of 10 points and courses which total at least 4 points, from master's level courses listed for a subject in the schedule to these regulations.
- c The approval of the relevant Head of Department or Programme Coordinator is required for each student's personal programme. Where courses from other subjects are included, these must be approved also by the Head of the other Department.
- 6 Unless otherwise stated in requirements for a subject as listed in the schedule to these regulations:
- a a student who has to complete 28 points for this degree may include, with the approval of the Heads of all Departments concerned, master's level courses from other subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations or for other master's degrees, or courses at Stage III level available for the Bachelor of Arts, provided that:
    - (i) the overall programme contains no more than 8 points from courses in other subjects
    - and*
    - (ii) the overall programme contains no more than 4 points from courses at Stage III
  - b a student who has to complete 14 points for this degree may include, with the approval of the Heads of all Departments concerned, up to 4 points from master's level courses from other subjects listed in the schedule or for other master's degrees.

### Thesis/Dissertation

- 7 a A thesis or dissertation, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis or dissertation topic has to be approved by the relevant Head of Department before enrolment for it.
- c The thesis or dissertation is to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

---

## Master of Arts (MA) Schedule

---

Subjects available for this degree are:

### Ancient History

**Prerequisite:** A major in Ancient History or Classical Studies, or a major in Greek or Latin plus 12 points in Ancient History or Classical Studies. Students must have passed at least one of ANCHIST 310, 340, GREEK 101, LATIN 101

**Requirement:**  
*either*

- 18 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
  - 10 points: ANCHIST 794 Thesis
  - or*
  - 22 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
  - 6 points: ANCHIST 792 Dissertation
- or*

- 24 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
  - 4 points: ANCHIST 790 Dissertation
- or
- 14 points from ANCHIST 700–780, including at least 4 points from ANCHIST 705, 706, 710–713, 730–733, 772, 773; plus
  - 14 points: ANCHIST 797 Research Portfolio

## Anthropology

**Prerequisite:** A major in Anthropology

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731; plus
- 10 points from ANTHRO 700–740, MAORI 731; plus
- 14 points: ANTHRO 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: ANTHRO 797 Research Portfolio

or

- 4 points: ANTHRO 700 or 710 or 727 or 731; plus
- 18 points from ANTHRO 700–740, MAORI 731; plus
- 6 points: ANTHRO 792 Dissertation

## Art History

**Prerequisite:** A major in Art History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from ARTHIST 702–720, 793; plus
- 14 points: ARTHIST 796 Thesis; or

or

- 22 points from ARTHIST 702–720, 793; plus
- 6 points: ARTHIST 792 Dissertation

or

- 28 points from ARTHIST 702–720, 793

## Asian Studies

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in an Asian Language and a minor in China Studies, Japan Studies or Southeast Asia Studies, or such Stage II and III courses in Asian or Asia-related fields in other subjects as the respective Heads of Departments approve

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 18 points from courses; plus
- 10 points: ASIAN 794 Thesis

or

- 24 points from courses; plus
- 4 points: ASIAN 790 Dissertation

or

- 14 points from courses available for the subject; plus
  - 14 points: ASIAN 797 Research Portfolio
- Courses are to be chosen from those available for the MA in two or three different subjects and should include at least 12 points from courses listed for Chinese, Japanese or Indonesian

## Chinese

**Prerequisite:** A major in Chinese, including either CHINESE 301 and 305, or 310 and 311

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 8 points: CHINESE 701, 719; plus
- another 10 points from CHINESE 700–732; plus
- 10 points: CHINESE 794 Thesis

or

- 8 points: CHINESE 701, 719; plus
- another 16 points from CHINESE 700–732; plus
- 4 points: CHINESE 790 Dissertation

or

- 8 points from CHINESE 701, 719; plus
- another 6 points from CHINESE 700–732; plus
- 14 points: CHINESE 797 Research Portfolio

## Comparative Literature

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of: Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian or Spanish and a minor in another of these or Korean, except that, where English is the major, the second language and literature must also be a major. Students will need to satisfy the Head of any Department in which they wish to take master's level language or literature courses that they have an adequate language ability for studying such courses

**Requirement:**

At least 28 points from master's level courses as follows:

- at least 8 points from master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major; plus
- at least 6 points from master's level courses in the subject of the student's second major or minor from: Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish; plus
- 2 points: EURLANG 700
- at least 10 points from COMPLIT 700–794 including either 792 Dissertation (6 points) or 794 Thesis (10 points)

or

- at least 6 points from master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major; plus
- at least 4 points from master's level courses in the subject of the student's second major or minor from: Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish; plus
- 2 points: EURLANG 700
- 14 points: COMPLIT 797 Research Portfolio

Any student who has not passed undergraduate courses in Comparative Literature will be required to take COMPLIT 700

## Development Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of the subjects available for the MA in Development Studies or, in exceptional cases, such other subject as approved by the Director of Development Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: DEVELOP 700; plus
- up to 4 points in research methods courses approved by the Director; plus
- up to 8 points from DEVELOP 701-703, 708 and courses available for master's degrees in two (or exceptionally, three) of the subjects listed below, including 4 points from the subject of the BA major; plus
- 14 points: DEVELOP 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: DEVELOP 797 Research Portfolio

or

- 4 points: DEVELOP 700; plus
- up to 4 points in research methods courses approved by the Director; plus
- up to 16 points from DEVELOP 701-703, 708 and courses available for master's degrees in two (or exceptionally, three) of the subjects listed below, including 8 points from the subject of the BA major; plus
- 6 points: DEVELOP 792 Dissertation

**Subjects available:** Anthropology (Social), Economics, Education, Geography, History, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Maori Studies, Political Studies, Sociology. No more than 2 points from Stage III courses, and no more than 8 points from courses in Management and Employment Relations and International Business, may be included for the MA in Development Studies

## Drama

**Prerequisite:** A Bachelor's degree containing advanced level courses in Drama or Theatre

**Requirement:**

28 points approved by the Coordinator of Drama Studies and the Head of the Department of English:

*either*

- 4 points: DRAMA 701
- at least 16 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720–721, ENGLISH 706, 709
- or*
- 4 points: DRAMA 701
- a minimum of 12 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720–721, ENGLISH 706, 709; plus
- 4 points: DRAMA 790 Dissertation in Drama
- or*
- 4 points: DRAMA 701
- a minimum of 6 points from DRAMA 702–707, 720, 721, ENGLISH 706, 709; plus
- 10 points: DRAMA 794 Thesis
- or*
- 14 points from courses available for the major; plus
- 14 points: DRAMA 797 Research Portfolio

### Economics

**Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics including at least 6 points at Stage III. Students must have passed the following courses with a grade of at least B– in each: ECON 201, 211, 381 and either 321 or 322

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723; plus
- 8 points from ECON 702–783; plus
- 14 points: ECON 796 Thesis
- or*
- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723; plus
- 18 points from ECON 702–783; plus
- 4 points: ECON 790 Dissertation

### Education

**Prerequisite:** A major in Education

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772; plus
- 14 points: EDUC 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: EDUC 797 Research Portfolio
- or*
- 24 points from EDUC 701–789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 772; plus
- 4 points: EDUC 790 Dissertation

### Employment Relations and Organisation Studies

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Employment Relations and Organisation Studies

**Requirement:**

- 4 points from MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 8 points from:
  - Organisational Change and Innovation: MGMT 721–724
- or*
- Organisation, Culture and Business: MGMT 731–737
- 2 points from MGMT 714–736
- 14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

### English

**Prerequisite:** A major in English

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 18 points from ENGLISH 700–760, FTVMS 721; plus
- 10 points: ENGLISH 794 Thesis
- or*
- 22 points from ENGLISH 700–760, FTVMS 721; plus
- 6 points: ENGLISH 792 Dissertation
- or*
- 28 points from ENGLISH 700–760, FTVMS 721
- or*
- 14 points from English 700–760, FTVMS 721; plus
- 14 points: ENGLISH 797 Research Portfolio

### Film, Television and Media Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Film, Television and Media Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 18 points from FTVMS 702–734, ITALIAN 733, POLITICS 732; plus
- 10 points: FTVMS 794 Thesis
- or*
- 24 points from FTVMS 702–734, ITALIAN 733, POLITICS 732; plus
- 4 points: FTVMS 790 Dissertation
- or*
- 4 points: FTVMS 703; plus
- 24 points from FTVMS 702, 705–734, ITALIAN 733, POLITICS 732
- or*
- 14 points from courses available for the subject; plus
- 14 points: FTVMS 797 Research Portfolio

### French

**Prerequisite:** A major in French

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from FRENCH 700–750, EURLANG 700; plus
- 14 points: FRENCH 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: FRENCH 797 Research Portfolio
- or*
- 22 points from FRENCH 700–750, EURLANG 700; plus
- 6 points: FRENCH 792 Dissertation
- or*
- 24 points from FRENCH 700–750, EURLANG 700; plus
- 4 points: FRENCH 790 Dissertation

### Geography

**Prerequisite:** A major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- 2 points: GEOG 701; plus
  - 12 points from GEOG 711–779; plus
  - 14 points: GEOG 796 Thesis
- Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Geography

### German

**Prerequisite:** A major in German

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 6 points: GERMAN 701, EURLANG 700; plus
- 8 points from GERMAN 702–741; plus
- 14 points: GERMAN 796 Thesis B; or
- 14 points: GERMAN 797 Research Portfolio
- or*
- 6 points: GERMAN 701, EURLANG 700; plus
- 12 points from GERMAN 702–741; plus
- 10 points: GERMAN 794 Thesis A
- or*
- 6 points: GERMAN 701, EURLANG 700; plus
- 16 points from GERMAN 702–741; plus
- 6 points: GERMAN 792 Dissertation

### Greek

**Prerequisite:** A major in Greek

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: GREEK 700; plus
  - 20 points from GREEK 701–713, including either 701 or 704; plus
  - 4 points: GREEK 790 Dissertation
  - or*
  - 14 points from GREEK 700–713, including GREEK 700 and 701 or 704
  - 14 points: GREEK 797 Research Portfolio
- Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Greek

## History

**Prerequisite:** A major in History

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: HISTORY 710; plus
- 12 points from HISTORY 701–761; plus
- 14 points: HISTORY 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: HISTORY 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 2 points: HISTORY 710; plus
- 20 points from HISTORY 701–761; plus
- 6 points: HISTORY 792 Dissertation

Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in History

## Indonesian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Indonesian including INDO 230 or 231. Knowledge of Dutch or concurrent enrolment in Dutch language is required for the MA in Indonesian

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from INDO 700–780; plus
- 14 points: INDO 796 Thesis B; or
- 14 points: INDO 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 18 points from INDO 700–780; plus
- 10 points: INDO 794 Thesis A

## Italian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Italian

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 6 points: ITALIAN 700, EURLANG 700; plus
- 8 points from ITALIAN 701–734; plus
- 14 points: ITALIAN 796 Thesis A; or
- 14 points: ITALIAN 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 6 points: ITALIAN 700, EURLANG 700; plus
- 12 points from ITALIAN 701–734; plus
- 10 points: ITALIAN 794 Thesis B

*or*

- 6 points: ITALIAN 700, EURLANG 700; plus
- 16 points from ITALIAN 701–734; plus
- 6 points: ITALIAN 792 Dissertation

## Japanese

**Prerequisite:** A major in Japanese

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 2 points: JAPANESE 710 or 720; plus
- 16 points from JAPANESE 704–751; plus
- 10 points: JAPANESE 794 Thesis

*or*

- 2 points: JAPANESE 710 or 720; plus
- 22 points from JAPANESE 704–751; plus
- 4 points: JAPANESE 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 14 points from JAPANESE 704–751; plus
- 14 points: JAPANESE 797 Research Portfolio

Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Japanese

## Korean

It is not possible to take an MA in Korean alone. However, KOREAN 700, 701, 708, 709, 710, 730 may be taken; with the permission of the relevant Head of Department, as part of an MA in another subject

## Languages and Literature

**Prerequisite:** A major in one of the subjects listed below, and at least 12 points in another of these including a Stage III language acquisition course (or equivalent language competence)

**Requirement:**

- 14 points in courses available for the MA in one of the subjects listed below; plus

- 14 points in courses available for the MA in a second one of these subjects, or in such courses in combination with COMPLIT 700–794

*or*

- 14 points from courses available for the subject; plus
- 14 points: LANGLIT 797 Research Portfolio

The 28 points for the MA in Languages and Literature may include a Thesis or Dissertation in one of the component subjects. Where a language other than the student's first language is a component of their programme, the appropriate language acquisition course will normally need to be included.

**Subjects available:** Chinese, English, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish.

## Language Teaching and Learning

**Prerequisite:** A BA(Hons) or a BA with a major in a language and/or in Linguistics. Students with a Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching may be admitted to the 14 point MA in Language Teaching. International students who are not native speakers of English will also need a minimum score of 600 TOEFL or 6.5 IELTS or equivalent

**Requirement:**

For students taking the 28 point MA:

- 2 points: LANGTCHG 723 Theories of Language Learning, and

*either*

- 22 points from elective courses; plus
- 4 points: LANGTCHG 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 20 points from elective courses; plus
- 6 points: LANGTCHG 792 Dissertation

*or*

- 16 points from elective courses; plus
- 10 points: LANGTCHG 794 Thesis

*or*

- 12 points from elective courses; plus
- 14 points: LANGTCHG 797 Research Portfolio

For students entering with a BA(Hons) or equivalent and taking the 14 point MA:

- 14 points from LANGTCHG 704, 720–724 and 730

For students entering with the Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching and taking the 14 point MA:

- 2 points: LANGTCHG 723; plus

*either*

- 8 points from elective courses
- 4 points: LANGTCHG 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 6 points from elective courses
- 6 points: LANGTCHG 792 Dissertation

*or*

- 2 points from elective courses
- 10 points: LANGTCHG 794 Thesis.

Elective courses are to be chosen with the approval of the Head of the Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics from Master's level courses in Language Teaching, and Master's level courses from a language subject or Linguistics or another relevant subject

## Latin

**Prerequisite:** A major in Latin, together with GREEK 100 and 101

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: LATIN 700; plus
- 20 points from LATIN 701–713, including 701 or 704; plus
- 4 points: LATIN 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 14 points from LATIN 700–713, including LATIN 700 and 701 or 704; plus

- 14 points: LATIN 797 Research Portfolio

Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Latin

## Linguistics

**Prerequisite:** A major in Linguistics

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 16 points from LINGUIST 707, 708, 720–735; plus
- 2 points: LINGUIST 709; plus
- 10 points: LINGUIST 794 Thesis

*or*

- 22 points from LINGUIST 707, 708, 720–735; plus
- 2 points: LINGUIST 709; plus
- 4 points: LINGUIST 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 14 points from courses available for the major; plus
- 14 points: LINGUIST 797 Research Portfolio

Stage III courses may not be taken for the MA in Linguistics

## Logic and Computation

**Prerequisite:** A major in Logic and Computation

**Requirement:**

At least 14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:

- COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
- LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
- MATHS 713
- PHIL 736, 737, 738
- LOGICOMP 701, 702

*and*

- 14 points: LOGICOMP 796 Thesis

## Maori Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Maori Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from MAORI 700–745, MGMT 771; plus
- 14 points: MAORI 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: MAORI 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 22 points from MAORI 700–745, MGMT 771; plus
- 6 points: MAORI 792 Dissertation

## Mathematics

**Prerequisite:** 445.231 or (MATHS 253 and 255) or 445.252 or equivalent courses approved by the Head of Department plus at least two of COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 201, 210, 255, and at least 8 points in courses at Stage III or higher approved by the Head of Department, including at least 6 points at Stage III or higher in Mathematics

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from MATHS 701–794; plus
- 14 points: MATHS 796 Thesis

*or*

- 14 points from MATHS 701–794; plus
- 14 points: MATHS 797 Advanced Studies in Mathematics

*or*

- 6 points from project courses MATHS 791–794; plus
- 22 points from MATHS 701–794

## Medieval and Early Modern European Studies

**Prerequisite:** BA(Hons) in Medieval and Early Modern European Studies, or equivalent qualification

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points: MEDEMS 796 Thesis

*or*

- 14 points: MEDEMS 797 Research Portfolio

## Music

**Prerequisite:** A major in Music including MUSIC 301, at least one of MUSIC 341–344, and at least one of ANTHRO 308 and MUSIC 350. A pass in ANTHRO 103 is also required. Where necessary a student may be required to satisfy the Head of the School of Music of ability to read an approved language other than English

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: MUSIC 750 or ANTHRO 727; plus
- 8 points from MUSIC 750, 751, ANTHRO 727, MUSIC 701 and 702, 740 and 741, 744, 745, 752 and 753; plus
- 2 points from MUSIC 746, 747, 757, 758, 759 and any of the courses listed above
- 14 points: MUSIC 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: MUSIC 797 Research Portfolio

## New Zealand Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in a subject from the list below, and a total of 12 points from at least two other subjects in the list. Students will be required to satisfy the Director of New Zealand Studies that they have passed at least 14 points in courses with substantial New Zealand content. Competency in Maori language, equivalent to passes in Maori Studies MAORI 101 and 260.102, will be required or may be acquired while the student is enrolled for this programme

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: NZSTUD 701; plus
- 10 points from courses available for the MA in two of the subjects below, including at least 4 points from the subject of the student's BA major; plus
- 14 points: NZSTUD 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: NZSTUD 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 4 points: NZSTUD 701; plus
- 18 points from courses available for the MA in two of the subjects below, including at least 8 points from the subject of the student's BA major; plus
- 6 points: NZSTUD 792 Dissertation

No more than 2 points in Stage III courses may be included for the MA in New Zealand Studies

**Subjects available:** Anthropology, Art History, Education, English, Geography, History, Maori Studies, Political Studies, Sociology

## Pacific Studies

**Prerequisite:** Either (a) a major in Pacific Studies in the BA and a minor in one of: Anthropology, Art History, Comparative Literature, Cook Islands Maori, Education, English, History, Linguistics, Maori Studies, Samoan, Sociology, Tongan, Women's Studies; or (b) a major in one of these subjects and a minor in Pacific Studies or its equivalent (i.e. at least 12 points, including at least 8 points above Stage I, from courses with a substantial Pacific content)

Competence in a Pacific language is also a prerequisite (e.g. a pass in SAMOAN 102, COOKIS 102, TONGAN 102, or equivalent). Language courses may be taken concurrently with the MA programme to meet this requirement

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: PACIFIC 700; plus
- at least 4 points from master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major, or in the subject of the BA minor if the major was Pacific Studies; plus
- up to 6 points from PACIFIC 701, 702, and appropriate Master's level courses in one of the subjects listed below; plus
- 14 points: PACIFIC 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: PACIFIC 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 4 points: PACIFIC 700; plus
- at least 4 points from master's level courses in the subject of the student's BA major, or in the subject of the BA minor if the major was Pacific Studies; plus

- up to 14 points from PACIFIC 701, 702, and appropriate Master's level courses in one of the subjects listed below; plus
- 6 points: PACIFIC 792 Dissertation

**Subjects available:** Anthropology, Art History, Comparative Literature, Development Studies, Education, English, French, Geography, History, Language Teaching, Linguistics, Maori Studies, Sociology, Women's Studies

## Philosophy

**Prerequisite:** A major in Philosophy

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from PHIL 720-769, POLITICS 723; plus
- 14 points: PHIL 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: PHIL 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 22 points from PHIL 720-769, POLITICS 723; plus
- 6 points: PHIL 792 Dissertation

*or*

- 28 points from PHIL 720-769, POLITICS 723

## Political Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Political Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from POLITICS 703-758; plus
- 14 points: POLITICS 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: POLITICS 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 24 points from POLITICS 703-758; plus
- 4 points: POLITICS 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 28 points from POLITICS 703-758

## Psychology

**Prerequisite:** Either (a) 18 points in Psychology including PSYCH 306 and 6 further points at Stage III, or (b) in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department, 16 points in Psychology, including PSYCH 306 and 4 further points at Stage III

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from PSYCH 701-745
- 14 points: PSYCH 796 Thesis

## Russian

**Prerequisite:** A major in Russian including RUSSIAN 310, 311, and 312 or 313

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: RUSSIAN 710; plus
- 2 points: EURLANG 700
- 4 points from RUSSIAN 711-716; plus
- 4 points from RUSSIAN 719-726; plus
- 14 points: RUSSIAN 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: RUSSIAN 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 4 points: RUSSIAN 710; plus
- 2 points: EURLANG 700
- 18 points from RUSSIAN 711-726, including at least 4 points from 711-716 and at least 4 points from 719-726; plus
- 4 points: RUSSIAN 790 Dissertation

*or*

- 4 points: RUSSIAN 710; plus
- 2 points: EURLANG 700
- 22 points from RUSSIAN 711-726, including at least 4 points from 711-716 and at least 4 points from 719-726

## Sociology

**Prerequisite:** A major in Sociology including one of 315.312, SOCIOL 320, 321

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from SOCIOL 700-735; plus
- 14 points: SOCIOL 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: SOCIOL 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 22 points from SOCIOL 700-735; plus
- 6 points: SOCIOL 792 Dissertation

*or*

- 28 points from SOCIOL 700-735

## Spanish

**Prerequisite:** A major in Spanish including at least two advanced literature courses, one of which must be at Stage III

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 6 points: SPANISH 700, EURLANG 700; plus
- 8 points from SPANISH 701-733; plus
- 14 points: SPANISH 796 Thesis A; or
- 14 points: SPANISH 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 6 points: SPANISH 700, EURLANG 700; plus
- 12 points from SPANISH 701-733; plus
- 10 points: SPANISH 794 Thesis B

*or*

- 6 points: SPANISH 700, EURLANG 700; plus
- 16 points from SPANISH 701-733; plus
- 6 points: SPANISH 792 Dissertation

## Statistics

**Prerequisite:** STATS 210 and one of 445.252, MATHS 208, 230, plus 8 points at Stage III or above approved by the Head of the Department of Statistics. At least 6 of these 8 points should be from courses in Statistics

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 4 points: STATS 730, 782; plus
- 10 points from STATS 708-787, 792-795; plus
- 14 points: STATS 796 Thesis

*or*

- 4 points: STATS 730, 782; plus
- 24 points from STATS 708-787, 790-795 including at least one of STATS 790 Master's Dissertation A (4 points) or STATS 791 Master's Dissertation B (6 points)

## Translation Studies

It is not possible to take an MA in Translation Studies alone. However, courses TRANSLAT 702, 703 may be taken, with the permission of the relevant Head of Department, as part of an MA in a language subject

## Women's Studies

**Prerequisite:** A major in Women's Studies

**Requirement:**

*either*

- 14 points from WOMEN 700-706; plus
- 14 points: WOMEN 796 Thesis; or
- 14 points: WOMEN 797 Research Portfolio

*or*

- 22 points from WOMEN 700-706; plus
- 6 points: WOMEN 792 Dissertation

## The Degree of Master of Creative and Performing Arts – MCPA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Bachelor's degree or equivalent qualification, including advanced level study and/or extensive practical and professional experience in a subject area deemed appropriate by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b met any specified requirements or prerequisites for admission to one of the majors listed below.
- 2 Admission to this degree requires acceptance for admission to one of the majors available and is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of two years if enrolled full-time or four years if enrolled part-time, and pass at least 28 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 A student for this degree must complete one of the following majors:
  - a **Arts Management**  
To be admitted for enrolment for Arts Management, a student must have had at least two years' relevant work experience.
    - 4 points: PERFORM 700 Professional Skills
    - 6 points:  
BUSADMIN 702 Accounting for Decision-makers  
BUSADMIN 712 Leadership and Organisation  
MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers
    - 8 points:  
ARTSMGT 702 The Arts Milieu  
ARTSMGT 703 The Economics of the Arts  
ARTSMGT 704 Special Issues in Arts Administration  
ARTSMGT 705 Special Project
    - 4 points: ARTSMGT 791 Dissertation in Arts Management
    - At least 6 points, chosen with the approval of the Arts Management Coordinator, from other approved master's level courses.
  - b **Dance Studies**
    - 4 points: PERFORM 700 Professional Skills
    - at least 8 points from:  
DANCE 752 Socio-cultural Contexts of Dance in Aotearoa  
DANCE 753 Dance in the 20th Century  
WOMEN 703 Performing Culture
    - at least 4 points from:  
DANCE 751 Research Methodologies  
DANCE 760 Choreography  
DANCE 762 Choreography for Screen  
DANCE 763 Comparative Techniques  
DANCE 765 Special Topic in Dance  
DANCE 766 Special Topic in Dance  
DANCE 767 Special Topic in Dance
    - one of:  
DANCE 770 Dance Project  
DANCE 771 Dance Project  
DANCE 791 Dissertation in Dance Studies  
DANCE 793 Dissertation in Dance Studies.

Additional points may be taken, with the approval of the Dance Studies Coordinator, from other approved master's level courses.
  - c **Film and Television Production**
    - 8 points:  
FTVMS 750 Film and Video Making  
FTVMS 754 Production Management  
FTVMS 758 Script-writing  
FTVMS 759 Script-writing: Advanced

- At least 2 points from:  
FTVMS 752 Film and Video Making: Drama  
FTVMS 753 Film and Video Making: Documentary
- At least 4 points from:  
FTVMS 710 The New Zealand Television Industry  
FTVMS 721 Film Theory  
FTVMS 722 Film Theory A  
FTVMS 723 Film Theory B  
FTVMS 730 Popular Music, Media and Cultural Studies  
FTVMS 732 Reality TV  
FTVMS 765 Industry Internship  
FTVMS 766 Advanced Production Techniques
- 10 points: FTVMS 775 Film and Television Project

Additional points may be taken, with the approval of the Film and Television Coordinator, from other approved master's level courses.

**d Theatre**

- 4 points: PERFORM 700 Professional Skills
- at least 16 points from:  
DRAMA 702 Performance Skills  
DRAMA 703 Production Practice  
DRAMA 704 Directing for Live Performance  
DRAMA 705 Writing for Live Performance  
THEATRE 701 Directed Study in Theatre  
THEATRE 720 Special Topic in Theatre  
THEATRE 721 Special Topic in Theatre  
THEATRE 722 Special Topic in Theatre  
and including one of:  
THEATRE 710 Studio: Special Topic in Practical Theatre  
THEATRE 770 Studio/Project in Theatre  
THEATRE 791 Dissertation in Theatre  
THEATRE 793 Dissertation in Theatre

Additional points may be taken, with the approval of the Theatre and Drama Studies Coordinator, from other approved master's level courses.

**Honours**

- 5 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

## The Degree of Master of Literature – MLitt

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 A student for the Degree of Master of Literature needs to have completed the requirements for a master's degree with First or Second Class Honours, or, in exceptional cases, one of the other preliminary qualifications that would be required for enrolment for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and prepare and present a thesis (14 points).
- b The requirements for this degree are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment for a full-time student, and such period as may be approved by the Senate or its representative for a part-time student, unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this degree consists of the preparation and presentation of a thesis, based on original research in one of the subjects available in the Faculty of Arts.

**Thesis**

- 4
  - a The research topic is to be approved by the relevant Head of Department and by the Senate or its representative.
  - b The Senate or its representative is to appoint a supervisor or supervisors for the thesis, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Distinction**

- 6 This degree may be awarded with or without Distinction, according to the standard of each student's work, on the recommendation of the Senate or its representative.

**Reassignment of Thesis**

- 7 Regardless of any regulation providing otherwise, a thesis rejected for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy may not be submitted for this degree.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1988 Regulations.

**Certificate in Arts – CertArts**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for the Certificate in Arts has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points from subjects available for the BA.

**Course Structure and Content**

- 2 The programme is to consist of 8 points from courses in no more than two subjects listed in the Bachelor of Arts Schedule at Stage I or Stages I and II.

**Credit**

- 3 All points passed for the Undergraduate Certificate in Arts may be credited to the BA.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

**Diploma in Performing Arts – DipPerformArts**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a
    - (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts
    - or
    - (ii) completed the requirements for any other degree approved for the purpose of this Regulation by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
    - or
    - (iii) completed the requirements for an award or qualification in an appropriate area of the Performing Arts as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

- b had sufficient experience in an area deemed appropriate by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration**

- 2 a A student for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within four semesters of initial enrolment unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 A student for this diploma must include:
- either*
- a **Opera**  
PERFORM 601 Performing Arts (Opera) (14 points)
- or*
- b **Dance**
- (i) **Core courses:**  
PERFORM 652 Socio-cultural Contexts of Dance in Aotearoa (4 points)  
PERFORM 653 Dance in the 20th Century (4 points)
- and*
- (ii) **Elective courses:**
- (a) 6 points from PERFORM 651, 660, 662–663, SPORTSCI 103 or 104  
*or*  
• 4 points from PERFORM 651, 660, 662–663, SPORTSCI 103 or 104  
*and*
- (b) 2 points from courses at Stage II or above from the Course Schedules to the Degrees of Bachelor of Arts and Master of Arts, approved by the Coordinator of the DipPerformArts (Dance).
- 4 A student for this diploma must satisfactorily carry out such practical work, participate in such approved performance work, and complete such written assignments and examinations, as the Senate or its representative may require.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1992 Regulations.

---

## Diploma in Professional Ethics – DipProfEthics

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this diploma a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for a degree in New Zealand  
*or*
- b acquired at least five years' experience in professional practice deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 36 months of the initial enrolment, unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of four parts, Part I, Part II, Part III and Part IV, as follows:
- a **Part I**
- (i) 2 points: PHIL 102 Introduction to Ethics

- (ii) A student who has already passed PHIL 102 or an equivalent course may be credited with Part I of the programme for this diploma.
- b **Part II** consists of at least 6 points:
  - (i) at least 4 points from:
    - PHIL 250 Environmental Ethics
    - PHIL 317 Ethical Issues in Biotechnology
    - PHIL 602 Business Ethics
    - PHIL 603 Environmental Ethics
    - PHIL 605 Ethics and Education
    - PHIL 606 Special Topic
    - PHIL 607 Special Topic
    - PHIL 764 Medical Ethics
    - MGMT 331 Business Ethics
    - LAW 440 Legal Ethics
  - (ii) no more than 2 points from: PHIL 205, 210, 211, 213, 217, 304, 310, 318, POLITICS 320
  - (iii) A student who has already passed a course the same as or equivalent to any course listed for Regulation 3b(ii) may be credited with up to 2 points towards Part II for this diploma.
  - (iv) With the specific approval of the Diploma Coordinator and the Dean of Arts a student may be permitted to substitute for one of the courses required for this part any other course offered by this University and deemed relevant.
- c **Part III**  
2 points: PHIL 610 Professional Ethics Seminar.
- d **Part IV**
  - (i) 4 points: PHIL 620 Professional Ethics Project
  - (ii) The project shall be on a topic concerning a particular ethical problem (or set of problems) as related to some professional context.
  - (iii) The student shall submit the project to the Coordinator no later than 12 weeks after the last day of classes of their final semester for this Diploma.
- 4 The programme of each student will require the specific approval of the Diploma Coordinator and the Dean of the Faculty of Arts.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1992 Regulations.

---

## Graduate Diploma in Arts – GradDipArts

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Bachelor of Arts
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for any other degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - c attained a level of competence approved by Senate or its representative as:
    - (i) equivalent to that specified in a or b above, and
    - (ii) appropriate for the proposed programme for this diploma.
- 2 a With the approval of the Senate or its representative, a student who needs only 2 points to complete the Bachelor of Arts may enrol concurrently for this diploma and those remaining points
- and
- b the diploma will not be awarded until such qualifying degree is completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme for this diploma must include:
- a 14 points at Stage II or above, including at least 10 points at Stage III or above from courses listed in the schedule to either the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Master of Arts.
  - b The programme for this diploma may include a Dissertation in a subject for which the student is approved by the Head of Department as suitably qualified.
- 5 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Departments and also of the Dean of the Faculty of Arts.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

## Graduate Diploma in Arts Management – GradDipArtsMgt

*The Graduate Diploma in Arts Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of the Calendar.*

## Graduate Diploma in Translation Studies – GradDipTranslationStud

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - (ii) produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative of appropriate academic or professional preparation, equivalent to a degree, to undertake the proposed programme
- and
- b competence in one of the languages offered for the Diploma equivalent to at least the level of a B+ grade in a language course at Stage III or above
- and
- c for students from non-English speaking backgrounds, proficiency in English to at least the standard of 6.5 IELTS or equivalent.
- 2 Admission to the programme for this diploma requires the approval of the Coordinating Committee and is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative. An interview and written aptitude test may be required.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma must follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- 4 The requirements are to be completed within 12 months for a student enrolled full-time or 24 months otherwise, unless the Senate or its representative extends these periods.

#### Structure and Content

- 5 The programme for this diploma consists of:
- a **Core courses** (6 points):
    - 2 points: TRANSLAT 702 Theory and Methodology of Translation
    - 2 points: TRANSLAT 703 Issues in Translation
    - 2 points: TRANSLAT 710 Research Tools and Professional Issues
  - and
  - b **Elective courses** (8 points):

- At least 4 points from master's level language acquisition courses in one of the following subjects: Chinese, French, German, Greek, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Latin, Maori Studies, Russian, Spanish.

*Note: With the approval of the Coordinating Committee, Special Language Studies master's level courses (for language study overseas) may be substituted for points from language acquisition courses.*

- and at least 4 points from:
  - CHINESE 725 Advanced Translation Practice
  - FRENCH 720 Advanced French Translation Practice
  - GERMAN 740 Advanced German Translation Practice
  - GREEK 700 Unprepared Greek Translation
  - INDO 729 Advanced Indonesian Translation Practice
  - INDO 759 Translation of Selected Malay Texts
  - ITALIAN 702 Advanced Italian Translation Practice
  - JAPANESE 705 Advanced Japanese Translation Practice
  - LATIN 700 Unprepared Latin Translation
  - MAORI 712 Whakareo Ke: Translation of Maori Literature
  - RUSSIAN 732 Advanced Russian Translation Practice
  - SPANISH 723 Advanced Spanish Translation Practice
  - SPANISH 726 Spanish Literary Translation
  - TRANSLAT 704 Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business
  - TRANSLAT 721 Special Topic in Translation
  - TRANSLAT 722 Special Topic in Translation

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Arts – PGDipArts

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree at a university in New Zealand  
and
  - (ii) passed the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject for the postgraduate diploma

or

  - b attained a level of competence recognised by Senate or its representative as
    - (i) equivalent to that specified in Regulation 1a above, and
    - (ii) appropriate for the proposed programme for this diploma.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 a A student's programme for this diploma must include:
  - 14 points in a subject available for the Master of Arts for which the student has passed the prerequisite courses.
- b The programme for this diploma may include a dissertation in the major subject.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Departments and also the Associate Dean (Graduate Studies) of the Faculty of Arts.

#### Distinction

- 5 a This diploma may be awarded with Distinction or Merit, where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Distinction or Merit is normally awarded only if the requirements for this diploma are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Language Teaching – PGDiplT

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- both*
- a (i) completed the requirements for any degree
- or*
- (ii) produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative of adequate training and/or experience to undertake the proposed programme
- and*
- b had at least two years' teaching experience.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma must pass courses to the value of 14 points, as follows:
- a **Core courses** (10 points):
- LANGTCHG 720 Language Analysis for Teachers
- LANGTCHG 721 Discourse Analysis for Teachers
- LANGTCHG 722 Learner Language
- LANGTCHG 724 Second Language Teaching Methodology
- LANGTCHG 727 Action Research for Language Teaching
- b **4 points from:**
- LANGTCHG 713 Special Topic
- LANGTCHG 714 Special Topic
- LANGTCHG 715 Second Language Literacy
- LANGTCHG 726 Materials Development and Evaluation
- LANGTCHG 727 Action Research for Language Teachers
- LANGTCHG 729 Practicum in Second/Foreign Language Teaching
- A course in a language other than English, approved by the Coordinator of the Diploma.

**Distinction**

- 4 a This diploma may be awarded with Distinction or Merit, where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Distinction or Merit is normally awarded only if the requirements for this diploma are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Certificate in Advanced Interpreting – PGCertAdvInterp

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree or equivalent combination of tertiary study and professional qualifications and/or experience as approved by the Senate or its representative.

- b competence in English and one of the languages available for study for this postgraduate certificate, to at least the following levels:
  - (i) IELTS score of 7.5 in the oral band for non-native speakers of English
  - (ii) for languages other than English, oral and written competency equivalent to at least the level of advanced undergraduate courses.
- 2 Admission to this postgraduate certificate is at the discretion of Senate or its representative and will require an interview in both languages and an aptitude test.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this postgraduate certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.
- b The requirements for this postgraduate certificate are to be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends the period.

#### Course Structure and Content

- 4 a The programme consists of:
  - TRANSLAT 601 Theory, Ethics and Techniques of Interpreting
  - TRANSLAT 602 Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business
  - TRANSLAT 605 Advanced Interpreting Practice
- b The languages available for study for this postgraduate certificate are: French, German, Italian.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

---

## REGULATIONS – EDUCATION

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Education (Teaching) – BEd(Tchg)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of Senate or its representative.

*Note: To be admitted, a student must meet University entry criteria and have personal qualities suitable for becoming a teacher. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme must include at least 22 points from Part A and 20 points from Part B. Part A and Part B courses may be taken at the same time:

*either*

- a **Option 1**

- Part A** (22 points)

- Core Courses** (18 points):

- 6 points: EDUC 101, 102, 103

- 4 points: EDUC 206, 224

- 2 points: EDUC 383

- at least 2 points at Stage I English, 2 points at Stage I Mathematics and 2 points at Stage I Science as approved by the HOD;

*and either*

- (a) **Education** (4 points):

- EDUC 351 and at least 2 further points at Stage III in Education

*or*

- (b) **Maori Education** (4 points):  
EDUC 305 and 306, or equivalent courses as approved by the HOD

and

**Part B** (at least 20 points):

- (i) **Teaching Studies** (14 points):  
EDCURR 210 Languages  
EDCURR 211 Mathematics  
EDCURR 212 Science  
EDCURR 213 Technology  
EDCURR 214 Social Sciences  
EDCURR 215 Health and Physical Wellbeing  
EDCURR 216 The Arts
- (ii) **Professional Practice** (6 points):  
EDCURR 101 Professional Practice I  
EDCURR 201 Professional Practice II  
EDCURR 301 Professional Practice III

or

b **Option 2**

**Maori Medium Option** (Subject to approval by Teacher Registration Board)

**Part A Maori Medium:**

- (i) **Education** (14 points):
- 6 points: EDUC 101–103
  - 4 points: EDUC 207, 224
  - 2 points: EDUC 383
  - at least 2 points from EDUC 305, 306, 310, 351

and

- (ii) **Maori Studies** (8 points):  
MAORI 103  
MAORI 104 or 101  
MAORI 203  
MAORI 302

and

**Part B Maori Medium:**

- (i) **Teaching Studies** (14 points):  
EDCURR 231 Te Reo (Languages)  
EDCURR 232 Pangarau (Mathematics)  
EDCURR 233 Putaiao (Science)  
EDCURR 234 Hangarau (Technology)  
EDCURR 235 Tikanga-a-iwi (Social Sciences)  
EDCURR 236 Hauora me te Kori-a-Tinana (Health and Physical Wellbeing)  
EDCURR 237 Mahi Toi (The Arts)
- (ii) **Professional Practice** (6 points):  
EDCURR 101 Professional Practice I  
EDCURR 201 Professional Practice II  
EDCURR 301 Professional Practice III

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

## The Degree of Master of Education – MEd

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree
- or
- (ii) completed the requirements for a university diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

- b attained a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work or other profession approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
and
  - c had at least three years' practical experience in that profession or a related profession.
- 2 No student on whom the Degree of Master of Arts in Education has already been conferred by this University may enrol for this degree unless specific approval is given by the Senate or its representative.
- 3 Admission to the programme for this degree is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 a A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a course of study of two consecutive full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points including the core courses within the speciality area.
- b A student enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis has to follow a programme of four consecutive years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points including the core courses within the speciality area.

#### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student for this degree must choose, in consultation with the Head of the School of Education, courses totalling at least 28 points as follows:
- 14 points from EDUC 701-789, PHIL 605, EDPROF 651, 652, 723-772, MUSIC 760, 767
  - 14 points: EDUC 796 Thesis or EDUC 797 Research Portfolio
- b Subject to the requirements in Regulation 5a, courses may be selected from one of the following specialisations:
- (i) **Adult and Higher Education:**
    - 8 points from EDUC 751-753
  - (ii) **Counselling:**
    - 10 points: EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749, 750
    - 12 points: EDPROF 790 and 794
  - (iii) **Development Education:**
    - 4 points: EDUC 705
    - At least 4 points from EDUC 721-724
    - At least 4 points from DEVELOP 701, EDUC 704, 710, 725, PACIFIC 700
    - The remaining points to be selected from (ii) and (iii) above.
  - (iv) **Educational Psychology:**
    - 4 points from EDUC 741, and at least 8 points from EDUC 740-749, 757, 760-762, EDPROF 651, 652
  - (v) **Maori Education:**
    - 8 points from EDUC 707 and either 706 or 787
  - (vi) **Mathematics Education** (8 points from):
    - 2 points EDUC 761 or 762
    - 2 points from an approved course in research methodology
    - 2 points from an approved course in mathematical or statistical content
    - 2 points from MATHS 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 712, STATS 708
  - (vii) **Music Education:**
    - 8 points: MUSIC 760, 767
  - (viii) **Reading, Writing and Language:**
    - 12 points from EDPROF 726, EDUC 748, and one of EDUC 741, 742, 746
  - (ix) **Science Education:**
    - 8 points: EDPROF 760, 761, EDUC 782
  - (x) **Special Education:**
    - 8 points: EDUC 744 and at least 4 points from EDUC 740-749, 760-762, 757, and EDPROF 723
  - (xi) **Teacher Education:**
    - 8 points: EDPROF 730, 731
- c With the exception of Development Education above, the remaining points in each of the specialities are to be selected from those listed in Regulation 5a.
- d (i) With the approval of the Head of the School of Education, a student may include master's level courses in a subject other than Education in addition to those listed in Regulation 5a.
- (ii) The overall programme must contain at least 16 points from the courses listed in Regulation 5a.

- 6 At least 8 points are to be taken over the first two semesters of enrolment.

#### **Thesis/Dissertation/Advanced Folio of Casework**

- 7 a The thesis or dissertation or advanced folio of casework is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation relating to an area of Education.
- b (i) The thesis or dissertation must be submitted as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- (ii) The folio of casework must be completed within 12 months of the completion and passing of the courses for this degree.

#### **Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Honours**

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Masters' Degrees.

#### **Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replace the 2000 Regulations.

## **The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt**

*The Master of Educational Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## **The Degree of Doctor of Education – EdD**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- both
- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Education of this University with First Class Honours or Second Class Honours Division One, or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- or
- (ii) completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Arts in Education of this University with First Class Honours or Second Class Honours Division One or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- and
- b following the completion of a first degree, had at least five years' experience in education or in a comparable and related area as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years from the date of registration and pass courses and thesis with a total value of 42 points.
- 3 The requirements for this degree are to be completed within not less than three years and not more than seven years of initial registration.

#### **Registration**

- 4 a The Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Education, is to determine whether the student may be registered and the date and conditions of registration.
- b The recommendation for registration is to include:
- (i) the proposed date of registration
- (ii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff of the University of Auckland
- (iii) satisfactory evidence of the student's training and ability to follow the proposed programme
- (iv) a submission by the student, with the recommendation of the Head of the School of Education, comprising a description of the coursework requirement of the

degree, and a nominated area of specialisation which indicates the thesis topic area in sufficient detail to enable the coursework to be structured:

- c The Senate or its representative may be unable to accept an application for registration from a qualified student if appropriate supervision and resources are not available.

### Structure and Content

- 5 The programme consists of Part I and Part II as follows:
  - a **Part I**
    - (i) EDPROF 841 Research Portfolio (14 points)
  - b **Part II**
    - (i) Before taking Part II a student must complete Part I
    - (ii) An original contribution to the field of study comprising: EDPROF 897 Thesis (28 points).
- 6 a At the end of each year of study for Part II the supervisor is to submit a brief report to the Senate or its representative on the progress of each student.
  - b Should such a report be unfavourable, the Senate or its representative may terminate a student's registration in this programme.

### Thesis

- 7 A student is to submit three bound copies of the thesis embodying the results of the research.
- 8 On the recommendation of the Head of the School Education, the Senate is to appoint as examiners:
  - a the supervisor or supervisors
  - and
  - b one person who is a member of the staff of another university, normally within New Zealand, and who is to be the convener
  - and
  - c one other person resident outside New Zealand.

### Examination

- 9 a For Examination procedures and regulations refer to Regulation 8 of the Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.
  - b Examiners will be requested to include in their report comment on the original contribution of the thesis to professional practice in the candidate's field; and the extent to which it demonstrates the candidate's knowledge in the professional field or fields to which the research subject belongs.

### Variation

- 10 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform with these regulations.

### Commencement

- 11 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

---

## Diploma in Counselling – DipCouns

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree
  - or
  - (ii) completed the requirements for a university diploma
  - or
  - (iii) completed a qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work or equivalent professional qualification
 approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - and
  - b had not less than three years' practical experience in that profession or a related profession.

*Note: Normally an interview supported by referee's statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching, evidence of personnel work or community counselling is required under Regulation 1b.*

- 2 Admission to the programme for this diploma is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3
  - a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points.
  - b A student whose application to enrol for this diploma on a part-time basis is accepted, is to complete the requirements within 36 months of the initial enrolment.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of Part I and Part II as follows:
  - a **Part I**  
**Core courses:**
    - (i) 8 points from EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749.**Elective courses:**
    - (ii) at least 6 points from EDPROF 742, 743, 745, 748, 750-752 and other courses at master's level in the subject Education as listed in the schedules to the Degrees of Master of Education and Master of Arts and courses at Stage III or master's level in a subject other than Education.
  - b **Part II**  
 EDPROF 691 Folio of Casework (Counselling) (7 points):
    - (i) comprises 500 hours of counselling related activities which involve face to face counselling work in an approved setting under supervision.
    - (ii) is to be completed and submitted to the Registrar in one semester of full-time study or not more than two semesters of part-time study.
- 5 Part I must be completed before Part II may be taken.

#### **Reassignment of Points**

- 6 A student who has passed courses for a Diploma in Counselling Theory that are available for this diploma and has not been awarded the Diploma in Counselling Theory and is eligible to be admitted to this programme may, at the discretion of the Head of the School of Education, reassign those courses to this diploma.

#### **Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Distinction**

- 8 At the discretion of the Senate this diploma may be awarded with Distinction if the student's overall grade is sufficiently high and the requirements for the diploma are completed within 18 months of initial enrolment for a student enrolled on a full-time basis, and 36 months otherwise.

#### **Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1977 Regulations.

## **Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd**

## **Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd**

*Detailed regulations for the above diplomas are listed in the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## **Diploma in Teaching (Primary) – DipTchg(Primary)**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:

*either*

a a university degree or a university diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

*or*

b a qualification recognised by the Teacher Registration Board as acceptable for provisional registration as a teacher

*and*

c have met the approved criteria required as suitable for pre-service teacher education. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of 18 points.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 3 a The programme for this diploma consists of three parts as follows:

**Part I** (8 points):

EDPROF 601 Educational Studies I

EDPROF 602 Learning and Teaching I

EDPROF 603 Professional Practice in Language and Languages (including Te Reo)

EDPROF 604 Professional Practice in Mathematics

**Part II** (6 points):

EDPROF 609 Learning and Teaching II

EDPROF 610 Professional Practice in Science and Technology

EDPROF 611 Professional Practice in Social Studies, the Arts, and Health and Physical Education

**Part III** (4 points):

EDPROF 612 The Practicum

EDPROF 614 Reflective Professional Practice

- b With the permission of the Senate or its representative some points within Parts I, II, and III may be taken concurrently.

#### **Practical Requirements**

- 4 In any course that includes the on-course requirements of planning, practical teaching, and content knowledge and resources, a student must obtain passes in each of the three components in order to have passed that course as a whole.

#### **Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997.

## **Diploma in Teaching (Secondary) – DipTchg(Sec)**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:

*either*

a a university degree or a university diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

*or*

b a qualification recognised by the Teacher Registration Board as acceptable for provisional registration as a teacher

*and*

c have met the approved criteria required as suitable for pre-service teacher education. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year (two semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of two sections, Teaching Subjects and Professional and Educational Studies, as follows:

**Professional and Educational Studies** (7 points):

EDPROF 622 Professional Practice (2 points)

EDPROF 624 Educational Studies (3 points)

EDPROF 625 Classroom Teaching (2 points)

**Teaching Subjects** (7 points):**Schedule A:** courses for teaching across 3–5 levels of Secondary School

- 4 points from EDCURR 601–620, 661–668

**Schedule B:** courses for teaching across 1–2 levels of Secondary School

- 3 points from EDCURR 621–677

**Practical Requirements**

- 4 In any course that includes the on-course requirements of planning, practical teaching, and content knowledge and resources, a student must obtain passes in each of the three components in order to have passed that course as a whole.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997.

**Diploma in Technology Education – DipTechEd**

*The Diploma in Technology Education is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Graduate Diploma in Education – GradDipEd**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree  
or  
(ii) completed the requirements for a university diploma approved by the Senate in any particular case  
or  
(iii) completed a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, or relevant other profession approved by the Senate in any particular case
- and
- b not less than three years' teaching experience or other professional experience
- and
- c satisfied the Head of the School of Education that they have appropriate training and experience to undertake the programme.

*Note: Normally an interview supported by referees' statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work is required.*

- 2 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this graduate diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses as specified for one of the programmes in Regulation 4 below.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a **Adult Education**  
**Core courses:**
- 8 points: EDUC 753, 601, 381

**Elective courses:**

- At least 6 points from EDUC 789, 602, and/or any other courses at master's and Stage III levels in the subject Education as approved by the Head of the School of Education.

**b Counselling Theory****Core courses:**

- 8 points: EDPROF 744, 746, 747, 749

**Elective courses:**

- At least 6 points from EDPROF 742, 743, 745, 748, 750, 751, 752 and other courses at master's level in the subject Education and courses at Stage III or above in a subject other than Education.

**c Educational Studies**

- At least 10 points from courses in Education approved by the Head of the School of Education, including at least 6 points at Stage III or above.
- Up to 4 points, of which no more than 2 points may be below Stage III, from courses at Stage II or above in appropriate other subjects approved by the Head of the School of Education.

**d Special Education**

- 10 points: EDUC 342, 345, EDPROF 630–632 and 4 points from courses in Education approved by the Head of the School of Education.

**e Special Needs Resource Teaching****Part I**

- (i) 6 points: EDPROF 633, 634

**Part II**

- (ii) 8 points: EDPROF 735, 736

(iii) Admission to Part II requires prior successful completion of Part I.

**f Teacher Education****Core courses:**

- 8 points: EDPROF 730, 731

**Elective courses:**

- At least 6 points from courses at Stage III and above in Education as approved by the Head of the School of Education.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal course of study which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Education – PGDipEd**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree in Education as approved by Senate
  - or
  - (ii) completed the requirements for a university degree as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - (iii) if enrolling for the Special Needs Resource Teaching programme, completed the requirements for an Advanced Diploma of Teaching, or a Diploma of Teaching, and a Diploma in the Education of Students with Special Teaching Needs, approved by the Senate in any particular case

and

  - b completed a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, or in a relevant other profession approved by the Senate in any particular case

and

  - c had not less than three years' relevant teaching or other professional experience

and

- d satisfied the Head of the School of Education that they have appropriate training and experience to undertake the programme.

*Note: Normally an interview supported by referees' statements and evidence of training and experience in relevant work is required.*

- 2 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this postgraduate diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass 14 points in courses as specified below.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 4 a **Special Needs Resource Teaching**  
The programme consists of:  
6 points: EDPROF 733, 734  
8 points: EDPROF 735, 736
- b **Educational Studies**  
The programme consists of 14 points, at master's level or above, in Education.

#### **Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

## **Postgraduate Diploma in Educational Psychology – PGDipEdPsych**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a master's degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b passed the following courses, or others deemed equivalent by the Senate or its representative:
    - (i) at least 10 points in courses in Education having a substantial content in Educational Psychology
    - and
    - (ii) 8 points: EDUC 757, EDPROF 651, 652
    - and
    - (iii) undergraduate courses in Psychology having a total value of at least 10 points.

#### **Duration and Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this postgraduate diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this postgraduate diploma are to be completed within 24 months for a student enrolled part-time unless the Senate or its representative extends this period.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this postgraduate diploma is EDPROF 697 Internship consisting of:
  - a satisfactory participation in, and completion of, approved work in psychological, special educational, and social work services
  - b seminars in casework, projects and professional practice
  - c a pass in a comprehensive oral examination covering the work of the whole course.

#### **Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999.

---

## REGULATIONS – MUSIC

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Music – BMus

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

*Note: To specialise in Performance or in Jazz, a student must demonstrate at an audition the musical and performing skills required for the course as well as meeting University entry criteria.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points as specified below unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations, and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 A student is to complete the requirements for one of the following subjects:
  - a **Classical Music**
    - (i) at least 34 points from courses listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for Music; up to 8 points may be included from non-Music courses offered for other programmes at this University
    - (ii) at least 16 points from the following core courses:
      - (a) 12 points: MUSIC 102, 103, 141, 201–203
      - (b) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241–244 and 246–247
    - (iii) at least 18 additional points, including at least 6 points above Stage II, from the courses listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for Music.
  - or
  - b **Jazz**
    - (i) 20 points: MUSIC 103, 180, 182, 184, 186, 187, 280, 284, 286
    - (ii) 6 points: MUSIC 109, 190, 290
    - (iii) up to 6 points from the following courses: MUSIC 262, 288, 388, other courses approved by the Head of the School of Music
    - (iv) one of the following majors:
 

**Performance**  
MUSIC 380, 385, 386, 396

or

**Arranging and Composition**  
MUSIC 381, 386, 390, 396

#### Practical Requirements

- 4
  - a In any course that includes performance work of a practical nature, a student needs to comply with the requirements for that course as specified by the Head of the School of Music.
  - b A student enrolled for the Classical Music option under Regulation 3a above needs to participate in an approved School of Music performance ensemble throughout enrolment for this degree.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 5 Special arrangements apply where the BMus is taken as a component degree. These are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar. The option in Jazz is not available for conjoint degree study.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.
- 

### The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) – BMus(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
  - b passed the specified prerequisites for one of the options listed in Regulation 5 below with an average of B- in at least 6 points at Stage III  
*and*
  - c approval from the Head of the School of Music.
- 2 A student who has not completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music but who has:
  - a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points for that degree  
*and*
  - b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the areas of study listed in Regulation 5 below with an average of B- or higher in at least 6 points at Stage III, may, with the written approval of the Head of the School of Music, enrol for this degree concurrently with the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Music. The Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) will not be awarded until the requirements for the Bachelor of Music have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year, and achieve a pass in at least 14 points.
- 4 The total enrolment for this degree may not exceed 18 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 The programme consists of one of the following subjects:
  - a **Composition**
    - (i) 4 points: MUSIC 710 Composition
    - (ii) 4 points from MUSIC 701 and 702, 714, 715
    - (iii) 4 points from ANTHRO 727, MUSIC 740 and 741, 744, 745, 752 and 753, 758, 759, 789 or any courses under Regulation 5a(ii) which have not already been selected
    - (iv) 2 points from MUSIC 746, 747, 757, and any courses offered under Regulation 5a(ii) or 5a(iii) which have not already been selected
  - or*
  - b **Musicology**
    - (i) 4 points: MUSIC 750 or ANTHRO 727
    - (ii) 8 points from MUSIC 750, ANTHRO 727, MUSIC 701 and 702, 740 and 741, 746, 747, 744, 745, 751, 752 and 753, 789; plus
    - (iii) 2 points from any of the courses listed above, MUSIC 757, 758, 759
  - or*
  - c **Performance**
    - (i) 6 points: MUSIC 722 and 723
    - (ii) 8 points from ANTHRO 727, MUSIC 714, 715, 738 and 739, 740 and 741, 744, 745, 746, 747, 751, 752, 753, 757, 758, 759, 789
- 6 Of the points required under Regulation 5a(iv), 5b(iii) or 5c(ii), a student may, with the approval of the Head of the School of Music and of the Head of the other Department concerned, include up to 2 points at master's level in one subject other than Music.

**Practical Requirements**

- 7 In any course that includes performance work of a practical nature a student must comply with the requirements for that course as specified by the Head of the School of Music.

**Dissertation**

- 8 Where a dissertation is included in the degree:
  - a the dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
  - b the dissertation topic must be approved by the Head of the School of Music before enrolment for it.

**Enrolment for Two Programmes**

- 9 This degree may not be studied at the same time as another degree, unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 10 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 11 a The degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First or Second Division.
- b Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

**Commencement**

- 12 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

**The Degree of Bachelor of Music Education – BMusEd**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

*Note: To be admitted, a student must meet University entry criteria and have personal qualities suitable for becoming a teacher. Personal references and an interview will normally be required.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme must include:
  - a 12 points from courses in Education:
    - (i) EDUC 101–103
    - (ii) EDUC 206, 224
    - (iii) EDUC 383
  - b 20 points from courses in Music:
    - (i) 4 points: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, MUSED 164. Students lacking the prerequisite for 840.101 or MUSIC 103 will be required to pass MUSIC 100 before taking 840.101 or MUSIC 103
    - (ii) 10 points: MUSED 160, 260, 264, 366 and 466
    - (iii) at least 6 points in other music courses approved by the Head of the School of Music.
  - c 24 points from one of the following subjects:
    - (i) **Primary Music**
      - 4 points from Stage I courses in two subjects chosen from English, Mathematics or Science and approved by the Head of the School of Education
      - 14 points from Teaching Studies courses: EDCURR 210–216
      - 6 points from Professional Practice courses: EDCURR 101, 201, 301
    - (ii) **Secondary Music**
      - at least 8 points, including at least 4 points above Stage I, in another subject from courses available for a bachelor's degree
      - 10 points including EDCURR 661; 4 points from EDCURR 601–620, 621–645, MUSIC 132–137; and 2 points from Stage III courses for BMus approved by the Head of the School of Music
      - 6 points from Professional Practice courses: EDCURR 101, 201, 301
    - (iii) **Community Music**
      - at least 10 points from courses available for any bachelor's degree including at least 6 points from courses for BMus approved by the Head of the School of Music
      - EDCURR 661 or 662, and at least 10 points from Teaching Studies and Professional Practice courses approved by the Head of the School of Education

**Enrolment for Two Programmes**

- 4 This degree may not be studied at the same time as any other programme unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

**The Degree of Master of Music – MMus**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1
  - a In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) in the same area of study as the intended option in Regulation 4 below, with at least Second Class Honours First Division.
  - b In exceptional circumstances a student who has completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music may be admitted to this degree with the approval of the Head of the School of Music.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2
  - a A student who has completed the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) has to follow a programme of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
  - b A student who has completed the Degree of Bachelor of Music has to follow a programme of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.
- 3 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted normally has to follow a programme of:
 

*either*

  - a two consecutive years and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, under one of the options set out in Regulation 4, if entering with a Bachelor of Music (Honours)

*or*

  - b four consecutive years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Bachelor of Music.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student who has to pass courses with a total value of 14 points for this degree must satisfy the requirements for one of the following options:
 

*either*

    - a **MUSIC 795 Composition** (14 points):
      - (i) A portfolio of compositions is to be prepared under the supervision of a university teacher.
      - (ii) A student is to submit to the Registrar two copies of the portfolio, together with a certificate from the Supervisor stating that the work has been carried out under supervision:
        - (a) within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a full-time basis

*or*

      - (b) within 24 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a part-time basis

*or*

    - (c) by the last day of classes of the fourth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a full time basis

*or*

  - (d) by the last day of classes of the eighth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a part-time basis.
  - (iii) In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.
- or*
- b **MUSIC 796 Musicology** (14 points):
  - (i) A student is to present a thesis prepared under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative, which embodies the results obtained by the student in an investigation relating to some branch of music. The thesis topic must be approved by the Head of the School of Music before enrolment for the thesis.

- (ii) A student is to submit two bound copies of the thesis to the Registrar:
    - (a) within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a full-time basis  
or
    - (b) within 24 months of initial enrolment for this degree if required to complete 14 points and enrolled on a part-time basis  
or
    - (c) by the last day of classes of the fourth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a full-time basis  
or
    - (d) by the last day of classes of the eighth semester since first enrolment for this degree if required to complete 28 points and enrolled on a part-time basis.
  - (iii) In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.
- or
- c **MUSIC 792 Performance** (14 points)
- (i) A student is to present one of the following:
    - (a) a concerto or similar work with orchestra
    - (b) a lecture recital
    - (c) a chamber work or works
    - (d) such other work as has been approved by the Head of the School of Music and a concert recital of one to one-and-a-half hours duration, the programme to be approved by the Head of the School of Music.
- 5 A student entering this degree with the Degree of Bachelor of Music and required to pass a degree with a total value of 28 points is to complete:
- a the courses and practical requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Honours) of 14 points
- and
- b 14 points from one of the options outlined in Regulation 4 above.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 7 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Masters Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1993 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Doctor of Music – DMus

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 A candidate for this degree needs to apply through the Head of the Department of Music for registration and to:
  - both
  - a have completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Music at the University of Auckland or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative

and

  - b demonstrate adequate training and ability to follow a course of advanced study in musical composition.
- 2 a The Senate or its representative, having received a recommendation from the Head of the School of Music, is to determine whether the candidate is to be registered and the date and the conditions of registration.
- b A recommendation is to include:
  - (i) the proposed date of the registration
  - (ii) the name of the supervisor or supervisors from the members of the academic staff
  - (iii) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to follow the proposed programme.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 a A candidate for this degree has normally to follow a programme of two full-time years from the date of registration and pass a course of advanced study in musical composition.
- b After completing the initial two years of full-time study, a candidate may apply to the Senate or its representative for permission to continue as a part-time student.
- c In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may permit a student, who has held the accepted prerequisite qualification for over five years, to proceed directly to apply to be examined.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a Each candidate is to complete a course of advanced study MUSIC 894 Composition, to the satisfaction of the supervisor or supervisors and the Head of the School of Music.
- b The supervisor is to submit a brief report to the Senate or its representative on the progress of each candidate at the end of each year of study.
- c Should such a report be unfavourable, the Senate or its representative may terminate a candidate's enrolment in this degree.

**Content of Examination**

- 5 a A candidate is to submit for examination original and substantial work, consisting of not more than three pieces, each of which may be within any of the following classes:
- (i) orchestral work
  - (ii) opera
  - (iii) work using vocal, keyboard or ensemble resources
  - (iv) presentation of Music Theatre
  - (v) electronic music.
- b Electronic resources may be included in work within classes (i), (ii), (iii), or (iv) in Regulation 5a.
- 6 With the application to be examined, each candidate is also to submit:
- a three copies of the work or works to be examined
  - and
  - b a statutory declaration which:
    - (i) states the extent to which the work is the candidate's own and, in the case of joint work, identifies as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own
    - and
    - (ii) states what portion, if any, of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of this or any other tertiary institution
    - and
    - (iii) declares that the work, in substantially its present form, has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other tertiary institution and is not being submitted for a degree or diploma in any other tertiary institution.

**Examination**

- 7 A candidate is to apply in writing to the Registrar to be examined for the Degree within five years of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
- 8 After the candidate's application to be examined has been accepted, the Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Music, is to appoint as examiners:
- a the supervisor or supervisors
  - and
  - b one person who is to be a member of staff of another university in New Zealand
  - and
  - c one person who is resident outside New Zealand provided that the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the School, appoint a further examiner and, in exceptional circumstances, two further examiners.
- 9 Each examiner is to:
- a assess the submitted work
  - and
  - b report independently to the Senate on the quality of the work
  - and
  - c recommend to the Senate whether the Degree of Doctor of Music should be awarded.

- 10 Where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded, the Examiners may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date.

#### **Direct Examination**

- 11 For a candidate who is eligible under Regulation 3c to apply to be examined directly, the Senate, as soon as possible after the application is lodged, is to appoint a Moderator who is to:
- a consider the work and submit to the Senate, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which is to indicate whether, in their opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application
- and
- b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners.
- 12 The Senate is to consider the Moderator's report and decide whether to proceed with the examination.
- 13 Where it is agreed that the examination is to proceed:
- a the Senate is to appoint two independent external examiners of whom at least one is normally resident outside New Zealand, without being restricted to the persons recommended under Regulation 11b.
  - b the Senate may appoint an additional examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
  - c the contents of the Moderator's report are not to be communicated to the examiners.
- 14 The duties of each examiner appointed under Regulation 13 are:
- a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning
- and
- b to recommend whether or not the degree is to be awarded provided that, where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work with further published work at a later date. A resubmission has to be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 15 The reports are to be sent to the Registrar who is to refer them to the Moderator.
- 16 The Moderator is to consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report which, together with the reports of the Examiners, is to be placed before the Senate which is to determine whether the Degree may be awarded.
- 17 If the Senate has determined that the examination should not proceed or that the degree should not be awarded (under Regulation 14b), the student may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree before five years or more has elapsed from the date of the Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate is entitled to a refund of half of the fees paid.

#### **Conflicting Examiners' Reports**

- 18 Where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, the Moderator or the Head of the School of Music, as appropriate, is to submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner. The Senate is then to appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner who is to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 9 or Regulation 14. This report is to be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

#### **Commencement**

- 19 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1986 Regulations.

## **Diploma in Music – DipMus**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 2 A student's programme must consist of:
  - a 32 points from the following:

- (i) 22 points: MUSIC 125, 127, 225, 227, 325, 327
  - (ii) 10 points: MUSIC 102, 103, 141, 201, 203
- b at least 10 additional points from the Schedule of Prescriptions for Music.
- 3 In place of two of the points needed under Regulation 2b, the Head of Department may require a student to take MUSIC 100.

#### **Practical Requirements**

- 4 In any course that includes performance work of a practical nature instead of, or as well as, written work, a student must comply with the requirements for that course as specified by the Head of Department.

#### **Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1993 Regulations.

## **Diploma in Music (Advanced) – DipMus(Adv)**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a completed the requirements for the Diploma in Music
  - and
  - b satisfied the Senate or its representative that the work presented for the Diploma in Music is of a sufficiently high standard.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 3 Each student's programme consists of:
- a MUSIC 625-627
  - b 4 points from courses offered for the degree of Bachelor of Music.

#### **Practical Requirements**

- 4 a In any course that includes performance work of a practical nature instead of, or as well as, written work, a student must comply with the requirements for that course as specified by the Head of Department.
- b A student must participate in an approved School of Music performance ensemble throughout enrolment for this degree.

#### **Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1993 Regulations.

## Regulations – Business and Economics

The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce – BCom	116
The Degree of Bachelor of Business and Information Management – BBIM	118
The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) – BCom(Hons)	119
The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech	120
The Degree of Master of Commerce – MCom	120
The Degree of Master of Business Administration – MBA	123
The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEEdMgt	124
The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt	124
The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt	124
The Degree of Master of Management – MMgt	124
The Degree of Master of Commercial Law – MComLaw	125
The Degree of Master of International Business – MIntBus	127
The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR	128
The Degree of Master of Taxation Studies – MTaxS	128
Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt	129
Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR	129
Graduate Diploma in Business – GradDipBus	129
Graduate Diploma in Commerce – GradDipCom	132
Graduate Certificate in Business – GradCertBus	133
Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce – PGDipCom	133

# REGULATIONS – BUSINESS AND ECONOMICS

## The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce – BCom

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points required for this degree, a student must pass:
  - a at least 34 points in subjects listed in the BCom Schedule
  - b at least 22 points in courses above Stage I
  - c courses in a minimum of three subjects
  - d one or more majors, including at least 6 points at Stage III in each major, selected from the majors listed in the BCom Schedule.
- 3 A student may include up to 8 points from other programmes offered at this University.
- 4 The BCom programme consists of Part I and Part II. Students must pass or be concurrently enrolled in Part I courses before taking Part II courses for this degree.
  - a **Part I**
    - (i) At least 14 points from the following courses unless direct entry has been granted:
      - 2 points: ACCTG 101 Accounting Information
      - 2 points: COMLAW 101 Law, Commerce and Government
      - 2 points: ECON 101 Microeconomics
      - 2 points: ECON 111 Macroeconomics
      - 2 points: MGMT 101 Organisation and Management
      - 4 points from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
    - (ii) A student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of those courses listed above in regulation 4a(i) with the permission of the Senate or its representative.
  - b **Part II**  
A further 28 points comprising:
    - (i) at least 22 points above Stage I
    - (ii) at least one major as specified in the BCom Schedule.

### Conjoint Degrees

- 5 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

### Special Cases

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s). If the student fails the Stage II course(s) but is certified by the examiner as having reached the standard of a pass at Stage I, the student may be credited with the appropriate Stage I course(s).

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations come into force on 1 January 2001 and replace the 1996 Regulations.

## Bachelor of Commerce (BCom) Schedule

### Courses available for BCom:

#### Accounting

- ACCTG 101-102
- ACCTG 211-222
- ACCTG 311-331, 371, 381, 382

#### Commercial Law

- COMLAW 101
- COMLAW 201-208
- COMLAW 301-321

**Computer Science**

- COMPSCI 101, 105
- COMPSCI 280
- COMPSCI 340

**Economics**

- ECON 101–111
- ECON 201–273
- ECON 301–381

**Finance**

- FINANCE 251–261
- FINANCE 351–362, 383, 384

**Information Systems**

- INFOSYS 110
- INFOSYS 220–226, COMPSCI 280
- INFOSYS 320–332, 338–340

**International Business**

- INTBUS 202–211
- INTBUS 301–312

**Management and Employment Relations**

- MGMT 101

- MGMT 201–232
- MGMT 301–340, PSYCH 312

**Marketing**

- MKTG 201–202
- MKTG 301–314

**Mathematics**

- MATHS 108, 208
- plus any other 2 point Mathematics course at Stage I, II and III

**Operations Management**

- OPSMGT 255–258, STATS 255
- OPSMGT 333, 370–383

**Operations Research**

- OPSRES 385–393, STATS 320, 391

**Psychology**

- PSYCH 312

**Statistics**

- STATS 108, 208, 255, 320, 391
- plus any other 2 point Statistics course at Stage I, II and III

**BCom Majors:****Accounting**

- 2 points: ACCTG 102
- at least 4 points from ACCTG 211, 212, 221, 222
- at least 6 points from ACCTG 311, 312, 321, 323, 331, 371, 382, COMLAW 301

**Asian Business Studies**

- 4 points from CHINESE 100 and 101; or JAPANESE 130 and 131; or INDO 101 and 102; or KOREAN 100 or alternatives approved by the Senate or its representative
- 4 points: ECON 343, INTBUS 312
- at least 2 points from COMLAW 307, ECON 341, 352, GEOG 312, INTBUS 304, POLITICS 324

**Commercial Law**

- at least 4 points from COMLAW 201–208
- at least 6 points from COMLAW 301–321, LAW 419

**Economics**

- 4 points: ECON 201, 211
- at least 8 points including at least 6 points at Stage III from ECON 202, 205, 212, 221–273, 301–381

**Electronic Commerce**

- 6 points: INFOSYS 225, 226, OPSMGT 258
- at least 6 points from COMLAW 313, MGMT 340, MKTG 314, OPSMGT 373

**Finance**

- 2 points: ACCTG 102
- 6 points: FINANCE 251, 261, MATHS 208
- at least 6 points from ACCTG 371, ECON 352, FINANCE 351, 361, 362, 383, 384

**Information Systems**

- 2 points: COMPSCI 101

- 8 points: COMPSCI 280, INFOSYS 220, 222, 225, 226, 320
- at least 4 points (or 6 points if INFOSYS 340 selected) from COMLAW 302, INFOSYS 323, 327, (INFOSYS 328 or OPSMGT 333), INFOSYS 329–330, 332, 338–340

**International Business**

- 6 points: INTBUS 202, 210, 211
- at least 4 points from INTBUS 301–304
- at least 2 points from INTBUS 310–312

**International Trade**

- 8 points: ECON 201, INTBUS 202, 210, 211
- 4 points: ECON 341, INTBUS 304
- at least 2 points from ECON 342, 343, 352, COMLAW 307, 312

**Law and Economics**

- 8 points: COMLAW 203, ECON 201, 303, LAW 419
- at least 2 points from ECON 301, 304, COMLAW 305, 310

**Management and Employment Relations**

- at least 4 points from MGMT 201–232
- at least 6 points (or 8 points if MGMT 310 selected) from ECON 302, INTBUS 303, MGMT 301–340, PSYCH 312

**Marketing**

- 10 points: MKTG 201, 202, 301, 303, STATS 208
- at least 2 points from MKTG 302, 305–307, 311–314

**Operations Management**

- 4 points: OPSMGT 255, STATS 255
- at least 2 points from OPSMGT 256–258
- 2 points: OPSMGT 370
- at least 4 points (or 6 points if OPSMGT 375 selected) from OPSMGT 333, 371, 373, 375, 382, 383, OPSRES 385, 392

**Operations Research**

- 2 points: COMPSCI 101
- 2 points: INFOSYS 222
- 4 points: OPSMG 255, STATS 255
- 2 points from STATS 391, OPSRES 392
- 2 points from STATS 320, OPSRES 385

- at least 2 points (or 4 points if OPSMG 375 selected) from OPSMG 370, 371, 375, 382, 383

**Taxation**

- 8 points: COMLAW 202, 203, 301, 311
- at least 2 points from ACCTG 311, ECON 361

**The Degree of Bachelor of Business and Information Management – BBIM**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 The programme consists of Part I and Part II. Students must pass or be concurrently enrolled in Part I courses before taking Part II courses for this degree.
  - a **Part I**
    - 16 points from the following courses unless direct entry has been granted:
      - 2 points: ACCTG 191
      - 2 points: COMLAW 191
      - 2 points: ECON 191
      - 2 points: INFOMGMT 191
      - 2 points: INFOMGMT 192
      - 4 points: MGMT 191
      - 2 points: STATS 191
  - b **Part II**

26 points from one of the following options:

*either*

    - 12 points: Information Management major
    - 12 points: Accounting major or Marketing major or Human Resource Management major
    - 2 points: MGMT 291

*or*

    - 12 points: Accounting major or Marketing major or Human Resource Management major
    - 6 points: INFOMGMT 291, 292, 391
    - 2 points: INFOMGMT 293–295
    - 2 points: MGMT 291
    - 4 points: Electives (chosen from other courses in the BBIM Schedule)

**Special Cases**

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s). If the student fails the Stage II course(s) but is certified by the examiner as having reached the standard of a pass at Stage I, the student may be credited with the appropriate Stage I course(s).

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations come into force on 1 January 2001.

**Bachelor of Business and Information Management (BBIM) Schedule****Courses available for BBIM:****Accounting**

- ACCTG 191–192
- ACCTG 291–292
- ACCTG 391–394

**Commercial Law**

- COMLAW 191
- COMLAW 291, 292
- COMLAW 391

**Economics**

- ECON 191

**Information Management**

- INFOMGMT 191-192
- INFOMGMT 291-295
- INFOMGMT 391-393

**Management and Employment Relations**

- MGMT 191

- MGMT 291-294
- MGMT 391-395

**Marketing**

- MKTG 291-293
- MKTG 391-395

**Statistics**

- STATS 191

**BBIM Majors:**

**Accounting**

- 2 points: ACCTG 192
- 4 points: ACCTG 291, 292
- 6 points: ACCTG 391-393

**Information Management**

- 6 points: INFOMGMT 291-293
- 6 points: INFOMGMT 391-393

**Marketing**

- 6 points: MKTG 291-293
- 6 points: MKTG 391-393

**Management and Employment Relations**

- 6 points: MGMT 292-294
- 6 points: MGMT 391-393

**The Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) – BCom(Hons)**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 a In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or an equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- b A student is to have passed the prerequisites for one of the subjects listed in Regulation 4 below.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolling for this degree has to follow a programme of one full-time year or two consecutive part-time years and pass courses to a value of 14 points.
- b The total enrolment for this degree may not exceed 18 points.
- 3 The requirements for this degree must normally be completed within two years of initial enrolment for the degree.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student for this degree needs to pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points from the subjects as listed in the schedule to these regulations.

**Dissertation**

- 5 A dissertation must be submitted within four weeks after the end of the final semester in which the student is enrolled for this degree.

**Enrolment for Two Programmes**

- 6 This degree may not be studied at the same time as another programme, unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Award of Honours**

- 8 a This degree may be awarded only where a student's average grade for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours), is sufficiently high to deserve honours.
- b Should a student fail to qualify for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours), the Senate or its representative may recommend the reassignment of points towards the Degree of Master of Commerce, Graduate Diploma in Commerce or the Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce.

**Classes of Honours**

- 9 Where the standard specified in Regulation 8a is achieved, Honours will be awarded in either of two classes: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Withdrawal**

- 10 A student may withdraw from enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) and apply to have points reassigned to the Master of Commerce, Graduate Diploma in Commerce or the Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce. Such points may be reassigned at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

**Commencement**

- 11 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

---

**Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) (BCom(Hons)) Schedule**


---

**Accounting**

- Prerequisite:** MATHS 208 or STATS 208 or equivalent courses as approved by the Head of Department and a major in Accounting
- 6 points: ACCTG 701, 702, 789 Research Essay
  - at least 6 points from ACCTG 711–784
  - up to 2 points from FINANCE 751–785

**Economics**

- Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics including at least 6 points at Stage III and with a pass of at least B in ECON 201, 211, 221, 381, and either 321 or 322
- 2 points: ECON 789 Research Essay
  - 6 points: ECON 701, 711, and either 721 or 723
  - 6 points from ECON 702–783

**Finance**

- Prerequisite:** MATHS 208 or STATS 208 or equivalent courses as approved by the Head of Department and a major in Finance
- 6 points: FINANCE 701, 702, 789 Research Essay
  - at least 6 points from FINANCE 751–785
  - up to 4 points from ACCTG 711–784

**Information Systems**

- Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and a major in Information Systems or its equivalent
- 4 points: INFOSYS 750, 789 Research Essay
  - 4 points: INFOSYS 720, 751
  - at least 6 points from INFOSYS 722, 724–737

**International Business**

- Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in International Business or equivalent
- 4 points: INTBUS 707, 789 Research Essay
  - 10 points from INTBUS 701–706, 711, 712

**Management and Employment Relations**

- Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Management and Employment Relations or its equivalent. Students in the Human Resource Management concentration must have passed MGMT 323 or its equivalent
- 2 points: MGMT 789 Research Essay
  - 2 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
  - 2 points from MGMT 711–737
  - 8 points from Human Resource Management: MGMT 711–716 or Organisational Change and Innovation: MGMT 721–724 or Organisation, Culture and Business: MGMT 731–737

**Marketing**

- Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Marketing, and STATS 208
- 4 points: MKTG 703, 789 Research Essay
  - at least 10 points from MKTG 701, 702, 704–719

**Operations Management**

- Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and a major in Operations Management or its equivalent
- 4 points: INFOSYS 750, 789 Research Essay
  - 4 points: INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752; OPSMGT 760
  - at least 6 points from OPSMGT 740, 761–765, 780–783

**Operations Research**

- Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and a major in Operations Research or its equivalent
- 4 points: INFOSYS 750, OPSRES 789 Research Essay
  - 4 points from INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752, and ENGSCI 460
  - at least 6 points from OPSRES 784–786, ENGSCI 461–464, 720, 751, 752, 791–795

**Taxation**

- Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in Commercial Law, COMLAW 301, 311 and either 303 or 304 or 305
- 4 points: COMLAW 740
  - 4 points from COMLAW 741 or 742
  - 4 points from ACCTG 776, 786, COMLAW 741–755, ECON 765
  - 2 points: COMLAW 789 Research Essay

---

**The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech**

*The Bachelor of Technology is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

---

**The Degree of Master of Commerce – MCom**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:  
*either*

- a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or any other equivalent qualification  
*and*
  - (ii) passed the specified prerequisite courses as listed in the regulations for the intended subject  
*and*
  - (iii) achieved an average grade of B- or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses  
*or*
  - b (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or any other equivalent qualification  
*and*
  - (ii) passed the Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) requirements in the subject intended for this degree with an average grade of B- or higher  
*or*
  - c (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Business Administration  
*and*
  - (ii) passed at least 12 points above Stage I from courses listed in the Bachelor of Commerce Regulations including at least 6 points above Stage II in the intended subject for this degree  
*and*
  - (iii) achieved an average grade of B- or higher in the Stage III courses.
- 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce but who has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree  
*and*
  - b passed all of the specified prerequisite courses as listed in the regulations for the intended subject  
*and*
  - c achieved an average grade of B- or better in the Stage II and Stage III prerequisite courses

may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department or Director of Programme, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce must be taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree and the resulting total duration of this programme must not be extended. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce not be completed within these 12 months, enrolment for the Master of Commerce will be suspended until the requirements for the bachelor's degree are completed.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of:
- a the equivalent of two full-time years and pass a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, or equivalent, or a Degree of Master of Business Administration  
*or*
  - b one full-time year and pass a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or equivalent.
- 4 A student whose application to enrol for this degree on a part-time basis is accepted normally has to follow a programme of:
- a four consecutive part-time years and pass a total value of 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or equivalent, or Degree of Master of Business Administration  
*or*
  - b two consecutive part-time years and pass a total value of 14 points, if entering with the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or equivalent.

#### **Structure and Content**

- 5 a A student for this degree must complete the requirements for one of the subjects as listed in the schedule to these regulations.
- b The relevant Heads of Departments may allow a student for this degree to take courses with a total value of up to 6 points from courses prescribed for another subject for a master's degree provided that such courses are related to the student's research interests.

#### **Thesis and Dissertation**

- 6 a A thesis, advanced research studies, or dissertation, when included in the course of

study, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.

- b The thesis or dissertation topic must be approved by the relevant Head of Department before enrolment for it.
- c
- (i) A student must normally submit the thesis or dissertation in compliance with the deadlines specified in the general regulations for master's degrees.
  - (ii) A student enrolled in advanced research studies must complete all requirements in compliance with the deadlines specified in the general regulations for master's degrees.
  - (iii) A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree and whose course of study includes a thesis, advanced research studies, or dissertation must, before enrolment for the thesis, advanced research studies or dissertation, obtain an average grade of at least B- in the courses' component of the degree. In this case, the thesis, advanced research studies or dissertation is to be submitted in compliance with the deadlines specified in the general regulations for master's degrees.
  - (iv) A student enrolled on a part-time basis under the provisions of Regulation 4 must normally submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.
  - (v) In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend the periods indicated above.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 21 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1975 Regulations.

---

## Master of Commerce (MCom) Schedule

---

A student who has to complete 14 points must satisfy the requirements for one of the following subjects:

### Accounting

- 14 points: ACCTG 796 Thesis

### Economics

- 14 points: ECON 796 Thesis
- or*
- 4 points: ECON 790 Dissertation
- 10 points from: ECON 701-783

### Finance

- 14 points: FINANCE 796 Thesis

### Information Systems

- 14 points: INFOSYS 796 Thesis or 794 Advanced Research Studies in Information Systems

### International Business

- 14 points: INTBUS 796 Thesis

### Management and Employment Relations

- 14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

### Marketing

- 14 points: MKTG 796 Thesis or 14 points: MKTG 794 Advanced Research Studies in Marketing

### Operations Management

- 14 points: OPSMGT 796 Thesis or 794 Advanced Research Studies in Operations Management

### Operations Research

- 14 points: OPSRES 796 Thesis or 794 Advanced Research Studies in Operations Research

A student who has to complete 28 points must satisfy the requirements for one of the following subjects:

### Accounting

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Accounting

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: ACCTG 701, 702
- at least 6 points from ACCTG 711-784

- up to 4 points from FINANCE 751-785
- 14 points: ACCTG 796 Thesis

### Economics

**Prerequisite:** 16 points in Economics, including at least 6 points at

Stage III and with a pass of at least B– in ECON 201, 211, 381 and either 321 or 322

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723
  - 18 additional points from ECON 702–783
  - 4 points: ECON 790 Dissertation
- or
- 6 points: ECON 701, 711 and either 721 or 723
  - 8 additional points from ECON 702–783
  - 14 points: ECON 796 Thesis

### Finance

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Finance

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: FINANCE 701, 702
- at least 6 points from FINANCE 751–785
- up to 4 points from ACCTG 711–784
- 14 points: FINANCE 796 Thesis

### Information Systems

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Information Systems

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: INFOSYS 720, 750, 751
- 8 points from INFOSYS 722, 724–737
- 14 points: INFOSYS 796 Thesis or 794 Advanced Research Studies in Information Systems

### International Business

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in International Business

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from INTBUS 701–712
- 14 points: INTBUS 796 Thesis

### Management and Employment Relations

**Prerequisite:** 6 points at Stage III in the Management and Employment Relations major or its equivalent. Students in the Human Resource Management concentrations must have passed MGMT 323 or its equivalent

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: MGMT 740, 741 or equivalent
- 2 points from MGMT 711–737
- 8 points from Human Resource Management: MGMT 711–716 or Organisational Change and Innovation: MGMT 721–724 or Organisation, Culture and Business: MGMT 731–737; and
- 14 points: MGMT 796 Thesis

### Marketing

**Prerequisite:** STATS 208 and at least 6 points selected from MKTG 301–307

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: MKTG 701, 703, 704
  - 8 points from MKTG 702, 705–719
  - 14 points: MKTG 796 Thesis or MKTG 794 Advanced Research Studies in Marketing
- or
- 6 points: MKTG 701, 703, 704
  - 18 points from MKTG 702, 705–719
  - 4 points: MKTG 790 Dissertation

### Operations Management

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Operations Management

**Requirement:**

- 4 points: INFOSYS 750, OPSMGT 760
- 2 points from INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752
- 8 points from OPSMGT 740, 761–765, 780–783
- 14 points: OPSMGT 796 Thesis or 794 Advanced Research Studies in Operations Management

### Operations Research

**Prerequisite:** BCom or equivalent with a major in Operations Research

- Requirement:**
- 6 points from INFOSYS 750, ENGSCI 460, (INFOSYS 751 or OPSMGT 752)
  - 8 points from OPSRES 784–786, ENGSCI 461–464, 720, 751, 752, 791–795
  - 14 points: OPSRES 796 Thesis or 794 Advanced Research Studies in Operations Research

## The Degree of Master of Business Administration – MBA

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the University of Auckland Graduate Diploma in Business (Administration) with an average grade of at least B

or

  - (ii) completed the requirements for an equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

  - b an acceptable mark in the GMAT or performed acceptably in tests of academic aptitude prescribed by the Senate or its representative
  - c had at least five years' relevant work experience.
- 2 Admission to this degree is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and achieve a pass in 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of:

- a 8 points:
  - BUSADMIN 729 Integrating Strategy
  - BUSADMIN 730 Managing Organisational Change
- b 6 points selected from the following courses:
  - BUSADMIN 704 International Economics
  - BUSADMIN 724 Financial Analysis
  - BUSADMIN 726 Business Ethics
  - BUSADMIN 728 Public Policy and the Corporation
  - BUSADMIN 731 International Business Management
  - BUSADMIN 732 Strategic Human Resource Management
  - BUSADMIN 733 Creativity and Management
  - BUSADMIN 734 Quality Management
  - BUSADMIN 750 Executive-in-residence Course
  - BUSADMIN 751 Decision, Risk and Value
  - BUSADMIN 752 Knowledge Management
  - BUSADMIN 753 Special Topic 1
  - BUSADMIN 754 Special Topic 2
  - BUSADMIN 755 Special Topic 3
  - BUSADMIN 756 Special Topic 4
  - BUSADMIN 757 Special Topic 5
  - BUSADMIN 758 Special Topic 6
- 5 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed above for this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1998 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt

*The Master of Educational Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

---

## The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt

*Regulations for the Master of Engineering Management are listed in the Faculty of Engineering.*

---

## The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt

*The Master of Health Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

---

## The Degree of Master of Management – MMgt

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the University of Auckland Diploma in Management, Diploma in Arts Management or a Graduate Diploma in Business from the University of Auckland with an average grade of at least B+

or

completed the requirements for an equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

b performed acceptably in tests of academic aptitude prescribed by the Senate or its representative

and

c had at least five years' relevant work experience.

2 Admission to this degree is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

3 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year with a total value of 14 points.

b The requirements of this degree are to be completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. The Senate or its representative may extend this period in exceptional circumstances.

#### **Structure and Content**

4 A student must complete:

MANAGEMENT 712 Applied Research in Organisations (14 points)

5 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics.

#### **Variations**

6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Commencement**

7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002 and replaced the 2000 regulations.

## **The Degree of Master of Commercial Law – MComLaw**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### **Admission**

1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:

*either*

a (i) completed the degree of Bachelor of Commerce or Bachelor of Commerce (Hons)

*and*

(ii) passed at least three Stage III courses in Commercial Law

*and*

(iii) achieved an average grade of B- or higher in their last equivalent full-time year of study

*or*

b (i) completed the degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Hons)

*and*

(ii) achieved an average grade of B- or higher in their last equivalent full-time of study

*or*

c (i) completed an alternative degree approved by Senate or its representative in any particular case

*and*

(ii) achieved an average grade of B- or higher in their last equivalent full-time year of study

*and*

(iii) have shown to the satisfaction of Senate or its representative in any particular case capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the courses proposed to be taken for this degree.

2 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

#### **Duration and Total Points Value**

3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of:

a one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points

or

- b If entering with a degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) or equivalent, the equivalent of one full-time year (2 semesters) and pass courses with a value of 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 A student must fulfil the requirements for one of the following:

- a A student who has to complete 21 points must select one of the following options:

**Option A**

- 8 points from COMLAW 701-739, 765-768, 777, 778, LAW 758
- 1 point from COMLAW 793 Research Methods
- 12 points: COMLAW 797 Thesis for MComLaw

**Option B**

- 14 points from COMLAW 701-739, 765-768, 777, 778, LAW 758
- 1 point from COMLAW 793 Research Methods
- 6 points: COMLAW 796 Dissertation for MComLaw

**Option C**

- 20 points from COMLAW 701-739, 765-768, 777, 778, LAW 758
- 1 point from COMLAW 793 Research Methods

or

- b A student who has to complete 14 points must select one of the following options:

**Option A**

- 2 points from COMLAW 731-765, 777, 778,
- 12 points: COMLAW 797 MComLaw Thesis

**Option B**

- 8 points from COMLAW 701-739, 765-768, 777, 778
- 6 points: COMLAW 796 MComLaw Dissertation

**Option C**

- 14 points from COMLAW 701-739, 765-768, 777, 778

- 5 On the recommendation of the relevant Heads of Departments and with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics, a student for this degree may take courses with a total value of up to 4 points from courses prescribed for another master's degree at this University provided that such courses are related to the student's research interests.

### Dissertation

- 6 a Where a dissertation forms part of the requirements, it is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The dissertation topic needs to be approved by the Head of the Department of Commercial Law.
- c (i) The dissertation is normally to be submitted within 16 months of initial enrolment for this degree for a student taking this programme full-time, and within 36 months of initial enrolment for this degree otherwise.  
(ii) In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.

### Thesis

- 7 a A student who wishes to include a thesis in the programme must, before enrolment for the thesis, obtain the approval of the Head of Department of Commercial Law or the Director of the Master of Commercial Law programme.
- b A thesis, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- c The thesis topic must be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department or Director of Programme before enrolment for the thesis.
- d (i) A student who has to complete a 12 point thesis for this degree must normally submit the thesis within 18 months of initial enrolment for this degree for a student taking this programme full-time and within 36 months of initial enrolment otherwise.  
(ii) In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.

### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 9 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
- b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 16 months of initial enrolment for a student taking this programme full-time, and within 36 months of initial enrolment otherwise. In exceptional circumstances however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of these periods for up to 12 months.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of International Business – MIntBus

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's or master's degree  
or  
(ii) gained any other relevant qualification, provided that the Senate or its representative is satisfied that the prior degree or other equivalent qualification is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in International Business
- and
- b acquired basic knowledge in micro and macro economics, accounting, management and quantitative methods as demonstrated by having passed degree courses or their equivalents approved by the Senate or its representative
- and
- c completed the Graduate Management Admission Test at a level deemed acceptable by the Senate or its representative
- and
- d passed the pre-entry language preparation required for each student's proposed language study from one of the following options:
- (i) **Second Language for Business**  
For students whose first language is English, who intend to conduct most business in English, and for whom basic familiarity with a second language and culture will be an advantage.
- (ii) **Business English**  
For students from foreign countries who have already studied English as a second language and who desire further education in English and experience in business conducted in English.  
*Prerequisite:* Test of English as a Foreign Language (TOEFL) with a score of at least 600, or equivalent.
- (iii) **Asian Language**  
For students with prior knowledge of an Asian language and who wish to progress towards proficiency in conducting business in this language.  
*Prerequisite:* Completion of 4 points from Stage II courses in an Asian language as approved by the Director of the Programme, as listed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or their equivalents as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- (iv) **European Language**  
For students with prior knowledge of a European language and who wish to progress towards proficiency in conducting business in this language.  
*Prerequisite:* Completion of 4 points from Stage II courses in European language as approved by the Director of the Programme, as listed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or their equivalents as approved by the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.
- b In exceptional circumstances the Director of the Programme may approve a part-time programme for this degree.

**Structure and Content**

3 The programme consists of Part I, and Part II as follows:

a **Part I**

(i) **Core courses** (8 points):  
INTBUS 751-754

and

(ii) one of the following options:

**Business Environment of Asia and the Pacific**

• 4 points: INTBUS 755, 756

**Business Environment of Europe**

• 4 points: INTBUS 757, 758

**Business Environment of the Americas**

• 4 points: INTBUS 759, 760

and

(iii) 4 points from INTBUS 767, 770.

b **Part II**

• 10 points: INTBUS 765 International Business Practicum

• 2 points: INTBUS 766 Strategic Management of the International Organisation

**Variations**

4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

**The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR**

*The Master of Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**The Degree of Master of Taxation Studies – MTaxS**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:

a completed the requirements for one of the following:

(i) the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce

(ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours)

(iii) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws

(iv) the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)

(v) the Graduate Diploma in Business (Taxation) and an undergraduate degree approved by the Senate or its representative

(vi) an alternative degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

b passed the specified prerequisite courses or such other alternative courses approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

c achieved an average grade of B- or higher in their last equivalent full-time year of study.

2 Admission to this degree is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of:

a the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points

or

b the equivalent of one full year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with:

(i) a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) in Taxation

(ii) a Graduate Diploma in Business (Taxation)

(iii) a Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) including COMLAW 311 and LAW 789 Dissertation on a topic including taxation.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 a A student must select courses as follows:
  - 8 points from COMLAW 740–742
  - 4 points from ACCTG 776, 786, COMLAW 740–755, 765
  - 9 points from ACCTG 792 Dissertation, or COMLAW 792 Dissertation, or ECON 792 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points must satisfy the requirements by completing COMLAW 798 Thesis.

**Dissertation**

- 5 a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The dissertation topic needs to be approved by the relevant Head of Department prior to enrolment in the dissertation.
- c
  - (i) The dissertation may not be presented prior to the third semester of enrolment.
  - (ii) The dissertation is to be submitted within 16 months of initial enrolment for this degree for a student taking this degree full-time, and within 36 months of initial enrolment for this degree otherwise.
  - (iii) In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
- b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 16 months of initial enrolment for a student taking this degree full-time, and within 36 months of initial enrolment otherwise. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period for up to 12 months.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1989 Regulations.

**Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt**

*The Diploma in Environmental Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR**

*The Diploma in Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Graduate Diploma in Business – GradDipBus**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
 

*either*

  - a
    - (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's degree
    - and*
    - (ii) acquired at least two years' employment experience deemed relevant to this diploma by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

*or*

- b (i) completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering, Medicine or a related healthcare subject, Science or other discipline deemed relevant to the programme of study by the Senate or its representative  
and  
(ii) acquired at least two years' employment experience deemed relevant to this diploma by the Senate or its representative
- or
- c had at least five years' employment experience deemed relevant to this diploma by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.
- 2 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.
- 3 A student who has completed the requirements for the diploma in one subject may, with the permission of the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Director of the Graduate Diploma in Business Programme, enrol for the diploma in another subject.
- 4 A student who has completed the requirements for a Graduate Diploma in Business at the University of Auckland may be allowed to cross credit up to a maximum of 4 points to a second Graduate Diploma in Business, with the approval of the Senate or its representative.
- 5 A student who has completed the requirements for a Graduate Certificate in Business, may on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to a Graduate Diploma in Business the courses passed for the associated Graduate Certificate in Business.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 6 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses and workshops with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 7 A student is to complete the requirements for one of the subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations.
- 8 A student who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course or workshop the same as or similar to those required in the schedule to these regulations will be required to substitute for each course or workshop so credited such additional course(s) or workshop(s) as the Director may approve.

#### Variations

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2002 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

---

### Graduate Diploma in Business Schedule

---

#### Administration

- (i) 14 points from: BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance  
or  
BUSADMIN 702 Accounting for Decision-makers  
BUSADMIN 705 Business Law  
BUSADMIN 710 Economics  
BUSADMIN 711 E-commerce strategies  
BUSADMIN 712 Leadership and Organisation  
or  
BUSADMIN 713 Managing People  
MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers  
OPSMAN 703 Operations Management

#### Business Taxation

- (i) 12 points from:  
COMLAW 601 Taxation Structures and Processes Part A  
COMLAW 602 Taxation Structures and Processes Part B  
COMLAW 603 Principles of Income Taxation  
COMLAW 604 Principles of Indirect Taxation  
COMLAW 605 Advanced Studies in Taxation Part A  
COMLAW 606 Advanced Studies in Taxation Part B  
(ii) Either 2 points from:

COMLAW 607 Special Topic in Taxation  
COMLAW 608 Special Topic in Taxation

or

2 points from other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

#### Engineering Management

- (i) 1 point:  
ENGMGMT 611 Project in Engineering Management  
(ii) 9 points from:  
ENGMGMT 602 Resource Management  
ENGMGMT 603 Technology Management  
ENGMGMT 605 Quality Management for Engineers  
OPSMAN 605 Project Management  
(iii) 4 points from other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

#### Finance

- (i) 9 points:  
FINMGMT 601 Financial Management  
FINMGMT 602 Investments  
FINMGMT 703 Case Studies in Business and Finance

- (ii) 2 points from:  
FINMGMT 613 Special Topic  
FINMGMT 614 Special Topic  
FINMGMT 615 Special Topic
- (iii) at least 3 points from:  
BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance  
FINMGMT 611 Managerial Economics  
FINMGMT 612 Finance Law  
other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

### Health Informatics

- (i) 2 points from:  
COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation
- and*
- (ii) 12 points:  
HLTHINFO 713 Information Systems Technology  
HLTHINFO 716 Health Information Systems  
COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
COMHLTH 723 Quality in Health Care  
COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics
- or*
- (iii) 14 points:  
COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
HLTHINFO 713 Information Systems Technology  
HLTHINFO 716 Health Information Systems  
HLTHINFO 718 Computerised Patient Records  
COMHLTH 747 Healthcare Decision Support Systems  
HLTHINFO 720 Telemedicine and Telecare
- or*
- (iv) 2 points from:  
COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation
- and*
- (v) 12 points:  
HLTHINFO 718 Computerised Patient Records  
HLTHINFO 720 Telemedicine and Telecare  
COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
COMHLTH 723 Quality in Health Care  
COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics  
COMHLTH 747 Healthcare Decision Support Systems

### Health Management

- (i) 6 points from:  
BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance  
BUSADMIN 713 Managing People  
OPSMAN 703 Operations Management
- (ii) 6 points from:  
COMHLTH 707 Health Economics  
COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
COMHLTH 716 Health Care Organisation
- or*
- GENPRAC 610 Primary Care I
- (iii) 2 points from:  
COMHLTH 711 Maori Health – Introduction  
COMHLTH 723 Quality in Health Care  
COMHLTH 730 Pacific Health: An Introduction  
GENPRAC 611 Primary Care II

### Human Resource Management

- (i) 12 points:  
HRMGMT 601 Organisation and Society  
HRMGMT 602 Employment Relations  
HRMGMT 603 Human Resource Policies and Practice

HRMGMT 604 Managing Change in Organisations

- (ii) 2 points from:  
HRMGMT 609 Occupational Health and Safety  
HRMGMT 612 Special Topic  
HRMGMT 613 Special Topic  
other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

### Information Systems

- (i) At least 11 points from:  
BUSADMIN 711 E-Commerce Strategies  
INFORM 603 Information Systems Management  
INFORM 610 Electronic Commerce Applications  
INFORM 611 Enterprise Systems  
INFORM 612 Project in Information Systems  
INFORM 613 Information Systems Technology  
INFORM 614 Electronic Commerce Strategies  
INFORM 617 Electronic Commerce Technology  
OPSMAN 605 Project Management
- (ii) Up to 3 points from other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

### International Strategy and Leadership

- (i) 9 points:  
BUSADMIN 710 Economics  
INTSTRAT 651 Strategy and Planning for International Competitiveness  
INTSTRAT 656 Cross-cultural Dimension of Business  
INTSTRAT 750 International Business
- (ii) 2 points from:  
BUSADMIN 712 Leadership and Organisation  
INTSTRAT 657 Strategic Leadership
- (iii) 3 points from:  
INTSTRAT 655 Business Environment of Asia  
INTSTRAT 660 Special Topic  
INTSTRAT 661 Special Topic  
INTSTRAT 662 Special Topic: International Business
- and/or*  
any other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

### Maori Development

- (i) 12 points:  
MAORIDEV 601 Maori Society: History and Resources  
MAORIDEV 604 Maori Business Development  
MAORIDEV 610 Accounting for Maori Business  
MAORIDEV 611 Legal Studies for Maori Business  
MAORIDEV 612 Management for Maori Organisations
- (ii) 2 points from:  
MAORIDEV 613 Special Topic  
MAORIDEV 614 Special Topic  
other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

### Marketing

- (i) 2 points:  
MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers
- (ii) 10 points from:  
MARKET 601 Marketing Strategy  
MARKET 602 Understanding Customers and Markets  
MARKET 603 Marketing Communications  
MARKET 605 Special Project in Marketing  
MARKET 608 Special Topic: Advanced Strategy  
MARKET 613 Special Topic: Services Marketing  
MARKET 614 E-Commerce and Interactive Marketing  
MARKET 615 Creating and Managing Brands  
MARKET 621 Sales Management
- (iii) 2 points from other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator

---

### New Venture Management

- (i) 8 points:  
 NEWVENT 603 New Ventures  
 NEWVENT 604 Corporate Venturing  
 NEWVENT 609 Managing a Small Business
- (ii) 6 points from:  
 NEWVENT 605 Franchising  
 NEWVENT 606 Special Topic in New Ventures  
 other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator
- 

### Operations Management

- (i) 7 points:  
 OPSMAN 601 Strategic Operations  
 OPSMAN 613 Quantitative Methods for Managers  
 OPSMAN 615 Performance Frameworks  
 OPSMAN 703 Operations Management
- (ii) 5 points from:  
 INFORM 603 Information Systems Management  
 INFORM 610 Electronic Commerce Applications  
 INFORM 611 Enterprise Systems  
 OPSMAN 605 Project Management  
 OPSMAN 614 Logistics and Supply Chain Management
- 

QUALITY 613 Quality Management  
 BUSADMIN 712 Leadership and Organisation

or

- BUSADMIN 713 Managing People  
 (iii) 2 points from other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator
- 

### Quality Management

- (i) 7 points:  
 INFORM 610 Electronic Commerce Applications  
 INFORM 611 Enterprise Systems  
 OPSMAN 613 Quantitative Methods for Managers  
 OPSMAN 615 Performance Frameworks  
 QUALITY 603 Quality Strategy and Implementation  
 QUALITY 613 Quality Management
- (ii) 5 points from:  
 OPSMAN 605 Project Management  
 OPSMAN 703 Operations Management  
 QUALITY 602 Statistical Thinking in Quality Management  
 BUSADMIN 712 Leadership and Organisation
- or
- BUSADMIN 713 Managing People  
 (iii) 2 points from other courses offered for the Graduate Diploma in Business selected in agreement with the Programme Coordinator
- 

## Graduate Diploma in Commerce – GradDipCom

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for any other degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - c completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Commerce approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 2 a With the approval of the Senate or its representative, a student may enrol for this diploma after gaining at least 40 points for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or, in any particular case, the equivalent in other such degrees.
 

and

  - b The diploma will not be awarded until such qualifying degree is completed.
- 3 Admission to the diploma is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.
- b Cross-credit will not be granted towards the Graduate Diploma in Commerce.

### Structure and Content

- 5 The programme for this diploma consists of 14 points as follows:
  - a at least 6 points from courses above Stage II in one subject or major from the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Commerce or Master of Commerce.
  - b at least 2 points from courses above Stage II from the subjects or majors listed in the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Commerce and Master of Commerce.
  - c up to 6 points from Stage II courses from the subjects or majors listed in the Regulations to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce.
  - d up to 4 points from courses from the regulations of any other degree of this University may be chosen with the permission of Senate or its representative.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1996 Diploma in Commerce Regulations.

**Graduate Certificate in Business – GradCertBus**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
- either*
- a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
- or*
- b (i) completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering, Medicine or a related healthcare subject, Science or other discipline deemed relevant to the programme of study by the Senate or its representative
- and*
- (ii) had at least two years' relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Department
- or*
- c had at least five years' employment experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

**Course Structure and Content**

- 3 A student is to complete the requirements for one of the subjects listed in the schedule to these regulations.
- 4 A student who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course or workshop the same or similar to those required in the schedule to these regulations will be required to substitute for each course or workshop so credited such additional course(s) or workshop(s) as the Senate or its representative may approve.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme that does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations come into force on 1 January 2002.

**Graduate Certificate in Business Schedule****Health Informatics**

- COMHLTH 742 Principles of Health Informatics

- HLTHINFO 713 Information Systems Technology
- HLTHINFO 716 Health Information Systems

**Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce – PGDipCom**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or an equivalent qualification approved by Senate or its representative
- and*
- (ii) passed the specified prerequisites as listed in the Regulations for the intended subject

- and*  
(iii) achieved an average grade of B- or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma on a part-time basis has to normally follow a programme of two consecutive part time years and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 A student has to pass courses worth 14 points in a particular subject at the master's level from the schedule to the Degree of Master of Commerce. Up to 4 points may be taken from a related subject with approval of the relevant Heads of Department.
- 5 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Departments and also the Associate Dean (Postgraduate Studies) of the Faculty of Business and Economics.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

---

## Regulations – Engineering

The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering – BE	136
The Degree of Master of Engineering – ME	140
The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt	142
The Degree of Master of Engineering Studies – MEngSt	143
The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR	144
Diploma in Engineering – DipEng	144
Diploma in Engineering (Transportation) – DipEng(Transp)	144
Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt	145
Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology – DipGeothermTech	145
Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology – DipPulpPaper	146
Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR	147
Diploma in Technology Education – DipTechEd	147
Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology – CertGeothermTech	147

## REGULATIONS – ENGINEERING

### The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering – BE

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student needs to pass Part I, and each of Parts II, III and IV for one of the areas of specialisation listed in the Bachelor of Engineering Schedule:
  - b (i) A student will not normally be permitted to enrol for Part II unless Part I has been completed, or to enrol for Part III unless Part II has been completed, or to enrol for Part IV unless Part III has been completed.
  - (ii) However, a student who has failed to pass one of those parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next part.
  - (iii) In no case will a student be permitted to enrol for Part III unless Part I has been completed, or to enrol for Part IV unless Part II has been completed.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 3 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 a A student enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practical work in ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice and ENGGEN 499 Practical Work, and laboratory requirements, as prescribed by the Faculty of Engineering.
- b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering confirmation that the student has complied with the requirements of Regulation 4a.

#### Honours

- 5 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's average grade over the entire course is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000, and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

### Bachelor of Engineering Schedule

Part I – for all BE students	Points	Biomedical Engineering	Points
CHEMMAT 121 Materials Science	2	<b>Part II</b>	
ELECTENG 101 Electrical Engineering Systems	2	BIOSCI 201 Cellular and Molecular Biology	2
ENGGEN 110 Engineering Design 1A	1	PHYSIOL 210 Human Physiology: The Survival Machine	2
ENGGEN 111 Engineering Design 1B	1	ENGGEN 202 Professional Development 2	1
ENGGEN 121 Engineering Mechanics	2	ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGSCI 111 Mathematical Modelling 1	2	ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 131 Engineering Computing	1	ENGSCI 212 Mathematical Modelling 2ES	2
ENGGEN 104 Professional Development 1	1	ENGSCI 231 Computational Techniques 1	1
2 points approved elective from another faculty		ENGSCI 271 Modelling in Bioengineering	1

ENGSCI 272 Bioinstrumentation 1	2
ENGSCI 274 Mechanics of Biomaterials	2

**Part III**

PHYSIOL 302 Biophysics of Nerve and Muscle	2
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 312 Mathematical Modelling 3ES	1
ENGSCI 321 Probability and Statistics	1
ENGSCI 331 Computational Techniques 2	2
ENGSCI 332 Computer Systems and Control	2
ENGSCI 341 Foundations of Continuum Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 371 Continuum Modelling in Bioengineering	2
ENGSCI 372 Bioinstrumentation 2	1

**Part IV**

PHYSIOL 304 Cardiorespiratory Physiology	2
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
ENGSCI 400 Project in Biomedical Engineering	3
ENGSCI 471 Computational Methods for Bioengineering	2
ENGSCI 472 Whole Organ Modelling	2
<b>Elective courses:</b> 2 points selected from the following:	
BIOSCI 350 Protein Structure and Function	2
BIOSCI 740 Molecular Biotechnology	2
ANATOMY 751 Advanced Biomedical Imaging	2
PHYSIOL 301 Molecular Physiology	2
ENGSCI 414 Mathematical Modelling 4A	2
2 points approved from other course(s) of study	

**Chemical and Materials Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

CHEMMAT 211 Introduction to Process Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 212 Energy and Processing	2
CHEMMAT 213 Transfer Processes 1	2
CHEMMAT 221 Materials	2
CHEMMAT 231 Process Design 1	1
CHEMMAT 241 Applied Chemistry 1	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2

**Part III**

CHEMMAT 311 Process Dynamics and Control	1
CHEMMAT 312 Transfer Processes 2	2
CHEMMAT 315 Chemical Reactor Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 316 Particulate Technology	1
CHEMMAT 321 Materials Performance	1
CHEMMAT 331 Process Design 2	2
CHEMMAT 341 Applied Chemistry 2	1
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2

**Part IV**

CHEMMAT 411 Advanced Process Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 421 Materials Processing	1
CHEMMAT 431 Design Project	3
CHEMMAT 441 Project	3
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
<b>Elective courses:</b> 4 points approved by the Head of Department or selected from the following:	
CHEMMAT 361 Engineering Biotechnology	2
CHEMMAT 422 Non-Metallic Materials	2
CHEMMAT 423 Materials Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 424 Electronic Materials and Their Applications	2
CHEMMAT 461 Air Quality Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 462 Technology for Sustainability	2
CHEMMAT 463 Food Process Engineering	2

**Civil Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

CIVIL 201 Land Information Systems	1
CIVIL 210 Structural Mechanics 1	2
CIVIL 211 Structural Mechanics 2	2
CIVIL 220 Introductory Engineering Geology	1
CIVIL 221 Geomechanics 1	1
CIVIL 230 Fluid Mechanics 1	1
CIVIL 250 Civil Engineering Materials	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
RESOURCE 243 Introduction to Environmental Engineering	1

**Part III**

CIVIL 312 Structural Design 1	2
CIVIL 313 Structural Design 2	2
CIVIL 322 Geomechanics 2	1
CIVIL 323 Foundation Engineering	1
CIVIL 331 Hydraulic Engineering	1
CIVIL 332 Fluid Mechanics 2	1
CIVIL 360 Transportation Engineering 1	1
CIVIL 361 Transportation Engineering 2	1
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2

**Part IV**

CIVIL 401 Civil and Resource Administration	1
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
RESOURCE 404 Resource Management	1
<b>Elective courses:</b> 11 points selected from Resource Engineering Part IV electives and/or the following:	
GEOLOGY 372 Case Histories in Engineering Geology	2
CIVIL 402 Project	3
CIVIL 403 Special Topic in Civil Engineering A	2
CIVIL 404 Special Topic in Civil Engineering B	2
CIVIL 405 History of Engineering	1
CIVIL 406 Management Techniques	2
CIVIL 407 Accounting for Engineers	1
CIVIL 411 Structural Design 3	2
CIVIL 412 Introductory Structural Dynamics	1
CIVIL 413 Structural Seismic Design	2
CIVIL 414 Structural Concrete Theory	1
CIVIL 415 Applied Structural Mechanics I	1
CIVIL 420 Geomechanics 3	2
CIVIL 430 Fluid Mechanics 3	1
CIVIL 431 Maritime Engineering	2
CIVIL 450 Mechanics of Materials	2
CIVIL 451 Timber Engineering	2
CIVIL 460 Traffic Systems Design	1
CIVIL 461 Highway and Transportation Design	2
RESOURCE 324 Slope Engineering	1
RESOURCE 333 Engineering Hydrology	2
Up to 4 points approved from other programmes	

**Computer Systems Engineering**

Points

**Part II**

CHEMMAT 201 Materials for Electrical Engineering	1
ELECTENG 202 Circuits and Systems	2
ELECTENG 203 Software Design 1E	1
ELECTENG 204 Engineering Electromagnetics 1	2
ELECTENG 205 Computer Systems 1E	2
ELECTENG 206 Engineering Design 2E	1
ELECTENG 207 Microelectronic Circuits	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2

**Part III**

COMPSCI 313 Computer Organisation	2
COMPSYS 301 Engineering Design 3CS	2
COMPSYS 302 Software Design 2CS	2
ELECTENG 303 Systems and Control	2
ELECTENG 304 Computer Systems 2E	2
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2

**Part IV**

COMPSYS 401 Project	3
ELECTENG 423 Computer Systems 3E	2
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
<b>Elective courses:</b> 4 points selected from the following:	
COMPSCI 314 Data Communications Fundamentals	2
COMPSCI 340 Operating Systems	2
COMPSYS 402 Embedded Real-time Systems	2
2 points approved from Computer Science Stage III courses	2
4 points selected from the following:	
ELECTENG 302 Engineering Electromagnetics 2	2
ELECTENG 305 Electronic Devices and Technology	2
ELECTENG 412 Communication Systems	2
ELECTENG 413 Signal Processing	2
ELECTENG 422 Control Systems	2
2 points approved from other programmes	

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering** **Points****Part II**

CHEMMAT 201 Materials for Electrical Engineering	1
ELECTENG 202 Circuits and Systems	2
ELECTENG 203 Software Design 1E	1
ELECTENG 204 Engineering Electromagnetics 1	2
ELECTENG 205 Computer Systems 1E	2
ELECTENG 206 Engineering Design 2E	1
ELECTENG 207 Microelectronic Circuits	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2

**Part III**

ELECTENG 301 Engineering Design 3E	2
ELECTENG 302 Engineering Electromagnetics 2	2
ELECTENG 303 Systems and Control	2
ELECTENG 304 Computer Systems 2E	2
ELECTENG 305 Electronic Devices and Technology	2
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2

**Part IV**

ELECTENG 401 Project	3
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
<b>Elective courses:</b> 10 points selected from the following:	
ELECTENG 411 Power Systems	2
ELECTENG 412 Communication Systems	2
ELECTENG 413 Signal Processing	2
ELECTENG 414 Power Electronics	2
ELECTENG 415 Special Topics A	2
ELECTENG 421 Radio Systems	2
ELECTENG 422 Control Systems	2
ELECTENG 423 Computer Systems 3E	2
ELECTENG 424 Special Topics B	2
2 points approved from other programmes	

**Engineering Science** **Points****Part II**

ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
----------------------------------------	---

ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 212 Mathematical Modelling 2ES	2
ENGSCI 231 Computational Techniques 1	1
ENGSCI 232 Computer Systems	1
ENGSCI 255 Modelling in Operations Research	2
ENGSCI 261 Engineering Design 2ES	1
ENGSCI 262 Modelling in Engineering	1
MECHENG 211 Thermofluids	2
MECHENG 242 Mechanics of Materials	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 312 Mathematical Modelling 3ES	1
ENGSCI 321 Probability and Statistics	1
ENGSCI 331 Computational Techniques 2	2
ENGSCI 332 Computer Systems and Control	2
ENGSCI 341 Foundations of Continuum Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 342 Modelling in Continuum Mechanics	2
ENGSCI 361 Engineering Design 3ES	1
ENGSCI 391 Optimisation in Operations Research	2

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
ENGSCI 400 Project	3

**Elective courses:** 10 points selected from the following:

ENGSCI 401 Special Topic in Engineering Science A	2
ENGSCI 402 Special Topic in Engineering Science B	1
ENGSCI 403 Special Topic in Engineering Science C	2
ENGSCI 404 Special Topic in Engineering Science D	1
ENGSCI 414 Mathematical Modelling 4 A	2
ENGSCI 415 Mathematical Modelling 4 B	1
ENGSCI 416 Mathematical Modelling 4 C	1
ENGSCI 440 Continuum Mechanics	2
ENGSCI 441 Bioengineering	1
ENGSCI 442 Fluid Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 443 Solid Mechanics	1
ENGSCI 450 Computational Techniques 3 A	2
ENGSCI 451 Computational Techniques 3 B	1
ENGSCI 452 Computational Techniques 3 C	1
ENGSCI 453 Advanced Computer Systems	1
ENGSCI 460 Operations Research	2
ENGSCI 461 Advanced Simulation	1
ENGSCI 462 Applied Statistics	1
ENGSCI 463 Scheduling	1
ENGSCI 464 Stochastic Programming	1
Up to 3 points approved from other programmes	

**Mechanical Engineering** **Points****Part II**

ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
MECHENG 211 Thermofluids	2
MECHENG 222 Dynamics	2
MECHENG 232 Engineering Design 2M A	1
MECHENG 233 Engineering Design 2M B	1
MECHENG 242 Mechanics of Materials	2
2 points approved elective from other programmes or	
MECHENG 223 Machines and Mechanisms	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
MECHENG 311 Thermal Engineering	2
MECHENG 322 Control Systems	2

MECHENG 324 Machine Dynamics	1
MECHENG 332 Engineering Design 3M A	1
MECHENG 333 Engineering Design 3M B	1
MECHENG 341 Strength of Materials	1
MECHENG 342 Manufacturing Processes	1
MECHENG 351 Manufacturing Systems	1

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
MECHENG 431 Engineering Design 4M	2
MECHENG 461 Project	3

**Elective Courses:** 8 points approved by the Head of Department or selected from the following:

MECHENG 401 Special Topic in Mechanical Eng A	2
MECHENG 402 Special Topic in Mechanical Eng B	2
MECHENG 403 Special Topic in Mechanical Eng C	1
MECHENG 404 Special Topic in Mechanical Eng D	1
MECHENG 411 Building Services	2
MECHENG 412 Aerohydrodynamics	2
MECHENG 413 Industrial Process and Energy Technology	2
MECHENG 421 Dynamics, Vibrations and Spectral Analysis	2
MECHENG 423 Digital and Computer Control	2
MECHENG 441 Composite Materials	2
MECHENG 443 Manufacturing Technology	2
MECHENG 451 Technology Management	2

**Mechatronics**

**Points**

**Part II**

ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
MECHENG 211 Thermofluids	2
MECHENG 222 Dynamics	2
MECHENG 232 Engineering Design II M 1	2
MECHENG 233 Engineering Design II M 2	2
MECHENG 242 Mechanics of Materials	2
2 points from an approved elective	

**Part III (Not Available)**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
MECHENG 312 Mechatronics 1	2
MECHENG 313 Real Time Software Design	2
MECHENG 322 Control Systems	2
MECHENG 324 Machine Dynamics	1
MECHENG 332 Engineering Design III M 1	1
MECHENG 333 Engineering Design III M 2	1
MECHENG 341 Strength of Materials	1
MECHENG 351 Manufacturing Systems	1

**Part IV (Not Available)**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
MECHENG 405 Mechatronics 2	2
MECHENG 406 Mechatronics Design	2
MECHENG 407 Mechatronics Project 1	1
MECHENG 408 Mechatronics Project 2	2
MECHENG 423 Digital and Computer Control	2
<b>Elective courses:</b> 4 points from:	
COMPSYS 402 Embedded Real Time Systems	2
ELECTENG 423 Computer Systems 3E	2
MECHENG 409 Industrial Automation	2
MECHENG 421 Dynamics, Vibrations and Spectral Analysis	2

**Resource Engineering**

**Points**

**Part II**

CIVIL 201 Land Information Systems	1
CIVIL 220 Introductory Engineering Geology	1
CIVIL 221 Geomechanics 1	1

CIVIL 230 Fluid Mechanics 1	1
ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2	2
RESOURCE 201 Resource Engineering	2
RESOURCE 210 Solid Mechanics and Materials	2
RESOURCE 244 Environmental Engineering 1	2

**Part III**

CIVIL 322 Geomechanics 2	1
CIVIL 331 Hydraulic Engineering	1
CIVIL 332 Fluid Mechanics 2	1
ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
ENGSCI 311 Mathematical Modelling 3	2
RESOURCE 324 Slope Engineering	1
RESOURCE 333 Engineering Hydrology	2
RESOURCE 341 Environmental Engineering 2	2
RESOURCE 342 Environmental Engineering Design	2

**Part IV**

CIVIL 401 Civil and Resource Administration	1
ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
RESOURCE 401 Project	3
RESOURCE 404 Resource Management	1

**Elective courses:** 8 points selected from Civil Engineering

Part IV electives and/or the following:

CHEMMAT 316 Particulate Technology	1
CIVIL 323 Foundation Engineering	1
GEOLOGY 340 Introduction to Mineral Deposits	2
GEOLOGY 342 Resource Economics and Exploration Geology	2
RESOURCE 402 Special Topic in Resource Engineering A	2
RESOURCE 403 Special Topic in Resource Engineering B	2
RESOURCE 405 Special Topic in Resource Engineering C	1
RESOURCE 419 Design Project	2
RESOURCE 441 Water and Wastewater Engineering	2
RESOURCE 442 Solid and Hazardous Waste Management	1
RESOURCE 444 Cleaner Production Engineering	2
RESOURCE 470 Mineral Development and Rehabilitation	2
RESOURCE 471 Excavation Engineering and Design	2
RESOURCE 472 Bulk Materials Handling	2
RESOURCE 480 Water Resources Engineering 1	2
RESOURCE 481 Water Resources Engineering 2	1
LAW 457 Environmental Law for non-Lawyers	2
Up to 2 points approved from other programmes	

**Software Engineering**

**Points**

**Part II**

**Course**

ENGGEN 202 Professional Development II	1
ENGGEN 203 Sustainability Engineering	1
ENGGEN 299 Workshop Practice	0
SOFTENG 206 Engineering Design 2	2
SOFTENG 211 Software Engineering Theory	2
SOFTENG 250 Introduction to Software Engineering	2
SOFTENG 251 Software Engineering 1	2
SOFTENG 252 Computer Organisation	2
SOFTENG 253 Algorithms	2

**Part III**

ENGGEN 302 Professional Development 3	2
SOFTENG 306 Engineering Design 3	2
SOFTENG 325 Software Architecture	2
SOFTENG 350 Software Engineering 2	2
SOFTENG 363 Computer Architecture	2
SOFTENG 364 Computer Networks	2
SOFTENG 370 Operating Systems	2

**Part IV**

ENGGEN 402 Professional Development 4	1
ENGGEN 499 Practical Work	0
SOFTENG 401 Project in Software Engineering	3
SOFTENG 450 Software Engineering 3	2

**Elective courses:** 8 points (four 2-point courses) selected from approved courses in Computer Science, Engineering Science, EEE, MSIS, Mechanical Engineering e.g. Embedded Real-time Systems, Human-Computer Interaction, Artificial Intelligence, Information Systems Design, Modelling and Simulation, Database Systems, Engineering Economics

## The Degree of Master of Engineering – ME

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering at a level deemed satisfactory by the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering
  - or
  - b
    - (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
    - and
    - (ii) passed the courses required for the Degree of Master of Engineering Studies with an average grade of B or higher in 6 points (including at least 4 points at graduate level) at the completion of one semester.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering, approve admission of a student whose average grade is less than B, or waive any other prerequisites, as it thinks fit.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 Each student's programme must consist of:
  - a
    - (i) 14 points from:
      - CHEMMAT 796 ME Thesis (Chemical and Materials)
      - CIVIL 796 ME Thesis (Civil)
      - ELECTENG 796 ME Thesis (Electrical and Electronic)
      - ENGGEN 796 ME Thesis (Engineering)
      - ENGSCI 796 ME Thesis (Engineering Science)
      - MECHENG 796 ME Thesis (Mechanical)
      - RESOURCE 796 ME Thesis (Resource)
    - (ii) 1 point: ME Research Proposal in the relevant thesis subject as listed in the Master of Engineering Schedule.
  - and
  - b
    - (i) 6 points from courses listed in the Schedule to these regulations.
    - (ii) These courses are to be chosen in consultation with the relevant Head of Department.
    - (iii) The relevant Heads of Departments may approve a course or courses from any offered:
      - (a) for Part IV of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering with a total value of not more than 2 points
      - or
      - (b) in any other faculty at Stage III or for Part IV or Part V or equivalent with a total value of not more than 2 points
      - or
      - (c) in any other faculty at master's level with a total value of not more than 4 points.

**Thesis**

- 5
  - a The thesis is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation on a topic approved by the Head of Department.
  - b The investigation is to be carried out by the student at the University under the direct supervision of a member of the academic staff, provided that:
    - (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as the Senate or its representative may determine
    - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate or its representative may determine.

- c The supervisor is to be the principal examiner.
- d At the discretion of the Head of Department the candidate may be required to attend an oral examination.
- e
  - (i) A student normally has to present the thesis by the end of classes for the third semester following initial enrolment for this degree.
  - (ii) A student who is enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis has normally to submit the thesis within 30 months of initial enrolment for this degree.
  - (iii) In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend these periods.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's average grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours may normally only be awarded if the requirements for this degree are completed by the end of classes for the third semester following initial enrolment, or such longer period as the Senate or its representative approves in exceptional circumstances.
- c Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Regulations.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1972 Regulations.

---

## Master of Engineering Schedule

---

	Points		Points
CHEMMAT 711 Advanced Process Control	2	CIVIL 764 Highway Operations and Evaluation	2
CHEMMAT 712 Chemical Engineering Seminar	2	CIVIL 787 Project X (Civil)	2
CHEMMAT 713 Studies in Chemical Engineering	2	CIVIL 788 Project Y (Civil)	4
CHEMMAT 715 Advanced Chemical Engineering	2	CIVIL 789 Project Z (Civil)	4
CHEMMAT 716 Advanced High Temperature Processing	2	CIVIL 790 ME Research Proposal (Civil)	1
CHEMMAT 721 Advanced Materials	2	CIVIL 796 ME Thesis (Civil)	14
CHEMMAT 722 Materials Seminar	2	ELECTENG 701 Wireless Communication	2
CHEMMAT 723 Studies in Materials Engineering	2	ELECTENG 702 Applied Electromagnetics	2
CHEMMAT 724 Advanced Materials Characterisation	2	ELECTENG 703 Advanced Power Systems	2
CHEMMAT 725 Advanced Materials Performance	2	ELECTENG 704 Advanced Control Systems	2
CHEMMAT 731 Biochemical Engineering Seminar	2	ELECTENG 705 Heavy Current Electronics	2
CHEMMAT 733 Thermal Food Process Engineering Applications	2	ELECTENG 706 Digital Signal Processing	2
CHEMMAT 787 Project X	2	ELECTENG 707 Topics in Information Engineering	2
CHEMMAT 788 Project Y	4	ELECTENG 709 Image Processing	2
CHEMMAT 789 Project Z	4	ELECTENG 710 Embedded Systems	2
CHEMMAT 790 ME Research Proposal (Chemical and Materials)	1	ELECTENG 711 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering D	2
CHEMMAT 796 ME Thesis (Chemical and Materials)	14	ELECTENG 712 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering E	2
CIVIL 701 Studies in Civil Engineering A	2	ELECTENG 713 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering F	2
CIVIL 702 Studies in Civil Engineering B	2	ELECTENG 714 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering G	2
CIVIL 703 Project Management A	2	ELECTENG 715 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering H	2
CIVIL 704 Project Management B	2	ELECTENG 716 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering I	2
CIVIL 705 Case Studies in Project Management	2	ELECTENG 787 Project X (Electrical & Electronic)	2
CIVIL 710 Structural Dynamics	2	ELECTENG 788 Project Y (Electrical & Electronic)	4
CIVIL 711 Structures Seminar	2	ELECTENG 789 Project Z (Electrical & Electronic)	4
CIVIL 712 Structural Analysis	2	ELECTENG 790 ME Research Proposal (Electrical and Electronic)	1
CIVIL 713 Structural Design	2	ELECTENG 796 ME Thesis (Electrical and Electronic)	14
CIVIL 720 Earthquake Engineering	2	ENGGEN 701 Special Topic in Engineering A	1
CIVIL 721 Geomechanics Seminar	2	ENGGEN 702 Special Topic in Engineering B	1
CIVIL 722 Applied Geomechanics	2	ENGGEN 703 Special Topic in Engineering C	1
CIVIL 730 Fluid Mechanics Seminar	2	ENGGEN 704 Special Topic in Engineering D	1
CIVIL 731 Advanced Fluid Mechanics	2	ENGGEN 705 Special Topic in Engineering E	1
CIVIL 732 Coastal Engineering	2	ENGGEN 706 Special Topic in Engineering F	1
CIVIL 750 Mechanics of Materials Seminar	2	ENGGEN 707 Special Topic in Engineering G	1
CIVIL 760 Traffic Engineering	2	ENGGEN 708 Special Topic in Engineering H	1
CIVIL 761 Transportation Engineering Seminar	2	ENGGEN 790 ME Research Proposal (Engineering)	1
CIVIL 762 Transportation Planning	2	ENGGEN 796 ME Thesis (Engineering)	14
CIVIL 763 Transportation Systems Analysis	2	ENGSCI 701 Studies in Engineering Science	2
		ENGSCI 711 Studies in Engineering Mathematics	2

ENGSCI 720 Seminar in Stochastic Operations Research	2	MECHENG 725 Structural Acoustics	2
ENGSCI 721 Advanced Numerical Methods	2	MECHENG 727 Active Noise and Vibration Control	2
ENGSCI 741 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A	2	MECHENG 729 Connectionists Networks and Fuzzy Logic Systems	2
ENGSCI 742 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B	2	MECHENG 732 Computer Graphics and Visualisation	2
ENGSCI 743 Geothermal Modelling	2	MECHENG 741 Advanced Mechanics of Materials	2
ENGSCI 744 Bioengineering	2	MECHENG 742 Advanced Materials Manufacturing	2
ENGSCI 751 Studies in Operations Research A	2	MECHENG 751 Advanced Manufacturing Technology	2
ENGSCI 752 Studies in Operations Research B	2	MECHENG 753 Manufacturing Information Systems	2
ENGSCI 787 Project X (Engineering Science)	2	MECHENG 787 Project X (Mechanical)	2
ENGSCI 788 Project Y (Engineering Science)	4	MECHENG 788 Project Y (Mechanical)	4
ENGSCI 789 Project Z (Engineering Science)	4	MECHENG 789 Project Z (Mechanical)	4
ENGSCI 790 ME Research Proposal (Engineering Science)	1	MECHENG 790 ME Research Proposal (Mechanical)	1
ENGSCI 791 Advanced Linear Optimisation	2	MECHENG 796 ME Thesis (Mechanical)	14
ENGSCI 792 Non Linear Optimisation	2	RESOURCE 701 Studies in Resource Engineering A	2
ENGSCI 793 Structural Optimisation	2	RESOURCE 702 Studies in Resource Engineering B	2
ENGSCI 795 Combinatorial Optimisation	2	RESOURCE 703 Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation	2
ENGSCI 796 ME Thesis (Engineering Science)	14	RESOURCE 723 Advanced Rock Mechanics	2
GEO THERM 601 Geothermal Resources and Their Use	2	RESOURCE 740 Public Engineering Seminar	2
GEO THERM 621 Geothermal Reservoir Engineering	2	RESOURCE 741 Hazardous Substance Management	2
GEO THERM 622 Geothermal Production Engineering	2	RESOURCE 742 Environmental Systems Modelling	2
GEO THERM 623 Geothermal Utilisation Engineering	2	RESOURCE 777 Advanced Mineral Processing	2
MECHENG 701 Studies in Mechanical Engineering A	2	RESOURCE 778 Advanced Excavation Engineering	2
MECHENG 702 Studies in Mechanical Engineering B	2	RESOURCE 779 Resource Engineering Seminar	2
MECHENG 703 Studies in Mechanical Engineering C	1	RESOURCE 780 Advanced Water Resources	2
MECHENG 704 Studies in Mechanical Engineering D	1	RESOURCE 787 Project X (Resource)	2
MECHENG 711 Computational Fluid Dynamics	2	RESOURCE 788 Project Y (Resource)	4
MECHENG 714 Wind Engineering	2	RESOURCE 789 Project Z (Resource)	4
MECHENG 716 Internal Combustion Engines	2	RESOURCE 790 ME Research Proposal (Resource)	1
MECHENG 718 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer	2	RESOURCE 796 ME Thesis (Resource)	14
MECHENG 721 Mechanical Control Systems	2	LAW 450 Resource Management Law	2
MECHENG 723 Simulation of Mechanical Systems	2		

## The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for an equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
 and
  - c achieved grades deemed satisfactory by the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 3 Each student's programme is to be chosen in consultation with the relevant Heads of Departments or their representative, and consists of the following:
  - a 4 points: ENGGEN 757 Project M
  - and
  - b courses with a total points value of either 4 or 6 points from:
    - CIVIL 703 Project Management A (2 points)
    - CIVIL 704 Project Management B (2 points)
    - MECHENG 751 Advanced Manufacturing Technology (2 points)
    - MECHENG 753 Manufacturing Information Systems (2 points)
    - MECHENG 758 Special Topic in Engineering Management A (2 points)
    - MECHENG 759 Special Topic in Engineering Management B (2 points)
 and
    - c courses with a total points value of either 4 or 6 points from:
      - BUSADMIN 701 Accounting and Finance (2 points)
      - BUSADMIN 705 Business Law (2 points)
      - BUSADMIN 711 Information Systems in Business (2 points)
      - BUSADMIN 713 Managing People (2 points)
      - MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers (2 points)

**Project Work**

- 4 a A student has normally to submit the Project M report no later than 12 months after initial enrolment in the project.
- b In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 6 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's average grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 12 months of initial enrolment, or such longer period as the Senate or its representative approves in exceptional circumstances.
- c Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997 and replaced the 1996 regulations.

**The Degree of Master of Engineering Studies – MEngSt**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering at a level deemed satisfactory by the Dean of Engineering
  - or
  - b (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
  - and
  - (ii) passed the courses required for the Diploma in Engineering or for the Diploma in Engineering (Transportation) with an average grade of B or higher in 6 points (including at least 2 points at graduate level) at the completion of one semester.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of Engineering, approve admission of a student whose average grade is less than B, or waive any other prerequisites, as it thinks fit.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 Of the 14 points required for this degree:
  - a at least 10 points are to be from courses for the Degree of Master of Engineering and may include up to 6 points from the following:
    - Project X (CHEMMAT 787 or CIVIL 787 or ELECTENG 787 or ENGSCI 787 or MECHENG 787 or RESOURCE 787)
    - Project Y (CHEMMAT 788 or CIVIL 788 or ELECTENG 788 or ENGSCI 788 or MECHENG 788 or RESOURCE 788)
    - Project Z (CHEMMAT 789 or CIVIL 789 or ELECTENG 789 or ENGSCI 789 or MECHENG 789 or RESOURCE 789)
  - b up to 4 points may be from courses, other than projects and theses, approved by the relevant Heads of Departments from:
    - (i) those offered for Part IV of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
    - or
    - (ii) those offered in any other faculty at Stage III or for Part IV or for Part V or equivalent or at master's level.
- 5 The courses required under Regulation 4 are to be chosen in consultation with the relevant Head of Department.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Distinction**

- 7 This degree may be awarded with Distinction or with Merit if:
- a a student's average grade is sufficiently high  
and
  - b the requirements for this degree are completed within 12 months of the initial enrolment, or such longer period as the Senate or its representative approves in exceptional circumstances.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

**The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR**

*The Master of Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Engineering – DipEng**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
or  
(ii) received a professional qualification in Engineering approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
or  
(iii) attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the engineering profession as approved by the Senate or its representative  
or
  - b attained a level of technical competence in Engineering equivalent to at least Parts I and II of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, as may be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering, extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of the following:
- a at least 6 points from elective courses for the Degree of Master of Engineering other than project work or thesis
  - b up to 8 points from:
    - (i) either ENGGEN 601 Case Studies in Engineering A or ENGGEN 602 Case Studies in Engineering B
    - (ii) courses listed for Parts III and IV for the Bachelor of Engineering other than project work.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

**Diploma in Engineering (Transportation) – DipEng(Transp)**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
or
  - (ii) received a professional qualification in Engineering as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
or
  - (iii) attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the engineering profession as approved by the Senate or its representative  
or
  - b attained a level of technical competence in Engineering equivalent to at least Parts I and II of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, as may be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering, extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of the following:
  - a 2 points from:
    - CIVIL 760 Traffic Engineering
    - CIVIL 761 Transportation Engineering Seminar
    - CIVIL 762 Transportation Planning
  - b at least 4 points from:
    - (i) either ENGGEN 601 Case Studies in Engineering A or ENGGEN 602 Case Studies in Engineering B
    - (ii) courses listed for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering other than project work or thesis.
  - c 4 points from:
    - CIVIL 360 Transportation Engineering 1
    - CIVIL 361 Transportation Engineering 2
    - CIVIL 460 Traffic Systems Design
    - CIVIL 461 Highway and Transportation Design
  - d up to 4 points from courses listed for Parts III and IV for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering other than project work.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

**Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt**

*The Diploma in Environmental Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology – DipGeothermTech**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:

either

- a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
- or
- b reached an equivalent level of attainment in Engineering, as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- or
- c completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science
- or
- d reached an equivalent level of attainment in Science, as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 A student for this diploma needs to select courses for one of the following areas of specialisation:
  - a **Earth Science**
    - (i) Core courses with a total value of 6 points:
      - GEOTHERM 601 Geothermal Resources and Their Use
      - GEOTHERM 602 Geothermal Energy Technology
      - GEOTHERM 603 Geothermal Exploration
    - (ii) GEOTHERM 689 Geothermal Project (4 points)
    - (iii) Elective courses with a total value of 4 points from:
      - GEOTHERM 611 Geothermal Geology
      - GEOTHERM 612 Geothermal Geophysics
      - GEOTHERM 613 Geothermal Geochemistry
  - b **Engineering**
    - (i) Core courses with a total value of 6 points:
      - GEOTHERM 601 Geothermal Resources and Their Use
      - GEOTHERM 602 Geothermal Energy Technology
      - GEOTHERM 620 Geothermal Engineering
    - (ii) GEOTHERM 689 Geothermal Project (4 points)
    - (iii) Elective courses with a total value of 4 points from:
      - GEOTHERM 621 Geothermal Reservoir Engineering
      - GEOTHERM 622 Geothermal Production Engineering
      - GEOTHERM 623 Geothermal Utilisation Engineering

#### Enrolment for Two Programmes

- 4 This diploma may not be studied at the same time as another programme unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

#### Project

- 5 a GEOTHERM 689 Project is to be submitted by 23 October in the year of initial enrolment for this diploma.
- b In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may vary the date for submission of the project.

#### Withdrawal from Diploma

- 6 a A student who has passed courses with a total value of at least 10 points from one of the areas of specialisation in Regulation 3, and who is not completing the requirements for this diploma, may be issued with the Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology.
- b No student may be awarded both the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology and the Certificate in Geothermal Technology.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1985 Regulations.

---

## Diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology – DipPulpPaper

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - either*
    - a completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree in Engineering, Forestry or Science
    - or*
    - b reached an equivalent level of attainment in Science or Engineering approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
    - or*
    - c
      - (i) completed the requirements for a New Zealand Certificate in Engineering or Science or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
      - and*
      - (ii) had at least three years' relevant industrial experience approved by the Senate or its representative.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of:
  - PULPAPER 601 The Forest Products Industry
  - PULPAPER 602 Mechanical Pulping
  - PULPAPER 603 Chemical Pulping
  - PULPAPER 604 Papermaking
  - PULPAPER 605 Process and Environmental Control
  - PULPAPER 606 Properties and Uses of Pulp and Paper
  - PULPAPER 690 Dissertation

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1991 Regulations.

**Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR**

*The Diploma in Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Technology Education – DipTechEd**

*The Diploma in Technology Education is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology – CertGeothermTech****Requirements**

- 1 A student wishing to qualify for this certificate needs to have enrolled for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology.
- 2 The Certificate may be issued to a student who has passed courses totalling at least 10 points chosen from one or other of the areas of specialisation available for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology.
- 3 No student may be awarded both the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology and the Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology.

---

## Regulations – Law

- 149 The Degree of Bachelor of Laws – LLB
- 150 The Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) – LLB(Hons)
- 151 The Degree of Master of Laws – LLM
- 153 The Degree of Master of Laws in Environmental Law – LLM(Envir)
- 154 Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt
- 155 Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies – PGDipLS

---

## REGULATIONS – LAW

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Laws – LLB

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student must pass each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:
  - Part I**  
LAW 101 The Legal System  
12 points from courses prescribed for any other programme at the University of Auckland
  - Part II**  
LAW 201 Criminal Law  
LAW 211 Public Law  
LAW 221 Research and Writing 1A  
LAW 231 Law of Torts  
LAW 241 Law of Contract  
LAW 251 Legal Research and Writing 1B
  - Part III**  
LAW 301 Land Law  
LAW 306 Equity  
LAW 311 Law of Personal Property  
LAW 316 Jurisprudence  
7 points from LAW 402–456, 458–498, COMLAW 308, 311
  - Part IV**  
14 points from LAW 402–456, 458–498, COMLAW 308, 311
- b Except as permitted under Regulation 5, a student may not enrol for Part II unless Part I has been completed.
- c Each student must pass Parts II, III and IV in the order provided in Regulation 2a above unless approval to vary the order is given by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

#### Written Work and Practical Requirements

- 3 a A student enrolled for this degree must also complete the requirements of LAW 499, carrying out such work and undergoing such experience in the detailed application of the law and in relation to the provision of legal services, as the Faculty of Law may require.
- b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Law confirmation that the student has complied with the requirements of this regulation.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Graduate Admission

- 5 A student who is a graduate or graduand of any university in New Zealand, or who is granted admission *ad eundem statum* with graduate status, may be selected for admission to Part II and credited with the Part I courses other than LAW 101 The Legal System. Such a student will be required to take LAW 101 The Legal System for Part II in addition to the other Part II courses, and will follow a programme of three full-time years, or equivalent.

#### Courses in other Faculties

- 6 a In place of elective Law courses totalling not more than 6 points for the degree, a student may take courses at Stage II or above offered for other programmes at this University, if they are related to the student's Law studies and approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

- b While approval of such courses is normally given before enrolment, the Dean of the Faculty of Law may in special cases apply this provision to courses previously passed for another programme. Where the Dean approves such courses, they are to be reassigned from that other programme to this degree.

#### Research Courses

- 7 a With the prior approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, a student for this degree may elect to present a research course in lieu of the examination in not more than one elective course taken for the degree, if the teacher in that course has certified that the research course is relevant to the subject matter of the elective course.
- b This regulation applies also to a student taking any elective Law course or courses for any degree other than this, or for any diploma or for a Certificate or Certificates of Proficiency.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1988 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) – LLB(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 a No student on whom the Degree of Bachelor of Laws has already been conferred may enrol for this degree.
- b At the discretion of the Faculty of Law, a student who has completed Parts I and II for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws may be permitted to enrol for this degree.
- c Where the Faculty of Law approves enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) the courses previously passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws will be reassigned to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours), without payment of a fee.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and one part-time year, and pass courses with a total value of at least 62 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 a All the provisions and requirements of the Degree of Bachelor of Laws apply also to a student enrolled for this degree, including the provisions concerning Written Work and Practical Requirements, Courses in Other Faculties and Research Courses.
- b Each student for this degree needs to satisfy all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws and in addition pass:
  - (i) one seminar course (2 points) from LAW 341-399
  - and
  - (ii) LAW 789 Dissertation (4 points)

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Dissertation

- 5 a LAW 789 Dissertation specified in Regulation 3b(ii) is to embody the results of research carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. It is to be submitted by the last day of classes of the next semester following completion of the Part IV year, or by the last day of classes of the semester of initial enrolment for the dissertation, whichever is the earlier. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Dean of the Faculty of Law may extend the time for the submission of the dissertation.
- b The topic of the dissertation must be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**Award of Honours**

- 6 This degree will be awarded only where a student's work throughout the entire course, inclusive of the courses required for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, is of a sufficiently high standard, as determined by the Faculty of Law.

**Withdrawal from Honours**

- 7 A student whose work does not satisfy the standard specified in Regulation 6, or who at any time chooses to withdraw from Honours, may transfer from the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, without payment of a fee. In that case the courses already passed for, or credited to, the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) may be reassigned to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, except for any seminar course or dissertation taken under Regulation 3b.

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1973 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of Laws – LLM

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)  
and  
a have gained an average of B or better in all the courses taken for that degree  
or  
b have gained an average grade of B or higher in courses taken for a Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies, provided that a minimum of 8 points has been completed in master's courses, or LAW 690 Dissertation and 4 points in master's courses, offered by the Faculty of Law and that a grade of B or higher has been achieved in each such course and/or dissertation  
or  
c have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Dean of the Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the courses proposed to be taken for this degree.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points.  
b The requirements for this degree are to be completed within 36 months of the initial enrolment, provided that an extension of up to three months may be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law for the submission of LAW 796 Thesis A or LAW 797 Thesis B.  
c In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, extend the period specified in Regulation 2b above.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 A student for this degree needs to pass LAW 788 Legal Research Methodology (1 point) and also one of the following:  
a at least 20 points from:  
(i) LAW 701-776  
(ii) LAW 777-779 Special Topics (4 points per course)  
(iii) LAW 780-787 Special Topics (2 points per course)  
(iv) COMLAW<sub>6</sub>714  
or  
b at least 16 points from:  
(i) LAW 701-776

- (ii) LAW 777-779 Special Topics (4 points per course)
  - (iii) LAW 780-787 Special Topics (2 points per course)
  - (iv) COMLAW 714
- and
- (v) LAW 790 Dissertation (4 points)

or

- c at least 8 points from:
    - (i) LAW 701-776
    - (ii) LAW 777-779 Special Topics (4 points per course)
    - (iii) LAW 780-787 Special Topics (2 points per course)
    - (iv) COMLAW 714
- and
- (v) LAW 796 Thesis A (12 points)

or

- d LAW 797 Thesis B (20 points).

- 4 A student may not enrol for LAW 797 Thesis B under Regulation 3d without the prior approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

*Note: Approval is normally given only where the student has completed the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) or is otherwise considered adequately qualified to undertake a thesis-only degree.*

- 5 In place of courses listed in Regulation 3 above, a student may take no more than 8 points:
  - a from courses listed in the regulations for the Degree of Master of Laws in Environmental Law
  - b from courses listed in the regulations for the Degree of Master of Commercial Law, provided such courses are not determined by the Dean of the Faculty of Law to be the same as or substantially similar to courses offered for this degree
  - c up to a limit of 4 points from courses offered at Stage III or above for any other programme other than the Degree of Master of Commercial Law and courses taught in the Faculty of Law, provided such courses are deemed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this degree.

#### **Transfer from Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies**

- 6 A student who has passed courses for a Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies that are available for this degree and is eligible to be admitted to this programme may reassign those courses to this degree. With the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, LAW 690 Dissertation may also be reassigned.

*Note: A student who is not a law graduate will not be eligible to transfer to this degree.*

#### **Dissertation and Thesis**

- 7 a LAW 790 Dissertation, LAW 796 Thesis A or LAW 797 Thesis B is to be researched and written under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.
- b The topic of the Dissertation, Thesis A or Thesis B needs to be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.
- c A student is to submit the dissertation or thesis in accordance with the General Regulations - Master's Degrees.

#### **Areas of Specialisation**

- 8 a The courses for this degree may be selected from the general list or from such areas of specialisation as may be shown in the schedule to these regulations.
- b Where courses are passed from one area of specialisation which (together with the dissertation or Thesis A on a related topic, if appropriate) total at least 12 points, this degree may be conferred with an endorsement as to the area of specialisation.
- c Where Thesis B is presented on a topic related to one of the areas of specialisation, this degree may be conferred with an endorsement as to the area of specialisation.

#### **Variations**

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 10 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Commencement**

- 11 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1982 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of Laws in Environmental Law – LLM(Envir)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)  
and
- a have gained an average of B or better in all the courses taken for that degree  
or
  - b have gained an average grade of B or higher in courses taken for a Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies, provided that a minimum of 8 points has been completed in master's courses, or LAW 690 Dissertation and 4 points in master's courses, offered by the Faculty of Law and that a grade of B or higher has been achieved in each such course and/or dissertation  
or
  - c have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Dean of the Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the courses proposed to be taken for this degree.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full year and one part year (three semesters) and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points.
- b The requirements for this degree are to be completed within 36 months of the initial enrolment, provided that an extension of up to three months may be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law for the submission of ENVLAW 796 Thesis A or ENVLAW 797 Thesis B.
- c In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, extend the period specified in Regulation 2b above.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 A student for this degree needs to pass LAW 788 Legal Research Methodology (1 point) and also one of the following:
- a at least 20 points from:
    - (i) ENVLAW 701-722
    - (ii) ENVLAW 723-725 Special Topics (4 points per course)
    - (iii) ENVLAW 726-729 Special Topics (2 points per course)
 or
  - b at least 16 points from:
    - (i) ENVLAW 701-722
    - (ii) ENVLAW 723-725 Special Topics (4 points per course)
    - (iii) ENVLAW 726-729 Special Topics (2 points per course)
 and
  - (iv) ENVLAW 790 Dissertation (4 points)  
or
  - c at least 8 points from:
    - (i) ENVLAW 701-722
    - (ii) ENVLAW 723-725 Special Topics (4 points per course)
    - (iii) ENVLAW 726-729 Special Topics (2 points per course)
 and
  - (iv) ENVLAW 796 Thesis A (12 points)  
or
  - d ENVLAW 797 Thesis B (20 points).

- 4 A student may not enrol for ENVLAW 797 Thesis B under Regulation 3d without the prior approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

*Note: Approval is normally given only where the student has completed the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) or is otherwise considered adequately qualified to undertake a thesis-only degree.*

- 5 In place of courses listed in Regulation 3 above, a student may take no more than 8 points from courses which are:
- a listed in the regulations for the Degree of Master of Laws, and approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
  - b listed in the regulations for the Degree of Master of Commercial Law, and approved by the Deans of the Faculties of Law and Business and Economics
  - c offered at Stage III or above for any programme other than the Degree of Master of Commercial Law and courses taught in the Faculty of Law, and are considered by the Dean of the Faculty of Law to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this degree *provided that:*
    - (i) no more than 4 points may be taken from the courses described in Regulation 5c above
- and
- (ii) a student who has been permitted to do ENVLAW 790 Dissertation on a topic which does not relate to environmental law under Regulation 7b, or who has done LAW 690 Dissertation on a topic which does not, in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, relate to environmental law and who has been permitted to reassign that dissertation to this degree under Regulation 6, will not be allowed to take courses totalling more than 4 points under this regulation.

#### **Transfer from Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies**

- 6 A student who has passed courses for a Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies that are available for this degree and is eligible to be admitted to this programme may reassign those courses to this degree. With the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, LAW 690 Dissertation may also be reassigned.

*Note: A student who is not a law graduate will not be eligible to transfer to this degree.*

#### **Dissertation and Thesis**

- 7 a ENVLAW 790 Dissertation, ENVLAW 796 Thesis A or ENVLAW 797 Thesis B is to be researched and written under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.
- b Thesis A or Thesis B must be on an environmental law topic which is approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. The dissertation must normally be on an environmental law topic which is approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. However, the Dean of the Faculty of Law may approve a dissertation on a topic relating to a different area of the law if the student has passed, and/or is taking, courses available under Regulation 5 having a total value of no more than 4 points.
- c A student is to submit the dissertation or thesis in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### **Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### **Honours**

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### **Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

---

## **Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt**

*The Diploma in Environmental Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies – PGDipLS

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
  - or
  - b gained any other qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study and research in Law.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.
- c In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, extend the period specified in Regulation 2b above.

### Structure and Content

- 3 a Of the 14 points required for this diploma, at least 10 points must be composed of LAW 690 Dissertation (4 points) and/or courses from the regulations for the Degrees of Master of Laws and/or Master of Laws in Environmental Law.
- b In the case of a student admitted under Regulation 1b above, the student's choice of courses in Regulation 3a is subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law. As a condition of approval, the student may be required to take LAW 101 The Legal System for a Certificate of Proficiency.
- 4 A student may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, take courses towards this diploma up to a limit of 4 points from any of:
  - a courses prescribed for Parts III and IV for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, as listed in the regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws
  - b courses offered at an advanced level for any programme not taught in the Faculty of Law that are deemed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law to be relevant to the student's programme and appropriate to be taken as part of this diploma.

### Dissertation

- 5 a LAW 690 Dissertation is to be researched and written under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.
- b The topic of the dissertation needs to be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

### Research Course

- 6 With the prior approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, a student for this diploma may elect to present a research course in lieu of the examination in not more than one undergraduate course taken for the diploma, if the teacher in that course has certified that the research course is relevant.

### Reassignment

- 7 A student who has passed for a Certificate of Proficiency any courses which meet the requirements of Regulation 3 or 4 may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, reassign those courses to this diploma.

### Areas of Specialisation

- 8 a The courses for this diploma may be selected from the general lists or from such areas of specialisation as may be shown in the schedules to the regulations for the Degree of Master of Laws and/or Master of Laws in Environmental Law.
- b Where courses are passed from one area of specialisation which (together with the dissertation on a related topic, if appropriate) total at least 10 points, this diploma may be conferred with an endorsement as to the area of specialisation.

### Variations

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1988 Regulations.

---

## Regulations – Medical and Health Sciences

- 157 The Degree of Bachelor of Health Sciences – BHSc
- 158 The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology – BHB
- 159 The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) – BHB(Hons)
- 159 The Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery – MBChB
- 160 The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing – BNurs
- 161 The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing (Honours) – BNurs(Hons)
- 162 The Degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy – BPharm
- 163 The Degree of Master of Audiology – MAud
- 164 The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt
- 164 The Degree of Master of Health Sciences – MHSc
- 167 The Degree of Master of Medical Science – MMedSc
- 170 The Degree of Master of Nursing – MNurs
- 171 The Degree of Master of Pharmacy Practice – MPharmPrac
- 173 The Degree of Master of Public Health – MPH
- 174 The Degree of Master of Science (Health Psychology) – MSc
- 174 The Degree of Doctor of Medicine – MD
- 175 Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology – DipObstMedGyn
- 176 Diploma in Occupational Medicine – DipOccupMed
- 177 Diploma in Paediatrics – DipPaed
- 178 Postgraduate Diploma in Community Emergency Medicine – PGDipComEmMed
- 178 Postgraduate Diploma in Geriatric Medicine – PGDipGeriatricMed
- 179 Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences – PGDipHSc
- 180 Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science – PGDipMedSc
- 181 Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice – PGDipPharmPrac
- 182 Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health – PGDipPH
- 182 Postgraduate Diploma in Sports Medicine – PGDipSportMed
- 183 Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences – PGCertHSc
- 184 Postgraduate Certificate in Medical Science – PGCertMedSc
- 185 Postgraduate Certificate in Pharmacy Practice – PGCertPharmPrac
- 185 Postgraduate Certificate in Public Health – PGCertPH
- 186 Certificate in Health Sciences – CertHSc

## REGULATIONS – MEDICAL AND HEALTH SCIENCES

### The Degree of Bachelor of Health Sciences – BHSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a (i) A student needs to complete Part I and the core courses in Part II, together with 16 points from two of the options, with at least 6 points from each specialisation, including 6 points at Stage III or above  
and  
(ii) 4 points in approved elective courses at Stage II or Stage III.  
(iii) A student for this degree must pass each of the core courses.

- b The programme consists of:

- (i) **Part I**

**Core courses:**

BIOSCI 107 Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes and Development  
 CHEM 110 Chemistry of the Living World  
 HLTHPSYC 102 Introduction to Health Care Ethics  
 HUMANBIO 111 Population Health  
 HUMANBIO 122 Behaviour, Health and Development  
 HUMANBIO 142 Biology for Biomedical Science: Organ Systems  
 STATS 102 Statistics for Social Science

and

- (ii) **Part II**

**Core courses:**

COMHLTH 201 Health Systems I  
 COMHLTH 203 Research Methods in Health  
 MPHEALTH 201 Maori and Pacific Health  
 PATHOL 251 Mechanisms of Disease

- (iii) **Options:**

16 points from two of the following options with at least 6 points in each option, including 6 points at Stage III level or above

- (a) **Health Systems**

POLITICS 222 Public Policy: Power and Processes  
 COMHLTH 204 Health Promotion: Philosophy and Practice  
 COMHLTH 301 Health Systems II  
 COMHLTH 302 Special Topic in Health Services  
 GEOG 305 Population, Health and Society  
 BEHAVSCI 201 Mental Health

- (b) **Health Information and Management**

INFOSYS 110 Business Computing  
 MGMT 101 Organisation and Management  
 INFOSYS 223 Information Systems for Managers  
 MGMT 211 Organisational Behaviour  
 COMHLTH 303 Health Informatics

- (c) **Health Care Ethics**

PHIL 210 Applied Ethics  
 PHIL 317 Ethical Issues in Biotechnology  
 LAW 448 Psychiatry and the Law

- (d) **Health Social Sciences**

ANTHRO 215 Human Sexuality  
 ANTHRO 222 Special Topic in Anthropology: Human Biodiversity  
 HISTORY 210 Social History of Medicine  
 HLTHSOC 200 Social Science for Health  
 SOCIOL 220 Last Call: The Sociology of Death and Dying  
 ANTHRO 316 Human Biology in the Pacific

ANTHRO 324 Medical Anthropology  
 GEOG 305 Population, Health and Society  
 HLTHSOC 300 Current Debates in Health and Health Policy  
 SOCIOL 333 Sociology of Health and Medicine

- 3 Each student's programme requires the approval of the Course Coordinator.

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

## The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology – BHB

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student for this degree must pass each of Parts I, II and III, as set out in the Schedule of Prescriptions for this degree.
- b No student will be permitted to enrol for Part II unless Part I has been completed, or to enrol for Part III unless Part II has been completed.
- c However, where a student has been granted admission *ad eundem statum*, or in exceptional circumstances which the Senate or its representative approves, a student may be admitted directly to Part II or Part III.
- d For Part I, a student is required to pass all courses for that Part within a two-year period. A student who fails this requirement will not be permitted to continue with the BHB degree.
- e For Parts II and III, a student is required to pass each part in its entirety by gaining a pass in each course for that part in the same year. A student who fails one or more courses will fail that Part. Such a student must therefore repeat the part in its entirety. However, when in the first attempt, a student passes individual courses with a grade of B or higher, the Committee of BHB Examiners may recommend that the student be credited with these individual courses in the repeat year.
- f A student who fails twice to pass the same part will not be permitted to continue with this degree.

#### Practical Requirements

- 3 a A student enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practical work as the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences may require.
- b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences confirmation that the student has complied with the requirements of this regulation.

#### Enrolment for Two Programmes

- 4 This degree may not be taken at the same time as another programme, unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1989 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) – BHB(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b passed the courses for BHB Part III with an average of B or higher
  - and
  - c approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 14 points.
- 3 The requirements for this degree are normally to be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for the degree. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

### Structure and Content

- 4 A student's programme is to consist of:
  - a 6 points from courses offered at master's level in the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences
  - and
  - b 8 points: HUMANBIO 790 Dissertation.
- 5 A student is to choose courses in consultation with the relevant Heads of Division and with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- 6 The Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the relevant Heads of Division, allow a student for this degree to take courses with a total value of 2 points from those offered by any other faculty at master's level.

### Dissertation

- 7 a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Dean of Medical and Health Sciences.
- b The dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an area of the subject.
- c A student is to submit the dissertation within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

### Honours

- 8 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two grades of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First or Second Division.
- b Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

### Variations

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999.

---

## The Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery – MBChB

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology not more than one academic year previously unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative decides otherwise in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of three full-time years or equivalent and pass courses with a total value of 42 points.
- b Each student is to follow the programme for this degree continuously.
- c Interrupted study may be resumed only with the approval of, and on conditions set by, the Senate or its representative.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of:
  - a **Part I**  
14 points: MBCHB 401  
and
  - b **Part II**  
14 points: MBCHB 501  
and
  - c **Part III**  
14 points: MBCHB 551
- 4 Each part of the programme is to be completed to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative before a student is permitted to enrol for the next Part.
- 5 At the discretion of the Senate or its representative, a student who fails any part of the course may be declined permission to re-enrol in the programme as a whole.

**Practical Requirements**

- 6 a A student enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences may require.
- b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences confirmation that the student has complied with the requirements of this regulation.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1987 Regulations.

**The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing – BNurs**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a The course of study consists of:
  - Part I**  
14 points from BIOSCI 107, HUMANBIO 111, 122, 142, NURSING 101, 102, 104
  - Part II**  
7 points: NURSING 201  
7 points: NURSING 202
  - Part III**  
7 points: NURSING 301  
7 points: NURSING 302

- b Each part must normally be completed before the next part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I and II in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next successive Part.

#### Variations

- 3 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 4 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

## The Degree of Bachelor of Nursing (Honours) – BNurs(Hons)

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Nursing from this University or any other equivalent degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b a student who has not completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Nursing from this University but who has passed courses with a total value of 40 points for that degree and passed the specified prerequisite courses with an average grade of at least B in Part III, may, with the approval of the Assistant Dean – Nursing, enrol for this degree.

The remaining courses for the Bachelor of Nursing degree must be passed within the first semester of enrolment for the Bachelor of Nursing (Honours). The Bachelor of Nursing (Honours) degree will not be awarded until the requirements for the Bachelor of Nursing have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of one full-time year of study and pass courses with a total value of 14 points as specified in Regulation 3 below, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 Each student must pass courses with a total value of 14 points:
  - 4 points: NURSING 701
  - 4 points: NURSING 702
  - 2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710 or 720
  - 4 points from courses listed in the Regulations for the Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences and the Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences.

#### Dissertation

- 4 a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by Senate or its representative.
- b The dissertation topic must be approved by the Assistant Dean – Nursing before enrolment for it.
- c The dissertation must be submitted by:
  - (i) the last day of classes of the second semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a full-time basis
  - or
  - (ii) the last day of classes of the fourth semester following initial enrolment for this degree, if the student is enrolled on a part-time basis.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 6 a The degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
- b Honours are normally awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations come into force on 1 January 2003.

**The Degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy – BPharm**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 1 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.
- b In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly into a Stage II course(s).

**Structure and Content**

- 2 a A student must pass each of Parts I, II, III and IV as follows:

**Part I**

BIOSCI 106 Foundations of Biochemistry  
 BIOSCI 107 Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes and Development  
 CHEM 110 The Chemistry of the Living World  
 HUMANBIO 111 Population Health  
 HUMANBIO 122 Behaviour, Health and Development  
 HUMANBIO 142 Biology for Biomedical Science: Organ Systems  
 PHARMACY 101 Pharmacy Practice I

**Part II**

CHEM 209 Analytical and Physical Chemistry for Biomedical Sciences  
 CHEM 203 Molecules for Life: Synthesis and Reactivity  
 MOLMED 201 Microbiology and Immunology  
 PATHOL 251 Mechanisms of Disease  
 PHARMCOL 201 Introduction to Pharmacology  
 PHARMACY 201 Pharmacy Practice II  
 PHARMACY 202 Pharmaceutics I

**Part III**

CHEM 309 Medicinal Chemistry  
 PHARMCOL 301 Principles of Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 303 Applied Pharmacology and Chemotherapy  
 PHARMACY 301 Pharmacy Practice III  
 PHARMACY 302 Pharmacotherapy  
 PHARMACY 303 Pharmaceutics II

**Part IV**

PHARMACY 401 Applied Pharmacotherapy/Pharmaceutical Care  
 PHARMACY 402 Pharmaceutical Management  
 PHARMACY 403 Legal and Ethical Issues  
 PHARMACY 404 Pharmaceutics III  
 PHARMACY 405 Research Dissertation

- b (i) Each part must normally be completed before the next part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass Parts I and II in their entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next successive Part.
- (ii) A student may not enrol in Part IV until Parts I, II and III have been completed in their entirety.

**Honours**

- 3 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's average grade over the entire course is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme that does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

**The Degree of Master of Audiology – MAud**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)
    - or
    - the Degree of Bachelor of Science
    - or
    - the Degree of Bachelor of Arts
    - or
    - an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - and
  - b passed at Stage III:
    - (i) at least 6 points in Physiology, with an average grade of C+ or higher, and at least 2 points in Psychology
    - or
    - (ii) at least 6 points in Psychology, with an average grade of C+ or higher, and at least 2 points in Physiology
  - and
  - c passed at least 2 points with an average grade of C+ or higher in each of:
    - Chemistry
    - Biology or Zoology
    - Physics or Acoustics
- 2 In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences:
  - either
  - a vary the admission requirements in any way
  - or
  - b exempt a student wholly or partly from any of the prerequisite courses and/or accept a lower average grade than C+ in the prerequisite courses required under Regulations 1b and c.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass in each of the courses which have a total value of 28 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of Part I and Part II as follows:
- Part I** (14 points):
- a
    - (i) AUDIOL 701 Auditory Neuroscience
    - AUDIOL 702 Basic Diagnostic Audiology
    - AUDIOL 703 Basic Clinical Audiology
    - PHYSIOL 702 Measurement in Biomedical Science
    - AUDIOL 704 Central Auditory Function
    - AUDIOL 705 Acoustics for Audiology
    - (ii) The Senate or its representative may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences, the Dean of the Faculty of Science and the relevant Heads of Department, permit a student to enrol in a course offered for the Degree of Master of Science instead of PHYSIOL 702 required under Regulation 4a(i).
- Part II** (14 points):
- b AUDIOL 711 Physiological Measures of Auditory Function
  - AUDIOL 712 Advanced Clinical Audiology
  - AUDIOL 790 Dissertation

**Practical and Clinical Requirements**

- 5 a Each student must pass the clinical and practical requirements of the required courses to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative.

- b A student will not be considered to have completed the requirements for this degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences a certificate stating that the requirements set out in Regulation 5a have been met.

#### Dissertation

- 6 a The dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- b The dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.
- c Any laboratory work in connection with the dissertation must be carried out within the University. However, the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for any period or periods considered necessary.
- d A student is to submit the dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1990 Regulations.

## The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt

*The Master of Health Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

## The Degree of Master of Health Sciences – MHSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- either*
- a completed the requirements for a degree in a discipline deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
- or*
- b completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences with an average of B or higher, or its equivalent.
- 2 A student wishing to enrol in the nursing courses listed in the schedule must hold current registration as a nurse in New Zealand.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
- a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 28 points
- or*
- b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences, or its equivalent, as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- 14 points from the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
  - 14 points: HLTHSCI 796 Thesis

- or
- 22 points from the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
  - 6 points: HLTHSCI 790 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- 14 points: HLTHSCI 796 Thesis
- or
- 8 points from the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
  - 6 points: HLTHSCI 790 Dissertation
- 5 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed in the schedule to this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Course Coordinator.

### Thesis and Dissertation

- 6 a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.
- c Any laboratory work in connection with the thesis or dissertation must be carried out within the University. However, the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for any period or periods considered necessary.
- d A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 8 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

---

## Master of Health Sciences Schedule

---

### Anatomy with Radiology

ANATOMY 702 Biology of Connective Tissue  
 ANATOMY 703 Biology of Connective Tissue Diseases  
 ANATOMY 704 Current Topics in Anatomical Research I  
 ANATOMY 705 Current Topics in Anatomical Research II  
 ANATOMY 706 Neuroanatomy  
 ANATOMY 751 Advanced Biomedical Imaging

### Audiology

AUDIOL 701 Auditory Neuroscience  
 AUDIOL 702 Basic Diagnostic Audiology  
 AUDIOL 704 Central Auditory Function  
 AUDIOL 705 Acoustics for Audiology  
 AUDIOL 711 Physiological Measures of Auditory Function

### Behavioural Science

BEHAVSCI 700 Interventions for Mental Health  
 BEHAVSCI 710 Effective Counselling in Alcohol and Drug Settings  
 BEHAVSCI 717 Mental Health: Definitions and Perspectives  
 BEHAVSCI 721 Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies  
 BEHAVSCI 722 Interventions for Lifestyle Change  
 BEHAVSCI 729 Mental Health Promotion  
 BEHAVSCI 730 Spirituality and Health

BEHAVSCI 736 Assessment and Intervention with Addiction  
 BEHAVSCI 737 Coexistent Mental and Substance Abuse Problems  
 BEHAVSCI 738 Interventions in Problem Gambling  
 BEHAVSCI 758 Social Research in Mental Health  
 BEHAVSCI 759 Qualitative Research Methods in Mental Health  
 BEHAVSCI 770 Special Topic  
 BEHAVSCI 771 Special Topic

### Biological Sciences

BIOSCI 714 Molecular Genetics and Development  
 BIOSCI 715 Advanced Gene Expression and Transfer  
 BIOSCI 716 Cellular and Molecular Biomedicine  
 BIOSCI 717 Molecular Structure in Biomedicine  
 BIOSCI 718 Control of Cell Function

### Community Health

COMHLTH 701 Statistics in Health Science  
 COMHLTH 703 Epidemiology  
 COMHLTH 705 Health and Public Policy  
 COMHLTH 707 Health Economics  
 COMHLTH 708 Economic Evaluation  
 COMHLTH 710 Social Health Research Methods  
 COMHLTH 711 Maori Health – Introduction  
 COMHLTH 712 Maori Health – Policies and Outcomes

COMHLTH 713 Health Promotion – Theory and Models  
 COMHLTH 714 Health Promotion Strategies  
 COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
 COMHLTH 716 Health Care Organisation  
 COMHLTH 717 Environmental Health  
 COMHLTH 718 Health Protection  
 COMHLTH 719 Rapid Health Research in Small Populations  
 COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
 COMHLTH 721 Public Health Nutrition  
 COMHLTH 722 Statistics in Health Science II  
 COMHLTH 723 Quality in Health Care  
 COMHLTH 724 Health Information  
 COMHLTH 725 Foundations of Public Health  
 COMHLTH 730 Pacific Health: An Introduction  
 COMHLTH 731 Clinical Economics  
 COMHLTH 732 Clinical Trials Design, Analysis and Management  
 COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation  
 COMHLTH 734 Management with Health Professionals  
 COMHLTH 735 Risk Assessment and Management  
 COMHLTH 736 Traditional Medicine in New Zealand  
 COMHLTH 738 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 739 Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis  
 COMHLTH 741 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 742 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 743 Health Promotion – Practicum  
 COMHLTH 744 Research Methods for Health Professionals  
 COMHLTH 745 Child Health  
 COMHLTH 746 Youth Health

### General Practice and Primary Health Care

GENPRAC 701 Special Topics in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 704 Research Methods in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 705 Learning and Teaching in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 706 Educational Programme Planning and Evaluation  
 GENPRAC 708 Quality and Health Outcomes  
 GENPRAC 730 Management of Opioid Dependency  
 GENPRAC 735 Health and Lifestyle  
 GENPRAC 736 Health Promotion and Education  
 GENPRAC 739 Managing Lifestyle Change  
 GENPRAC 740 Travel Medicine  
 GENPRAC 741 Tropical Medicine  
 GENPRAC 742 International Mobility and the Control of Diseases  
 GENPRAC 743 Current Topics in Travel and Tropical Medicine  
 GENPRAC 757 Sports Medicine  
 GENPRAC 758 Sports Injury  
 GENPRAC 760 Ethics, Culture and Societal Approaches to Death  
 GENPRAC 761 Psycho-oncology  
 GENPRAC 762 Clinical Symptom Management in Terminal Illness  
 GENPRAC 763 Research Project in Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 770 Principles of Gerontology  
 GENPRAC 771 Health Services for Elderly People  
 GENPRAC 772 Mental Health in Old Age  
 GENPRAC 773 Rehabilitation in Later Life  
 GENPRAC 777 Sociology and Psychology of Ageing  
 GENPRAC 778 Biology of Ageing

### Health Psychology

HLTHPSYC 714 Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 715 Research Methods in Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 716 Psychoneuroimmunology  
 HLTHPSYC 743 Research Topic in Health Psychology I  
 HLTHPSYC 744 Research Topic in Health Psychology II  
 HLTHPSYC 756 Self-organising Systems in Biology and Health  
 HLTHPSYC 757 Psychosomatic Processes

### Managed Care

MGCARE 701 Legislation and Managed Care  
 MGCARE 702 Principles of Case Management  
 MGCARE 703 Assessment and Management of Disability  
 MGCARE 704 Rehabilitation Practice

MGCARE 705 Health Systems in New Zealand  
 MGCARE 706 Rehabilitation Case Studies

### Maori and Pacific Health

MPHEALTH 710 Maori Concepts of Health and Mental Illness  
 MPHEALTH 711 Maori Mental Health Development  
 MPHEALTH 712 Maori Models of Health Practice  
 MPHEALTH 713 Case Studies in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 714 Practicum: Non-clinical Placement  
 MPHEALTH 715 Special Topic in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 716 Special Topic in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 717 Special Topic in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 720 Pacific Islands: Environment, Health and Society  
 MPHEALTH 721 Clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 722 Non-clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 723 Food, Nutrition and Development  
 MPHEALTH 727 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 728 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 729 Special Topic in Pacific Health

### Medicine

MEDICINE 703 Special Topics in Medicine  
 MEDICINE 704 Principles and Practice in Old Age Care  
 MEDICINE 705 Systems of Service Delivery in Old Age Care  
 MEDICINE 713 Cardiovascular Medicine

### Molecular Medicine

MOLMED 701 Developmental Biology  
 MOLMED 707 Special Topic in Molecular Medicine  
 MOLMED 708 Infection, Immunity and Disease  
 MOLMED 710 Genetic Disease  
 MOLMED 711 Advanced Medical Microbiology  
 MOLMED 712 Advanced Immunology

### Nursing

NURSING 704 Applied Science for Registered Nurses  
 NURSING 705 Health Assessment  
 NURSING 706 Principles of Pharmacology and Pharmacokinetics  
 NURSING 707 Adult Acute Care Nursing  
 NURSING 708 Community and Primary Health Care Nursing  
 NURSING 709 Clinical Teaching  
 NURSING 710 Special Topic in Nursing  
 NURSING 711 Occupational Health Nursing at an Advanced Level  
 NURSING 712 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing I  
 NURSING 713 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing II  
 NURSING 718 Advancing Nursing Practice  
 NURSING 719 Speciality Nursing Knowledge and Practice  
 NURSING 720 Evidence-based Nursing  
 NURSING 721 Nurse Prescribing Practicum  
 NURSING 722 Principles of Therapeutics for Advanced Nursing

### Nutrition

NUTRN 700 Nutrition in Health and Disease  
 NUTRN 701 Nutrition Mechanisms  
 NUTRN 702 Clinical Nutrition  
 NUTRN 703 Critical Evaluation of Nutritional Therapies  
 NUTRN 704 Special Studies in Nutrition

### Obstetrics and Gynaecology

OBSTGYN 701 Basic Reproductive Endocrinology  
 OBSTGYN 702 Advanced Reproductive Endocrinology  
 OBSTGYN 703 Physiology of Pregnancy I  
 OBSTGYN 704 Physiology of Pregnancy II  
 OBSTGYN 705 Special Topic in Obstetrics and Gynaecology  
 OBSTGYN 706 Molecular Biology of Reproduction  
 OBSTGYN 707 Molecular Biology of Reproductive Disorders

### Paediatrics

PAEDS 704 Special Topics in Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 711 Paediatrics in Child Health  
 PAEDS 712 Youth Health I  
 PAEDS 713 Respiratory Disease in Childhood  
 PAEDS 715 Childhood Communicable Diseases  
 PAEDS 716 Behavioural Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 717 Child Protection and Injury  
 PAEDS 718 Paediatric Disability and Chronic Diseases

### Pathology

PATHOL 703 Special Topics in Pathology  
 PATHOL 704 Principles of Cancer Therapy  
 PATHOL 705 Cancer Biology II

### Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology

PHARMCOL 710 Special Topics  
 PHARMCOL 711 Toxicology  
 PHARMCOL 712 Drug Disposition and Action  
 PHARMCOL 713 Molecular Neuropharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 714 Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 715 Pharmacology of Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 716 Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 717 Biochemical Endocrinology  
 PHARMCOL 719 Biomedical Research Techniques  
 PHARMCOL 721 Advanced Toxicology  
 PHARMCOL 722 Clinical Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 723 Advanced Molecular Neuropharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 724 Special Topics in Cardiovascular  
 PHARMCOL 725 Special Topics in Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 726 Advanced Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 727 Topics in Reproduction

### Pharmacy

PHARMACY 700 Critical Evaluation of Complementary Medicinal Products

### Physiology

PHYSIOL 701 Experimental Design  
 PHYSIOL 702 Measurement in Biomedical Science

PHYSIOL 703 Neurophysiology  
 PHYSIOL 704 Sensory Physiology  
 PHYSIOL 705 Contractile Function  
 PHYSIOL 706 Physiology of Rest and Exercise  
 PHYSIOL 707 Topics in Current Physiology Research  
 PHYSIOL 708 Current Research in Fetal and Postnatal Growth Biology

### Psychiatry

PSYCHIAT 713 Special Topic in Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 718 Clinical Academic Psychiatry I  
 PSYCHIAT 720 Liaison Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 723 Introduction to Neuroscience  
 PSYCHIAT 724 Neurobiology of Psychiatric Disorders  
 PSYCHIAT 731 Evidence-based Mental Health Care I  
 PSYCHIAT 732 Evidence-based Mental Health Care II  
 PSYCHIAT 733 Psychosocial Aspects of Aging  
 PSYCHIAT 734 Old Age Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 740 Child and Adolescent Psychopathology  
 PSYCHIAT 741 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Theory  
 PSYCHIAT 742 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Practice  
 PSYCHIAT 745 Suicide Studies  
 PSYCHIAT 746 Research Topic in Forensic Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 747 Child and Adolescent Development  
 PSYCHIAT 748 Child, Adolescent and Family Assessment  
 PSYCHIAT 749 Case Studies in Child and Adolescent Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 750 The Social Context of Mental Health Nursing Practice  
 PSYCHIAT 751 Advanced Practice in Mental Health Nursing  
 PSYCHIAT 752 Mental Health Nursing Case Studies  
 PSYCHIAT 753 Speciality Practice in Mental Health Nursing  
 PSYCHIAT 754 Ethical and Legal Issues in Mental Health Nursing  
 PSYCHIAT 755 Mental Health Nursing Assessment  
 PSYCHIAT 760 Legal Issues in Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 761 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry I  
 PSYCHIAT 762 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry II  
 PSYCHIAT 763 Psychiatric Epidemiology and Social Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 764 Clinical Academic Psychiatry II  
 PSYCHIAT 766 Special Topic  
 PSYCHIAT 767 Special Topic

### Public Health Social Science

PHSOCSCI 700 Planning for Programme Evaluation  
 PHSOCSCI 701 Methods for Programme Evaluation

## The Degree of Master of Medical Science – MMedSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
  - and
  - c satisfy the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences or its representative that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by the University of Auckland.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
  - a four full-time semesters and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 28 points, if entering the degree with a Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery or equivalent
  - or

- b two full-time semesters and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) or its equivalent or a Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science or its equivalent as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis has to follow a programme of:
  - a the equivalent of four consecutive full-time semesters and pass in 28 points if entering with a Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery or equivalent
  - or
  - b the equivalent of two consecutive full-time semesters and a pass in 14 points if entering with a Bachelor of Human Biology (Honours) or equivalent or with a Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science or equivalent as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 4 In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend the period of full-time or part-time study.

### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
  - (i) 14 points from the schedule to these regulations  
14 points: MEDSCI 796 Thesis
  - or
  - (ii) 20 points from the schedule to these regulations  
8 points: MEDSCI 790 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
  - (i) 14 points: MEDSCI 796 Thesis
  - or
  - (ii) 6 points from the schedule to these regulations  
8 points: MEDSCI 790 Dissertation
- 6 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed in the schedule to this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Course Coordinator.

### Thesis or Dissertation

- 7 a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on recommendation of the relevant Head of the Division.
- b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by an investigation into an area of medical science.
- c A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

---

## Master of Medical Science Schedule

---

### Anatomy with Radiology

ANATOMY 702 Biology of Connective Tissue  
 ANATOMY 703 Biology of Connective Tissue Diseases  
 ANATOMY 704 Current Topics in Anatomical Research I  
 ANATOMY 705 Current Topics in Anatomical Research II  
 ANATOMY 706 Neuroanatomy

### Behavioural Science

BEHAVSCI 700 Interventions for Mental Health  
 BEHAVSCI 717 Mental Health: Definitions and Perspectives  
 BEHAVSCI 721 Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies

BEHAVSCI 722 Interventions for Lifestyle Change  
 BEHAVSCI 729 Mental Health Promotion  
 BEHAVSCI 730 Spirituality and Health  
 BEHAVSCI 736 Assessment and Intervention with Addiction  
 BEHAVSCI 737 Coexistent Mental and Substance Abuse Problems  
 BEHAVSCI 738 Interventions in Problem Gambling  
 BEHAVSCI 758 Social Research in Mental Health  
 BEHAVSCI 759 Qualitative Research Methods in Mental Health

### Biological Sciences

BIOSCI 714 Molecular Genetics and Development

BIOSCI 715 Advanced Gene Expression and Transfer  
 BIOSCI 716 Cellular and Molecular Biomedicine  
 BIOSCI 717 Molecular Structure in Biomedicine  
 BIOSCI 718 Control of Cell Function

### Community Health

COMHLTH 701 Statistics in Health Science I  
 COMHLTH 703 Epidemiology  
 COMHLTH 712 Maori Health – Policies and Outcome  
 COMHLTH 710 Social Health Research Methods  
 COMHLTH 719 Rapid Health Research in Small Populations  
 COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
 COMHLTH 726 Public Health and Ageing

### General Practice and Primary Health Care

GENPRAC 701 Special Topic in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 702 Philosophy of General Practice  
 GENPRAC 703 The Consultation and Communication  
 GENPRAC 704 Research Methods in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 705 Learning and Teaching in General Practice  
 GENPRAC 706 Educational Programme Planning and Evaluation  
 GENPRAC 707 Guideline Theory and Practice  
 GENPRAC 708 Quality and Health Outcomes  
 GENPRAC 709 Practice Management and Organisation  
 GENPRAC 721 Primary Mental Health I  
 GENPRAC 722 Primary Mental Health II  
 GENPRAC 723 Mental Health Therapeutics  
 GENPRAC 730 Management of Opioid Dependency  
 GENPRAC 735 Health and Lifestyle  
 GENPRAC 736 Health Promotion and Education  
 GENPRAC 737 Special Topic  
 GENPRAC 738 Special Topic  
 GENPRAC 739 Managing Lifestyle Change  
 GENPRAC 740 Travel Medicine  
 GENPRAC 741 Tropical Medicine  
 GENPRAC 742 International Mobility and the Control of Diseases  
 GENPRAC 743 Current Topics in Travel and Tropical Medicine  
 GENPRAC 751 Orthopaedic and Plastic Surgical Emergencies  
 GENPRAC 752 Medical and Other Surgical Emergencies  
 GENPRAC 757 Sports Medicine  
 GENPRAC 758 Sports Injury  
 GENPRAC 760 Ethics, Culture and Societal Approaches to Death  
 GENPRAC 761 Psycho-oncology  
 GENPRAC 762 Clinical Symptom Management in Terminal Illness  
 GENPRAC 763 Research Project in Palliative Care  
 GENPRAC 770 Principles of Gerontology  
 GENPRAC 771 Health Services for Elderly People  
 GENPRAC 772 Mental Health in Old Age  
 GENPRAC 773 Rehabilitation in Later Life  
 GENPRAC 774 Medical Care of the Elderly I  
 GENPRAC 775 Medical Care of the Elderly II  
 GENPRAC 776 Medical Care of the Elderly III  
 GENPRAC 777 Sociology and Psychology of Ageing  
 GENPRAC 778 Biology of Ageing

### Health Psychology

HLTHPSYC 714 Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 715 Research Methods in Health Psychology  
 HLTHPSYC 716 Psychoneuroimmunology  
 HLTHPSYC 743 Research Topic in Health Psychology I  
 HLTHPSYC 744 Research Topic in Health Psychology II  
 HLTHPSYC 756 Self-organising Systems in Biology and Health  
 HLTHPSYC 757 Psychosomatic Processes

### Maori and Pacific Health

MPHEALTH 710 Maori Concepts of Health and Mental Illness  
 MPHEALTH 711 Maori Mental Health Development

### Medicine

MEDICINE 703 Special Topics in Medicine  
 MEDICINE 713 Cardiovascular Medicine

### Molecular Medicine

MOLMED 701 Developmental Biology  
 MOLMED 707 Special Topic in Molecular Medicine  
 MOLMED 708 Infection, Immunity and Disease  
 MOLMED 710 Genetic Disease  
 MOLMED 711 Advanced Medical Microbiology  
 MOLMED 712 Advanced Immunology

### Nutrition

NUTRN 700 Nutrition in Health and Disease  
 NUTRN 701 Nutrition Mechanisms  
 NUTRN 702 Clinical Nutrition  
 NUTRN 703 Critical Evaluation of Nutritional Therapies  
 NUTRN 704 Special Studies in Nutrition

### Obstetrics and Gynaecology

OBSTGYN 701 Basic Reproductive Endocrinology  
 OBSTGYN 702 Advanced Reproductive Endocrinology  
 OBSTGYN 703 Physiology of Pregnancy I  
 OBSTGYN 704 Physiology of Pregnancy II  
 OBSTGYN 705 Special Topic in Obstetrics and Gynaecology  
 OBSTGYN 706 Molecular Biology of Reproduction  
 OBSTGYN 707 Molecular Biology of Reproductive Disorders

### Paediatrics

PAEDS 704 Special Topics in Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 711 Paediatrics and Child Health  
 PAEDS 712 Youth Health I  
 PAEDS 713 Respiratory Disease in Childhood  
 PAEDS 714 Emergency Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 715 Childhood Communicable Diseases  
 PAEDS 716 Behavioural Paediatrics  
 PAEDS 717 Child Protection and Injury  
 PAEDS 718 Paediatric Disability and Chronic Diseases  
 PAEDS 719 Special Topic

### Pathology

PATHOL 703 Special Topics in Pathology  
 PATHOL 704 Principles of Cancer Therapy  
 PATHOL 705 Cancer Biology II

### Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology

PHARMCOL 710 Special Topics  
 PHARMCOL 711 Toxicology  
 PHARMCOL 712 Drug Disposition and Action  
 PHARMCOL 713 Molecular Neuropharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 714 Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 715 Pharmacology of Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 716 Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 717 Biochemical Endocrinology  
 PHARMCOL 719 Biomedical Research Techniques  
 PHARMCOL 721 Advanced Toxicology  
 PHARMCOL 722 Clinical Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 723 Advanced Molecular Neuropharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 724 Special Topics in Cardiovascular Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 725 Special Topics in Anaesthetics and Analgesics  
 PHARMCOL 726 Advanced Pharmacometrics  
 PHARMCOL 727 Topics in Reproduction  
 PHARMCOL 728 Cancer Pharmacology

### Physiology

PHYSIOL 701 Experimental Design

PHYSIOL 702 Measurement in Biomedical Science  
 PHYSIOL 703 Neurophysiology  
 PHYSIOL 704 Sensory Physiology  
 PHYSIOL 705 Contractile Function  
 PHYSIOL 706 Physiology of Rest and Exercise  
 PHYSIOL 707 Topics in Current Physiology Research  
 PHYSIOL 708 Current Research in Fetal and Postnatal Growth Biology

PSYCHIAT 733 Psychosocial Aspects of Aging  
 PSYCHIAT 734 Old Age Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 740 Child and Adolescent Psychopathology  
 PSYCHIAT 741 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Theory  
 PSYCHIAT 742 Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Practice  
 PSYCHIAT 745 Suicide Studies  
 PSYCHIAT 746 Research Topic in Forensic Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 747 Child and Adolescent Development  
 PSYCHIAT 748 Child, Adolescent and Family Assessment  
 PSYCHIAT 749 Case Studies in Child and Adolescent Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 760 Legal Issues in Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 761 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry I  
 PSYCHIAT 762 Clinical Forensic Psychiatry II  
 PSYCHIAT 763 Psychiatric Epidemiology and Social Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 764 Clinical Academic Psychiatry II  
 PSYCHIAT 766 Special Topic  
 PSYCHIAT 767 Special Topic

### Psychiatry

PSYCHIAT 713 Special Topic in Mental Health  
 PSYCHIAT 718 Clinical Academic Psychiatry I  
 PSYCHIAT 720 Liaison Psychiatry  
 PSYCHIAT 723 Introduction to Neuroscience  
 PSYCHIAT 724 Neurobiology of Psychiatric Disorders  
 PSYCHIAT 731 Evidence-based Mental Health Care I  
 PSYCHIAT 732 Evidence-based Mental Health Care II

## The Degree of Master of Nursing – MNurs

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
  - either*
  - a have completed the requirements for a degree in nursing
  - or*
  - b have completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences (Advanced Nursing), or its equivalent, with an overall GPA of 5.5 or higher
  - and*
  - c hold current registration as a nurse in New Zealand.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
  - a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass in each of the courses with a total value of 28 points
  - or*
  - b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis, research portfolio or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences, or its equivalent, as approved by the Senate or its representative.

### Structure and Content

- 3 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
  - either*
  - 12 points from NURSING 704, 705, 714, 718, 719, 720; and
  - 2 points from COMHLTH 710, 720, 744; and
  - 14 points from: NURSING 796 Thesis; or NURSING 797 Research Portfolio
  - or*
  - 12 points from NURSING 704, 705, 714, 718, 719, 720; and
  - 2 points from COMHLTH 710, 720, 744; and
  - 10 points from the Master of Nursing or the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
  - 4 points: NURSING 701 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
  - either*
  - NURSING 796 Thesis
  - or*
  - NURSING 797 Research portfolio
  - or*
  - 10 points from the Master of Nursing or the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
  - 4 points: NURSING 701 Dissertation.

### Thesis or Dissertation

- 4 a The thesis, research portfolio or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.
- b The thesis, research portfolio or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.

- c Any laboratory work in connection with the thesis, research portfolio or dissertation must be carried out within the University. However, the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work in an approved institution outside the University for any period or periods considered necessary.
- d A student is to submit the thesis, research portfolio or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 6 Honours may be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

---

### Master of Nursing Schedule

---

NURSING 704 Applied Science for Registered Nurses  
 NURSING 705 Health Assessment  
 NURSING 706 Pharmacology and Pharmacokinetics for Nurses  
 NURSING 707 Adult Acute Care Nursing  
 NURSING 708 Community and Primary Health Care Nursing  
 NURSING 709 Clinical Teaching  
 NURSING 710 Special Studies in Nursing  
 NURSING 711 Occupational Health Nursing at an Advanced Level  
 NURSING 712 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing I  
 NURSING 713 Clinical Occupational Health Nursing II  
 NURSING 714 Nursing Practicum

NURSING 715 Long Term Nursing Care  
 NURSING 716 Child Health Nursing  
 NURSING 718 Advancing Nursing Practice  
 NURSING 719 Specialty Nursing Knowledge and Practice  
 NURSING 720 Evidence-based Nursing  
 NURSING 721 Nurse Prescribing Practicum  
 NURSING 722 Principles of Therapeutics for Advanced Nursing  
 NURSING 723 Clinical Scholarship  
 NURSING 724 Special Topic in Nursing  
 NURSING 725 Special Topic in Nursing

---

## The Degree of Master of Pharmacy Practice – MPharmPrac

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a pharmacy qualification equivalent to a degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b hold current registration as a pharmacist in New Zealand or as a pharmacist in the country of domicile.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice may on the recommendation of the Head of the Division of Pharmacy, and with the approval of Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this degree, the courses passed for the Postgraduate Diploma.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
  - a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 28 points
  - or
  - b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice (which includes Community Health 744, or its equivalent), as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 4 A student enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis has to complete the requirements within 48 months of initial enrolment (28 point programme) or 24 months of initial enrolment (14 point programme). In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.

#### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
  - (i) 6 points: PHARMACY 710, 711, COMHLTH 744

- (ii) 8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule. With the approval of the Head of the Division of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from: COMHLTH 715, 716, 723, 724
  - (iii) 14 points: PHARMACY 796 Thesis  
or
  - (iv) 4 points: PHARMACY 710, 711
  - (v) 18 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule. With the approval of the Head of the Division of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from: COMHLTH 715, 716, 723, 724 and up to 4 points from COMHLTH 713, 714, 731, 732, 733, 744, NURSING 709
  - (vi) 6 points: PHARMACY 792 Dissertation
- b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
- (i) 14 points: PHARMACY 796 Thesis  
or
  - (ii) 8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule that have not already been taken in the Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice programme. With the approval of the Head of the Division of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from the following courses: COMHLTH 715, 716, 723, 724
  - (iii) 6 points: PHARMACY 792 Dissertation
- 6 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same or as similar to those listed for this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Head of the Division of Pharmacy.

#### Thesis and Dissertation

- 7 a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of the Pharmacy Division.
- b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into an area of the subject.
- c Any practical work in connection with the thesis or dissertation must be carried out within the University. However the Senate or its representative may permit a student to carry out the work at an approved site outside the University for any periods or period considered necessary.
- d A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Masters' Regulations.

#### Practical Requirements

- 8 Students enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practice activities as the Head of the Division of Pharmacy may require.

#### Variations

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 10 Honours may be awarded in accordance with the General Master's Regulations.

#### Commencement

- 11 These regulations come into force on 1 January 2002.

---

### Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule

---

PHARMACY 700 Critical Evaluation of Complementary Medicinal Products  
 PHARMACY 710 Clinical Pharmacy Skills  
 PHARMACY 711 Pharmacy Practicum  
 PHARMACY 720 Issues in Concordance  
 PHARMACY 730 Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy  
 PHARMACY 731 Respiratory Pharmacotherapy  
 PHARMACY 732 Endocrine Pharmacotherapy  
 PHARMACY 733 GIT/Rheumatology Pharmacotherapy  
 PHARMACY 734 Pharmacotherapy of Infections

PHARMACY 735 Pharmacotherapy in Psychiatry  
 PHARMACY 736 Pharmacotherapy in Dermatology  
 PHARMACY 737 Pharmacotherapy in Oncology  
 PHARMACY 740 Evidence-based OTC Prescribing  
 PHARMACY 741 Pharmacotherapy in the Elderly  
 PHARMACY 742 Paediatric Pharmacotherapy  
 PHARMACY 743 Nutrition for Pharmacists  
 PHARMACY 792 Dissertation  
 PHARMACY 796 Thesis

---

## The Degree of Master of Public Health – MPH

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - either*
    - a completed the requirements for a degree in a discipline deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative with an average of B or higher in the last equivalent full-time year of study
    - or*
    - b completed the requirements for a Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health or its equivalent with an average of B or higher
  - and*
    - c satisfied the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have the appropriate training and experience to undertake the programme.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of:
  - a four consecutive full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 28 points
  - or*
  - b two consecutive full-time semesters and pass a thesis, or courses and a dissertation, with a total value of 14 points if entering with a Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health, or its equivalent as approved by the Senate or its representative.

### Structure and Content

- 3
  - a A student who has to complete 28 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
    - 4 points: COMHLTH 725
    - 2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722
    - 8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule
    - 14 points: COMHLTH 796 Thesis

*or*

    - 4 points: COMHLTH 725
    - 2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722
    - 16 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule
    - 6 points: COMHLTH 790 Dissertation
  - b A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree is to select one of the following:
    - 14 points: COMHLTH 796 Thesis
    - or*
    - 8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule
    - 6 points: COMHLTH 790 Dissertation
  - c Of the points available from other courses in Regulations 3a and 3b, up to 4 points can be accumulated from other courses offered at the master's level within the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences or in any other faculty with the approval of the relevant Heads of Department.
- 4 A student is to choose courses in consultation with the Head of the Division of Community Health.

### Thesis and Dissertation

- 5
  - a The thesis or dissertation is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Division.
  - b The thesis or dissertation is to embody the results obtained by the student in an investigation into a branch of public health.
  - c A student is to submit the thesis or dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where the student's overall grade is sufficiently high.
- b Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

---

**Master of Public Health Schedule**


---

**Behavioural Science**

BEHAVSCI 721 Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies  
 BEHAVSCI 722 Interventions for Lifestyle Change  
 BEHAVSCI 729 Mental Health Promotion

**Community Health**

COMHLTH 701 Statistics in Health Science  
 COMHLTH 703 Epidemiology  
 COMHLTH 705 Health and Public Policy  
 COMHLTH 707 Health Economics  
 COMHLTH 708 Economic Evaluation  
 COMHLTH 710 Social Health Research Methods  
 COMHLTH 711 Maori Health – Introduction  
 COMHLTH 712 Maori Health – Policies and Outcomes  
 COMHLTH 713 Health Promotion – Theory and Models  
 COMHLTH 714 Health Promotion Strategies  
 COMHLTH 715 Health Management  
 COMHLTH 716 Health Care Organisation  
 COMHLTH 717 Environmental Health  
 COMHLTH 718 Health Protection  
 COMHLTH 719 Rapid Health Research in Small Populations  
 COMHLTH 720 Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care  
 COMHLTH 721 Public Health Nutrition  
 COMHLTH 722 Statistics in Health Science II  
 COMHLTH 723 Quality in Health Care  
 COMHLTH 724 Health Information  
 COMHLTH 725 Foundations of Public Health  
 COMHLTH 730 Pacific Health: An Introduction  
 COMHLTH 731 Clinical Economics  
 COMHLTH 732 Clinical Trials Design, Analysis and Management  
 COMHLTH 733 Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation  
 COMHLTH 734 Management with Health Professionals  
 COMHLTH 735 Risk Assessment and Management  
 COMHLTH 736 Traditional Medicine in New Zealand

COMHLTH 738 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 739 Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis  
 COMHLTH 741 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 742 Special Topic in Public Health  
 COMHLTH 743 Health Promotion – Practicum  
 COMHLTH 744 Research Methods for Health Professionals  
 COMHLTH 745 Child Health  
 COMHLTH 746 Youth Health

**Maori and Pacific Health**

MPHEALTH 712 Maori Models of Health Practice  
 MPHEALTH 713 Case Studies in Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 714 Practicum: Non Clinical Placement  
 MPHEALTH 715 Special Topic: Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 716 Special Topic: Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 717 Special Topic: Maori Health  
 MPHEALTH 720 Pacific Islands: Environment, Health and Society  
 MPHEALTH 721 Clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 722 Non-clinical Practicum in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 723 Food, Nutrition and Development  
 MPHEALTH 727 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 728 Special Topic in Pacific Health  
 MPHEALTH 729 Special Topic in Pacific Health

**Nutrition**

NUTRN 700 Nutrition in Health and Disease  
 NUTRN 701 Nutrition Mechanisms  
 NUTRN 702 Clinical Nutrition  
 NUTRN 703 Critical Evaluation of Nutritional Therapies  
 NUTRN 704 Special Studies in Nutrition

**Programme Evaluation**

PHSOCSCI 700 Planning for Programme Evaluation  
 PHSOCSCI 701 Methods for Programme Evaluation

---

**The Degree of Master of Science (Health Psychology) – MSc**

*Health Psychology is an interfaculty subject for the degree of Master of Science. For detailed regulations refer to the Faculty of Science.*

**The Degree of Doctor of Medicine – MD**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a candidate needs normally to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery at the University of Auckland.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances, admission ad eundem statum may be granted only to medical graduates of other universities who are members of the academic staff of the University of Auckland, or who are conducting research in a department of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 A candidate is to present the MEDSCI 896 Thesis in any branch of medicine or medical science. The thesis is to embody a critical account of original studies carried out by the candidate which may include previously published work.
- 4 No candidate is to submit the thesis for this degree until at least five years after completing the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery.

**Application to be Examined**

- 5 A candidate is to apply in writing to be examined for the degree. The application is to state the title of the thesis and provide an outline of the proposed or actual scope of the work and the methods involved.
- 6 The Senate or its representative is to determine, on the recommendation of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences whether the application, including the title and the outline of the thesis, should be approved.

**Submission of the Thesis**

- 7 The candidate is to submit the thesis within five years of the date on which the Senate or its representative approves the title and the outline of the thesis. In exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
- 8 Each candidate is to submit to the Registrar:
  - a three copies of the thesis
  - and
  - b a statutory declaration which:
    - (i) states the extent to which the work is the candidate's own and, in the case of joint work, identifies as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own
    - (ii) states what portion, if any, of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of this or any other tertiary institution
    - (iii) declares that the work, in substantially its present form, has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other tertiary institution and is not being submitted for a degree or diploma in any other tertiary institution.

**Examination**

- 9 On receipt of the thesis and statutory declaration, the Director, Student Administration will notify the Faculty Graduate Committee of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences, which will act as a Moderator of the examination. On the recommendation of the Faculty Graduate Committee, the Senate or its representative is to appoint two external examiners, at least one of whom is resident outside New Zealand, and one examiner who is a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- 10 The duties of each examiner are to:
  - a report independently on the quality of the thesis and its value as a significant contribution to learning
  - and
  - b recommend to the Senate whether the Degree of Doctor of Medicine should be awarded provided that where the recommendation is that the degree is not to be awarded, the Examiners may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date. Such a resubmission is to be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 11 The reports and recommendations are to be sent to the Director, Student Administration who is to forward them to the Faculty Graduate Committee for consideration and an overall recommendation.
- 12 a The reports and recommendations of the examiners, along with the recommendation of the Faculty Graduate Committee, are to be placed before the Senate which is to determine whether the degree is to be awarded.
  - b The candidate may be required to take an oral or written examination, or both, in the field of knowledge relating to the thesis.

**Commencement**

- 13 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the previous regulations.

---

## **Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology – DipObstMedGyn**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have held, for at least 12 months, a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - b hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand
  - and*
  - c satisfy the Head of the Division of Obstetrics and Gynaecology that the student has appropriate training and experience to undertake this diploma.
- 2 A student for this diploma must hold a hospital appointment in obstetrics and gynaecology approved for this purpose by the Senate or its representative, and is to enrol within two weeks of his or her appointment in obstetrics and gynaecology.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 18 months of the initial enrolment unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of OBSTGYN 601 (14 points) comprising practical and clinical requirements as specified in Regulation 6.
- 5 All students are required to attend the intensive course in obstetrics, neonatal paediatrics, family planning and medical gynaecology held by the Division of Obstetrics and Gynaecology before sitting the diploma examinations.

**Practical Requirements**

- 6 Each student must have completed the prescribed Clinical Training Log Book and a minimum of 1600 hours of training in obstetrics and gynaecology (which may include up to 100 hours of formal education and up to 400 hours of neonatal paediatrics), in a hospital approved by the Senate or its representative, within 24 months of initial enrolment for the diploma.
- 7 A student enrolled for this diploma has to carry out satisfactorily such practical or clinical work as the Head of the Division of Obstetrics and Gynaecology may require, including:
  - a performance of clinical duties
  - and*
  - b submission of a logbook of the student's clinical experience
  - and*
  - c a clinical examination and a structured-oral examination or objective-structured clinical examination held in conjunction with the written examination.

*Note: The logbook is to be approved by the Head of the Division of Obstetrics and Gynaecology before a student may sit the examinations.*

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1995 Regulations.

**Diploma in Occupational Medicine – DipOccupMed**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - b hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within two semesters of the initial enrolment for a student taking the course full-time, and within six semesters otherwise unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of:
  - MEDICINE 601 Principles of Occupational Medicine
  - MEDICINE 602 Clinical Occupational Medicine I
  - MEDICINE 603 Clinical Occupational Medicine II
  - MEDICINE 604 Project: A Rehabilitation Programme
  - MEDICINE 605 Project: A Health Surveillance System
  - MEDICINE 606 Project: A Hazard Control System
  - MEDICINE 607 Project: A Reactive Health Service
- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course the same as or similar to that required under Regulation 3 above is to substitute for each course so credited such other courses or courses as the Head of the Division of Medicine may require or approve.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

**Diploma in Paediatrics – DipPaed**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - either*
    - a (i) have held, for at least one year, a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
    - and*
    - (ii) hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand
  - or*
  - b have graduated from the Central Medical School of Fiji and have satisfied the Head of the Division of Paediatrics that the student has appropriate training and experience to undertake this diploma.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of PAEDS 601, comprising:
  - a submission of a logbook of the student's experience in community aspects of child care
  - and*
  - b a dissertation in a child health problem or service
  - and*
  - c a clinical examination and an oral examination held in conjunction with a written examination.

**Practical Requirements**

- 4 Each student must have completed six months of paediatric training in a hospital approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 5 A student enrolled for this diploma has to carry out satisfactorily such practical or clinical work as the Head of the Division of Paediatrics may require, including:
  - a performance of clinical duties

and

- b participation during the course in, and report on, community aspects of child care.

#### Distinction

- 6 This diploma may be awarded with or without Distinction, according to the standard of each student's work, as approved by the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the Head of the Division of Paediatrics.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1991 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Community Emergency Medicine – PGDipComEmMed

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
- a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- and
- b hold current registration either with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
- and
- c satisfy the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by the University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2
- a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
  - b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of:
- GENPRAC 751 Orthopaedic and Plastic Surgical Emergencies
  - GENPRAC 752 Medical and Other Surgical Emergencies
  - GENPRAC 603 Practice in Community Emergency Medicine
- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any course the same as or similar to those required under Regulation 3 above is to substitute for each course so credited such other course or courses as the Head of the Division of General Practice may require or approve.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Geriatric Medicine – PGDipGeriatricMed

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
- a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative

and

- b hold current registration either with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile

and

- c satisfy the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by the University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within seven consecutive semesters of initial enrolment.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of:  
 GENPRAC 770 Principles of Gerontology  
 GENPRAC 771 Health Services for Elderly People  
 GENPRAC 772 Mental Health in Old Age  
 GENPRAC 773 Rehabilitation in Later Life  
 GENPRAC 774 Medical Care of the Elderly I  
 GENPRAC 775 Medical Care of the Elderly II  
 GENPRAC 776 Medical Care of the Elderly III
- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma who has passed any course the same as, or similar to those listed under Regulation 3 is to substitute an alternative course as approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Health Sciences – PGDipHSc

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:  
 either  
 a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative  
 or  
 b (i) completed the requirements for a qualification in a health profession deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative  
 and  
 (ii) had at least two years' relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Department.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences may on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Division, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this diploma, the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of 14 points from courses chosen from the schedule for the Degree of Master of Health Sciences.
- a **Advanced Nursing**  
 12 points: NURSING 704, 705, 714, 718, 719, 720; and  
 2 points from COMHLTH 744, 710, 720; or other courses selected in consultation with the Assistant Dean – Nursing

- b **Alcohol and Drug Studies**  
8 points: BEHAVSCI 721, 722, 736  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, PSYCHIAT 731  
*and*  
4 points from courses listed under Psychiatry and Behavioural Science in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
- c **Cardiac Rehabilitation**  
10 points: SPORTSCI 691, 703, 705, MEDICINE 713  
*and*  
4 points from other master's courses listed in the Master of Science Schedule for Sport and Exercise Science or the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
- d **Child and Adolescent Mental Health**  
12 points: PSYCHIAT 740-742, 747-749  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, PSYCHIAT 731
- e **Managed Care**  
14 points: MGCARE 701-706
- f **Mental Health**  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, PSYCHIAT 731  
12 points from courses listed under Psychiatry and Behavioural Science in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
- g **Mental Health Nursing**  
2 points: BEHAVSCI 758, PSYCHIAT 731  
*and*  
12 points: PSYCHIAT 750-752, 754, 755
- h **Forensic Psychiatry**  
8 points: PSYCHIAT 746, 760, 761, 762  
*and*  
6 points from courses listed under Psychiatry and Behavioural Science in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Medical Science – PGDipMedSc

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - b hold current registration with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
  - and*
  - c satisfy the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by the University of Auckland.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Medical Science may on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Division, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this diploma, the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and achieve an overall pass in 14 points.

- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of 14 points from the schedule to the Degree of Master of Medical Science or 14 points from one of the following areas of specialisation:
  - a **General Practice and Primary Health Care**
    - 4 points: GENPRAC 702, 703
    - 2 points: GENPRAC 704
    - 8 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule
  - b **Paediatrics**
    - 10 points: PAEDS 711–718
    - 2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, COMHLTH 710, 719, 720
    - 2 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule
  - c **Palliative Care**
    - 8 points: GENPRAC 760–763
    - 2 points from BEHAVSCI 758, COMHLTH 710, 719, 720, GENPRAC 704
    - 4 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule as approved by the Head of Division

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Pharmacy Practice – PGDipPharmPrac

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a pharmacy qualification equivalent to a degree approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - b hold current registration as a pharmacist in New Zealand or as a pharmacist in the country of domicile.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Pharmacy Practice may on the recommendation of the Head of the Division of Pharmacy, and with the approval of Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this diploma, the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
- c The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of:
  - a 4 points: PHARMACY 710, 711
  - and*
  - b 10 points from other courses listed in the Master of Pharmacy Practice Schedule. With the approval of the Head of the Division of Pharmacy, up to 4 points may be taken from COMHLTH 713, 714, 731, 732, 733, 744, NURSING 709

#### Practical Requirements

- 5 Students enrolled for this diploma must satisfactorily carry out such practice activities as the Head of the Division of Pharmacy may require.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 7 These regulations come into force on 1 January 2002.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Public Health – PGDipPH**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a degree or a professional qualification equivalent to a degree, deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b satisfied the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have appropriate training and experience to undertake the programme.
- 2 A student who has completed the requirements of the Postgraduate Certificate in Public Health with an average of B or higher, or its equivalent, may on the recommendation of the Head of Division, Community Health, and with the approval of the Senate or its representative in any particular case, credit to this Diploma the courses passed for the Postgraduate Certificate.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 4 The programme consists of:
 

*either*

  - a 4 points: COMHLTH 725  
2 points from COMHLTH 701, 703, 710, 722  
8 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule, of which up to 2 points may be from courses offered at master's level within the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences or in any other Faculty with the approval of the relevant Heads of Department
  - or
  - b **Maori Health**  
4 points: COMHLTH 711, MPHEALTH 710  
4 points: MPHEALTH 713, 714  
2 points from COMHLTH 710, 719  
4 points from COMHLTH 712, MPHEALTH 712, 715-717
  - or
  - c **Pacific Health**  
6 points: COMHLTH 730, MPHEALTH 720, 725  
2 points from MPHEALTH 721, 722  
2 points from COMHLTH 710, 719  
4 points from COMHLTH 711, 736, MPHEALTH 722-724, 726-729

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Sports Medicine – PGDipSportMed**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:

- a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
- and
- b hold current registration with either the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile
- and
- c satisfy the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by the University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of:
  - GENPRAC 757 Sports Medicine
  - GENPRAC 758 Sports Injury
  - GENPRAC 609 Practical Sports Medicine

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 a A student enrolled for this diploma must satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Head of the Division of General Practice may require.
- b A student must pass both the written work and the practical or clinical work in order to complete the requirements for the diploma. However, a student who passes the practical or clinical work but fails the written work may, at the discretion of the Head of the Division of General Practice, resit the written examinations in order to complete the requirements for this diploma, without having to repeat the practical or clinical work.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Certificate in Health Sciences – PGCertHSc

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - either
  - a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b (i) completed the requirements for a qualification in a health profession deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - (ii) had at least two years' relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Department.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of 8 points from courses chosen from one of the following areas of specialisation:
  - a **Advanced Nursing**  
8 points: NURSING 704, 705, 719, 720
  - b **Alcohol and Drug Studies**  
8 points: BEHAVSCI 721, 722, 736

- c **Child and Adolescent Mental Health**  
8 points: PSYCHIAT 740, 747, 748, 749
- d **Forensic Psychiatry**  
8 points: PSYCHIAT 746, 760, 761, 762
- e **Managed Care**  
8 points: MGCARE 701, 702, 703, 704
- f **Mental Health**  
8 points from courses listed under Psychiatry and Behavioural Science in the Master of Health Sciences Schedule
- g **Mental Health Nursing**  
8 points from:  
*either*  
(i) PSYCHIAT 750, 751, 752  
*or*  
(ii) PSYCHIAT 750, 753, 754
- h **Primary Health Lifestyle Management**  
8 points: GENPRAC 735, 736, 739
- i **Sports Medicine**  
8 points: GENPRAC 757, 758

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

---

## Postgraduate Certificate in Medical Science – PGCertMedSc

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a medical qualification approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
  - b hold current registration either with the Medical Council of New Zealand or as a medical practitioner in the country of domicile  
*and*
  - c satisfy the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences that they have adequate access to clinical work to undertake the programme at a facility approved by the University of Auckland.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme equivalent to one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of 8 points from the Master of Medical Science Schedule or 8 points from one of the following areas of specialisation:
  - a **General Practice and Primary Health Care**  
4 points: GENPRAC 702, 703  
4 points from courses listed in the Master of Medical Science Schedule
  - b **Paediatrics**  
8 points from PAEDS 711-718
  - c **Palliative Care**  
8 points: GENPRAC 760-763
  - d **Primary Mental Health**  
8 points: GENPRAC 721-723

**Practical Requirements**

- 4 Students enrolled for this certificate must satisfactorily carry out such practical clinical work as the relevant Head of Division may require.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

**Postgraduate Certificate in Pharmacy Practice – PGCertPharmPrac**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a have completed the requirements for a pharmacy qualification equivalent to a degree, approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and*
  - b hold current registration as a pharmacist in New Zealand or as a pharmacist in the country of domicile.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2
  - a A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.
  - b The requirements for this certificate are to be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment. In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend this period.
  - c The requirements for this certificate are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of:
  - a 4 points: PHARMACY 710, 711
  - and*
  - b 4 points from PHARMACY 730, 731, 732, 740

**Practical Requirements**

- 4 Students enrolled for this certificate must satisfactorily carry out such practice activities as the Head of the Division of Pharmacy may require.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

These regulations come into force on 1 January 2002.

**Postgraduate Certificate in Public Health – PGCertPH**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - either*
  - a completed the requirements for a degree deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
  - or*
  - b
    - (i) completed the requirements for a qualification equivalent to a degree in a health profession deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative
    - and*
    - (ii) had at least two years' relevant work experience approved as appropriate by the relevant Head of Division.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this certificate has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time semester and pass courses with a total value of 8 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of:
- either*
- a 4 points: COMHLTH 725  
4 points from courses from the Master of Public Health Schedule
- or*
- b 8 points from courses from one of the following areas of specialisation:
- (i) **Effective Practice**  
8 points from COMHLTH 720, 731-733, 739
- (ii) **Environmental Health**  
8 points from COMHLTH 717, 718, 725, 735 or other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule as approved by the Head of Division
- (iii) **Health Promotion**  
6 points: COMHLTH 713, 714, 743  
2 points from BEHAVSCI 721, 729, COMHLTH 711, 721, 730, PHSOCSCI 700 or another course listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule as approved by the Head of Division
- (iv) **Maori Health**  
6 points: MPHEALTH 710, 713, COMHLTH 711  
2 points from COMHLTH 712, MPHEALTH 712, 714-717
- (v) **Pacific Health**  
4 points: COMHLTH 730, MPHEALTH 720  
2 points from MPHEALTH 721, 722  
2 points from COMHLTH 711, 719, 736, MPHEALTH 723, 726-729
- (vi) **Programme Evaluation**  
6 points: COMHLTH 708, PHSOCSCI 700, 701  
2 points from other courses listed in the Master of Public Health Schedule as approved by the Head of the Alcohol and Public Health Research Unit

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

**Certificate in Health Sciences – CertHSc**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student must have completed year 13 in a New Zealand secondary school or its equivalent.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a The student must follow a programme equivalent to two full-time semesters and pass courses with a total value of 14 points. A student enrolled in this programme must enrol in either Option 1 or Option 2 as specified in Regulation 3.
- b The requirements of the Certificate in Health Sciences are to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Diplomas and Certificates.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme consists of one of the following options:
- Option 1**  
MPHEALTH 10H Introduction to Human Biology  
MPHEALTH 12H Introduction to Social Sciences in Health  
MPHEALTH 15H Introduction to Chemistry  
MPHEALTH 16H Introduction to Physics  
MPHEALTH 17H Personal and Professional Development  
*and either*  
MPHEALTH 13H Introduction to Maori Health  
*or*  
MPHEALTH 14H Introduction to Pacific Health

*and*

in the second semester at least 2 points in an approved elective course drawn from the schedules to the BA, BSc, BCom or BHSc regulations and selected in agreement with the Director of the Certificate in Health Sciences.

**Option 2**

MPHEALTH 10H Introduction to Human Biology  
MPHEALTH 11H Introduction to Physical Sciences for Health  
MPHEALTH 12H Introduction to Social Sciences in Health  
MPHEALTH 13H Introduction to Maori Health  
MPHEALTH 14H Introduction to Pacific Health  
MPHEALTH 17H Personal and Professional Development

*and*

in the second semester at least 2 points in an approved elective course drawn from the schedules to the BA, BSc, BCom or BHSc regulations and selected in agreement with the Director of the Certificate in Health Sciences.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

---

## Regulations – Science

- 189 The Degree of Bachelor of Science – BSc
- 192 The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) – BSc(Hons)
- 195 The Degree of Bachelor of Optometry – BOptom
- 196 The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech
- 196 The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR
- 196 The Degree of Master of Science – MSc
- 200 The Degree of Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice – MSLTPrac
- 201 Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt
- 201 Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd
- 201 Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR
- 201 Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd
- 201 Graduate Diploma in Science – GradDipSci
- 203 Postgraduate Diploma in Science – PGDipSci
- 204 Postgraduate Diploma in Forensic Science – PGDipForensic
- 205 Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology – PGDipAppPsych
- 205 Postgraduate Diploma in Health Psychology – PGDipHealthPsych
- 205 The Degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology – DClinPsy
- 207 Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology – PGDipClinPsych
- 208 Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology – CertOcPharm

---

## REGULATIONS – SCIENCE

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Science – BSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points for this degree a student must pass:
  - a at least 34 points in subjects listed in the BSc Schedule
  - b at least 22 points in courses above Stage I
  - c courses in a minimum of three subjects
  - d one or more majors or specialisations, including at least 6 points at Stage III in each major or specialisation, selected from the majors or specialisations listed in the BSc Schedule
  - e 2 additional points at Stage III in subjects listed in the BSc Schedule.
- 3 A student may include up to 8 points from other programmes offered at this University.

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 In any course that includes practical work as well as written work, a student must obtain passes in both the practical and written work in order to pass that course as a whole. A student who passes the practical work but who fails the written work may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical work for that failed course carried forward when the course is retaken.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 5 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Special Cases

- 6 a In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may permit a suitably qualified student to enrol directly in a Stage II course(s). If the student fails the Stage II course(s) but is certified by the examiner as having reached a pass in an equivalent Stage I course(s), the student may be credited with the appropriate Stage I course(s).
- b If a student who is enrolled in and fails an advanced or accelerated Stage I course but is certified by the examiner as having reached a pass in a Stage I course in the same subject having a lower entry requirement, the student may be credited with the latter course. The relevant Head(s) of Department shall certify to the Senate or its representative that the failed course is an advanced or accelerated course.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 2000 Regulations.

---

### Bachelor of Science Schedule

---

#### Courses available for the BSc:

##### Anatomy

- ANATOMY 201

##### Anthropology

- ANTHRO 102

- ANTHRO 201, 222
- ANTHRO 328

##### Applied Mathematics

- MATHS 162

- MATHS 260, 267, 270
- MATHS 361–372, 386–389, STATS 370, 391

### Biological Sciences

- BIOSCI 100–107
- BIOSCI 200–209
- BIOSCI 320–395

### Chemistry

- CHEM 100–195
- CHEM 201–209
- CHEM 301–309, CHEM 315

### Civil and Resource Engineering

- CIVIL 220, 221, RESOURCE 201
- CIVIL 322, 323, 420, RESOURCE 324, 333, 471

### Computer Science

- COMPSCI 101–111, INFOSYS 110
- COMPSCI 210–280, INFOSYS 222, 224
- COMPSCI 313–393, INFOSYS 329, 332

### Environmental Science

- ENVSCI 201
- ENVSCI 301, 310

### General Science

- SCIGEN 101
- SCIGEN 201

### Geography

- GEOG 101–152
- GEOG 201–255
- GEOG 302–353

### Geology

- GEOLOGY 110–112
- GEOLOGY 201–205
- GEOLOGY 301–372, GEOPHYS 330

### Geophysics

- GEOPHYS 330–333

### History

- HISTORY 150
- HISTORY 240

### History and Philosophy of Science and Technology

- HPST 100
- HPST 200

### Human Biology

- HUMANBIO 142

### Information Systems

- Stage II – all INFOSYS courses listed in the BCom schedule
  - Stage III – all INFOSYS courses listed in the BCom schedule
- Note that any one of courses 636.324, INFOSYS 329 and 332 may count towards a major in Computer Science

### Law

- LAW 457

### Linguistics

- LINGUIST 100, 101, 103

- LINGUIST 200, 201
- LINGUIST 300, 301, 302, 305

### Logic and Computation

- COMPSCI 101, 105, LINGUIST 100, 103, MATHS 152, PHIL 101, 105
- COMPSCI 220, 225, 230, LINGUIST 200, MATHS 255, PHIL 201, 216, 219
- COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, 365, LINGUIST 300, 302, MATHS 315, 326, 381, PHIL 305, 315, 316

### Marine Science

- MARINE 202
- MARINE 302

### Mathematics

- MATHS 101–162
- MATHS 202–270, COMPSCI 225
- MATHS 302–384, STATS 370, 391

### Molecular Medicine

- MOLMED 201

### Pacific Studies

- PACIFIC 103

### Pathology

- PATHOL 251
- PATHOL 301–303

### Pharmacology

- PHARMCOL 201
- PHARMCOL 301–306

### Philosophy

- PHIL 101, 102, 152
- PHIL 200, 201, 210, 216, 250, 260, 261, 263
- PHIL 305, 315

### Physics

- PHYSICS 101–160
- PHYSICS 200–270
- PHYSICS 315–396, GEOPHYS 330–333

### Physiology

- PHYSIOL 210, 220
- PHYSIOL 301–305

### Psychology

- PSYCH 108–129
- PSYCH 201–263
- PSYCH 301–364, SPORTSCI 304

### Science Education

- EDUC 201
- EDUC 382

### Sport and Exercise Science

- SPORTSCI 102–104
- SPORTSCI 201–206
- SPORTSCI 301–309

### Statistics

- STATS 101–120
- STATS 201–255
- STATS 301–391

**BSc Majors:****Biological Sciences**

- BIOSCI 101
- at least 6 points from BIOSCI 100, 102–107
- at least 2 points from BIOSCI 201–204
- at least 2 points from BIOSCI 205–208
- at least 6 points from BIOSCI 320–395

**Chemistry**

- CHEM 120
- 2 points from 110 or 195
- at least 4 points from CHEM 201–204
- at least 4 points from CHEM 301–304
- at least 2 additional points from CHEM 301–308

**Computer Science**

- 4 points from COMPSCI 313–393
- at least 2 additional points from COMPSCI 313–393, INFOSYS 329, 332

**Food Science**

- 12 points: BIOSCI 101, 106, 107, CHEM 110, PHYSICS 160, HUMANBIO 142
- 2 points: elective
- 14 points: BIOSCI 203, 204, CHEM 203, FOODSCI 201, STATS 101, CHEMMAT 211, ENGSCI 111
- 14 points: BIOSCI 352, 358, CHEM 209, FOODSCI 301, 302, SCIGEN 201, CHEMMAT 463

**Geography**

- at least 6 points from GEOG 101, 102, 151, 152, 201, 202, 251, 252
- GEOG 204
- at least 6 points from GEOG 302–353, including at least 2 points from GEOG 315, 330, 353

**Geology**

- GEOLOGY 111 and 112

- GEOLOGY 201 and 4 points from GEOLOGY 202–204
- GEOLOGY 301 and 4 points from GEOLOGY 302–305

**Mathematics****(i) Applied Mathematics**

- MATHS 361 and at least 4 points from MATHS 340, 347, 362–372, 386, 387, 388, STATS 391

**(ii) Mathematics**

- at least 6 points from MATHS 302–372, 381–384, STATS 370, 391, including no more than 4 points from MATHS 361–371, STATS 391

**Pharmacology**

- at least 6 points from PHARMCOL 301–306

**Physics**

6 points at Stage III in Physics or Geophysics, including:

- 2 points from PHYSICS 315–355
- a further 2 points from PHYSICS 315–355, GEOPHYS 330–333
- at least 1 point from PHYSICS 390–396

**Physiology**

- at least 6 points from PHYSIOL 301–305

**Psychology**

- at least 6 points from PSYCH 301–364, SPORTSCI 304

**Sport and Exercise Science**

- 10 points: BIOSCI 107, SPORTSCI 102, 103, 104, HUMANBIO 142
- 2 points from PSYCH 128 or 129
- 10 points: SPORTSCI 201–204, PHYSIOL 210
- 8 points: SPORTSCI 301, 303, 304, 305

**Statistics**

- at least 6 points from STATS 301–391

**BSc Specialisations:****Applied and Industrial Mathematics**

- at least 4 points from MATHS 208, 260, 267, 270
- at least 4 points from STATS 201, 208, 210, 255
- at least 8 points from MATHS 347, 361–372, 388, STATS 301–391

**Bioinformatics****Part I:**

- BIOSCI 101, 107, CHEM 110, COMPSCI 101, 105, MATHS 108, STATS 101

**Part II:**

- BIOSCI 201, 202, COMPSCI 220, MATHS 208, STATS 210
- at least 2 points from COMPSCI 225, 230
- at least 2 points from BIOSCI 106, MATHS 162, 267, STATS 201

**Part III:**

- BIOSCI 359 Bioinformatics
- at least 4 points from BIOSCI 322, 350, 351, 353, 354, 356
- at least 2 points from COMPSCI 320, 335, 365, 370
- at least 2 points from STATS 301, 302, 310, 325
- at least 2 points from BIOSCI 203, MATHS 326, 361, 388

**Biomedical Science****Core courses**

- 12 points: BIOSCI 101, 106, 107, CHEM 110, PHYSICS 160, HUMANBIO 142

- 8 points: BIOSCI 201–203, PHYSIOL 210
- 6 points from ANATOMY 201, BIOSCI 204 or MOLMED 201, PATHOL 251, PHARMCOL 201, PHYSIOL 220 or PSYCH 202
- 2 points from an approved Statistics course

**Options****Cancer Biology and Disease Processes**

- PATHOL 301, 302, BIOSCI 356
- 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351, 353, 354, 357
- at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

**Cardiovascular Biology**

- PHYSIOL 301, 304
- 2 points from PATHOL 301, PHARMCOL 304, PHYSIOL 302
- 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351, 353 or 354
- at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

**Cellular and Molecular Biomedicine**

- BIOSCI 350, 351, 353
- 2 points from PHARMCOL 302, PHYSIOL 301, 302
- at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

**Genetics and Development**

- BIOSCI 351, 354, 356
- 2 points from BIOSCI 350 or 353
- at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

**Microbiology and Immunology**

- BIOSCI 349, 352, 357
- 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351 or 353
- at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

**Neurobiology**

- PHARMCOL 306, PHYSIOL 301, 303
- 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351, 354, PHYSIOL 302, PSYCH 305
- at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

**Reproduction, Growth and Metabolism**

- OBSTGYN 351, PHYSIOL 305, BIOSCI 353
- 2 points from BIOSCI 350, 351 or 354
- at least 6 further points chosen from the BSc Schedule

**Discrete Mathematics and Computing**

- 6 points: COMPSCI 220, 230, 225, STATS 255
- 8 points: COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, MATHS 315, 320, 326, STATS 391

**Electronics and Computing**

- 4 points: PHYSICS 321, 340
- 2 points from PHYSICS 390–396
- 6 points at Stage II in Mathematics or Computer Science
- 2 points at Stage III in Computer Science

**Environmental Science**

Environmental Science is designed to be taken in conjunction with a science subject major. Any other programme must be approved by the Coordinator of the Programme

- 2 points: ENVSCI 201
- 2 points from STATS 201, BIOSCI 209 or GEOG 204
- 2 points: ENVSCI 301
- 2 points: ENVSCI 310
- 4 points of approved Stage III BSc courses

**Geophysics**

- 10 points: GEOLOGY 111, 112, MATHS 151, 152, PHYSICS 120
- 2 points from PHYSICS 130 or 150
- 6 points: MATHS 253, PHYSICS 213, 230
- at least 4 points from GEOLOGY 201, 204, MATHS 260, PHYSICS 220, 240
- at least 4 points from GEOLOGY 361, GEOPHYS 330–333
- at least 2 additional points from GEOLOGY 301–372, GEOPHYS 330–333, MATHS 302–384, PHYSICS 315–396

**Information Systems**

- 2 points: ACCTG 101 or MGMT 101
- 6 points: COMPSCI 210, 220, 230

- 6 points: INFOSYS 220, 222, 224
- 4 points from COMPSCI 313–393
- 4 points from INFOSYS 320–340 (except for 636.326)

**Logic and Computation**

- at least 16 points from courses listed under Logic and Computation in the BSc schedule, including:
  - 4 points: COMPSCI 101, PHIL 101
  - 4 points: COMPSCI 225, PHIL 201
- at least 6 points from COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, 365, LINGUIST 300, 302, MATHS 315, 326, 381, PHIL 305, 315, 316

**Marine Science**

Marine Science is designed to be taken in conjunction with a science subject major. Any other subject must be approved by the Coordinator of the Programme

- 2 points: MARINE 202
- 2 points from STATS 201, BIOSCI 209 or GEOG 204
- 6 points from approved Stage III BSc courses

**Medicinal Chemistry****Part I**

- 10 points: BIOSCI 101, 106, 107, CHEM 110, 120
- at least 4 points from COMPSCI 111, STATS 101, PHYSICS 160, HUMANBIO 142

**Part II**

- 12 points: BIOSCI 201, 203, CHEM 203, 209, PHARMCOL 201, PHYSIOL 210
- at least 2 points from BIOSCI 202, 204, CHEM 201, 202, MOLMED 201, PATHOL 251, PHARMACY 202

**Part III**

- CHEM 303, 304, 309, 315, PHARMCOL 301
- at least 4 points from CHEM 302, 305, BIOSCI 350, PHARMCOL 304, 305, PHYSIOL 220

**Operations Research**

- 2 points: STATS 255
- 2 further points at Stage II in Statistics
- 4 points: STATS 320, 391
- 2 points from STATS 301–310, 325–390, OPSMG 371, 382, COMPSCI 320, MATHS 326, 328, 361, 388 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
- 2 points at Stage III from the BSc Schedule

**The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) – BSc(Hons)**

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- a In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or any other equivalent qualification as approved by the Senate or its representative.
  - b A student who enrolls for this degree with 42 points towards a Bachelor of Science degree must have passed 10 points at Stage III or above with an average grade of at least B, and completed the requirements for one of the subjects specified in the regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Science and available for this degree.
  - c Admission to this degree can be considered after a student has passed between 28 and 42 points towards the Degree of Bachelor of Science and is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department or Coordinator of Programme.
  - d A student who enrolls for this degree having gained between 28 and 40 points may be required to withdraw from the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) if the requirement of Regulation 1b above is not met by a period determined by the Dean of the Faculty of Science on initial enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years (inclusive of the three years, or equivalent, required for the Degree of Bachelor of Science) and pass courses with a total value of 56 points (inclusive of the 42 points required for the Degree of Bachelor of Science), as specified in the schedule to these regulations, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations or unless the student is enrolled in an approved conjoint degrees combination.
- b A student enrolled for this degree must complete the requirements as set out in the schedule to these regulations within:
- (i) eight semesters of first enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Science
  - or
  - (ii) 10 semesters of first enrolment for the BA/BSc, BCom/BSc, BHSc/BSc, BMus/BSc, BProp/BSc, BSc/BTheol
  - or
  - (iii) 12 semesters of first enrolment for the BE/BSc, BSc/LLB
  - or
  - (iv) 13 semesters of first enrolment for the BSc/LLB(Hons)

unless the Senate or its representative approves an extension of that period for up to a further two semesters.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 In addition, each student must pass courses in one of the following subjects or programmes with a total value of at least 14 points. At least 12 points must be taken from courses at master's level as listed in the schedule to these regulations or in the Master of Science Schedule.

**Dissertations**

- 4 a Where a student includes, or is required to include, a dissertation in this programme, its value may be of no more than 4 points.
- b A dissertation must be submitted within four weeks after the end of the final semester in which the student is enrolled for the degree.

**Practical Requirements**

- 5 In any course that includes practical work as well as written work, a student must obtain passes in both the practical and written work in order to pass that course as a whole.

**Enrolment for Two Programmes**

- 6 This degree may not be taken at the same time as another programme.

**Variations**

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 8 This degree is awarded with Honours according to the standard of a student's work in the 14 points required under Regulation 3. Honours may be in one of two classes: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

**Commencement**

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1993 Regulations.

**Bachelor of Science (Honours) Schedule****Applied Geology**

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- At least 8 points from GEOLOGY 701, 705, 712, 771-773, GEOPHYS 761-763, GEOTHERM 611-613
- up to 2 points from approved courses within the ME schedules for Civil Engineering or Resource Engineering
- GEOLOGY 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

higher, including MATHS 361 and 362, approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- at least 8 points from MATHS 761-775, 786-789, PHYSICS 701, 707, ENGSCI 792
- up to 6 points from MSc level courses in Mathematics or related subjects with approval of the Head of the Department of Mathematics

**Applied Mathematics**

**Prerequisite:** At least 8 points in Mathematics courses at Stage III or

**Bioinformatics**

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc Major in Bioinformatics

**Requirement:**

- BIOSCI 743, 744

- one of: BIOSCI 789, COMPSCI 789, STATS 789
- 6 points from BIOSCI 762, 713, 714, 715, 717, 719, COMPSCI 720, 735, 760, 765, 767, STATS 730, 731, 734, 766

### Biological Sciences

**Prerequisite:** At least 10 points in Stage III Biological Sciences courses. With the permission of the Director up to 4 points at Stage III in Chemistry, Pharmacology, or Physiology may be substituted

**Requirement:**

- BIOSCI 762 (2 points)
- 8 points from BIOSCI 703–742. With the approval of the Director a student may substitute one course for an MSc level course or courses having the same points value in another related subject
- BIOSCI 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Biomedical Science

**Prerequisite:** At least 10 points at Stage III or higher, including a BSc major in Biomedical Science

**Requirement:**

- BIOMED 790 (14 points)

### Chemistry

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Chemistry

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from CHEM 710–780
- CHEM 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Computer Science

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Computer Science

**Requirement:**

- 14 points from COMPSCI 701–790

### Discrete Mathematics and Computing

**Prerequisite:**

- 415.225, COMPSCI 220, 230
- 10 points at Stage III including at least 6 points from COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, MATHS 315, 320, 326

**Requirement:**

- Courses totalling 14 points as approved by the Heads of Department of Mathematics and Computer Science, with at least 10 points from COMPSCI 702, 720, 725, 750, 755, 780, 781, MATHS 713–715, 720, ENGSCI 460, 463, 795

### Food Science

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Food Science

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: FOODSCI 789
- 8 points from FOODSCI 703, 706–710

### Geography

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- GEOG 701 (2 points)
- 8 points from GEOG 711–779
- GEOG 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Geology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from GEOLOGY 701, 703–773, GEOPHYS 761–763
- GEOLOGY 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Logic and Computation

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III, including a BSc specialisation in Logic and Computation

**Requirement:**

14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:

- COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
- LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
- MATHS 713
- PHIL 736, 737, 738
- LOGICOMP 701, 702
- LOGICOMP 780 Honours Dissertation (4 points)

### Mathematics

**Prerequisite:**

- (445.231 or 445.252) or (MATHS 253 and 255) or equivalent approved courses
- at least two of COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 210, 255
- 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- Courses totalling 14 points with at least 12 points in courses above Stage III. At least 8 points must be in Mathematics courses and up to 6 points may be from approved master's level courses in related subjects

### Medicinal Chemistry

**Prerequisite:** At least 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Medicinal Chemistry or equivalent

**Requirement:**

- CHEM 735 and 789
- at least 6 points from CHEM 730, 731, 750, BIOSCI 716, 717

### Pharmacology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including at least 8 points from Pharmacology courses

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from PHARMCOL 710–729
- PHARMCOL 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Physiology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Physiology

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from PHYSIOL 701–708
- PHYSIOL 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Psychology

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III, including 8 points from Psychology, including PSYCH 306

**Requirement:**

- PSYCH 702–745 (10 points)
- PSYCH 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Sport and Exercise Science

**Prerequisite:** 10 points at Stage III including SPORTSCI 301, 303, 304, 305

**Requirement:**

- SPORTSCI 705 (2 points)
- at least 6 points from SPORTSCI 701–704, 706–711
- up to 2 points from approved MSc level courses
- SPORTSCI 789 BSc(Hons) Dissertation (4 points)

### Statistics

**Prerequisite:**

- STATS 210, and MATHS 208 or 253
- 10 points at Stage III including a BSc major in Statistics

**Requirement:**

- 14 points including:
  - STATS 730, 782, and at least 2 points from STATS 708–787
  - up to 6 points from approved MSc level courses in related subjects
  - STATS 789 BSc(Hons) Project in Statistics (2 points)

## The Degree of Bachelor of Optometry – BOptom

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this programme has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student has to pass each of Parts I, II, III and IV as set out in the schedule to these regulations.
  - b Each part must normally be completed before the next part may be taken. However, a student who has failed to pass one of those parts in its entirety may be allowed, at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next part.
- 3 Study for this degree must be pursued in consecutive semesters. Interrupted study may be resumed only with the approval of, and on conditions set by, the Senate or its representative.

### Enrolment for Two Programmes

- 4 This degree may not be studied at the same time as another programme unless special permission is given by the Senate or its representative.

### Practical Requirements

- 5 a A student enrolled for this degree must satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Faculty of Science may require.
  - b In any course that includes both a final written examination and practical or clinical work, a student must pass both the final written examination and the practical or clinical work to pass that course as a whole. However, a student who passes the practical or clinical work but fails the final written examination may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical or clinical work for that failed course carried forward when the course is repeated.
  - c A student who repeats any course may also be required to undertake such additional practical or clinical work as the Head of the Department of Optometry and Vision Science determines.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 7 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
  - b Honours may normally be awarded only if the requirements for this degree are completed within eight semesters of initial enrolment for the degree. In exceptional circumstances however, the Senate or its representative may approve an extension of this period for not more than two further semesters.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1995 Regulations.

---

## Bachelor of Optometry Schedule

### Part I

OPTOM 110 Visual Optics  
 OPTOM 150 Ocular Anatomy and Physiology  
 OPTOM 160 Geometrical and Physical Optics  
 OPTOM 170 Visual Science 1  
 BIOSCI 106 Foundations of Biochemistry  
 BIOSCI 107 Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes  
 and Development  
 HUMANBIO 142 Biomedical Science: Organ Systems

### Part II

OPTOM 211 Optometry  
 OPTOM 231 General Pathology  
 OPTOM 251 Ocular Pathology  
 OPTOM 260 Applied Optics and Dispensing  
 OPTOM 270 Visual Science 2  
 MOLMED 201 Microbiology and Immunology

**Part III**

OPTOM 311 Clinical Optometry  
 OPTOM 330 Contact Lens Practice  
 OPTOM 340 Paediatric and Geriatric Optometry  
 OPTOM 350 Diseases of the Eye  
 OPTOM 360 Community Optometry and Visual Ergonomics  
 OPTOM 370 Practice Management

**Part IV**

OPTOM 410 Advanced Clinical Optometry 1  
 OPTOM 420 Advanced Clinical Optometry 2  
 OPTOM 461 Specialist Optometry  
 OPTOM 470 Project  
 OPTOM 480 Advanced Optometric Science

---

## The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech

*The Bachelor of Technology is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

---

## The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR

*The Master of Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

---

## The Degree of Master of Science – MSc

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - both
    - a completed the requirements for:
      - (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Science
      - or
      - (ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)
      - or
      - (iii) the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry
      - or
      - (iv) the Postgraduate Diploma in Science
      - or
      - (v) any other equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
    - and
      - (i) passed at least 8 points at Stage III level, which must include courses in majors specified in the schedule to these regulations, and achieved in these courses an average grade of B- or higher
      - and
        - (ii) had their proposed enrolment approved by the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or equivalent.
  - 2 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science but who, for that degree, has:
    - a passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points
    - and
    - b passed all the Stage III courses or major specified in the schedule to these regulations and achieved in them an average grade of B- or higher

may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or equivalent, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining courses required for the Bachelor of Science must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Science enrolment will be suspended until they have been completed.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis normally has to follow a programme of:
  - a four consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass courses or courses plus thesis with total value of 28 points, if entering with the degree of Bachelor of Science or equivalent
  - or

- b two consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) or its equivalent or with a degree of Bachelor of Science and a Postgraduate Diploma in Science.
- 4 A student enrolled for this degree on a part-time basis normally has to follow a programme of:
- a no more than eight consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass courses or courses plus thesis with a total value of 28 points, if entering with the Degree of Bachelor of Science or equivalent
- or
- b no more than four consecutive semesters as defined in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees and pass a thesis or courses with a total value of 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) or its equivalent or with a Degree of Bachelor of Science and a Postgraduate Diploma in Science or equivalent.

### Structure and Content

- 5 a A student who has to complete 14 or 28 points for this degree must include 14 points from:
- (i) a thesis in one of the subjects listed in the schedule to this degree
- or
- (ii) Advanced Studies for the subjects Applied Mathematics, Computer Science, Mathematics and Statistics only, as listed in the Course Schedule to this degree
- or
- (iii) for the subject Statistics, master's courses in Statistics which must include at least one of STATS 790, 791
- or
- (iv) for the subject Medical Statistics, master's courses in Medical Statistics and Statistics which must include STATS 788 A and B.
- b A student who has to complete 28 points must, in addition, include a total of 14 points from the following:
- (i) At least 10 points from courses at master's level as listed in the schedule to these regulations.
  - (ii) Up to 4 points from courses at Stage III and above, in any subject or area of specialisation as listed in the schedule to the Degree of Bachelor of Science or those courses listed for Bachelor of Science (Honours) or for Master of Science.
- c Each student's programme must be approved by the relevant Heads of Departments, Directors of Schools, or equivalent. As a condition of approval, students being admitted under Regulation 1a(iv) may be asked to fulfil specific requirements.

### Thesis

- 6 a A thesis, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic has to be approved by the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or equivalent before enrolment for the thesis.
- 7 a A student enrolled for this degree who is including a thesis must normally submit the thesis within the time specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
- b In exceptional circumstances and on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School, or equivalent the Senate or its representative may extend the submission dates. The extension may be granted with or without continued eligibility for Honours.

### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1985 Regulations.

## Master of Science Schedule

### Applied Geology

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- GEOLOGY 708 and 709
- At least 8 points from GEOLOGY 701, 705, 712, 771-773, GEOPHYS 761-763, GEOTHERM 611-613
- with Head of Department permission, up to 4 points from courses in Part IV of the BE Schedules for Civil Engineering and Resource Engineering may be substituted for the ME level courses

### Applied Mathematics

**Prerequisite:** At least 8 points in Mathematics courses at Stage III or higher, including MATHS 361 and 362, approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics

**Requirement:**

- at least 8 points from MATHS 761-775, 786-789, PHYSICS 701, 707, ENGSCI 792
- up to 6 points from approved master's level courses in related subjects, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

### Biological Sciences

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Biological Sciences

**Requirement:** BIOSCI 761 (2 points) and a further 12 points selected from BIOSCI 703-742, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

### Chemistry

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Chemistry

**Requirement:** CHEM 790 (2 points) plus 12 points from 710-780

### Computer Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Computer Science

**Requirement:** 14 points from COMPSCI 701-790, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

### Electronics and Computing

**Prerequisite:** Permission of the Head of the Department of Physics

**Requirement:** 14 points from MSc courses in Computer Science and Physics and courses from the ME Schedule for Electrical and Electronic Engineering, as approved by the Head of Department of Physics

### Environmental and Marine Science

*No new students will be accepted into Environmental and Marine Science in 2002*

**Prerequisite:** An approved BSc, BE, or equivalent degree

**Requirement:**

- ENVSCI 701, 731 and 6 points from 724, 726, 732-736;
- plus*
- 4 points from approved master's level courses in related subjects or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

### Environmental Science

**Prerequisite:** An approved BSc or equivalent degree

**Requirement:**

- ENVSCI 701
- At least 8 points from ENVSCI 702-736, including either ENVSCI 710 or 731 depending on specialisation in applied environmental science (710) or applied ecology and conservation (731)
- Up to 4 points from other approved master's level courses in related subjects or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

### Ergonomics

**Prerequisite:**

- a BSc major in either Psychology or Sport and Exercise Science or

other equivalent relevant qualifications as approved by the Chair of the Board of Studies

- PSYCH 314 or equivalent

**Requirement:**

- PSYCH 737 Human Factors I
- at least 2 points from SPORTSCI 704, 706-8
- at least 2 points from PSYCH 702-3, 735, 738
- up to 8 points from approved papers

### Exercise Rehabilitation

**Prerequisite:**

- a BSc major in Sport and Exercise Science or other equivalent relevant qualifications as approved by the Head of Department of Sport and Exercise Science
- SPORTSCI 302 or equivalent

**Requirement:**

- SPORTSCI 703, 706, 710, 791
- with Head of Department permission, up to 4 points from approved MSc or MHC schedules

### Food Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Biological Sciences or in Chemistry, or other relevant areas as approved by the Programme Coordinator

**Requirement:**

- FOODSCI 703-708 (10 points)
- 4 points from approved MSc level courses

### Forensic Science

**Prerequisite:** A bachelor's degree in science, technology, medicine, engineering or other relevant areas as approved by the Programme Coordinator

**Requirement:**

- FORENSIC 701-706 (12 points)
- 2 points from an approved master's level course

### Geography

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Geography

**Requirement:**

- GEOG 701 (2 points)
- GEOG 711-779 (12 points)

### Geology

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Geology

**Requirement:**

- GEOLOGY 708 and 709
- at least 8 points from GEOLOGY 701, 705-773, GEOPHYS 761-763, GEOTHERM 611-613
- up to 4 points from approved MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

### Geophysics

**Prerequisite:** At least 6 points from GEOLOGY 361, GEOPHYS 330-333

**Requirement:**

- PHYSICS 730 (2 points)
- approved master's level courses in Applied Mathematics, Geology, Geophysics, Physics, or other Science subjects (12 points)

### Health Psychology

**Prerequisite:** 8 points in Stage III Psychology

**Requirement:**

- PSYCH 701, HLTHPSYC 714, 715 (8 points)
- approved master's level courses in Psychology, Health Psychology, Sport and Exercise Science, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science (6 points)

## Logic and Computation

**Prerequisite:** A BSc specialisation in Logic and Computation or equivalent qualification

**Requirement:**

At least 14 points from the following courses, including at least 2 points from COMPSCI courses and at least 2 points from either LOGICOMP or PHIL:

- COMPSCI 720, 750, 755, 765
- PHIL 736, 737, 738
- LOGICOMP 701, 702
- LINGUIST 721, 724, 725
- MATHS 713

and

- 14 points: LOGICOMP 796 Thesis

## Marine Science

**Prerequisite:** An approved BSc, BE, or equivalent degree

**Requirement:**

- MARINE 701; plus
- 2 point thesis proposal course (BIOSCI 761, CHEM 790, ENVSCI 701, GEOG 701 or equivalent)
- 10 points from the following master's level courses including at least 2 of the following subject areas: Biology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Geophysics, Marine Science, Physics, Statistics: BIOSCI 761 Thesis Proposal (compulsory if enrolling in BIOSCI 796 MSc thesis in Biological Sciences), BIOSCI 709–713, 720, ENVSCI 704, 714, 722, 726, 735, GEOG 746–748, GEOLOGY 721, 754, MARINE 723, 727, PHYSICS 704, 730, STATS 767, 775
- or other courses as may be approved by the Marine Sciences Board of Studies
- or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Mathematics

**Prerequisite:**

- 445.231 or 445.252 or (MATHS 253 and 255) or equivalent approved courses
- at least 4 points from COMPSCI 225, MATHS 260, 270, STATS 201, 210, 255
- a BSc major in Mathematics

**Requirement:** One of the following options:

- 14 points from MATHS 701–794 plus 14 points: Master's Thesis in Mathematics MATHS 796
- 14 points from MATHS 701–794 plus 14 points: Advanced Studies in Mathematics MATHS 797
- 28 points from approved courses MATHS 701–794 including at least 6 points from project courses MATHS 791–794, or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii). Up to 6 points from approved master's level courses in related subjects may be included

## Medical Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Biological Sciences, Pharmacology, or Physiology, together with appropriate prerequisite courses and approval of the Postgraduate Dean, Faculty of Science

**Requirement:**

- MEDSCI 796 MSc Thesis in Medical Science (14 points) plus 14 points from:

Anatomy: ANATOMY 702, 703, 706

Biological Sciences: BIOSCI 714–718

Community Health: COMHLTH 701

Molecular Medicine: MOLMED 701–710

Obstetrics and Gynaecology: OBSTGYN 701–704, 706, 707

Paediatrics: PAEDS 701–703

Pathology: PATHOL 703–705

Pharmacology: PHARMCOL 710–729

Physiology: PHYSIOL 701–707

## Medical Statistics

**Prerequisite:** A major in statistics, or equivalent approved by the Head of the Department of Statistics

**Requirement:**

- STATS 788 Dissertation in Medical Statistics (6 points)
- STATS 780, 782, one of COMHLTH 703, 720 (6 points)
- At least 8 points from STATS 740, 741, 760, 761, 764, 770–773
- Up to 8 points from other Master's level courses in Statistics or COMHLTH 706, 707, 708, 710, 716, 717, 720 (if not taken above)

## Molecular Medicine

- MOLMED 701–712

## Optometry and Vision Science

**Prerequisite:** A BOptom degree or an equivalent qualification approved by the Head of Department

**Requirement:** 14 points from OPTOM 711–770

## Pharmacology

**Prerequisite:** At least 8 points from PHARMCOL 301–306

**Requirement:**

- at least 10 points from PHARMCOL 710–729
- up to 4 points from approved MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Physics

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Physics

**Requirement:**

- at least 8 points from PHYSICS 701–792
- at least 2 additional points from PHYSICS 701–792; MATHS 761–763; GEOPHYS 761–763
- up to 4 points from approved MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Physiology

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Physiology

**Requirement:** At least 10 points from PHYSIOL 701–708 and up to 4 points from MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Polymers and Coatings Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Chemistry

**Requirement:**

- POLYMER 701–713 and CHEM 780 (12 points)
- 2 points from CHEM 710, 730–750

## Psychology

**Prerequisite:** 8 points in Stage III Psychology, including PSYCH 306

**Requirement:** PSYCH 702–745 (14 points) or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Speech Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc or other relevant degree as approved by the Board of Studies

**Requirement:**

- 6 points: SPCHSCI 712, 713, 732
- 8 points: approved master's level courses in Psychology, Physiology, Audiology, Speech Science, Computer Science, Engineering

## Sport and Exercise Science

**Prerequisite:** A BSc major in Sport and Exercise Science

**Requirement:**

- SPORTSCI 705 (2 points)
- at least 8 points from SPORTSCI 702–704, 706–711
- up to 4 points from MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)

## Statistics

**Prerequisite:**

- a BSc major in Statistics
- STATS 210, and MATHS 208 or 253

**Requirement:**

- STATS 730 and 782 (4 points)
  - at least 4 points from other MSc level courses in Statistics
  - up to 6 points from approved MSc level courses or as provided for in Regulation 5b(ii)
- plus one of the following options:
- STATS 796 Masters Thesis in Statistics (14 points)
  - STATS 797 Advanced Studies in Statistics (14 points)
  - 14 points in further MSc level courses in Statistics which must include at least one of STATS 790, 791

**Wine Science****Prerequisite:**

A BSc or other relevant degree as approved by the programme director

**Requirement:**

- 10 points from WINESCI 701-707
- 4 points from BIOSCI 352, 740, 741, CHEMMAT 463, 361, FOODSCI 703, 706, 707, 708, GEOG 332

## The Degree of Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice – MSLTPrac

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 a In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's or master's degree of this University other than a degree specialising in speech language therapy, or gained any other equivalent qualification, provided that the Senate or its representative is satisfied that the prior degree or other equivalent qualification is indicative of the ability to undertake advanced study in Speech Language Therapy Practice

and

  - (ii) passed at least 8 points at Stage III or graduate level in approved subjects and achieved in these an average of B- or higher.
- b The Senate or its representative may, on the recommendations of the Dean of Science or representative, require a student with insufficient background in Psychology and Education to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I of this degree, as under Regulation 5d below.
- 2 A student who has not completed all of the requirements for their qualifying prior degree but who, for that degree, has:
  - a no more than 2 points left to complete

and

  - b achieved an average grade of B- or higher in at least 6 points at the highest level for the prior degree may, with the approval of the Dean of Science, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining points required for the prior degree must be completed within 12 months of enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the required degree not be completed in this time, the Degree of Master of Speech Language Therapy Practice will be suspended until they have been completed.
- 3 Admission to the programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Director of the programme.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 5 a A student for this degree needs to pass courses for each of Parts I and II as follows:

**Part I****Speech Language Therapy Core Courses** (4 points):

SPCHSCI 711 Speech Language Therapy I

SPCHSCI 721 Speech Language Therapy II

**Supporting Courses** (6 points):

SPCHSCI 712 Linguistics for Speech Language Therapy

SPCHSCI 713 Anatomy and Physiology of the Speech and Hearing Systems

SPCHSCI 722 Psychology and Education in Speech Language Therapy

**Speech Language Therapy Practica** (4 points):

SPCHSCI 714 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum I

SPCHSCI 724 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum II

**Part II****Speech Language Therapy Core Courses** (4 points):

SPCHSCI 731 Speech Language Therapy III

SPCHSCI 741 Speech Language Therapy Professional Practice

**Supporting Courses** (4 points):

SPCHSCI 732 Audiology for Speech Language Therapy

**Speech Language Therapy Practica** (4 points):

SPCHSCI 734 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum III

SPCHSCI 744 Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum IV

**Research Project** (2 points):

SPCHSCI 742 Speech Language Therapy Project

- b A student may not enrol for Part II until Part I has been completed, unless special approval is given by the Dean of Science or representative.
- c A student who has previously passed courses from another programme that are substantially similar to any one of the courses required under Regulation 4a above may, with the approval of the Dean of Science or representative, be required to take alternative graduate courses from the subject Speech Science or other approved graduate level courses.
- d Where a student is required to take additional courses as a condition of enrolment for Part I, under Regulation 1b above, those courses:
  - (i) are to be taken for Certificates of Proficiency
  - and
  - (ii) are to be passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree.

**Variations**

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 7 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General regulations – Master's degrees.

**Commencement**

- 8 These regulations come into force on 1 January 2002.

**Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt**

*The Diploma in Environmental Management is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd**

*The Diploma in Mathematics Education is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR**

*The Diploma in Operations Research is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd**

*The Diploma in Science Education is an interfaculty offering. For detailed regulations refer to the Interfaculty section of this Calendar.*

**Graduate Diploma in Science – GradDipSci**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - both
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science

- or
- (ii) attained an equivalent level of professional practical experience as approved by the Senate or its representative
- or
- (iii) completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Science, as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
- and
- b (i) passed the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject major or area of specialisation for this diploma
- or
- (ii) attained a level of competence equivalent to the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject major or area of specialisation for this diploma.
- 2 A student may, if the Senate or its representative gives approval, enrol for this diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements, provided that the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or Coordinator of Programme may require any such student to enrol for any or all of the unfulfilled prerequisite courses in addition to the normal requirements of this programme.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science but who has passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or Coordinator of Programme, enrol for this diploma. However, the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Science must be taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this diploma. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not be completed within these 12 months, enrolment for the Graduate Diploma in Science will be suspended until the requirements for the bachelor's degree are completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a coherent programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 5 A student for this diploma has to:
- either*
- a pass at least 14 points from courses chosen from the schedules for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or from the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) or from the Degree of Master of Science. The 14 points must include:
- (i) at least 8 points from courses at Stage III or above including at least 6 points in a subject major as defined in the schedule to the Degree of Bachelor of Science
- (ii) 6 points from courses above Stage I
- (iii) a 2 point project or 4 point dissertation may be included
- or*
- b pass courses above Stage I with a total value of at least 14 points from one of the areas of specialisation as set out below:
- (i) **Discrete Mathematics and Computing**
- at least 8 points from COMPSCI 320, 350, 360, MATHS 315, 320, 326, STATS 391
  - up to 6 points from appropriate courses above Stage I in Computer Science or Mathematics or Statistics
- (ii) **Electronics and Computing**
- 4 points: PHYSICS 321, 340
  - 2 points from PHYSICS 390-396
  - at least 2 points from courses above Stage II in Computer Science or Mathematics
  - up to 6 points from courses above Stage I in Computer Science and Mathematics.
- (iii) **Environmental Science**
- 8 points: ENVSCI 201, 301, 310 and either STATS 201 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
  - 6 points from the Stage III courses listed in one of the options for the BSc specialisation in Environmental Science
- (iv) **Geophysics**
- 6 points from courses at Stage III in Geology, Geophysics, Mathematics or Physics, which must include at least 4 points from GEOLOGY 361, GEOPHYS 330-333
  - 8 additional points from courses above Stage I in Geology, Geophysics, Mathematics or Physics or in any other subject if approved by the Coordinator of the Programme.

- (v) **Marine Science**
    - 8 points: ENVSCI 202, 302, 310 and either STATS 201 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
    - 6 points from the Stage III courses listed in one of the options for the BSc specialisation in Marine Science.
  - (vi) **Operations Research**
    - 2 points: STATS 255
    - 2 points at Stage II in Statistics
    - 4 points: STATS 320, 391
    - 2 points from STATS 301–310, 325–390, OPSMGT 371, 382, COMPSCI 320, MATHS 326, 328, 361, 388 or an alternative approved by the Coordinator of the Programme
    - 2 points at Stage III chosen from the Science Schedule.
- c The personal programme of each student requires the approval of the relevant Head of Department, Director of School or Coordinator of Programme.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Award of Diploma

- 7 The diploma is awarded with an endorsement in the relevant subject major or programme.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Science – PGDipSci

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - both
    - a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science
    - or
    - (ii) attained an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
    - b (i) passed the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject for this postgraduate diploma
    - or
    - (ii) attained a level of competence equivalent to the prerequisites for the courses in the selected subject for this postgraduate diploma as approved by the Senate or its representative.
- 2 A student may, if the Senate or its representative gives approval, enrol for this postgraduate diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements, provided that the relevant Head of Department or Director of School may require any such student to enrol for any or all of the prerequisite courses not already passed in addition to the normal requirements of this programme.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science but who has passed courses with a total value of at least 40 points for that degree may, with the approval of the relevant Head of Department or Director of School, enrol for this postgraduate diploma. However, the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Science must be taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this postgraduate diploma. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science not be completed within these 12 months, enrolment for the Postgraduate Diploma in Science will be suspended until the requirements for the bachelor's degree are completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a coherent programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 5 a In one of the subjects available for the Degree of Master of Science, other than Forensic Science and Wine Science or Marine Science which is not available for this diploma, a

student has to pass at least 14 points at Stage III or above with at least 10 points being from courses at master's level available for the Degree of Master of Science.

- b The personal programme of each student must have the approval of the relevant Head of Department or Director of School, who may impose requirements on the programme, such as the inclusion of a project or dissertation as listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for the subject.
- c A 2 point project or 4 point dissertation as listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for the subject may be included. A dissertation or project must be submitted within four weeks after the end of the semester in which the student is enrolled in the dissertation or project.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Award of Diploma

- 7 The postgraduate diploma is awarded with an endorsement in the relevant subject and may be awarded with Distinction at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1991 Regulations.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Forensic Science – PGDipForensic

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - both
    - a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Science or the Degree of Bachelor of Technology
    - or
    - (ii) attained an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
    - b (i) passed the prerequisites for the subject Forensic Science as specified for the Degree of Master of Science
    - or
    - (ii) attained a level of technical competence equivalent to the prerequisites for the subject Forensic Science as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment unless the Senate or its representative extends that period in exceptional circumstances.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of:
  - a 12 points from FORENSIC 701–706 as listed in the schedule to the Degree of Master of Science.
  - b 2 points from courses chosen from the Schedule to the Degree of Master of Science or advanced courses from other programmes as approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

---

## Postgraduate Diploma in Applied Psychology – PGDipAppPsych

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 3 a The programme for the diploma consists of:
  - (i) PSYCH 650 Practicum (6 points). This practicum involves supervised experience in applied settings approved by the Head of the Department of Psychology
  - (ii) courses with a total value of 8 points chosen, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Psychology, from those listed in the schedules to the Degrees of Master of Arts and of Master of Science.
- b Up to 4 points may be taken from Stage III courses listed in the schedules to the Degrees of Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Science, with the approval of the Senate or its representative.

### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1992 Regulations.
- 

## Postgraduate Diploma in Health Psychology – PGDipHealthPsych

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Health Psychology.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for the diploma consists of:
  - a HLTHPSYC 742 Professional Practice in Health Psychology (4 points).
  - b HLTHPSYC 745 Practicum in Health Psychology (10 points). This practicum involves supervised experience in applied settings approved by the Head of the Department of Psychology.

### Variations

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.
- 

## The Degree of Doctor of Clinical Psychology – DClinPsy

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:

- a completed the requirements for a Bachelor's Degree with at least Second Class Division I Honours in Psychology, or a Master's Degree in Psychology (including a thesis) with at least Second Class Division I Honours, or an equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative

and

- b passed PSYCH 708 or 709 or their equivalents

and

- c demonstrated, in the opinion of the DCLinPsy Selection Interviewing Panel, the personal qualities necessary to undertake a research-orientated, clinical programme which satisfies the eligibility requirements for registration to practice as a Psychologist.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this degree must follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years of study from the date of first registration and pass courses with a total value of at least 42 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has normally to follow a continuous programme comprising 42 points of courses listed in the Course Schedule to this degree and equivalent to three full-time years of study. The programme consists of two parts:

- a **Part I:** takes a minimum of two years and consists of partial credit towards the thesis (14 points), three clinical research projects (6 points), and coursework with supervised practicum (8 points)

and

- b **Part II:** takes a minimum of one year and consists of final credit towards the thesis (4 points), two clinical research projects (4 points) and an internship (6 points).

- 4 A student who fails any component of Part I may be required to repeat that component or be required to sit a special examination before proceeding to Part II. A student who fails any year of the programme may, at the discretion of the Dean following a recommendation from the Head of Department of Psychology, be declined permission to enrol again in that year of the programme or in the programme as a whole.

#### Coursework

- 5 Courses PSYCH 811-814 include weekly seminars, and three supervised 200-hour placements in a health setting are included as part of the courses. One placement will be in an adult health setting, one in a child and family health setting, and one in a clinical psychology sub-speciality.

#### Portfolios of Clinical Research

- 6 The five supervised clinical research projects will be original studies using a single case design or group design demonstrating appropriate use of the scientist-practitioner model (2 points each), and will be examined by two academic psychologists, and by one senior psychologist practising in the field. The reports of these projects will be assessed by the examiners of the thesis.

#### Thesis

- 7 a The thesis (18 points) is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor or supervisors appointed by the Senate or its representatives.
- b The thesis topic must be approved by the Dean of Faculty of Science on the recommendation of the Head of Department of Psychology.
- 8 A student is to submit three bound copies of the thesis embodying the results of the research, plus the reports of the five clinical research projects.
- 9 On the recommendation of the Head of Department of Psychology, the Senate is to appoint as examiners suitably qualified persons including:
  - a the supervisor or supervisors
 and
  - b one person who is a member of the staff of another university, normally within New Zealand, and who is to be the convener
 and
  - c one other person resident outside New Zealand.

*Note: The number of supervising examiners should not exceed the number of independent examiners.*

- 10 a Copies of the thesis and clinical research project reports are to be submitted to each examiner who is to report independently on the quality of the work.

- b (i) The reports of the examiners are to be submitted to the convener who is to place them before the Senate with a recommendation as to whether the thesis should be credited to the degree.
- (ii) The convener may recommend that a student be permitted to resubmit a thesis at a later date.

#### Variations

- 11 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 12 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Psychology – PGDipClinPsych

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - either
  - a completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology except for the thesis and passed, or been credited with a pass in one of: PSYCH 703, 708, or 709
  - or
  - c completed the requirements for a Honours Degree in Psychology and passed, or been credited with a pass in one of: PSYCH 703, 708 or 709.
- 2 Admission to the programme for this diploma is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Psychology.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student for this degree who has completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology which included a thesis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and two part-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.
- b Any other student for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 42 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 Each student's programme consists of three parts, each of which must be passed to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology before the next part may be taken.
- 5 A student who has completed the requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology which included a thesis or Doctor of Philosophy in Psychology has to follow a programme which consists of:
  - a **Part I:** 6 points: PSYCH 601 Introduction to Professional Practice
  - and
  - b **Part II:** 8 points: PSYCH 602 Child, Family and Adult Mental Health
  - and
  - c **Part III:** 14 points: PSYCH 603 Clinical Internship.
- 6 A student who has not completed the thesis requirements for a Master's Degree in Psychology or a Doctor of Philosophy in Psychology has to concurrently enrol in PSYCH 796 Master's Thesis in Psychology or a Doctor of Philosophy in Psychology, together with Parts I, II and III of the PGDipClinPsych degree or until such time as that thesis is completed.
- 7 A student who has not previously passed, or been credited with a pass in PSYCH 709, will be required to take PSYCH 709 before taking Part III.
- 8 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to satisfactorily carry out such practical or clinical work as the Head of the Department of Psychology may require.
- b A student has to pass both the written work and the practical or clinical work in order to pass each part of the programme. However, a student who passes the practical or clinical work of Part III but fails the final examination, may at the discretion of the Head of the Department of Psychology, be required to pass a special examination in order to meet the requirements of the programme. A student who fails any year of the programme

may, at the discretion of the Dean following a recommendation from the Head of Department of Psychology, be declined permission to enrol again in that year of the programme or in the programme as a whole.

**Variations**

- 9 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1988 Regulations.

---

**Certificate in Ocular Pharmacology – CertOcPharm**

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry
  - or
  - b gained any other equivalent qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in a particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 The requirements for this certificate are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment for the programme unless in exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative extends that period.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this certificate consists of OPTOM 680 Ocular Pharmacology.

**Variations**

- 4 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 5 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1992 Regulations.

---

## Regulations – Theology

The Degree of Bachelor of Theology – BTheol	210
The Degree of Master of Theology – MTheol	210
Graduate Diploma in Theology – GradDipTheol	212

---

## REGULATIONS – THEOLOGY

---

### The Degree of Bachelor of Theology – BTheol

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of three full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 42 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 Of the 42 points required for this degree, at least 34 points must be chosen from courses as listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for this degree; up to 8 points may be included from courses offered for other programmes.
- 3 The programme consists of:
  - a **Biblical Studies** (6 points):
    - (i) either BSTHEO 101 or 102
    - (ii) BSTHEO 141
    - (iii) a Stage II course in Biblical Studies
  - b **Christian Thought and History** (6 points):
    - (i) either CHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
    - (ii) 2 points from CHTHEO 142, 145
    - (iii) a Stage II course in Christian Thought and History
  - c **Moral and Practical Theology** (6 points):
    - (i) 2 points at Stage I
    - (ii) 2 points from another course at any level in Moral and Practical Theology
    - (iii) a Stage II course in Moral and Practical Theology
  - d at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience or Theology and New Zealand Culture from CHTHEO 103, 208, 142, 245; MPTHEO 103, 172, 173, 206, 272, 273, 274, 275
  - e a major of at least 16 points in one subject, of which at least 6 points must be above Stage II  
*Note: a major in Biblical Studies must include:*  
 either     BSTHEO 135 Introduction to Biblical Hebrew  
 or            BSTHEO 175 Introduction to New Testament Greek  
 or            BSTHEO 136 Linguistic Tools for Exegesis
  - f a minor, or second major, of at least 10 points in a second subject, of which at least 6 points must be above Stage I
  - g at least 22 points above Stage I.

#### Conjoint Degrees

- 4 Special arrangements apply where this degree is taken as a component degree of an approved conjoint combination for which the specific requirements and a complete list of the conjoint degrees available are set out in the Conjoint Degrees section of this Calendar.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1994 Regulations.

---

### The Degree of Master of Theology – MTheol

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology

- or
- (ii) gained an equivalent qualification, approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case, that is indicative of ability to undertake advanced study in Theology
- and
- b passed the specified prerequisite courses for one of the subjects listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for this degree
- and
- c achieved an average grade of B or higher in the Stage III prerequisite courses.
- 2 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Auckland Consortium for Theological Education, approve the admission of a student whose average grade in the prerequisite Stage III courses is less than B.
- 3 A student who has not completed all the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology but who has:
- a passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for that degree, including at least 22 points above Stage I
- and
- b passed all of the specified prerequisite courses listed in the Schedule of Prescriptions for this degree
- and
- c achieved an average grade of B+ or higher in the Stage II and Stage III prerequisite courses
- may enrol for this degree provided the remaining courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology are taken and passed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Theology not be completed within those 12 months, enrolment for the Degree of Master of Theology will be suspended until the requirements for the bachelor's degree are completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 4 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass courses with a total value of 28 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 5 The programme consists of one of the following subjects:
  - a **Biblical Studies**
    - (i) at least 12 points from BSTHEO 701–703, 735, 741–745
    - (ii) 2 points: BSTHEO 781 Research Methods in Biblical Studies
    - (iii) 14 points: BSTHEO 798 Thesis
  - b **Christian Thought and History**
    - (i) at least 12 points from CHTHEO 701–706, 741, 743–749
    - (ii) 2 points: CHTHEO 781 Research Methods in Christian Thought and History
    - (iii) 14 points: CHTHEO 798 Thesis
  - c **Moral and Practical Theology**
    - (i) at least 12 points from MPTHEO 701–704
    - (ii) 2 points: MPTHEO 781 Research Methods in Moral and Practical Theology
    - (iii) 14 points: MPTHEO 798 Thesis
- 6 a In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may allow a student to vary this pattern.
- b On the recommendation of the Dean of the Auckland Consortium for Theological Education, the Senate or its representative may allow a student for this degree to take courses with a total value of up to 4 points from:
  - (i) courses prescribed for another subject for this degree
  - (ii) courses for any other master's degree at this University

provided such courses are related to the student's research interests.

#### Thesis

- 7 a The required thesis is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
- b The thesis topic must be approved by the Dean of the Auckland Consortium for Theological Education on the recommendation of the relevant Head of Department prior to initial enrolment.
- c The thesis is to be submitted in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Variations**

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Honours**

- 9 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Commencement**

- 10 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

---

## **Graduate Diploma in Theology – GradDipTheol**

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for a Bachelor of Theology
  - or
  - b completed the requirements for any other degree or equivalent professional qualification approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - or
  - c obtained appropriate professional experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

**Duration and Total Points Value**

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

**Structure and Content**

- 3 The programme for this diploma normally consists of 14 points in courses listed in the Degree of Bachelor of Theology with at least 8 points at Stage III.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the relevant Heads of Departments and the Dean.

**Variations**

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000.

---

## Regulations – Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas

The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech	214
The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt	217
The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt	217
The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt	218
The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR	218
The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds	220
The Degree of Master of Science (Health Psychology) – MSc	221
Graduate Diploma in Arts Management – GradDipArtsMgt	221
Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt	222
Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd	223
Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR	224
Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd	225
Diploma in Technology Education – DipTechEd	225

# REGULATIONS – INTERFACULTY DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

## The Degree of Bachelor of Technology – BTech

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 1 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of four full-time years and pass courses with a total value of at least 56 points, unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 2 a A student must pass consecutively each of Parts I, II, III and IV for one of the programmes set out in the Bachelor of Technology Schedule.
  - b A student who has failed to pass any part in its entirety may, at the discretion of the Convener of the BTech Board of Studies, be allowed to enrol for the course or courses needed to complete that part together with a course or courses towards the next part.
  - c (i) For each subject, a student must choose elective courses as indicated in the Bachelor of Technology Schedule.
    - (ii) Each student's choice of elective courses needs to be approved by the BTech Board of Studies.

### Practical Requirements

- 3 a A student enrolled in any course that includes both laboratory work and written work must pass both in order to pass the course as a whole.
  - b A student who passes the laboratory work but fails the written work may, with the permission of the relevant Head of Department, have the result for the laboratory work carried forward when the failed course is retaken.

### Reassignment to Bachelor of Science

- 4 A student who does not complete this degree may reassign to the Degree of Bachelor of Science any courses passed for Parts I and II. Courses passed for Parts III and IV may be reassigned only with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Science.

### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 6 a This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. There are two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours are awarded in either First Division or Second Division.
  - b In order to be considered for the award of Honours a student must complete the requirements for this degree:
    - (i) within eight semesters
    - or
    - (ii) within a shorter period determined by the Convener of the BTech Board of Studies if the student has been granted credits
    - or
    - (iii) in exceptional circumstances approved by the Convener of the BTech Board of Studies, within not more than 10 semesters.

### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1993 Regulations.

## Bachelor of Technology Schedule

### Animal Technology

Students enrolled in 2000 may complete BTech (Animal Technology)  
No new students will be accepted into BTech (Animal Technology) from  
2001

### Part II

BIOSCI 201 Cellular and Molecular Biology  
BIOSCI 202 Genetics  
BIOSCI 203 Biochemistry

PATHOL 251 Mechanisms of Disease  
 PHYSIOL 210 Human Physiology: The Survival Machine  
 PHYSIOL 220 Human Physiology: The Neural Machine  
 2 points in an elective course

**Part III**

BIOSCI 350 Protein Structure and Function  
 BIOSCI 351 Molecular Genetics  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 OBSTGYN 351 Reproductive Biology  
 PHYSIOL 304 Cardiorespiratory Physiology  
 2 points from:  
 PHARMCOL 303 Applied Pharmacology and Chemotherapy  
 PHARMCOL 304 Systematic Pharmacology  
 PHARMCOL 305 Introduction to Toxicology  
 2 points at Stage III in Biological Sciences, Pharmacology or Physiology

**Part IV**

BIOSCI 716 Cellular and Molecular Biomedicine  
 BTECH 410 Project in Animal Technology  
 PAEDS 703 Biology of Mammalian Growth  
 4 points at master's level from the School of Biological Sciences or the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences

**Biomedical Science**

Students enrolled in 2000 may complete BTech (Biomedical Science).  
 No new students will be accepted into BTech (Biomedical Science) from 2001

**Part II**

BIOSCI 201 Cellular and Molecular Biology  
 BIOSCI 202 Genetics  
 BIOSCI 203 Biochemistry  
 PATHOL 251 Mechanisms of Disease  
 PHYSIOL 210 Human Physiology: The Survival Machine  
 PHYSIOL 220 Human Physiology: The Neural Machine  
 2 points in an elective course

**Part III**

BIOSCI 350 Protein Structure and Function  
 BIOSCI 357 Immunology  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
*either*  
 PHARMCOL 301 Principles of Pharmacology  
*or* PHARMCOL 302 Molecular Pharmacology  
*either*  
 PHARMCOL 303 Applied Pharmacology  
*or* PHARMCOL 304 Systematic Pharmacology  
*or* PHARMCOL 305 Introduction to Toxicology  
*either*  
 PHYSIOL 301 Molecular Physiology  
*or* PHYSIOL 302 Biophysics of Nerve and Muscle  
 PHYSIOL 303 Physiology of the Brain

**Part IV**

BTECH 420 Project in Biomedical Science  
 Further master's courses totalling 4 points from Biological Sciences or Medical Science  
 A selection of courses totalling 6 points from:  
 BIOSCI 716 Cellular and Molecular Biomedicine  
 ANATOMY 751 Advanced Biomedical Imaging  
 PHYSIOL 702 Measurement in Biomedical Science

**Biotechnology****Part I**

BIOSCI 101 Central Concepts of Biology  
 BIOSCI 107 Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes and Development  
 BIOSCI 106 Foundations of Biochemistry  
 CHEM 110 Chemistry of the Living World

PHYSICS 160 Physics for the Life Sciences  
 HUMANBIO 142 Biology for Biomedical Science: Organ Systems  
 ENGSCI 111 Mathematical Modelling 1

**Part II**

BIOSCI 201 Cellular and Molecular Biology  
 BIOSCI 202 Genetics  
 BIOSCI 203 Biochemistry  
 BIOSCI 204 Microbiology  
 BIOSCI 209 Biometry  
 CHEMMAT 211 Introduction to Process Engineering  
 2 points in an elective course

**Part III**

BIOSCI 350 Protein Structure and Function  
 BIOSCI 351 Molecular Genetics  
 BIOSCI 352 Advanced Microbiology  
 BIOSCI 357 Immunology  
*either*  
 PHYSIOL 301 Molecular Physiology  
*or* BIOSCI 353 Molecular and Cellular Regulation  
 CHEMMAT 361 Engineering Biotechnology  
 2 points in an elective course

**Part IV**

BIOSCI 740 Molecular Biotechnology  
 BIOSCI 741 Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 BTECH 430 Project in Biotechnology  
 BTECH 432 Biotechnology Research Proposal  
 CHEMMAT 463 Food Process Engineering

**Industrial Mathematics****Part I**

COMPSCI 101 Principles of Programming  
 MATHS 108 Mathematics for Business and Technology 1  
 MATHS 162 Introduction to Applied and Computational Mathematics  
 PHYSICS 120 Physics of Energy  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 STATS 107 Statistics for Science and Technology  
 INFOSYS 110 Business Computing

**Part II**

MATHS 208 Mathematics for Business and Technology 2  
 MATHS 267 Applied and Computational Mathematics  
*either*  
 STATS 201 Data Analysis  
*or* STATS 208 Data Analysis for Commerce  
 STATS 255 Introduction to Operations Research  
*either*  
 COMPSCI 105 Principles of Computer Science  
*or* INFOSYS 222 Database Systems  
 STATS 210 Statistical Theory  
 2 points in an elective course

**Part III**

MATHS 347 Advanced Calculus  
 MATHS 367 Advanced Applied and Computational Mathematics  
 MATHS 372 Industrial Mathematics Clinic  
 STATS 301 Data Management and Analysis  
 STATS 350 Total Quality Management  
 STATS 391 Optimisation in Operations Research  
 2 points in an elective course

**Part IV**

MATHS 788 Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics C  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 STATS 320 Applied Stochastic Modelling  
 BTECH 440 Project in Industrial Mathematics  
 4 points from:

MATHS 388 Special Topic in Applied Mathematics C  
 STATS 330 Advanced Statistical Modelling  
 STATS 340 Design of Experiments and Surveys  
 ENGSCI 450 Computational Techniques 3A  
 ENGSCI 451 Computational Techniques 3B  
 ENGSCI 452 Computational Techniques 3C  
 ENGSCI 460 Operations Research  
 ENGSCI 463 Scheduling  
 ENGSCI 464 Stochastic Programming

## Information Technology

### Part I

COMPSCI 101 Principles of Programming  
 MATHS 108 Mathematics for Business and Technology 1  
 MATHS 162 Introduction to Applied and Computational Mathematics  
 PHYSICS 120 Physics of Energy  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 STATS 107 Statistics for Science and Technology  
 INFOSYS 110 Business Computing

### Part II

COMPSCI 105 Principles of Computer Science  
 MATHS 208 Mathematics for Business and Technology 2  
 COMPSCI 230 Software Design and Construction  
 PHYSICS 243 Digital Electronics and Instrumentation  
 INFOSYS 220 Systems Analysis and Design  
 INFOSYS 222 Database Systems  
 INFOSYS 224 Data Communications

### Part III

COMPSCI 210 Computer Systems  
 COMPSCI 220 Algorithms and Data Structures  
 COMPSCI 314 Data Communications Fundamentals  
 COMPSCI 334 Internet Programming  
 COMPSCI 335 Distributed Objects and Algorithms  
 COMPSCI 375 Image Processing and Analysis  
 2 points at Stage III in Computer Science

### Part IV

BTECH 450 Project in Information Technology  
 At least 2 points from:  
 COMPSCI 766 Intelligent Active Vision  
 COMPSCI 773 Robotics and Real-time Control  
 COMPSCI 775 Computer Vision  
 2 points: SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 2 points at Stage III or master's level in Computer Science  
 2 points at master's level in Computer Science or Information Systems  
 2 points at master's level in Computer Science

## Materials

### Part I

CHEM 110 The Chemistry of the Living World  
 CHEM 120 The Chemistry of the Material World  
 COMPSCI 101 Principles of Programming  
 PHYSICS 111 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1A  
 PHYSICS 112 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1B  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 CHEMMAT 121 Materials Science

### Part II

CHEM 208 Functional and Smart Materials  
 CHEMMAT 221 Materials  
 ENGSCI 211 Mathematical Modelling 2  
 4 points from:  
 CHEM 201 Molecules Energy and Radiation in Chemistry  
 CHEM 202 Inorganic Compounds: Structure, Bonding and Reactivity  
 CHEM 203 Molecules for Life: Synthesis and Reactivity  
 CHEM 204 Measurement and Analysis in Chemistry

2 points from:

PHYSICS 230 Materials and Waves  
 CHEMMAT 321 Materials Performance  
 CHEMMAT 231 Process Design 1

2 points in an elective course

### Part III

CHEM 308 Advanced Materials Chemistry  
 OPSMGT 255 Introduction to Operations Management  
 STATS 255 Introduction to Operations Research  
 CHEMMAT 211 Introduction to Process Engineering  
 2 points from:

CHEM 301 Advanced Physical Chemistry  
 CHEM 302 Advanced Inorganic Chemistry  
 CHEM 303 Advanced Organic Chemistry  
 CHEM 304 Advanced Analytical Chemistry

2 points from:

PHYSICS 354 Condensed Matter Physics  
 CHEMMAT 424 Electronic Materials and their Applications

2 points in an elective course

### Part IV

CHEM 710 Physical Chemistry of Materials  
 CHEM 780 Materials: Synthesis, Properties and Characterisation  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology  
 BTECH 460 Project in Materials  
 CHEMMAT 422 Non-metallic Materials  
 CHEMMAT 423 Materials Engineering

## Optoelectronics

### Part I

PHYSICS 111 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1A  
 PHYSICS 112 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1B  
 PHYSICS 120 Physics of Energy  
 PHYSICS 130 Properties of Matter  
 PHYSICS 150 Physics of Technology  
 CHEM 120 Inorganic and Physical Chemistry  
 COMPSCI 101 Introduction to Programming

### Part II

PHYSICS 211 Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences II  
 PHYSICS 219 Computer Electronics  
 PHYSICS 220 Electromagnetism and Thermal Physics  
 PHYSICS 240 Electronics and Optics  
 PHYSICS 250 Quantum Physics  
 CHEMMAT 201 Electrical Materials and Devices  
 ELECTENG 207 Microelectronic Circuits  
 2 points from a further complementary course

### Part III

PHYSICS 326 Electronics and Optoelectronics  
 PHYSICS 340 Circuits, Systems and Signals  
 PHYSICS 390 or 391 Experimental Physics 1 or 2  
 PHYSICS 395 or 396 Experimental Physics 3 or 4  
 ELECTENG 303 Systems and Control  
 ELECTENG 305 Electronic Devices and Technology  
 ELECTENG 306 Transmission Lines and Systems  
 SCIGEN 201 Managing Science and Technology

### Part IV

PHYSICS 726 Optoelectronics and Laser Physics  
 PHYSICS 727 Optoelectronics and Optical Communications  
 BTECH 470 Project in Optoelectronics  
 ELECTENG 412 Communication Systems  
 2 points from:  
 ELECTENG 421 Radio Systems  
 ELECTENG 203 and 206 Software Design and Engineering Design  
 PHYSICS 325 Electromagnetism and Optics  
 PHYSICS 350 Quantum Mechanics and Atomic Physics  
 2 points from a further complementary course

---

## The Degree of Master of Educational Management – MEdMgt

The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for any university bachelor's degree or university diploma, which has been approved by the Senate or its representative  
*and*
  - b completed the requirements for a professional qualification in teaching, counselling, nursing, social work or other profession approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
*and*
  - c had at least three years' practical experience in that or a related profession.
- 2 Any student who has completed the requirements for the Degree of Master of Education (Educational Administration) at the University of Auckland may not enrol for or reassign courses to this degree.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 a A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of two full-time years and pass each of the courses required under Regulation 4 with a total value of 28 points.
- b This degree is to be completed in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of courses with a total value of 28 points as listed below:
  - a **Education** (16 points):  
8 points: EDPROF 771 and 772  
8 points from  
*either*  
EDPROF 730 and 731  
*or*  
EDPROF 770 and 4 points from master's level courses listed for the subject Education  
*and*
  - b **Business and Economics** (8 points):  
(i) 4 points: BUSADMIN 701 and BUSADMIN 713  
(ii) at least 4 points from: BUSADMIN 712, MAORIDEV 612, MANAGEMENT 724 and HRMGMT 604  
*and*
  - c 4 points from  
*either*  
EDPROF 790 Dissertation  
*or*  
4 points from Education or Business and Economics masters courses as approved by the Head of the School of Education.
- 5 A student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics and the Head of the School of Education.

### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Honours

- 7 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

---

## The Degree of Master of Engineering Management – MEMgt

For detailed regulations refer to the Faculty of Engineering section of this Calendar.

---

## The Degree of Master of Health Management – MHealthMgt

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for any degree or diploma of a university which has been approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - b completed the requirements for the Graduate Diploma in Business (Health Management) with an average grade of at least B+
  - c had at least three years' practical experience in the health sector.
- 2 Admission is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree on a full-time basis has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and achieve a pass in 14 points.

### Structure and Content

- 4 a The student must follow a programme consisting of:
 

*either*

**Option 1**  
8 points: MANAGEMT 724, 725, COMHLTH 705, 724  
4 points from BUSADMIN 705, 724, 726, 730, 732, 733  
2 points from COMHLTH 708, 713, 720

*or*

**Option 2**  
8 points: MANAGEMT 724, 725, COMHLTH 705, 724  
2 points: MANAGEMT 704  
4 points: HLTHMGT 790
- b A student who wishes to include a dissertation in the programme must, before enrolment for the dissertation, obtain the approval of the Director, Master of Health Management.
  - (i) The dissertation, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.
  - (ii) The dissertation topic must be approved by the Director, Master of Health Management prior to enrolling in HLTHMGT 790.
- c
  - (i) A student who has to complete 14 points for this degree must normally submit the dissertation in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.
  - (ii) In exceptional circumstances, however, the Senate or its representative may extend the periods indicated in c(i).
- 5 A student enrolled for this degree who has been credited for another degree or diploma with any courses the same as or similar to those listed above for this degree is to substitute for each course so credited an alternative course or courses approved by the Course Coordinator.
- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Business and Economics and the Dean of the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1997 Regulations.

---

## The Degree of Master of Operations Research – MOR

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:

- a (i) the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Commerce, Bachelor of Commerce (Honours), Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science, Bachelor of Science or Bachelor of Science (Honours)
  - or
  - (ii) an equivalent degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - and
  - b passed at least 8 points with an average grade of B- or higher
    - (i) at Stage III or above in subjects approved by the Senate or its representative
    - or
    - (ii) in Part III or above of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science
  - and
  - c (i) passed either STATS 320 and 391 or ENGSCI 391 and 460 or equivalent courses with an average grade of B- or higher
  - or
  - (ii) passed OPSRES 385 and 392 with an average grade of B or higher.
- 2 A student who has passed all the prerequisite courses specified in Regulation 1, but has not completed all the requirements for:
- a the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Commerce or Bachelor of Science but has passed courses with a total value of at least 38 points for one of these degrees,
  - or
  - b the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science but has passed courses with a total value of at least 52 points for that degree,

may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, enrol for this degree. However, the remaining courses for the bachelor's degree must be completed within 12 months of initial enrolment for this degree. Should the requirements for the bachelor's degree not be completed within this time, the Degree of Master of Operations Research will be suspended until they have been completed.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of:
- either
  - a the equivalent of two years full-time or three years part-time, and pass courses with a total value of at least 28 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Commerce or Bachelor of Science
  - or
  - b the equivalent of 18 months full-time or 30 months part-time, and pass courses with a total value of at least 21 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Engineering which includes at least 6 points from ENGSCI 460-464
  - or
  - c the equivalent of one year full-time or two years part-time, and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points, if entering with a Degree of Bachelor of Commerce (Honours) or a Bachelor of Science (Honours) which includes at least 10 points from STATS 720-725, INFOSYS 750-751, OPSMGT 752-783, ENGSCI 460-464, 720, 751-795.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme consists of:
- a ENGGEN 798 Master of Operations Research Thesis (14 points)
  - or
  - ENGGEN 760 Project in Operations Research (8 points)
  - and
  - b courses selected from the Regulations to the Degrees of Master of Commerce, Master of Engineering and Master of Science as approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - (i) if a student has to complete 21 points, up to 2 points
  - or
  - (ii) if a student has to complete 28 points, up to 4 points

may be taken from courses at Stage III or above as listed in the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Commerce and Bachelor of Science or at Part IV in the Regulations to the Bachelor of Engineering in Engineering Science.

- 5 Each student's programme needs to be approved by the Senate or its representative.

#### Thesis

- 6 a A thesis, when included in the programme, is to be carried out under the guidance of a supervisor appointed by the Senate or its representative.

- b The thesis topic has to be approved by the Senate or its representative before enrolment for the thesis.
- c Before enrolment for the thesis, a student who has to complete 28 points and who wishes to include a thesis in the programme, must achieve an average grade of at least B- in the taught courses' component of this degree.

#### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Honours

- 8 This degree may be awarded with Honours where a student's overall grade is sufficiently high. Honours will be awarded in accordance with the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1997.

---

## The Degree of Master of Professional Studies – MProfStuds

*The regulations for this degree are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have completed the requirements for:
  - a a four-year bachelor's degree
  - or
  - b a bachelor's (honours) degree
  - or
  - c a bachelor's degree and
    - (i) a professional qualification equivalent to one year's advanced study
    - or
    - (ii) at least three years' professional experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative

and

  - d completed any prerequisites specified for the programme in which they wish to enrol.
- 2 Admission to this programme is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this degree has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one year and complete 14 points as specified.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 A student enrolled for this programme must pass at least 14 points from one of the following programmes:
  - a **International Relations and Human Rights**
    - (i) Core courses (6 points):
      - 4 points: POLITICS 750 International Relations and Human Rights
      - 2 points: POLITICS 755 Research Essay
    - (ii) 8 points from
      - PHIL 726 Ethics A
      - PHIL 727 Ethics B
      - PHIL 728 Political Philosophy A
      - PHIL 729 Political Philosophy B
      - PHIL 730 Philosophy of Law
      - POLITICS 724 Identity Politics (4 points)
      - POLITICS 725 States in the Global Political Economy (4 points)
      - POLITICS 728 Security, Diplomacy and Conflict Resolution (4 points)
      - POLITICS 730 China in World Politics (4 points)
      - POLITICS 751 Politics, Statecraft, and Regional Order (4 points)
      - POLITICS 752 Foreign and Defence Policies of Major Powers (4 points)
      - COMLAW 707 Transnational Litigation and Arbitration (2 points)
      - COMLAW 713 The Regulation of International Trade (4 points)
      - COMLAW 728 Travel and Immigration Law (4 points)
      - ECON 743 Economic Integration in the Pacific Rim (2 points)

ECON 744 Emerging Economies of East Asia (2 points)  
 INTBUS 701 International Business (2 points)  
 INTBUS 702 International Management (2 points)  
 INTBUS 706 Political Economy of International Business (2 points)  
 LAW 720 Global Legal Issues (4 points)  
 LAW 722 Human Rights (4 points)  
 LAW 724 Indigenous Sovereignty and Self-determination (4 points)  
 LAW 729 International Law (4 points)  
 ENVLAW 708 International Environmental Law (4 points)

(iii) Other courses approved by the Coordinator of International Relations and Human Rights may be substituted for POLITICS 750 if they have been passed prior to enrolment for this degree.

**b Language Teaching**

(i) Core courses (10 points):

LANGTCHG 704 Language Assessment (2 points)  
 LANGTCHG 720 Language Analysis for Teachers (2 points)  
 LANGTCHG 721 Discourse Analysis for Teachers (2 points)  
 LANGTCHG 724 Second Language Teaching Methodology (2 points)  
 2 points from  
 LANGTCHG 722 Learner Language

or

LANGTCHG 723 Theories of Language Learning

(ii) Either LANGTCHG 790 Dissertation (4 points), or LANGTCHG 730 Applied Linguistics and Language Pedagogy and 2 points from elective courses chosen with the approval of the Head of the Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics from master's level courses in Language Teaching, or master's level courses from a language subject or Linguistics or other relevant subject.

(iii) Other courses approved by the Head of the Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics may be substituted for any core courses which have been passed prior to enrolment for this degree.

(iv) With the prior approval of the Head of the Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics, and provided that the points so obtained do not exceed 50% of the total points for the degree, a student may elect to study for any core and elective courses except LANGTCHG 730 by taking equivalent courses at Victoria University of Wellington.

**c Translation**

(i) 4 points from COMPLIT 703, TRANSLAT 702, 703

(ii) 4 points from master's level courses in Language Acquisition, Translation Practice or any other master's level language courses approved by the Programme and Centre Director

(iii) 2 points from TRANSLAT 704, 710

(iv) 4 points: Dissertation

**Honours**

5 This degree may be awarded with Honours as specified in the General Regulations – Master's Degrees.

**Variations**

6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2001.

## The Degree of Master of Science (Health Psychology) – MSc

*Health Psychology is an interfaculty subject for the degree of Master of Science. For detailed regulations refer to the Faculty of Science section of this Calendar.*

## Graduate Diploma in Arts Management – GradDipArtsMgt

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

**Admission**

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
  - a completed the requirements for any bachelor's degree, and have had at least two years' work experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative
  - or
  - b had not less than five years' work experience deemed relevant to this programme by the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of:
  - a **Part I** (6 points):
    - BUSADMIN 702 Accounting for Decision-makers
    - BUSADMIN 712 Leadership and Organisation
    - or
    - BUSADMIN 713 Managing People
    - MARKET 713 Marketing for Managers
  - b **Part II** (6 points):
    - ARTSMGT 702 The Arts Milieu
    - ARTSMGT 703 The Economics of the Arts
    - ARTSMGT 704 Special Issues in Arts Administration
  - c **Part III** (2 points):
    - ARTSMGT 705 Special Project
- 4 To be eligible for the award of the diploma a student must:
  - a complete practical work to the satisfaction of the Senate or its representative, and attend such workshops as required
  - and
  - b pass, or be credited with a pass in, each of the courses specified in Regulation 3.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## Diploma in Environmental Management – DipEnvirMgt

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have:
  - either
    - a (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's degree
    - or
    - (ii) completed the requirements for a professional qualification in Science, Engineering, Planning or other discipline, approved by the Senate or its representative
  - and
  - b had at least two years' employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - or
  - c had at least five years' employment experience deemed relevant by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 36 months of the initial enrolment unless, in exceptional circumstances, the Senate or its representative extends that period.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of three parts:
  - a **Part I:**

8 points: ENVMGT 601, 602, 603, 604

- b **Part II:**  
4 points from ENVMGT 662, 665  
or any approved master's level courses
- c **Part III:**  
2 points: ENVMGT 690 Research Project

#### Practical Requirements

- 4 A student for this diploma has to carry out satisfactorily such practical or laboratory work as the Senate or its representative may require.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1995 Regulations.

## Diploma in Mathematics Education – DipMathsEd

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a (i) have completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case  
or  
(ii) have completed an appropriate professional qualification in teaching approved by the Senate or its representative as equivalent in any particular case  
or  
(iii) have attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
  - and
  - b (i) be currently teaching  
or  
(ii) have had three years of teaching experience
  - and
  - c attained a level of competence approved by the Senate or its representative as being sufficient to enable the student to perform satisfactorily in the programme.

*Note: An interview will normally be required under Regulation 1c.*

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 Each student's programme consists of Part I and Part II. A student must pass at least 8 points of Part I before taking Part II.
- 4 **Part I** consists of courses with a total value of 10 points, chosen with the approval of the Senate or its representative, as follows:
  - a at least 2 points in courses related to classroom practice as approved by the Head of the School of Education
  - b at least 2 points in courses taught by the Department of Mathematics or Statistics and approved by the Head of the Mathematics Education Unit
  - c at least 2 points in courses taught by the School of Education and approved by the Head of the School of Education
  - d up to 4 points in any courses as permitted under Regulations 4a, b and c or other courses as approved by the Head of the School of Education.
- 5 **Part II** (4 points):
  - a EDPROF 693 Investigation in Mathematics Education  
or
  - b EDPROF 692 Research Project and 2 further points chosen from those listed in Part I.

- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Head of the School of Education.

#### Investigation in Mathematics Education

- 7 a The Investigation must relate directly to some aspect of the practice of Mathematics Education.
- b The topic is to be approved by the Senate or its representative.
- c The Investigation is to be supervised by a member of the academic staff of the University of Auckland approved by the Senate or its representative.
- d The written report resulting from the Investigation is to be submitted within 12 months of its commencement, provided that this period may be extended by the Senate or its representative in exceptional circumstances.

#### Variations

- 8 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 9 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1999 and replaced the 1996 Regulations.

## Diploma in Operations Research – DipOR

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to have:
- a (i) completed the requirements for any bachelor's degree  
or  
(ii) attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the operations research profession as approved by the Senate or its representative
- and
- b attained a level of technical competence in Operations Research equivalent to at least Parts I and II of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering or Stage II Commerce or Science courses, to the approval of the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 a A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a coherent programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.
- b The requirements for this diploma are to be completed within 24 months of the initial enrolment, unless the Senate or its representative extends that period.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme for this diploma consists of the following:
- a at least 6 points from elective courses listed in the Regulations to the Degrees of Master of Engineering, Master of Science and Master of Commerce, excluding any project or thesis courses.
- b up to 8 points from:
- (i) ENGGEN 751 Project X
- (ii) ENGGEN 611 Case Studies in Operations Research
- (iii) courses in Operations Research listed for Parts III and IV listed in the Regulations to the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering or at Stage III in the Regulations to the Degrees of Bachelor of Science or Bachelor of Commerce, other than project work.
- 4 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Board of Studies or its representative.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

## Diploma in Science Education – DipSciEd

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
    - a (i) have completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case
 

or

    - (ii) have completed a professional qualification in teaching approved by the Senate or its representative as equivalent in any particular case
 

or

    - (iii) have attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

and

  - b (i) be currently teaching
 

or

  - (ii) have had three years' teaching experience
- and
- c have attained a level of competence approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case as being sufficient to enable the student to perform satisfactorily in the programme.

### Duration and Total Points Value

- 2 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of 14 points unless credit is granted under the Admission Regulations and/or the Credit Regulations.

### Structure and Content

- 3 The programme consists of Part I and Part II. A student must pass at least 8 points from Part I before taking Part II.
- 4 **Part I** consists of courses with a total value of 12 points chosen with the approval of the Senate or its representative, as follows:
  - a 4 points from CHEM 110, 120, BIOSCI 101, 104, GEOLOGY 110, 111, PHYSICS 102, 120 and other courses listed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with the approval of the relevant Heads of Departments
  - b 4 points from EDUC 382, 385, EDPROF 670 or other courses in Education with the approval of the Head of the School of Education
  - c 4 points from other courses in Science or Education as approved by the Head of the School of Education.
- 5 **Part II** consists of EDPROF 694 Investigation in Science Education (2 points).
  - a The investigation must relate directly to some aspect of the practice of Science Education.
  - b The topic must be approved by the Senate or its representative.
  - c The written report resulting from the investigation is to be submitted within 12 months of its commencement provided that this period may be extended by the Senate or its representative in exceptional circumstances.
- 6 Each student's personal programme is to be approved by the Head of the School of Education.

### Variations

- 7 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

### Commencement

- 8 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the 1992 Regulations.

---

## Diploma in Technology Education – DipTechEd

*The regulations for this diploma are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme, a student needs to:
  - a (i) have completed the requirements for a bachelor's degree approved by the Senate or

its representative in any particular case

or

- (ii) have received an appropriate professional qualification in teaching as approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case

or

- (iii) have previously attained a high level of practical experience in the teaching profession as approved by the Senate or its representative

and

- b (i) be currently teaching

or

- (ii) have had three years of teaching experience and have the classroom teaching component of this diploma formally arranged.

*Note: An interview will normally be required under Regulation 1a(iii).*

- 2 Admission to the programme for this diploma is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### Duration and Total Points Value

- 3 A student enrolled for this diploma has to follow a programme of the equivalent of one full-time year and pass courses with a total value of at least 14 points.

#### Structure and Content

- 4 The programme for this diploma consists of:

- a **Core courses** (10 points):

EDUC 385 Issues in Science, Technology, Society and Environmental Education  
 ENGGEN 621 Technology and Design  
 EDPROF 672 Technology and Society  
 EDPROF 673 Research Methodology and Project in Technology Education  
 EDPROF 674 Technology and the School Curriculum

- b **Elective courses:**

at least 4 points from:

EDUC 384 Information Technology in Education  
 EDPROF 675 Investigation in Technology Education  
 ENGGEN 401 Professional and Community Issues  
 ENGGEN 102 Engineering Design 1  
 RESOURCE 140 Environmental Principles

and other courses from the School of Education and Faculty of Engineering with the approval of the relevant Head of Department.

- 5 The programme for each student requires the specific approval of the Senate or its representative.

#### Variations

- 6 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 7 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996.

## Regulations – Conjoint Degrees

	<b>Regulations</b>	228
<b>Schedule of Requirements for Conjoint Degrees Combinations</b>		229
	BA/BCom	229
	BA/BEd(Tchg)	229
	BA/BE	230
	BA/BFA	230
	BA/BHSc	230
	BA/BMus	231
	BA/BProp	231
	BA/BSc	231
	BA/BTheol	231
	BA/LLB	232
	BA/LLB(Hons)	232
	BCom/BEd(Tchg)	232
	BCom/BE	233
	BCom/BHSc	233
	BCom/BMus	233
	BCom/BProp	234
	BCom/BSc	234
	BCom/LLB	235
	BCom/LLB(Hons)	235
	BEd(Tchg)/BSc	235
	BE/BProp	236
	BE/BSc	236
	BHSc/LLB	236
	BMus/BSc	236
	BMus/BTheol	237
	BProp/BSc	237
	BProp/LLB	237
	BProp/LLB(Hons)	237
	BSc/BTheol	238
	BSc/LLB	238
	BSc/LLB(Hons)	238

---

## REGULATIONS – CONJOINT DEGREES

---

### Conjoint Degrees

*The regulations for these conjoint degrees combinations are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

- 1 A student whose academic record is of a sufficiently high standard may, with the permission of the Senate or its representative, be admitted to conjoint enrolment in any of the following combinations of degrees:
 

BA/BCom	BCom/BSc
BA/BE	BCom/LLB
BA/BFA	BCom/LLB(Hons)
BA/BHSc	BE(Tchg)/BSc
BA/BMus	BE/BProp
BA/BProp	BE/BSc
BA/BSc	BHSc/LLB
BA/BTheol	BMus/BSc
BA/LLB	BMus/BTheol
BA/LLB(Hons)	BProp/BSc
BCom/BE(Tchg)	BProp/LLB
BCom/BE	BProp/LLB(Hons)
BCom/BHSc	BSc/BTheol
BCom/BMus	BSc/LLB
BCom/BProp	BSc/LLB(Hons)
- 2 Except as otherwise specified in these regulations, each student's programme is to be governed by the regulations for each of the component degrees.
- 3 Only when all the requirements for both component degrees have been satisfied may the two degrees be conferred upon the student.

#### Admission

- 4 Admission to a conjoint degrees combination may be at initial enrolment, or after the student has passed or been credited with not more than 32 points for either component degree, but the student must not have graduated in either of the component degrees.
- 5 a A student for a conjoint degrees combination must gain admission to each of the component degrees  
and  
b achieve a standard equivalent to a Grade Point Equivalent (GPE) of at least 3.7, except for the Bachelor of Engineering which requires a GPE of at least 5.5, in the last year of full-time study.

#### Continuation

- 6 In order to continue in a conjoint degrees combination, a student needs to achieve a Grade Point Average (GPA) of at least 3.5 each year, except for the Bachelor of Engineering which requires a GPA of 4.0 each year.

#### Approval

- 7 As a condition of approval, the Senate or its representative may require that a student include in a conjoint programme:
  - (i) a specified major subject or specialisation
  - (ii) specified elective courses.

#### Duration and Total Points Requirements

- 8 The duration of a conjoint degrees combination is determined by the sum of the points required for each of the component degrees as set out in the Schedule of Requirements in these regulations.

#### Suspension

- 9 A student may in any year totally suspend study for both component degrees of a conjoint degrees combination.

**Additional Component Degrees/Diplomas**

- 10 a If a student has satisfied the requirements of one (but not both) of the component degrees and would be eligible to have that degree conferred, the relevant Dean may approve the suspension of enrolment for the conjoint degree to allow the student to enrol for a relevant honours or master's degree or diploma. In that case the total number of points passed must satisfy the regulations specified for that programme.
- b With the approval of the relevant deans, a student who suspends conjoint study to pursue a graduate programme may complete the conjoint degrees combination provided they have not graduated with the completed component degree in the meantime.

**Graduation**

- 11 A student must graduate in all components of the conjoint degrees combination in one or more parts of the same ceremony.

*Note: Graduation in one component of the conjoint degrees combination constitutes a discontinuation of the conjoint degrees.*

**Variations**

- 12 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

**Commencement**

- 13 These regulations came into force on 1 January 2000 and replaced the 1999 Regulations.

---

## Schedule of Requirements for Conjoint Degrees Combinations

The following are the specific requirements for conjoint degrees combinations:

---

**BA/BCom**

- 14 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BCom combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II. This subject is not to be the same as the major in the BCom.
- b The BCom component of the conjoint BA/BCom combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from MATHS 108, INFOSYS 110, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.

**BA/BEd(Tchg)**

- 15 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BEd(Tchg) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II
  - (iii) at least 8 points in one other subject, including at least 4 points above Stage I.
- b The BA component of the conjoint BA/BEd(Tchg) combination is not to include more than 4 points from the subject Education.
- c The BEd(Tchg) component of the conjoint BA/BEd(Tchg) combination consists of at least 32 points in either Primary Specialisation or Secondary Specialisation.

**Primary Specialisation**

- (i) at least 12 points in Education, including:

- 4 points: EDUC 206 and 224
  - 2 points: EDUC 383
  - 4 points from other Stage III courses in Education
- (ii) 20 points in Teaching Studies and Professional Practice, as follows:
- 14 points:
    - EDCURR 210 Languages
    - EDCURR 211 Mathematics
    - EDCURR 212 Science
    - EDCURR 213 Technology
    - EDCURR 214 Social Science
    - EDCURR 215 Health and Physical Wellbeing
    - EDCURR 216 The Arts
  - 6 points Professional Practice:
    - EDCURR 101 Professional Practice I
    - EDCURR 201 Professional Practice II
    - EDCURR 301 Professional Practice III
- (iii) at least 20 points above Stage I.

#### Secondary Specialisation

- (i) at least 16 points in Education, including
- 6 points: EDUC 101, 102 and 103
  - 4 points: EDUC 206 and 224
  - 4 points: EDUC 351 and 383
  - at least 2 points from other Stage III courses in Education
- (ii) at least 16 points in Teaching Studies and Professional Practice, including:
- at least 8 points from EDCURR 601-665 from Schedule A of Diploma in Teaching (Secondary)
  - 8 points Professional Practice:
    - EDCURR 101 Professional Practice I
    - EDCURR 201 Professional Practice II
    - EDCURR 301 Professional Practice III
- (iii) at least 20 points above Stage I.

---

#### BA/BE

- 16 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BE combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The BE component of the conjoint BA/BE combination consists of at least 48 points in a subject taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the programme for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.

---

#### BA/BFA

- 17 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BFA combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in courses from Art History
  - (ii) at least 4 points in each of two other subjects
  - (iii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iv) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b At least 44 points in Fine Arts courses from the schedule to the BFA Regulations, as follows:
- (i) 10 points: FINEARTS 100 Studio 1
  - (ii) 10 points: FINEARTS 200 Studio 2
  - (iii) 10 points: FINEARTS 300 Studio 3
  - (iv) 14 points: FINEARTS 400 Studio 4A.
- c Each Studio course for the Fine Arts component must normally be completed before enrolment in the following part.

---

#### BA/BHSc

- 18 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BHSc consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:

- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
- (ii) 4 points: STATS 102, and PHIL 102 or PSYCHIAT 102
- (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including at least 6 points above Stage II
- (iv) at least 4 points in each of two subjects.

- b The BHSc component of the conjoint BA/BHSc consists of at least 32 points, and is to include:
- (i) 6 points: BIOSCI 107 or HUMANBIO 142; HUMANBIO 111, 122
  - (ii) 8 points: COMHLTH 201, 203, MPHEALTH 201, PATHOL 251
  - (iii) 18 points from approved courses listed in BHSc Regulations.

**BA/BMus**

- 19 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of three subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The BA component of the conjoint BA/BMus combination is not to include more than 4 points from the subject Music.
- c The BMus component of the conjoint BA/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations and is to include:
- (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 141, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241–244, 246, 247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.

**BA/BProp**

- 20 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, 111
  - (ii) at least 4 points from 610.171 or COMLAW 101; 600.171, STATS 108
  - (iii) at least 20 points above Stage I, taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations
  - (iv) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II, taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations.
- b The BProp component of the conjoint BA/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) PROPERTY 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 12 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp, to include PROPERTY 371 or 372. If an appropriate Statistics course is completed for the BA component, then an additional 2 points from Part III of the BProp is to be substituted for STATS 108.

**BA/BSc**

- 21 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BA/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc Regulations of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule. The subject major is not to be the same as the one forming the major in the BA. For the purpose of this regulation, Applied Mathematics, Mathematics and Statistics are to be considered as one subject.

**BA/BTheol**

- 22 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.

- b The BTheol component of the conjoint BA/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BTheol Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 2 points from BSTHEO 101, 102
  - (ii) BSTHEO 141
  - (iii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies
  - (iv) CHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
  - (v) at least 2 points from CHTHEO 142, 145
  - (vi) at least 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History
  - (vii) 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (viii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (ix) at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience, or Theology and New Zealand Culture
  - (x) at least 16 points in one subject, including at least 6 points above Stage II
  - (xi) at least 18 points above Stage I.

**BA/LLB**

- 23 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BA/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses taken from the schedule to the LLB Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV.

**BA/LLB(Hons)**

- 24 a The BA component of the conjoint BA/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BA Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 4 points in each of two subjects
  - (ii) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (iii) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BA/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses taken from the schedules to the LLB and LLB(Hons) Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341-399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation.

**BCom/BEd(Tchg)**

- 25 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BEd(Tchg) in the Secondary Specialisation combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 10 points: ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (ii) at least 4 points from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The BEd(Tchg) component of the conjoint BCom/BEd(Tchg) combination consists of at least 32 points in Secondary Specialisation, and is to include:
- (i) at least 16 points in Education, including:
    - (a) 6 points: EDUC 101, 102, 103

- (b) 4 points: EDUC 206, 224
- (c) 4 points: EDUC 383, 351
- (d) at least 2 points from other Stage III courses in Education
- (ii) at least 16 points in Teaching Studies and Professional Practice, including:
  - (a) at least 8 points from EDCURR 601–665 from Schedule A of Diploma in Teaching (Secondary)
  - (b) 8 points in Professional Practice:
    - EDCURR 101 Professional Practice I
    - EDCURR 201 Professional Practice II
    - EDCURR 301 Professional Practice III
    - EDPROF 625 Classroom Teaching
- (iii) at least 20 points above Stage I.

**BCom/BE**

- 26 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BE combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, INFOSYS 110, MGMT 101, STATS 108
  - (ii) a student may substitute one or more courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iii) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom. This subject is not to be the same as the major in the BE.
- b The BE component of the conjoint BCom/BE combination consists of at least 48 points in a programme taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the programme for the BE except for:
  - (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.

**BCom/BHSc**

- 27 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BHSc consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) 4 points selected from STATS 102 or 108, and INFOSYS 110
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The BHSc component of the conjoint BCom/BHSc consists of at least 32 points and is to include:
  - (i) 8 points: BIOSCI 107 or HUMANBIO 142; HUMANBIO 111, 122, PSYCHIAT 102
  - (ii) 8 points: COMHLTH 201, 203, MPHEALTH 201, PATHOL 251
  - (iii) 16 points from the Health Systems and Health Information and Management options listed in the BHSc Regulations.

**BCom/BMus**

- 28 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
  - (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I

- (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
  - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available to the BCom.
- b The BMus component of the conjoint BCom/BMus combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 141, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241-244, 246-247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.

**BCom/BProp**

- 29 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The BProp component of the conjoint BCom/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) PROPERTY 111 and 141
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) all of Part III of the programme for the BProp.

**BCom/BSc**

- 30 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BCom/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc Regulations of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule. The subject major is not to be the same as the one forming the major in the BCom
  - (iii) at least 2 points from courses in a majoring subject, whose courses are not listed in the schedule to the BCom.

**BCom/LLB**

- 31 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses including not more than 2 points in Commercial Law, from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BCom/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses taken from the schedule to the LLB Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV.

**BCom/LLB(Hons)**

- 32 a The BCom component of the conjoint BCom/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BCom Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) 4 points selected from INFOSYS 110, MATHS 108, STATS 108
  - (ii) ACCTG 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101
  - (iii) a student may substitute one or more other courses for one or more of the above courses with the permission of the Senate or its representative
  - (iv) at least 16 points above Stage I:
    - (a) selected from courses in Accounting, Economics, Finance, Information Systems, International Business, Management and Employment Relations, Marketing, Operations Management and Operations Research, provided that students may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, substitute courses including not more than 2 points in Commercial Law, from other subjects if required to complete a prescribed major
    - (b) including at least 6 points above Stage II in one of the majors available for the BCom.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BCom/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses taken from the schedules to the LLB and LLB(Hons) Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341-399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation.

**BEd(Tchg)/BSc**

- 33 a The BEd(Tchg) component of the conjoint BEd(Tchg)/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in Secondary Specialisation.

**Secondary Specialisation**

- (i) at least 16 points in Education, including:
  - 6 points: EDUC 101, 102, 103
  - 4 points: EDUC 206, 224
  - 4 points: EDUC 351, 383
  - at least 2 points from other Stage III courses in Education
- (ii) at least 16 points in Teaching Studies and Professional Practice, including:
  - at least 8 points from EDCURR 601-620 from Schedule A of Diploma in Teaching (Secondary)
  - 8 points Professional Practice:
    - EDCURR 101 Professional Practice I
    - EDCURR 201 Professional Practice II

EDCURR 301 Professional Practice III  
EDPROF 625 Classroom Teaching

- b The BSc component of the conjoint BEd(Tchg)/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc Regulations of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I, including at least 6 points from the subjects Biological Sciences, Chemistry, Geography, Applied Mathematics, Mathematics, Physics, Sport and Exercise Science, Statistics
  - (ii) at least 6 points at Stage III in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule.

**BE/BProp**

- 34 a The BE component of the conjoint BE/BProp combination consists of at least 48 points in a subject taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the programme for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.
- b The BProp component of the conjoint BE/BProp combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp, to include PROPERTY 371 or 372. If an appropriate Statistics course is completed for the BE component, then an additional 2 points from Part III of the BProp is to be substituted for STATS 108.

**BE/BSc**

- 35 a The BE component of the conjoint BE/BSc combination consists of at least 48 points in a subject taken from the schedule to the BE Regulations, and is to include all the courses of the programme for the BE except for:
- (i) an elective course (2 points) from Part I
  - (ii) courses worth 6 points approved by the relevant Head of Department.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BE/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule.

**BHSc/LLB**

- 36 a The BHSc component of the conjoint BHSc/LLB consists of at least 32 points and is to include:
- (i) 10 points: BIOSCI 107 or HUMANBIO 142; HUMANBIO 111, 122, PSYCHIAT 102, STATS 102
  - (ii) 8 points: COMHLTH 201, 203, MPHEALTH 201, PATHOL 251
  - (iii) 14 points from approved courses listed in the BHSc Regulations.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BHSc/LLB consists of at least 44 points in Law courses taken from the schedule to the LLB Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV.

**BMus/BSc**

- 37 a The BMus component of the conjoint BMus/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 141, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241-244, 246, 247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BMus/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc

Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:

- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
- (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule.

---

**BMus/BTheol**

- 38 a The BMus component of the conjoint BMus/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BMus Regulations and is to include:
- (i) MUSIC 102, 103, 141, 201, 202, 203
  - (ii) at least 4 points from MUSIC 241-244, 246, 247
  - (iii) at least 6 points above Stage II in one subject listed in the BMus Regulations.
- b The BTheol component of the conjoint BMus/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BTheol Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 2 points from BSTHEO 101, 102
  - (ii) BSTHEO 141
  - (iii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies
  - (iv) CHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
  - (v) at least 2 points from CHTHEO 142, 145
  - (vi) at least 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History
  - (vii) 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (viii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (ix) at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience or Theology and New Zealand Culture
  - (x) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II
  - (xi) at least 18 points above Stage I.

---

**BProp/BSc**

- 39 a The BProp component of the conjoint BProp/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp, to include PROPERTY 371 or 372. If an appropriate Statistics course is completed for the BSc component, then an additional 2 points from Part III of the BProp is to be substituted for STATS 108.
- b The BSc component of the conjoint BProp/BSc combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule.

---

**BProp/LLB**

- 40 a The BProp component of the conjoint BProp/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp, to include PROPERTY 371 or 372.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BProp/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses taken from the schedule to the LLB Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV.

---

**BProp/LLB(Hons)**

- 41 a The BProp component of the conjoint BProp/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the schedule to the BProp, and is to include:
- (i) ECON 101, PROPERTY 111, 141 and STATS 108
  - (ii) all of Part II of the programme for the BProp
  - (iii) 10 points from Part III of the programme for the BProp, to include PROPERTY 371 or 372.

- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BProp/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses taken from the schedules to the LLB and LLB(Hons) Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 341–399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation.

**BSc/BTheol**

- 42 a The BSc component of the conjoint BSc/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule.
- b The BTheol component of the conjoint BSc/BTheol combination consists of at least 32 points in subjects taken from the BTheol Regulations, and is to include:
- (i) at least 2 points from BSTHEO 101, 102
  - (ii) BSTHEO 141
  - (iii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies
  - (iv) CHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
  - (v) at least 2 points from CHTHEO 142, 145
  - (vi) at least 2 points at Stage II in Christian Thought and History
  - (vii) 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (viii) at least 2 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology
  - (ix) at least 2 points in Theology and Maori Experience or Theology and New Zealand Culture
  - (x) at least 16 points in one subject, including 6 points above Stage II
  - (xi) at least 18 points above Stage I.

**BSc/LLB**

- 43 a The BSc component of the conjoint BSc/LLB combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule.
- b The LLB component of the conjoint BSc/LLB combination consists of at least 44 points in Law courses taken from the schedule to the LLB Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV.

**BSc/LLB(Hons)**

- 44 a The BSc component of the conjoint BSc/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 32 points in at least two subjects defined as majoring subjects or areas of specialisation in the BSc Schedule. Any course in the schedule to the BSc of majoring subjects may be included. The 32 points must also include:
- (i) at least 20 points above Stage I
  - (ii) at least 6 points above Stage II in a subject major or a specialisation as defined in the BSc Schedule.
- b The LLB(Hons) component of the conjoint BSc/LLB(Hons) combination consists of at least 50 points in Law courses taken from the schedules to the LLB and LLB(Hons) Regulations as follows:
- (i) LAW 101
  - (ii) LLB Part II
  - (iii) LLB Part III
  - (iv) LLB Part IV
  - (v) 2 points from LAW 331–399
  - (vi) LAW 789 Dissertation.

---

## Other Programmes

### Regulations

Certificate of Proficiency – COP	240
Transitional Certificate – TransCert	240
The University of Auckland Certificate in Foundation Studies	240

### Foundation Studies

New Start for Adults	241
Wellesley Programme	241
English as a Second Language	241

<b>Alliances with other Tertiary Institutions</b>	<b>242</b>
---------------------------------------------------	------------

<b>Continuing Education</b>	<b>242</b>
-----------------------------	------------

## REGULATIONS – OTHER PROGRAMMES

### Certificate of Proficiency – COP

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 Admission to the programme for this certificate is at the discretion of the Senate or its representative.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 a Any course that is available for any programme may be taken for a Certificate of Proficiency, provided any prerequisite, corequisite or other conditions are met or the Senate or its representative has, in approving the enrolment, waived those requirements.
- b Provided any prerequisite, corequisite or other conditions for that diploma or degree are met, a course passed for the purpose of obtaining a Certificate of Proficiency may, with the approval of the Senate or its representative, be subsequently reassigned to a diploma or degree other than a master's degree, in conformity with the Credit Regulations.
- c Where a course has already been credited to a programme a student may enrol again for that course, or for another course whose content is substantially similar, for a Certificate of Proficiency. Such a course, when passed for Certificate of Proficiency, may not be reassigned to any programme.

#### Commencement

- 3 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the previous regulations.

### Transitional Certificate – TransCert

*The regulations for this certificate are to be read in conjunction with all other relevant statutes and regulations including the Academic Statutes and Regulations.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to have completed the requirements for a degree of this University or other degree approved by the Senate or its representative in any particular case.

#### Structure and Content

- 2 The programme consists of such course or courses at undergraduate level as the Senate or its representative may require or approve.
- 3 The purpose of this programme is to fulfil the requirements for entry to a specific graduate degree, graduate or postgraduate diploma approved by the Senate or its representative.

- 4 To be eligible for the award of a Transitional Certificate a student has to enrol for the graduate qualification for which the prerequisites were met by taking this programme.

#### Variations

- 5 In exceptional circumstances the Senate or its representative may approve a personal programme which does not conform to these regulations.

#### Commencement

- 6 These regulations came into force on 1 January 1996 and replaced the previous regulations.

### The University of Auckland Certificate in Foundation Studies

*The University of Auckland New Zealand Foundation Studies Programme is intended to prepare students whose first language is not English for admission to the University of Auckland in particular and to New Zealand universities in general. The programme will include courses in Accounting, Economics, Calculus, Statistics, Chemistry, Physics, English Language, Computer Skills and Study and Learning skills. Suitably qualified students who meet the minimum entrance requirements upon entry to the Programme may also include English Language Acquisition courses offered by the University of Auckland.*

#### Admission

- 1 In order to be admitted to this programme a student needs to:
  - a satisfy the Academic Board that they have completed secondary schooling to at least the equivalent of the New Zealand Sixth Form Certificate.
  - b have a level of English language proficiency equivalent to a score of 5.0 in the International English Language Testing System (IELTS).

#### Duration

- 2 Students enrolled for this certificate have to follow an approved programme of at least one semester.

#### Structure and Content

- 3 a The programme consists of: English Language, Computer Skills, Study and Learning Skills, and at least four courses chosen from the following list of subjects:
  - Accounting
  - Economics
  - Calculus
  - Statistics
  - Chemistry
  - Physics
  - or other approved Bursary subjects

and

(i) pass at least four of these courses

and

(ii) pass or have passed an IELTS examination at a level approved by the Academic Board with an overall score of at least 6.0 in the academic module.

b Students must complete all required class work and written examinations which will be similar in standard and content to the New Zealand University Entrance Bursary and Scholarship (NZUEBS).

c Each student's personal programme must be approved by the Academic Board.

### Admission to University

4 a Students who satisfactorily complete the Certificate in Foundation Studies will satisfy the minimum requirements for entry to the University.

b Students who complete up to 4 points in University courses may apply to have those points credited towards a degree or diploma at the University.

---

## FOUNDATION STUDIES

---

### New Start for Adults

The range of New Start courses cater to adult students who are considering university level study and who have been out of the education system for some time. The courses are part-time and run for 10 weeks. The fees for the courses are kept as low as possible as part of the commitment of New Start to equal educational opportunity.

New Start is offered at four venues: City Campus, Tamaki Campus, Manukau Institute of Technology and Henderson High School.

#### New Start for Commerce

A modular, part-time evening programme for adults, providing a comprehensive introduction to Mathematics II, Accounting, and Economics. A grade of B or above on 2 of these modules guarantees adults entry into the Bachelor of Commerce degree. The course is also a good preparation for GradDipBus or the MBA programme.

#### New Start for BA, BTheol, LLB

A 10-week programme (two hours per week) providing a realistic introduction to first-year degree study.

New Start includes study skills and 12 subject lectures (such as Political Studies, Sociology, Psychology, Philosophy), regular assignments with realistic feedback, and there is a final exam. Students gain information on the structure of university degrees, and an insight into the standard of work expected.

The grade achieved on New Start provides the University with criteria to evaluate applications to limited-entry courses. Educational guidance is an integral part of New Start and students are offered assistance in planning their ongoing programmes.

#### Takiri Te Ata

A pre-entry programme for Maori adults which prepares them for the BA or BEd (Tchg) degree.

#### GroundWork

An in-depth preparation for New Start, focusing on English grammar and sentence structure. GroundWork is designed to give men and women the confidence to study, as well as the skills.

#### Study-skills Workshops

Alongside New Start are a wide range of study-skills workshops such as: Essay Writing, Reading Skills and Statistics for Beginners. These workshops are

offered in February and June/July. 'Study Skills for Summer School' - a one-day workshop - is offered in December and repeated early January.

#### Further Information

Further information on New Start programmes can be obtained from the New Start Office, City Campus, phone 3737-599 ext. 2981.

---

### Wellesley Programme

The Wellesley Programme is especially designed to give students the necessary skills and confidence to begin tertiary studies. The main target groups are those who have been out of school for two or more years or who are otherwise under-prepared for tertiary study, and those belonging to groups that are under-represented at universities and polytechnics.

The Wellesley Programme offers courses from both the Arts and Science faculties. All students are encouraged to take Mathematics and English as core subjects with a further choice of two other courses from: History, Geography, Physics, Biology and Chemistry. Those with good Mathematics will have the opportunity to extend their skills by taking an extension Mathematics course. Students from non-English speaking backgrounds will have the opportunity to improve their English reading, writing, listening and comprehension skills with a course designed for their specific needs.

Applicants should be motivated and prepared to make a commitment for one year to prepare themselves for first-year tertiary studies. Places are limited and interviews are conducted in order to assist in selection. The University currently has a proposal before the Committee on University Academic Programmes which, if approved, will lead to students who successfully complete the programme, that is, students who gain a pass in all their courses, being awarded the Tertiary Foundation Certificate. Students who complete the programme and enrol in appropriate first-year courses can expect to have the same chance of success as any other first-year student.

Further information may be obtained from the Secretary on 373 7599, ext. 4145 or the Wellesley Programme Coordinating Tutor on ext. 7335.

---

### English as a Second Language

The Department of Applied Language Studies and

Linguistics offers courses for International students and New Zealand residents whose first language is not English, and who are studying at the University of Auckland.

The courses offered in 2002 are: ESOL 10E which is offered in the first semester, and ESOL 20E which is offered in the second semester. Students may take one or both of these courses to help strengthen their academic English proficiency.

These are non-credit courses both of which are offered at two levels. One level is for students who wish to improve their academic English proficiency before enrolling in a degree programme. The other level may be taken by students, including graduate students who are already enrolled in a full-time programme of study in any Faculty.

At both levels, the courses offer students four hours per week, across the semester, of academic English language support without the added pressure of assignments and examinations. The aims of the courses are to help students to improve academic English skills appropriate to their requirements. These include listening and participating in small-group discussion and seminar presentations; note-taking, intensive, extensive and critical reading; writing essays and assignments, summaries, reading and writing research reports, as well as focusing on relevant grammar knowledge and vocabulary development.

Further information may be obtained from the Department of Applied Language Studies and Linguistics, Faculty of Arts.

---

## ALLIANCES WITH OTHER TERTIARY INSTITUTIONS

---

The University has a number of alliances with other tertiary institutions in the Auckland region. In some cases these alliances involve joint teaching arrangements.

### **Auckland University of Technology**

The University of Auckland and the Auckland University of Technology entered an alliance in 1999. The alliance provides for the development of complementary teaching programmes and co-operative activities in administration, research and procurement. A Joint Board between the two institutions oversees the development of the alliance.

### **The Auckland Consortium for Theological Education**

The University of Auckland teaches Theology in partnership with the Auckland Consortium for Theological Education which is a cooperative venture of four autonomous theological colleges. Faculty for teaching theology in the University are drawn from these colleges and appointed by the University to teach and undertake research. The Consortium Colleges are Carey Baptist College, Catholic Institute of Theology, the College of St John the Evangelist and Trinity Methodist College.

### **Manukau Institute of Technology**

In 1999 The University of Auckland and the Manukau Institute of Technology signed a Deed of Cooperation with the aim of enhancing the availability of University qualifications to students in the greater Manukau region. The University of Auckland Programme at Manukau offers programmes in Teacher Education and Arts and the degrees of Bachelor of Business and Information Management and Bachelor of Visual Arts. These programmes are all taught at the Manukau Institute of Technology Campus. For further information on these programmes and on admission and enrolment, contact the Course Information Centre at Manukau Institute of Technology, or the ClockTower Student Information Centre at The University of Auckland.

### **Northland Polytechnic**

In 1995 The University of Auckland and Northland Polytechnic signed a Memorandum of Agreement to cooperate in providing expanded tertiary education opportunities in Northland.

---

## CONTINUING EDUCATION

---

Each year the University offers a large programme of courses planned to give members of the public access to the scholarship and research of the University. These programmes are organised by the Centre for Continuing Education Office. The Centre is located within the Faculty of Arts, which takes a leadership role in developing the University's community education programmes.

Courses are conducted by University staff and other well-qualified specialists. The programmes make available to the public a wide variety of courses in the humanities, sciences, music, social sciences and fine arts. The courses are taught in various formats, including lecture series and day or weekend seminars.

In addition to the community course programmes the Centre offers educational travel opportunities, both to inbound groups visiting New Zealand, and for groups of New Zealanders travelling overseas.

A Conference and Seminar Administration Service is available to arrange and administer international, national and local conferences, short courses and seminars. This service is available to staff in all faculties and to professional bodies wishing to use the University's facilities and expertise.

Brochures detailing these activities are available on request, phone 0-9-373 7599, ext. 7831 or 7832, fax 0-9-373 7419, or write to: Continuing Education Office, The University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland.

---

## Regulations – Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees

**General Information** 244

**Regulations**

Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy – PhD	244
The Degree of Doctor of Literature – LittD	249
The Degree of Doctor of Science – DSc	250
The Degree of Doctor of Laws – LLD	251
The Degree of Doctor of Engineering – DEng	252

## DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND HIGHER DEGREES

In addition to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, the University offers higher doctorates in Literature, Science, Laws, and Engineering. As at other universities, these are primarily designed for graduates of the University who have subsequently published original work that has over a period given them authoritative international standing in their field. The higher doctorate is thus to be seen as a recognition of real distinction in one of these areas of study. It will be awarded rarely and after rigorous examination of a substantial and significant corpus of material. Candidates intending to submit for examination are advised to obtain the notes *Guidance for Candidates* from the Registrar, The University of Auckland, before submitting.

### REGULATIONS

#### Statute for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy – PhD

*The PhD regulations came into force 1 March 1999.*

*Note: The PhD Statute is under review. Potential students should check the status of the Regulations with The Graduate Centre prior to registration.*

##### Preamble

- 1 a Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy are required to pursue an approved course of advanced study and research as enrolled students of the University. It is expected that this programme will usually be completed within three to four years.
- b Upon completion of an approved scheme of research, the PhD shall be awarded to a candidate who:
  - (i) submits a thesis, which meets the requirements set out in clause 1c
- and*
- (ii) satisfies the examiners in an oral examination, and in any other examination that may be required, on the subject of the thesis and on relevant matters in the field or fields to which the subject belongs.
- c The PhD thesis is a formal and systematic exposition of a coherent piece of advanced research work carried out over the period of registration for the Degree and is required to satisfy the examiners and the Postgraduate Committee on all of the following criteria:
  - (i) to be an original contribution to knowledge in its field, and to meet internationally recognised standards for such work
  - (ii) to demonstrate a knowledge of the literature relevant to the subject and the field or fields to which the subject belongs, and the ability to exercise critical and analytical judgment of it
  - (iii) to be satisfactory in its methodology, in the quality and coherence of its written expression, and in its scholarly presentation and format (including adequate references and bibliography).
- d Where a thesis includes research courses and/or case studies, published or unpublished, these must be fully integrated into the subject matter and text of the thesis.

- e Candidates are referred to the current Guidelines for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) which outline the application and operation of this Statute. This Statute prevails where there is any conflict between its provisions and those of the Guidelines.

##### Admission

- 2 Candidates for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy are required to have:
  - a (i) completed the requirements for the award of a master's degree with honours at the University
  - or*
  - (ii) completed the requirements for the award of a bachelor's degree with honours at the University
  - or*
  - (iii) completed a full year's work, at the equivalent of honours level, towards a master's degree of the University
  - or*
  - (iv) completed the requirements for the award of a qualification that the Postgraduate Committee considers to be equivalent to a master's degree with honours or a bachelor's degree with honours from the University
- and*
- b demonstrated an ability to pursue doctoral level research.

##### Registration

- 3 a **Registration Essential**  
Every candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy must be registered by the Postgraduate Committee in accordance with this clause 3.
- b **Application for Registration**  
Application for registration must be made to the Head of the teaching Department or School ('the Head of Department') in which the candidate is to be primarily registered.
- c **Role of the Head of Department**  
The Head of Department who receives an application will make a recommendation in writing to the Postgraduate Committee as to:
  - (i) whether the Candidate:
    - (a) meets the admission requirements

and

(b) has a satisfactory research proposal meeting the requirements of clause 1 of this Statute

and if the Head of Department is of that opinion, then:

(ii) whether her or his Department or School ('Department') (in conjunction with any other Department where the field of study is interdisciplinary) is able to:

(a) make satisfactory supervision arrangements

and

(b) provide adequate research resources and facilities

and

(iii) whether the field of study is interdisciplinary, and if so, which other Departments will be involved and which Department will take clear overall responsibility for the provision of supervision, research resources and support. In these cases, the Heads of any other Departments involved are required to endorse the recommendation.

d On receipt of that recommendation the Postgraduate Committee will decide whether or not to register the candidate for the field of study in the Department/s in which it is taught. The Postgraduate Committee may call for any further information it considers relevant before making its decision.

**e Date of Registration**

Registration takes effect on the date (which will be the first day of a calendar month and which may be retroactive) specified by the Postgraduate Committee ('Date of Registration'). The Date of Registration will be notified to the candidate in writing.

**f Supervision**

Every candidate will have a suitably qualified main supervisor, appointed by the Postgraduate Committee, who takes overall responsibility for the supervision of the candidate, and for assistance in the provision of research resources.

**g Changes in Supervision**

Where the supervisory arrangements require change for any reason, the Head of Department is to submit a suitable plan for the supervision of the candidate to the Postgraduate Committee for approval.

**h Co-Supervisors and Advisers**

In addition, the Postgraduate Committee will ensure that, whenever possible, every candidate has:

(i) a suitably qualified co-supervisor or co-supervisors appointed by the Postgraduate Committee

and/or

(ii) an advisory committee or adviser/s appointed by the Postgraduate Committee.

**i Coursework**

The Postgraduate Committee may require candidates to undertake coursework that is considered to be necessary for the successful completion of the research. Candidates must satisfactorily pass any such coursework.

**j Annual Review of Registration**

For each academic year in which a candidate is registered, the main supervisor, the candidate and the Head of Department are to submit, through the Dean of the Faculty, a joint report to the Postgraduate Committee on the candidate's progress. As part of this report the main supervisor and the Head of Department are to make one of the following recommendations:

(i) that the candidate's registration be continued

or

(ii) that the candidate's registration be continued subject to specified conditions

or

(iii) that the candidate's registration be terminated.

**k Absence for Research**

Where a candidate intends to be absent from the University in pursuit of her or his research, supervisors are to submit for approval by the Postgraduate Committee, through the Head of Department and before the candidate's departure, suitable plans for the supervision of the candidate during her or his absence.

**Provisional Registration**

4 a Registration is provisional for the first 12 months beginning on the date of registration.

**b Exemption**

The Postgraduate Committee may exempt a candidate who has qualified for registration pursuant to clause 2a(iii) from the provisions of this clause 4.

**c Goals**

During provisional registration, a candidate is to achieve such goals as are prescribed by the Postgraduate Committee on the recommendation of the Head of Department at the commencement of the registration. Those goals must have been endorsed by the candidate and the supervisor before the Head of Department makes the recommendation.

**d Review**

At the end of the 12 months of provisional registration, the supervisor/s and the Head of Department are to submit a formal report to the Postgraduate Committee recommending that the candidate's registration be:

(i) confirmed

or

(ii) terminated

or

(iii) continued on a provisional basis for no more than six months.

e Where the Postgraduate Committee acts upon a recommendation to continue provisional registration, registration will terminate at the end of the specified period if the specified conditions are not fulfilled to the satisfaction of the Postgraduate Committee.

**Enrolment and Fees**

5 a **Enrolment**

Candidates for the PhD Degree must enrol in

each academic year (or part of an academic year) for which they are registered. Enrolment is not effective until the Tuition and Research Fees prescribed for the PhD Degree are paid in accordance with this clause 5. Candidates need not enrol for any period during which their registration is suspended under clause 7b.

**b Base Fee**

The Base Fee payable by all candidates is the aggregate of the fees prescribed in each of the academic years corresponding to the first four years of registration except for those candidates who choose to pay in accordance with the provisions of clause 5d.

**c Fees for Subsequent Years of Registration**

Where registration is extended beyond four years and the base fee:

(i) has been paid in full before the commencement of the academic year corresponding to the fifth year of registration

or

(ii) is being paid by instalments pursuant to clause 5g

no further fees except those prescribed in clause 5j are payable on enrolment in respect of the academic years corresponding to the fifth and sixth years of registration. The fee payable on enrolment for the academic years corresponding to the seventh and each subsequent year of registration is one half of the fee prescribed for that year.

**d Payment in Advance**

All candidates may pay, on the occasion of their first enrolment, an amount equal to four times the fee prescribed for that academic year and payment of that amount satisfies the Base Fee in full.

**e Payment in all Other Cases**

A candidate who does not opt to pay the Base Fee in advance under clause 5d must pay on enrolment in each year of the four academic years corresponding to the first four years of registration the fee prescribed for that academic year.

**f Fees during Provisional Registration**

Candidates who do not opt to pay the Base Fee in advance must, on enrolment for the academic year corresponding to the year of provisional registration, pay the fee prescribed for that academic year. Where provisional registration is continued into a second academic year the fee prescribed for that year must be paid on enrolment for that year.

**g Spread Payment**

Candidates who do not opt to pay the Base Fee in advance may elect under clause 5h to pay by instalments:

(i) the Base Fee (if they are exempt from provisional registration)

or

(ii) (if they are not exempt) the balance of the Base Fee after deducting the fees paid during the period of provisional registration.

h Candidates to whom clause 5g applies may elect, by notifying the Director, Student Administration, in writing, to spread payment of the Base Fee (or the balance of it) over the period (or the balance of the period) of up to six years from the Date of Registration by paying:

(i) on enrolment in the first and each succeeding academic year of that period in which their election operates (except the last) not less than one half of the fee prescribed for that academic year

and

(ii) on enrolment in the academic year corresponding to the last year of registration or the sixth year of registration (whichever year comes first) any outstanding balance of the Base Fee.

**i Refunds**

A candidate who submits a thesis or terminates her or his registration before the expiry of:

(i) the first four years of registration

or

(ii) the seventh or subsequent year in which registration is extended, will receive a refund of one-twelfth of the fee paid for each complete month of the period between the date of submission of the thesis or termination of registration and the end of the academic year for which fees have been paid.

**j Fees other than Tuition Fees**

Unless otherwise exempted under the relevant regulations, all candidates must pay the prescribed Students Association and Student Services fees and any other fees as may be prescribed from time to time. There is no refund of these fees.

**k Fees to be Paid Before Thesis Accepted**

No thesis will be accepted for examination unless:

(i) the Base Fee

and

(ii) the fees payable in respect of the seventh and subsequent years of registration, have been paid.

**l Other Fees Payable**

Candidates who enrol for courses other than those required as part of their programme for the PhD Degree must pay the fees prescribed for those courses on enrolment.

**Submission**

**6 a Copies of Thesis**

All candidates are initially required to submit three bound copies of the thesis to the Postgraduate Office.

**b Time for Submission**

Unless permitted to do otherwise by the Postgraduate Committee a candidate must submit the thesis between two and eight years from the Date of Registration.

**c Declaration as to Originality**

The thesis is to be accompanied by a written declaration, signed by the candidate, stating that it is the candidate's own work and that

it, or any part of it, has not been submitted or accepted for any other degree or diploma.

**d Co-Authors' Works**

Where the thesis contains jointly authored research courses, case studies and/or any other work published or unpublished, the declaration is to state the extent to which the jointly authored material is the candidate's own work. Evidence that all co-authors have approved the inclusion of the joint work must be supplied.

**e Language of Thesis**

The thesis is to be presented in English unless otherwise approved by the Postgraduate Committee.

**f Copies for Deposit**

On completion of the examination, three hardbound copies of the thesis, corrected as may be required, must be deposited with Postgraduate Services. The Degree will not be conferred until the candidate has complied with this clause.

**Extension, Suspension and Termination**

**7 a Extension of Time for Submission**

When the Postgraduate Committee is satisfied that there is sufficient reason, it may extend a candidate's submission date.

**b Suspension of Registration**

Candidates who are temporarily incapable of continuing work on their research because of circumstances beyond their control, may apply to have their registration suspended by the Postgraduate Committee for a specified period of time. The following conditions apply:

- (i) The length of time for which a candidate's registration may be suspended will be in multiples of whole calendar months.
- (ii) The Postgraduate Committee must be satisfied that any period of suspension will not adversely affect the viability of the candidate's research.
- (iii) Any period of suspension will be excluded from the calculation of Provisional Registration or the final submission date.
- (iv) While registration is suspended, a candidate is exempt from fees and enrolment, and is not entitled to any tuition or supervision, or to the use of any other research resources of the University.

**c Termination of Registration**

The Postgraduate Committee may terminate the registration of any candidate who:

- (i) fails to enrol for any academic year corresponding to a year of registration

or

- (ii) fails to make payment of any fee or any instalment of a fee in accordance with clause 5

or

- (iii) applies to cease being registered

or

- (iv) has not (where clause 4 applies) made satisfactory progress while under provisional registration

or

- (v) has received an unsatisfactory annual report

or

- (vi) has not submitted or re-submitted the thesis in time

or

- (vii) has had the termination of her or his registration recommended by a decision of a Disputes Committee constituted pursuant to clause 10e of this Statute

or

- (viii) is not permitted to enrol under the Disciplinary Statute of the University.

**Examination**

**8 a Nomination of Examiners**

On submission of a thesis, the Head of Department will nominate to the Postgraduate Committee for selection as examiners the main supervisor of the candidate and not less than two persons:

- (i) whom the Head of Department considers to be suitably qualified

and

- (ii) who have not been involved in the preparation of the thesis.

The nominees shall include at least one person who is an international authority in the field of study which is the subject of the thesis.

**b Appointment of Examiners**

The Postgraduate Committee will consider the nominations provided by the Head of Department and will appoint as examiners suitably qualified persons, including:

- (i) an External Examiner who is an international authority in the field of study which is the subject of the candidate's thesis

and

- (ii) an Examiner to attend the oral examination ('the Oral Examiner')

and

- (iii) the Main Supervisor, provided that when specialist expertise other than that provided by the main supervisor is required one co-supervisor only may also be appointed as an examiner.

**c Evaluations to be made in Confidence**

As suppliers of evaluative material in terms of the Privacy Act 1993 all examiners will be promised that the information and reports they supply as such will be held in confidence.

**d Report on Recommendation**

Each Examiner will be provided with a copy of the thesis and, acting independently, is required to provide Postgraduate Services, within a reasonable period of time, with:

- (i) a written report in English on the quality of the thesis according to the criteria outlined in Regulation 1

and

- (ii) a recommendation as to the category of award among those listed in clause 8g.

**e Oral Examination**

The following provisions apply:

- (i) The Postgraduate Committee, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, is to appoint an independent member of the academic staff of the University to chair the oral examination. The chair may not be a member of the department/s in which the candidate is registered.
- (ii) Upon receipt of all the reports and recommendations, Postgraduate Services is to provide copies to the chair, the oral examiner, and the main supervisor who will then arrange the oral examination.
- (iii) Only the candidate, the chair, the oral Examiner and the main supervisor may attend the oral examination. In particular circumstances, the Postgraduate Committee may permit a co-supervisor who has been appointed as an Examiner under clause 8b(iii) to attend the oral examination.
- (iv) During the oral examination the examiners present shall examine the candidate on the subject of the thesis and on relevant matters in the field or fields to which the subject belongs. After the oral examination, the examiners present are to provide Postgraduate Services with a joint report on the candidate's performance, signed by the examiners and endorsed by the chair, which includes a recommendation as to the category of award among those listed in clause 8g.

**f Where Examiners Disagree**

In the event of serious disagreement amongst examiners, which is not resolved by the oral examination, the Postgraduate Committee may on the recommendation of the independent chair appoint one or two further independent examiners to report on the area of contention.

**g Decision**

After receiving all the reports and recommendations, the Postgraduate Committee will decide:

- (i) to award the Degree
- or
- (ii) to award the Degree after specified minor corrections have been made to the thesis
- or
- (iii) to permit the candidate to revise the thesis and resubmit it for examination on one further occasion only
- or
- (iv) not to award the Degree.

**h Where Revision is Permitted**

When a candidate is required to revise the thesis for resubmission, the following provisions apply:

- (i) The Postgraduate Committee is to determine the date by which the thesis is to be resubmitted.
- (ii) The candidate is required to enrol and pay the prescribed tuition and research fees

from the month in which the decision was made to the month by which the thesis is to be resubmitted.

- (iii) Upon resubmission the revised thesis is to be examined as a whole by the same examiners in accordance with the provisions of this clause. A further resubmission may not be recommended. If one of the original examiners is unavailable to re-examine the thesis the Postgraduate Committee will appoint an alternative examiner.
- (iv) In their reports on the revised thesis the examiners are to recommend to the Postgraduate Committee whether or not another oral examination is to be held.

**Appeals****9 As to Registration:**

a Candidates, Supervisors or Heads of Department may appeal against a decision of the Postgraduate Committee made under clauses 3, 4, or 7 of this Statute, including:

- (i) not to register a candidate

or

- (ii) not to continue the registration of a candidate

or

(iii) to terminate the registration of a candidate within six months of making the decision, and on the grounds that:

- (iv) relevant information which was not available to the Postgraduate Committee at the time of its making the decision has since become available

or

- (v) the procedure adopted in arriving at the decision was unfair provided that no appeal will be accepted against a decision implementing the University's stated policies as set out in this Statute and in the Guidelines for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD).

b Any appeal will be heard by the Chair of the Postgraduate Committee, or her or his nominee, whose decision on an appeal:

- (i) grounded on the lack of relevant information; shall be final

or

- (ii) grounded on procedural unfairness, may be further appealed within six months after the decision is made, to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor Academic or her or his nominee whose decision shall be final.

**As to Examination:**

c If a PhD candidate believes that he or she has been significantly disadvantaged by the examination process, or by any part of the examination process, then a written appeal may be made to the Postgraduate Committee.

d Any appeal as to examination process must be lodged within three months of the result of the examination being officially communicated to the student.

e In the case of appeals as to examination process:

- (i) the Chair of the Postgraduate Committee will undertake a preliminary investigation

- and determine if there are grounds for the appeal to be taken to a further stage;
- (ii) if there are grounds for further consideration of an appeal, this will be undertaken by two members of the Postgraduate Committee who will make a recommendation to the Vice-Chancellor;
  - (iii) the decision of the Vice-Chancellor will be final and may involve a re-examination of the work.

### Dispute Resolution Procedures

#### 10 a Informal Process

Where a candidate and her or his supervisor/s:

- (i) find themselves in disagreement about whether the research is proceeding satisfactorily

or

- (ii) fail to establish or maintain an effective working relationship

they are encouraged to resolve the dispute informally with the assistance, as may be appropriate, of the Head of Department, the Dean of the Faculty, the Chair of the Postgraduate Committee, or the University Mediator.

#### b Formal Process

Any party to a dispute:

- (i) that is not resolved informally pursuant to clause 10a

or

- (ii) who considers that an informal process is inappropriate to resolve the dispute shall give the Head of Department notice in writing specifying, by way of complaint, the issues in dispute.

#### c Complaint may be Dismissed

On receipt of a notice given under clause 10b the Head of Department shall investigate the dispute or nominate an appropriate person to do so. Where, in the opinion of the investigator, the complaint is found to lack substance, the matter shall be reported to the Chair of the Postgraduate Committee or her or his nominee, who may determine that the complaint shall be dismissed and all parties to the dispute will be notified accordingly.

#### d Procedure to be Prescribed

Where a complaint is not dismissed, the investigator shall:

- (i) agree with the parties on an appropriate procedure to resolve the dispute

or

*(if agreement or resolution is not reached)*

- (ii) refer the result of the investigation to either:
  - (a) the Dean of the Faculty concerned

or

- (b) the Chair of the Postgraduate Committee

as the investigator considers appropriate and with the recommendation that a disputes committee be established to determine the dispute.

#### e Disputes Committee

Where the Dean of the Faculty or the Chair of the Postgraduate Committee receives such a recommendation she or he will establish a Disputes Committee of three members, one of whom may be a postgraduate student, to resolve the dispute.

#### f Resolution of Dispute

The Disputes Committee shall afford the parties to the dispute the opportunity to be heard before determining the dispute. Its decision (which, where this is appropriately related to the dispute, may in the last resort be to recommend that the Postgraduate Committee terminate the registration or change the supervision of a candidate) shall be final.

### Transitional Arrangements

11 a This Statute came into force on 1 March 1999 and replaced the previous regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

b For the candidates initially registered under the previous regulations the Postgraduate Committee may approve conditions of registration not in accord with this Statute when it is satisfied that:

- (i) the conditions were allowed under the previous regulations;

and

- (ii) candidates would otherwise be under a disadvantage.

c Arrangements for payment of fees approved before 1 March 1999 for candidates who were registered before that date may continue until the commencement of the 2001 academic year. From the commencement of the 2001 academic year those PhD candidates will be required to have met, or to meet, the Base Fee requirements as set in clause 5 of this Statute.

d Candidates who have met the Base Fee requirements as set out in clause 5 of this Statute at the commencement of the 2001 academic year will not be liable for further fees until they commence their seventh or subsequent year of enrolment.

e Candidates enrolling for their seventh or subsequent year of registration at the commencement of the 2001 academic year or following academic years, who have met the Base Fee requirements, will be charged half the PhD tuition fee prescribed for that year and each subsequent year.

## The Degree of Doctor of Literature – LittD

### General Provisions

1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature

shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of a University of New Zealand.

- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Literature until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
  - 3 The Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to linguistics, literary, philosophical, social or historical knowledge.
  - 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
  - 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
  - 6 A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
    - a three copies of the work to be examined
    - b a statutory declaration which shall:
      - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own

and

    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other university

and

    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- Examination Procedure**
- 7 As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
    - a consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed

and

    - b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
  - 8 Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the Degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
  - 9
    - a If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
    - b The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
  - 10 The duties of each Examiner shall be:
    - a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning

and

    - b to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work with further published work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
  - 11 All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
  - 12 The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
  - 13 Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## The Degree of Doctor of Science – DSc

### General Provisions

- 1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Science shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of a University of New Zealand.

- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Science until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
  - 3 The Degree of Doctor of Science shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of pure or applied science.
  - 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
  - 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
  - 6 A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
    - a three copies of the work to be examined
    - b a statutory declaration which shall:
      - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own

*and*

    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work, submitted had been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other university

*and*

    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the Degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
- 9
    - a If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
    - b The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
  - 10 The duties of each Examiner shall be:
    - a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning

*and*

    - b to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work with further published work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
  - 11 All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
  - 12 The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
  - 13 Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations, the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner, and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

### Examination Procedure

- 7 As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - a consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed

*and*

  - b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing Examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
- 8 Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the

---

## The Degree of Doctor of Laws – LLD

### General Provisions

- 1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of a University of New Zealand.
- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Laws until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.

- 3 The Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of law.
- 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation, but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
- 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work or a major portion of it has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
- 6 Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - a three copies of the work to be examined *and*
  - b a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own *and*
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other university *and*
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- 7 The examination shall not proceed or that the Degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
- 9
  - a If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent external examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, and the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
  - b The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the examiners.
- 10 The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning *and*
  - b to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work together with further published work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 11 All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
- 12 The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
- 13 Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

### Examination Procedure

- 7 As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - a consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed *and*
  - b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
- 8 Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the

examination shall not proceed or that the Degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.

9 a If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent external examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, and the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.

b The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the examiners.

10 The duties of each Examiner shall be: a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning

*and* b to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work together with further published work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.

11 All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.

12 The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.

13 Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## The Degree of Doctor of Engineering – DEng

### General Provisions

- 1 Other than in exceptional circumstances, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of

Engineering shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of a University of New Zealand.

- 2 No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
- 3 The Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of Engineering or Technology.
- 4 The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation or as designs and inventions; but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
- 5 No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other university.
- 6 Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
- a three copies of the work to be examined  
and
  - b a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own  
and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other university  
and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other university and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other university.
- 8 Upon receipt of the report of the Moderator the Senate shall decide whether to proceed with the examination. If the Senate determines that the examination shall not proceed or that the Degree shall not be awarded (Regulation 12) the candidate may not lodge a further application to be examined for a higher degree until a period of five years or more has elapsed from the date of Senate's decision. If the examination is not to proceed the candidate shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations.
- 9 a If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, and the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.  
b The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
- 10 The duties of each Examiner shall be:
- a to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning  
and
  - b to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work together with further published work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
- 11 All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
- 12 The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate; and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
- 13 Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations, the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner, and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

#### Examination Procedure

- 7 As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
- a consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed  
and
  - b state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.

---

## SCHEDULE OF PRESCRIPTIONS

---

*The Schedule of Prescriptions contains the full list of approved University of Auckland courses. Before selecting courses from this Calendar, students and potential students are advised to ascertain which courses are expected to be offered in 2002 and in which semester they are scheduled, together with the examination time for each course, by referring to the Class Schedule on the University of Auckland website at [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva) or contacting the Student Information Centre in the ClockTower. Course availability details (correct at the time of print) are also on page 581.*

*Where courses in the following Schedule of Prescriptions are listed with an 'A' and a 'B' option, this means that, if they are offered, they will be taught over two semesters and students must enrol in both Part A and Part B to complete the course. In order to be credited with such a course, students must complete both Part A and Part B. Courses with no 'A' or 'B' designation are taught over one semester.*

*The Prescriptions are listed by faculty, in alpha-numeric order and should be read in conjunction with the relevant regulations.*

---

### Schedule of Prescriptions Index

257	Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts
283	Faculty of Arts
408	Faculty of Business and Economics
448	Faculty of Engineering
471	Faculty of Law
485	Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences
513	Faculty of Science
569	Joint Board of Studies in Theology

## Index of Subjects and Programmes

Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page	Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page
<b>Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts</b>					
Architectural Design	ARCHDES	257	Korean	KOREAN	358
Architectural Drawing and Computing	ARCHDRC	258	Language Study Abroad		359
Architectural History, Theory and Criticism	ARCHHTC	262	Language Teaching and Learning	LANGTCHG	360
Architectural Practice and Management	ARCHPRM	267	Languages and Literature	LANGLIT	359
Architectural Technology	ARCHTECH	270	Latin	LATIN	361
Architecture: General	ARCHGEN	260	Latin American Studies	LATINAM	362
Fine Arts	FINEARTS	274	Linguistics	LINGUIST	363
Planning	PLANNING	275	Logic and Computation	LOGICOMP	365
Property	PROPERTY	280	Maori Studies	MAORI	365
Visual Arts	VISARTS	282	Medieval and Early Modern European Studies	MEDEMS	368
<b>Faculty of Arts</b>			Music	MUSIC	369
Ancient History	ANCHIST	283	Music Education	MUSED	368
Anthropology	ANTHRO	286	New Zealand Studies	NZSTUD	379
Art History	ARTHIST	293	Pacific Studies	PACIFIC	379
Arts: General	ARTSGEN	296	Performing Arts	PERFORM	380
Arts Management	ARTSMGT	297	Philosophy	PHIL	381
Asian Studies	ASIAN	297	Polish	POLISH	387
Chinese	CHINESE	297	Political Studies	POLITICS	387
Classical Studies	CLASSICS	301	Russian	RUSSIAN	393
Comparative Literature	COMPLIT	303	Samoan	SAMOAN	395
Cook Islands Maori	COOKIS	303	Scandinavian Studies	SCAND	395
Croatian	CROATIAN	304	Sociology	SOCIOL	397
Cultural Heritage and Museums	HERITAGE	343	Spanish	SPANISH	401
Dance Studies	DANCE	304	Theatre Studies	THEATRE	405
Development Studies	DEVELOP	306	Tongan	TONGAN	406
Drama	DRAMA	306	Translation Studies	TRANSLAT	406
Dutch	DUTCH	307	Women's Studies	WOMEN	407
Education	EDUC	317	<b>Faculty of Business and Economics</b>		
Education (Curriculum)	EDCURR	308	Accounting	ACCTG	408
Education (Professional)	EDPROF	313	Business Administration	BUSADMIN	412
Employment Relations and Organisation Studies		324	Commercial Law	COMLAW	413
English	ENGLISH	324	Economics	ECON	420
English as a Second Language	ESOL	331	Engineering Management	ENGMGMT	425
English Writing	ENGWRIT	331	Finance	FINANCE	425
Ethics		331	Finance	FINMGMT	426
Ethnomusicology		332	Health Informatics	HLTHINFO	427
European Languages and Literature	EURLANG	332	Human Resource Management	HRMGMT	427
Film, Television and Media Studies	FTVMS	336	Information Management	INFOMGMT	428
French	FRENCH	332	Information Systems	INFORM	428
German	GERMAN	339	Information Systems	INFOSYS	429
Greek	GREEK	341	International Business	INTBUS	432
Health Social Sciences	HLTHSOC	348	International Strategy and Leadership	INTSTRAT	434
History	HISTORY	343	Management and Employment Relations	MGMT	437
History and Philosophy of Science and Technology	HPST	349	Maori Development	MAORIDEV	436
Indonesian	INDO	349	Marketing	MARKET	437
Italian	ITALIAN	352	Marketing	MKTG	442
Japanese	JAPANESE	355	MMgt/GradDipBus	MANAGEMENT	435
			New Venture Management	NEWVENT	445
			Operations Management	OPSMAN	445

Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page	Subject Title	Alpha Code	Page
Operations Management	OPSMGT	445	Paediatrics	PAEDS	504
Operations Research	OPSRES	447	Pathology	PATHOL	504
Quality Management	QUALITY	448	Pharmacology	PHARMCOL	507
<b>Faculty of Engineering</b>			Pharmacy	PHARMACY	505
Chemical and Materials Engineering	CHEMMAT	448	Physiology	PHYSIOL	509
Civil Engineering	CIVIL	451	Psychiatry	PSYCHIAT	511
Computer Systems Engineering	COMPSYS	454	Public Health Social Science	PHSOCSCI	509
Electrical and Electronic Engineering	ELECTENG	455	<b>Faculty of Science</b>		
Energy Technology	GEOTHERM	463	Biological Sciences	BIOSCI	513
Engineering: General	ENGGEN	458	Biomedical Science	BIOMED	513
Engineering Science	ENGSCI	459	BTech Projects	BTECH	519
Mechanical Engineering	MECHENG	464	Chemistry	CHEM	520
Pulp and Paper Technology	PULPAPER	467	Computer Science	COMPSCI	523
Resource Engineering	RESOURCE	467	Electronics and Computing	ELECCOMP	527
Software Engineering	SOFTENG	470	Environmental Management	ENVMGT	528
<b>Faculty of Law</b>			Environmental Science	ENVSCI	528
Environmental Law	ENVLAW	471	Ergonomics	ERGONOM	530
Law	LAW	472	Food Science	FOODSCI	531
<b>Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences</b>			Forensic Science	FORENSIC	532
Anatomy with Radiology	ANATOMY	485	Geography	GEOG	532
Audiology	AUDIOL	485	Geology	GEOLOGY	537
Behavioural Science	BEHAVSCI	486	Geophysics	GEOPHYS	539
Community Health	COMHLTH	487	Marine Science	MARINE	540
General Practice and Primary Health Care	GENPRAC	490	Mathematics	MATHS	541
Health Management	HLTHMGT	494	Optometry and Vision Science	OPTOM	547
Health Psychology	HLTHPSYC	494	Physics	PHYSICS	549
Health Sciences	HLTHSCI	495	Polymers and Coatings Science	POLYMER	553
Human Biology	HUMANBIO	495	Psychology	PSYCH	554
Managed Care	MGCARE	498	Science: General	SCIGEN	560
Maori and Pacific Health	MPHEALTH	499	Speech Science	SPCHSCI	560
MBChB	MBCHB	497	Sport and Exercise Science	SPORTSCI	561
Medical Science	MEDSCI	498	Statistics	STATS	564
Medicine	MEDICINE	497	Wine Science	WINESCI	568
Molecular Medicine	MOLMED	499	<b>Joint Board of Studies in Theology</b>		
Nursing	NURSING	501	Biblical Studies	BSTHEO	569
Nutrition	NUTRN	503	Christian Thought and History	CTHTHEO	573
Obstetrics and Gynaecology	OBSTGYN	503	Moral and Practical Theology	MPTHEO	577

## Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

### Architectural Design

**General Note:** Prescriptions for all Elective Project courses are based on topics approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.

#### Part I

**ARCHDES 100** (3 Points)

##### Design 1

An introduction to the fundamentals of architectural design. Exploratory studies of the relationships between human activities/occasions and architectural space/form. Exploratory studies of the relationships between physical settings and architectural space/form. The preparation of a design proposal for a small project which draws upon the results of these studies.

*Restriction: 755.100*

**ARCHDES 101** (3 Points)

##### Design 2

Studies which further develop the awareness, knowledge and skills gained in Design 1. An introduction to the role of architectural theory and knowledge sources in the inception and development of design proposals. The preparation of a design proposal for a more challenging project. Studies in the formative influences of building structure, materials and construction in architectural design.

*Restriction: 755.101*

#### Part II

**ARCHDES 200** (3 Points)

##### Design 3

Design projects in the three Design courses - Design 3, 4 and 5 - reflect the diversity of issues and concerns within the discipline and the practice of architecture. Project topics will present specific emphases and design challenges. Common to each topic is an emphasis on the development of architectural ideas capable of appropriately linking project conditions with individual student design proposals.

*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 100 or 755.100*

*Restriction: 755.200*

**ARCHDES 201** (3 Points)

##### Design 4

As for ARCHDES 200 but student achievement levels should exceed those of Design 3.

*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 100 or 755.100*

*Restriction: 755.201*

#### Part III

**ARCHDES 300** (3 Points)

##### Design 5

As for ARCHDES 200 but student achievement levels should exceed those of Design 3 and 4.

*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 200 or 755.200*

*Restriction: 755.300*

**ARCHDES 301** (3 Points)

##### Design 6

A culminating course in which students are

expected to demonstrate appropriate awareness, knowledge and skill in the preparation of a fully resolved sketch design proposal, in response to a challenging project topic. Design proposals are required to address thematic, programmatic (cultural, social, functional) and contextual issues, and demonstrate an understanding of the formative influence of building structure, construction and materials and of architectural strategies for environmental considerations.

*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 200 or 755.200*

*Restriction: 755.301*

**ARCHDES 374** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 375** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 376** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 377** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

#### Part IV

**ARCHDES 400** (3 Points)

##### Design 7

Advanced design projects in which contemporary cultural, social, environmental and technological issues are investigated in the context of an awareness and understanding of relevant architectural and urban history, theory, empirical knowledge and precedent. Project topics will cover a diversity of emphases and design challenges.

*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 301 or 755.301*

*Restriction: 755.400*

**ARCHDES 401** (3 Points)

##### Design 8

As for ARCHDES 400 but student achievement levels exceed those of Design 7.

*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 301 or 755.301*

*Restriction: 755.401*

**ARCHDES 474** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 475** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 476** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 477** (1 Point)

##### Elective Project

See General Note above.

#### Part V

**ARCHDES 500** (3 Points)

##### Design 9

As for ARCHDES 400 but student achievement levels should exceed those of Design 7 and 8.

Prerequisite: ARCHDES 400 or 755.400

Restriction: 755.500

**ARCHDES 501** (4 Points)  
Design 10

A culminating course in which students are expected to address a challenging and conceptually complex design project, and to achieve a fully resolved sketch design, together with developed design studies sufficient to explain the proposed building's structure and key building fabric elements. In-depth studies of other aspects of the design proposal may be required, as appropriate to the project topic and to individual student design intent.

Prerequisite: ARCHDES 400 or 755.400

Restriction: 755.501

**ARCHDES 574** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 575** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 576** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

**ARCHDES 577** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

#### Honours and Master's Courses

**ARCHDES 770** (4 Points)

**ARCHDES 770A** (2 Points)

**ARCHDES 770B** (2 Points)

Elective Study A  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 770 A and B, or ARCHDES 770

**ARCHDES 771** (4 Points)

**ARCHDES 771A** (2 Points)

**ARCHDES 771B** (2 Points)

Elective Study A  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 771 A and B, or ARCHDES 771

**ARCHDES 772** (2 Points)

**ARCHDES 772A** (1 Point)

**ARCHDES 772B** (1 Point)

Elective Study B  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 772 A and B, or ARCHDES 772

**ARCHDES 773** (2 Points)

**ARCHDES 773A** (1 Point)

**ARCHDES 773A** (1 Point)

Elective Study B  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 773 A and B, or ARCHDES 773

**ARCHDES 774** (3 Points)

**ARCHDES 774A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHDES 774B** (1.5 Points)

Elective Project A  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 774 A and B, or ARCHDES 774

**ARCHDES 775** (3 Points)

**ARCHDES 775A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHDES 775B** (1.5 Points)

Elective Project A  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 775 A and B, or ARCHDES 775

**ARCHDES 776** (2 Points)

**ARCHDES 776A** (1 Point)

**ARCHDES 776B** (1 Point)

Elective Project B  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 776 A and B, or ARCHDES 776

**ARCHDES 777** (2 Points)

**ARCHDES 777A** (1 Point)

**ARCHDES 777B** (1 Point)

Elective Project B  
See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDES 777 A and B, or ARCHDES 777

#### Architectural Drawing and Computing

**General Note:** Prescriptions for all Elective Study and Elective Project courses are based on topics approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.

##### Part I

**ARCHDRC 100** (1 Point)

##### Introduction to Architectural Computing

A theoretical overview and practical introduction to current and future computing practice in architecture with an emphasis on the use of the digital medium to aid conceptual design.

Restriction: 755.150

**ARCHDRC 101** (1 Point)

##### Architectural Drawing 1

The course includes: freehand drawing techniques, sketching, basic perspective, the use of various media; the relationship between architectural form and its graphical representations; the analytical and critical value of drawing; representation and rendering techniques related to studio drawing.

Restriction: 755.185

##### Part II

**ARCHDRC 200** (1 Point)

##### Computer-aided Design

The course includes: computer-aided design and information processing techniques; three-dimensional modelling and two dimensional drafting; an introduction to the management and utilisation of computers in the production of working drawings; generics and specific software.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 100 or 755.150

*Restriction:* 755.250

**ARCHDRC 201 (1 Point)**

**Architectural Drawing 2**

Study of drawing and related art practices in terms of architectural representation and analysis and practice of selected techniques.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 101 or 755.185

*Restriction:* 755.285

**Part III**

**ARCHDRC 300 (1 Point)**

**Life Drawing**

Analysis and understanding of proportion, structure, scale and how the human figure relates to architectural space and form.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201 or 755.285

*Restriction:* 755.385

**ARCHDRC 301 (1 Point)**

**Measured Drawing**

The measurement, recording and drawing of existing New Zealand architecture of historical and cultural significance.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201 or 755.285

*Restriction:* 755.386

**ARCHDRC 302 (1 Point)**

**Audiovisual Techniques**

An introduction to audiovisual camera and editing techniques with an emphasis on the use of the medium as an aid to conceiving and developing architectural form and space. Note that there is a limit of 20 enrolments in this course.

*Restriction:* 755.387

**ARCHDRC 303 (1 Point)**

**Freehand Drawing**

The examination, through penetrative seeing, of the basic structure, form, tonal colour and textural elements found in the environment and the development of these awarenesses in knowledgeable graphic communications with an emphasis on perceptual expression. Note that there is a limit of 30 enrolments in this course.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201 or 755.285

*Restriction:* 755.377

**ARCHDRC 304 (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Architectural Photography**

An introduction to architectural photography and photographic techniques.

**ARCHDRC 305 (1 Point)**

**Ephemeral Effects in Architecture**

Using the computer to experiment with shadows, light, blurring, and transparency in both two-dimensional and three-dimensional media, students will investigate an architectural concern and illustrate a critical involvement with the subject through imagery production.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 200

**ARCHDRC 306 (1 Point)**

**Composite Architecture**

Using the computer to combine worlds and media, this course emphasises the bringing together of the two-dimensional (including non-electronic) and the

three-dimensional. Students will produce a collection of examples, which show a critical inquiry into the construction of electronic imagery in the discipline of Architecture.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 200

**ARCHDRC 370 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 371 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 372 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 373 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 374 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 375 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 376 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 377 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project: Freehand Drawing B**

See General Note above.

**Part IV**

**ARCHDRC 400 (1 Point)**

**Advanced Architectural Computing**

Exploring new and more complex applications in architectural representation and animation.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 200 or 755.250

*Restriction:* 755.450

**ARCHDRC 401 (1 Point)**

**Representation and Post-Colonial Discourses**

Studies of architectural representations, drawing on cultural studies, post-colonial and feminist theories.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHDRC 201

**ARCHDRC 470 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 471 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 472 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 473 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHDRC 474 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

<b>ARCHDRC 475</b> Elective Project See General Note above.	(1 Point)	To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 772 A and B, or ARCHDRC 772
<b>ARCHDRC 476</b> Elective Project See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 773</b> (2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 477</b> Elective Project See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 773A</b> (1 Point) <b>ARCHDRC 773B</b> (1 Point) Elective Study B See General Note above.
<hr/>		
<b>Part V</b>		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 773 A and B, or ARCHDRC 773
<b>ARCHDRC 570</b> Elective Study See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 774</b> (3 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 571</b> Elective Study See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 774A</b> (1.5 Points) <b>ARCHDRC 774B</b> (1.5 Points) Elective Project A Elective Project A.
<b>ARCHDRC 572</b> Elective Study See General Note above.	(1 Point)	To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 774 A and B, or ARCHDRC 774
<b>ARCHDRC 573</b> Elective Study See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 775</b> (3 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 574</b> Elective Project See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 775A</b> (1.5 Points) <b>ARCHDRC 775B</b> (1.5 Points) Elective Project A See General Note above.
<b>ARCHDRC 575</b> Elective Project See General Note above.	(1 Point)	To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 775 A and B, or ARCHDRC 775
<b>ARCHDRC 576</b> Elective Project See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 776</b> (2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 577</b> Elective Project See General Note above.	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHDRC 776A</b> (1 Point) <b>ARCHDRC 776B</b> (1 Point) Elective Project B See General Note above.
<hr/>		
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 776 A and B, or ARCHDRC 776
<b>ARCHDRC 770</b>	(4 Points)	<b>ARCHDRC 777</b> (2 Points)
<b>ARCHDRC 770A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ARCHDRC 777A</b> (1 Point)
<b>ARCHDRC 770B</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ARCHDRC 777B</b> (1 Point) Elective Project B See General Note above.
See General Note above. To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 770 A and B, or ARCHDRC 770		To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 777 A and B, or ARCHDRC 777
<b>ARCHDRC 771</b>	(4 Points)	<b>Architecture: General</b>
<b>ARCHDRC 771A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>Part IV</b>
<b>ARCHDRC 771A</b>	(2 Points)	<b>ARCHGEN 400</b> (1 Point)
Elective Study A See General Note above.		Research Methods
To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHDRC 771 A and B, or ARCHDRC 771		An introduction to the research process including: the identification of research topics and research questions, the review and critique of literature, the selection of a research method, referencing and the preparation of a bibliography. The focus of the course is on preparing students to undertake their own research projects.
<b>ARCHDRC 772</b>	(2 Points)	<i>Restriction: 755.388</i>
<b>ARCHDRC 772A</b>	(1 Point)	<b>Part V</b>
<b>ARCHDRC 772B</b>	(1 Point)	<b>ARCHGEN 590</b> (2 Points)
Elective Study B See General Note above.		Research Report
		A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School.
		<b>ARCHGEN 591</b> (2 Points)
		Research Report
		A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School.

<b>ARCHGEN 592</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>ARCHGEN 791</b>	<b>(8 Points)</b>
<b>Research Report</b>		<b>ARCHGEN 791A</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School.		<b>ARCHGEN 791B</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHGEN 593</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Research Report</b>	
<b>Research Report</b>		A report involving advanced research and application in a building science subject for the Degree of Master of Building Science, on a topic approved by the Head of School, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor. The project may be a design study, a technological investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, or similar study.	
A research report on a topic approved by the Head of School.		<i>Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700 or 755.783</i>	
<b>ARCHGEN 595</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<i>Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784</i>	
<b>ARCHGEN 595A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>Restriction: ARCHGEN 796, 755.798 or 755.766</i>	
<b>ARCHGEN 595B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 791 A and B, or ARCHGEN 791</i>	
<b>Dissertation</b>		<b>ARCHGEN 792</b>	<b>(8 Points)</b>
A dissertation involving applied research and/or a development project on a topic approved by the Head of School.		<b>ARCHGEN 792A</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<i>Restriction: 755.590</i>		<b>ARCHGEN 792B</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 595 A and B, or ARCHGEN 595</i>		<b>Research Report</b>	
<hr/>			
<b>Diploma Courses</b>			
<b>ARCHGEN 600</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>ARCHGEN 792A</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>Research Methods 1A</b>		<b>ARCHGEN 792B</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
Research methods for application in architectural research, including scientific and technological methods, and those used in critical and historical studies.		<b>Research Report</b>	
<i>Restriction: 755.683</i>		A report involving advanced research and application in an architectural subject for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies, on a topic approved by the Head of School under the guidance of an appointed supervisor. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, or similar study.	
<hr/>			
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>			
<b>ARCHGEN 700</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>ARCHGEN 793A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Research Methods</b>		<b>ARCHGEN 793B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
An introduction to the research process including: the identification of research topics and research questions, the review and critique of literature, the selection of a research method, referencing and the preparation of a bibliography. The focus of the course is on preparing students to undertake their own research projects.		<b>Thesis</b>	
<i>Restriction: 755.783</i>		A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the degree of Master of Architectural Studies, Master of Architecture or Master of Building Science, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.	
<b>ARCHGEN 701</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700</i>	
<b>Research Methods 2</b>		<i>Restriction: ARCHGEN 795, 796, 797</i>	
Application of research methods to a research task; preparation of research proposal, defining appropriate research methods, preparation of bibliography and other preparatory work for either a thesis or advanced research project.		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 793 A and B</i>	
<i>Restriction: 755.784</i>		<b>ARCHGEN 795A</b>	<b>(6 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHGEN 790</b>	<b>(8 Points)</b>	<b>ARCHGEN 795B</b>	<b>(6 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHGEN 790A</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	<b>Thesis</b>	
<b>ARCHGEN 790B</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the Degree of Master of Architecture, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.	
<b>Research Report</b>		<i>Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784</i>	
A report involving advanced research and application in an architectural subject for the Degree of Master of Architecture, on a topic approved by the Head of School under the guidance of an appointed supervisor. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, or similar study.		<i>Restriction: ARCHGEN 790, 755.765 or 755.796</i>	
<i>Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.783</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 795 A and B</i>	
<i>Restriction: ARCHGEN 795, 755.796 or 755.765</i>		<b>ARCHGEN 796A</b>	<b>(6 Points)</b>
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 790 A and B, or ARCHGEN 790</i>		<b>ARCHGEN 796B</b>	<b>(6 Points)</b>
		<b>Thesis</b>	
		A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the Degree of Master of Building Science, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.	
		<i>Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700 or 755.783</i>	
		<i>Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784</i>	

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 791, 755.766 or 755.798*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 796 A and B*

**ARCHGEN 797A** (6 Points)

**ARCHGEN 797B** (6 Points)

#### Thesis

A thesis involving a discourse on a topic approved by the Head of School for the Degree of Master of Architectural Studies, under the guidance of an appointed supervisor.

*Prerequisite: ARCHGEN 700 or 755.783*

*Corequisite: ARCHGEN 701 or 755.784*

*Restriction: ARCHGEN 792, 755.767, 755.797*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHGEN 797 A and B*

### Architectural History, Theory and Criticism

**General Note:** *Stage 1, Stage 2 and Stage 3 Architectural History, Theory and Criticism courses may be available to both Architecture and non-Architecture students.*

#### Part I

**ARCHHTC 100** (1 Point)

#### Introduction to Modern Architecture

An introduction to the history, theory and criticism of modern Western architecture, and an introduction to the modern architecture of New Zealand.

*Restriction: 755.130*

**ARCHHTC 101** (1 Point)

#### Introduction to Architectural Theory

An introduction to the theories of architecture, with emphasis on significant developments in the modern and post-modern periods. Introduction to the contribution of architectural theory to an understanding of the phenomenon of architecture and to architectural design practice.

*Restriction: 755.131*

#### Part II

**ARCHHTC 200** (1 Point)

#### Oceanic Architecture A

An introduction to the indigenous architecture of the Pacific. A study of the architecture of the Pacific Islands, choosing one area to study in depth. The particular Pacific Islands selected will vary from year to year.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses*

*Restriction: ARCHHTC 300*

**ARCHHTC 201** (1 Point)

#### Vernacular Architecture A

The Resource Management Act, Agenda 21, the principles of sustainability, cultural integrity, and the need to conserve both energy and resources all indicate that buildings and cities should ideally achieve perfect harmony with place. In turn, truly responsive vernacular architecture provides a means of reading climate, landscape, culture, local materials and local traditions. An understanding of historical vernacular precedents provides a context for presenting vernacular as the appropriate architecture for this moment in history.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses*

*Restriction: ARCHHTC 301*

**ARCHHTC 202** (1 Point)

#### Urban Design 1A

An introduction to urban history, theory and design.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses*

*Restriction: ARCHHTC 302*

**ARCHHTC 203** (1 Point)

#### Architects in California A

From Green and Green to Morphosis. The topic focuses on the work of key figures in the architecture of California – the influence of modernism, climate, culture and technical innovation. Architects studied include: Maybeck, Gill, Neutra, Schindler, Wright, Ray and Charles Eames, Gehry.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses*

*Restriction: ARCHHTC 303*

**ARCHHTC 204** (1 Point)

#### New Zealand Architecture A

The course includes: outline knowledge, experience and interest in the development of New Zealand architecture; origins; key studies in architecture in New Zealand with reference to historical influences and particular developments; New Zealand identity, characteristics and appropriateness, including today.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses*

*Restriction: ARCHHTC 304*

**ARCHHTC 205** (1 Point)

#### Egyptian Architecture A

An introduction to Ancient Egyptian Architecture: Old and Middle Kingdoms (c.3000–1640 BC) with selected case studies.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses*

*Restriction: ARCHHTC 305*

**ARCHHTC 206** (1 Point)

#### Engendering Architecture A

Introduction to theoretical positions, examination of selected architectural works relevant to studies of women and architecture.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses*

*Restriction: ARCHHTC 306*

**ARCHHTC 207** (1 Point)

#### Contemporary Architecture of Japan A

Traditional living will be focused on the businessman's house (matchiya), and rural farm house (minka) of Japan. Favourable economic conditions and the two parallel generations of Japanese architects will be discussed from the international viewpoint.

*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any*

2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
Restriction: ARCHHTC 307

**ARCHHTC 208 (1 Point)**

**From Garden City to Suburbia A**

A critical study of housing in contemporary cities, tracing the origins of suburban living and culture from Moore's Utopia through the social and political agendas of the factory towns of England to Howard's Garden City, and the emergence of suburbia worldwide.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 308

**ARCHHTC 209 (1 Point)**

**Conservation Architecture A**

Theory, legislation and technology concerning architectural conservation. Historic periods, case-studies and experience, primarily local. Terminology. Architectural context. Introduction to H.P.T., R.M.A. Heritage, and I.C.O.M.O.S.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 309

**ARCHHTC 210 (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Community Design A**

Introduction to the wide diversity of processes and skills which comprise the discipline of community architecture. The origins of the discipline will be outlined, together with its growth and development, including current examples. Communication and group facilitation techniques will be analysed and tested in the context of a typical community design process.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 310

**ARCHHTC 211 (1 Point)**

**Te Kaupapa Takiura Māori A**

An exploration of the issues which promulgated the traditional architecture of Maori people and a discussion of the current movements leading to a wide use of these parameters in Aotearoa/New Zealand architecture.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 311

**ARCHHTC 212 (1 Point)**

**New Kingdom Egyptian Architecture A**

A study of eighteenth, nineteenth and twentieth dynasty architecture of New Kingdom Egypt (1550-1070 BC), focusing on domestic architecture with case studies of the cities of Amarna and Thebes, and the villages of their tomb makers.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 312

**ARCHHTC 213 (1 Point)**

**Built Form and Culture A**

A study of the relationship between various cultures

and their architecture. Specifically concerned with settlement patterns, dwellings and other buildings and relates these to various aspects of both traditional and contemporary cultures.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 313

**ARCHHTC 214 (1 Point)**

**Architecture and Landscaping of Japan A**

Housing, landscaping and living in Japan. Traditional town house with Sukiya style and its inner gardens. The economic growth and loss of traditional values discussed from an architectural viewpoint.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 314

**ARCHHTC 215 (1 Point)**

**Byzantine Architecture A**

An introduction to Byzantine Architecture from the fourth to fifteenth centuries with selected urban case studies including Constantinople.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 315

**ARCHHTC 216 (1 Point)**

**Poetics of Garden A**

Introduction to the hortulan and architectural elements of landscape and garden design. Selected examples of historic and contemporary work.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 316

**ARCHHTC 217 (1 Point)**

**Biculturalism in Architecture A**

A discussion of issues of biculturalism in the provision of architecture in Aotearoa/New Zealand and the Pacific, including Pacific Rim countries, providing an insight into the emerging Pacific Architecture and Aotearoa/New Zealand's role.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 317

**ARCHHTC 218 (1 Point)**

**Design Procedures A**

The idea of 'design procedures' is established and the nature of that process is examined. A variety of procedures which support the decision making process are reviewed. Where relevant, design procedural issues are explained by reference to architects designs and built work.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 318

**ARCHHTC 219 (1 Point)**

**Architectural Theory 1589-1789 A**

The political ideologies, technological and aesthetic theories and archaeological projects which were

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 261.

advanced between the birth of Francois Mansart (1598) and death of Jean-Louis Durand (1834). French, English, Italian and German sources for urban spaces, architecture, gardens and interior and furniture design.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 319

**ARCHHTC 220 (1 Point)**  
**Communications in Design A**

The application of communications theory to design practice and education. Notions of the inter-communication processes, the concept of the 'hidden curriculum'. The deep structure of communication processes in terms of its impact on design with respect to interpersonal communication, using a wide variety of communications media.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 320

**ARCHHTC 221 (1 Point)**  
**Medieval Cairo A**

A study of the development of the city of Cairo and its architecture from the seventh to sixteenth centuries.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 321

**ARCHHTC 222 (1 Point)**  
**Istanbul A**

The architectural development of the city of Istanbul, focusing on Ottoman architecture of the fifteenth to eighteenth centuries with contemporary studies.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 322

**ARCHHTC 223 (1 Point)**  
**Renaissance and Baroque Architecture A**

An examination of the principal architects, works and theories from the period 1400-1700.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 323

**ARCHHTC 224 (1 Point)**  
**Modern Italian Architecture A**

A survey of Italian Architecture from 1900 to the present day.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 324

**ARCHHTC 225 (1 Point)**  
**Contemporary Dutch Architecture A**

A study of the recent work of key figures in contemporary Dutch architecture, with emphasis on the contributions of Herman Hertzberger and Aldo van Eyck. Aspects of Dutch culture, social life, and architecture in the twentieth century.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 325

**ARCHHTC 226 (1 Point)**  
**New Zealand Architecture and the Treaty of Waitangi A**

An investigation of the relationship between the infusion of European architecture into New Zealand as a result of settlement, and the repression of modern Maori architecture as a result of this and the Treaty of Waitangi.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 326

**ARCHHTC 227 (1 Point)**  
**The Treaty and Post-colonial Issues A**

An investigation of the Treaty of Waitangi and its place in post-colonial discourse. An exploration of the Treaty as design-generator and an expression of New Zealand and international architecture.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses  
*Restriction:* ARCHHTC 327

**ARCHHTC 228 (1 Point)**  
**History Elective A**

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 229 (1 Point)**  
**History Elective A**

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 270 (1 Point)**  
**History Elective A**

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 271 (1 Point)**  
**History Elective A**

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**Part III**

**ARCHHTC 300-371**

Stage III level Architectural History, Theory and Criticism courses have the same prescriptions and prerequisites as the corresponding Stage II level Architectural History, Theory and Criticism courses.

**ARCHHTC 374 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 375 (1 Point)**  
**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 376 (1 Point)****Elective Project**

See General Note above.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 377 (1 Point)****Elective Project**

See General Note above.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 100-level in non-Architecture courses

**Part IV****ARCHHTC 400 (1 Point)****Myth and Metaphor**

An introduction to cultural philosophy and myth criticism as it may be applied in architectural theory-building. The course treats architectural topics in New Zealand Maori, Medieval Japan, Ancient Egypt, and the contemporary information age. Theoretical background embraces the dialectic in Western thought, Martin Heidegger and Eastern thought.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

*Restriction:* 755.432

**ARCHHTC 401 (1 Point)****Paradigms of Architectural Thinking**

Introduction to a philosophical treatment of some essential architectural concepts around four paradigms: Language, Representation, Aesthetics and Negation.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131

*Restriction:* 755.438

**ARCHHTC 402 (1 Point)****Contemporary Theoretical Positions**

Post-structuralist theories, theories of textuality, feminist history, cultural studies and issues of representation, and a consideration of these issues in relation to architecture.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131

*Restriction:* 755.439

**ARCHHTC 404 (2 Points)****Architectural Theory and Discourse**

An examination of architectural writing and criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131

*Restriction:* 755.441

**ARCHHTC 405 (1 Point)****Urban Design 2**

The course includes: advanced urban studies, contemporary theory, South Pacific issues.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHHTC 202 or 302

*Restriction:* 755.442

**ARCHHTC 406 (1 Point)****Designing for Institutions**

The examination of the special nature of design tasks which institutional settings present, reviewing

of a variety of strategies and procedures for managing the design decision-making process in these settings. An analysis of a number of contemporary buildings that represent significant contributions in the field of institutional and public architecture.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 408 (1 Point)****Topics in Architectural Theory**

An examination of selected architectural themes in architectural writing and criticism relative to contemporary theoretical positions.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 410 (1 Point)****Pompeii**

The architectural development of Pompeii from the third century BC to the eruption of Vesuvius in AD 79, and the 'Four Styles' of wall painting, with reference to Herculaneum and nearby villas.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 411 (1 Point)****Sustainable Design B**

A seminar series based on weekly readings undertaken by all participants. The course will explore the philosophical, social and political context of the sustainable future. The role of the designer in the construction of a sustainable future will be discussed.

**ARCHHTC 412 (1 Point)****Transformative Design: Theory and Practice**

A critical historical and theoretical analysis of the role of design as an instrument of cultural domination and colonisation and the development of counter-theories, histories and strategies for bringing about social, political, economic and personal transformation.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHHTC 413 (2 Points)****ARCHHTC 413A (1 Point)****ARCHHTC 413B (1 Point)****Architecture and Text: Ancient and Mediaeval**

A course in which the idea and reality of both architecture and ornament is read from primary materials (texts, drawings and models) originating from Ur to Chartres. The prestigious knowledge and specialising roles of early architects is investigated thematically (abstraction and reinterpretation, migration and hybridisation, archotyping and copying, number measure and proportion), revealing historical sources to be both true reflection and distorting mirror.

*Prerequisite:* Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 413 A and B, or ARCHHTC 413

- ARCHHTC 414** (1 Point)  
**Gothic Architecture**  
 An investigation of the nature of European Gothic architecture as exemplified by its religious buildings. The course further explores the essence of Gothic that was extracted by the Ecclesiastical establishment, exported to New Zealand, and the buildings that resulted.  
*Prerequisite: Any two of ARCHHTC 100, 101, 755.130, 755.131, or in the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses*
- ARCHHTC 470** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 471** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 472** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 473** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 474** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 475** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 476** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 477** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- 
- Part V**
- ARCHHTC 570** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 571** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 572** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 573** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 574** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 575** (1 Point)  
**Whaihanga Joint Studio Project A**  
 Whaihanga multidisciplinary Maori Studio applying aspects of Planning, Architecture, Property Management and Design to a specific Maori/iwi case study. Project work will focus on the following: to identify key architectural and designing issues affecting, and of concern to, Maori in a specific community; to analyse these issues in a multidisciplinary context; to work with a Maori community to devise design solutions to meet that community's needs and expectations.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 301*  
*Restriction: ARCHGEN 591*
- ARCHHTC 576** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHHTC 577** (1 Point)  
**Whaihanga Joint Studio Project B**  
 Whaihanga multidisciplinary Maori Studio applying aspects of Planning, Architecture, Property Management and Design to a specific Maori/iwi case study. Project work will focus on the following: to identify key architectural and designing issues affecting, and of concern to, Maori in a specific community; to analyse these issues in a multidisciplinary context; to work with a Maori community to devise design solutions to meet that community's needs and expectations.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHDES 301*  
*Restriction: ARCHGEN 591*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**  
*Note: Students must attend lectures of ARCHHTC 202 and 405, or have already completed ARCHHTC 302 and/or 405*
- ARCHHTC 700** (2 Points)
- ARCHHTC 700A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHHTC 700B** (1 Point)  
**Advanced Urban Design Studies**  
 The course examines: urban history, theory and design; and contemporary issues in urban design, development strategies and guidelines.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 700 A and B, or ARCHHTC 700*
- ARCHHTC 770** (4 Points)  
**ARCHHTC 770A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHHTC 770B** (2 Points)  
**Elective Study A**  
 See General Note above  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 770 A and B, or ARCHHTC 770*
- ARCHHTC 771** (4 Points)  
**ARCHHTC 771A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHHTC 771B** (2 Points)  
**Elective Study A**  
 See General Note above  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 771 A and B, or ARCHHTC 771*
- ARCHHTC 772** (2 Points)  
**ARCHHTC 772A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHHTC 772B** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study B**  
 See General Note above.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 772 A and B, or ARCHHTC 772*

<b>ARCHHTC 773</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 773A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 773B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Study B</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 773 A and B, or ARCHHTC 773</i>	
<b>ARCHHTC 774</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 774A</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 774B</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>Elective Project A</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 774 A and B, or ARCHHTC 774</i>	
<b>ARCHHTC 775</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 775A</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 775B</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>Elective Project A</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 775 A and B, or ARCHHTC 775</i>	
<b>ARCHHTC 776</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 776A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 776B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project B</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 776 A and B, or ARCHHTC 776</i>	
<b>ARCHHTC 777</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 777A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHHTC 777B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project B</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHHTC 777 A and B, or ARCHHTC 777</i>	

### Architectural Practice and Management

**General Note:** Prescriptions for all Elective Study and Elective Project courses are based on topics approved by the Head of the School of the Architecture.

#### Part III

<b>ARCHPRM 300</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>New Zealand Building Industry</b>	
The New Zealand building industry as the context for various trade and professional occupations. The role of the building industry facilitator in managing the client's investment. An introduction to governing legislation and building controls, and an overview of the industry players and processes.	
<i>Restriction: 755.360</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 301</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Building Economics</b>	
Perceptions of buildings from the points of view of developer, owner and user. Life cycle costs. Sources and cost of finance. Feasibility studies. Building efficiency.	
<i>Restriction: 755.361</i>	

<b>ARCHPRM 302</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Town Planning</b>	
The evolution of modern town planning theory and practice; the planning process; contemporary town planning in New Zealand.	
<i>Restriction: 755.362</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 303</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Production Documentation</b>	
The preparation of contract drawings for a small-scale building.	
<i>Restriction: 755.363</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 370</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Study</b>	
See General Note above.	
<b>ARCHPRM 371</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Study</b>	
See General Note above.	
<b>ARCHPRM 372</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Study</b>	
See General Note above.	
<b>ARCHPRM 373</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Study</b>	
See General Note above.	
<b>ARCHPRM 374</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project</b>	
See General Note above.	
<b>ARCHPRM 375</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project</b>	
See General Note above.	
<b>ARCHPRM 376</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project</b>	
See General Note above.	
<b>ARCHPRM 377</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project</b>	
See General Note above.	

#### Part IV

<b>ARCHPRM 401</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Project Management A</b>	
Management of the building project from inception through to the stage of tendering. Client needs and agreements, feasibility studies, project constraints, cost planning and control, consultants, administration and quality control. Particular emphasis on documentation, and the place of information technology in the architect's practice.	
<i>Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 300</i>	
<i>Restriction: ARCHPRM 400</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 402</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Project Management B</b>	
Management of the building project from the tendering stage through to project completion, including post-occupancy evaluation. Establishment of the building contract, contract administration and site observation, study of contract law and cost management during the construction phase. All aspects of documentation during construction and final project accounts.	
<i>Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 300</i>	
<i>Restriction: ARCHPRM 400</i>	

- ARCHPRM 403** (1 Point)  
**Facilities Management**  
 Studies of the purpose of facilities to their users, and their problems of management. Investigation of life cycle costs, legal obligations of tenants, leases, building health, energy management and other key areas of operations.  
*Restriction: 755.461*
- ARCHPRM 404** (1 Point)  
**Construction Management**  
 An introduction to quantitative techniques in management of construction projects.  
*Restriction: 755.462*
- ARCHPRM 405** (1 Point)  
**Resource Consents**  
 A course based on case studies that explains the planning processes relevant to architectural practice.
- ARCHPRM 411** (1 Point)  
**Project Management A (Registration)**  
 Management of the building project from inception through to the stage of tendering. Client needs and agreements, feasibility studies, project constraints, cost planning and control, consultants, administration and quality control. Particular emphasis on documentation, and the place of information technology in the architect's practice.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*
- ARCHPRM 412** (1 Point)  
**Project Management B (Registration)**  
 Management of the building project from the tendering stage through to project completion, including post-occupancy evaluation. Establishment of the building contract, contract administration and site observation, study of contract law and cost management during the construction phase. All aspects of documentation during construction and final project accounts.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*
- ARCHPRM 421** (1 Point)  
**Project Management A (Flexible Learning)**  
 Management of the building project from inception through to the stage of tendering. Client needs and agreements, feasibility studies, project constraints, cost planning and control, consultants, administration and quality control. Particular emphasis on documentation, and the place of information technology in the architect's practice.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*
- ARCHPRM 422** (1 Point)  
**Project Management B (Flexible Learning)**  
 Management of the building project from the tendering stage through to project completion, including post-occupancy evaluation. Establishment of the building contract, contract administration and site observation, study of contract law and cost management during the construction phase. All aspects of documentation during construction and final project accounts.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*
- ARCHPRM 470** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 471** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 472** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 473** (1 Point)  
**Elective Study**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 474** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 475** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 476** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 477** (1 Point)  
**Elective Project**  
 See General Note above.
- ARCHPRM 478** (1 Point)  
**Project Management Elective A**  
 Special elective studies in the Project Management area.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*
- ARCHPRM 479** (1 Point)  
**Project Management Elective B**  
 Special elective studies in the Project Management area.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*
- 
- Part V**
- ARCHPRM 501** (1 Point)  
**Practice Management A**  
 Introduction to the New Zealand legal system and the law of Contract and Torts. Negotiations, negligence, disputes and remedies relevant to architects in practice. Introduction to the professional institute, the registration procedure, risk management and professional ethics.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 401 and 402*  
*Restriction: ARCHPRM 500*
- ARCHPRM 502** (1 Point)  
**Practice Management B**  
 Establishing and maintaining an architectural practice as a business venture. Organisational structures. Strategic market management. Financial planning, insurance and taxation. Aspects of the law as related to practice.  
*Prerequisite: ARCHPRM 401 and 402*  
*Restriction: ARCHPRM 500*
- ARCHPRM 511** (1 Point)  
**Practice Management A (Registration)**  
 Introduction to the New Zealand legal system and the law of contract and torts. Negotiations, negligence, disputes and remedies relevant to architects in practice. Introduction to the professional institute, the registration procedure, risk management and professional ethics.  
*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*

**ARCHPRM 512 (1 Point)**

**Practice Management B (Registration)**

Establishing and maintaining an architectural practice as a business venture. Organisational structures. Strategic market management. Financial planning, insurance and taxation. Aspects of the law as related to practice.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*

**ARCHPRM 521 (1 Point)**

**Practice Management A (Flexible Learning)**

Introduction to the New Zealand legal system and the law of Contract and Torts. Negotiations, negligence, disputes and remedies relevant to architects in practice. Introduction to the professional institute, the registration procedure, risk management and professional ethics.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*

**ARCHPRM 522 (1 Point)**

**Practice Management B (Flexible Learning)**

Establishing and maintaining an architectural practice as a business venture. Organisational structures. Strategic market management. Financial planning, insurance and taxation. Aspects of the law as related to practice.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*

**ARCHPRM 570 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 571 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 572 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 573 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 574 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 575 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 576 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 577 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHPRM 578 (1 Point)**

**Practice Management Elective A**

Special elective studies in the Practice Management area.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*

**ARCHPRM 579 (1 Point)**

**Practice Management Elective B**

Special elective studies in the Practice Management area.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Head of School*

**Diploma Courses**

**ARCHPRM 670A (2 Points)**

**ARCHPRM 670B (2 Points)**

**Elective Study A**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 670 A and B*

**ARCHPRM 671A (2 Points)**

**ARCHPRM 671B (2 Points)**

**Elective Study A**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 671 A and B*

**ARCHPRM 672A (1 Point)**

**ARCHPRM 672B (1 Point)**

**Elective Study B**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 672 A and B*

**ARCHPRM 673A (1 Point)**

**ARCHPRM 673B (1 Point)**

**Elective Study B**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 673 A and B*

**ARCHPRM 674A (1.5 Points)**

**ARCHPRM 674B (1.5 Points)**

**Elective Project A**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 674 A and B*

**ARCHPRM 675A (1.5 Points)**

**ARCHPRM 675B (1.5 Points)**

**Elective Project A**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 675 A and B*

**ARCHPRM 676A (1 Point)**

**ARCHPRM 676B (1 Point)**

**Elective Project B**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 676 A and B*

**ARCHPRM 677A (2 Points)**

**ARCHPRM 677B (2 Points)**

**Elective Project B (4 points)**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 677 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ARCHPRM 770 (4 Points)**

**ARCHPRM 770A (2 Points)**

**ARCHPRM 770B (2 Points)**

**Elective Study A**

See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 770 A and B, or ARCHPRM 770*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

<b>ARCHPRM 771</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 771A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 771B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Elective Study A</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 771 A and B, or ARCHPRM 771</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 772</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 772A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 772B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Study B</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 772 A and B, or ARCHPRM 772</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 773</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 773A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 773B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Study B</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 773 A and B, or ARCHPRM 773</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 774</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 774A</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 774B</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>Elective Project A</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 774 A and B, or ARCHPRM 774</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 775</b>	<b>(3 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 775A</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 775B</b>	<b>(1.5 Points)</b>
<b>Elective Project A</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 775 A and B, or ARCHPRM 775</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 776</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 776A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 776B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project B</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 776 A and B, or ARCHPRM 776</i>	
<b>ARCHPRM 777</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 777A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHPRM 777B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Elective Project B</b>	
See General Note above.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHPRM 777 A and B, or ARCHPRM 777</i>	

### Architectural Technology

**General Note:** Prescriptions for all Elective Study and Elective Project courses are based on topics approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.

#### Part I

<b>ARCHTECH 100A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>ARCHTECH 100B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>
<b>Construction and Structure 1</b>	
An introduction to light timber, steel and concrete	

construction of domestic scale buildings in the New Zealand context. The physical characteristics and behaviour of common building materials. Structural concepts relating to simple structures.

*Restriction: 755.110*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 100 A and B*

#### ARCHTECH 102 (1 Point)

##### Introduction to Architectural Science A

Introduction to anthropometrics and ergonomics; architectural psychology; psychophysics; materials science; techniques of architectural science and the application of results in architectural design.

*Restriction: 758.101*

#### ARCHTECH 103 (1 Point)

##### Introduction to Architectural Science B

Introduction to architectural physics (heat, light and sound); the physiology and psychology of vision hearing and thermal sensation; the interaction of heat, light and sound with building materials and constructions and its quantification in environmental design.

*Restriction: 758.101*

#### Part II

#### ARCHTECH 200A (1 Point)

#### ARCHTECH 200B (1 Point)

##### Construction and Structure 2

Development of construction and structural principles for commercial scale buildings. Emphasis is placed on the development of a greater understanding of material behaviour. Covers issues of material selection and structural systems. Structural concepts are advanced and computer applications are introduced.

*Prerequisite: ARCHTECH 100 or 755.110*

*Restriction: 755.210*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 200 A and B*

#### ARCHTECH 202 (1 Point)

##### Environment and Services A

Climate and energy considerations in building. Thermal performance, ventilation and condensation. Mechanical, electrical and hydraulic services for low rise buildings.

*Prerequisite: 758.101 or, ARCHTECH 102 and 103*

*Restriction: 758.201*

#### ARCHTECH 203 (1 Point)

##### Environment and Services B

Natural and artificial lighting; noise control and acoustical design.

*Prerequisite: 758.101 or, ARCHTECH 102 and 103*

*Restriction: 758.201*

#### Part III

#### ARCHTECH 300 (1 Point)

##### Alternative Construction Methods

An examination of the claim that 'Architecture is the result of the artistic implementation of technology' leads to an exploration of uncommon construction methods ranging from earth buildings through cable, membrane and structural plastics, and the computer resolution of complex forms, as exemplified by Gaudi and Calatrava.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHTECH 200 or 755.210

*Restriction:* 755.310

**ARCHTECH 305 (1 Point)**

**Ergonomics**

The limitations and capacities of people as affecting the design of buildings, equipment and the environment. The influence of anatomy, physiology, and psychology as it affects design, in order to make the best possible use of human resources.

*Restriction:* 755.315

**ARCHTECH 306 (1 Point)**

**Workshop Project**

A workshop-based project intended to introduce students to woodwork and/or metalwork skills through the production of a small piece of furniture or joinery or other project as may be approved.

*Restriction:* 755.316

**ARCHTECH 308 (1 Point)**

**Environmental Science A**

Services appropriate for industrial and medium-rise commercial buildings; an introduction to vertical transportation; integration of services into building fabric; use of solar energy in the New Zealand context; performance prediction using ALF.

*Prerequisite:* 758.201 or ARCHTECH 202

*Restriction:* 755.313, 755.314, 758.303, 758.304

**ARCHTECH 309 (1 Point)**

**Environmental Science B**

Visual performance and visual perception; quantitative and qualitative techniques for the design of natural and artificial lighting; origins, behaviour, description and measurement of sound; acoustical design of communication spaces and rooms.

*Prerequisite:* 758.201 or ARCHTECH 203

*Restriction:* 755.311, 755.312, 758.301, 758.302

**ARCHTECH 370 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 371 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 372 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 373 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 374 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 375 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 376 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 377 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project: North Europe 'Hi-Tech' Architecture 1970-1985**

See General Note above.

**Part IV**

**ARCHTECH 400A (1 Point)**

**ARCHTECH 400B (1 Point)**

**Construction and Structure 3**

Construction methods and structural systems relating to multi-storey buildings. The behaviour of buildings subjected to wind, earthquake and non-uniform loading. Issues of tolerance, buildability, evaluation and an introduction to fire protection. Introduction to frame analysis utilising the 'multi-frame' computer program.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHTECH 200 or 755.210

*Restriction:* 755.410

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 400 A and B

**ARCHTECH 401 (2 Points)**

**Acoustics and Noise Control A**

Advanced studies in room acoustics and acoustical design of communication spaces, psychophysics of audience preference and objective measurements in rooms and acoustical models. Materials for noise control, their performances specification, and theory of vibrating systems. Noise assessment and control in communities, buildings and machinery, application of vibration isolation techniques. Practical sessions are included.

*Prerequisite:* 755.311 or 758.301

*Corequisite:* ARCHTECH 402

*Restriction:* 755.411

**ARCHTECH 402 (1 Point)**

**Acoustics and Noise Control B**

Project and/or laboratory work related to the material covered in ARCHTECH 401.

*Prerequisite:* 755.311 or 758.301

*Corequisite:* ARCHTECH 401

*Restriction:* 755.412

**ARCHTECH 403 (1 Point)**

**Active Audio Systems**

Sound reinforcement and public address system design, covering a design method for matching a sound system with existing architecture. Required site measurement and system evaluation and how to specify the required equipment. Recent trends in direct sound designing and audience coverage. Developments in active barriers and active noise control. Design and calculation by computers.

*Prerequisite:* 755.311 or 758.301

*Restriction:* 755.413

**ARCHTECH 404 (1 Point)**

**Advanced Lighting**

Advanced considerations in the design of natural and artificial lighting for building interiors. Developments in lighting technology. Modelling and computer techniques. Case studies of lighting for particular building types, which may include galleries, libraries, shopping and places of worship.

*Prerequisite:* 755.312 or 758.302

*Restriction:* 755.414

**ARCHTECH 405 (1 Point)**

**Advanced Services**

Advanced studies of the principles and design considerations for environmental and utility services with special reference to tall buildings.

Studies of the servicing requirements and design approaches for specialised buildings (such as hotels, hospitals) and atrium buildings. Maintenance, replacement and energy considerations.

*Prerequisite:* 755.314 or 758.304

*Restriction:* 755.415

**ARCHTECH 410 (1 Point)**

**Multi-storey Construction**

A detailed study of multi-storey construction techniques and constraints, both on-site and off-site. Legislative impact along with acceptable risk considerations. Quality control and long-term maintenance philosophies, all as determinants of architectural form.

*Corequisite:* ARCHTECH 400 A and B

*Restriction:* 755.420

**ARCHTECH 411 (1 Point)**

**The New Goths**

A critical study of Northern European 'Hi-Tech' architecture 1970–1985. The historical context, influences, case studies and the use of technology in design.

*Corequisite:* ARCHTECH 400 A and B

*Restriction:* 755.421

**ARCHTECH 412 (1 Point)**

**Timber Technology**

An exploration of timber as a material for building, with its advantages and disadvantages for creating space. Study of the methods for approximate sizing and the design issues inherent in the use of the various timber products on the market.

*Corequisite:* ARCHTECH 400 A and B

*Restriction:* 755.422

**ARCHTECH 414 (1 Point)**

**Sustainable Design A**

A review of the evolution of environmentally-sustainable settlements and buildings and the technologies used. Examples from the past and the present are analysed in terms of flows of resources and energy. Current technologies and their effectiveness for the designer of such environments.

*Prerequisite:* In the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHTECH 415 (1 Point)**

**Designing with the Sun**

An introduction to passive solar design through the search for a balance between the natural environment, traditional architectural responses and building technology.

**ARCHTECH 416 (1 Point)**

**Designs on Technology**

An individual exploration of components, elements or assemblies of construction as a design tool.

*Prerequisite:* In the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHTECH 417 (1 Point)**

**Theories and Philosophies on Construction**

An exploration of the complex historical relationships between architecture, art, craft, industry, philosophy and construction. Particular consideration will be given to the development of the building process – from local craft-based tradition to global industrialised activity – and the implications for

architectural education and practice.

*Prerequisite:* In the case of non-Architecture students, any 2 points at 300-level in non-Architecture courses

**ARCHTECH 418 (1 Point)**

**Designing with Light**

Through the work of major architects, this course will explore the power of light to reveal form, and shape space. Case study exploration will be followed by a design project.

**ARCHTECH 419 (1 Point)**

**Advanced Thermal Environment**

A course which discusses the thermal implications of the NZ Building Code and what architects need to know. Appropriate thermal modelling techniques will be undertaken by students. The thermal environment of commercial buildings in New Zealand will be examined.

*Prerequisite:* 758.303

**ARCHTECH 470 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 471 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 472 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 473 (1 Point)**

**Elective Study**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 474 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 475 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 476 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 477 (1 Point)**

**Elective Project**

See General Note above.

---

**Part V**

**ARCHTECH 500 (1 Point)**

**Advanced Structures**

Introduction to structural design and materials codes. Computer modelling of structural systems, and their application in design project work.

*Prerequisite:* ARCHTECH 400 or 755.410

*Restriction:* 755.510

**ARCHTECH 503 (1 Point)**

**Architectural Technology Project**

An architectural technology project as approved by the Head of School.

*Restriction:* 755.518

**ARCHTECH 504 (1 Point)**

**Architectural Technology Project**

An architectural technology project as approved by

the Head of School.  
Restriction: 755.519

**ARCHTECH 570** (1 Point)  
Elective Study  
See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 571** (1 Point)  
Elective Study  
See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 572** (1 Point)  
Elective Study  
See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 573** (1 Point)  
Elective Study  
See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 574** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 575** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 576** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

**ARCHTECH 577** (1 Point)  
Elective Project  
See General Note above.

**Diploma Courses**

**ARCHTECH 670A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 670B** (2 Points)  
Elective Study A  
See General Note above.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 670 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 671A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 671B** (2 Points)  
Elective Study A  
See General Note above.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 671 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 672A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHTECH 672B** (1 Point)  
Elective Study B  
See General Note above.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 672 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 673A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHTECH 673B** (1 Point)  
Elective Study B  
See General Note above.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 673 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 674A** (1.5 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 674B** (1.5 Points)  
Elective Project A  
See General Note above.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 674 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 675A** (1.5 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 675B** (1.5 Points)  
Elective Project A  
See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 675 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 676A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHTECH 676B** (1 Point)  
Elective Project B  
See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 676 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 677A** (1 Point)  
**ARCHTECH 677B** (1 Point)  
Elective Project B  
See General Note above.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 677 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ARCHTECH 700A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 700B** (2 Points)  
Fire Protection  
Fundamental fire engineering concepts and models. Calculation procedures and methods. Fire design for buildings under the Building Code. Protection, detection and escape.  
Restriction: 755.711  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 700 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 701A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 701B** (2 Points)  
Building Health  
Building health concepts and models. Legislative climate for building health. Sources of health hazard and relative risk.

**ARCHTECH 702A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 702B** (2 Points)  
Building Intelligence  
Building intelligence concepts and models. Building management concepts. Building automation and services controls.

**ARCHTECH 703A** (2 Points)  
**ARCHTECH 703B** (2 Points)  
Facilities Management  
Facilities management concepts and models. Capital, operating costs and life-cycle costs of property. Legal duties of building owners and users.  
Restriction: 755.714  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 703 A and B*

**ARCHTECH 704** (4 Points)  
Sustainability of the Built Environment  
Evolution of sustainable settlements and buildings, and the technologies used both past and present. Analysis of examples in terms of flows of resource and energy. Defining sustainability quantitatively.

**ARCHTECH 705** (4 Points)  
Energy and the Built Environment  
Contemporary achievements in low-energy building design. Methods of prediction and assessment of

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

building energy performance. Energy modelling as a design tool for the sustainable built environment.

**ARCHTECH 770** (4 Points)

**ARCHTECH 770A** (2 Points)

**ARCHTECH 770B** (2 Points)

**Elective Study A**

See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 770 A and B, or ARCHTECH 770

**ARCHTECH 771** (4 Points)

**ARCHTECH 771A** (2 Points)

**ARCHTECH 771B** (2 Points)

**Elective Study A**

**Elective Study A**

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 771 A and B, or ARCHTECH 771

**ARCHTECH 772** (2 Points)

**ARCHTECH 772A** (1 Point)

**ARCHTECH 772B** (1 Point)

**Elective Study B**

See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 772 A and B, or ARCHTECH 772

**ARCHTECH 773** (2 Points)

**ARCHTECH 773A** (1 Point)

**ARCHTECH 773B** (1 Point)

**Elective Study B**

See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 773 A and B, or ARCHTECH 773

**ARCHTECH 774** (3 Points)

**ARCHTECH 774A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHTECH 774B** (1.5 Points)

**Elective Project A**

See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 774 A and B, or ARCHTECH 774

**ARCHTECH 775** (3 Points)

**ARCHTECH 775A** (1.5 Points)

**ARCHTECH 775B** (1.5 Points)

**Elective Project A**

See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 775 A and B, or ARCHTECH 775

**ARCHTECH 776** (2 Points)

**ARCHTECH 776A** (1 Point)

**ARCHTECH 776B** (1 Point)

**Elective Project B**

See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 776 A and B, or ARCHTECH 776

**ARCHTECH 777** (2 Points)

**ARCHTECH 777A** (1 Point)

**ARCHTECH 777B** (1 Point)

**Elective Project B**

See General Note above.

To complete this course students must enrol in ARCHTECH 777 A and B, or ARCHTECH 777

## Fine Arts

### Part I

**FINEARTS 100A** (5 Points)

**FINEARTS 100B** (5 Points)

**Studio 1**

Exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer. Basic elements of two and three-dimensional design (space, shape, line, rhythm, texture) and the varied properties and qualities of colour and light. The creative potential and characteristic limitations of various media such as wood, stone, plastic, metal, glass and pigment. Methods and techniques such as welding, casting, printmaking, painting and photographic media. Observation and analysis of the structure of the natural world and human environment. Drawing as an expressive means of communication, and as a vital stimulus to personal development.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 100 A and B

### Part II

**FINEARTS 200A** (5 Points)

**FINEARTS 200B** (5 Points)

**Studio 2**

An individually planned programme as approved by the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts, with content related to the student's requirements. For example, one or more of the following: painting, printmaking, photography, sculpture, intermedia, Maori art and design. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 200 A and B

### Part III

**FINEARTS 300A** (5 Points)

**FINEARTS 300B** (5 Points)

**Studio 3**

Development of Studio 2 in selected fields.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 300 A and B

### Part IV

**FINEARTS 400A** (7 Points)

**FINEARTS 400B** (7 Points)

**Studio 4A**

Development of Studio 3 in selected fields.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 400 A and B

**FINEARTS 401A** (3 Points)

**FINEARTS 401B** (3 Points)

**Studio 4B**

Development of Studio 3 in selected fields.

To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 401 A and B

### Diploma Courses

The proposed dissertation topic for each course is to be submitted for approval to the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts by the 31 March.

**FINEARTS 651A** (7 Points)  
**FINEARTS 651B** (7 Points)

**Studio**

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 651 A and B*

**FINEARTS 652A** (3 Points)  
**FINEARTS 652B** (3 Points)

**Practical**

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 652 A and B*

**FINEARTS 690A** (4 Points)  
**FINEARTS 690B** (4 Points)

**Dissertation**

Documentation of the results of an original investigation or advanced study or research, related to the student's programme in Studio.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 690 A and B*

**Master's Courses**

*The proposed dissertation topic for each course is to be submitted for approval to the Dean of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts by the 31 March.*

**FINEARTS 753A** (4 Points)  
**FINEARTS 753B** (4 Points)

**Studio 5C**

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts.

*Prerequisite: 16 points in Art History including 6 points at Stage III*

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 753 A and B*

**FINEARTS 754A** (7 Points)  
**FINEARTS 754B** (7 Points)

**Studio 5D**

A practical performance in an approved aspect of the fine arts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 754 A and B*

**FINEARTS 762A** (4 Points)  
**FINEARTS 762B** (4 Points)

**Studio 6B**

A practical performance in an approved aspect of the fine arts. The work in Studio 6B may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio 5D.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 762 A and B*

**FINEARTS 763A** (7 Points)  
**FINEARTS 763B** (7 Points)

**Studio 6C**

A practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts. The work in Studio 6C may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio 5D.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 763 A and B*

**FINEARTS 764A** (3.5 Points)  
**FINEARTS 764B** (3.5 Points)  
**Studio 6D**

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 764 A and B*

**FINEARTS 791A** (3 Points)  
**FINEARTS 791B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**

A dissertation embodying the results obtained by the student through original investigation of advanced study relative to the student's programme in Studio 5D and Studio 6B.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 791 A and B*

**FINEARTS 797A** (7 Points)  
**FINEARTS 797B** (7 Points)

**Fine Arts Thesis**

A thesis embodying the results obtained by the student of an original investigation or advanced study relative to the student's programme in Studio 5C.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINEARTS 797 A and B*

**Planning**

**Part I**

**PLANNING 100** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Planning**

The evolution of modern planning as an intellectual and professional movement.

**PLANNING 101** (2 Points)

**Institutional Framework**

An introduction to institutional structures, legal institutions and reasoning. The political context of local and national government.

**PLANNING 102** (2 Points)

**Society and Economics**

The interactions of economic systems and communities. Equity and the allocation of resources.

**PLANNING 103** (2 Points)

**Environmental Context of Planning**

Human responses to the environment and environmental change. An introduction to environmental processes and outcomes.

**PLANNING 110** (2 Points)

**Fundamental Skills**

The course covers: written, verbal and graphic communication; computer competence; data collection and statistical analysis; and information integration and synthesis.

**PLANNING 111** (2 Points)

**Foundations for Policy Analysis**

An introduction to interdisciplinary techniques from the natural and built environment and social sciences, applied to planning issues.

**PLANNING 120** (1 Point)

**Studio 1A**

An analysis of, and presentation on, a local area issue.

**PLANNING 121** (1 Point)

**Studio 1B**

Preparation and presentation of a planning proposal for a local area issue.

*Prerequisite: PLANNING 120*

<b>PLANNING 130</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	The assessment of landscape quality, landscape design principles applied to planning cases, landscape in rural and urban contexts.
<b>PLANNING 131</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 232</b> (1 Point) <b>Development and Planning</b>
<b>PLANNING 132</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	A critical examination of theories of growth, development and planning.
<b>PLANNING 133</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 233</b> (1 Point) <b>Pacific Development Issues</b>
<b>PLANNING 134</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	Planning and development with particular reference to a selected Pacific region.
<b>PLANNING 135</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 234</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
<b>PLANNING 136</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 235</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
<b>PLANNING 137</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 236</b> (1 Point) <b>Special Topic</b>
<b>PLANNING 138</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 237</b> (1 Point) <b>Special Topic</b>
<b>PLANNING 139</b> Special Topic	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 238</b> (1 Point) <b>Special Topic</b>
		<b>PLANNING 239</b> (1 Point) <b>Special Topic</b>

*The above Special Topic courses are specified by the Head of Department in cases where courses gained from previous examinations have included a part of a core Planning course in Part I for which a substitution course may be granted.*

---

#### Part II

<b>PLANNING 200</b> Settlement Planning National, regional, rural, urban and coastal development and planning systems.	(2 Points)	<b>Part III</b>
<b>PLANNING 201</b> Introduction to Planning Legislation An introduction to the planning legislation with particular emphasis on resource management.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 300</b> (2 Points) <b>Maori and Resource Management</b>
<b>PLANNING 202</b> Planning Physical and Social Infrastructure The role and provision of physical and social infrastructure in urban and regional planning.	(2 Points)	Traditional and contemporary relationships between tangata whenua and their environment. Maori perspectives and roles on public policy, planning and development.
<b>PLANNING 203</b> Design and the Built Environment The role of urban design in shaping the identity of human settlements and communities.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 301</b> (2 Points) <b>Planning and Resource Management Law</b>
<b>PLANNING 210</b> Research and Methods for Policy Analysis Research methods and analytical techniques with practical applications for urban and regional planning.	(2 Points)	Public law relevant to public and private sector planning. Case studies and the Resource Management Act 1991.
<b>PLANNING 220</b> Studio 2 An integrative exercise involving land capability assessment, prescription and design.	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 302</b> (2 Points) <b>Environmental Issues</b>
<b>PLANNING 230</b> Introduction to Landscape The appreciation and interpretation of landscape values. Design in the development of landscape and the management of resources.	(1 Point)	Minimisation of effects upon the natural environment of the design and functioning of diverse human activities and developments.
<b>PLANNING 231</b> Landscape Planning	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 303</b> (2 Points) <b>Planning and Design</b>
		Relating design to the principle of planning for and with people. Urban form, development controls and the forces shaping human settlements. Perspectives on design theory and method, skills and practice.
		<b>PLANNING 310</b> (2 Points) <b>Methods for Policy Analysis</b>
		Methods for strategic environmental assessment, including economic and social effects.
		<b>PLANNING 320</b> (1 Point) <b>Studio 3A</b>
		An integrative exercise requiring the application of assessment methods to a complex planning issue.

<b>PLANNING 321</b> <b>Studio 3B</b>	(1 Point)	An investigation of an issue or technique relevant to planning.
The application of skills and methods to a complex planning situation.		
<b>PLANNING 330</b> <b>Planning for Community and Economic Development</b>	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 420</b> <b>Studio 4</b>
The public, private and non-profit sectors and community development. Case studies of planning for local and regional development.		(2 Points) Project work linked to planning and development of diverse environments. The application of advanced planning methodology to achieve policy objectives.
<b>PLANNING 331</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 430</b> <b>Settlement Design</b>
		(2 Points) A critique of traditional town development. Ecological settlement design. Sustainability and settlement design.
<b>PLANNING 332</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 431</b> <b>Special Topic: Cultural Planning</b>
		(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 333</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 432</b> <b>Special Topic: Peaceful Cities</b>
		(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 334</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 433</b> <b>Special Topic: Selected Aspects of Futures</b>
		(1 Point) An application of aspects of sustainable futures to an actual location or situation.
<b>PLANNING 335</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 434</b> <b>Special Topic</b>
		(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 336</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 435</b> <b>Special Topic</b>
		(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 337</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 436</b> <b>Special Topic</b>
		(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 338</b> <b>Special Topic: Geographic Information Systems</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 437</b> <b>Special Topic</b>
The role of geographic information systems in planning and monitoring urban and regional development, and acquisition of basic skills in their use.		(1 Point)
<b>PLANNING 339</b> <b>Special Topic</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 438</b> <b>Special Topic: Whaihanga Studio A</b>
Directed studies on topics approved by the Head of Department.		(1 Point) Whaihanga multidisciplinary Maori Studio applying aspects of planning, architecture, property management and design to a specific Maori/iwi case study.
<hr/>		
<b>Part IV</b>		
<b>PLANNING 400</b> <b>Planning Theories and Professional Practice</b>	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 439</b> <b>Special Topic: Whaihanga Studio B</b>
Theoretical approaches concerning the nature, scope and purpose of planning. Professional practice in public and private agencies. The roles and function of planners in society.		(1 Point) Whaihanga multidisciplinary Maori Studio, applying aspects of planning, architecture, property management and design to a specific Maori/iwi case study. This course further develops skills acquired in Whaihanga Studio A.
<b>PLANNING 401</b> <b>Sustainable Futures</b>	(1 Point)	<i>Prerequisite: PLANNING 300, 438, 704</i>
The study of futures. The role of futures and establishing long term goals in planning.		
<b>PLANNING 402</b> <b>Gender and Equity in Planning</b>	(1 Point)	<b>Master of Planning Practice</b>
Community and individual attitudes and values towards gender and equity issues, and their significance for planning.		
<b>PLANNING 403</b> <b>Housing</b>	(1 Point)	<b>PLANNING 700</b> <b>Planning Theory and Method</b>
Housing policy and practice. Attitudes and values to housing. Housing market critique; structure and functions.		(2 Points) A comparative exploration of the development of planning theories concepts and methods in the context of socio-economic and political change. New issues and debates.
<b>PLANNING 410</b> <b>Research Project</b>	(2 Points)	<b>PLANNING 701</b> <b>Advanced Planning and Design</b>
		(2 Points) The principles and practices of design within the theories and methods of planning.
		<b>PLANNING 702</b> <b>Legal and Institutional Context of Planning</b>
		(2 Points) An introduction to key statutes and legal concepts for planning and development in New Zealand.

- PLANNING 703 (2 Points)**  
**Infrastructure and Planning**  
 The role of physical and social infrastructure in urban and regional planning. Policies and requirements for the provision of infrastructure.
- PLANNING 704 (2 Points)**  
**Resource Management and Maori**  
 Maori attitudes and values towards the environment and resource management: traditional and contemporary. Tangata whenua views of public policy, planning and development. Institutional critiques.
- PLANNING 705 (2 Points)**  
**Theories and Practice for the Planning Professional**  
 The nature, scope and purpose of planning, relating advanced theoretical and practical perspectives. Professional roles, ethics, functions and practice in the context of public and private agencies.
- PLANNING 706 (1 Point)**  
**Futures in the Context of Sustainability**  
 The nature and role of the study of futures in planning.
- PLANNING 707 (1 Point)**  
**Planning's Response to Gender and Equity Issues**  
 The nature and significance of gender and equity issues for planning.
- PLANNING 708 (1 Point)**  
**Shelter, Housing and Society**  
 Policy and practice concerning the need for shelter. Attitudes and values to housing. The structure and function of the housing market.
- PLANNING 709 (2 Points)**  
**Resource Management and Planning Law**  
 Legislation and case law relevant to public and private sector planning, with particular reference to the Resource Management Act 1991 and related statutes.
- PLANNING 710 (2 Points)**  
**Methods and Practices for Policy Development**  
 Research, analytical techniques and practical applications for developing policy related to planning issues.
- PLANNING 711 (2 Points)**  
**Methods for Policy Assessment in Planning**  
 Strategic environmental assessment, including the analysis of economic and social implications of policy.
- PLANNING 712 (2 Points)**  
**Research Project**  
 An original investigation of an issue or technique relevant to planning.
- PLANNING 720 (1 Point)**  
**Studio 1**  
 An introduction to the professional skills base of planning. Practical policy and plan-making methods.
- PLANNING 721 (1 Point)**  
**Studio 2**  
 The application of skills and methods to produce a case study.
- PLANNING 722 (2 Points)**  
**Studio 3**  
 Project work for the management of complex urban planning issues, discussion and application of advanced planning methodology, regulatory and alternative means to achieve policy objectives.
- PLANNING 730 (2 Points)**  
**Designing Settlements**  
 Traditional town development in relation to contemporary attitudes in planning, including the application of ecological principles.
- PLANNING 731 (2 Points)**  
**Community and Economic Development**  
 Community development and the initiatives available for action by public, private and non-profit sectors. Case studies of planning for local and regional development.
- PLANNING 732 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic**
- PLANNING 733 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Introduction to Landscape**
- PLANNING 734 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Pacific Development Issues**  
*The above Special Topic courses are specified by the Head of Department in cases where courses gained from a previous degree have included a part or all of a core Planning course in Part I for which an exemption may be granted.*
- PLANNING 735 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic**
- PLANNING 736 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Selected Aspects of Futures**  
 An application of aspects of sustainable futures to an actual location or situation.
- PLANNING 737 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Skills for Conserving the Natural Environment**  
 The effects of human settlement and resource use upon soils, water, air and ecosystems. Skills to minimise adverse effects.
- PLANNING 738 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Landscape Planning**
- PLANNING 739 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic**  
 Directed studies on topics approved by the Head of Department.
- PLANNING 740A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 740B (1 Point)**  
**Graduate Case Studies 1**  
 The further development of theory, techniques and practice in planning, based on knowledge, issues and cases introduced in the other core planning and substitute courses.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 740 A and B*
- PLANNING 741A (1 Point)**  
**PLANNING 741B (1 Point)**  
**Graduate Case Studies 2**  
 The further development of theory, techniques and practice in planning, based on knowledge, issues and cases introduced in the other core planning and

substitute courses.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 741 A and B

**Master of Planning**

PLANNING 750A (1 Point)

PLANNING 750B (1 Point)

**Advanced Planning Theory**

The theoretical frontiers of planning and development, with particular relevance to contemporary practice. Case studies will be used to identify theoretical issues.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 750 A and B

PLANNING 751A (1 Point)

PLANNING 751B (1 Point)

**Equity Issues and Planning**

Contemporary social and Treaty issues in New Zealand. The social and economic impact of policy and plans on particular groups' needs for planning, equity and effective partnership.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 751 A and B

PLANNING 752A (1 Point)

PLANNING 752B (1 Point)

**Advanced Planning Techniques**

The evolution of planning techniques and their applicability for contemporary planning practice by public and private sector organisations. Critiques of techniques to be grounded in case studies.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 752 A and B

PLANNING 753A (1 Point)

PLANNING 753B (1 Point)

**Planning Issues**

A case study approach to current planning and resource management issues, examining the place of policy development, law, institutional factors, and evaluative methods.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 753 A and B

PLANNING 754A (1 Point)

PLANNING 754B (1 Point)

**Environmental Issues and Planning**

Case studies of contemporary environmental issues, with particular emphasis on ecological and social processes as the basis for managing the use, development and protection of the environment.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 754 A and B

PLANNING 755A (1 Point)

PLANNING 755B (1 Point)

**Advanced Planning and Resource Management Law**

Contemporary New Zealand and international law and its application to planning and resource management. Case studies relating relevant law to current issues in planning and resource management.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 755 A and B

PLANNING 756A (1 Point)

PLANNING 756B (1 Point)

**Urban Design and Planning**

Traditional and contemporary design theory and

methods, and their implications for today's design skills and practice, with particular emphasis on the planning of urban environments.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 756 A and B

PLANNING 757A (1 Point)

PLANNING 757B (1 Point)

**Heritage Conservation Planning**

Contemporary practice in heritage conservation planning, examining the roles of public institutions, private organisations, and the community, the influences of Maoritanga, other cultural traditions and legislation.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 757 A and B

PLANNING 758A (1 Point)

PLANNING 758B (1 Point)

**Development and Planning for Small Economies**

The theoretical and applied basis for planning and development in the context of small economies, with particular emphasis on the needs of the South-West Pacific region.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 758 A and B

PLANNING 759A (1 Point)

PLANNING 759B (1 Point)

**Tourism Planning**

The theory and practice of planning for recreation and tourism, with case studies which examine the opportunities for tourism development and the resolution of conflicting perceptions over the use, development and protection of the environment.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 759 A and B

PLANNING 760A (1 Point)

PLANNING 760B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 760 A and B

PLANNING 761A (1 Point)

PLANNING 761B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 761 A and B

PLANNING 762A (1 Point)

PLANNING 762B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 762 A and B

PLANNING 763A (1 Point)

PLANNING 763B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 763 A and B

PLANNING 764A (1 Point)

PLANNING 764B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 764 A and B

PLANNING 765A (1 Point)

PLANNING 765B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 765 A and B

**PLANNING 766A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 766B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 766 A and B

**PLANNING 767A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 767B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 767 A and B

**PLANNING 768A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 768B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 768 A and B

**PLANNING 769A** (1 Point)  
**PLANNING 769B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic: Research Thesis Proposal and Research Methodology**

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 769 A and B

**PLANNING 770A** (2 Points)  
**PLANNING 770B** (2 Points)

**Case Study Report**

A description and critical analysis of a significant planning issue.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 770 A and B

**PLANNING 780** (8 Points)

**PLANNING 780A** (4 Points)  
**PLANNING 780B** (4 Points)

**Research Project**

A project involving research in a planning subject. The project may be a design study, a technological or historical investigation, an experimental or theoretical topic, the development of a new planning procedure or the development of a computer package.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 780 A and B, or Planning 780

**PLANNING 797A** (7 Points)  
**PLANNING 797B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

An original piece of research.

To complete this course students must enrol in PLANNING 797 A and B

---

## Property

---

**Part I**

**PROPERTY 101** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Property**

An introduction to the study of property for students majoring in subjects other than property.

*Restriction: PROPERTY 111 and 141*

**PROPERTY 111** (2 Points)  
**Valuation 1**

An introduction to the theory and current operational procedures in the practice of urban

valuation, residential land tenure and residential property markets in New Zealand. Topics include: the application of valuation models to residential land (improved and unimproved), single unit properties, multi-unit properties, and subdivisible land.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 141*

**PROPERTY 141** (2 Points)  
**Construction**

An introduction to residential and low-rise commercial and industrial construction.

---

**Part II**

**PROPERTY 211** (2 Points)  
**Valuation 2**

The theory, models, and current operational procedures (including cash flow analysis, company asset, statutory and insurance issues) in the practice of non-residential urban property valuation. Topics include: the application of valuation models to commercial and industrial land, developed commercial and industrial properties, strip retail, urban fringe properties asset and practice valuation standards and insurance valuations.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 111 and 141*

*Corequisite: PROPERTY 251*

**PROPERTY 221** (2 Points)  
**Property Marketing**

A study of marketing and its application to real estate. Topics include: buyer behaviour, marketing research, segmentation and targeting, the marketing plan, the listing process, and selling techniques.

**PROPERTY 231** (2 Points)  
**Property Management**

An introduction to property management theory through the study of its practical application in the building and operational management of owner-occupied and investment property. The management of residential and industrial property.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 and PROPERTY 111 and 141*

**PROPERTY 241** (2 Points)  
**Land Use Planning and Controls**

Provides an understanding of the Resource Management Act and Regional and District Plans and how these affect land use and subdivision as well as resource consent applications and other processes.

**PROPERTY 251** (2 Points)  
**Property Finance**

An overview of financial economics and the application of general theory to the analysis of property development and investment. Topics include: financial mathematics, discounted cash flow, investment appraisal, the risk/return trade-off and introductory portfolio theory.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 101*

**PROPERTY 261** (2 Points)  
**Property Economics**

An introduction to urban land economics and building economics.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 and PROPERTY 251*

**PROPERTY 271** (2 Points)  
**Property Law**

Covers a range of laws of particular relevance to the real estate, valuation and property management professions.

### Part III

#### PROPERTY 311 (2 Points) Valuation 3

The theory, models, and current operational procedures in the practice of valuing special categories of urban property. Topics include: valuations of CBD land and developed properties, shopping centres, hotels, apartments, leasehold valuations, statutory valuations (compulsory purchase), litigation, arbitration, properties, special purpose, infrastructural property valuations and professional ethics and practice.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 211, and 343 or 344*

#### PROPERTY 312 (2 Points) Plant and Machinery Valuation

Principles and practice of plant and machinery valuation, with case studies of insurance, market, existing use and infrastructural asset valuations.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 211 and 251*

#### PROPERTY 321 (2 Points) Advanced Property Marketing

The marketing of specialised properties and real estate services. Topics include: the preparation of marketing strategies, plans and market analysis.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 221*

#### PROPERTY 331 (2 Points) Advanced Property Management

Advanced property management theory through the study of its practical application in the strategic and estate management of property portfolios held in public and private ownership. The management of commercial and specialised property.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 231 and 251*

#### PROPERTY 333 (2 Points) Facilities Management

An introduction to facilities management.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 231*

#### PROPERTY 342 (2 Points) Property Development

An introduction to the process of property development, including application of analytical methods to case studies.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 241 and 251 and 261*

#### PROPERTY 344 (2 Points) Advanced Construction

An introduction to high-rise commercial and central business district construction.

*Restriction: PROPERTY 343*

#### PROPERTY 351 (2 Points) Advanced Property Finance and Investment

Advanced capital budgeting issues and application of investment appraisal techniques to property. Topics include: asset pricing models, capital structure decision, weighted average cost of capital and adjusted present value, property as an asset class, and financing and investment strategies.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 251*

#### PROPERTY 363 (2 Points)

##### Property Research Methods

Application of property research methods through a case study or studies.

*Prerequisite: STATS 108*

*Corequisite: PROPERTY 251 and 261*

*Restriction: PROPERTY 362*

#### PROPERTY 371 (2 Points)

##### Property Project

A research course or applied project on an approved topic.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY Part II*

#### PROPERTY 372 (2 Points)

##### Applied Valuation Project

An approved applied project in valuation.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 211*

#### PROPERTY 373 (2 Points)

##### Advanced Property Law

Advanced study of law of particular relevance to the real estate, valuation and property management professions.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 241 and 271*

#### PROPERTY 381 (2 Points)

##### Building Economics

An introduction to building economics with an emphasis on the economic theory and practice of maintenance, refurbishment and redevelopment.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 and PROPERTY 251*

#### PROPERTY 382 (2 Points)

##### Maori Land Issues

History of land conflicts in New Zealand, Waitangi Tribunal process, and development of portfolio management strategies.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY 241 and 271*

#### PROPERTY 383 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic

A seminar or individual course of study on a specialised aspect of property.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY Part II*

#### PROPERTY 384 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic

A seminar or individual course of study on a specialised aspect of property.

*Prerequisite: PROPERTY Part II*

### Diploma Courses

#### PROPERTY 671 (2 Points)

##### Research Project

A research project on an approved topic in property that may be used to prepare a literature review and research proposal for a dissertation or thesis.

*Prerequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763*

#### PROPERTY 691 (4 Points)

##### Dissertation

A dissertation on an approved topic in property.

*Prerequisite: At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763*

### Honours and Master's Courses

#### PROPERTY 713 (2 Points)

##### Seminar in Valuation

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of valuation.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 311

**PROPERTY 714 (2 Points)**

**Plant and Machinery Valuation**

Principles and practice of plant and machinery valuation. Includes case studies of insurance market, existing use and infrastructural asset valuations.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 312

**PROPERTY 723 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Property Marketing**

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property marketing.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 321

**PROPERTY 733 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Property Management**

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property management.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 331

**PROPERTY 734 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Facilities Management**

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of facilities management.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 333

**PROPERTY 743 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Property Development**

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property development.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 261 and 342 and, 343 or 344, and 351

**PROPERTY 753 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Property Finance and Investment**

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property finance and investment.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 351

**PROPERTY 763 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Property Economics**

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of property economics.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 261 and 351 and, 362 or 363

**PROPERTY 764 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Building Economics**

Advanced studies in the theory and practice of building economics.

*Prerequisite:* PROPERTY 381

**PROPERTY 783 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

A seminar or individual study on a specialised aspect of property.

*Prerequisite:* At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763

*Restriction:* PROPERTY 784

**PROPERTY 784 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

A seminar or individual study on a specialised aspect of property.

*Prerequisite:* At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763

*Restriction:* PROPERTY 783

**PROPERTY 788 (2 Points)**

**Honours Research Project**

To be used to prepare a research proposal and literature review for the Honours Dissertation.

*Prerequisite:* At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763

**PROPERTY 789 (4 Points)**

**Honours Dissertation**

A dissertation on a topic in property approved by the Head of Department.

*Prerequisite:* At least 4 points selected from PROPERTY 713-763

**PROPERTY 793A (7 Points)**

**PROPERTY 793B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

A Thesis for MProp students.

*Prerequisite:* At least 10 points selected from PROPERTY 713-784, and MKTG 703

To complete this course students must enrol in PROPERTY 793 A and B

**Visual Arts**

**Part I**

**VISARTS 150A (1.5 Points)**

**VISARTS 150B (1.5 Points)**

**Contextual Studies 1**

Investigation of a range of academic, visual arts-related material from: art history and theory, philosophy, sociology, political studies, architecture, cultural theory, English literature, and arts administration. Topics vary yearly in accordance with current trends in contemporary visual arts practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 150 A and B

**VISARTS 160A (1.5 Points)**

**VISARTS 160B (1.5 Points)**

**Drawing 1**

Exploration and practice of diverse media and approaches, from contemporary electronic technologies to traditional life drawing. Emphasis is placed on the use of drawing in visualising, exploring, interpreting and communicating ideas.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 160 A and B

**VISARTS 170A (4 Points)**

**VISARTS 170B (4 Points)**

**Studio 1**

Introduction to the research culture of visual arts practice through the exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer, with an emphasis on experimental and interdisciplinary outcomes.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 170 A and B

**Part II**

**VISARTS 250A (1 Point)**

**VISARTS 250B (1 Point)**

**Contextual Studies 2**

Introduction to and study of theories of modern art, and other topics selected from: post-modernism,

contemporary Pacific art, contemporary Maori art, systems of belief, introduction to philosophy, contemporary New Zealand art.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 250 A and B

**VISARTS 260A** (1 Point)  
**VISARTS 260B** (1 Point)

#### Drawing 2

Development of Drawing 1: further investigation of drawing as a means of personal expression. Depth of skills and knowledge is enhanced through a variety of elective drawing projects.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 260 A and B

**VISARTS 270A** (3 Points)  
**VISARTS 270B** (3 Points)

#### Major Studio 2

Individually planned programme, with content related to the student's requirements. Selected from: painting, printmaking, photography, moving image, three-dimensional concerns (leading to sculpture or jewellery in Studio 3), and design.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 270 A and B

**VISARTS 271** (2 Points)

#### Minor Studio 2A

Subjects may vary from year to year. Intended to complement Major Studio subjects and extend students' process knowledge and skills.

**VISARTS 272** (2 Points)

#### Minor Studio 2B

Subjects may vary from year to year. Intended to complement Major Studio subjects and extend students' process knowledge and skills.

### Part III

**VISARTS 350A** (1 Point)  
**VISARTS 350B** (1 Point)

#### Contextual Studies 3

Development of Professional Practice, and study of topics selected from: contemporary theory and philosophy, indigenous issues, contemporary media, western mythology, representation and gender.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 350 A and B

**VISARTS 360A** (1 Point)  
**VISARTS 360B** (1 Point)

#### Drawing 3

Development of Drawing 2, with an emphasis on the utilisation of drawing methodologies appropriate to individual art practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 360 A and B

**VISARTS 370A** (5 Points)  
**VISARTS 370B** (5 Points)

#### Major Studio 3

Development of Studio 2 in selected fields. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 370 A and B

### Part IV

**VISARTS 470A** (7 Points)

**VISARTS 470B** (7 Points)

#### Studio Practice

Synthesis of artistic activity within an area of personally identified interest, with in-depth contextual insight into the student's personal studio work.

To complete this course students must enrol in VISARTS 470 A and B

## Faculty of Arts

### Ancient History

#### Stage I

**ANCHIST 100** (2 Points)

#### Ancient Egyptian History

An introduction to the history and civilisation of ancient Egypt.

**ANCHIST 102** (2 Points)

#### Ancient Greek History

An introduction to Greek history and civilisation from the Archaic period to the death of Alexander the Great.

**ANCHIST 103** (2 Points)

#### Roman History

An introduction to the civilisation and history of Ancient Rome, with particular reference to the Republic and Early Empire.

#### Stage II

**ANCHIST 200** (2 Points)

#### Egypt in Dynasty XVIII

The internal organisation and foreign policy of the kings of the eighteenth dynasty c.1570-1320BC.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 300

**ANCHIST 202** (2 Points)

#### Greece and Persia

A study of the contacts and conflicts between Greece and Persia 560-323BC.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 302

**ANCHIST 203** (2 Points)

#### Rome in the High Empire

A study of the Roman Empire AD69-235. Special attention will be paid to government, society and religion.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 303

**ANCHIST 210** (2 Points)

#### Egyptian Language IA

A study of the Egyptian language, hieroglyphic writing and selected documents up to Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100

**ANCHIST 212** (2 Points)

#### Political Theory and Practice in Classical Athens

The political, social and intellectual developments of Athens 500-300 BC provide a context for study of

ideas about the Greek polis or city-state in ancient writers.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 312

**ANCHIST 213 (2 Points)**

**Individuals and the State in the Roman Republic**

A study of the growth of individual power in the Roman Republic and the consequent response by the Senate and Roman people.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 313

**ANCHIST 220 (2 Points)**

**Egyptian Language IB**

Further study of the Egyptian language, hieroglyphic writing and selected documents up to Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 210

**ANCHIST 222 (2 Points)**

**Ancient Greek Tyranny**

A study of the lives and achievements of individual tyrants in order to establish the causes and effects of the phenomenon of tyranny; and an evaluation of Greek views of tyranny.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 322

**ANCHIST 230 (2 Points)**

**Egypt in Dynasties XI–XVII**

A study of the reunification of Egypt at the end of the First Intermediate Period, and of the Middle Kingdom – the collapse of Dynasty 12, loss of unity in Dynasty 13, the Hyksos rule; reunification at the start of Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 100

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 330

**ANCHIST 250 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102 or 103

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 350

**Stage III**

**ANCHIST 300 (2 Points)**

**Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

A study of the internal organisation and foreign policy of the kings of the 18th dynasty c.1570–1320BC.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 230 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 200

**ANCHIST 302 (2 Points)**

**Greece and Persia**

A study of the contacts and conflicts between Greece and Persia 560–323BC.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 212 or 222, and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 202

**ANCHIST 303 (2 Points)**

**Rome in the High Empire**

A study of the Roman Empire AD 69–235. Special attention will be paid to government, society and religion.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 213 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 203

**ANCHIST 310 (2 Points)**

**Egyptian Language IIA**

Hieroglyphic writing and a study of texts of Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 220 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

**ANCHIST 312 (2 Points)**

**Political Theory and Practice in Classical Athens**

The political, social and intellectual developments of Athens 600–300 BC provide a context for the study of ideas about the Greek polis or city-state in ancient writers.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 202 or 222, and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 212

**ANCHIST 313 (2 Points)**

**Individuals and the State in the Roman Republic**

A study of the growth of individual power in the Roman Republic and the consequent response by the Senate and the Roman people.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 203 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 213

**ANCHIST 314 (2 Points)**

**Historians of Rome**

A study of the Greek and Latin writers on Roman history in English translation; writers will include Livy, Sallust, Caesar and Tacitus.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 103 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 753

**ANCHIST 322 (2 Points)**

**Ancient Greek Tyranny**

A study of the lives and achievements of individual Greek tyrants in order to establish the causes and effects of the phenomenon of tyranny; and an evaluation of Greek views of tyranny.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 202 or 212, and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 222

**ANCHIST 324 (2 Points)**

**Historians of Greece**

A study of the Greek writers on Greek history in English translation; writers will include Herodotus, Thucydides and Xenophon.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 752

**ANCHIST 330 (2 Points)**

**Egypt in Dynasties XI–XVII**

A study of the reunification of Egypt at the end of the First Intermediate Period, and of the Middle Kingdom – the collapse of Dynasty 12, loss of unity in Dynasty 13, the Hyksos rule, reunification at the start of Dynasty 18.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

*Restriction:* ANCHIST 230

**ANCHIST 340 (2 Points)**

**Egyptian Language IIB**

This course will look at hieroglyphic writing and a study of texts of the Middle Kingdom.

*Prerequisite:* ANCHIST 220 and 2 points at Stage II in Ancient History

<b>ANCHIST 350</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b> <i>Prerequisite: ANCHIST 102 or 103, and 4 points at Stage II in Ancient History</i> <i>Restriction: ANCHIST 250</i>	<b>ANCHIST 716</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
<b>ANCHIST 377</b> (2 Points) <b>Ancient History Study Abroad</b> Study abroad on archaeological sites in Greece, Italy and the Mediterranean area. <i>Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II ANCHIST and permission of the Head of Department</i> <i>Restriction: CLASSICS 377</i>	<b>ANCHIST 717</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
<hr/> <b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>	<b>ANCHIST 718</b> (2-Points) <b>Special Topic</b>
<b>ANCHIST 700A</b> (2 Points)	<b>ANCHIST 719A</b> (2 Points)
<b>ANCHIST 700B</b> (2 Points) <b>Egypt in the Middle and New Kingdoms</b> A study of aspects of the social and economic history of Egypt in the stated period. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 700 A and B</i>	<b>ANCHIST 719B</b> (2 Points) <b>Directed Study in Ancient History</b> Special directed study in an approved area of Ancient History. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 719 A and B</i>
<b>ANCHIST 702A</b> (2 Points)	<b>ANCHIST 720A</b> (2 Points)
<b>ANCHIST 702B</b> (2 Points) <b>Graeco-Roman Egypt from Alexander to Augustus</b> A study of Egypt from 331 to 31 BC, focusing on government, society and religion under the Ptolemies. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 702 A and B</i>	<b>ANCHIST 720B</b> (2 Points) <b>Political History of the Ramesside Period</b> An examination of the history of Egypt in Dynasties 19 and 20. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 720 A and B</i>
<b>ANCHIST 703A</b> (2 Points)	<b>ANCHIST 722A</b> (2 Points)
<b>ANCHIST 703B</b> (2 Points) <b>Roman Imperialism: Motivation, Justification, Images of Empire</b> A study of ideas which motivated and justified imperial expansion under the Roman Republic. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 703 A and B</i>	<b>ANCHIST 722B</b> (2 Points) <b>A Topic in Spartan History</b> A study of a period of time or of selected topics in the history of Sparta 800-362 BC. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 722 A and B</i>
<b>ANCHIST 705A</b> (2 Points)	<b>ANCHIST 723A</b> (2 Points)
<b>ANCHIST 705B</b> (2 Points) <b>Documents/Texts in Ancient History I</b> Passages in the original ancient languages (Egyptian, Greek or Latin) will be set for translation, study and interpretation. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 705 A and B</i>	<b>ANCHIST 723B</b> (2 Points) <b>Origins and Nature of Roman Imperial Cult</b> An examination of the history of ruler cult in Greece and Rome, with special reference to developments of the Late Republic and Early Empire. The religious and philosophical backgrounds feature prominently. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 723 A and B</i>
<b>ANCHIST 706A</b> (2 Points)	<b>ANCHIST 740A</b> (1 Point)
<b>ANCHIST 706B</b> (2 Points) <b>Documents/Texts in Ancient History II</b> Passages in the original ancient languages (Egyptian, Greek or Latin) will be set for translation, study and interpretation. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 706 A and B</i>	<b>ANCHIST 740B</b> (1 Point) <b>Egyptian Language Study</b> Passages in the Egyptian language relating to the thesis topic will be set for translation and explanation. <i>Corequisite: ANCHIST 794 A and B</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 740 A and B</i>
<b>ANCHIST 707A</b> (2 Points)	<b>ANCHIST 742A</b> (1 Point)
<b>ANCHIST 707B</b> (2 Points) <b>Art and Propaganda in Egypt</b> A detailed study of the wall reliefs and accompanying inscriptions from Ancient Egypt, from Unification to the end of the Ptolemaic period. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 707 A and B</i>	<b>ANCHIST 742B</b> (1 Point) <b>Greek Language Study</b> Passages in the Greek language relating to the thesis topic will be set for translation and explanation. <i>Corequisite: ANCHIST 794 A and B</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 742 A and B</i>
<b>ANCHIST 715</b> (2 Points) <b>Special Topic</b>	<b>ANCHIST 743A</b> (1 Point)
	<b>ANCHIST 743B</b> (1 Point) <b>Latin Language Study</b> Passages in the Latin language relating to the thesis topic will be set for translation and explanation. <i>Corequisite: ANCHIST 794 A and B</i> <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 743 A and B</i>
	<b>ANCHIST 752</b> (4 Points) <b>Historians of Greece</b>

A study of the Greek writers on Greek History. The authors will include Herodotus, Thucydides and Xenophon.

Restriction: ANCHIST 324

**ANCHIST 753 (4 Points)**  
**Historians of Rome**

A study of the Greek and Latin writers on Roman History. The authors will include Livy, Sallust, Caesar and Tacitus.

Restriction: ANCHIST 314

**ANCHIST 762A (2 Points)**  
**ANCHIST 762B (2 Points)**

**Women in Ancient Greece**

An historical study of women with reference to their treatment in law and literature (especially history), art and myth, and particular attention to the nature of the evidence.

To complete this course student must enrol in ANCHIST 762 A and B

**ANCHIST 774A (1 Point)**  
**ANCHIST 774B (1 Point)**

**Research Essays in Ancient History**

Guided individual study leading to essays on subjects related to other courses being taken by the student in Ancient History for BA(Hons).

To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 774 A and B

**ANCHIST 780A (1 Point)**  
**ANCHIST 780B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 780 A and B

**ANCHIST 790A (2 Points)**  
**ANCHIST 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 790 A and B

**ANCHIST 792A (3 Points)**  
**ANCHIST 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 792 A and B

**ANCHIST 794A (5 Points)**  
**ANCHIST 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis**

Corequisite: ANCHIST 740 A and B, or ANCHIST 742 A and B, or ANCHIST 743 A and B

To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 794 A and B

**ANCHIST 797A (7 Points)**  
**ANCHIST 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in ANCHIST 797 A and B

## Anthropology

### Stage I

**ANTHRO 100 (2 Points)**  
**Human Cultures: Introduction to Social Anthropology**

Humans are social and cultural beings. This course provides an understanding of human lives. Basic concepts and approaches are covered.

**ANTHRO 101 (2 Points)**

**World Archaeology**

World archaeology from the emergence of culture to the first cities, including the Pacific region.

**ANTHRO 102 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Biological Anthropology**

Who was Lucy and what is a hominid? What can studying monkeys and apes tell us about our evolutionary past? An introduction to the range of topics addressed and approaches used in the biological study of the human species. Topics covered include: an introduction to evolutionary theory, the most recent evidence of the fossil remains of our ancestors, studies of primate evolution and behaviour, and understanding patterns of modern human variation.

**ANTHRO 103 (2 Points)**

**Musics of the World**

A broad survey of the world's music cultures covering North and South America; Africa; Europe; South, East, and South-East Asia; and the Pacific. Special attention will be given to the musics of the Pacific Islands, New Zealand and Australia.

**ANTHRO 104 (2 Points)**

**Peoples and Cultures of the Pacific**

A survey of the peoples of Pacific Islands through the perspectives of archaeology, biological anthropology, ethnomusicology, linguistics and social anthropology.

### Stage II

**ANTHRO 200 (2 Points)**

**Archaeology: Understanding the Past**

An examination of current concepts in archaeological research and their place in the development of archaeological thought. How archaeology makes use of its methods and theories to understand the past. An introductory laboratory component. This course is essential for students who may wish to continue their study of Archaeology at Stage III.

Prerequisite: ANTHRO 101 and ANTHRO 100 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 201 (2 Points)**

**Human Evolution**

The study of human evolution, including recent advances in fossil, molecular, primate and ecological approaches.

Prerequisite: ANTHRO 102 and ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 203 (2 Points)**

**Theoretical Approaches to Society and Culture**

A survey of some of the key anthropological theories used to analyse human social life, discussed by reference to cross-cultural studies. Also considers current debates/issues within the discipline.

Prerequisite: ANTHRO 100 and ANTHRO 101 or 102 or 103, or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 204 (2 Points)**

**Ethnography of Island Polynesia**

What is distinctive about Polynesian culture and society? How and why are Polynesian cultures alike? How are they different? In what ways are Fiji, Samoa, Tikopia, Tokelau and Tonga different or

similar to other Oceanic cultures? Anthropological studies of these questions will be explored through indigenous Polynesian, anthropological and historical accounts.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 100 or 104, or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 206 (2 Points)**  
**Origins of Civilisation**

This course investigates the rise of civilisation in the Near-East, China, the Indus Valley and Mesoamerica. Topics include: recent research on the domestication of plants and animals, urbanisation, social complexity and state-level societies.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 101 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 207 (2 Points)**  
**Coming of the Maori and the Pakeha**

An introduction to New Zealand's archaeological history, from early Maori origins to the initial period of Western contact. Tropical Polynesian adaptations to New Zealand's temperate climate, Maori's rich material culture and arts, resource use and environmental change, development of classic Maori society, and the emerging field of historic archaeology are covered.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 101 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 209 (2 Points)**  
**Class and Culture**

The issue of the relationship between class and culture is examined with reference to both global and local processes relevant to New Zealand and Pacific Island societies.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 100 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 210 (2 Points)**  
**Ethnographies of the Contemporary Maori**

The history of ethnographic and other accounts of contemporary Maori society, examining the derivation of various social theories and their application to the Maori under changing political and economic circumstances in New Zealand since industrialisation.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 100 or MAORI 130 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 211 (2 Points)**  
**Anthropological Perspectives on Gender**

Gender as a cultural construction has been a dynamic field of anthropological inquiry for the past two decades. How do various peoples exhibit and conceptualise gender differences? How have anthropologists studied them?

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 214 (2 Points)**  
**Music of Africa**

The study of traditional and popular African musics south of Sahara.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 103 or 8 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 334*

**ANTHRO 215 (2 Points)**  
**Human Sexuality**

Human sexuality and sexual behaviour explored from a variety of perspectives within anthropology. Topics include: the evolution of sex, cross-cultural variation in sexual behaviour, sex and the brain, sex

through the life course, and the impact of sexually transmitted diseases.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 102 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 219 (2 Points)**  
**Contemporary Perspectives on Music and Culture**

Examines the multiple roles and meanings of music in human culture through consideration of specific musical instances and music-culture case studies. Views music as an independent creative art form and as a symbolic component of cultural expression, as well as a paradigm for cultural structures and behaviours. Considers the field of Ethnomusicology from the perspectives of anthropology and musicology, among other disciplines.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 103 or 104 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 221 (2 Points)**  
**European Prehistory: From Cave Art to the Celts**

An overview of major developments in the prehistory of Europe, including the British Isles, from Palaeolithic art to the Iron Age ending with the Vikings. Emphasis will be on significant, well-studied sites, archaeological treasures, population movements and interactions which help us to understand European heritage.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 101 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 222 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Anthropology: Human Biodiversity**

The study of modern human biology focusing on variation and adaptability at the molecular, individual and population levels. Topics include: nutrition, growth and development, environmental effects on human biology, and concepts of genetic variation including race.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 102 or 8 points passed*

**ANTHRO 232 (2 Points)**  
**The Music of Japan**

The study of the traditional narrative and dramatic music traditions in the context of their related theatre genres (Noh, Bunraku, Kabuki, etc.). Attention will also be paid to associated lyric musical styles.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 103 or 8 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 332*

**ANTHRO 233 (2 Points)**  
**The Music of India**

The study of selected musics from the Indian sub-continent, including traditional, religious, and street musics, classical vocal and instrumental styles, and the popular musics of the commercial cinema and music industries.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 103 or 8 points passed*

*Restriction: ANTHRO 333*

**ANTHRO 234 (2 Points)**  
**Popular Musics of the Pacific**

From Hip Hop to Reggae to pop, this course explores Pacific popular music genre, artists and songs as well as relevant musical techniques, modes of distribution, and processes of fusion and change. It probes the positions and possibilities of Pasifika pop musics by discussing critical questions about culture, authenticity, modernisation, consumerism, identity, and musical (ex)change.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 103, 104 or MUSIC 145*

**ANTHRO 238 (2 Points)****Musics of the Pacific**

The study of traditional and popular musics in Oceania, with particular reference to Polynesia: Samoa, Tonga, Niue, Tokelau, Hawaii, Tahiti, Marquesas, Cook Islands and Aotearoa.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 308

**ANTHRO 239 (2 Points)****The Music of Aboriginal Australia**

A survey of traditional and popular musics of Aboriginal Australia, with particular reference to Central Desert and North Australian regions.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 344

**ANTHRO 240 (2 Points)****Directed Studies in Anthropology**

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of anthropology under supervision of appropriate staff.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or permission of Head of Department

**ANTHRO 241 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Anthropology**

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or permission of Head of Department

**ANTHRO 242 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**ANTHRO 243 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Dance in Human Culture**

Selected dance traditions from around the world are used as case studies. The appropriate approach for dance study is expanded to include the context of dance and dance-connected behaviour, cultural and political references and related activities: music-making, oral narrative, graphic/iconic arts and body decoration. Special attention given to age-grade rituals, sex, indigenous perspectives, oral history, religion and censorship.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 or 101 or 102 or 103 or 104 or 8 points passed

**Stage III****ANTHRO 300 (2 Points)****History of Anthropology**

A historically contextualised perspective on anthropology as an integrated discipline from its origins to the mid-twentieth century. Organised thematically around ongoing debates, important figures and events, and changing research modes in the various subdisciplines in anthropology.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203, or 4 points at Stage II in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology, or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 302 (2 Points)****Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology**

Aspects of the history of archaeology and its influence upon current ideological and methodological issues. The origins of modern archaeology; origins of excavation and public museums; various approaches

and philosophical positions adopted by archaeologists, and used in archaeological classification.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 303 (2 Points)****Evolution of Human Behaviour**

A critical look at evolutionary models for various human and non-human primate behaviours. Is there evidence of a biological basis for co-operation? How about dominance, infanticide, warfare, racism or sexism?

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 304 (2 Points)****Contemporary Oceania**

Critical issues in the islands of the Pacific: political, economic, social, environmental and ideological.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 203 or PACIFIC 201 and ANTHRO 204, or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 305 (2 Points)****Ancient Civilisations of East and Southeast Asia**

The study of recent archaeological discoveries and of theoretical frameworks with particular reference to China, Japan, Thailand and islands of Southeast Asia.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 705

**ANTHRO 306 (2 Points)****Pacific Archaeology**

Archaeology, colonisation, trade, settlement patterns, emergence of complex society and ethnohistory of the region (except for New Zealand, which is covered by a separate course).

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 706

**ANTHRO 307 (2 Points)****Australian Aboriginal Archaeology**

Understanding the past and present of Aboriginal Australia through the study of archaeology, including the origins of the Australians, colonisation and adaptations to arid, temperate and tropical environments.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 200 or 203 or 16 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 707

**ANTHRO 308 (2 Points)****Advanced Studies in the Musics of the Pacific**

The study of selected musics from Oceania, highlighting issues of indigenous systems, colonisation, nationalism, forms of authority, and contemporary practice.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 238

**ANTHRO 309 (2 Points)****Quantitative Methods in Anthropology**

Introduction to analytical approaches to anthropological data, providing professional skills of particular interest to students considering post-graduate work. Topics include: quantitative research design, basic statistical concepts and methods, use of the SPSS computer package and a brief introduction to GIS using MapInfo. This course assumes only a limited mathematical background.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 16 points passed

- ANTHRO 311** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand Archaeology**  
 Case studies in the archaeology of New Zealand, from its beginnings to the present day.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 312** (2 Points)  
**The Cultural Conservation of Places**  
 The philosophy and practical implications of conserving places and objects as part of an Aotearoa/New Zealand identity.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 313** (2 Points)  
**Economic Anthropology**  
 Household and small-scale production, gift and commodity exchange in the context of contemporary economic change.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 314** (2 Points)  
**Ethnography of Contemporary New Zealand/Aotearoa**  
 The social anthropology of New Zealand, particularly Pakeha society. What are New Zealand communities like? How is identity maintained in a situation of diversity? How is inequality produced and maintained?  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 315** (2 Points)  
**Anthropology of Art**  
 Approaches to understanding artistic and aesthetic systems and symbolic meanings of arts within their sociocultural contexts. How are arts and museums used to create and maintain identity?  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 316** (2 Points)  
**Biological Anthropology in the Pacific**  
 Where did Pacific people come from? How did they adapt to their new environment? How did European contact affect their health and lives? What have been the impacts of urbanisation and westernisation? This course discusses the current theory and methods of Biological Anthropology as applied to the Pacific.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 317** (2 Points)  
**Field Methods in Archaeology**  
 Participation in a field school involving intensive introduction to all aspects of excavation and subsequent laboratory analysis and report preparation.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*  
*Restriction: ANTHRO 737*
- ANTHRO 318** (2 Points)  
**Approaches to Archaeological Science**  
 An introduction to the application of scientific techniques in archaeology. Topics covered will include: site location, dating, sourcing archaeological material, investigation of artefact manufacture and use, and study of archaeological sediments. Coursework will include a series of practical laboratories.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 319** (2 Points)  
**Religion, Magic and Myth**  
 Religious systems of belief and ritual performance; myth and meaning; religious experience; the role of religion and religious symbolism in social conflict and change; religion and religious symbolism in social conflict and change; religion and social identities.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 320** (2 Points)  
**Ethnographic Film and Photography**  
 Explores the uses of photography and film in the production and dissemination of anthropological knowledge. A goal of this course is to increase students' awareness of the choices that are made at all stages in the production of anthropological images. The course will also use ethnographic film and photography to consider issues of ethnographic representation more generally.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 219 or FTVMS 200 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 321** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Social Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 322** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 24 points passed*
- ANTHRO 323** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Ethnomusicology**  
*Prerequisite: 105.202 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 324** (2 Points)  
**Medical Anthropology**  
 Biological and social anthropological approaches to health, employing cross-cultural perspectives and critical analysis of health, illness and disease, health systems and health policy.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 201 or 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 325** (2 Points)  
**Aristocracy and Democracy in Tonga, Samoa and Fiji**  
 A critical survey of major structural tensions and political changes in Tonga, Samoa and Fiji.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or PACIFIC 201 and ANTHRO 204, or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 326** (2 Points)  
**Pacific Pathways**  
 Transformation of Pacific Island politics and economies, societies and ideologies as a consequence of migration. Emergence of Pacific Islander communities abroad. Links between homeland and overseas populations.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or PACIFIC 201 and ANTHRO 204, or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 328** (2 Points)  
**BioArchaeology**  
 A practical introduction to the archaeological analysis and interpretation of biological remains, emphasising faunal materials but also including macrobotanical remains and pollen.  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 331** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Social Anthropology**  
*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed*
- ANTHRO 332** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Studies in the Music of Japan**

The study of Japanese narrative and dramatic music traditions in the context of their related theatre genres (Noh, Bunraku, Kabuki, etc.). Special emphasis is given to musical procedures, music-text relationships and the social/narrative contexts of production. Attention will also be paid to associated lyric musical styles.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed  
*Restriction:* ANTHRO 232

**ANTHRO 333 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in the Music of India**

The study of selected musics from the Indian sub-continent, including traditional, religious, and street musics, classical vocal and instrumental styles, and the popular musics of the commercial cinema and music industries. The relationship between Indian cultural practice in India and in New Zealand will be considered.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed  
*Restriction:* ANTHRO 233

**ANTHRO 334 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in the Music of Africa**

The study of traditional and popular African musics south of the Sahara. Issues of colonialism, nationalism/regionalism, and the music-media relationship will be highlighted.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 219 or 16 points passed  
*Restriction:* ANTHRO 214

**ANTHRO 335 (2 Points)**

**Evolution of Human Physiology**

Discusses the evidence for interactions between human ecology, physiology, behaviour, health and reproduction. The evolutionary function of physiological responses to our physical and social ecology is addressed, as are the health risks encountered by 'people living at the extremes of natural or modern environments. The human evidence is complemented by studies of other extant primate species.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 336 (2 Points)**

**Race and Ethnicity**

Ideas and debates about racial and ethnic differences. How real are these differences? How are these cultural constructions related to economic, political and ideological forces? What are the relationships between race, ethnicity and identity?

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 337 (2 Points)**

**Birth, Death and Sex: Evolutionary Life History**

How do biology and culture affect our reproduction? What factors underlie the patterns of death and ageing and how is personal survival balanced against future reproduction? Using evolutionary theory and demographic anthropology, critical questions about individual development, reproductive ecology, parental investment, and population growth and decline are explored.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 338 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Archaeology: Modern Material Culture**

The interaction of material items and social life from an archaeological viewpoint.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 339 (2 Points)**

**Applied Anthropology and Development**

Anthropology of development and anthropology in development; anthropological critiques of the notion of 'development'; debates about anthropological praxis and ethics in development; case-based anthropological analyses of development interventions and methods and the applications of anthropological expertise.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 203 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 340 (2 Points)**

**Heritage Conservation in Aotearoa**

Equips students with an academic understanding of the field of conservation and provides a range of skills and perspectives, including questions dealing with ethical and scientific protocols.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 100 and 101, and ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or HERITAGE 200, or 16 points passed

*Corequisite:* With permission of Head of Department, students may enrol in ANTHRO 340 taking HERITAGE 200 as a corequisite

**ANTHRO 341 (2 Points)**

**Anthropology of Tourism**

In what ways do cultural tourism and eco-tours impact host cultures, and what are the natures of cross-cultural exchanges between hosts and guests? This course investigates areas of cultural heritage; support for and transformations of artistic productions; host-guest interactions; the political economy of tourism; and ecological and environmental issues. Asian-Pacific and Maori case studies are emphasised within a global frame.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 203 or HERITAGE 200 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 342 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Anthropology**

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 201 or 16 points passed

**ANTHRO 343 (2 Points)**

**Global Interactions in Popular Music**

Studies selected examples and genres within the range of musics labelled 'world beat' or 'world musics'. Focuses on popular music fusions of distinct musical traditions with trans-national marketing practices and 'mainstream' popular music styles. Theorises these musical styles and trends in relation to constructions of local and global cultures, considering issues of representation, orientalism, exoticism, homogenisation, and exploitation, as well as questions of tradition and authenticity, commodification and control.

**ANTHRO 344 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in the Music of Aboriginal Australia**

The study of selected musics from Aboriginal Australia, highlighting issues of indigenous systems, religious belief and practice, music and land rights, forms of authority, and contemporary practice.

*Prerequisite:* 105.202 or ANTHRO 219

*Restriction:* ANTHRO 239

**ANTHRO 345 (2 Points)**

**Directed Studies in Anthropology**

A directed reading and individual study course to

prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of anthropology under supervision of appropriate staff.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 219 or 203 or 105.202 and permission of Head of Department*

**ANTHRO 346 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Anthropology**

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 219 or 203 or 105.202 and permission of Head of Department*

**ANTHRO 347 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Anthropology**

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 200 or 201 or 203 or 219 or 16 points passed*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ANTHRO 700A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 700B (2 Points)**

**Method and Theory in Archaeology**

A critical review of current themes and issues in archaeological method and theory.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 700 A and B*

**ANTHRO 701A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 701B (2 Points)**

**Prehistoric Ecology and Economics**

Critical survey of methods, theories, and problems in human palaeoecology, including issues of resource use, landscape change, island colonisation, and anthropogenic extinctions.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 701 A and B*

**ANTHRO 702 (2 Points)**

**Research Design in Archaeology**

Designed to introduce students to procedures used in the definition of a research problem, development and implementation of research design and the presentation of results. The course is intended to help students in identifying topics for theses and dissertations.

**ANTHRO 703A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 703B (2 Points)**

**Landscape Archaeology**

Uses geographic information systems (GIS) and other computer programmes to examine the spatial organisation of data, and the relationship of archaeological sites both to other sites and the environment. The social processes underlying these spatial configurations will be a particular focus.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 703 A and B*

**ANTHRO 704A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 704B (2 Points)**

**Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology**

The use of experimental and ethnographic approaches to archaeological interpretation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 704 A and B*

**ANTHRO 705 (4 Points)**

**Ancient Civilisations of East and Southeast Asia**

The processes of early state formation in East and Southeast Asia.

*Restriction: ANTHRO 305*

**ANTHRO 706 (4 Points)**

**Pacific Archaeology**

Archaeology, colonisation, trade, settlement patterns, emergence of complex society and ethnohistory of the region.

*Restriction: ANTHRO 306*

**ANTHRO 707 (4 Points)**

**Australian Aboriginal Archaeology and Society**

The past and present of Aboriginal Australia seen through archaeological and anthropological studies.

*Restriction: ANTHRO 307*

**ANTHRO 708A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 708B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Archaeology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 708 A and B*

**ANTHRO 710A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 710B (2 Points)**

**Theory in Biological Anthropology**

A critical review of theoretical issues in Biological Anthropology, including evolutionary theory, adaptation and adaptability, population biology, and biocultural frameworks.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 710 A and B*

**ANTHRO 711A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 711B (2 Points)**

**Research Methods in Biological Anthropology**

Critical approaches to research development and evaluation of research design in Biological Anthropology, including application of theory to research questions and developing a proposal for research.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 711 A and B*

**ANTHRO 712 (4 Points)**

**Topic in Biological Anthropology**

**ANTHRO 713 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

**ANTHRO 715A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 715B (2 Points)**

**Critical Approaches to Development and Social and Cultural Change**

An examination of selected theoretical issues arising in ethnography and policy with a view to the currently important relationship between culture, history and political economy.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 715 A and B*

**ANTHRO 716 (4 Points)**

**Topics in the Anthropology of the Pacific**

Studies of Pacific peoples and cultures addressing current anthropological issues and debates.

**ANTHRO 717 (4 Points)**

**Symbolic Anthropology**

Survey of anthropological theories of symbolism and semiotics.

**ANTHRO 720A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 720B (2 Points)**

**Anthropology and History**

How is the past conceptualised and historical

Schedule of Prescriptions  
For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

information transmitted in different cultures? In what ways do anthropology and history intersect?

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 720 A and B

**ANTHRO 721A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 721B (2 Points)**

#### Research Methods in Social Anthropology

Critical approaches to research development and evaluation of research design in Social Anthropology, including application of theory to research questions and developing a proposal for research.

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 721 A and B

**ANTHRO 722 (4 Points)**

#### Topic in Social Anthropology

**ANTHRO 723A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 723B (2 Points)**

#### Global Cultures

Relationships between global politico-economic forces and local cultures. The global movement of ideas and artefacts. Students will have the opportunity to concentrate on their preferred geographical or thematic areas.

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 723 A and B

**ANTHRO 724 (4 Points)**

#### Special Topic in Social Anthropology

**ANTHRO 725 (4 Points)**

#### Special Topic in Social Anthropology

**ANTHRO 727A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 727B (2 Points)**

#### Theory and Method in Ethnomusicology

The theory and practice of ethnomusicology, including: issues of analysis, ethnography, religion, the media, popular music, status and identity, politics and control, organology, drama, narrative, gender and aesthetics. A variety of coursework assignments provides practical experience in fieldwork-based activities and written projects.

Prerequisite: ANTHRO 308 and one of ANTHRO 332 or 333 or 334

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 727 A and B

**ANTHRO 728 (4 Points)**

#### Topic in Ethnomusicology

**ANTHRO 729 (2 Points)**

#### Special Studies in Anthropology

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of Anthropology, under supervision of appropriate staff.

**ANTHRO 730A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 730B (2 Points)**

#### Biological Anthropology Laboratory

A practical introduction to some of the methods currently used in Biological Anthropology, including behavioural observation, molecular anthropology, human osteology, growth and development and various analytical methods.

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 730 A and B

**ANTHRO 731A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 731B (2 Points)**

#### Advanced Social Anthropology

Foundational and current works in social anthropological theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 731 A and B

**ANTHRO 732 (2 Points)**

#### Reading Medical Ethnography

Examines the social anthropological practice of ethnography of health and illness in community and clinical settings including 'non-western' and 'western' cultural contexts, through critical readings of recent ethnographies in medical anthropology. Considers ethnographic and anthropological theory, ethics, methodology and application.

**ANTHRO 735 (4 Points)**

#### Special Topic in Anthropology

**ANTHRO 736 (4 Points)**

**ANTHRO 736A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 736B (2 Points)**

#### Special Studies in Anthropology

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of Anthropology, under supervision of appropriate staff.

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 736 A and B, or ANTHRO 736

**ANTHRO 737 (2 Points)**

#### Graduate Field Methods in Archaeology

Participation in a field school involving an intensive introduction to all aspects of excavation and subsequent laboratory analysis and report preparation. This course consists of a two-week field trip prior to or during Semester I, followed by laboratory sessions and seminars.

Restriction: ANTHRO 317

**ANTHRO 738 (2 Points)**

#### Special Topics in Anthropology

**ANTHRO 739 (2 Points)**

#### Special Studies in Anthropology

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students in the methodologies in a selected sub-discipline of Anthropology under supervision of appropriate staff.

**ANTHRO 740 (2 Points)**

#### Special Topics in Anthropology

**ANTHRO 780A (2 Points)**

**ANTHRO 780B (2 Points)**

#### Honours Dissertation

A topic in one of the sub-disciplines of Anthropology to be selected in consultation with staff.

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 780 A and B

**ANTHRO 792A (3 Points)**

**ANTHRO 792B (3 Points)**

#### Dissertation

A topic in one of the sub-disciplines of Anthropology to be selected in consultation with staff.

To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 792 A and B

<b>ANTHRO 796A</b>	(7 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 796B</b>	(7 Points)
<b>Thesis</b>	
A topic in one of the sub-disciplines of Anthropology to be selected in consultation with staff.	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 796 A and B</i>	
<b>ANTHRO 797A</b>	(7 Points)
<b>ANTHRO 797B</b>	(7 Points)
<b>Research Portfolio</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in ANTHRO 797 A and B</i>	

## Art History

### Stage I

<b>ARTHIST 101</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Art and Society in Renaissance Italy</b>	
A study of the art and architecture of Renaissance Italy in its social context during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.	
<b>ARTHIST 102</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Introduction to Maori Art</b>	
An introduction to Maori and other Polynesian arts.	
<b>ARTHIST 103</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Introduction to New Zealand Art</b>	
Includes landscape, representations of Maori and regionalism, among other topics.	
<b>ARTHIST 104</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Realism, Impressionism, Post-Impressionism</b>	
An introduction to the major art movements of mid to late nineteenth century European art, from realism to symbolism.	
<b>ARTHIST 105</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Art of the 20th Century in Europe and the USA</b>	
An introduction to the major art movements of the twentieth century in Europe and America.	
<b>ARTHIST 108</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Auckland Architecture since 1840</b>	
An introduction to architecture and interior design in Auckland, from European settlement to the present, contextualised within the broader picture of New Zealand practice and outside influences. Teaching will include site visits.	
<b>ARTHIST 111</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Ways of Seeing</b>	
An introduction to the skills of Art History, such as visual and iconographical analysis, and to the variety of ways artworks can be read by different viewers and in different socio-historical contexts. The course draws on painting, sculptures, architecture and other visual forms from a variety of places and cultures, from ancient times to the present.	
<b>ARTHIST 112</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Issues in Art History</b>	
Examines emerging questions and topical issues as an introduction to Art History in relation to a chosen subject area.	

### Stage II

<b>ARTHIST 201</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Neo-Classicism and Romanticism</b>	
A study of topics in eighteenth and early nineteenth century art in Europe.	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 203</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Northern European Art 1400-1600</b>	
A survey of art in Northern Europe with the focus on developments in painting and sculpture. Artists include Van Eyck, H. Bosch and Pieter Brueghel.	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 204</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Contemporary Art and Theory</b>	
Selected topics in late twentieth century art and theory, including film and video.	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or FTVMS 101</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 205</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Contemporary Maori and Polynesian Art</b>	
Maori and other Polynesian art since 1950. In addition to study of individual artists and their works, issues such as appropriation and biculturalism will be discussed.	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History or MAORI 130</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 207</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Women, the Arts, Gender and Representation</b>	
Introduction to the situation and work of women artists from the mediaeval period to the present, and to the issues of women and the art/craft dichotomy and gender and representation.	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 209</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Special Topic: Indigenous Women's Art</b>	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 210</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Modernism and Design</b>	
A study of the central role played by architecture and design within the Modern Period. The main focus will be on Europe and the United States.	
<i>Prerequisite: 4 points in Art History at Stage I</i>	
<i>Restriction: 114.106, ARTHIST 310</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 211</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Reading Landscape Art</b>	
Landscape art, which emerged in Europe in the seventeenth century, explored aesthetic qualities associated with nature, but also represented social values, as in English gardens and paintings which were signifiers of wealth and status, and of economic and political change in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.	
<i>Prerequisite: 4 points in Art History at Stage I</i>	
<i>Restriction: ARTHIST 311, 114.209 (in 1999 only)</i>	
<b>ARTHIST 212</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Neo-Gothic to Art Nouveau</b>	
Focuses on nineteenth century architecture and design with introductory eighteenth century material.	
<i>Prerequisite: Any 4 points in Stage I Art History</i>	
<i>Restriction: ARTHIST 312</i>	

**ARTHIST 213 (2 Points)**  
**Tradition and Change in Pacific Art**

An introduction to a wide range of Pacific Art, both object and performance, based on their origins, histories, interconnections and social functioning, including gender issues and cross-cultural encounters.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points in Art History or Pacific Studies  
*Restriction:* 114.107

**ARTHIST 222 (2 Points)**  
**Origins of Modern Sculpture**

Explores the transition from traditional to contemporary forms and themes in western sculpture. The focus is on artistic activity in Paris 1900 to 1914 with consideration of definitions of sculpture, abstraction, processes, materials, influences and innovation.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History  
*Restriction:* 114.308, ARTHIST 322

**ARTHIST 223 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century Sculpture in Australia and New Zealand**

Examines the changing nature of sculpture, its international origins, development of facilities, patronage, introduction of new materials and the evolution of local and national content. Aspects of identity, migration, sociopolitical influence and the contribution of women are thematic concerns.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History  
*Restriction:* 114.308, ARTHIST 323

**ARTHIST 224 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Baroque Art**

Selected topics in Baroque art in Europe from 1580 to 1750.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 202, 324

**Stage III****ARTHIST 301 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in the Book Arts with Special Emphasis on Mediaeval Book Illumination**

European book illumination from c.1200 to c.1450 and other book-arts related topics such as early printed books, artists' books and the representation of the book in art.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 302 (2 Points)**  
**Mid 19th Century Painting in France and Britain**

Selected topics in mid-nineteenth century British and French art.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 304 (2 Points)**  
**Dürer and his Sources and Influence**

A detailed examination of Dürer's work and influence.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 305 (2 Points)**  
**Nationalist Themes in New Zealand Art**

Selected topics in New Zealand art from 1930 to the present.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 306 (2 Points)**  
**Art and Passion in the Baroque**

A study of Roman Baroque art with a special emphasis on how art reflected the religious, political and social concerns of the period.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 307 (2 Points)**  
**Art in the USA 1945-75**

A study of painting and sculpture in the USA from abstract expressionism to approximately 1975.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 310 (2 Points)**  
**Modernism and Design**

A study of the central role played by architecture and design within the Modern Period. The main focus will be on Europe and the United States.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
*Restriction:* 114.106, ARTHIST 210

**ARTHIST 311 (2 Points)**  
**Reading Landscape Art**

Landscape art, which emerged in Europe in the seventeenth century, explored aesthetic qualities associated with nature, but also represented social values, as in English gardens and paintings which were signifiers of wealth and status, and of economic and political change in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Art History at Stage II  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 211, 114.209 (in 1999 only)

**ARTHIST 312 (2 Points)**  
**Neo-Gothic to Art Nouveau**

Focuses on nineteenth century architecture and design with introductory eighteenth century material.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
*Restriction:* ARTHIST 212

**ARTHIST 315 (2 Points)**  
**The Print in Northern Europe 1470-1600**

Examines the emergence and development of the print as an independent art form in Northern Europe during the Renaissance.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 317 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Contemporary Pacific Art**

A study of contemporary art produced within the Pacific, and issues such as authenticity, gender, evolution, appropriation and the impact of tourism.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or in ANTHRO 100, 104 or LINGUIST 102

**ARTHIST 318 (2 Points)**  
**Museology and Taonga**

A study of the ways in which Maori and Pacific Islands cultures have been, and are, interpreted in museum and art gallery contexts.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Art History or 2 points at Stage II in Art History and MAORI 240

**ARTHIST 319 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Indigenous Woman's Art**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History

**ARTHIST 320 (2 Points)**  
**Conceptual to Cyber: Art Film and Video Art**

An historical survey of aesthetic and perceptual issues arising from the art film and video art of late twentieth century art movements.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History or FTVMS 200*

**ARTHIST 322 (2 Points)**

**Origins of Modern Sculpture**

Explores the transition from traditional to contemporary forms and themes in western sculpture. The focus is on artistic activity in Paris 1900 to 1914 with consideration of definitions of sculpture, abstraction, processes, materials, influences and innovation.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
Restriction: 114.308, ARTHIST 222*

**ARTHIST 323 (2 Points)**

**20th Century Sculpture in Australia and New Zealand**

Examines the changing nature of sculpture, its international origins, development of facilities, patronage, introduction of new materials and the evolution of local and national content. Aspects of identity, migration, sociopolitical influence and the contribution of women are thematic concerns.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
Restriction: 114.308, ARTHIST 223*

**ARTHIST 324 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Baroque Art**

Selected topics in Baroque art in Europe from 1580 to 1750.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Art History  
Restriction: ARTHIST 202, 224*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ARTHIST 702A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 702B (2 Points)**

**Art Historiography**

A study of the theoretical writings of certain major and influential art historians, including Heinrich Wölfflin, Erwin Panofsky and E.H. Gombrich, and also more recent writers such as T.J. Clark and Norman Bryson.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 702 A and B*

**ARTHIST 703A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 703B (2 Points)**

**Cross-cultural Representation**

An examination of visual representations of non-European peoples and places by European artists and photographers from the mid-eighteenth to, and including, the twentieth century. Prime concerns are the uses and meaning of such representations, both when they were first produced and in later periods, in different contexts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 703 A and B*

**ARTHIST 704A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 704B (2 Points)**

**Topics in the Theory of Modern Art**

An examination and critical analysis of modernist theories. These include: the autonomy of the artwork, an analysis of seeing as a cognitive activity, the notion of expression, contemporary redefinitions of the creating subject and art as a language, the analysis of theory as an 'interested' activity, and postmodernist revisions.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 704 A and B*

**ARTHIST 707A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 707B (2 Points)**

**Maori and Polynesian Arts**

Includes discussion on topics and issues in Maori and Polynesian Arts, both traditional and contemporary. It involves a series of seminars, discussions, informal meetings on and off campus, and visits to marae, galleries and museums.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 707 A and B*

**ARTHIST 708A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 708B (2 Points)**

**Image and Text**

An approach to problems of relation between these two terms, beginning with writing descriptions of art works and, by readings of relevant texts, moving towards formulations of theory.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 708 A and B*

**ARTHIST 709A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 709B (2 Points)**

**Spectators and Structures in Quattrocento Art**

An examination of fifteenth century Italian Renaissance codes of: the frame; representing time; representing space; constructing the spectator's role; and constructing the painter as 'author' figure.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 709 A and B*

**ARTHIST 712A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 712B (2 Points)**

**Postcolonial Theory and the Visual Arts**

A study of the issues and implications of colonialism and its roles in the construction of cultural identities. Key postcolonial and postmodern texts will be studied in relation to contemporary non-western art practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 712 A and B*

**ARTHIST 713 (2 Points)**

**The Role of Museums: Past and Present**

An examination of the museum as an institution in the past and up to the present day. Art museums will be the main focus and issues will include: the origins of the museum, Renaissance art collections and private museums, the emergence of the public museum, recent and contemporary museums.

**ARTHIST 714 (2 Points)**

**The Role of Museums: Debates and Directions**

This course questions the purpose of museums and their right to collect and conserve art objects; how they shape knowledge; and the effects of exhibition and display on an understanding of visual culture.

**ARTHIST 715 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**ARTHIST 716 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**ARTHIST 718A (2 Points)**

**ARTHIST 718B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 718 A and B*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

**ARTHIST 719 (2 Points)****Art in the Public Arena**

Principal issues include the function of sculpture and monuments, commemorative practice, issues of gender, nationalism, cultural identity, public space, the urban environment and local practice in relation to international case studies.

*Restriction: ARTHIST 705*

**ARTHIST 720 (2 Points)****Self-portraiture and Identity Construction in New Zealand Art**

A selection of topics using specific types of self-representation produced by New Zealand artists from c. 1900 to the present, and issues pertaining to ideas around identity and the construction of the 'self'.

**ARTHIST 790A (2 Points)****ARTHIST 790B (2 Points)****BA (Hons) Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 790 A and B*

**ARTHIST 792A (3 Points)****ARTHIST 792B (3 Points)****Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 792 A and B*

**ARTHIST 793 (2 Points)****Research Essay**

Supervised research and writing on an approved topic.

**ARTHIST 795A (7 Points)****ARTHIST 795B (7 Points)****Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 795 A and B*

**ARTHIST 796A (7 Points)****ARTHIST 796B (7 Points)****Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTHIST 796 A and B*

**Arts: General****Diploma Courses****ARTSGEN 688A (2 Points)****ARTSGEN 688B (2 Points)****Dissertation**

Essay, project or special directed study, involving work in one subject or interdisciplinary work involving one subject among others.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 688 A and B*

**ARTSGEN 690A (2 Points)****ARTSGEN 690B (2 Points)****Essay/Special Directed Study/Research Project**

Essay, project or special directed study, involving work in the subject of the student's Masters Degree or major of the student's first degree or interdisciplinary work involving that subject and others.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 690 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****ARTSGEN 740 (2 Points)****ARTSGEN 740A (1 Point)****ARTSGEN 740B (1 Point)****Research Essay**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 740 A and B, or ARTSGEN 740*

**ARTSGEN 750 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Qualitative Research**

An introduction to qualitative social research methods designed for graduate students who have little research background but are planning to do research in their workplace or empirical thesis/dissertation work. Covers participation observation, interviewing and archival research methods. The course has a 'hands on' approach and students will design, carry out and analyse a real piece of qualitative research.

**ARTSGEN 751 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Quantitative Research**

An introduction to survey methods for quantitative social research designed for graduate students who have little research background but are planning to do research in their workplace or empirical thesis/dissertation work. Covers all aspects of survey research, data collection and analysis and a brief introduction to using computers for research and statistical analysis. The course has a 'hands on' approach and students will design, carry out and analyse a 'real life' survey.

**ARTSGEN 777 (2 Points)****Special Language Studies A**

This course is intended to cover study at an approved overseas institution where the language of instruction is a language other than English. Supplementary study at the University of Auckland may be required as part of this course. Enrolment is subject to approval of the planned overseas study by the Head of Department or School for the language subject concerned. A student must be enrolled for the MA, and for this course, before starting overseas study. A final grade for the course will be determined on completion of the study on the basis of formal assessment of achievement in the language concerned, together with any other submitted work specified by the Head of Department or School.

**ARTSGEN 778 (4 Points)****Special Language Studies B**

As for ARTSGEN 777. The overseas study, together with any other work required by the Head of Department or School is equivalent in quantity to a 4 point course.

**ARTSGEN 780 (4 Points)****ARTSGEN 780A (2 Points)****ARTSGEN 780B (2 Points)****Research Essay**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 780 A and B, or ARTSGEN 780*

**ARTSGEN 792A (3 Points)****ARTSGEN 792B (3 Points)****Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 792 A and B

**ARTSGEN 794A** (5 Points)

**ARTSGEN 794B** (5 Points)

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 794 A and B

**ARTSGEN 796A** (7 Points)

**ARTSGEN 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 796 A and B

**ARTSGEN 797A** (7 Points)

**ARTSGEN 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

The Research Portfolio consists of (usually) two or three research projects/essays in a defined area of study within one of the disciplines, or across one or more of the disciplines, taught in the Faculty of Arts. The content and coherence of the Research Portfolio are determined in consultation with an academic supervisor. Components of the Research Portfolio may require attendance at designated seminars and will include a specified number and type of pieces of assessed work. Students must demonstrate through the portfolio the same qualities expected of a thesis: an advanced level of understanding of one (or more) research tradition(s) within the discipline(s); coherence of argument; independence of thought; and the ability to produce original work. The total word length of the portfolio should be equivalent to that expected for a 14-point thesis in the relevant discipline(s).

To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSGEN 797 A and B

## Arts Management

### Honours and Master's Courses

**ARTSMGT 702** (2 Points)

**The Arts Milieu**

An in-depth study of the organisation of the arts in New Zealand in regards to government policy-making (both national and local); arts policy and funding policies (i.e. the 'politics' of the arts). Also legal aspects and the arts; negotiating with performers, venues etc.; contracts, rights, basic legal issues, operating structures and accountability.

Restriction: 120.602

**ARTSMGT 703** (2 Points)

**The Economics of the Arts**

How the arts contribute to and impact on local, regional and national economies, business and community development and tourism. Interaction and the relationship between business and the arts; sponsorship development. Also the arts as a new or growing venture; ways of achieving a sustainable competitive advantage.

Restriction: 120.603

**ARTSMGT 704** (2 Points)

**Special Issues in Arts Administration**

Special interest topics in workshop form. Arts specific skills include: box office systems, technical, production skills, tour planning, working with

artists (the creative/administrative interchange), and arts and the media.

Restriction: 120.604

**ARTSMGT 705** (2 Points)

**Special Project**

Includes: the dynamics of project management for arts managers, project organisation, planning and scheduling, computerised project management tools, politics and leadership in projects, building and managing a team and handling conflict.

Restriction: 120.605

**ARTSMGT 791** (4 Points)

**ARTSMGT 791A** (2 Points)

**ARTSMGT 791B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation in Arts Management**

To complete this course students must enrol in ARTSMGT 791 A and B, or ARTSMGT 791

## Asian Studies

### Stage I

**ASIAN 100** (2 Points)

**Images of Asia**

An introduction to the history of China, Japan, Korea and Southeast Asia, exploring historical conceptions and misconceptions.

Restriction: HISTORY 135

### Stage II

**ASIAN 201** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage 1

**ASIAN 202** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage 1

### Honours and Master's Courses

**ASIAN 790A** (2 Points)

**ASIAN 790B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation**

Sources in the Asian language being studied should be used in preparing this Dissertation.

To complete this course students must enrol in ASIAN 790 A and B

**ASIAN 794A** (5 Points)

**ASIAN 794B** (5 Points)

**Thesis**

Sources in the Asian language being studied should be used in preparing this Thesis.

To complete this course students must enrol in ASIAN 794 A and B

**ASIAN 797A** (7 Points)

**ASIAN 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in ASIAN 797 A and B

## Chinese

### Stage I

**CHINESE 100** (2 Points)

**Beginning Modern Chinese A**

Restriction: CHINESE 110, 130.111

**CHINESE 101 (2 Points)****Beginning Modern Chinese B**

CHINESE 100 and 101 are designed to provide basic written and spoken skills in Modern Standard Chinese (Mandarin, Putonghua) for beginners. By the end of the second semester students will be able to recognise and write approximately 600 Chinese characters and to converse in simple language.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 100

*Restriction:* CHINESE 110, 130.111

**CHINESE 110 (2 Points)****Chinese for Native Speakers**

Intended for native speakers of a Chinese dialect. Introduces the pronunciation, romanisation, vocabulary and grammar of modern standard Mandarin. Special attention will be given to the contrast between Mandarin and Cantonese, as well as between spoken Mandarin and written Chinese.

*Restriction:* CHINESE 100, 101, 130.111

**CHINESE 120 (2 Points)****Introduction to Chinese Thought**

A survey in English translation of traditional Chinese philosophical and religious literature (Confucian, Daoist, Buddhist, etc.) and of the ideas which have helped shape Chinese culture.

**CHINESE 123 (2 Points)****Ethnic Chinese Abroad with Special Reference to New Zealand Chinese**

An examination of factors which motivated Chinese migrants to go abroad, and the problems of discrimination and integration they face in various host societies, New Zealand in particular. Special issues such as the preservation of culture and the identity crisis will be explored from a cultural perspective, using literary materials ranging from essays to fiction.

**CHINESE 124 (2 Points)****Modern China to 1950 through Film and Literature**

The rise of modern China is reflected in the literature, films and other arts in the first half of this century. A number of May Fourth-era short stories and several films made or set in the period are studied in English for the insights they provide into the social and cultural changes in this period.

*Restriction:* 130.122

**CHINESE 125 (2 Points)****China since 1950 through Film and Literature**

Political and social changes in China under the Communist Party are introduced through a study in English of short stories, films and other arts produced to appeal to new audiences. A major concern is how artists attempted to serve personal, political and audience needs. The content is a continuation of CHINESE 124 but this course may be taken separately.

*Restriction:* 130.122

**CHINESE 130 (2 Points)****Rethinking China**

An introduction to the philosophical, artistic and literary heritage of China, allowing students to engage with stimulating texts from historical times to the modern period.

**Stage II****CHINESE 200 (2 Points)****Intermediate Modern Chinese A**

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 100 and 101

*Restriction:* CHINESE 210, 211

**CHINESE 201 (2 Points)****Intermediate Modern Chinese B**

Courses CHINESE 200 and 201 are continuations of CHINESE 100 and 101. Emphasis is placed on oral and aural competence and on the further development of skills in grammar, vocabulary, comprehension and sentence construction. Full-form Chinese characters are introduced systematically. Texts used offer an introduction both to a range of Chinese writing styles and various aspects of Chinese culture. Skills of cursory reading are also introduced.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 200 or 277

*Restriction:* CHINESE 210, 211

**CHINESE 210 (2 Points)****Chinese for Business**

Designed for students to develop communicative competence in Chinese in business situations. Emphasis will be placed on commonly used commercial terms, phrases, sentence patterns and cultural background. General language skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing (related to business situations) will be taught throughout the course. This course is intended for native speakers of Chinese.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 110 or 130 or other appropriate Stage I courses

*Restriction:* CHINESE 200, 201

**CHINESE 211 (2 Points)****Readings in Modern and Classical Chinese for Native Speakers**

Intended for native speakers of Chinese. Readings are selected from important classical and modern Chinese literary works. Special attention is given to the cultivation of the ability to read with critical appreciation. A required proficiency in English is presumed.

*Prerequisite:* 130.111 or CHINESE 110

*Restriction:* 130.202, CHINESE 200, 201

**CHINESE 220 (2 Points)****Major Schools of Chinese Thought**

Following on from CHINESE 120, this course examines in greater detail the fundamental texts and tenets of the Confucian, Daoist, and Buddhist traditions. Students will be expected to participate actively in class presentations.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 120

**CHINESE 221 (2 Points)****Classical Chinese Literature in Translation**

Students will read translations of key works from the period and analyse their literary qualities and cultural significance. Requires no knowledge of the Chinese language and is open to all students.

*Prerequisite:* 130.122 or CHINESE 120 or 121 or 123 or 124 or 125 or 130

**CHINESE 222 (2 Points)****Modern Chinese Literature in Translation**

Through the study of a selection of short fiction from

twentieth century China this course introduces strategies for reading and critical analysis to explore such issues as narrative, cultural modernisation, gender, socialist, realism, dissent, modernism, etc., in the context of modern China. All texts are in English. Requires no knowledge of Chinese and is open to all students.

*Prerequisite:* 130.122 or CHINESE 120 or 121 or 123 or 124 or 125 or 130

*Prerequisite (China Studies only): Any 4 points at Stage I in China Studies*

**CHINESE 277 (2 Points)**

**Chinese Study Abroad IIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite:* School approval required

**CHINESE 278 (2 Points)**

**Chinese Study Abroad IIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 277 and School approval required

**Stage III**

**CHINESE 300 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Modern Chinese A**

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 200 or 277, and CHINESE 201 or 278

*Restriction:* CHINESE 310, 311

**CHINESE 301 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Modern Chinese B**

CHINESE 300 and 301 are designed to consolidate students' language skills in all areas. Materials covering various aspects of modern China are used for reading and conversation. In addition, critical study of supplementary materials further develops understanding of the principles and practice of the modern Chinese language.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 300 or 377

*Restriction:* CHINESE 310, 311

**CHINESE 304 (2 Points)**

**Classical Chinese A**

This course introduces a basic knowledge of classical Chinese language with selective readings from representative works of the pre-Qin period (before 221 BC). The emphasis will be on the differences and similarities between modern Chinese and classical Chinese in terms of vocabulary and grammar.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 201

*Restriction:* 130.302, CHINESE 310, 311

**CHINESE 305 (2 Points)**

**Classical Chinese B**

A continuation of CHINESE 304. Readings cover the whole of imperial China, in prose and poetry. Students are required to understand key functional words and to be familiar with the cultural background of the texts and the historical development of classical Chinese language and literature.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 304

*Restriction:* 130.302, CHINESE 310, 311

**CHINESE 310 (2 Points)**

**Translation for Native Speakers**

Designed to develop Chinese-English and English-Chinese translation skills for Chinese-speaking students. Students are also introduced cumulatively and inductively to basic theories and principles of

translation. Assumes a required proficiency in English.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 210

*Restriction:* 130.302, CHINESE 300, 301

**CHINESE 311 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Readings in Modern and Classical Chinese for Native Speakers**

This is a continuation of CHINESE 211 leading to: (i) the use of more advanced texts for critical study, (ii) more in-depth training in the skills of literary criticism, and (iii) more emphasis on the development of the ability to write precis, commentary and critical reviews. Assumes a required proficiency in English.

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 211

*Restriction:* 130.302, CHINESE 300, 301

**CHINESE 377 (2 Points)**

**Chinese Study Abroad IIIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite:* School approval required

**CHINESE 378 (2 Points)**

**Chinese Study Abroad IIIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad*

*Prerequisite:* CHINESE 377 and School approval required

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**CHINESE 700 (4 Points)**

**Advanced Modern Chinese: Fourth Year**

A rounding off of the undergraduate language programme. Original Chinese source materials from various fields are used, written in both traditional and simplified characters. Students will be expected to write reviews and other critical essays.

**CHINESE 701A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 701B (2 Points)**

**Classical Chinese Literature: A Survey**

A broad overview of Chinese poetry, prose and fiction from the Shijing to Ming and Qing fiction, using both original materials and secondary sources.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 701 A and B*

**CHINESE 702A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 702B (2 Points)**

**Modern Chinese Literature: A Survey**

An overview of Chinese literature since the May Fourth Movement, using both original materials and secondary sources.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 702 A and B*

**CHINESE 703A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 703B (2 Points)**

**Traditional Chinese Historiography**

Historical writings are read for their classic ancient prose as well as for the understanding of China's philosophical and historical concepts. Representative texts are chosen from major historical works and historiographical criticisms.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 703 A and B*

**CHINESE 704A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 704B (2 Points)**

**Traditional Chinese Verse**

An examination of Chinese poetry and verse from the Shijing through to the Qing Dynasty. Students

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

will develop critical approaches to the verse and its analysis.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 704 A and B

**CHINESE 706A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 706B (2 Points)**

#### Readings in Confucian and Daoist Texts

The major Confucian and Daoist classics have always been valued for the elegance of their texts as well as for the profundity of their philosophy. Attention will be paid to philological problems of Chinese texts as well as their philosophical contents.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 706 A and B

**CHINESE 707 (2 Points)**

#### Teaching Chinese as a Foreign Language A

Provides an overview and analysis of the theory of teaching Chinese as a foreign language, its research and practice world-wide, and the key characteristics of the Chinese language from a pedagogical perspective. Includes the evaluation and development of TCFL teaching materials and issues concerning Chinese language curriculum design and development. With Head of School approval, native speakers of Chinese and others who have reached this level outside the University of Auckland are also eligible to enrol.

Prerequisite: CHINESE 301 or its equivalent

**CHINESE 708 (2 Points)**

#### Teaching Chinese as a Foreign Language B

Continuation of CHINESE 707 leading to the theory and practice of teaching Chinese phonetics, vocabulary, grammar, Chinese characters, training in conversational, reading and compositional skills. Includes contrastive analysis in TCFL classroom. Classroom observation and supervised teaching practice in TCFL classes if available.

Prerequisite: CHINESE 707

**CHINESE 711A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 711B (2 Points)**

#### Traditional Chinese Fiction

The Ming-Qing Novel: Using two selected texts, *Xiyou ji* and *Honglou meng*, as case studies, this year-long course examines the poetics and practice of the Ming-Qing *zhanghui xiaoshuo* via close readings of the primary materials and traditional commentaries. Modern critical perspectives will also be introduced.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 711 A and B

**CHINESE 712A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 712B (2 Points)**

#### Modern Chinese Fiction

In-depth examination of aspects of Chinese fiction since the May Fourth Movement, including readings and critical assessment.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 712 A and B

**CHINESE 715A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 715B (2 Points)**

#### Readings in Non-Literary Modern Chinese

Training in the reading of Chinese texts from a range of sources and styles. Builds on verbal and

writing skills learned in the undergraduate Chinese language programme.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 715 A and B

**CHINESE 716A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 716B (2 Points)**

#### 'River Elegy' and Chinese Cultural Discourse since the 1980s

The 1988 television documentary series *Heshang* (River Elegy) brought together several strands of the re-examination of the state of Chinese culture. This course discusses the series, films and other products of this 'cultural fever' (*wenhua re*).

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 716 A and B

**CHINESE 717A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 717B (2 Points)**

#### Introduction to Chinese Linguistics

Investigates the phonetics/phonology, written system, dialectology, semantics, grammar (morphology and syntax) and rhetoric of Chinese. Also covered briefly are topics relating language to culture and society.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 717 A and B

**CHINESE 718A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 718B (2 Points)**

#### Advanced Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature

Intensive study of a particular author or authors in the second half of the twentieth century.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 718 A and B

**CHINESE 719A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 719B (2 Points)**

#### Bibliography and Research Methodology

Students are introduced to traditional Chinese bibliography and to reference tools available in both Chinese and Western languages. Equal emphasis is given to both theory and practice of bibliographical research.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 719 A and B

**CHINESE 722A (1 Point)**

**CHINESE 722B (1 Point)**

#### A Course-related Research Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 722 A and B

**CHINESE 724A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 724B (2 Points)**

#### Chinese Film

Students will watch, read about and discuss feature films in a range of genres from the 1930s to the present, noting the social, political and cultural contexts in which the films were produced and watched.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 724 A and B

**CHINESE 725 (4 Points)**

#### Advanced Translation Practice

Provides students with a broad training in professional translation between Chinese and English.

**CHINESE 726A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 726B (2 Points)**

#### Chinese Semantics and Syntax

Provides an introduction to Chinese semantics and syntax in both theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 726 A and B

**CHINESE 727 (4 Points)**

**Chinese New Zealanders: Special Studies**

Students will examine both the historical development of the New Zealand Chinese community and study recent immigration trends. Special attention will be paid to the impact on New Zealand's demographic profile, the social and economic implications as well as race relation issues. Identity issues will be explored through literature.

Restriction: 130.320

**CHINESE 728 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**CHINESE 729A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 729B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 729 A and B

**CHINESE 730 (2 Points)**

**Research Essay**

Supervised research on an approved topic:

**CHINESE 731A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 731B (2 Points)**

**Research Essay**

Supervised research on an approved topic.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 731 A and B

**CHINESE 732A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 732B (2 Points)**

**Special Studies**

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 732 A and B

**CHINESE 780A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 780B (2 Points)**

**Honours Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 780 A and B

**CHINESE 790A (2 Points)**

**CHINESE 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 790 A and B

**CHINESE 794A (5 Points)**

**CHINESE 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 794 A and B

**CHINESE 797A (7 Points)**

**CHINESE 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHINESE 797 A and B

---

**Classical Studies**

**Stage I**

**CLASSICS 110 (2 Points)**

**Classical Mythology through Tragedy**

A study of the mythology of Ancient Greece and Rome through the tragedies of Aeschylus, Sophocles, Euripides, Seneca.

**CLASSICS 120 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Ancient Greece and Rome**

An introduction to the philosophic thought of Greece and its development into Roman times.

**CLASSICS 130 (2 Points)**

**Love and Death in Greek and Roman Literature**

A study of selected literary texts from ancient Greece and Rome that deal with two themes that continue to be relevant today.

**CLASSICS 140 (2 Points)**

**Classical Mythology in Epic**

A study of the treatment of mythology in ancient Greek and Roman epic poetry.

---

**Stage II**

**CLASSICS 210 (2 Points)**

**Greek and Roman Epic Poetry**

A study of the beginnings of European epic poetry: especially in Homer and Virgil.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101 and 102, or LATIN 101 and 102*

*Restriction: CLASSICS 310*

**CLASSICS 215 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 2 points from Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101 and 102, or LATIN 101 and 102*

*Restriction: CLASSICS 315*

**CLASSICS 220 (2 Points)**

**Greek and Roman Comedy**

A study of the comedies of Aristophanes and Menander, Plautus and Terence.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101 and 102, or LATIN 101 and 102*

*Restriction: CLASSICS 320*

**CLASSICS 230 (2 Points)**

**The Novel in Greece and Rome**

A study of Greek and Roman prose fiction with emphasis on origins, conventions, techniques and influence: Petronius, Longus, Apuleius and others.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or GREEK 101 and 102, or LATIN 101 and 102*

*Restriction:*

**CLASSICS 240 (2 Points)**

**Dialogues of Plato**

An interpretative study with attention to the literary form, dramatic and rhetorical features and dialectical method, with their implications for our understanding of the arguments, concepts, and positions presented. Dialogues to be read involve topics such as: ethics, the soul, love, education, knowledge, politics, reason and persuasion, the theory of forms, and the nature of the cosmos.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or GREEK 101 and 102, or 4 points at Stage I in Philosophy*

*Restriction: CLASSICS 340*

**CLASSICS 250 (2 Points)**

**Socrates, Plato and the Pythagoreans**

A study of the main figures in the Platonic and Pythagorean traditions in ancient philosophy. Particular attention will be paid to: the influences of Socrates and the original Pythagorean school on Plato, Plato's own conception of philosophy, and the subsequent emergence of neo-Pythagoreanism and neo-Platonism.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or 4 points at Stage I in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 350

**CLASSICS 260 (2 Points)**  
**Humanity, Nature and Knowledge in Ancient Philosophy**

A study of Aristotle and the Hellenistic philosophical schools, focusing on the conception of human nature in Aristotle's ethical and political works, and the alternatives presented by Stoicism, Epicureanism and Scepticism.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or ANCHIST 102 and 2 points at Stage I in Philosophy, or 4 points at Stage I in Philosophy  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 360

**CLASSICS 270 (2 Points)**  
**Art and Society in Ancient Greece**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Greeks. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies, or ANCHIST 102 or 103 or ARTHIST 101 or 111  
*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 370

**CLASSICS 280 (2 Points)**  
**Art and Society in Ancient Rome**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Romans. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies or ANCHIST 102 or 103 or ARTHIST 101 or 111  
*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 380

**CLASSICS 285 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage I in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 385

**Stage III**

**CLASSICS 310 (2 Points)**  
**Greek and Roman Epic Poetry**

A study of the beginnings of European epic poetry especially in Homer and Virgil.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 210

**CLASSICS 315 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 215

**CLASSICS 320 (2 Points)**  
**Greek and Roman Comedy**

A study of the comedies of Aristophanes and Menander, Plautus and Terence.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 220

**CLASSICS 330 (2 Points)**

**The Novel in Greece and Rome**

A study of Greek and Roman prose fiction with emphasis on origins, conventions, techniques and influence: Petronius, Longus, Apuleius and others.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 230

**CLASSICS 340 (2 Points)**  
**Dialogues of Plato**

An interpretative study with attention to the literary form, dramatic and rhetorical features and dialectical method, with their implications for our understanding of the arguments, concepts and positions presented. Dialogues to be read include topics such as: ethics, the soul, love, education, knowledge, politics, reason, persuasion, the theory of forms, and the nature of the cosmos.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 240

**CLASSICS 350 (2 Points)**  
**Socrates, Plato and the Pythagoreans**

A study of the main figures in the Platonic and Pythagorean traditions in ancient philosophy. Particular attention will be paid to the influences of Socrates and the original Pythagorean school on Plato, Plato's own conception of philosophy, and the subsequent emergence of neo-Pythagoreanism and neo-Platonism.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 250

**CLASSICS 360 (2 Points)**  
**Humanity, Nature and Knowledge in Ancient Philosophy**

A study of Aristotle and the Hellenistic philosophical schools, focusing on the conception of human nature in Aristotle's ethical and political works, and the alternatives presented by Stoicism, Epicureanism and Scepticism.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies  
*Restriction:* CLASSICS 260

**CLASSICS 370 (2 Points)**  
**Art and Society in Ancient Greece**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Greeks. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies or 4 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 270

**CLASSICS 377 (2 Points)**  
**Classical Studies Study Abroad**

Study abroad on archaeological sites in Greece, Italy and the Mediterranean area.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in CLASSICS and permission of the Head of Department  
*Restriction:* ANCHIST 377

**CLASSICS 380 (2 Points)**  
**Art and Society in Ancient Rome**

A study of the art and architecture of the ancient Romans. Emphasis will be placed on the role of the visual arts as vehicles for the expression of social values and political and imperial ideas.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies or 4 points at Stage II in Ancient History  
*Restriction:* 100.204, CLASSICS 280

**CLASSICS 385** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Classical Studies*  
*Restriction: CLASSICS 285*

**Comparative Literature**

**Stage I**

**COMPLIT 100** (2 Points)  
**Reading Comparatively: An Introduction**  
 Through the study of an anthology of short fiction, poetry, myth and drama from every part of the world, introduces strategies for reading literature across national and cultural boundaries. All texts are in English.

**Stage II**

**COMPLIT 200** (2 Points)  
**Narrative: Theory and Practice**  
 Myths, oral tales, histories, feature films, diaries, strip cartoons, news reports, evidence in court, as well as novels and short stories, are all forms of narrative. Narrative seems to be a fundamental instrument used in all cultures to make the flow of experience comprehensible. Introduces theoretical tools for studying narrative, and applies them to a variety of texts from many cultures. All texts are in English.

*Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed*

**COMPLIT 202** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Literature of Cross-cultural Encounter**  
 Study of works from many periods and parts of the world depicting the encounter between two cultures. Examines texts depicting the 'East' in European literature and the 'West' in the cultures of Asia, and the interactions of indigenous peoples and their colonisers. Includes: memoirs from both Christian and Muslim perspectives on the medieval crusades, poetry from China, short stories by Palestinian, Indian and Vietnamese writers, novels from Italy and South Africa, and writings from the Pacific. All texts will be studied in English.

*Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed*

**COMPLIT 203** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed*

**COMPLIT 204** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**Stage III**

**COMPLIT 300** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**COMPLIT 700** (4 Points)  
**Comparative Approaches to Literature**  
 An advanced level review of approaches to the study of literary texts across cultures. Topics include: comparative perspectives on national literatures; theories of authorship in different cultures; theories of reception and intertextuality; cross-cultural study of literature and gender; literature and post-

colonial studies. Illustrated with the comparative study of works from Europe, Asia, Latin America and the Pacific.

**COMPLIT 701** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic: Telling and Retelling**  
 Most storytelling involves the reworking of existing stories. Exploration of the processes involved in retelling, including: oral transmission, rewriting in a different period or culture, and adaptation from written form to cinematic or sung form. Poses questions about the psychological and social functions of retelling. Examples taken from Europe, Asia and the Pacific.

**COMPLIT 702** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic: Rethinking Autobiography**  
 A presentation of the lively debates on autobiography currently under way: theorisations of the self and the writing and construction of the self, women's autobiography, postcolonial autobiography. Illustrated in a wide variety of autobiographical texts including: letters, diaries, memoirs, confessions, poetry, short stories, novels and video, from ancient and modern Europe, Asia and the Pacific.

**COMPLIT 703** (4 Points)  
**Rethinking Literary Translation**  
 Literary translation has come to be recognised as a dynamic and problematic process, central to comparative literature, cross-cultural encounter, and colonisation and the post colonial. Introduces current debates in the field.

**COMPLIT 704** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**COMPLIT 792A** (3 Points)  
**COMPLIT 792B** (3 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 792 A and B*

**COMPLIT 794A** (5 Points)  
**COMPLIT 794B** (5 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 794 A and B*

**COMPLIT 797A** (7 Points)  
**COMPLIT 797B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPLIT 797 A and B*

**Cook Islands Maori**

**Stage I**

**COOKIS 101** (2 Points)  
**Cook Islands Maori Structure I**  
 An introduction to the rules that make up the Cook Islands Maori language.

**COOKIS 102** (2 Points)  
**Cook Islands Maori Acquisition I**  
 An introduction to speaking, reading and writing in Cook Islands Maori language.  
*Prerequisite: COOKIS 101*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

---

**Stage II****COOKIS 201 (2 Points)****Cook Islands Maori Structure II**

This course extends students' understanding and appreciation of the rules of the language, and further develops their confidence in the use of Cook Islands Maori. It will also introduce the other main dialects outside the Rarotongan dialect.

*Prerequisite: COOKIS 101*

**COOKIS 202 (2 Points)****Cook Islands Maori Acquisition II**

This course will provide students with the opportunity to speak, read and write in Cook Islands Maori. It will give students the opportunity to translate and interpret texts from Cook Islands Maori to English and vice versa. Students will be introduced to the language used in chants, songs and ceremonial activities.

*Prerequisite: COOKIS 102*

**COOKIS 203 (2 Points)****Cook Islands Maori Literature**

Introduces students to the range of genres in Cook Islands Maori that can be classified as 'literature'. These include: narratives, myths and legends, songs, poetry and chants. These genres will be analysed with a view to describing their purposes, history and context, cultural significance, the devices employed, and appreciation.

*Prerequisite: Approval of Head of Department*

---

**Stage III****COOKIS 301 (2 Points)****Cook Islands Maori Structure III**

This course will provide students with an in-depth understanding of the structure of Cook Islands Maori. It will also give them the opportunity to study at least one of the dialects. The course will also examine language involvement in cultural and ceremonial activities.

*Prerequisite: COOKIS 201*

**COOKIS 302 (2 Points)****Cook Islands Maori Acquisition III**

This course will further develop the students' confidence in the use of the language and increase their fluency and competence in conversation and composition. It will give students the opportunity to increase their vocabularies through the examination of selected texts. The course will also give students the chance to develop the skills of translating and interpreting the language to English and vice versa.

*Prerequisite: COOKIS 202*

---

**Croatian****Stage I****CROATIAN 100 (2 Points)****Beginners' Croatian A**

Written and oral use of Croatian for students without previous knowledge of the language; tested in the following ways: comprehension, composition, translation, linguistic explanation; dictation, reading, basic conversation.

*Restriction: 290.111*

**CROATIAN 101 (2 Points)****Beginners' Croatian B**

Written and oral use of Croatian for students who have passed CROATIAN 100 or have some prior knowledge of the language; tested in the following ways: composition, translation, linguistic explanation; reading, conversation.

*Prerequisite: 290.111 or CROATIAN 100 or Departmental approval required*

---

**Dance Studies****Stage I****DANCE 101A (1 Point)****DANCE 101B (1 Point)****Dance Transition**

Combines contextualised theoretical study of dance as an art form with practical classes in dance technique. Practical study will emphasise safe and efficient use of the body. This course does not require prior dance training.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 101 A and B*

**DANCE 102 (2 Points)****Dance Concepts**

An introduction to the fundamental principles involved in dance as a theatre art, stressing the interrelationships between dance and society and developing an awareness of the physical and creative complexities involved.

---

**Stage II****DANCE 201A (1 Point)****DANCE 201B (1 Point)****Dance Technique II**

Continues the development and consolidation of skills in practical dance technique, including the theoretical underpinning of anatomy taught through somatics, and technique in relation to artistic expression.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 101*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 201 A and B*

**DANCE 202A (1 Point)****DANCE 202B (1 Point)****Dance on Stage**

An exploration of the social and historical conditions which give rise to Western stage dance in both popular culture and high art expression.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 102 or THEATRE 101*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 202 A and B*

**DANCE 203A (1 Point)****DANCE 203B (1 Point)****Introduction to Choreography**

Focuses on the basic skills of improvisation, composition and choreographic analysis, developing problem-solving abilities and critical awareness.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 101 and 102*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 203 A and B*

**DANCE 250 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

**Stage III****DANCE 300 (2 Points)**  
**Dance Intensive**

Intensive practice in the physicality and creation of dance that bridges the gap between the studio and academia.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 201 or 301, and DANCE 203 or 303, and Departmental approval required*

**DANCE 301A (1 Point)**  
**DANCE 301B (1 Point)****Dance Technique III**

Emphasis on the development of artistry and complexity of skills required in various contemporary techniques, with a continued emphasis on the somatic approach to physical and theoretical developments.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 201*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 301 A and B*

**DANCE 302 (2 Points)**  
**Dance in Society**

The diverse ways and contexts in which people express fundamental experiences and emotions through dance, illustrating the cultural importance of dance in every society, but with particular emphasis on the indigenous, hegemonic and minority cultures in Aotearoa.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Dance Studies and DANCE 304*

**DANCE 303A (1 Point)**  
**DANCE 303B (1 Point)****Choreography II**

Development of composition skills with an emphasis on discovering original material and developing the organisational abilities needed to bring ideas to fruition.

*Prerequisite: DANCE 201 and 203*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 303 A and B*

**DANCE 304 (2 Points)**  
**Movement Analysis**

Introduction to the systematic analysis and understanding of the qualitative aspects of movement, enabling an expansion of movement vocabulary and ability to observe and describe dance.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Dance Studies including DANCE 202*

**DANCE 305 (2 Points)**  
**Twentieth Century Dance**

An overview of twentieth century stage dance with a focus on the major choreographers of the modern and post-modern period in Europe and America, with reference to the developments of stage dance in Aotearoa/New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Dance Studies including DANCE 202*

**DANCE 306 (2 Points)**  
**Dance on Screen**

An examination of dance as it appears on both large and small screen, with comparison between works adapted from live stage and those choreographed specifically for screen.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Dance Studies including DANCE 202*

**DANCE 350 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic****Honours and Master's Courses****DANCE 730 (4 Points)**  
**Dance Intensive**

Advanced practice in the physicality and creation of dance that bridges the gap between the studio and academia.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**DANCE 751A (1 Point)**  
**DANCE 751B (1 Point)****Research Methodologies**

An introduction to empirical and performative research methods. The course will address issues related to dance theory, current research methodologies, research design, archives and resources, literature reviews, research ethics, analysis and report writing.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 751 A and B*

**DANCE 752A (2 Points)**  
**DANCE 752B (2 Points)****Socio-cultural Contexts of Dance in Aotearoa**

Dance in Aotearoa is considered in its wide social and cultural contexts, covering such aspects as identity, tradition, tourism, appropriation, elitism and gender. Both theoretical and practical elements will be covered, illustrated by the study of selected dance forms. Movement analysis skills will be taught and applied to these dance forms.

*Restriction: PERFORM 652*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DANCE 752 A and B*

**DANCE 753 (4 Points)**  
**Dance in the 20th Century**

An overview of twentieth century stage dance with a focus on the major choreographers of the modern and postmodern period. The emphasis is principally on dance in Europe and America, as well as on the developments of stage dance in Aotearoa/New Zealand. Practical reconstructions of some choreography will be included.

*Restriction: 276.661, PERFORM 653*

**DANCE 760 (2 Points)**  
**Choreography**

An investigation and analysis of choreographic process and practice in the twentieth century with an emphasis on post-modern approaches. Issues such as funding, health and safety, contract writing, collaboration, and copyright will also be included. Students will be expected to develop work-in-progress culminating in a performance.

*Restriction: PERFORM 660*

**DANCE 762A (1 Point)**  
**DANCE 762B (1 Point)****Choreography for Screen**

The practice and theory of choreographing for the small screen, including differences from and similarities to stage choreography. Composition, lighting, storyboarding and editing will be considered.

Restriction: *PERFORM 662*.

To complete this course students must enrol in *DANCE 762 A and B*

**DANCE 763 (4 Points)**

**Comparative Techniques**

The theory and comparative practices of selected dancing genre and styles, with an emphasis on alternative training and release techniques. Issues such as body/mind connections, body image and safe dance will be investigated. Appropriate knowledge of anatomy is required.

Prerequisite: *Departmental approval required*

Restriction: *PERFORM 663*

**DANCE 765A (2 Points)**

**DANCE 765B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Dance**

To complete this course students must enrol in *DANCE 765 A and B*

**DANCE 766 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Dance**

**DANCE 767 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Dance**

**DANCE 770 (4 Points)**

**Dance Project**

**DANCE 771 (8 Points)**

**Dance Project**

**DANCE 791 (4 Points)**

**DANCE 791A (2 Points)**

**DANCE 791B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation in Dance**

Written work of about 10,000 words on a supervised topic.

To complete this course students must enrol in *DANCE 791 A and B, or DANCE 791*

**DANCE 793 (8 Points)**

**DANCE 793A (4 Points)**

**DANCE 793B (4 Points)**

**Dissertation in Dance**

Written work of about 20,000 words on a supervised topic.

To complete this course students must enrol in *DANCE 793 A and B, or DANCE 793*

---

## Development Studies

### *Honours and Master's Courses*

**DEVELOP 700A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 700B (2 Points)**

**Issues in Development Theory**

Critical examination of theories of development, emphasising the relationship between economic growth on the one hand, and cultural, social, and political change on the other. Consideration of development strategies, environment, women and development, foreign assistance and investment, migration, population, political change, and the implications of global economic change for national development.

To complete this course students must enrol in *DEVELOP 700 A and B*

**DEVELOP 701 (2 Points)**

**Development Practice and Research**

Focuses on the practice of development. Topics will include: development project planning, the project cycle, the role of various development agencies (NGOs, consultancies, etc.), and participatory research methods for social impact assessment.

Restriction: *DEVELOP 708*

**DEVELOP 702 (4 Points)**

**DEVELOP 702A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 702B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in *DEVELOP 702 A and B, or DEVELOP 702*

**DEVELOP 703 (4 Points)**

**DEVELOP 703A (2 Points)**

**DEVELOP 703B (2 Points)**

**Directed Study**

Supervised study on a topic or topics approved by the Director.

To complete this course students must enrol in *DEVELOP 703 A and B, or DEVELOP 703*

**DEVELOP 708 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**DEVELOP 792 (6 Points)**

**DEVELOP 792A (3 Points)**

**DEVELOP 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in *DEVELOP 792 A and B, or DEVELOP 792*

**DEVELOP 796A (7 Points)**

**DEVELOP 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in *DEVELOP 796 A and B*

**DEVELOP 797A (7 Points)**

**DEVELOP 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in *DEVELOP 797 A and B*

---

## Drama

### *Honours and Master's Courses*

**DRAMA 701A (2 Points)**

**DRAMA 701B (2 Points)**

**Theories of Drama**

Addresses the relationship between theatre and drama. Considers some perennial issues, e.g. the actor, the text, the author, the audience, the space, the time, the social context and occasion, the performance, the effect, and the manifestation of these issues in specific theatres and dramas.

To complete this course students must enrol in *DRAMA 701 A and B*

**DRAMA 702A (2 Points)**

**DRAMA 702B (2 Points)**

**Performance Skills**

Classes in stage acting, improvisation, movement, voice, character as they relate to modern and historical texts and forms of drama. The course will be taught over two semesters in workshop modules which are timetabled in relation to *DRAMA 703*.

Restriction: *DRAMA 603*

To complete this course students must enrol in *DRAMA 702 A and B*

**DRAMA 703A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 703B** (2 Points)

**Production Practice**

Classes in lighting, design, rehearsal principles and practice, stage management. These classes will form the basis on which full public productions of historical and modern texts will be undertaken. It is likely, in any one year, that one of these productions will be of a text which is taught in undergraduate literary courses in the University.

*Restriction: DRAMA 601*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 703 A and B*

**DRAMA 704A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 704B** (2 Points)

**Directing for Live Performance**

A workshop course which concentrates on the work of the director with text and with actors. Includes classes in text study, text reading, weekly lectures, practical directing exercises. Visits from practising directors.

*Restriction: DRAMA 610*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 704 A and B*

**DRAMA 705A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 705B** (2 Points)

**Writing for Live Performance**

Series of classes and exercises in building blocks of dramatic and performative writing, using study of existing plays and forms of drama as a starting point. Classes will meet with practising dramatists. Each student will be required to complete one substantial writing project in addition to set exercises.

*Restriction: DRAMA 604*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 705 A and B*

**DRAMA 706A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 706B** (2 Points)

**Modernism in Theatre**

Some of the major theorists and theories, some of the major movements and moments, and some seminal texts and performances in the development of modern theatre in the first half of the twentieth century. This will be followed up by looking at the manifestation of modernist ideas and practice in the second half of the century. Examples and cases will be drawn from Italian, French, Russian, German and American theatres as well as some material from dance, music and the fine arts.

*Restriction: DRAMA 611*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 706 A and B*

**DRAMA 707A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 707B** (2 Points)

**New Zealand and Pacific Drama**

A text-based course focusing on plays from the last 30 years, principally from New Zealand, but also from Fiji, Samoa and Australia.

*Restriction: DRAMA 612*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 707 A and B*

**DRAMA 720** (4 Points)

**Special Topic in Drama**

**DRAMA 721** (2 Points)

**Directed Study in Drama**

A supervised study of some approved area in drama and theatre studies.

**DRAMA 790A** (2 Points)

**DRAMA 790B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation in Drama**

Written work of about 10,000 words on a supervised topic.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 790 A and B*

**DRAMA 794A** (5 Points)

**DRAMA 794B** (5 Points)

**Thesis**

Written work of about 25,000 words on a supervised topic.

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 794 A and B*

**DRAMA 797A** (7 Points)

**DRAMA 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in DRAMA 797 A and B*

**Dutch**

**Stage I**

**DUTCH 100** (2 Points)

**Dutch Language Introductory A**

This course is designed to teach students the very basics of the Dutch language, especially pronunciation, spelling, word order rules and the use of present and future tense. A contrastive method is used to explain grammatical difficulties. Elementary speaking, listening and reading skills will be taught.

*Restriction: DUTCH 160*

**DUTCH 101** (2 Points)

**Dutch Language Introductory B**

Oral and written use of Dutch, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 100*

*Restriction: DUTCH 161*

**DUTCH 102** (2 Points)

**Aspects of the Civilisation of the Low Countries**

An introduction to Dutch and Flemish culture, past and present, in the European context. This course is open to all interested students, whether or not they are studying Dutch language, and is strongly recommended to all students of Dutch.

**DUTCH 160** (2 Points)

**Dutch Language Introductory A – Distance Learning**

Students will be taught the basics of the Dutch language, especially pronunciation, spelling, word order rules and the use of present and future tense. A contrastive method is used to explain grammatical difficulties. Elementary speaking, listening and reading skills will be taught. This course will be taught by distance learning.

*Restriction: DUTCH 100*

**DUTCH 161 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Language Introductory B – Distance Learning**

Oral and written use of Dutch tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading and translation. At the end of the course students will be able to sit the exam for the international 'Certificate in Dutch: Elementary Knowledge'. This course will be taught by distance learning.

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 100 or 160*  
*Restriction: DUTCH 101*

**Stage II****DUTCH 201 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Language Intermediate**

Written and oral use of Dutch with special emphasis on the structure of the standard language, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 101 or 161*

**DUTCH 202 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Colonial History and Literature**

Major works of Dutch colonial literature studied in translation and set in the historical context of the development of the Netherlands as a colonial power, with special emphasis on the Indonesian archipelago. This course is open to all interested students, but strongly recommended to students of Dutch and Indonesian.

**DUTCH 206 (2 Points)**  
**Anne Frank and the Holocaust**

Anne Frank's diary must be seen as emblematic for many tragic family histories during the Nazi dictatorship. Yet its original text has been published only recently. To what extent does this new edition affect our image of the Dutch Jewish girl? How does her diary relate to similar ones seen against the background of the period?

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points passed*

**DUTCH 207 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Modern Dutch Literature**

Novels, short stories and poetry written between 1860 and the present are read in English and in Dutch. Students will familiarise themselves with the social and historical background of the texts and their authors. Special attention will be paid to texts which have received wide international acclaim via the film-medium (Multatuli's *Max Havelaar* and Mulisch' novel *The Assault*).

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 101 or 161*

**DUTCH 210 (2 Points)**  
**Language and Linguistics**

Students will be introduced to the everyday usage of the Dutch language in the Netherlands. Aspects to be included range from child language acquisition to the use of languages in specific professional situations, e.g. business language, the language used by civil servants, the difference between spoken and written language, formal and informal speech, jargon, and the use of dialect.

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 201*

**DUTCH 277 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Study Abroad IIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**DUTCH 278 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Study Abroad IIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: DUTCH 277 and Departmental approval required*

**Stage III****DUTCH 301 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Language Advanced**

Advanced written and oral use of Dutch with special emphasis on the standard language, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 201*

**DUTCH 303 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Short Stories and Novels**

Short stories and (short) novels of the twentieth century will be read in the original. A representative choice will be made and the necessary information about the author and his/her literary background provided. In addition to what is covered in DUTCH 203, this course will require readings in and discussions of two major Dutch novels.

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 201*  
*Restriction: 160.203*

**DUTCH 304 (2 Points)****DUTCH 304A (1 Point)****DUTCH 304B (1 Point)****Dutch Poetry**

Poems from 1880 up to the present will be read in the original. A representative choice will be made and the necessary information about the author and his/her literary background provided. Special attention will be paid to the discussions on poetic principles in the 1930s and to the experimental poetry of the 1950s.

*Prerequisite: DUTCH 201*  
*Restriction: 160.204*

*To complete this course students must enrol in DUTCH 304 A and B, or DUTCH 304*

**DUTCH 320 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Dutch Studies or Departmental approval required*

**DUTCH 377 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Study Abroad IIIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**DUTCH 378 (2 Points)**  
**Dutch Study Abroad IIIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: DUTCH 377 and Departmental approval required*

**Education (Curriculum)****Stage I****EDCURR 101 (2 Points)****EDCURR 101A (1 Point)****EDCURR 101B (1 Point)**

**Professional Practice I**

Issues relating to the principles and practice of working as a teaching professional across primary and intermediate or secondary settings.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 101 A and B, or EDCURR 101

**Stage II**

EDCURR 201A (1 Point)

EDCURR 201B (1 Point)

**Professional Practice II**

Issues related to the principles and practice of working as a teaching professional will be covered in this course. Content areas will encompass: ethical practice, working with professionals in a school system, working with parents/care-givers, and community.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 201 A and B

EDCURR 210A (1 Point)

EDCURR 210B (1 Point)

**Languages**

A sound working knowledge of the content structure, underlying principles and application of the Language and Languages, and Te Reo in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 210 A and B

EDCURR 211A (1 Point)

EDCURR 211B (1 Point)

**Mathematics**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of the Mathematics in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 211 A and B

EDCURR 212A (1 Point)

EDCURR 212B (1 Point)

**Science**

A sound working knowledge and application of the content, structure and underlying principles of the Science in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Students will learn to abstract relevant science concepts from selected contexts and to develop scientific literacy.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 212 A and B

EDCURR 213A (1 Point)

EDCURR 213B (1 Point)

**Technology**

A sound working knowledge and application of the content, structure and underlying principles of the Technology in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Students will learn to abstract relevant technology concepts from selected contexts and to develop technological literacy.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 213 A and B

EDCURR 214A (1 Point)

EDCURR 214B (1 Point)

**Social Sciences**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of the Social Sciences in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 214 A and B, or EDCURR 214

EDCURR 215A (1 Point)

EDCURR 215B (1 Point)

**Health and Physical Well-Being**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of the Health and Physical Well-being in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 215 A and B

EDCURR 216A (1 Point)

EDCURR 216B (1 Point)

**The Arts**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of the Arts in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 216 A and B

EDCURR 231A (1 Point)

EDCURR 231B (1 Point)

**Te Reo (Languages)**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Te Reo and the Languages in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Appropriate research will be developed within the cultural framework of pedagogical theory and practices.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 231 A and B

EDCURR 232A (1 Point)

EDCURR 232B (1 Point)

**Pangarau (Mathematics)**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Pangarau in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Appropriate research will be developed within the cultural framework of pedagogical theory and practices.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 232 A and B

EDCURR 233A (1 Point)

EDCURR 233B (1 Point)

**Putaiiao (Science)**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Putaiiao in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Students will learn to

abstract relevant ideas about science and also extract Maori skills and knowledge within the context of Putaiao.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 233 A and B

**EDCURR 234A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 234B** (1 Point)

#### Hangarau (Technology)

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Hangarau in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. Students will learn to abstract relevant ideas about technology and extract Maori skills and knowledge from the cultural frameworks developed in the hangarau curriculum.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 234 A and B

**EDCURR 235** (2 Points)

#### Tikanga-a-iwi (Social Sciences)

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Tikanga-a-iwi in the New Zealand curriculum will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. A kaupapa Maori theoretical framework will operate in developing research and teaching/learning practices for this curriculum area.

**EDCURR 236** (2 Points)

#### Hauora te me Kori-a-Tinana (Health and Physical Well-Being)

This study is linked to the Health and Physical Well-being curriculum. Students will be expected to have a sound working knowledge of its content, structure and application in the New Zealand curriculum. Ideas of Kori-a-tinana will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. A kaupapa Maori theoretical framework will operate in developing research and teaching/learning practices for this curriculum area.

**EDCURR 237** (2 Points)

#### Mahi Toi (The Arts)

Mahi toi as a study is linked to the Arts curriculum. Students will be required to have a sound working knowledge of the content, structure and application of Arts in the New Zealand curriculum. It will be developed using a reo-rua and/or rumaki approach. A kaupapa Maori theoretical framework will operate in developing research and teaching/learning practices for this curriculum area.

#### Stage III

**EDCURR 301A** (1 Point)  
**EDCURR 301B** (1 Point)

#### Professional Practice III

Issues related to the principles and practice of working as a teaching professional will be covered in this course. Content areas will encompass the application of pedagogical theory in a prescribed setting.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 301 A and B

#### Diploma Courses

**EDCURR 601A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 601B** (2 Points)

#### International Languages for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 601 A and B

**EDCURR 602A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 602B** (2 Points)

#### Accounting for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 602 A and B

**EDCURR 603A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 603B** (2 Points)

#### English for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 603 A and B

**EDCURR 604A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 604B** (2 Points)

#### Geography for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 604 A and B

**EDCURR 605A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 605B** (2 Points)

#### History for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 605 A and B

**EDCURR 606A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 606B** (2 Points)

#### Maori for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 606 A and B

**EDCURR 607A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 607B** (2 Points)

#### Mathematics for Teaching Years 9–12

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 607 A and B

**EDCURR 608A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 608B** (2 Points)

#### Science for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 608 A and B

**EDCURR 609A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 609B** (2 Points)

#### Science for Teaching for Biology Specialists

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 609 A and B

**EDCURR 610A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 610B** (2 Points)

#### Science for Teaching for Physics Specialists

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 610 A and B

**EDCURR 611A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 611B** (2 Points)

#### Economics for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 611 A and B

**EDCURR 612A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 612B** (2 Points)

#### Japanese for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 612 A and B

**EDCURR 613A** (2 Points)  
**EDCURR 613B** (2 Points)

#### Spanish for Teaching

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 613 A and B

EDCURRE 614A	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 626A	(1.5 Points)
EDCURRE 614B	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 626B	(1.5 Points)
<b>Physics and Chemistry for Teaching</b>		<b>English for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 614 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 626 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 615A	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 627A	(1.5 Points)
EDCURRE 615B	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 627B	(1.5 Points)
<b>Chemistry and Biology for Teaching</b>		<b>ESOL for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 615 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 627 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 616A	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 628A	(1.5 Points)
EDCURRE 616B	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 628B	(1.5 Points)
<b>Physics and Biology for Teaching</b>		<b>Geography for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 616 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 628 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 617A	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 629A	(1.5 Points)
EDCURRE 617B	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 629B	(1.5 Points)
<b>Science for Teaching for Chemistry Specialists</b>		<b>History for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 617 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 629 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 618A	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 630A	(1.5 Points)
EDCURRE 618B	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 630B	(1.5 Points)
<b>Science for Teaching for Geography Specialists</b>		<b>Maori for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 618 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 630 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 619A	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 631A	(1.5 Points)
EDCURRE 619B	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 631B	(1.5 Points)
<b>Special Topic</b>		<b>Mathematics for Teaching Year 13</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 619 A and B</i>		<i>Corequisite: EDCURRE 607</i>	
EDCURRE 620A	(2 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 631 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 620B	(2 Points)	EDCURRE 632A	(1.5 Points)
<b>Special Topic: Classical Studies/Latin for Teaching</b>		EDCURRE 632B	(1.5 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 620 A and B</i>		<b>Media Studies for Teaching</b>	
EDCURRE 621A	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 632 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 621B	(1.5 Points)	EDCURRE 633A	(1.5 Points)
<b>Bilingual Curriculum Studies for Teaching</b>		EDCURRE 633B	(1.5 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 621 A and B</i>		<b>Science for Teaching</b>	
EDCURRE 622A	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 633 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 622B	(1.5 Points)	EDCURRE 634A	(1.5 Points)
<b>Classical Studies for Teaching</b>		EDCURRE 634B	(1.5 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 622 A and B</i>		<b>Social Science for Teaching</b>	
EDCURRE 623A	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 634 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 623B	(1.5 Points)	EDCURRE 635A	(1.5 Points)
<b>International Languages for Teaching</b>		EDCURRE 635B	(1.5 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 623 A and B</i>		<b>Economics for Teaching</b>	
EDCURRE 624A	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 635 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 624B	(1.5 Points)	EDCURRE 636A	(1.5 Points)
<b>Accounting for Teaching</b>		EDCURRE 636B	(1.5 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 624 A and B</i>		<b>Biology for Teaching</b>	
EDCURRE 625A	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 636 A and B</i>	
EDCURRE 625B	(1.5 Points)	EDCURRE 637A	(1.5 Points)
<b>Computer Science/Info Technology for Teaching</b>		EDCURRE 637B	(1.5 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 625 A and B</i>		<b>Physics for Teaching</b>	
		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURRE 637 A and B</i>	

<b>EDCURR 638A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 650A</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>EDCURR 638B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 650B</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>Chemistry for Teaching</b>		<b>French for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 638 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 650 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 639A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 651A</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>EDCURR 639B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 651B</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>Japanese for Teaching</b>		<b>Special Topic for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 639 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 651 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 640A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 661A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>EDCURR 640B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 661B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Spanish for Teaching</b>		<b>Music for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 640 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 661 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 641A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 662A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>EDCURR 641B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 662B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Social Studies for Teaching</b>		<b>Music for Community Teachers</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 641 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 662 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 642A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 663A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>EDCURR 642B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 663B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Science for Teaching for Physics and Chemistry Specialists</b>		<b>Chinese for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 642 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 663 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 643A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 664A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>EDCURR 643B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 664B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Science for Teaching for Physics and Biology Specialists</b>		<b>French for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 643 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 664 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 644A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 665A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>EDCURR 644B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 665B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Science for Teaching for Chemistry and Biology Specialists</b>		<b>Samoan for Teaching</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 644 A and B</i>		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 665 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 645A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 666A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>EDCURR 645B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 666B</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Technology for Teaching</b>		<b>Teaching Junior Mathematics</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 645 A and B</i>		This course develops the content knowledge required to support the teaching of Year 9 and Year 10 Mathematics, and the knowledge and skills associated with planning, teaching and assessing Year 9 and Year 10 Mathematics, consistent with national curriculum requirements.	
<b>EDCURR 646A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 666 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 646B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 667A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Music for Teaching</b>		<b>EDCURR 667B</b>	(2 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 646 A and B</i>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>EDCURR 647A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 667 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 647B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 668A</b>	(2 Points)
<b>Samoan for Teaching</b>		<b>EDCURR 668B</b>	(2 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 647 A and B</i>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>EDCURR 648A</b>	(1.5 Points)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 668 A and B</i>	
<b>EDCURR 648B</b>	(1.5 Points)	<b>EDCURR 670A</b>	(1.5 Points)
<b>Health Education for Teaching</b>		<b>EDCURR 670B</b>	(1.5 Points)
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 648 A and B</i>		<b>Teaching Art History</b>	
<b>EDCURR 649A</b>	(1.5 Points)	This course develops the content knowledge required to support the teaching of Year 12 and Year 13 Art History and the knowledge and skills	
<b>EDCURR 649B</b>	(1.5 Points)		
<b>Chinese for Teaching</b>			
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 649 A and B</i>			

associated with planning, teaching and assessing Year 12 and Year 13 Art History, consistent with national curriculum requirements.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 670 A and B

EDCURR 671A (1.5 Points)  
EDCURR 671B (1.5 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 671 A and B

EDCURR 672A (1.5 Points)  
EDCURR 672B (1.5 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 672 A and B

EDCURR 675A (1 Point)  
EDCURR 675B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 675 A and B

EDCURR 676A (1 Point)  
EDCURR 676B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 676 A and B

EDCURR 677A (1 Point)  
EDCURR 677B (1 Point)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in EDCURR 677 A and B

**Education (Professional)**

**Stage II**

EDPROF 201A (1 Point)  
EDPROF 201B (1 Point)

**Tutoring in Science**

A predominantly practical course in which students learn science tutoring skills in a secondary classroom.

*Prerequisite: 10 points in Stage I Science subjects*

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 201 A and B

**Stage III**

EDPROF 381 (2 Points)  
**Current Advances in Science**

A study of current priorities and interests in scientific research. In addition to specific topics such as gene technology, the course includes several interdisciplinary modules, such as fractal and chaotic processes, global change and modern instrumental techniques. The precise content of the course will vary from year to year in order to reflect current research and developments.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in Education*

**Diploma Courses**

EDPROF 601A (1 Point)  
EDPROF 601B (1 Point)

**Educational Studies**

Student understandings about the relationship of human development and learning to teaching, cultural and linguistic diversity of students and the

ability to reflect on social and political issues as they impinge on learning and teaching will be developed in this course.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 601 A and B

EDPROF 602 (2 Points)  
**Learning and Teaching I**

Students will develop an understanding of strategies which facilitate children's learning by creating learning opportunities, shaping their learning environment, enabling self-managing behaviour, facilitating learning and supporting learning through assessment. The principles developed in this course will underpin all curriculum courses.

EDPROF 603A (1 Point)  
EDPROF 603B (1 Point)

**Professional Practice in Language and Languages (including Te Reo)**

A sound working knowledge of the content structure underlying principles and application of the Language and Languages and Te Reo in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 603 A and B

EDPROF 604A (1 Point)  
EDPROF 604B (1 Point)

**Professional Practice in Mathematics**

A sound working knowledge of the content, structure and underlying principles and application of Mathematics in the New Zealand curriculum document will be developed. Appropriate research will be introduced within the framework of pedagogical theory and practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 604 A and B

EDPROF 609A (1 Point)  
EDPROF 609B (1 Point)

**Learning and Teaching II**

The knowledge and skills outlined in Learning and Teaching I will be further developed and applied across a variety of settings using the principle of reflective practice.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 609 A and B

EDPROF 610A (1 Point)  
EDPROF 610B (1 Point)

**Professional Practice in Science and Technology**

A sound working knowledge and application of the content, structure and underlying principles of the Science and Technology in the New Zealand curriculum documents will be developed. Students will learn to abstract relevant science and technology concepts from selected contexts and to develop scientific and technological literacy.

To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 610 A and B

EDPROF 611A (1 Point)  
EDPROF 611B (1 Point)

**Professional Practice in Social Studies, the Arts, and Health and Physical Education**

Students will develop an understanding of the

general aims, learning activities, and skills as outlined in the appropriate sections of the New Zealand Curriculum Framework. Competence in applying this knowledge will be developed across a range of settings.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 611 A and B*

**EDPROF 612A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 612B (1 Point)**

#### The Practicum

Students will learn to develop their knowledge of The New Zealand Curriculum Framework, participate in school organisation, communicate with parents and caregivers, and apply pedagogical theory within the school-based practicum component.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 612 A and B*

**EDPROF 614A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 614B (1 Point)**

#### Reflective Professional Practice

Students will be encouraged to develop, reflect on and critique their own teaching and professional practice using appropriate theories of teaching effectiveness and data-based methods of reflection.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 614 A and B*

**EDPROF 622A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 622B (1 Point)**

#### Professional Practice

Teachers' professional and institutional extra-subject responsibilities will form the core content of this course. It will focus on pupil behaviour, pastoral care, special needs and school management. Continuing professional development will be a central theme.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 622 A and B*

**EDPROF 624A (1.5 Points)**

**EDPROF 624B (1.5 Points)**

#### Educational Studies

The key themes of this course will be theories and practice of teaching, learning and assessment. Studies of the social and political contexts of education, and an intensive study of Te Reo will also be included.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 624 A and B*

**EDPROF 625A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 625B (1 Point)**

#### Classroom Teaching

This course is based on teaching in schools. It examines the provision of opportunities to learn in a variety of classroom contexts and professionalism in school and classroom situations. Content will include: processes of lesson planning, teaching skills and methods, and assessment and evaluation of learning.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 625 A and B*

**EDPROF 630A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 630B (1 Point)**

#### Curriculum Issues in Special Education

An introduction to assessment and programme

development for children with moderate and severe disabilities, using a problem-solving and data-based approach.

*Corequisite: EDUC 101 and 223*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 630 A and B*

**EDPROF 631A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 631B (1 Point)**

#### Research Topic in Special Education

An introduction to research methods and procedures in special education. The major component of the course will be an empirical study of some aspect of special education for children with disabilities.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 630*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 631 A and B*

**EDPROF 632A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 632B (1 Point)**

#### Folio of Casework (Special Education)

Students will be required to plan, undertake, and report three case-studies involving children with disabilities. Students will be encouraged to focus each of their case-studies on one particular curriculum area.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 630*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 632 A and B*

**EDPROF 633 (3 Points)**

#### Students in Contexts

An introduction to concepts and practices in the interaction of individuals and small groups of students in their classroom contexts and to understanding the resource teacher's role in effective assessment, consultation and intervention strategies.

**EDPROF 634 (3 Points)**

#### Classroom Contexts

An introduction to classroom contexts. Emphasis is placed upon understanding the role of the resource teacher in assisting teachers to develop inclusive classroom environments that enhance academic performance and social behaviour.

**EDPROF 650 (2 Points)**

#### Casework: Theory and Practice

An introduction to the concept of disciplined inquiry, followed by an application of a variety of theoretical approaches to individual casework.

**EDPROF 651 (2 Points)**

#### Casework in Educational Contexts

A critical analysis of the theoretical underpinnings of a range of educational assessment and intervention approaches, integrated with skill development for collaborative work across home-school contexts.

**EDPROF 652 (2 Points)**

#### Educational Psychology: Professional Practice

Trainees will assess their own learning needs and engage in self-directed learning after studying the role of educational psychologists in the context of legislation, the Code of Ethics and other forms of accountability, educational systems, policy, culture and community.

**EDPROF 653A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 653B** (1 Point)

**Casework: Early Childhood**

An examination of approaches and professional issues in service delivery, with supervised practice in family, community and interdisciplinary contexts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 653 A and B*

**EDPROF 654** (2 Points)  
**Educational Psychology: A Systems Approach**

A study of a theoretical framework for analysing organisational problems and to be subsequently applied in major project work.

**EDPROF 655A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 655B** (1 Point)

**Elective: Casework**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 655 A and B*

**EDPROF 667A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 667B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic in Mathematics Education**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 667 A and B*

**EDPROF 670** (2 Points)  
**Assessment in Science Education**

An introduction to the principles and procedures of science curriculum evaluation and a critical analysis of the purposes, strategies and methods of assessment in school science. Some course references and class discussion will require the use of the Internet. Students have use of a computer laboratory.

**EDPROF 672A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 672B** (1 Point)

**Technology and Society**

Initially participants in this course will revise the design method and be introduced to a technology project which will be the main coursework requirement. The learning experience will be evaluated and reported. Most sessions will investigate technologies that are present in the classroom, the home and workplace. A wide range of technologies and the activities undertaken by technologists and professional engineers will be presented by a number of different specialists. A primary focus will be the impact of technology on society.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 672 A and B*

**EDPROF 673** (2 Points)  
**Research Methodology and Project in Technology Education**

This course has two components. The first will examine the principles of instructional design and methodologies for evaluation of the effectiveness of teaching techniques. The second and major component of the course will involve the implementation of technology teaching in the school classroom and the production of a report evaluating the teaching and a critiqued selection of work done by pupils.

**EDPROF 674** (2 Points)  
**Technology and the School Curriculum**

A critical examination of a number of issues relating

to technology in the New Zealand curriculum, e.g. rationale for inclusion, the notion of an inclusive curriculum, implementation, assessment and an evaluation of teaching strategies appropriate to technology. Students' practice will be informed by up-to-date research.

**EDPROF 675** (2 Points)  
**Investigation in Technology Education**

This course is an extension of the work done in EDPROF 673 Research Methodology and Project in Technology Education. An original study of implementing technology education will be undertaken and reported.

**EDPROF 690A** (3.5 Points)  
**EDPROF 690B** (3.5 Points)

**Dissertation (Educational Psychology)**

*Prerequisite: Departmental consent required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 690 A and B*

**EDPROF 691** (7 Points)

**EDPROF 691A** (3.5 Points)  
**EDPROF 691B** (3.5 Points)

**Folio of Casework (Counselling)**

*Prerequisite: Departmental consent required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 691 A and B, or EDPROF 691*

**EDPROF 692** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 692A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 692B** (1 Point)

**Research Project in Mathematics Education**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 692 A and B, or EDPROF 692*

**EDPROF 693** (4 Points)

**EDPROF 693A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 693B** (2 Points)

**Investigation in Mathematics Education**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 693 A and B, or EDPROF 693*

**EDPROF 694** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 694A** (1 Point)  
**EDPROF 694B** (1 Point)

**Investigation in Science Education**

An original study (empirical or theoretical) that relates directly to some issue or issues in science education at primary, secondary or tertiary level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 694 A and B, or EDPROF 694*

**EDPROF 697A** (7 Points)  
**EDPROF 697B** (7 Points)

**Internship**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 697 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**EDPROF 723A** (2 Points)  
**EDPROF 723B** (2 Points)

**Special Education: Programme Issues**

This advanced applied course complements and extends the content of the existing theoretical course in Special Education (EDUC 744). The course will focus primarily on issues surrounding

the assessment of, and programme development for, children with disabilities, via a disciplined inquiry approach in casework.

*Corequisite: EDUC 345*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 723 A and B*

**EDPROF 726A** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 726B** (2 Points)

#### Psychological Issues in Literacy

A critical examination of selected issues in reading, writing and language education from a number of theoretical perspectives.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 726 A and B*

**EDPROF 730A** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 730B** (2 Points)

#### Approaches to Teaching and Mentoring

A critical appraisal of teaching pedagogies and assessment practices and their implications for learners and learning. Mentors will analyse their own practice in relation to alternative pedagogies and develop strategies to assist student teachers to establish effective teaching practices through critical self-reflection.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 730 A and B*

**EDPROF 731A** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 731B** (2 Points)

#### The Mentoring Process

Approaches to mentoring and reflections on issues and practices associated with the mentoring role. Emphasis will be placed upon the mentor-student relationship including the way this develops over time, issues associated with promoting student self-evaluation, and assessment of school-based practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 731 A and B*

**EDPROF 733** (3 Points)

#### Students in Contexts (Advanced)

An examination of the interaction of individuals and small groups of students and the contexts in which they experience learning and behavioural difficulties. This includes implementing effective assessment, consultation and intervention strategies in order to effect positive change.

*Restriction: EDPROF 633*

**EDPROF 734** (3 Points)

#### Classroom Contexts (Advanced)

An analysis of classroom contexts and their impact upon the learning and behaviour of students. Emphasis is placed upon assisting teachers to develop inclusive classroom environments that enhance academic performance and social behaviour.

*Restriction: EDPROF 634*

**EDPROF 735A** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 735B** (2 Points)

#### School and Community Contexts

An analysis of school and community contexts and their impact on student learning and behaviour. Emphasis is placed on consulting and collaborating with schools and community members to put in

place effective strategies and programmes which will enhance outcomes for students.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 633 and 634, or 733 and 734*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 735 A and B*

**EDPROF 736A** (2 Points)

**EDPROF 736B** (2 Points)

#### Professional Practice Portfolio

A supervised practicum incorporating a portfolio of professional practice which demonstrates achievement of the learning outcomes of the complete programme.

*Prerequisite: EDPROF 633 and 634, or 733 and 734*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 736 A and B*

**EDPROF 742** (2 Points)

#### Couple Counselling

An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within couple relationships.

**EDPROF 743** (2 Points)

#### Family Counselling

An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within family relationships.

**EDPROF 744** (2 Points)

#### Cultural Issues in Counselling

A critical examination of cultural dimensions present in counselling activities.

**EDPROF 745** (2 Points)

#### Group Counselling

A critical examination of group dimensions in counselling activities.

**EDPROF 746** (2 Points)

#### The Counselling Process

An advanced examination of principles of counselling together with their application in the counselling process.

*Corequisite: EDPROF 747 A and B*

**EDPROF 747A** (1 Point)

**EDPROF 747B** (1 Point)

#### Counselling Laboratory

A laboratory focusing on the acquisition of counselling skills and appropriate role performance.

*Corequisite: EDPROF 746*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 747 A and B*

**EDPROF 748** (2 Points)

#### Consultation

An advanced examination of principles of consultation, together with practical experience in selected procedures.

**EDPROF 749** (2 Points)

#### Professional Issues in Counselling

An examination of significant professional issues in counselling, including supervision, ethics and accountability, and role development.

**EDPROF 750** (2 Points)

#### Critical Analysis in Counselling

An introduction to principles of critical analysis as

applied to theory and practice in counselling, and to basic methodology in counselling research.

**EDPROF 751 (2 Points)**  
**Interventions, Assessment and Evaluation in Career Counselling**

A critical review of the major theories and current research in career development.  
*Restriction: EDUC 740*

**EDPROF 752 (2 Points)**  
**Theory and Research in Vocational Behaviour**

The principles and procedures of assessment and evaluation and structured interventions in career counselling.  
*Restriction: EDUC 740*

**EDPROF 760 (2 Points)**  
**History of School Science Curricula**

A consideration of the major influences on contemporary science curriculum development.  
*Prerequisite: EDUC 782*

**EDPROF 761 (2 Points)**  
**Curriculum Design in Science Education**

An introduction to the principles and processes in the design of science instruction.  
*Prerequisite: EDUC 782*

**EDPROF 764 (4 Points)**  
**History, Philosophy and Science Teaching**

An examination of the connections between science teaching and the history, philosophy and sociology of science.

**EDPROF 770 (4 Points)**  
**Educational Leadership**

A critical examination of the theory and practice of educational leadership including a series of practical workshops on leadership effectiveness.

**EDPROF 771 (4 Points)**  
**Educational Policy and Organisation**

An examination of various conceptual, policy, and empirical debates about New Zealand educational policy and school and organisational effectiveness.

**EDPROF 772A (2 Points)**  
**EDPROF 772B (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods for Educational Practitioners**

The theoretical and practical features of research which is designed to investigate and improve educational practice. Students will learn research methodologies and associated research methods that are particularly suited to this practical purpose. A year-long action research project in an educational institution will be the main assessment requirement.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 772 A and B*

**EDPROF 773 (2 Points)**

**EDPROF 773A (1 Point)**

**EDPROF 773B (1 Point)**

**Special Study in Education**

The course will consist of the supervised writing of an essay or essays in the field of educational inquiry.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 773 A and B, or EDPROF 773*

**EDPROF 790 (4 Points)**

**EDPROF 790A (2 Points)**

**EDPROF 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*Restriction: EDPROF 796*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 790 A and B, or EDPROF 790*

**EDPROF 794 (8 Points)**

**EDPROF 794A (4 Points)**

**EDPROF 794B (4 Points)**

**Advanced Folio of Casework**

Includes 500 hours of counselling-related activities in an approved setting under supervision, together with attendance at University seminars.

*Prerequisite: Departmental consent required*

*Restriction: EDPROF 797*

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 794 A and B, or EDPROF 794*

**EDPROF 796A (7 Points)**

**EDPROF 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 796 A and B*

**EDPROF 797 (7 Points)**

**EDPROF 797A (3.5 Points)**

**EDPROF 797B (3.5 Points)**

**Advanced Folio of Casework**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 797 A and B, or EDPROF 797*

**Special Topics**

**EDPROF 841A (3.5 Points)**

**EDPROF 841B (3.5 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 841 A and B*

**EDPROF 842A (3.5 Points)**

**EDPROF 842B (3.5 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDPROF 842 A and B*

**EDPROF 897 (14 Points)**

**Thesis**

**Education**

**Stage I**

**EDUC 101 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Developmental Psychology**

An introduction to human development.

*Restriction: EDPROF 101*

**EDUC 102 (2 Points)**

**Schooling, Education and Society**

An examination of issues of ethnicity, gender and class in, mainly, a New Zealand context.

*Restriction: EDPROF 102*

**EDUC 103 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Maori Education**

An introduction to learning and teaching in Aotearoa with particular reference to education, schooling and the Treaty of Waitangi. Includes a

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

focus on intervention strategies and issues facing Maori education and schooling.

---

### Stage II

**EDUC 201 (2 Points)**

#### History of Education

An introduction to historical studies in education, with special reference to New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 202 (2 Points)**

#### New Zealand Education

Issues and problems associated with the organisation, administration and practice of education in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 205 (2 Points)**

#### Comparative Education

Issues in New Zealand education viewed from a comparative perspective.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 206 (2 Points)**

#### Sociology of Education

An introduction to contemporary sociology of education.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 207 (2 Points)**

#### The State and Indigenous Education in the Islands of the Pacific including Aotearoa

An examination of the interaction of the state and the indigenous peoples in the contested area of education and schooling.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 208 (2 Points)**

#### Educational Philosophy

An introduction to the philosophy of education through the work of influential liberal, radical and postmodern thinkers.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 210 (2 Points)**

#### Introduction to Curriculum Studies

An introduction to ideas about curriculum, the analysis of existing New Zealand curricula and proposals for curriculum change.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 211 (2 Points)**

#### Child Development

A study of central issues in development with a focus on middle childhood. Includes aspects of: literacy, bilingual language development, friends and peers, and mathematical understanding.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 222 (2 Points)**

#### Introduction to Methods of Research in Education

An introduction to techniques used in social science research.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 223 (2 Points)**

#### Educational Psychology

Learning and teaching in educational settings. Major sections of the course deal with ability and

motivation in learning, applied behaviour analysis, the measurement of achievement and attitudes, and special education. The course assists students in preparing for more advanced courses in psychological studies.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

**EDUC 224 (2 Points)**

#### Assessment and Evaluation in Education

Critical insights into the social and political contexts, and the skills required for measurement and evaluation.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Education*

---

### Stage III

**EDUC 301 (2 Points)**

#### Comparative Education

An introduction to comparative theory and methodology through a critical study of educational issues in New Zealand and other countries. The major focus is on curriculum and assessment across a range of school systems.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 302 (2 Points)**

#### History of Education

Educational reform in the twentieth century. Emphasis is placed on the establishment, development, maintenance and reform of the New Zealand education system.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 303 (2 Points)**

#### School and Society

The sociology of the curriculum and school processes. The dynamics and mechanisms of 'socialisation' through schooling and 'alternative' curriculum approaches, and the class, gender, ethnic and national issues that underlie the curriculum.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 304 (2 Points)**

#### Educational Philosophy and Policy

Examines the competing ideologies of individualism and community, their influence in recent educational reforms in New Zealand, and their wider implications for education, society and culture. Introduces the basic concepts and themes of classical liberalism, comparing and contrasting them with versions of neo-liberalism, and outlines the case for a community-based social policy and the renewal of social democracy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 305 (2 Points)**

#### Feminist Perspectives in Education/Matauranga Wahine

A critical study of feminist theory and research in education, with emphasis on the New Zealand context. Includes a focus on traditional and contemporary Maori women's knowledge.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 306 (2 Points)**

#### Akonga Māori: Nga Take E Pa Ana Ki Nga Akonga Māori

Critical analysis of key issues in Maori education, incorporating Maori language and cultural perspectives through Maori pedagogy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

- EDUC 307 (2 Points)**  
**Education Policy Studies**  
 An investigation of key areas of educational policy with special emphasis given to issues of race, gender and class. While the major focus is on New Zealand education policy, international cases will be considered as appropriate.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 308 (2 Points)**  
**Historical Perspectives on the Family, School and Society**  
 A critical analysis of the changing educative relationship between families and schools in particular societies, with emphasis on class, gender, race and age issues.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 309 (2 Points)**  
**Issues in Pacific Nations' Education**  
 A critical examination of current issues/debates in Pacific Nations education for Pacific Islands countries and for Pasifika communities in New Zealand.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 310 (2 Points)**  
**Schooling and Ethnic Relations**  
 Issues of 'race' and ethnicity in education. Includes a critical examination of theories, structures and strategies such as 'multicultural education' and 'anti-racist education' as developed in New Zealand and overseas in response to ethnic diversity. In particular the course focuses on the place of schooling in the economic and political relations of Pakeha, Maori and Pacific Islands' peoples in New Zealand.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 311 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Teaching in Diverse Urban Schools**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education and Departmental approval*
- EDUC 312 (2 Points)**
- EDUC 312A (1 Point)**
- EDUC 312B (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic: Children and Adolescents with Learning Disabilities/Reading Disorders**  
*Prerequisite: EDUC 221 or 223 or 224 and Departmental approval required*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 312 A and B, or EDUC 312*
- EDUC 313 (2 Points)**
- EDUC 313A (1 Point)**
- EDUC 313B (1 Point)**  
**Special Study in Education**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education and Departmental approval*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 313 A and B, or EDUC 313*
- EDUC 340 (2 Points)**  
**The Guidance Process**  
 An introduction to the theory and practice of counselling and guidance within New Zealand educational institutions. A component of practical work must be completed concurrently.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 341 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Counselling in the Community**  
 An examination of the application of basic principles of counselling to the needs of individual children and adults and to couples, families and other groups.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 342 (2 Points)**  
**Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach**  
 A study of contemporary ideas and research in human learning and instruction. Topics will include the analysis of child and adult behaviour in school, home and residential settings.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 345 (2 Points)**  
**Special Education**  
 An examination of the special educational needs of children showing atypical development, including children with intellectual disability, and the effectiveness of current special educational provisions and early intervention strategies.  
*Prerequisite: EDUC 223 and 2 further points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 346 (2 Points)**  
**Early Determinants of Behaviour**  
 A study of research dealing with the influence on later behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth and during early childhood. Emphasis is placed on the family as the primary context for development.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 348 (2 Points)**  
**The Reading Process**  
 Contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 349 (2 Points)**  
**Psychology of Learning and Motivation in the Classroom**  
 Recent theory and research on children's learning and motivation, particularly as they relate to the social context found in classrooms.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 350 (2 Points)**  
**The Seriously Ill Child**  
 A study of the needs, problems, and development of seriously ill children.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 351 (2 Points)**  
**Understanding Behaviour in Schools: A Psychological Perspective**  
 The contribution of psychological theories and methods to educators' understanding and management of learning and instruction in New Zealand schools.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*
- EDUC 352 (2 Points)**  
**Developmental Psychology: Childhood and Adolescence**  
 Selected aspects of child and adolescent psychology including theories of development and an examination of contemporary issues in development such as literacy, technology, peers, sexuality and identity.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*  
*Restrictions: EDUC 343 or 344*

**EDUC 380 (2 Points)**

**Methods of Research in Education**

An introduction to the varieties of qualitative and quantitative approaches available to educational and social researchers. Students will be able to gain practical experience through completion of a supervised research project.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 381 (2 Points)**

**Adult Learning and Education**

An introduction to adult and continuing education theory and practice. Major components include: adults as learners, teaching practices, programme planning and agencies, and current issues in which adult education is engaged.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 382 (2 Points)**

**Aspects of Science Education**

An introduction to some central issues in science teaching and learning at primary and secondary school levels. Topics such as: the nature of science and its relationship to science education, children's learning in science, the role of practical investigations and the New Zealand Science Curriculum will be discussed.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 383 (2 Points)**

**Pedagogy**

An examination of the theory and practice of teaching in relation to the tradition of critical pedagogy. The course will investigate the theoretical foundations of critical pedagogy as well as critical pedagogy in the classroom.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 384 (2 Points)**

**Information Technology in Education**

The role of computers in primary and secondary education.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**EDUC 385 (2 Points)**

**Issues in Science, Technology, Society and Environment Education**

An examination of the complex interactions between science, technology, society and the environment. A critical consideration of some of the major issues confronting human society and ways in which an ecologically oriented science and technology education can be implemented in primary and secondary schools.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Education*

**Diploma Courses**

**EDUC 601 (2 Points)**

**Research Topic in Adult Education**

The course will consist of supervised writing of an essay or essays in the field of adult educational enquiry usually within the student's own practice context.

**EDUC 602 (2 Points)**

**Practicum in Adult Education**

Supervised practice within an adult education setting where students apply and critically evaluate their learning from the theory and educational issues in relation to practice. Unless otherwise negotiated, the supervised practice will take place within the student's own workplace. Students will produce a folio of work and a supervisor's report will normally be expected.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**EDUC 701A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 701B (2 Points)**

**Comparative Education**

An examination of issues in New Zealand education in light of comparative theory and method.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 701 A and B*

**EDUC 702A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 702B (2 Points)**

**Historical Studies in Education**

An examination of issues involved in historical studies and research related to education, including supervised investigation of a selected aspect.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 702 A and B*

**EDUC 703 (4 Points)**

**Educational Philosophy**

Philosophical issues in Education.

**EDUC 704 (4 Points)**

**Sociology of Education**

A political, sociological and comparative perspective on the nature and consequences of the governance of education and on the roles of state, market and 'community' in that process (with reference to both New Zealand and overseas).

**EDUC 705 (4 Points)**

**Education and Development Policy**

This course will explore the following topics/themes: policy analysis and formulation in the context of development; the impact of the globalisation on, and the role of international agencies in, education for development; human capital theory/human resource development; education and aid; research and consultancy strategies and ethics; New Zealand's ODA policy towards Oceania; global/local intersections in Oceanic education.

**EDUC 706 (4 Points)**

**Kaupapa Māori: Te Reo Māori I Waenganui I Te Ao Pakeha**

An examination of the social, political and historical implications for Maori language through a critical analysis of the interaction between Maori language and the dominant Pakeha education system. Requires experience in Maori education.

**EDUC 707A (2 Points)**

**EDUC 707B (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Kura: Maori Education Policy Development and Practice**

An analysis of Maori education policy development and practice in New Zealand schooling.

*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 707 A and B*

- EDUC 708 (4 Points)**  
**Feminist Issues in Education**  
 An examination of selected issues in current feminist debates on education.
- EDUC 709 (4 Points)**  
**Educational Policy Studies**  
 Provides a critical, indepth examination of selected themes and topics in educational policy studies, with a particular emphasis on the politics of educational reform in New Zealand.
- EDUC 710A (2 Points)**  
**EDUC 710B (2 Points)**  
**International Issues in Indigenous Education**  
 Applied critical studies of selected educational and schooling issues of international importance to indigenous peoples. Requires experience in indigenous education contexts. An interview with the Course Coordinator is a prerequisite for enrolment.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 710 A and B*
- EDUC 712 (4 Points)**  
**'Race', Ethnicity and Education**  
 An examination of selected issues concerning 'race' and ethnicity in education.
- EDUC 717 (4 Points)**
- EDUC 717A (2 Points)**  
**EDUC 717B (2 Points)**  
**Special Study**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 717 A and B, or EDUC 717*
- EDUC 718A (2 Points)**  
**EDUC 718B (2 Points)**  
**The Pedagogy of Paulo Freire**  
 Explores Paulo Freire's philosophy, pedagogical theory, and practice of adult literacy education. Major critiques of Freire's work are discussed, and consideration is given to the application of Freirean ideas in a variety of First World and Third World settings.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 718 A and B*
- EDUC 719 (4 Points)**  
**Te Ao Tuhi: Historical and Contemporary Issues in Maori Literacy**  
 Draws upon both sociological and psychological theories and methodologies to examine and understand the historical and contemporary factors which have shaped and influenced Maori literacy. Requires knowledge of Te Reo Maori.
- EDUC 720 (2 Points)**
- EDUC 720A (1 Point)**  
**EDUC 720B (1 Point)**  
**Introduction to Advanced Study in Cultural and Policy Studies in Education**  
 An overview of master's level work in Cultural and Policy Studies in Education.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 720 A and B, or EDUC 720*
- EDUC 721A (2 Points)**  
**EDUC 721B (2 Points)**  
**Culture and Education**
- Exploration of the relationships between education (as institution and process) and cultural values and influences with specific references to the island societies of the Pacific. Themes included are: cultural influences on the school; cultural diversity as an issue in formal education; cultural universals as markers of change and reform; teachers as agents of cultural change; schooling and cultural identity.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 721 A and B*
- EDUC 722A (2 Points)**  
**EDUC 722B (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Study of Education in Small Island States**  
 The course will provide opportunities for students to study the following themes within the context of the small island states of the Pacific region: the nature of the relationship between education and development; the extent to which educational directions, form and content are influenced by the development process; the influence on education of major economic, social and political issues in the region; selected issues/problems in education in the region.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 722 A and B*
- EDUC 723 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Curriculum Theory**  
 The purpose of this course is to enable students to identify and explain the significant issues in the current curriculum debate and define their own curricular position in the context of the Oceanic region. They should learn to recognise similarities in local discussions about curriculum and place particular instances within a theoretical field.
- EDUC 724 (4 Points)**  
**Educational Planning in Third World Countries**  
 Critical analysis of the theories and methods used in educational planning (as sectoral or national education plans) in third world countries with special reference to the countries of Oceania. The course will emphasise the understanding of current and emerging theories and assumptions in development planning and administration relevant to education systems in the region, and critically examine the educational plans of regional countries.
- EDUC 725 (2 Points)**  
**Language and Literacy in a Development Context**  
 This course draws on theoretical and empirical research on issues related to literacy, bilingualism and other aspects of language significant to education in the context of development.
- EDUC 728 (4-Points)**  
**Special Topic**
- EDUC 729 (4 Points)**  
**The Politics of Maori Images**  
 Draws upon Kaupapa Maori theories, alongside anti-colonial and critical theories of deconstruction, to provide analysis of the ways in which images of Maori are constructed and presented in a range of media forms including: film, video, television, photographic images, illustrations, textbooks and journals.

- EDUC 730** (4 Points)  
**EDUC 730A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 730B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 730 A and B, or EDUC 730
- EDUC 740A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 740B** (2 Points)  
**Education and Work**  
 A theoretical and practical examination of selected economic, sociological and psychological aspects of the transition from school to work.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 740 A and B
- EDUC 741** (4 Points)  
**Educational Psychology**  
 An advanced study of cognitive, motivational and social factors influencing learning.
- EDUC 742A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 742B** (2 Points)  
**Developmental Psychology**  
 An advanced examination of theory and research in selected topics in child and adolescent development.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 742 A and B
- EDUC 744** (4 Points)  
**Special Education**  
 An advanced study of special educational provisions and early intervention strategies for children with disabilities and their families – including an intensive analysis of provisions for children with intellectual disabilities.  
 Prerequisite: EDUC 345
- EDUC 745A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 745B** (2 Points)  
**Early Determinants of Behaviour**  
 An advanced study of research dealing with the influence on behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 745 A and B
- EDUC 746** (4 Points)  
**Psychology of Reading**  
 An advanced study of contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.
- EDUC 747** (4 Points)  
**Issues in Adolescent Development**  
 An advanced study of the theories of adolescent development and a critical examination of research dealing with issues which affect development.
- EDUC 748A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 748B** (2 Points)  
**Methods of Psychological Inquiry**  
 Examples of different methods of inquiry will serve as cases for analysis of the canons and assumptions underlying various research traditions. Specific attention will be placed on proficiencies to undertake these methods.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 748 A and B
- EDUC 749A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 749B** (2 Points)  
**Behaviour Analysis in Education**  
 An examination of the application of behaviour analysis techniques to contemporary problems in education including supervised research and field experience.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 749 A and B
- EDUC 751** (4 Points)  
**Critical Theories in Adult and Higher Education**  
 An exploration of critical education theories and what they have to offer to an analysis of adult and higher education.
- EDUC 752A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 752B** (2 Points)  
**Teaching and Learning in Adult and Higher Education**  
 A critical examination of research in teaching and learning in adult and higher education and the implications for practice.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 752 A and B
- EDUC 753** (4 Points)  
**Principles and Practice of Lifelong Learning**  
 A study of theories of adult education and life-long learning; the practice of educating adults in varying contexts. Participants will be expected to relate the concept of lifelong learning to a range of educational and social contexts.
- EDUC 754** (4 Points)  
**Computer-assisted Learning in Higher Education**  
 A critical examination of theory and practice in computer-assisted learning and the impact this technology is having on Higher Education.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 754 A and B
- EDUC 757A** (2 Points)  
**EDUC 757B** (2 Points)  
**Schools as Organisations**  
 An examination of different theoretical frameworks for understanding organisation and a process for analysing and solving organisational problems.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 757 A and B
- EDUC 760** (4 Points)  
**Introduction to Advanced Study in Educational Psychology**  
 An overview of advanced study in Educational Psychology.
- EDUC 761** (2 Points)  
**Learning and Language in Mathematics Education**  
 An examination of the application of psychological theories of learning and language to mathematics education. General issues such as attitude and gender difference may also be addressed.
- EDUC 762** (2 Points)  
**The Development of Students' Mathematical Concepts**  
 A critical examination of recent research on students' learning of specific aspects of mathematics.
- EDUC 768** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Education Psychology**

<b>EDUC 769A</b>	(1 Point)	<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 785 A and B, or EDUC 785</i>
<b>EDUC 769B</b>	(1 Point)	
<b>Special Topic in Education Psychology</b>		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 769 A and B</i>		
<b>EDUC 770</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>An Introduction to Advanced Study of Applied Education Research</b>		
An introduction to the advanced study and application of education research.		
<b>EDUC 778</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>Special Topic in Applied Education Research</b>		
<b>EDUC 779</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>EDUC 779A</b>	(1 Point)	
<b>EDUC 779B</b>	(1 Point)	
<b>Special Topic in Applied Education Research</b>		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 779 A and B, or EDUC 779</i>		
<b>EDUC 780A</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>EDUC 780B</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>Adult Education and Social Issues</b>		
This course is designed to provide students with analytical frameworks from sociology to examine current social issues which adult educators should address.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 780 A and B</i>		
<b>EDUC 781A</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>EDUC 781B</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>Curriculum Development and Evaluation</b>		
A critical examination of issues in curriculum design and development, assessment and learning, and programme evaluation.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 781 A and B</i>		
<b>EDUC 782</b>	(4 Points)	
<b>Perspectives on Science Education</b>		
A study of concept development in science, the relationship between philosophy of science and science curriculum and the factors that influence science curriculum change.		
<b>EDUC 783</b>	(4 Points)	
<b>Science, Philosophy and Western Culture</b>		
The interaction between science and culture and the ways in which the rich cultural and intellectual dimensions of science can be conveyed in science, history and literacy education.		
<b>EDUC 784</b>	(4 Points)	
<b>EDUC 784A</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>EDUC 784B</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>Research Topic in Education</b>		
The course will consist of the supervised writing of an essay or essays in a field of educational inquiry.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 784 A and B, or EDUC 784</i>		
<b>EDUC 785</b>	(6 Points)	
<b>EDUC 785A</b>	(3 Points)	
<b>EDUC 785B</b>	(3 Points)	
<b>Honours Dissertation</b>		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 785 A and B, or EDUC 785</i>		
<b>EDUC 786</b>	(4 Points)	
<b>Psychoanalytic Perspectives in Education</b>		
A systematic examination of ways in which psychoanalytic theory can contribute to social analyses of New Zealand education.		
<b>EDUC 787A</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>EDUC 787B</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>Tikanga Rangahau: Maori Perspectives on Research in Education</b>		
An examination of a range of issues related to educational research 'of Maori, 'by' Maori and 'for' Maori.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 787 A and B</i>		
<b>EDUC 788</b>	(4 Points)	
<b>Cognitive Science and Science Education</b>		
An introduction to the basic concepts in cognitive science in relation to science education and as an aid to developing a deeper understanding of how students learn science. In addition it will provide an introduction to methods of investigating thinking processes and problem solving in science.		
<b>EDUC 789</b>	(4 Points)	
<b>Special Topic in Adult Education: Learning in Later Life</b>		
This course will investigate concepts of ageing (physiological, psychological, economic, sociological), ageism, linkages between learning and older adulthood and issues faced by older people in developing learning patterns from both New Zealand and international perspectives.		
<b>EDUC 790</b>	(4 Points)	
<b>EDUC 790A</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>EDUC 790B</b>	(2 Points)	
<b>Dissertation</b>		
<i>Restriction: EDUC 796</i>		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 790 A and B, or EDUC 790</i>		
<b>EDUC 796A</b>	(7 Points)	
<b>EDUC 796B</b>	(7 Points)	
<b>Thesis</b>		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 796 A and B</i>		
<b>EDUC 797A</b>	(7 Points)	
<b>EDUC 797B</b>	(7 Points)	
<b>Research Portfolio</b>		
The Research Portfolio consists of (usually) two or three research projects/essays. The content and coherence of the Research Portfolio are determined in consultation with an academic supervisor. Components of the Research Portfolio may require attendance at designated seminars and will include a specified number, and type of pieces of assessed work. Students must demonstrate, through the portfolio, the same qualities expected of a thesis: an advanced level of understanding of one (or more) research tradition(s) within the discipline; coherence of argument; independence of thought; and the ability to produce original work. The total word length of the portfolio should be equivalent to that expected for a 14 point thesis.		

To complete this course students must enrol in EDUC 797 A and B

## Employment Relations and Organisation Studies

Prescriptions for courses included in this subject are listed under the subjects Management and Employment Relations, Economics and Psychology.

## English

### Stage I

#### ENGLISH 100 (2 Points) Introduction to Chaucer and Shakespeare

An introduction to the pleasures of literature from the past through works by the foremost writers of the Medieval and the Renaissance periods. The wit, erudition and inventiveness of two of England's finest poets will be displayed: in Chaucer's case through a selection from *The Canterbury Tales*, while Shakespeare's plays come from the genres of tragedy, comedy and history.

#### ENGLISH 101 (2 Points) 20th Century Literature

An introduction to the nature and distinction of twentieth century writing by means of three genres: poetry, fiction and drama. The texts are set within a framework of changing social orders, where controversies have raged around the nature of art and literature. Against this background, the works offer the excitements of the new as they are illuminated by close reading.

#### ENGLISH 103 (2 Points) New Zealand Literature

An introduction to novels, short stories, poetry and plays by Maori and Pakeha. The contexts from which the works come are outlined, while the nature of poetry, the techniques of fiction, and the performance traditions of drama are explored. The need to illuminate the literature of the world in which New Zealanders live, lies at the heart of the course.

Restriction: ENGLISH 110

#### ENGLISH 104 (2 Points) 19th Century Literature

An introduction to a variety of British and American poets and novelists from the 1790s to the 1880s. The course situates the writers within the social and cultural changes of the period. The poetic forms and fictional techniques of the century will be studied to show how both genres can be illuminated by close and detailed reading.

#### ENGLISH 107 (2 Points) Poetry, Prose and Drama: Past and Present

An introduction to a selection of a wide variety of literary texts from different periods, countries and authors, chosen to suggest the historical, geographical and cultural range of literatures in the English language, and to acquaint students with some of the main literary conventions and devices within the genres of poetry, drama, the novel and the short story.

#### ENGLISH 108 (2 Points) Children's Literature

A historical and critical introduction to prose fiction for older children. Beginning with specialised publishing for children in the eighteenth century, it includes American and British texts from both the first and second 'golden ages' of children's literature. The final focus is on recent New Zealand writing, including Pacific Islands and Maori material in English for children.

#### ENGLISH 109 (2 Points) Drama on Stage and Screen

An introduction to conventions of dramatic practice and to the dimension of performance, both on stage and screen. Discussion of performance will extend to broader issues such as self-representation and gender. The texts studied will represent different types of dramatic styles, primarily from the twentieth century, and will include some pairings of play texts and screen productions.

#### ENGLISH 110 (2 Points) Maori and Polynesian Literature

An introduction to the literature of recent Maori and Polynesian authors writing in English in New Zealand and the Pacific. Poetry from the 1960s onwards will be studied. Fiction will be explored in novels and short stories from the 1970s and later. Study of recent anthologies will raise questions of editorial approaches, selection methodologies, and the imperatives implicit in anthologising.

Restriction: ENGLISH 103

#### ENGLISH 111 (2 Points) Literature: An Introduction: From Sonnets to Comics

An introduction to literature from Shakespeare to the present. Through engaging with masterpieces from each of the last five centuries, in a wide range of genres – poetry, drama, novel, short story, essay, film and comic – students will be introduced to historical and cultural contexts, to literary terms, approaches, and theory, and to new findings about the human mind that suggest how and why invented worlds and inventive words matter so much to us.

#### ENGLISH 121 (2 Points) Reading/Writing/Texts

Addresses the needs of students in both English and other disciplines where both writing and reading have an important role in learning. The course fosters personal writing skills and also introduces writing as a subject of study in itself.

#### ENGLISH 155 (2 Points) Special Topic in English I: The Short Story

Specific short stories will be studied to trace the development of the genre from the magazine story in Britain and America respectively. The course will include material on the horror story, the modernist period, the rise of feminism, British Victorianism, colonialism and post-colonialism. A section of the course will be devoted to the New Zealand short story.

### Stage II

#### ENGLISH 200 (2 Points) Medieval Literature

An introduction to medieval narrative, especially texts which celebrate, interrogate or subvert ideas and ideals of knighthood and chivalry. Chaucer's 'Marriage Group' from *The Canterbury Tales* explores the position of women in the chivalric world; Malory imagines and laments the end of the world of chivalry; the medieval romances offer perspectives ranging from elite self-justification to populist critique.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 201 (2 Points)**  
**Language, Literature and Culture**

An elementary introduction to modern concepts about the relationship between language, society and culture in general; it moves on to sociolinguistic topics and specific subjects in the areas of language and power, language and gender, temporal, regional and social varieties and the language of poetry and prose, looking at traditional rhetorical and prosodic principles.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 202 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Old English**

An introduction to the language and writings of England in the Anglo-Saxon period (the six centuries before the Norman Conquest). The primary focus is to enable students to become confident readers of Old English, and they will also be able to study the beginnings of the English language, and the first stages of a specifically English culture.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 210 (2 Points)**  
**Age of Shakespeare: Poetry**

A study of one of the greatest periods of English poetry, beginning with the sonnets of Shakespeare and ending with the splendour of Milton's *Paradise Lost*. Included are the sonnets of Spenser and Sidney, Donne's profane and religious poetry, Herbert's intricate and Marvell's witty verse, and finally the poetry of Katherine Phillips and Aphra Behn.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 213 (2 Points)**  
**Age of Shakespeare: Tragedy**

An introduction to the golden age of English theatre, involving detailed study of tragedies by Shakespeare and his contemporaries. There is a pronounced theatrical bias starting with a section on theatre history encouraging a response to the plays as theatrical artefacts. Attention is repeatedly drawn to each play's theatrical dimension, while the practical function of dramatic verse is also stressed.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 215 (2 Points)**  
**Literature and Culture in the 18th Century**

Surveys satire, periodical essay, poetry, the novel, and graphic arts. From the emergence of the aptly named 'novel' to the exploration and rebellion of the new world, this age was characterised by an insatiable curiosity for everything new. The course examines how individual authors and artists exploited or resisted this desire for change.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English  
*Restriction:* 175.306

**ENGLISH 220 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century Fiction**

A study of fiction throughout the twentieth century. The prescribed works vary widely in their country of origin, formal elements and themes. Some are recognised as classics, while others show the new directions taken by the writers of their time. The texts are given detailed consideration as well as being placed within social and critical contexts.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 221 (2 Points)**  
**New Zealand Literature II**

An exploration of the relation between literature produced in New Zealand and the various ways questions of cultural identity and difference have been posed here. The course includes Maori literature, non-fiction, colonial novels, poetry and nationalism, and more recent drama about and by Maori.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 222 (2 Points)**  
**Modern Poetry 1900-1945**

An introduction to the great modernist poets writing in English from Yeats to Marianne Moore; their fundamental rethinking of the poem and their search for a style appropriate to the twentieth century. Only six poets are studied, giving students the opportunity of exploring some of the most influential literature of the age in depth.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 230 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Critical Theory and Cultural Studies**

An introduction to the concerns and methods of contemporary criticism through an examination of a number of concepts central to the study of literature, film and other media. The history of these concepts is explored as are the theoretical issues they raise, and the reading strategies they permit.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage I in English

**ENGLISH 255 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in English II: The Art of the Essay**

An advanced course built on the same principles that underlie Summer School and special projects English I. The subjects chosen will consider in greater detail precisely defined aspects of the English I and English II curriculum, although the expertise of visitors will also determine the content of the course.

**ENGLISH 256 (2 Points)**  
**Tolkien and his Worlds**

Study of the *Lord of the Rings* with particular reference to Tolkien's use of Celtic, Germanic and Christian myths; an introduction to some of the most formative and influential mythologies of European culture.

*Prerequisite:* 8 points passed

**Stage III**

**ENGLISH 302 (2 Points)**  
**Middle English Popular Literature**

Medieval writings with a popular, earthy and socially embedded perspective. Chaucer's comic tales (the fabliaux) present a less than aristocratic

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 261.

view of love and marriage (or sex and money). Communal folk drama stages secular and spiritual issues in ways relevant to daily life. Tales of the Loathly Lady image sovereignty as involving a perilous but transforming marriage.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 303 (2 Points)**

**Linguistic Analysis of Literature**

Building on elements introduced in ENGLISH 201, this is an advanced course in modern approaches to close-reading strategies and the discourse analysis of literary texts as developed by a number of the century's most eminent stylisticians and linguists. The course attends to the language of poetry and prose in equal proportions.

*Prerequisite: ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213, and ENGLISH 201*

**ENGLISH 304 (2 Points)**

**Language and Society in New Zealand**

This course deals with the history, phonology, lexicon and social varieties of New Zealand English, and its place in education, the media and our indigenous literature. Attention is also paid to the place of Maori and the mother tongues of immigrants in our linguistic spectrum. A special feature of the course is the students' participation in original linguistic research projects.

*Prerequisite: 175.208 or ENGLISH 201 or LINGUIST 201 or 202, and ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

*Restriction: ENGLISH 317, LINGUIST 304*

**ENGLISH 307 (2 Points)**

**Byron and Romanticism**

An exploration of the literary and cultural politics of this exciting period of revolution and reaction through a detailed study of Lord Byron's major works, which are set alongside a contextual study of poems by Wordsworth, Coleridge, Keats and Shelley, various Gothic novels, and works by feminist authors of the period.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 308 (2 Points)**

**18th Century Novels**

An inquiry into the emergence of the modern English novel over the course of the 'long eighteenth century'. The course will focus on the works of major women writers including: Aphra Behn, Sarah Fielding, Eliza Haywood, Charlotte Lennox, Frances Burney and Jane Austen.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 310 (2 Points)**

**Shakespeare: Comedies and Tragicomedies**

An examination of seven of Shakespeare's comedies and tragicomedies: the romantic comedies of his first decade and a half as a playwright; the so-called 'problem plays', the darker comedies of his middle years; and the 'romances', the strangely haunting tragicomedies of his final years. The nature of comedy and its relationship to tragedy is also explored.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 314 (2 Points)**

**Major Works: 16th and 17th Centuries**

The sonnet sequences of Shakespeare and of his contemporaries, Spenser and Sidney, are studied in considerable depth and detail.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 315 (2 Points)**

**16th and 17th Century Drama**

An advanced study of a selection of plays by Shakespeare's contemporaries and their seventeenth-century successors.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 317 (2 Points)**

**Sociolinguistic Variation in English**

An examination of sociolinguistic variation in English covering sociolinguistic theories and methodologies, and providing an overview of variation studies. Students will research language variation in the Auckland area.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

*Restriction: ENGLISH 304, LINGUIST 304*

**ENGLISH 319 (2 Points)**

**History of Literary Criticism**

The development of the criticism of literature from Aristotle to the twentieth century, beginning with classical literary criticism and ending with the New Critics, I. A. Richards, and deconstruction.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

*Restriction: ENGLISH 334*

**ENGLISH 320 (2 Points)**

**Victorian Literature**

Focuses on Victorian narrative practices. One module, concentrating on novels by Dickens, Thackeray and James, examines them in the context of the Victorian reading public and publishing practices. The other module deals with the narrative possibilities open to and deployed by women writers, and features novels by Charlotte Bronte, George Eliot, and Olive Schreiner.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 323 (2 Points)**

**American Literature: Contemporary Poetry**

An introduction to the work of a dozen influential poets, this course emphasises new poetic developments. The focus is on the still controversial L=A=N=G=U=A=G=E poetry that emerged in the late 1970s, and developments concurrent with it. This shift is seen against a background of changes – in the media, in government and in intellectual culture.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213*

**ENGLISH 325 (2 Points)**

**Novels from the Post-Colonial World**

A study of a variety of novels dealing with the aftermath of Empire in different parts of the world. Post-Independence disillusion, neo-colonial struggle and the intersection of the discourses of colonialism

and decolonisation with that of gender are illuminated through fiction from continents (Africa, including South Africa, India and the Americas) as well as from nation states in the Caribbean.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 326 (2 Points)**

#### Women Writers of the 20th Century

A survey course covering a wide range of recent women's writing, focusing on contemporary or controversial issues relevant to women in various cultures, including Afro-American, Australian, Maori, Indian and European.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 327 (2 Points)**

#### Australian Literature

Examines some of the main currents of Australian fiction and drama of the 1970s and 1980s, including special focus on fiction by women and Aboriginal writing in English.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 328A (1 Point)**

**ENGLISH 328B (1 Point)**

#### Creative Writing

This course will mainly concentrate on the practice of writing poetry and fiction. The first section will be devoted to the writing of poetry, the second to fiction, and third to any form of writing a student wants to specialise in.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213, and Departmental approval required

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 328 A and B

**ENGLISH 331A (1 Point)**

**ENGLISH 331B (1 Point)**

#### Shakespeare on Screen

An investigation of the ways in which directors have adapted Shakespeare's plays to the cinema or television screen.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 331 A and B

**ENGLISH 332 (2 Points)**

#### Aspects of 20th Century Drama

A study of British and Irish drama since the 1970s, concentrating on politically committed dramatists and the emergence of women playwrights. Addressing the plays primarily as theatre texts, it emphasises the theatrical strategies and conventions deployed in the texts, some of which self-consciously celebrate theatricality. Teaching combines lectures, discussions, play-readings and viewing theatrical videos.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 333 (2 Points)**

#### New Zealand Literature III: Selected Topics

Selected topics in New Zealand literature and cultural studies. The range of topics will vary from

year to year in response to staff research interests and the department's wider New Zealand studies programme.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 334 (2 Points)**

#### Literary Criticism and Theory: An Introduction

An introduction to the central concepts in modern criticism and literary theory.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 319

**ENGLISH 335 (2 Points)**

#### Colonial and Post-Colonial Writing in the Pacific

English language responses, to the Pacific in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, together with contemporary literature in English by Pacific Island writers.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 336 (2 Points)**

#### Victorian Poetry

A study of a range of Victorian poets. They include canonical figures, such as Tennyson, Robert Browning and Matthew Arnold, as well as women poets who have received sustained critical attention only recently, such as Elizabeth Barrett Browning, Christina Rossetti and Amy Levy. Focal points of the course are: the discourse of love and sexuality, religious/spiritual belief in a changing society, and the practice of the dramatic monologue.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 337 (2 Points)**

#### Introduction to Medieval Icelandic Language and Literature

An introduction to a language and literature akin to Old English. Of particular interest for the study of medieval narrative, as well as the twentieth-century writers (notably Tolkien) who have made creative use of the myths and legends recorded by medieval Icelanders.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 338 (2 Points)**

#### Studies in Chaucerianism

The successors, appropriators and imitators of Chaucer. A study of the reception of Chaucer's writing, and its continuing presence in writing in England and Scotland. A central topic will be Scottish writers of the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 339, 340 or 341

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 711 or 744

**ENGLISH 339 (2 Points)**

#### Medieval Narrative: The French Connection

English narratives (romances and short lais) studied in comparison with their French progenitors. For example, Marie de France and the English Breton lais; the romance of Horn.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 340 or 341

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 738 or 745

**ENGLISH 340 (2 Points)**

#### Arthurian Literature

The Arthurian story, from its first passage into French in the twelfth century. The English writings are studied in comparison with their French sources and counterparts (in translation).

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 338, 339, 341  
*Restriction:* ENGLISH 738 or 746

**ENGLISH 341 (2 Points)**

**Middle English Literature: Major Works**

Works studied include poems of the Alliterative Revival (such as Sir Gawain and the Green Knight and Piers Plowman).

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 338, 339 or 340

*Restriction:* ENGLISH 701 or 747

**ENGLISH 350 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**ENGLISH 351 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in English, including at least one of ENGLISH 200 or 202 or 210 or 213

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ENGLISH 700A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 700B (2 Points)**

**Old English**

A contextual study of the epic poem Beowulf. Some time is given to the translation of the text. In the remainder the poem's relation to the literature and society of the Anglo-Saxon period and its Germanic analogues is explored.

*Prerequisite:* ENGLISH 301

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 700 A and B*

**ENGLISH 705A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 705B (2 Points)**

**20th Century Poetry**

A study of the development of modernist poetry, beginning with Yeats and then examining some of the major poets of the first half of the twentieth century.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 705 A and B*

**ENGLISH 706A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 706B (2 Points)**

**Shakespeare: Selected Plays and Poems**

The focus of this course varies from year to year, but includes attention to several of the most influential approaches to the reading of Shakespearean texts: psychoanalysis, feminism, new historicism, cultural materialism and post-colonial theory.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 706 A and B*

**ENGLISH 707A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 707B (2 Points)**

**Literary Theory**

An advanced introduction to the methods and assumptions of contemporary literary criticism and cultural studies. The course is taught in six modules: these are likely to include the structuralist tradition, new historicism, psychoanalysis, feminism, identities (national, gender, cultural), and theories of value and exchange.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 707 A and B*

**ENGLISH 709A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 709B (2 Points)**

**20th Century Drama**

A study of the work of a wide range of important dramatists of the past 125 years, including a number of non-anglophone playwrights who have exerted a major influence or have been important in their own right in this century's theatre history.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 709 A and B*

**ENGLISH 712A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 712B (2 Points)**

**Literary Detection: Problems in Shakespeare Scholarship**

An introduction to problems of the Shakespeare canon, investigating authorship, textual variation, biography, chronology, and the handling of source material in connection with Shakespeare's dramatic and poetic structures.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 712 A and B*

**ENGLISH 713A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 713B (2 Points)**

**Research Essays**

A number of essays (submitted throughout the year) are written within a field, genre, or period of literature, or branch of linguistics. Students with a specific topic should approach both the course convener and a member of staff working in the area. Arrangements for the following year must be finalised by the December enrolment application date.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 713 A and B*

**ENGLISH 714A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 714B (2 Points)**

**Selected Author or Authors II: Modern Irish Authors**

A detailed exploration of Yeats's Collected Poems and Joyce's Ulysses read in conjunction with poems, plays, short stories and novels by Irish authors. Each text is assessed in its own terms, but broader issues are explored: the question of exile, the politics of language, and the role of great works in establishing (or undermining) a national literary tradition.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 714 A and B*

**ENGLISH 715A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 715B (2 Points)**

**19th Century American Prose and Fiction: Race and Culture**

A study of the interconnections between 'race', 'nation', and 'culture' in the writings of the American nineteenth century. The course includes many of the great canonical works of American literature as well as popular fiction and slave narratives from the period, and emphasises the Pacific writings of Herman Melville.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 715 A and B*

**ENGLISH 716A (2 Points)**

**ENGLISH 716B (2 Points)**

**Modern Poetics**

The theory of poetry as poets themselves have

developed it has important implications for reading and writing about their poetry in an academic context. In the reading of texts by Ezra Pound, Louis Zukofsky, Gertrude Stein, Charles Olson, Susan Howe and Charles Bernstein, and the exploration of recent topics in theory, changing concepts of the activity of writing are examined.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 716 A and B*

**ENGLISH 717A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 717B** (2 Points)

#### New Zealand Literature

A study of issues, themes and theoretical perspectives in New Zealand literature, especially the relationship of New Zealand writing to its changing social and cultural contexts.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 717 A and B*

**ENGLISH 718A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 718B** (2 Points)

#### Restoration Literature

A sequel to the sixteenth and seventeenth century courses offered at Stages II and III, involving a study of major poets and prose writers.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 718 A and B*

**ENGLISH 719A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 719B** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic I: Literature and Society 1375-1550

A study of texts, mostly literary, written in the period of transition from medieval to modern society in England.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 719 A and B*

**ENGLISH 721A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 721B** (2 Points)

#### Literature and Thought 1590-1650

An examination of the literature of the early seventeenth century, considered against the backgrounds of the political and religious divides that began under Elizabeth and led to the Civil War. Among others, Spenser's *The Faerie Queene*, the sonnet sequences of Spenser, Shakespeare and Sidney, the polemical writings of Donne, the devotional verse of Herbert, and Milton's early poetry are considered.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 721 A and B*

**ENGLISH 722A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 722B** (2 Points)

#### Literature from the Old and New Commonwealths

A study of a variety of writings from different regions of the world which share an historical association with the Commonwealth. In some years influential authors from different regions are examined; in others the literature of a single country becomes central.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 722 A and B*

**ENGLISH 723A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 723B** (2 Points)

#### 20th Century American Prose

A study of selected authors.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 723 A and B*

**ENGLISH 724A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 724B** (2 Points)

#### Selected Author or Authors III

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 724 A and B*

**ENGLISH 730A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 730B** (2 Points)

#### 19th Century Women Novelists

An examination of both 'canonical' and lesser-known nineteenth century women novelists, mainly from Britain. They are studied primarily in two contexts: the nineteenth century debate on the 'Woman Question', and contemporary feminist criticism.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 730 A and B*

**ENGLISH 732A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 732B** (2 Points)

#### Popular Fiction

A critical study of several varieties of modern popular fiction, especially children's literature, romance and crime fiction (both in print and on television). Reading of texts will be supported by discussion of a range of theoretical issues.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 732 A and B*

**ENGLISH 733A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 733B** (2 Points)

#### New Zealand and Australian Women Writers

An examination of Australian and New Zealand women novelists, short story writers and poets from the 1890s to the 1960s, relating their works to the condition of, and attitudes towards, women in both countries. The course provides students with the opportunity to apply both post-colonial and feminist critical theories.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 733 A and B*

**ENGLISH 734A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 734B** (2 Points)

#### Irish Literature and Politics

A study of the relationship between literature and the politics of national identity in Ireland from the sixteenth to the twentieth century.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 734 A and B*

**ENGLISH 735A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 735B** (2 Points)

#### Narrative

An exploration of narrative in a variety of eras, cultures, modes and media, from the Bible and Homer, through plays, novels, paintings and films, to 1990s comics and television advertisements. The development of narrative is considered as is its pervasiveness in life and thought, its relation to aspects of mind, society and medium, and the analysis of its techniques.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 735 A and B*

**ENGLISH 736A** (2 Points)  
**ENGLISH 736B** (2 Points)

#### Pacific Literature

A study of the oral and written literatures of the Pacific (Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia), including the Tangata Aborigine of Australia), especially the literature in English by indigenous writers, and how that is related to other New Literatures in English.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 736 A and B

**ENGLISH 737A** (2 Points)

**ENGLISH 737B** (2 Points)

**Subjectivity, Sexuality and Transgression in 17th Century Literature**

An examination of drama as a site where sexual and religious conventions were established, contested and transformed. Elizabethan, Caroline and Restoration dramas will be related to topics including: transvestism and the stage, sexual ethics and the Caroline court, and Restoration libertinism. Women's changing roles as actors, playwrights, and members of the audience will be an important focus.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 737 A and B

**ENGLISH 739A** (2 Points)

**ENGLISH 739B** (2 Points)

**Two Poets: Robin Hyde and H.D.**

A detailed exploration of the work and reception of two major twentieth century poets: Robin Hyde from New Zealand and H.D. from an Anglo-American tradition. The publishing careers of these women and their respective positioning within nationalist and Modernist traditions will be a primary focus. Contextual and critical comparisons will also be explored.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 739 A and B

**ENGLISH 740A** (2 Points)

**ENGLISH 740B** (2 Points)

**Samuel Richardson's 'Clarissa': Gender and Genre**

Samuel Richardson's epistolary tragedy *Clarissa* (1747-8) both recorded and affected historical change. The novel documents the changing gender roles and shifting social conventions of mid-eighteenth-century England; it also redirected the course of English prose fiction writing. The unabridged *Clarissa* is studied in conjunction with contemporary reactions to the text, modern Richardson criticism, and one modern novel written in its wake.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 740 A and B

**ENGLISH 741** (2 Points)

**Medieval Icelandic Narrative**

An examination of the literary reconstruction of the pagan past in a variety of sources. Texts include extracts from the family sagas and legendary histories, regnal chronicles, historically-based accounts of the exploration and settlement of Iceland, Greenland and North America, as well as traditions relating to Viking activity in the British Isles.

Prerequisite: ENGLISH 337

**ENGLISH 744** (2 Points)

**Studies in Chaucerianism**

The successors, appropriators and imitators of Chaucer. A study of the reception of Chaucer's writing, and its continuing presence in writing in England and Scotland. A central topic will be Scottish writers of the fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries.

Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 339, 340 or 341

Restriction: ENGLISH 711 or 338

**ENGLISH 745** (2 Points)

**Medieval Narrative: The French Connection**

English narratives (romances and short lais) studied in comparison with their French progenitors. For example, Marie de France and the English Breton lais; the romance of Horn.

Restriction: ENGLISH 738 or 339

**ENGLISH 746** (2 Points)

**Arthurian Literature**

The Arthurian story, from its first passage into French in the twelfth century. The English writings are studied in comparison with their French sources and counterparts (in translation).

Restriction: ENGLISH 738 or 340

**ENGLISH 747** (2 Points)

**Middle English Literature: Major Works**

Works studied include poems of the Alliterative Revival (such as Sir Gawain and the Green Knight and Piers Plowman).

Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 200, 302, 338, 339 or 340

Restriction: ENGLISH 701 or 341

**ENGLISH 748** (2 Points)

**Medieval and Early Modern Women: Representations**

The cultural construction of femininity in deep chronological perspective. A study of the representation, and sometimes self-representation, of individual figures or types of mythographic, legendary and historical significance (as, for example, Medea, Mary Magdalene or virgin martyrs). The central concern is with written representation, but appropriate comparisons will be made with the visual arts and historical actuality.

Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 302, 338, 339, 340 or 341

Restriction: ENGLISH 742

**ENGLISH 749** (2 Points)

**Chaucer Studies**

A major Chaucerian text or text grouping is considered in its wider literary and cultural context, including sources, analogues and comparable writings from Continental Europe.

Prerequisite: 2 points from ENGLISH 302, 338, 339, 340 or 341

Restriction: ENGLISH 711

**ENGLISH 750A** (2 Points)

**ENGLISH 750B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 750 A and B

**ENGLISH 751A** (2 Points)

**ENGLISH 751B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic 2001: Directed Research Studies**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 751 A and B

**ENGLISH 752** (2 Points)  
Special Topic

**ENGLISH 753** (2 Points)  
Special Topic

**ENGLISH 754** (2 Points)  
Special Topic in Early Literature

**ENGLISH 755** (2 Points)  
Special Topic: McCahon and the Poets

**ENGLISH 756** (2 Points)  
Special Topic: Early Modernists: Swift, Sterne and Joyce

**ENGLISH 757** (2 Points)  
Studies in New Zealand Poetry  
A study of New Zealand poetry, especially of the post-war period, and the issues of nationalism, regionalism, modernism, etc., with which poets of that era were concerned.

**ENGLISH 758** (2 Points)  
Rhetoric and Composition  
Explores writing through discussion of theories of language use, especially issues raised by theorists of rhetoric and composition: cognitive process theory, discourse analysis, language as social semiotic, literary studies, race and gender, writing for new technologies. The course centres on writing theory, but there is a practical dimension: students investigate their present writing practices and consider possible future demands.

**ENGLISH 759** (2 Points)  
Aphra Behn, Feminism and the Canon  
A study of selected plays, prose fictions and poems by Behn in relation to both the emerging canon of early modern English literature, and to contemporary debates about canonicity within feminism and cultural studies.  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 718, 737*

**ENGLISH 760** (2 Points)  
Milton and Poetic Authority  
Milton is the poet who has been most significant in the establishment of the familiar canon of English poetry, so his achievement raises questions about the greatness of poetry written in one set of historical circumstances for an audience that the poem itself participates in constructing. In this context the course covers a range of Milton's works, but concentrates on Paradise Lost.  
*Restriction: ENGLISH 718*

**ENGLISH 792** (6 Points)  
Dissertation

**ENGLISH 794A** (5 Points)  
**ENGLISH 794B** (5 Points)  
Thesis  
To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 794 A and B

**ENGLISH 797A** (7 Points)  
**ENGLISH 797B** (7 Points)  
Research Portfolio

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGLISH 797 A and B

**English Writing**

*Stage I*

**ENGWRIT 101** (2 Points)  
English Writing for Academic Purposes

A skills-based analysis of texts written for academic purposes. Topics include: essays of comparison and contrast, argumentative essays, problem solution texts, literature reviews, critiques, and report writing.

**English as a Second Language**

*Stage I*

**ESOL 101** (2 Points)  
Academic English Writing

Focus is on writing skills for academic study, starting an essay, drawing an outline, gathering information, acknowledging sources, self-editing techniques.  
*Restriction: This course is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds*

**ESOL 102** (2 Points)  
Academic English Listening and Reading

Focus is on the listening, reading, note-taking and summary writing skills, and strategies needed for academic study at tertiary level.  
*Restriction: This course is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds*

*Stage II*

**ESOL 200** (2 Points)  
Advanced Academic Spoken English

Focus is on enabling students to develop spoken English Language skills to meet their specific academic speaking needs at Stage II and beyond.  
*Prerequisite: ESOL 101 or 102 or Departmental approval required*  
*Restriction: 180.100. ESOL 200 is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds*

**ESOL 201** (2 Points)  
Advanced Academic Written English

Develops academic writing skills required for writing research reports and other types of academic writing required at Stage II and beyond. The course covers the key stages making up these types of writing and examines language associated with these various stages. Students construct a portfolio of their work by the end of the semester.  
*Prerequisite: ESOL 101 or 102 or Departmental approval required*  
*Restriction: This course is available only for students of non-English speaking backgrounds*

**ESOL 202** (2 Points)  
Practical English Phonology

Introduces key concepts of the phonological systems of English. Develops an understanding of how these function in the pronunciation of English, through learning to transcribe from oral texts with the use of models of native English text to develop English pronunciation.

**Ethics**

Prescriptions for courses included in this programme are listed under their respective subject codes.

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

---

## Ethnomusicology

Prescriptions for courses included in this programme are listed under their respective subject codes.

---

## European Languages and Literature

Major or minor not available. EURLANG 200 may be taken as part of the Film, Television and Media Studies programme. EURLANG 201 and 301 may be taken as part of the Linguistics programme. EURLANG 205 may be taken as part of European Studies, German, Theatre Studies, and Medieval and Early Modern European Studies.

---

### Stage I

#### EURLANG 100 (2 Points)

##### Thinking Europe

An introduction to the study of Europe, organised around a number of major themes, rather than chronologically. Will establish some of the basic reference points – including linguistic and ethnic groupings, historical periods, literary and cultural movements, religious and philosophical traditions, political and cultural figures – indispensable for the study of European culture. Required course for majors in Dutch, French, German, Italian, Russian, Scandinavian Studies, and Spanish.

---

### Stage II

#### EURLANG 200 (2 Points)

##### Screening Europe

Europe's rich and distinctive film tradition provides an opportunity to examine issues of contemporary Europe and its individual nations. This course examines the sources, complexities and resonances of a number of European films and the ways in which they refer, directly or obliquely, to historical, social and political issues around the concept of Europe. The films shown will all be subtitled.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I courses

#### EURLANG 201 (2 Points)

##### The Languages of Europe

A comparative study of sociopolitical aspects of some main languages and language families in Europe from the Atlantic to the Urals in the modern period.

#### EURLANG 205 (2 Points)

##### Staging Medieval Drama

Taking its start in liturgy and folk customs, medieval drama quickly spread over most of Europe after the 10th century AD. Religious and secular dramas were acted out on stages in the open air as well as indoors. The way this was done differed greatly from how it happened in Shakespeare's days. Plays and traditions will be studied from various European countries with special attention to performance aspects. Scenes and play fragments will be acted out in workshops, with a special focus on morality drama.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points passed

*Restriction:* DUTCH 205

#### EURLANG 211 (2 Points)

##### Collective Memory in Europe

A study of Europe's experience with war, occupation and totalitarian regimes in the twentieth century, as

recorded in memoirs and depicted in fiction and film from several nations of Europe.

*Prerequisites:* 4 points BA courses

*Restriction:* 194.111

#### EURLANG 221 (2 Points)

##### Images of the European City

This interdisciplinary course examines the city as driving force, focus, and subject in European culture. It considers visual and verbal images in literary texts, painting, architecture and film that depict the changing life of some European cities at key moments from the Middle Ages to the present. Cities such as Paris, Florence, Toledo, Amsterdam, Berlin, Copenhagen, Stockholm, Moscow and St Petersburg have played a crucial role in the cultural, as well as the political, development of their country. The selection of cities studied will vary from year to year.

---

### Stage III

#### EURLANG 301 (2 Points)

##### The Vocabularies of Europe

A comparative study of European vocabularies with special reference to French, English, German and Russian as representatives of the Romance, Germanic and Slavonic language families.

*Prerequisite:* EURLANG 201

#### EURLANG 302 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic

A specialised topic course that will vary from year to year and include contributions from specialists in the School of European Languages and Literatures and from visiting scholars.

#### EURLANG 303 (2 Points)

##### Special Topic: Jewish Culture and Identity in Europe

An examination of the impact of Jewish culture and identity in Europe from the Middle Ages to modern times through an exploration of issues of identity and assimilation, and comparative and contextual readings of representative texts by, and about, European Jews from critical periods.

#### EURLANG 311 (2 Points)

##### Cross-cultural Currents in Medieval-Renaissance Europe

This course aims to go beyond the official historical accounts and established literary canons of these periods to consider cross-cultural representation as one of the major developments of medieval-renaissance eras of European cultural encounter, clash, and fusion.

---

### Honours and Master's Courses

#### EURLANG 700 (2 Points)

##### Methods of Research in European Language, Literature and Cultural Studies

An introduction to the theories and methods of research in language, literature and cultural studies and practical instruction in skills involved in individual research and in the preparation of a dissertation or a thesis.

---

### French

#### Stage I

Students majoring in French would normally take FRENCH 100 and either FRENCH 129 or 141, 200

and two other French Stage II courses. These requirements can be waived only with the permission of the Head of Department. Students wishing to advance in Language Acquisition only, or who are not completing a major or a minor in French, do not have to comply with these requirements.

**FRENCH 100 (2 Points)**

**French Language I**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension in French. Students with less than 60% in Bursary French should consult the Department. Particularly advanced students may be considered for direct entry to FRENCH 200.

*Prerequisite:* Pass in Bursary French or B- or higher in FRENCH 152 or 162

**FRENCH 129 (2 Points)**

**French Language and Culture in Film**

A linguistic and cultural course taught entirely in French and designed to enhance students' aural, oral and written proficiency, while providing insights into recent French cinema and twentieth century France from World War II to the present.

*Corequisite:* FRENCH 100 or 200

**FRENCH 141 (2 Points)**

**French Literature through Text, Voice and Image**

An introduction to short works by twentieth century French writers. Drama, poetry and the novel are studied both as text and in performance media. The course aims at an understanding of the literature through the enjoyment of it.

*Corequisite:* FRENCH 100 or 200

**FRENCH 151 (2 Points)**

**Introductory French A**

This is a four-skill language course for beginners or near-beginners. Students with a pass in Sixth Form Certificate French should enter directly into FRENCH 152. This course does not count towards a major in French.

*Restriction:* FRENCH 161

**FRENCH 152 (2 Points)**

**Introductory French B**

This is a four-skill language course for students who have attained the equivalent of a pass in Sixth Form Certificate French or a pass in FRENCH 151. It is not available to students who qualify for FRENCH 100.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 151 or 161 or a pass in 6th Form Certificate French

*Restriction:* FRENCH 162

**FRENCH 159 (2 Points)**

**France: Culture and Identity**

A study of French national identity as this is reflected or challenged in a variety of French cultural movements and in the visual and print texts these have produced. The question of what it means to be 'French', particularly as this is modifying and being modified by France's participation in the European Union, will inform the analysis of individual topics.

**FRENCH 161 (2 Points)**

**Introductory French A - Distance Learning**

This is a four-skill course for beginners or near-beginners. Students with a pass in Sixth Form Certificate French should enter directly into

FRENCH 152 or 162. This course does not count towards a major in French. Prospective students must have access to e-mail and a CD-Rom drive.

*Restriction:* FRENCH 151

**FRENCH 162 (2 Points)**

**Introductory French B - Distance Learning**

This is a four-skill course for students who have obtained the equivalent of a pass in Sixth Form Certificate French, in FRENCH 151 or 161. Students with a pass in Bursary French, or equivalent, would normally enrol in FRENCH 100. Prospective students must have access to e-mail and a CD-Rom drive.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 151 or 161 or a pass in 6th Form Certificate French

*Restriction:* FRENCH 152

**Stage II**

**FRENCH 200 (2 Points)**

**French Language II**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of a topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud, with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 100 or 85% or more in Bursary French

**FRENCH 214 (2 Points)**

**Applied Language Studies**

A study of the structure of French with reference to different linguistic models and their relevance for teaching.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 100 or 200

**FRENCH 218 (2 Points)**

**History of the French Language**

An introduction to French linguistics, the history of French, and regional variation in French.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 100 or 200

**FRENCH 230 (2 Points)**

**French for Business**

An essentially communicative French course designed to allow students to function in both oral and written French commercial activities. Topics covered will include: correspondence, report writing, form filling, the reading of contracts, and interacting and negotiating with clients. Class work and tutorials will be complemented by audiovisual and language laboratory materials, as well as by hypermedia and other computer materials. This course will not count as part of the French major.

*Prerequisite:* FRENCH 152 or 162 or equivalent

**FRENCH 231 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Modern France**

An introduction to society and culture in modern France. Topics include: religion and religious conflict, monarchy and court culture, the 'Age of Revolutions', urban culture and class relations, France during the World Wars, and legacies of decolonisation and immigration in present-day French culture. The course is interdisciplinary in approach and makes substantial use of contemporary texts and audiovisual resources.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I

*Restriction:* FRENCH 229

- FRENCH 241** (2 Points)  
**Reading French Literature**  
 Introducing students to a variety of critical approaches, this course aims to provide a basic literary framework through the analysis of selected texts representing a range of genres and periods.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 100 or 200*
- FRENCH 277** (2 Points)  
**French Study Abroad IIA**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*
- FRENCH 278** (2 Points)  
**French Study Abroad IIB**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 277 and permission of Head of Department*
- 
- Stage III**
- FRENCH 300** (2 Points)  
**French Language III**  
 Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: reading comprehension with linguistic and stylistic analysis, conversation, composition, exposition of a topic.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*
- FRENCH 306** (2 Points)  
**Medieval French Literature and Culture: Love and Laughter in the Middle Ages**  
 The main focus will be on language and literature, placing works in their historical and cultural contexts.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*
- FRENCH 307** (2 Points)  
**A Literary Topic**  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*
- FRENCH 320** (2 Points)  
**French Translation Practice**  
 A course for students wishing to develop skills in translation and to increase their proficiency in using French in a professional or business environment.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200 or 300, and permission of Head of Department*  
*Restriction: FRENCH 720*
- FRENCH 322** (2 Points)  
**Linguistic Topic 2002: French Study Abroad**  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200 or 300, and permission of Head of Department*
- FRENCH 329** (2 Points)  
**The French-speaking World: Gender, Culture, Literature**  
 A study of gender in texts and films from France, North Africa, Africa, Canada, the Caribbean, and the Pacific.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*  
*Restriction: FRENCH 729*
- FRENCH 330** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200 and permission of Head of Department*
- FRENCH 339** (2 Points)  
**France on Screen: From Lumiere to Godard**
- An introduction to the major artistic and historical developments in French film, particularly as it relates to French culture, politics, history and society, from the birth of cinema up to and including the New Wave. The course also introduces some analytical tools for the appreciation of film: film grammar and basic aspects of film theory.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*  
*Restriction: FRENCH 739*
- FRENCH 341** (2 Points)  
**Panorama of the French Novel**  
 A study of the changing forms of the novel from the representations of the seventeenth century court in Madame de Lafayette's *La Princesse de Clèves* to the twentieth century experiments of the French 'new novelists'.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*  
*Restriction: FRENCH 741*
- FRENCH 342** (2 Points)  
**French Theatre: From Farce to Frenzy**  
 A study of the development of French theatre, from medieval farce to the twentieth century theatre of the absurd, and an investigation of the significance of changes in theatrical conventions in different periods.  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 200*  
*Restriction: FRENCH 742*
- FRENCH 377** (2 Points)  
**French Study Abroad IIIA**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*
- FRENCH 378** (2 Points)  
**French Study Abroad IIIB**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: FRENCH 377 and permission of Head of Department*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- FRENCH 700** (4 Points)  
**FRENCH 700A** (2 Points)  
**FRENCH 700B** (2 Points)  
**Language Acquisition**  
 Advanced language practice in French, with emphasis on conversation, close reading and oral presentations. French techniques of essay writing will be introduced, and students will apply them in written assignments. Material will be drawn from literature (modern poetry and short stories).  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 700 A and B, or FRENCH 700*
- FRENCH 701** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Old French: The Medieval Romance**  
 This course explores the evolving medieval French romance with particular emphasis on the Roman de la Rose as the quintessential medieval study of human nature.
- FRENCH 702** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Middle French**
- FRENCH 710** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- FRENCH 711** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**

- FRENCH 712** (4 Points)  
Special Topic in Old French
- FRENCH 713** (4 Points)  
Special Topic in Middle French
- FRENCH 716** (4 Points)  
Special Topic
- FRENCH 717** (4 Points)  
Applied Linguistics  
An introduction to the analysis of the French language using different linguistic models, with particular reference to their relevance for teaching.
- FRENCH 720** (4 Points)
- FRENCH 720A** (2 Points)  
**FRENCH 720B** (2 Points)  
Advanced French Translation  
A study of translation theory and intensive practice in the translation of a variety of texts: legal, commercial, technical, and literary.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 320*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 720 A and B, or FRENCH 720*
- FRENCH 723** (4 Points)  
20th Century Theatre  
Trends in French theatre from 1900 to the 1990s. Students will be expected to read widely in the broader field of French theatre. Prescribed texts will be analysed against the general background of the developments in twentieth century theatre.
- FRENCH 724** (4 Points)  
Writing the Self: Autobiography from Montaigne to Duras  
An investigation of the nature of autobiography from writers such as Rousseau, Sand, Gide, and Colette who constitute the French tradition, to the 'new autobiographies' of the 1980s and 1990s in France. The focus of the course will be on the contemporary period.
- FRENCH 725** (4 Points)  
Special Topic
- FRENCH 726** (4 Points)  
Special Topic
- FRENCH 727** (4 Points)  
Special Topic: L'Esprit de la Nouvelle Revue Française  
The aim of this course is to present a broad picture of French literature at the beginning of the twentieth century, focusing on writers associated with the Nouvelle Revue française. Works by Proust and Gide will be examined, with particular emphasis on textual and gender issues.
- FRENCH 728** (4 Points)  
Special Topic: Ecriture et Politique: le Cas du Québec
- FRENCH 729** (4 Points)  
Gender and Culture: Perspectives from the French-speaking World  
A comparative study of the relation between gender and culture in selected sources: films, novels, personal and theoretical writings, from France, North Africa, the Caribbean, Africa, the French-speaking Pacific and Québec.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 329*
- FRENCH 739** (4 Points)  
Studies on the French Cinema  
An introduction to the major artistic and historical developments in French film, particularly as it relates to French culture, politics, history and society, from the birth of cinema up to and including the New Wave. The course also introduces some analytical tools for the appreciation of film: film grammar and basic aspects of film theory.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 339*
- FRENCH 741** (4 Points)  
Panorama of the French Novel  
A study of the changing forms of the novel from the representations of the seventeenth century court in Madame de Lafayette's *La Princesse de Clèves* to the twentieth century experiments of the French 'new novelists'.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 341*
- FRENCH 742** (4 Points)  
French Theatre: From Farce to Frenzy  
A study of the development of French theatre from medieval farce to the twentieth century theatre of the absurd, and an investigation of the significance of changes in theatrical conventions in different periods.  
*Restriction: FRENCH 342*
- FRENCH 750** (2 Points)
- FRENCH 750A** (1 Point)  
**FRENCH 750B** (1 Point)  
Special Studies  
Supervised research on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 750 A and B, or FRENCH 750*
- FRENCH 785** (6 Points)
- FRENCH 785A** (3 Points)  
**FRENCH 785B** (3 Points)  
Honours Dissertation  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 785 A and B, or FRENCH 785*
- FRENCH 790** (4 Points)
- FRENCH 790A** (2 Points)  
**FRENCH 790B** (2 Points)  
Dissertation  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 790 A and B, or FRENCH 790*
- FRENCH 792** (6 Points)
- FRENCH 792A** (3 Points)  
**FRENCH 792B** (3 Points)  
Dissertation  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 792 A and B, or FRENCH 792*
- FRENCH 796A** (7 Points)  
**FRENCH 796B** (7 Points)  
Thesis  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 796 A and B*
- FRENCH 797A** (7 Points)  
**FRENCH 797B** (7 Points)  
Research Portfolio  
*To complete this course students must enrol in FRENCH 797 A and B*

---

**Film, Television and Media Studies**


---

**Stage I**

**FTVMS 100** (2 Points)  
**Media Studies**

An introduction to the study of communication in terms of the interplay between economics, politics, technology and culture. An examination of media industries, media texts and media audiences. The media examined include: film, sound recording, radio, television, and the Internet. The course introduces students to the basic concepts and analytical tools of media studies.

**FTVMS 101** (2 Points)  
**Film Studies**

An introduction to the feature film, and the main traditions of film criticism. A series of outstanding films – from 1915 to the present – are explored in detail. The aim is to develop an historical perspective, an awareness of film-making as an art, and an interest in the relationship between films and society (including debates about race, gender, censorship).

**FTVMS 110** (2 Points)  
**Advertising and Society**

While this course will look at how advertising works and examines the industry's viewpoint of the role of advertising, the focus of the course is a critical examination of advertising and advertisements – how advertisements convey meaning, the role advertising plays in consumer culture, and how advertising fits into wider cultural and global changes.

**FTVMS 111** (2 Points)  
**Dimensions of Chinese Cinema**

An exploration of some of the main film movements, film genres and film-makers and their works from Mainland China, Hong Kong and Taiwan.

**FTVMS 112** (2 Points)  
**Reading Contemporary Films**

An introduction to ways of analysing and interpreting contemporary films. The aim is to develop the student's skills of close reading through the analysis of a range of contemporary films that represent a number of narrative and cinematic styles, both 'mainstream' and 'alternative'. Detailed attention will be paid to narrative strategies, narrative structure and 'visual story-telling', character construction, visual style, development of theme, etc.

**Stage II**

**FTVMS 200** (2 Points)  
**Film and TV Studies**

An examination and comparison of film and television in relation to their cultural, political and economic aspects. Through a close study of selected film and television genres, the course demonstrates a range of critical methods. Various forms of drama, documentary and experimental work will be explored.  
*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 201** (2 Points)  
**TV Studio Production: The Interview**

An introduction to the technical skills required to produce a core television form – the interview – as

well as providing a critical framework within which to assess and critique industry practice. It will be a mix of formal lectures and practical exercises aimed at exploring the function and construction of the interview, interspersed with presentations from a variety of industry practitioners.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 202** (2 Points)  
**Hollywood and its Others**

An approach to Hollywood and other national cinema movements in three aspects: industrially; aesthetically, in terms of modes of narration; and socially and culturally, in terms of the cultural knowledges brought to bear on producing and reading the texts.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 203** (2 Points)  
**Techno-culture and New Media**

Theory and analysis of media technologies. An introduction to the major debates about technology, multimedia, and the digital age. Examines the academic and popular discourse on techno-culture in modernity, focusing on the exchange of bodies and commodities as bits, bytes and loops within transnational capitalism, and the increasingly mediated 'technologisation' of everyday life.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 210** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Film Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 211** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Television Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**FTVMS 212** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Media Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 100 and 101*

**Stage III**

**FTVMS 300** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand Film**

An identification of the distinctive features of film in New Zealand. A variety of films are studied in terms of their artistic, social and historical points of interest.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 301A** (1 Point)  
**FTVMS 301B** (1 Point)

**Film and Video Production**

An introduction to the main aspects of film and video production, from scripting to editing. Students will explore traditional and alternative film and video forms. Despite the emphasis on practical skills, the course has a strong theoretical component and should not be regarded as purely vocational training.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 301 A and B*

**FTVMS 302** (2 Points)  
**Third World Film**

An examination of the cinema of what is contentiously termed the Third World. The course

deals with a wide range of auteur and genre films in both popular and alternative cinema traditions. Issues examined include: colonialism, nationalisms/national culture, gender, sexuality, urbanisation, religious movements, post-colonial discourse, globalisation, and diaspora.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 303 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Film and Broadcast Writing**

An introductory study of the skills involved in writing for film, television and radio. The course is not narrowly vocational but seeks to build a general understanding of the principles, forms, and structures of script-writing and narrative strategies (for drama). Students will be required to analyse film and television scripts from the writer's perspective as well as write their own scripts.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

*Restriction: FTVMS 304*

**FTVMS 304 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Film and Television Writing**

Building on FTVMS 303, the course is conceived as a writing workshop that guides students through a major project. Those selected will be expected to complete a draft of a feature length screenplay/teleplay. The course is not narrowly practical. Sessions will focus on aesthetics and narrative theory as well as characterisation, structure, dialogue and development of themes.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 310 (2 Points)**

**Australian Cinema**

An examination of Australian cinema's best known period: the film 'revival' dating from 1970 to the present. Issues analysed will include: the cultural context of the revival; film production and distribution arrangements; the films themselves; their representations of the nation, ethnicity, gender and region; and this national cinema's differences from other national cinemas.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 311 (2 Points)**

**Lights! Camera! Action! TV Drama Studio**

Students will produce short dramas, drawing on the language of narrative that they have learnt in the Prerequisite course. As well as developing technical skills, they will be required to critique and analyse the short dramatic film as a genre.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

*Restriction: FTVMS 305*

**FTVMS 312 (2 Points)**

**Media and the Information Society**

The 'mode of information' (Poster), the 'informational mode of development' (Castells), and the 'information society' (Lyon), are typical permutations of the theme that (a) structurally significant changes have taken and are taking place in 'advanced' societies, and (b) that these are grounded in media

developments. In investigating these developments, this course foregrounds institutional factors rather than their cultural expression in specific media texts. *Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 313 (2 Points)**

**Sites of Contest: Media, Sport and Culture**

An examination of the increasingly close and contested relationship between sport and the media, analysing the media institutions that are producing sport; the way sport is represented in media texts; and the role of the media audience. Through critical analysis of sport on screen (including soccer, netball, rugby, yachting, cricket) the course considers issues of local, national and global culture.

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 320 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Film Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 321 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Television Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**FTVMS 322 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Media Studies**

*Prerequisite: FTVMS 200 and 2 points at Stage II in Film, Television and Media Studies*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**FTVMS 702A (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 702B (2 Points)**

**Television Theory**

Explores various attempts to develop a theoretical understanding of the medium of television, including the work of well-known cultural theorists, art historians, political writers and philosophers. Television theory is far less developed than film theory and one task will be to test the extent to which film theory can be seen as relevant to television. Also considers new ways to understand television in an age of rapid change and new technologies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 702 A and B*

**FTVMS 703A (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 703B (2 Points)**

**Research Essays**

Involves a series of research essays on a particular topic to be negotiated with, and supervised by, one of the lecturers associated with the Centre. The emphasis is on writing and research skills as well as the investigation itself.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 703 A and B*

**FTVMS 705 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods in Film, Television and Media Studies**

Explores the procedures, resources, and problems associated with research in the area of film, television and media studies. The course is strongly recommended for all Honours and Master's students.

**FTVMS 710A** (2 Points)

**FTVMS 710B** (2 Points)

**The NZ Television Industry**

Analyses the organisation and activities of the contemporary television industry in New Zealand. Discussion will cover political and economic as well as cultural aspects. Particular attention will be paid to the situation of local production. There will be some visiting speakers from the industry, and students will undertake research projects.

*Restriction: 285.610*

*To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 710 A and B*

**FTVMS 721** (2 Points)

**Film Theory**

Key concepts and debates that have shaped the history of film theory. Topics may include: ideas of authorship, theories of montage, semiotics of film, psychoanalytic film criticism, questions of gender representation, reception studies, etc.

*Restriction: 195.720*

**FTVMS 722** (2 Points)

**Film Theory A**

Each of Film Theory A and Film Theory B will focus in detail on a specific area of film theory. It is possible to take FTVMS 722 and 723 separately or together.

**FTVMS 723** (2 Points)

**Film Theory B**

Each of Film Theory A and Film Theory B will focus in detail on a specific area of film theory. It is possible to take FTVMS 722 and 723 separately or together.

**FTVMS 724** (2 Points)

**Film History A**

Each of Film History A and Film History B examines a period of film history or film movement in terms of the theoretical debates surrounding it and the interplay of technological, aesthetic, social and cultural influences. Topics may include: Italian neo-realism, French New Wave, New Zealand film-making in the silent film era, American cinema 1968-1975. It is possible to take FTVMS 724 and 725 separately or together.

*Restriction: 195.701*

**FTVMS 725** (2 Points)

**Film History B**

Each of Film History A and Film History B examines a period of film history or film movement in terms of the theoretical debates surrounding it and the interplay of technological, aesthetic, social and cultural influences. Topics may include: Italian neo-realism, French New Wave, New Zealand film-making in the silent film era, American cinema 1968-1975. It is possible to take FTVMS 724 and 725 separately or together.

*Restriction: 195.701*

**FTVMS 730** (4 Points)

**Popular Music, Media and Cultural Studies**

An examination of popular music as a mediated phenomenon, since the advent of sound recording, with a focus on methodologies in the fields of media/communication studies and cultural studies. Popular music culture provides a site to investigate some central debates in these disciplines. Topics

include: the recording industry, technology, genre, performers and audiences, youth, gender, sexuality, race/ethnicity, globalisation, and cultural policy.

**FTVMS 731** (4 Points)

**Special Topic**

**FTVMS 732** (2 Points)

**Reality TV**

Addresses the explosive television phenomenon called 'Reality TV', which broadly includes all programmes that train cameras on non-actors placed in artificial situations that simulate 'real life'. It begins with the American roots of the genre, moves on to the more recent spate of European programmes and, finally, to New Zealand reality programming.

**FTVMS 733** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Feminist Film Theory**

**FTVMS 734** (4 Points)

**Special Topic**

**FTVMS 735** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**FTVMS 736** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**FTVMS 750** (2 Points)

**Film and Video Making**

This course, a core course for the MCPA-Film and Television, will provide an overview of the process of film and video making (script, pre-production, production and post-production) taught through a hands-on approach. Working in groups, students will make various short projects.

*Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students*

*Restriction: 195.751*

**FTVMS 752** (2 Points)

**Film and Video Making: Drama**

A mix of individual and group work on short drama projects for film or video.

*Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students*

**FTVMS 753** (2 Points)

**Film and Video Making: Documentary**

A mix of individual and group work on short documentary projects for film or video.

*Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students*

**FTVMS 754** (2 Points)

**Production Management**

Clarifies the multiple roles of the production manager within film and television production. As production management underpins the success of any film and television project, it is key to an understanding of the production process as a whole.

*Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students*

*Restriction: FTVMS 733*

**FTVMS 758** (2 Points)

**Scriptwriting**

This first semester course involves scriptwriting for both short film and feature film. The focus is on dramatic writing for film. As students develop their own scripts, attention will be paid to principles of script analysis, narrative strategy, genre and structure. By the end of the semester, students are expected to have developed a script treatment and

fleshed out the first act in script form. The class follows a workshop format.

Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students  
Restriction: 195.754

**FTVMS 759 (2 Points)**  
**Scriptwriting: Advanced**

This second semester scriptwriting course is more flexible in terms of 'streaming'. Those students enrolled in other tracks apart from Director/Writer, may be given six feature film assessments to complete in lieu of the final writing project. Students enrolled in the Director/Writer stream will continue to work on their scripts and by the end of the semester will have a complete draft of a feature-length script.

Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students  
Restriction: 195.754

**FTVMS 760A (2 Points)**  
**FTVMS 760B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Film and Television**

To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 760 A and B

**FTVMS 761A (1 Point)**  
**FTVMS 761B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Film and Television**

To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 761 A and B

**FTVMS 762 (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 762A (1 Point)**  
**FTVMS 762B (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Film and Television**

To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 762 A and B, or FTVMS 762

**FTVMS 763 (2 Points)**

**Research Project in Film, Television, Media**

Directed study on an approved topic or topics.

Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

**FTVMS 764 (4 Points)**

**Research Project in Film, Television, Media**

Directed study on an approved topic or topics.

Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

**FTVMS 765 (2 Points)**

**Industry Internship**

Students will be placed with companies producing film and television to conduct a project and obtain practical experience. The project and placement must be approved by the Head of FTVMS.

Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

**FTVMS 766 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Production Techniques**

Builds on basic production knowledge previously acquired, and assists students in working towards their major production project. It will be divided into modules (for example, on cinematography, editing or directing) taught by practising technical specialists in the industry and by permanent staff.

Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

**FTVMS 775 (10 Points)**

**Film or Television Project**

A substantial project in which the student

specialises as producer, director, or writer. The project must be approved by the Film and Television Coordinator and be accompanied by a detailed report or journal that documents and analyses its progress.

Priority for enrolment will be given to MCPA students

**FTVMS 790 (4 Points)**

**FTVMS 790A (2 Points)**

**FTVMS 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 790 A and B, or FTVMS 790

**FTVMS 794A (5 Points)**

**FTVMS 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 794 A and B

**FTVMS 797A (7 Points)**

**FTVMS 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in FTVMS 797 A and B

---

**German**

---

**Stage I**

**GERMAN 101 (2 Points)**

**German Language Introductory A**

Written and oral use of German for students with no previous knowledge of the language.

**GERMAN 102 (2 Points)**

**German Language Introductory B**

Written and oral use of German for students who have passed GERMAN 101 or have studied German at school to 5th Form level.

Prerequisite: GERMAN 101 or Departmental approval required

**GERMAN 103 (2 Points)**

**German in Business**

The study of German business texts and similar material, with the emphasis on reading comprehension.

Prerequisite: GERMAN 101

**GERMAN 104 (2 Points)**

**German Language Intermediate I**

Written and oral use of German for students who have passed GERMAN 102, or have studied German at school to 6th or 7th Form level, or who have been on exchange in a German-speaking country.

Prerequisite: GERMAN 102 or Departmental approval required

**GERMAN 110 (2 Points)**

**German Literature: An Introduction**

Literary history and criticism with special reference to poetry and short prose.

Prerequisite: GERMAN 101

**GERMAN 120 (2 Points)**

**German Cinema**

German cinema studied against the background of the social and political developments of Weimar Republic, Third Reich and post-war Germany.

---

**Stage II****GERMAN 201 (2 Points)****German Language Intermediate II**

Written and oral use of German.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120***GERMAN 210 (2 Points)****20th Century German Literature**

Literary criticism of aspects of twentieth century drama, prose and poetry.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120***GERMAN 211 (2 Points)****Contemporary Literature**

Literary criticism of selected major works of contemporary German literature.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 104 and either 110 or 120***GERMAN 277 (2 Points)****German Study Abroad IIA***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: Departmental approval required***GERMAN 278 (2 Points)****German Study Abroad IIB***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: GERMAN 277 and Departmental approval required***GERMAN 290 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

---

**Stage III****GERMAN 301 (2 Points)****German Language Advanced A**

Written and oral use of German.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201***GERMAN 302 (2 Points)****German Language Advanced B**Written and oral use of German. Particularly for students intending to take *Kleines Deutsches Sprachdiplom*.*Prerequisite: GERMAN 301***GERMAN 305 (2 Points)****Translation**

The theory, practice, and critical evaluation of translation, principally of texts translated from German into English. Not intended for students enrolled in Diploma of Translation Studies.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 301**Restriction: 205.705***GERMAN 310 (2 Points)****Classicism, Romanticism, Realism**

Literary criticism of selected major works of German literature of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 210 or 211, and GERMAN 201***GERMAN 311 (2 Points)****Modern German Classics**

Literary criticism of selected major works of modern German literature.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 210 or 211, and GERMAN 201***GERMAN 330 (2 Points)****Middle High German**

An introduction to the German Middle Ages and to Middle High German language and literature.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201***GERMAN 377 (2 Points)****German Study Abroad IIIA***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: Departmental approval required***GERMAN 378 (2 Points)****German Study Abroad IIIB***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: GERMAN 377 and Departmental approval required***GERMAN 390 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Sprachpraktikum***Prerequisite: GERMAN 301***GERMAN 391 (2 Points)****The German Connection with New Zealand**

A study of the German connection with New Zealand, with special reference to the arts and sciences, German-speaking settlements in the nineteenth century, and German and Austrian refugees in the twentieth century.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 201***GERMAN 392 (2 Points)****Special Topic***Prerequisite: GERMAN 201***GERMAN 393 (2 Points)****Special Topic***Prerequisite: GERMAN 201*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses****GERMAN 701A (2 Points)****GERMAN 701B (2 Points)****Language Acquisition**

An advanced study of oral and written use of German, including its use in literature and the media; composition, conversation, comprehension, translation and oral presentation.

*Prerequisite: GERMAN 301 and either GERMAN 310 or 311*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 701 A and B***GERMAN 702 (2 Points)****Language Acquisition (GDS)**An advanced study of oral and written use of German which specifically prepares students for participation in the exam for *Deutsches Sprachdiplom* offered by the Goethe Institute in conjunction with the University of Munich.*Prerequisite: GERMAN 701***GERMAN 711 (2 Points)****The Age of Goethe**

A study of selected works covering aspects of the Enlightenment, Classicism and Romanticism.

**GERMAN 714 (2 Points)****Post-War German Prose**

A literary analysis of prose works by prominent post-war German authors.

**GERMAN 715 (2 Points)****20th Century German Poetry**

A study of German poetry in the twentieth century.

**GERMAN 716 (2 Points)****Literature and Film**

A study of novels and their adaptations into films by or with the collaboration of their authors.

**GERMAN 717** (2 Points)  
**20th Century Women Writers**  
 A study of key works, major trends and topics in modern German writing by women.

**GERMAN 718** (2 Points)  
**Middle High German Literature I**  
 A study of Middle High German language and literature with special reference to twelfth century texts and the Nibelungenlied.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 330*

**GERMAN 719** (2 Points)  
**Middle High German Literature II**  
 A study of Middle High German language and literature with special reference to the work of Wolfram von Eschenbach.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 330*

**GERMAN 720** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in German Literature**

**GERMAN 721** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Germanic Studies**  
*Restriction: GERMAN 391*

**GERMAN 722** (2 Points)  
**Goethe: Faust I**  
 An in-depth study of Goethe's *Faust I*.

**GERMAN 723** (2 Points)  
**Goethe: Faust II**  
 An introductory reading of Goethe's *Faust II*.

**GERMAN 724** (2 Points)  
**The Contemporary Novel**  
 A literary analysis of representative contemporary German novels.

**GERMAN 725** (2 Points)  
**Fontane: Effi Briest as Novel and Film**  
 An in-depth comparative analysis of Fontane's novel *Effi Briest* and the four film versions by Gründgens, Jugert, Luderer and Fassbinder.

**GERMAN 726** (2 Points)  
**Thomas Mann: The Early Works**  
 A study of the background to and a textual analysis of selected early works by Thomas Mann.  
*Restriction: 205.712*

**GERMAN 727** (2 Points)  
**Thomas Mann: The Later Works**  
 A study of the background to and a textual analysis of selected later works by Thomas Mann.  
*Restriction: 205.712*

**GERMAN 728** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Germanic Studies**

**GERMAN 729** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Germanic Studies**

**GERMAN 735** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in German Linguistics**

**GERMAN 740** (4 Points)  
**Advanced German Translation Practice**  
 The focus is on further developing the translator's competence. The materials students will translate will be a wide variety of texts which one could actually expect to be translated into English and

German with a specific user in mind. Emphasis is on longer texts which may require subject knowledge and terminology research.  
*Restriction: 205.705 and GERMAN 305*

**GERMAN 741** (4 Points)  
**German Translation Project**

Having learned to translate a wide variety of text categories, registers and genres, the student will focus on one major translation project. The project will include: client involvement to establish a brief, research, documentation, production and reflection.  
*Prerequisite: GERMAN 740*

**GERMAN 780** (4 Points)

**GERMAN 780A** (2 Points)

**GERMAN 780B** (2 Points)

**Honours Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 780 A and B, or GERMAN 780*

**GERMAN 792A** (3 Points)

**GERMAN 792B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**  
 A dissertation with a suggested maximum of 15,000 words.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 792 A and B*

**GERMAN 794A** (5 Points)

**GERMAN 794B** (5 Points)

**Thesis A**  
 A thesis with a suggested maximum of 30,000 words.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 794 A and B*

**GERMAN 796A** (7 Points)

**GERMAN 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis B**  
 A thesis with a suggested maximum of 40,000 words.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 796 A and B*

**GERMAN 797A** (7 Points)

**GERMAN 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GERMAN 797 A and B*

**Greek**

**Stage I**

**GREEK 100** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Ancient Greek Language A**  
 A beginner's course in the grammar and vocabulary of Ancient Greek.

**GREEK 101** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Ancient Greek Language B**  
 An advancing beginner's course in the grammar and vocabulary of Ancient Greek.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 100 or Departmental approval required*

**Stage II**

**GREEK 200** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Language Acquisition: Intermediate**  
 The analysis and description of Ancient Greek

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

grammar, practice in the translation of Ancient Greek to and from English, vocabulary acquisition.  
*Prerequisite: GREEK 101*

**GREEK 201** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Literary Texts IIA**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 101*

**GREEK 202** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Literary Texts IIB**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 101*

**GREEK 203** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Literary Texts IIC**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 101*

**GREEK 204** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Literary Texts IID**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 101*

**Stage III**

**GREEK 300** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Language Acquisition: Advanced**

The structure and use of the Greek language including the use of non-Attic Greek.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 200 and either GREEK 201 or 202*

**GREEK 301** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Literary Texts IIIA**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 200 and either GREEK 201 or 202*

**GREEK 302** (2 Points)

**Ancient Greek Literary Texts IIIB**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: GREEK 200 and either GREEK 201 or 202*

**GREEK 305** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: GREEK 300 and 301 and 302*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**GREEK 700A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 700B** (2 Points)

**Unprepared Greek Translation**

Passages of Greek will be set for translation into English.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 700 A and B*

**GREEK 701A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 701B** (2 Points)

**Greek Language Study**

Any or all of the following: translation into Greek, grammatical, syntactical and stylistic analysis of passages of Greek prose and/or verse.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 701 A and B*

**GREEK 702A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 702B** (2 Points)

**Greek Poetry I**

Entire works or selected passages of Greek poetry will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 702 A and B*

**GREEK 703A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 703B** (2 Points)

**Greek Prose Authors I**

Entire works or selected passages of Greek prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 703 A and B*

**GREEK 704A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 704B** (2 Points)

**Greek Language Topic**

Passages of Greek will be set for translation and analysis of their dialect and/or other linguistic features.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 704 A and B*

**GREEK 705A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 705B** (2 Points)

**Greek Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 705 A and B*

**GREEK 706A** (1 Point)

**GREEK 706B** (1 Point)

**Research Essays in Greek**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 706 A and B*

**GREEK 712A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 712B** (2 Points)

**Greek Poetry II**

Entire works or selected passages of Greek poetry will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 712 A and B*

**GREEK 713A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 713B** (2 Points)

**Greek Prose Authors II**

Entire works or selected passages of Greek prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 713 A and B*

**GREEK 790A** (2 Points)

**GREEK 790B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 790 A and B*

**GREEK 797A** (7 Points)  
**GREEK 797B** (7 Points)  
**Research Portfolio**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in GREEK 797 A and B.

**Cultural Heritage and Museums**

**Stage II**

**HERITAGE 200** (2 Points)  
**Cultural Heritage and Museums**

How is Cultural Heritage defined, actualised, and contested by its multiple stakeholders? Its material and non-material aspects are critically and cross-culturally analysed from the perspectives of Anthropology, Art History, History, Maori Studies and Sociology. Focused on New Zealand and the Pacific, this course contextualises issues within global discourses concerning ownership, management, and repatriation of cultural artifacts and control of indigenous knowledge.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in either ANTHRO 100, 101, 104, or ARTHIST 102, 103, 108, or HISTORY 122, 123, or MAORI 130, 140, or SOCIOL 101*

**HERITAGE 201** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Cultural Heritage and Museum Studies*

**Stage III**

**HERITAGE 300** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: HERITAGE 200 or permission of Coordinator*

**History**

**Stage I**

**HISTORY 101** (2 Points)  
**Russia's Revolutions**  
 Changes in Russian government and society under the last two Tsars and the causes and consequences of the revolutions of 1917. Later topics covered include the exercise of power in Stalin's Russia and social, economic and political revolutions in the Soviet empire.

**HISTORY 102** (2 Points)  
**Sexual Histories: Western Sexualities from Medieval to Modern Times**  
 The shifting meanings, languages, and practices of hetero and homo sexualities using examples from the USA and Europe. Topics include: origins and development in early Christian ideologies, images of the body, gender, reproduction and marriage in sexuality, homosexual identities, Victorian ideologies and behaviour, changing discourses of pornography, the modern privileging of sex, the impact of AIDS.

**HISTORY 103** (2 Points)  
**Global History**  
 Thematic and chronological study of global history since the fifteenth century. Topics include: emergence of world trade networks; growth of world religions; and formation of world empires.

**HISTORY 105** (2 Points)  
**The USA in the 20th Century**

An introduction to US history from the 1890s to the present. Emphasis on the USA as a global power, as well as politics, culture, conflict and reform.

**HISTORY 109** (2 Points)  
**From Realms to Nations: Europe 1700-1871**  
 Survey of European history from the erosion of 'absolute' monarchy to the advent of modern industrial society. Topics include: the social and political structure of the European 'Old Regime', the emergence of consumer society and critical public opinion in the eighteenth century, the transforming consequences of the 'Age of Revolutions' and the invention of class society and the modern city.

**HISTORY 110** (2 Points)  
**From Rivalry to Cooperation: Europe since 1871**  
 The road towards closer European cooperation and integration, the two World Wars, Western Europe and development, the fall of the Iron Curtain and integration of Eastern Europe.

**HISTORY 122** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand and its Peoples: Maori and Pakeha in the 19th Century**  
 Te Ao Hurihuri, the world turned around. A history of a Maori world, settled by Europeans; the evolution of a colonial economy, political system, and society.

**HISTORY 123** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand and its Peoples in the 20th Century**  
 Te Ao Hou, the new world. A history of New Zealand's development in the twentieth century, with particular reference to Maori and Pakeha, the growing relationship with the Polynesian Island and Asian communities, the evolution of a modern society, economy and government, and international relations.

**HISTORY 124** (2 Points)  
**Waka, Hapu, Iwi: Maori Tribal Histories**  
 Introduction to the research and writing of tribal histories including: resources and methodologies, the location of tribes, a Maori geography of Aotearoa-New Zealand, the significance of place names, inland journeys of exploration, founding ancestors, and a comprehensive regional overview of waka traditions and tribal histories.  
*Restriction: 216.224*

**HISTORY 140** (2 Points)  
**Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450-1700**  
 An introduction to the history of late medieval and early modern Europe, with emphasis on the rise of princes, the development of European states and changes in habits of thought, social order and life styles.

**HISTORY 150** (2 Points)  
**Invention, Science and Society**  
 The impact of science and technology on industrial and economic development, on everyday life and on health across a range of societies and cultures since the eighteenth century.

**Stage II**

**HISTORY 210** (2 Points)  
**Social History of Medicine**  
 Introduction to the social history of medicine since

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 581. For course availability refer to page 254.

1850. Topics include: emergence of 'scientific medicine' in the Western World, the transference of Western medicine to colonial contexts and health care systems.

**HISTORY 215** (2 Points)

**Society and Culture in Early Modern England**

An introduction to the mental and social worlds of sixteenth and seventeenth century England: social and gender divisions, family life, communities, education and literacy, death and disease, witchcraft, order and religion.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 217** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 218** (2 Points)

**Social History of European New Zealanders**

An introduction to major aspects of the social development of European society in New Zealand. Topics include: the family, sexuality, sport and leisure.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 219** (2 Points)

**Medieval Mentalities, Western Europe c.1100-1500**

An introduction to the social, cultural and economic history of the high and later Middle Ages, with a thematic emphasis on the history of mentalities. Topics include: social and economic structures and their change over time, power and authority, learning, religion, family, the Black Death and popular dissent.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History or 4 points from ANCHIST 100 or 102 or 103*

**HISTORY 221** (2 Points)

**South-East Asia 1870-1990: Constructing Identity**

Traces the emergence of a modern sense of identity in South-East Asia from its genesis during the decades of high colonialism, through the formation of nation states following World War II, to the purposeful constructions of modern cultures in the late twentieth century.

*Restriction: 216.134*

**HISTORY 222** (2 Points)

**China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties**

The social, political and economic structure of the final period of the Chinese empire, and the practice of imperial government under native and foreign rulers, China's relations with the outside world, and the development of her cultural heritage.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 226** (2 Points)

**Post-War Japanese History**

Emphasising the post-1945 period, this course examines the changes that have characterised Japanese society, culture and politics. Topics include: gender, education, youth, protest and the environment.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 227** (2 Points)

**The Treaty and the Waitangi Tribunal**

The history of the Treaty of Waitangi; the establishment of the Tribunal; an analysis of

rangatiratanga, sovereignty and the historical context and significance of resource claims through a study of cases presented before the Tribunal.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

*Restriction: 216.351*

**HISTORY 230** (2 Points)

**Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific**

European exploration of the Pacific and theories on the origin and migrations of Polynesians, including Maori voyages to New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 231** (2 Points)

**Colonies to Nations: Latin America to 1930**

The origins and early history of Latin America's nation states. Topics include: the end of the colonial order; nineteenth-century independence and crisis; Latin America's relations with Britain and integration into the world economy; and the response to that integration from Amerindians, peasants, workers, women, students and the middle classes.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History or LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103*

*Restriction: 216.238*

**HISTORY 233** (2 Points)

**Australian History 1788 - Present**

A survey of the history of Australia from European occupation to the present. It focuses on the lives and experiences of ordinary Australians, as well as providing an overview of the major political and economic developments across two centuries.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 234** (2 Points)

**Slavery and its Aftermath: African American History**

1610-1910

An examination of African-American experiences during slavery, emancipation and the 'Jim Crow' era of racial segregation.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 235** (2 Points)

**German History 1871 to the Present**

The unification of East and West Germany has once again raised fundamental questions about this 'restless nation'. This course will discuss the problems of its specific development, its political and cultural identity and its international relations.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 240** (2 Points)

**Science, Religion and Politics: Historical Case Studies**

Copernicus, Galileo and Darwin represent controversial developments in scientific theory. An investigation of the interactions between scientific, religious and political beliefs and concerns in these and other controversies.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History or 705.141 and CTHTHEO 142, or any 8 points passed*

**HISTORY 241** (2 Points)

**Making Sense of the Sixties: the USA 1954-1973**

Examination of the social, cultural and political history of the US in the 'long sixties'.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

**HISTORY 242** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*

- HISTORY 243** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in History*
- HISTORY 265** (2 Points)  
**Ireland since 1798**  
 Surveys the history of Ireland from the United Irish rising of 1798. Topics include: the passing of the Act of the Union, the Great Famine, the Irish economy in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, emigration from Ireland, nationalism in Ireland and the emergence of an independent Irish state.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in History at Stage I*  
*Restriction: HISTORY 365*
- 
- Stage III**
- HISTORY 300** (2 Points)  
**Major Problems in Historical Method**  
 A course designed to help students majoring in history engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised. Topics include: post-structuralism and history, gender and history, the nature of historical memory and the impact of non-Western perspectives on the discipline.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 305** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand Legal History**  
 An introduction to the history of the law, legal institutions and the legal profession in New Zealand. Students do not need a legal background to take this course.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 310** (2 Points)  
**'Yankee Go Home?': The USA and Latin America**  
 Explores the relationships between the peoples and governments of the United States and Latin America.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History or (LATINAM 201; HISTORY 231 or POLITICS 234; and SPANISH 211 or 213 or 216)*
- HISTORY 312** (2 Points)  
**Sino-Japanese Relations since the Meiji Restoration**  
 A study of the relations of the two principal nations of East Asia, 1868-1945. The course will include the breakdown of China's informal overseas empire and the growth of Japan's ambition and capability. The later nineteenth century history of Korea will also be considered.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 313** (2 Points)  
**Mao Zedong, Revolution and China**  
 The background to the career of Mao Zedong, the development of his power within the Chinese Communist Party, the entrenchment of Mao Zedong thought as Party orthodoxy, the issue of 'Maoism' and Mao's activities in the People's Republic, including his role in the Cultural Revolution.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 315** (2 Points)  
**Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900**  
 The relations between Pacific Islanders and Europeans (explorers, travellers and missionaries) up to the colonial period.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 317** (2 Points)  
**Germany 1933-1945: Domestic and Foreign Policies of the Nazi Regime**  
 An examination of the effects Nationalist Socialist ideology and policies had on the social, political and economic development of Germany. Going beyond the domestic impact of the Nazi regime, the course also covers Nazi Germany's increasingly aggressive foreign policy leading ultimately to European and then World War.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 320** (2 Points)  
**Gender Relations in 20th Century New Zealand**  
 A study of the history and the historians of women, men and gender in twentieth century European New Zealand. Topics include: gender and generations, sex and sexuality and post-World War II family life.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 324** (2 Points)  
**Old Regime and Revolution in France c.1750-1815**  
 An introduction to the French Revolution as a founding event of modern history. Topics include: the Revolution's origins in eighteenth century culture, the collapse of the French monarchy, the radical experiment of mass democracy, and the Revolution's disputed meanings and modern legacies.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 325** (2 Points)  
**Immigration and Settlement in Australia**  
 An examination of the peopling of the Australian continent; why immigrants came to Australia, where they settled and how they adjusted to the new society, as well as Australian attitudes towards immigration.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 329** (2 Points)  
**Social Welfare in New Zealand from 1840 to the Present Day**  
 An exploration of the development of the welfare state in New Zealand from 1840 to the present. An examination of the reasons for the introduction of welfare measures, the form the legislation took, and its impact on society.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 336** (2 Points)  
**Popular Cultures in England 1550-1750**  
 An investigation of the domains of belief and behaviour in the everyday lives of the rural and urban communities of early modern England. Topics include: sexualities, orality, literacy and print, popular religion, witchcraft, festive drama and ritual, riot, order and the law, and the meanings of 'popular culture'.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*
- HISTORY 337** (2 Points)  
**Sex and Gender in Pre-modern England**  
 Examines varieties of sexuality and gender roles available to men and women in England c.1300-1800.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in History*  
*Restriction: HISTORY 336, 343*
- HISTORY 340** (2 Points)  
**Race in New Zealand**  
 An exploration of the development of racial

ideologies in New Zealand, from their eighteenth and nineteenth century European roots to the twentieth century. The course focuses on the interaction of racial ideas with actual ethnic relations (notably Maori-Pakeha relations), with historical interpretation, and with New Zealand collective identities.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 341** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 343** (2 Points)  
**The Family, Sex and Marriage in Europe, c.1300–1500**

A social history, examining such questions as: how were families and households structured in this period and how did they differ in different parts of Europe? Why did people marry, and what roles did husbands and wives take on? Was there a concept of childhood? Did homosexuality 'exist'?

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 346** (2 Points)  
**Vietnam: Conflict in Indo-China 1858–1993**

An examination of the relationship between Indo-China and the Western nations of France, the United States, Australia and New Zealand during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, with particular reference to the Vietnam War.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 347** (2 Points)  
**Japanese Popular Culture since 1945**

Post-World War II artefacts of Japanese society, including: cinema, television, manga (comics), popular music, fashion and the changing patterns of youth culture situated within their historical context. The meaning of the modes of thought, identity and behaviour in post-war Japan.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 348** (2 Points)  
**America's Wars in Asia**

An examination of the troubled relationship between Asia and the USA, in the context of wider historical developments, with a particular focus on the four wars fought by the USA in Asia in the twentieth century.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 355** (2 Points)  
**The State of Native North America**

An introduction to the history of the indigenous peoples of the United States and Canada. Topics covered include: disease and demographic change, the fur trade, the colonial wars, land loss, reservation experiences, modern Indian political activism and the politics of representation.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 356** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 358** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**HISTORY 361** (2 Points)

**From Darwin to the Salvation Army: Challenges to Established Religion in Victorian England**

Baptists and spiritualists, agnostics and socialists, successfully challenged the belief systems and institutional authority of the Church of England. A discussion of changing beliefs and institutions with reference to theories of secularisation.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History, or 705.242 and 705.243, or HISTORY 240 and 6 further points at Stage II

**HISTORY 363** (2 Points)  
**Class and Consumer Society in the USA**

Focusing on the relationship between work and leisure, production and consumption, as well as culture and politics, the course examines ways in which Americans' beliefs and behaviours have changed with the industrialising of society and the rise of consumerism and mass culture.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 364** (2 Points)

**Hollywood's America: History through Film**

Examination of Hollywood feature film using techniques of historical analysis.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in History

**HISTORY 365** (2 Points)

**Ireland since 1798**

Surveys the history of Ireland from the United Irish rising of 1798. Topics include: the passing of the Act of the Union, the Great Famine, the Irish economy in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, emigration from Ireland, nationalism in Ireland and the emergence of an independent Irish state.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in History at Stage II

*Restriction:*

*Restriction:* HISTORY 265

### **Honours and Master's Courses**

**HISTORY 701A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 701B** (2 Points)

**Political Development of the Pacific Islands from about 1870**

An examination of political and related social change in the Pacific Islands from annexation to decolonisation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 701 A and B*

**HISTORY 704A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 704B** (2 Points)

**Kings, Lords and Commons: Tudor Government and Society 1485–1603**

Involves the extensive use of primary materials. Concentrates on the changing role of parliament; the shifting relationship between king, lords and commons; and parliament's response to a wide variety of political, economic and social problems ranging from religion and witchcraft to treason and inflation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 704 A and B*

**HISTORY 705A** (2 Points)

**HISTORY 705B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Writing New Zealand**

A study of the writing of New Zealand and history from nineteenth century accounts through to more recent, revisionist undertakings. Considers general and overview histories, as well as key texts and the

debates generated by such works. Students will have an opportunity to undertake research on a topic of their own choosing.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 705 A and B

**HISTORY 706A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 706B** (2 Points)

**Topics in European Cultural History**

An historical introduction to the relationship between ideologies, cultural practices, social structures and political institutions in Europe. Topics include: the political history of manners and court culture; public opinion and print culture; gender and consumerism; the history of the senses and the human body.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 706 A and B

**HISTORY 708A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 708B** (2 Points)

**Religion and Revolutions in Latin America**

Religious responses to, and involvement in, revolutionary social and political change in Latin American history. The impact of Christianity on Latin America's indigenous peoples, the effect of independence on the Catholic Church's political influence, Catholic reformism after the Cuban Revolution, Christian opposition to counter-revolutionary military regimes, liberation theology's revolutionary politics, the Protestant reaction to liberation theology.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 708 A and B

**HISTORY 709A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 709B** (2 Points)

**Science and Society: Comparative Studies 1840-1950**

The history of science and technology in New Zealand from a comparative perspective. The professionalisation of science, the linking of science and technology and the consequent importance of science in government policy, the conspicuous impact of technological changes on society.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 709 A and B

**HISTORY 710** (2 Points)  
**Rethinking History**

An examination of some key readings dealing with contemporary trends and theoretical issues in history writing. The focus will be on what has been termed 'history as text and discourse'. The aim is to provide a self-reflexive approach to historians' representations of the past.

**HISTORY 714A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 714B** (2 Points)

**Europe 1939-45: War, Occupation, Neutrality**

Examines the origins and effects of the Second World War upon Europe, including detailed analysis of German relations with occupied and neutral European countries.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 714 A and B

**HISTORY 717A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 717B** (2 Points)

**The Irish in North America, Australia and New Zealand**

A comparative study of Irish emigration to and settlement in North America, Australia and New Zealand.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 717 A and B

**HISTORY 718A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 718B** (2 Points)

**Nga Take: Decolonising Maori History**

Contemporary literature about Maori is characterised by reference to the oral tradition of pre-European Maori. This course challenges current beliefs about creation, demigod, waka and tribal traditions, and concepts including tapu and mana, by tracing publications to their original primary and theoretical sources, and through exploring alternative methods of analysis.

Restriction: HISTORY 342

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 718 A and B

**HISTORY 720A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 720B** (2 Points)

**China's Struggle for Modernity: The Republican Era**

A study of the political, economic, social and cultural history of China in the period from the abdication of the Qing dynasty in 1912 to the creation of the People's Republic in 1949.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 720 A and B

**HISTORY 721A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 721B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 721 A and B

**HISTORY 724A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 724B** (2 Points)

**Labouring Lives in 19th and early 20th Century England**

A study of the life situation of working people in nineteenth and early twentieth century England, with an emphasis on social history. Topics include: work, living conditions, the family, popular culture, protest and representations of labouring life.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 724 A and B

**HISTORY 725A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 725B** (2 Points)

**Health, Medicine and Society, with a Special Emphasis on New Zealand, 1840 to the Present Day**

Topics to be investigated include the development of the medical and allied professions, hospital and medical services and public health. Special topics will include Maori health, and women and health.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 725 A and B

**HISTORY 726A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 726B** (2 Points)

**Post-War Japanese History**

A study of the four basic historical and contemporary issues which have had a profound effect on the nature of Japan's international competitiveness in the post-war era: labour, bureaucracy and business; internationalisation of the economy, socio-economic aspects of the economy. Note: it will be useful, but not essential, to have completed HISTORY 226 in a previous year.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 726 A and B

**HISTORY 728A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 728B** (2 Points)

#### American Women's History

An examination of current issues in USA women's history. Topics include: the history of sexuality, women's work, the 'domestication' of USA politics and the relationship between women's history and gender history.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 728 A and B

**HISTORY 729A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 729B** (2 Points)

#### New Zealand and Australian History

A comparative study of New Zealand and Australian history arranged around the themes of people and play.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 729 A and B

**HISTORY 731A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 731B** (2 Points)

#### The Spanish Pacific

This course attempts historically to conceptualise the Spanish Empire in the Pacific as a political, social and economic system with emphasis on the interconnectedness of geography and cultural formation.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 731 A and B

**HISTORY 732A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 732B** (2 Points)

#### Colonial Histories and Indigenous Traditions

The course will prepare and train students for researching Maori history so that they develop an awareness of alternative historical perspectives. This will involve work on other indigenous histories from both colonial and post-colonial situations. Throughout the course there will be instruction on the nature and forms of Maori history.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 732 A and B

**HISTORY 733A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 733B** (2 Points)

#### European Expansion: Conquest, Settlement, Myth

An exploration of European expansion and its myths, focusing on non-European resistance (especially military resistance) and European settlement. New Zealand is a major case, but the course also essays into American, Australian and Canadian history, and the approach will be theoretical and comparative.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 733 A and B

**HISTORY 734A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 734B** (2 Points)

#### Topics in USA Social/Cultural History

An exploration of recent and innovative work in the United States' social and cultural history. The course examines the lives of ordinary Americans with special attention to values, cultural practices and daily activities. Topics include: class formation, race and gender relations, social and political movements, as well as work, consumption and leisure.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 734 A and B

**HISTORY 735A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 735B** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 735 A and B

**HISTORY 736A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 736B** (2 Points)

#### Writing the History of Women in Medieval Europe c.1100-1500

A study of the history and historiography of medieval women, this course considers what medieval women's history consists of, how it can or should be written, and why it is worth writing.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 736 A and B

**HISTORY 760** (4 Points)

**HISTORY 760A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 760B** (2 Points)

#### Special Study

A research course, normally related to one of the courses HISTORY 701-736, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 760 A and B, or HISTORY 760

**HISTORY 761A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 761B** (2 Points)

#### Special Study

A research course, normally related to one of the courses HISTORY 701-736, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 761 A and B

**HISTORY 780A** (2 Points)  
**HISTORY 780B** (2 Points)

#### Honours Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 780 A and B

**HISTORY 792A** (3 Points)  
**HISTORY 792B** (3 Points)

#### Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 792 A and B

**HISTORY 796A** (7 Points)  
**HISTORY 796B** (7 Points)

#### Thesis

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 796 A and B

**HISTORY 797A** (7 Points)  
**HISTORY 797B** (7 Points)

#### Research Portfolio

To complete this course students must enrol in HISTORY 797 A and B

---

## Health Social Sciences

### Stage II

**HLTHSOC 200** (2 Points)  
Social Science for Health

Explores diversity in health knowledges, overviews current health trends and systems with special focus on New Zealand and the Pacific, examines the contributions of social science disciplines to analysis of health including key theoretical approaches, and applies interdisciplinary analytical models to health.  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage I courses listed for the programme*

**Stage III****HLTHSOC 300 (2 Points)****Current Debates in Health and Health Policy**

Examines the recent histories of central intellectual debates in health and health policy and their relevance for, and in, the New Zealand and Pacific contexts. These would consist of the following: the 'medicalisation' of social issues, the 'socialisation' of medical issues, cross-national health policy analysis, the rationing of health resources (global and local perspectives), defining and measuring health outcomes (accountability and responsibility in health service delivery), health service management (medics or managers).

*Prerequisite: HLTHSOC 200***History and Philosophy of Science and Technology****Stage I****HPST 100 (2 Points)****Science, Technology and Society**

Introduces sociological, philosophical, historical and policy questions about science through a discussion of such issues as: science and gender; science policy, applied science, and technology; scientific method; the aims, values and ethos of science.

**Stage II****HPST 200 (2 Points)****Science, Technology and the Environment in New Zealand**

A comparison of the development of scientific ideas and institutions in New Zealand with those in other ex-colonial countries. Topics from early European exploration, to agricultural science and the environment in the twentieth century, to the recent restructuring of scientific research.

*Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed***Stage III****HPST 300 (2 Points)****Debates in History, Philosophy and Sociology of Science**

Examination of the debates over objectivity, rationality, relativism and the social construction of science which have arisen amongst sociologists, philosophers and historians of science over the last 20 years.

*Prerequisite: 4 points from: HISTORY 240 or PHIL 260 or SCIGEN 201***Indonesian****Stage I**

*Note: Native speakers of Indonesian may not enrol for INDO 101 or any other Stage I or II language or literature courses. The same restriction applies to*

*students from Malaysia, but in exceptional cases may be waived by the Head of School.*

**INDO 101 (2 Points)****Indonesian I A**

Introducing written and spoken contemporary Indonesian.

*Restriction: 220.100***INDO 102 (2 Points)****Indonesian I B**

Continuation of INDO 101.

*Prerequisite: INDO 101**Restriction: 220.100***INDO 120 (2 Points)****Indonesian Literatures: Readings in Translation**

Selected readings from traditional or modern literatures of Indonesia. Readings vary from year to year. Traditional texts may include: an old Javanese adaptation of the Hindu epics; a modern Javanese wayang tale; a Balinese historical chronicle; an Islamic romance; a pre-modern religious or didactic text; or creation myths and folk tales from Sumatra and Borneo. Modern literature will feature poetry and short stories of the past 50 years with special emphasis on the life and work of Pramoedya Ananta Toer.

**INDO 130 (2 Points)****Indonesia: Land and People**

An introduction in English to the diversity of modern Indonesia. Provides an historical perspective on contemporary Indonesian politics, culture and society.

**INDO 135 (2 Points)****Introduction to Hinduism**

General introduction to the origin, development, and history of Hinduism. (In English)

*Restriction: 220.137***INDO 136 (2 Points)****Introduction to Buddhism**

General introduction to the origin, development, and history of Buddhism. (In English)

*Restriction: 220.137***INDO 138 (2 Points)****Introduction to Islam**

General introduction to the origin, development and history of Islamic thought and civilisation. (In English)

**INDO 181A (2 Points)****INDO 181B (2 Points)****Introduction to Classical Arabic**

An introduction to the morphology, grammar, and syntax of Classical Arabic. Please note that this course has no spoken component and does not teach Modern Standard Arabic.

*Prerequisite: INDO 102 or School approval required**To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 181 A and B***INDO 182A (2 Points)****INDO 182B (2 Points)****Beginning Sanskrit**

Introduction to the morphology, grammar, and syntax of Sanskrit, i.e., the language of the Indian epics Mahabharata and Ramayana.

*Prerequisite: INDO 102 or School approval required*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 182 A and B*

### Stage II

**INDO 201 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian IIA

Continues the study of formal and informal Indonesian, concentrating mainly on the spoken idiom.

*Prerequisite: 220.100 or INDO 102*

*Restriction: 220.200*

**INDO 202 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian IIB

Continues the study of formal and informal Indonesian, concentrating mainly on the spoken idiom. It is recommended that students of Indonesian language take this course concurrently with INDO 220.

*Prerequisite: INDO 201*

*Restriction: 220.200*

**INDO 220 (2 Points)**

#### Second Year Readings

Selection of readings from Indonesian literary, media, and other sources, studied mainly from the point of view of language familiarisation.

*Prerequisite: INDO 201*

**INDO 230 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian Cultural Studies I

The courses INDO 230 and 231, offered in alternate years, have a dual purpose. In addition to the study of one or two selected topics in Indonesian regional culture or civilisation each year, both courses contain a large component designed to introduce the student to bibliography, the conventions of scholarly writing, and the methodology of Indonesian studies.

*Prerequisite: One of 220.121, 220.137, INDO 120, 130, 135, 136, 138*

*Restriction: INDO 231, 330*

**INDO 231 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian Cultural Studies II

*Prerequisite: One of 220.121, 220.137, INDO 120, 130, 135, 136, 138*

*Restriction: INDO 230, 331*

**INDO 232 (2 Points)**

#### Aspects of the Indonesian Colonial Experience

A study of the development of Indonesian nationalism in the 1920s and 1930s as reflected in the Dutch and Indonesian press, official correspondence, and the popular literature of the period (Lulofs, du Perron, Szekeley). This literary study will be placed within an investigation of the economic, social, and cultural factors that contributed to the formation of modern Indonesia.

*Prerequisite: INDO 230 or School approval required*

**INDO 233 (2 Points)**

#### Duality and Transcendence

A study of the sacred imagery of Islam, Hinduism, Buddhism, and tribal religions of Southeast Asia – the transcendence of dualism and non-dualism in the verbal and visual imagery of mysticism.

*Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed*

**INDO 245 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian Regional Language Studies I

A text-based, non-conversational study of Javanese, Old-Javanese, or Batak literary works.

*Prerequisite: INDO 101*

**INDO 265 (2 Points)**

#### Advanced Indonesian for Malay Speakers A

A study of the formal register of contemporary Indonesian, as represented in national newspapers and magazines such as Kompas and Tempo.

**INDO 266 (2 Points)**

#### Advanced Indonesian for Malay Speakers B

A study of the informal register of contemporary Indonesian, especially as represented in youth magazines, Jakarta 'lifestyle' publications, Internet exchanges, television comedies and dramas, literature in dialect, and other sources.

**INDO 277 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian Study Abroad IIA

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**INDO 278 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian Study Abroad IIB

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: INDO 277 and School approval required*

**INDO 299 (2 Points)**

#### Special Studies

Directed student research conducted under the supervision of one or more lecturers. Special Studies courses require a written proposal by the student, at the time of enrolment, which needs approval of the supervisor.

*Prerequisite: 8 points passed*

### Stage III

**INDO 301 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian IIIA

More advanced study of formal and informal Indonesian, concentrating mainly on the spoken idiom.

*Prerequisite: INDO 202*

*Restriction: 220.300*

**INDO 302 (2 Points)**

#### Indonesian IIIB

Continuation of INDO 301.

*Prerequisite: INDO 301*

*Restriction: 220.300*

**INDO 320 (2 Points)**

#### Introduction to Modern Indonesian Literature

Readings in the texts and criticism of Indonesian literature from the Balai Pustaka, Pujangga Baru, Angkatan '45 and Angkatan '66 literary 'generations'.

*Prerequisite: INDO 230 or 231*

**INDO 330 (2 Points)**

#### Nusantara: Selected Topics I

A more in-depth study in English of selected topics in Indonesian culture and civilisation, taught in conjunction with the lectures offered under INDO 230.

*Prerequisite: INDO 231*

*Restriction: INDO 230*

**INDO 331 (2 Points)**

#### Nusantara: Selected Topics II

A more in-depth study in English of selected topics in Indonesian culture and civilisation, taught in conjunction with the lectures offered under INDO 231.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 230

*Restriction:* INDO 231

**INDO 345 (2 Points)**

**Indonesian Regional Language Studies II**

Reading and analysis of one or more selected texts from the corpus of Old Javanese, Malay or Batak literature.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 245

**INDO 350 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Indonesian Readings**

Development of advanced reading, discussion, and writing skills.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 230 or 231

*Restriction:* INDO 360, 362

**INDO 360 (2 Points)**

**Seminar: Advanced Indonesian Readings**

Study and discussion of the writings of contemporary Indonesian intellectuals on issues of current concern; readings taken primarily from news media, published collections of essays, and the Internet.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 230 or 231

*Restriction:* INDO 350

**INDO 362 (2 Points)**

**Seminar: Pramoedya Ananta Toer**

Study and discussion of the creative, critical, and political writings of contemporary Indonesian's foremost literary figure, Pramoedya Ananta Toer.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 230 or 231

*Restriction:* INDO 350

**INDO 377 (2 Points)**

**Indonesian Study Abroad IIIA**

Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.

*Prerequisite:* School approval required

**INDO 378 (2 Points)**

**Indonesian Study Abroad IIIB**

Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 377 and School approval required

**INDO 380 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Classical Malay Literature**

A language course in reading Malay literature, including a mastery of the Jawi (Arabic) script, supplemented by lectures providing an overview of the Malay literary tradition.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 202

**INDO 397 (2 Points)**

**Seminar in Bibliography**

Practical work perusing retrospective scholarship and compiling extensive annotated bibliographies in fields or areas of interest nominated by students. Reading knowledge of Dutch, German, French and/or Indonesian is desirable.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 230 or 231

**INDO 398 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

In-depth study of selected topics in Indonesian language, literature, culture or Asian religions.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 230 or 231 or approval of Head of School

**INDO 399 (2 Points)**

**Special Studies**

Independent student research conducted under the supervision of one or more lecturers. Reading knowledge of Dutch, German, or French is normally necessary.

*Prerequisite:* INDO 230 or 231

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**INDO 700A (2 Points)**

**INDO 700B (2 Points)**

**Advanced Language Acquisition**

Practical application of both formal and informal language skills in reading, writing, discussing, and conversation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 700 A and B*

**INDO 720A (2 Points)**

**INDO 720B (2 Points)**

**Selected Topics in Modern Indonesian Literature**

An in-depth study of selected topics, authors, or themes in modern Indonesian literature.

*To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 720 A and B*

**INDO 729A (2 Points)**

**INDO 729B (2 Points)**

**Adv Indonesian Trans Practice**

A critical overview of translation theory. Special problems in translating Indonesian literary texts. Extensive translation practice with fiction and/or poetry. May include Indonesian-English translation, English-Indonesian translation, or a combination of both.

*To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 729 A and B*

**INDO 740A (2 Points)**

**INDO 740B (2 Points)**

**Selected Topics in Javanese Literature and Culture**

An examination of nominated topics in Javanese literary, intellectual, or cultural history and criticism based on an examination of primary textual sources. Reading knowledge of Dutch essential.

*To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 740 A and B*

**INDO 745A (2 Points)**

**INDO 745B (2 Points)**

**Selected Topics in Old Javanese Literature and Culture**

An examination of nominated topics in Old Javanese literary, intellectual, or cultural history and criticism based on an examination of primary textual sources. Reading knowledge of Dutch essential.

*To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 745 A and B*

**INDO 749A (2 Points)**

**INDO 749B (2 Points)**

**Translation and Paraphrase of Selected 'Macapat' Texts**

Graded exercises in both literal and paraphrastic translation of Javanese poetic texts from the seventeenth through nineteenth centuries. Principles of textual criticism and the New Javanese philology. 'Critical' edition, translation and annotation of a selected text. Reading knowledge of Dutch essential.

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 749 A and B

**INDO 750A** (2 Points)  
**INDO 750B** (2 Points)

#### Selected Topics in Classical Malay Literature

An examination of nominated topics in Malay literary, intellectual, or cultural history and criticism based on an examination of primary textual sources. Reading knowledge of Dutch desirable.

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 750 A and B

**INDO 759A** (2 Points)  
**INDO 759B** (2 Points)

#### Translation of Selected Malay Texts

Graded exercises in both literal and paraphrastic translation of both prose and poetic texts from the seventeenth through nineteenth centuries. Principles of textual criticism and the role of orality in the transmission of written texts. 'Critical' edition, translation, and annotation of a selected text. Reading knowledge of Dutch desirable.

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 759 A and B

**INDO 760A** (2 Points)  
**INDO 760B** (2 Points)

#### Seminar in Bibliography

Introduction to methods and strategies for bibliographic investigation. Includes two major bibliography projects, one of them extensively annotated.

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 760 A and B

**INDO 770** (2 Points)

#### Selected Topics in Retrospective Dutch Scholarship

Seminar style study of the history of scholarship on selected topics, beginning from the earliest notices and continuing through the most recent contributions. Most readings will be in Dutch. Requires a minimum of four participants.

**INDO 780A** (2 Points)  
**INDO 780B** (2 Points)

#### Special Studies

An in-depth study of a nominated topic under the supervision of a lecturer, culminating in a major essay.

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 780 A and B

**INDO 785** (6 Points)

**INDO 785A** (3 Points)  
**INDO 785B** (3 Points)

#### Honours Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 785 A and B, or INDO 785

**INDO 794A** (5 Points)  
**INDO 794B** (5 Points)

#### Thesis A

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 794 A and B

**INDO 796A** (7 Points)  
**INDO 796B** (7 Points)

#### Thesis B

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 796 A and B

**INDO 797A** (7 Points)  
**INDO 797B** (7 Points)

#### Research Portfolio

To complete this course students must enrol in INDO 797 A and B

## Italian

### Stage I

**ITALIAN 106** (2 Points)

#### Italian Language for Beginners A

Students learn to speak, read and write Italian, studying aspects of contemporary Italian society and thought. This course does not count towards a major in Italian.

Restriction: ITALIAN 166

**ITALIAN 107** (2 Points)

#### Italian Language for Beginners B

Further development in Italian language skills.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 106 or 166

Restriction: ITALIAN 167

**ITALIAN 111** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic: Italy on Screen

Social, political and cultural issues in twentieth century Italy, interpreted through feature films.

**ITALIAN 166** (2 Points)

#### Italian Language for Beginners A – Distance Learning

Students learn to speak, read and write Italian, studying aspects of contemporary Italian society. This course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and a CD-Rom drive. This course does not count towards a major in Italian.

Restriction: ITALIAN 106

**ITALIAN 167** (2 Points)

#### Italian Language for Beginners B – Distance Learning

Further development in Italian language skills. Students learn to speak, read and write Italian, studying aspects of contemporary Italian society. This course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and CD-Rom drive.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 106 or 166

Restriction: ITALIAN 107

### Stage II

**ITALIAN 200** (2 Points)

#### Intermediate Italian Language A

Develops writing, reading, speaking and listening skills to an intermediate level, through practice on a wide range of written texts and current audio-visual material.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167

**ITALIAN 201** (2 Points)

#### Intermediate Italian Language B

Continues to develop language skills at an intermediate level and introduces skills of reading and analysing literary texts.

Prerequisite: ITALIAN 200

**ITALIAN 202 (2 Points)**

**Engendered Voices (Texts in Italian)**

A critical study of the representation and invention of women's experiences and of issues of gender and culture, through an examination of literary texts and films by twentieth century Italian women writers and filmmakers. (Students will study extracts in Italian).

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*

*Restriction: 226.110, ITALIAN 203*

**ITALIAN 203 (2 Points)**

**Engendered Voices (Texts in English)**

A critical study of the representation and invention of women's experiences and of issues of gender and culture, through an examination of literary texts and films by twentieth century Italian women writers and filmmakers. (Students will study extracts in English).

*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*

*Restriction: 226.110, ITALIAN 202*

**ITALIAN 204 (2 Points)**

**Italian Fiction and Cinema**

A study of Italian novels, short stories and their adaptation into feature films. Texts are in Italian.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*

**ITALIAN 205 (2 Points)**

**Il Linguaggio del Testo: Language and Text**

Reinforces and develops Italian language skills through the study of literary texts. Leonardo Sciascia's novel *A ciascuno il suo* and other texts are used as a point of departure for writing and discussion in Italian and also for highlighting the literary techniques used by the author.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*

**ITALIAN 209 (2 Points)**

**Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (Texts in Italian)**

An introduction to themes and issues in Italian Renaissance Culture. General topics are covered in English but texts are read in Italian.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*

*Restriction: ITALIAN 210*

**ITALIAN 210 (2 Points)**

**Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (Texts in English)**

An introduction to themes and issues in Italian Renaissance Culture. This course is taught entirely in English.

*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*

*Restriction: ITALIAN 209*

**ITALIAN 221 (2 Points)**

**Italian for Business**

A practical course designed for the business and administrative worlds. The written part focuses on Italian for business purposes including: commercial correspondence, report writing, dealing with bureaucratic forms and the broader trade environment. In the oral section students learn to communicate in specific practical situations and commercial contexts. Along with Internet-based activities, an interactive multimedia component reinforces, tests and contextualises language

learning done in the classroom. This course does not count towards an Italian major or minor.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167.*

**ITALIAN 231 (2 Points)**

**The Theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame (Texts in Italian)**

A study of the theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame including close textual readings of plays which reflect issues in Italian society and culture from the post-war period to recent times. Students will study plays in Italian.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 107 or 167*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 200*

*Restriction: ITALIAN 234*

**ITALIAN 232 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Italian Fiction and Cinema**

A study of Italian novels, short stories and their adaptation in feature films. Texts are in English.

*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*

*Restriction: ITALIAN 204*

**ITALIAN 234 (2 Points)**

**The Theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame (Texts in English)**

A study of the theatre of Dario Fo and Franca Rame including close readings of plays which reflect issues in Italian society and culture from the post-war period to recent times. Students will study plays in English translation. This course does not count towards the major in Italian.

*Prerequisite: Any 12 points passed*

*Restriction: ITALIAN 231*

**ITALIAN 277 (2 Points)**

**Italian Study Abroad IIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**ITALIAN 278 (2 Points)**

**Italian Study Abroad IIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 277 and Departmental approval required*

**Stage III**

**ITALIAN 300 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Italian Language**

This course builds on the language skills acquired in Italian ITALIAN 200 and 201, focusing on selected topics in more specialised contexts.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

**ITALIAN 302 (2 Points)**

**Dante's Divina Commedia: Inferno**

A close study of the first section of this great fourteenth-century work, read in the context of medieval history and thought.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 303 (2 Points)**

**Boccaccio and Petrarca**

An introduction to Boccaccio's collection of short stories, the *Decamerone* and the poetry of Petrarca.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 322 (2 Points)**

**Italian Translation Practice**

Designed for students wishing to develop specific, practical translation skills. Introduces students to

issues in translation and offers translating practice in areas of social issues, commerce, law, technology and the media.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201 and Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: 226.300*

*Restriction: ITALIAN 702*

**ITALIAN 331 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film: Contemporary Italian Theatre**

A study of the development of Italian drama in the twentieth century.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 332 (2 Points)**

**Breaking the Frame: A Problem in Italian Literature and the Visual Arts**

Works in several media (painting, drama, written autobiography, opera, comic strips and film) from periods ranging from the fifteenth to the twentieth century are examined in terms of the prominence each gives to some kind of framing device, and of the ways in which that frame is fractured.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 333 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: The Italian Detective Story**

A study of the Italian detective story as a phenomenon of mass culture.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 334 (2 Points)**

**Italo Calvino's Early Fiction**

A close study of the genesis and the text of Italo Calvino's trilogy *Nostri antenati*.

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 201*

*Corequisite: ITALIAN 300*

**ITALIAN 377 (2 Points)**

**Italian Study Abroad IIIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**ITALIAN 378 (2 Points)**

**Italian Study Abroad IIIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: ITALIAN 377 and Departmental approval required*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ITALIAN 700A (2 Points)**

**ITALIAN 700B (2 Points)**

**Language Acquisition: Oral and Written Use of Italian**

The fundamental skills of reading, writing and speaking in various registers of Italian are taken to an advanced level. All classes are held in Italian.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 700 A and B*

**ITALIAN 701 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Italian Language Acquisition**

Provides a basis for students to orient themselves among the different registers, dialects and languages spoken by ethnic minorities and sectorial groups in contemporary Italy by analysing written and audio-visual materials.

**ITALIAN 702 (4 Points)**

**Advanced Italian Translation Practice**

Designed for students wishing to develop specific, practical translation skills. Introduces students to issues in translation and offers translating practice in areas of social issues, commerce, law, technology and the media.

*Restriction: ITALIAN 322*

**ITALIAN 703 (4 Points)**

**Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Italian**

**ITALIAN 704 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic in Linguistics: 2001 Translation Project**

**ITALIAN 705 (4 Points)**

**History and Fantasy in the Writings of Antonio Tabucchi**

With *Sostiene Pereira* (1994), Antonio Tabucchi won all major literary awards in Italy. The course will present this novel and a selection of short stories from various collections in order to highlight the author's successful blend of history and fantasy in his writings.

**ITALIAN 706 (4 Points)**

**Renaissance Theatre**

The transition from *commedia erudita* to the birth of melodrama will be viewed through two plays of the first quarter of the sixteenth century - Ludovico Ariosto's *La Lena* and Niccolò Machiavelli's *La mandragola* - and one performed in 1589, Girolamo Bargagli's *La pellegrina*.

**ITALIAN 707 (4 Points)**

**The Italian Detective Story**

Launched in Italy as an imported genre in the late twenties, the detective story has become a phenomenon of mass culture. It has acquired a distinct Italian style with the production of novels, films, drama, television series and comic books, enjoyed by highbrow, middlebrow and lowbrow audiences. The course offers a reading of diverse texts of the genre in their socio-cultural contexts.

**ITALIAN 708 (4 Points)**

**Self-Reflection to Self-Invention: Redefining Women's Autobiography**

Examines some of the forms (including painting, mystical poetry, letters, travel journals, autobiographical novels) in which Italian women over the centuries have portrayed themselves, adopting, adapting and subverting traditional notions of genre.

**ITALIAN 709 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**ITALIAN 710 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic in 14th Century Literature**

**ITALIAN 711 (4 Points)**

**Dante's Divina Commedia**

A close study of *Inferno*, the first section of Dante's fourteenth century poem, read in the context of medieval history and thought with supplementary readings from *Purgatorio* and *Paradiso*.

*Restriction: ITALIAN 302*

**ITALIAN 712 (4 Points)**

**Contemporary Italian Theatre**

A study of the development of Italian drama in the twentieth century through the analysis of representative plays by Pirandello, Betti, De Filippo, Brancati and Ginzburg. This course will be taught in Italian.

**ITALIAN 713 (4 Points)**  
**Italian Popular Culture**

Examines some typical examples of Italian popular culture in the context of critical debates on mass culture. Among the texts to be studied are: Pinocchio comic strips and *fortomanzi*, an Italian horror movie, Edmondo de Amicis' *Cuore*, Carlo Fruttero and Franco Lucentini's *La donna della domenica* and the television series *Il maresciallo Rocca*.

**ITALIAN 714 (4 Points)**  
**Italo Calvino's Fiction**

A close study of the genesis and the texts of the following novels by Italo Calvino: *Il sentiero dei nidi di ragno* and *Inostri antenati*.  
*Restriction: ITALIAN 334*

**ITALIAN 720 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Renaissance Literature and Culture**

**ITALIAN 721 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**ITALIAN 730 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic in 20th Century Italian Literature**

**ITALIAN 732 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**ITALIAN 733 (4 Points)**  
**The Films of Michelangelo Antonioni**

An auteur study of the work of Michelangelo Antonioni focusing on critical issues of authorship, style, realism, narrative agency and psychoanalysis.

**ITALIAN 734 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**ITALIAN 780 (4 Points)**

**ITALIAN 780A (2 Points)**

**ITALIAN 780B (2 Points)**

**Honours Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 780 A and B, or ITALIAN 780*

**ITALIAN 792A (3 Points)**

**ITALIAN 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 792 A and B*

**ITALIAN 794A (5 Points)**

**ITALIAN 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis A**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 794 A and B*

**ITALIAN 796A (7 Points)**

**ITALIAN 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis B**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 796 A and B*

**ITALIAN 797A (7 Points)**

**ITALIAN 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ITALIAN 797 A and B.*

**Japanese**

**Stage I**

**JAPANESE 130 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Japanese Language I**

An integrated basic course in modern Japanese covering reading, writing, speaking and listening.  
*Restriction: 230.101, 230.110, 230.111, 230.121*

**JAPANESE 131 (2 Points)**

**JAPANESE 131A (1 Point)**

**JAPANESE 131B (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Japanese Language II**

A continuation of JAPANESE 130.

*Prerequisite: 230.110 or JAPANESE 130 or School approval required*

*Restriction: 230.101, 230.111, 230.121*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 131 A and B, or JAPANESE 131*

**JAPANESE 150 (2 Points)**

**Japan: A Survey**

Covers Japanese cultural history from the pre-historic age until the 1990s, and serves as an introduction to contemporary Japan. It deals with such diverse fields as Japanese literature, religion, history of thought, and folk belief, and provides basic knowledge of Japan's economy, the political system, Japan's position in the world, infrastructure, education, social structures and gender studies. No knowledge of the Japanese language is required.

*Restriction: 230.151, 230.152*

**Stage II**

**JAPANESE 222A (1 Point)**

**JAPANESE 222B (1 Point)**

**Structural Analysis of the Japanese Language**

Structural analysis of the pronunciation, grammar, script and usage of the modern Japanese language. The prerequisites LINGUIST 100 or 103 may be taken in the first semester of enrolment in this course.

*Prerequisite: 175.106 or LINGUIST 100 or 103*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 231 and 232, or 239*

*Restriction: 230.205*

*To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 222 A and B*

**JAPANESE 231 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Japanese I**

A continuation of JAPANESE 131.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 131 or school approval required*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 230 or 239*

**JAPANESE 232 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Japanese II**

A continuation of JAPANESE 231.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 231 or school approval required*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 230 or 239*

**JAPANESE 239A (1 Point)**

**JAPANESE 239B (1 Point)**

**Japanese for Business**

Develops oral-aural proficiency and applied writing skills within a business context.

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 131 or School approval required*  
*Restriction: 230.213, JAPANESE 230*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 239 A and B

**JAPANESE 240 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Japanese Literature**

Major works of Japanese literature, both classical and modern, will be read either in the original or in a retold version in modern Japanese. These works will range from the Kojiki, compiled in 712, to post-war literature. Critical study of literature and culture will be an important part of the course.

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 231 and 232, or 239*

**JAPANESE 270 (2 Points)**

**Japanese Culture and Society: Introduction**

Introduces representative texts on major facets of contemporary Japanese society, dealing with changing social and political patterns, family, education, work and leisure, Japan's self-perception, and its role in the world. Japanese texts will be used, alongside English secondary literature.

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 231 and 232, or 239*

**JAPANESE 277 (2 Points)**

**Japanese Study Abroad IIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**JAPANESE 278 (2 Points)**

**Japanese Study Abroad IIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 277 and School approval required*

**Stage III**

*By special permission of the Head of School, prerequisites at Stage III may be waived. A pass in JAPANESE 330 or 332 or 339 is required for a major in Japanese. Either JAPANESE 331 and 332, or JAPANESE 338 and 339, must be taken concurrently with any other Stage III Japanese course, unless they or JAPANESE 330 have already been passed. For any Stage III course in Japanese, 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including one of 230.200, 230.201, 230.211, JAPANESE 230 or 232 or 239 and excluding 230.206 are a prerequisite.*

**JAPANESE 307 (2 Points)**

**Classical Japanese Language and Literature**

Introduction to the classical Japanese language. Involves extensive readings of selected literary works from the classics in the original language.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 322 (2 Points)**

**Japanese Linguistics**

Linguistic analysis of Japanese and a study of some fundamental linguistic concepts.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including 230.205 or JAPANESE 222*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 324 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Japanese Linguistics**

A study of selected areas of Japanese language structure and usage.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including JAPANESE 222 or 270 or 230.205 or 230.285*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 331 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Japanese I**

A continuation of JAPANESE 232.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 150 and 6 points at Stage II including one of JAPANESE 230, 232 or 239*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 330, 338, or 339*

**JAPANESE 332 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Japanese II**

A continuation of JAPANESE 331.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 331*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 330, 338, or 339*

**JAPANESE 338 (2 Points)**

**Japanese for Business**

Builds on skills acquired in Stage II and will develop oral-aural proficiency within a business context.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 150 and 6 points at Stage II including one of JAPANESE 230, 232 or 239*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 330, 331, 332 or 339*

**JAPANESE 339 (2 Points)**

**Japanese for Business II**

Builds on the skills acquired in Stage II and will further develop oral-aural proficiency within a business context.

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 338*

*Restriction: JAPANESE 332*

**JAPANESE 341 (2 Points)**

**Modern Japanese Literature**

Includes pre-war literature.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 377 (2 Points)**

**Japanese Study Abroad IIIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**JAPANESE 378 (2 Points)**

**Japanese Study Abroad IIIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: JAPANESE 377 and School approval required*

**JAPANESE 381 (2 Points)**

**Japanese Culture and Society**

Examines some of the important ideas that underlie the Japanese culture and society. Through reading Japanese and English texts, looks at how Japanese writers/thinkers/people articulated various ideas. Areas of study may include religion, nationalism, modernity/tradition, feminism, democracy and postmodernism. The interrelationship between ideas and their social/political contexts will be emphasised.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including JAPANESE 270*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

**JAPANESE 385 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Japanese Culture and Society**

Introduces several specific topics in modern Japanese society and culture. Topics may include: media, gender, ethnicity, colonialism, national identity, performing arts and intellectual discourse. Readings are in Japanese and English.

*Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II in Japanese including JAPANESE 270*

*Corequisite: JAPANESE 331 and 332, or 338 and 339*

<b>JAPANESE 390</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<i>Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307</i>
<b>Media in Contemporary Japan</b>		
Analyses and discusses the influence of mass media in shaping Japan's contemporary urban society, making use of primary and secondary Japanese sources as well as secondary sources in English.		
<i>Prerequisite: 6 points at Stage II</i>		
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>		
<b>JAPANESE 704</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Language: Jookyuu Nihongo</b>		
Oral and written use of Japanese at an advanced level.		
<b>JAPANESE 705</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>Advanced Japanese Translation Practice</b>		
Available only to students enrolled in the Graduate Diploma in Translation Studies. Practical training in translation from English to Japanese and Japanese to English. Text categories include general, commercial, legal, and technical materials.		
<b>JAPANESE 710</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Japanese Research Methodology (Literature)</b>		
Overview of research materials and methodology as used in the field of Japanese literary research.		
<i>Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 711</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>Modern Prose and Fiction</b>		
Advanced readings of selected modern and contemporary works of an author or authors.		
<b>JAPANESE 712</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>Classical Prose and Fiction</b>		
Advanced readings of selected classical works of an author or authors.		
<i>Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 713</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>Japanese Poetry</b>		
Translation of and comments on representative works of Japanese poetry of all ages.		
<i>Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 716</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>Major Works of Modern Japanese Thinkers</b>		
A survey of aspects of modern (after 1868) Japanese thought, including mutual relationships between schools and thinkers.		
<b>JAPANESE 717</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>History of Japanese Literary Criticism</b>		
Translation of and comments on classical and modern texts dealing with understanding and evaluation of literary works.		
<i>Prerequisite: JAPANESE 307</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 720A</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 720B</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	
<b>Japanese Research Methodology (Linguistics)</b>		
Overview of research materials and methodology as used in the field of Japanese language research.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 720 A and B</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 721A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 721B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Introduction to Japanese Linguistics</b>		
An introduction to Japanese linguistics.		
<b>JAPANESE 722A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 722B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Special Topics in Japanese Linguistics</b>		
An examination of selected topics in Japanese linguistics.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 722 A and B</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 723A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 723B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Problems in Japanese Syntax</b>		
A seminar-based course where students present explanations of Japanese grammar incorporating explanations from various textbooks and research in Japanese linguistics.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 723 A and B</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 725A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 725B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Japanese Phonology and Morphology</b>		
Readings and original research in aspects of the phonology and morphology of Japanese, both standard and dialect.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 725 A and B</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 731</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>Approved Topic(s) in Culture or Literature</b>		
An examination of selected topic(s) in Japanese culture and/or literature.		
<b>JAPANESE 742</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>	
<b>Readings in Modern Japanese Intellectual History</b>		
Deals with such issues as modernity, national/cultural identity, race, gender and uniqueness.		
<b>JAPANESE 743</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Special Topic</b>		
<b>JAPANESE 744A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 744B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Special Topic</b>		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 744 A and B</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 745</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Research Essay</b>		
Supervised research on an approved topic.		
<b>JAPANESE 746A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 746B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Research Essay</b>		
Supervised research on an approved topic.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 746 A and B</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 747A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>JAPANESE 747B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Special Studies</b>		
Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.		
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 747 A and B</i>		
<b>JAPANESE 751</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	
<b>Teaching Japanese as a Foreign Language</b>		

Critical evaluation and development of teaching material for Japanese as a foreign language.

**JAPANESE 790A** (2 Points)

**JAPANESE 790B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 790 A and B

**JAPANESE 794A** (5 Points)

**JAPANESE 794B** (5 Points)

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 794 A and B

**JAPANESE 797A** (7 Points)

**JAPANESE 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in JAPANESE 797 A and B

**Korean**

**Stage I**

**KOREAN 100A** (2 Points)

**KOREAN 100B** (2 Points)

**Korean for Beginners**

Basic written and spoken skills in modern Korean. No previous knowledge is required. Through the practice of listening and reading basic Korean sentences, fundamental grammar and vocabulary are taught with the intention that students will be able to carry out basic conversation and comprehend simple Korean texts.

To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 100 A and B

**KOREAN 103** (2 Points)

**Korean Study Abroad IA**

A short (approximately 10-week) intensive language acquisition programme at the Yonsei University Korean Language Institute, Seoul, preceded by a series of preparatory lectures in Auckland during the second semester.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100*

*Restriction: 235.203*

**KOREAN 120** (2 Points)

**Korean Society and Culture**

With the aid of videos and slides, this course examines continuity and change in Korean values as reflected in literature, art, music, landscape, religion, festivals and other aspects of Korean society in general.

**KOREAN 121** (2 Points)

**Thought and Religion in Korea**

Examines the major philosophical traditions in Korea: Buddhism, Daoism, Confucianism, 'Neo-Confucianism', Christianity and others. The objectives of the course are to understand the basic tenets of these philosophical and religious traditions, analyse the interactions among them, and assess their impact on social, political and cultural developments.

**Stage II**

**KOREAN 200A** (1 Point)

**KOREAN 200B** (1 Point)

**Intermediate Korean A**

Aims to expand students' proficiency in Korean by introducing further points of grammar and their usage. This course serves as the base for oral and written language skills at an intermediate level.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100*

To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 200 A and B

**KOREAN 201A** (1 Point)

**KOREAN 201B** (1 Point)

**Intermediate Korean B**

Comprehension of written Korean. A wide range of vocabulary and approximately 100 basic hanja (Chinese characters) will be introduced. The improvement of accuracy and speed in reading comprehension will be emphasised.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100*

To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 201 A and B

**KOREAN 202A** (1 Point)

**KOREAN 202B** (1 Point)

**Intermediate Aural and Oral**

Oral and aural competence. Students will learn how to carry out daily life conversation in Korean using appropriate speech levels.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100*

To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 202 A and B

**KOREAN 204** (2 Points)

**Translation Into Modern Korean**

This course attempts to develop translation skills into Korean, while reviewing the major grammar points of the Korean language.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100*

**KOREAN 230** (2 Points)

**Traditional and Modern Korean Literature**

A survey in English of Korean literature from its beginning in myths to contemporary fiction. Particular attention will be given to the social and historical context of the literature, and to the life of the authors. Major classifications include oral literatures, literatures in Chinese, and classical and modern poetry and prose. Knowledge of Korean literature and history is not required.

*Restriction: 235.303*

**KOREAN 240** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 100*

**KOREAN 277** (2 Points)

**Korean Study Abroad IIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**KOREAN 278** (2 Points)

**Korean Study Abroad IIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 277 and School approval required*

**Stage III**

**KOREAN 300A** (1 Point)

**KOREAN 300B** (1 Point)

**Advanced Korean A**

Korean grammar at an advanced level. A continuation of KOREAN 200.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 200*

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 300 A and B*

**KOREAN 301A (1 Point)**

**KOREAN 301B (1 Point)**

**Advanced Korean B**

The continuation of KOREAN 201. It is designed to emphasise students' comprehension of Korean texts written for native speakers.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 201*

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 301 A and B*

**KOREAN 302A (1 Point)**

**KOREAN 302B (1 Point)**

**Advanced Aural and Oral Korean**

A continuation of KOREAN 202, reinforcing the oral and aural skills which students have practised during the previous two years. Students will study Korean ways of thinking and addressing others through Korean proverbs, customs and manners. Job and personal interviews, and discussions on the Korean way of living, economy and environment will be emphasised. By the end of the year, students are expected to carry out discussions on issues related to Korea and daily conversation in Korean.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 202*

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 302 A and B*

**KOREAN 304 (2 Points)**

**Translation from and into Modern Korean**

Translation from newspaper articles and a variety of other sources covering the society, geography, culture, economy, literature and daily life of Korea.

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 200 and 201*

**KOREAN 340 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 200*

**KOREAN 377 (2 Points)**

**Korean Study Abroad IIIA**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: School approval required*

**KOREAN 378 (2 Points)**

**Korean Study Abroad IIIB**

*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*

*Prerequisite: KOREAN 377 and School approval required*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**KOREAN 700 (2 Points)**

**Korean Language Skills A**

A rounding off of the undergraduate language programme with emphasis on written language skills. Articles on Korean culture in both media and original sources covering daily life, history, geography, literature and economy will be used.

**KOREAN 701 (2 Points)**

**Korean Language Skills B**

Advanced level study of modern Korean language employing comprehension, conversation, discussion and presentation. The materials covering general features and issues in contemporary Korean society will be used especially with the aim of enhancing spoken language skills.

**KOREAN 708 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.

**KOREAN 709 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School

**KOREAN 710A (2 Points)**

**KOREAN 710B (2 Points)**

**Special Studies**

Supervised study on a topic approved by the Head of School.

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 710 A and B*

**KOREAN 730A (2 Points)**

**KOREAN 730B (2 Points)**

**Modern Korean Literature**

This focuses on the selected readings in modern Korean literature from the early years of the twentieth century to the present day. Particular attention will be paid to the social and historical context of the literature, and to the life of the authors. Major periods include enlightenment, colonial, and division. Fiction is emphasised and the works of women - early and contemporary - are included. Both lectures and discussions are employed.

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 730 A and B*

**KOREAN 797A (7 Points)**

**KOREAN 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in KOREAN 797 A and B*

**Languages and Literature**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**LANGLIT 797A (7 Points)**

**LANGLIT 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGLIT 797 A and B*

**Language Study Abroad**

*The Language Study Abroad courses are intended to permit students to take advantage of opportunities for formal language study in an approved overseas institution where instruction is in a language other than English. Supplementary study at the University of Auckland may be required as part of these courses.*

*Students taking one of these courses should enrol prior to undertaking the overseas study, and enrolment is subject to approval of the planned overseas study by the Head of Department or School for the language subject concerned. A final grade for any of the courses will be based on formal assessment of achievement in the language concerned, together with any other work required by the Head of Department or School.*

*The courses available for Language Study Abroad are listed under the following subjects: Chinese, Dutch, French, German, Indonesian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Russian, Scandinavian Studies, Spanish.*

---

**Language Teaching and Learning**


---

**Stage II****LANGTCHG 202 (2 Points)****Introductory English Language Analysis for TEFL**

Introduces key concepts of phonology, grammar and vocabulary of English and develops an understanding of how they function as systems in written and spoken English. Develops the skills needed to formally analyse the phonological, lexical and grammatical systems of English. Illustrates how linguistic descriptions can be applied in language teaching.

*Prerequisite: At least 4 points passed or approval of Programme Coordinator*

---

**Stage III****LANGTCHG 300 (2 Points)****Introduction to English Language Teaching**

A general introduction to English language teaching. This course requires students to undertake a study of current theory and practice relating to the teaching of the knowledge systems of English and of language skills. It also familiarises students with current language teaching resources.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II or above or Departmental approval required*

**LANGTCHG 301 (2 Points)****Introduction to TEFL Curriculum**

Introduces principles and procedures used in course design and to evaluate TEFL courses, coursebooks and materials. Develops a practical understanding of how to set about planning an EFL curriculum.

*Prerequisite: LANGTCHG 202 or approval of Programme Coordinator*

**LANGTCHG 302 (2 Points)****English Language Teaching Practicum**

Affords practical experience of classrooms where English is taught to second language learners by means of guided observation tasks. Also offers students the opportunity to plan and teach one or two lessons.

*Prerequisite: LANGTCHG 202 and 300 or approval of Programme Coordinator*

---

**Postgraduate Diploma and Master's Courses****LANGTCHG 704 (2 Points)****Language Assessment**

Introduces students to some fundamental issues and debates in the field of second language testing and assessment, to familiarise them with different assessment options and to develop skills in devising their own assessment procedures.

**LANGTCHG 705 (2 Points)****Teaching English as an International Language**

A study of the impact and implications of English language teaching world-wide.

**LANGTCHG 706 (2 Points)****Grammar for Teachers**

A study of key features of the grammar of spoken and written English from a pedagogical perspective with the focus on consciousness raising in second/foreign language teachers.

**LANGTCHG 707 (2 Points)****Phonology for Teachers**

A study of key features of English phonology from a pedagogical perspective, systematic analysis and evaluation of the phonology content in language teaching resources, and the implications for teaching.

**LANGTCHG 709 (2 Points)****Bilingualism and Bilingual Education**

Develops an understanding of important aspects of both individual and societal bilingualism which is used to analyse issues in education, assessment and policy contexts.

**LANGTCHG 710 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LANGTCHG 711 (2 Points)****Individual Differences in Second Language Acquisition**

An examination of research investigating individual differences in Second Language Acquisition; familiarising students with instruments for collecting data on factors contributing to individual differences, enabling students to design an empirical study of individual learner differences.

**LANGTCHG 712 (2 Points)****Vocabulary for Teachers**

A study of English vocabulary from a pedagogical perspective with the focus on consciousness raising in second/foreign language teachers and with special reference to dictionaries for advanced learners.

**LANGTCHG 713 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LANGTCHG 714 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LANGTCHG 715 (2 Points)****Second Language Literacy**

Provides an introduction to the study of second language literacy. Considers different ways of defining literacy, from the narrowly psycholinguistic to the broadly social or sociocultural and the implications of these definitions for second language pedagogy. Topics to be covered include: the nature, function and uses of reading and writing; literacy practices at home and at school; the relationship between first and second language literacy; cross-cultural differences in literacy conventions; literacy programmes and policies and literacy assessment.

**LANGTCHG 720 (2 Points)****Language Analysis for Teachers**

A study of fundamental concepts of phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary, including methods of analysis and procedures for selecting features to teach.

**LANGTCHG 721 (2 Points)****Discourse Analysis for Teachers**

A study of fundamental concepts and approaches for analysing characteristics and functions of spoken and written discourse; and applications of discourse analysis to language teaching.

**LANGTCHG 722 (2 Points)****Learner Language**

A study of learner language, including an introduction to the methods used to analyse learner language (e.g. error analysis, performance analysis, and form-function analysis) and a review of empirical research that has used these methods, and its pedagogical relevance.

**LANGTCHG 723 (2 Points)**

**Theories of Language Learning**

Builds on LANGTCHG 722 which is a prerequisite for this course. A critical examination of theories of second language learning grounded in linguistics, psycholinguistics, sociolinguistics and education, identifying commonalities and differences in the theories, and considering their pedagogical implications.

*Prerequisite: LANGTCHG 722*

**LANGTCHG 724 (2 Points)**

**Second Language Teaching Methodology**

An overview of principles and procedures in language teaching methodology with particular reference to course design for the teaching of second language reading, writing, listening and speaking.

**LANGTCHG 726 (2 Points)**

**Materials Development and Evaluation**

A critical examination of current language teaching materials in the light of research into second language learning and teaching, a focus on the process of developing materials, and the study of methods for carrying out prospective and retrospective evaluations of materials and courses. Students will also have the opportunity to develop their own materials for a specific teaching context.

**LANGTCHG 727 (2 Points)**

**Action Research for Language Teachers**

A study of principles and methods of action research. Students will be required to design and carry out an action research study on some aspect of their own teaching, and to write a report of the study undertaken.

**LANGTCHG 728 (2 Points)**

**Second Language Classroom Research**

A review of second language classroom research that examines such topics as teacher-talk, classroom interaction, learner participation, and form-focused instruction. The focus is on the ability to evaluate the published research and to design and carry out a small-scale classroom study.

**LANGTCHG 729 (2 Points)**

**Practicum in Second/Foreign Language Teaching**

An opportunity for students to obtain practical experience of language teaching by carrying out a series of guided observation tasks in a second/foreign language classroom and by planning, teaching and evaluating a number of lessons in the same classroom.

**LANGTCHG 730 (2 Points)**

**Applied Linguistics and Language Pedagogy**

A review of the key topics and issues in linguistics, sociolinguistics and psycholinguistics (including language acquisition) as these relate to language pedagogy. The purpose of this review is to establish connections between theory and research on the

one hand and the practice of language pedagogy on the other.

**LANGTCHG 790A (2 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 790 A and B*

**LANGTCHG 792A (3 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 792 A and B*

**LANGTCHG 794A (5 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 794 A and B*

**LANGTCHG 797A (7 Points)**

**LANGTCHG 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LANGTCHG 797 A and B*

**Latin**

**Stage I**

**LATIN 100 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Latin Language A**

An introduction to the vocabulary and the grammar of simple sentences in Latin.

**LATIN 101 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Latin Language B**

An advancing beginner's course in vocabulary and in the grammar of complex sentences in Latin.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 100 or Departmental approval required*

**Stage II**

**LATIN 200 (2 Points)**

**Latin Language Acquisition: Intermediate**

The analysis and description of Latin grammar, practice in the translation of Latin to and from English, vocabulary acquisition.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required*

**LATIN 201 (2 Points)**

**Latin Literary Texts IIA**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required*

**LATIN 202 (2 Points)**

**Latin Literary Texts IIB**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required*

**LATIN 203 (2 Points)**

**Latin Literary Texts IIC**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical

appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required*

**LATIN 204 (2 Points)**

**Latin Literary Texts IID**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required*

**LATIN 205 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: LATIN 101 or Departmental approval required*

**Stage III**

**LATIN 300 (2 Points)**

**Latin Language Acquisition: Advanced**

The structure and use of the Latin language including the use of non-classical Latin.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 200 and either LATIN 201 or 202*

**LATIN 301 (2 Points)**

**Latin Literary Texts IIIA**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 200 and either LATIN 201 or 202*

**LATIN 302 (2 Points)**

**Latin Literary Texts IIIB**

Detailed study of prescribed texts with reference to their language and meaning, and critical appreciation of their literary, historical and/or philosophical qualities.

*Prerequisite: LATIN 200 and either LATIN 201 or 202*

**LATIN 305 (2 Points)**

**Latin Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: LATIN 300, 301 and 302*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**LATIN 700A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 700B (2 Points)**

**Unprepared Latin Translation**

Passages of Latin will be set for translation into English.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 700 A and B*

**LATIN 701A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 701B (2 Points)**

**Latin Language Study**

Any or all of the following: translation into Latin, grammatical, syntactical and stylistic analysis of passages of Latin prose and/or verse.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 701 A and B*

**LATIN 702A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 702B (2 Points)**

**Latin Poetry I**

Entire works or selected passages of Latin poetry will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 702 A and B*

**LATIN 703A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 703B (2 Points)**

**Latin Prose Authors I**

Entire works or selected passages of Latin prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 703 A and B*

**LATIN 704A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 704B (2 Points)**

**Latin Language Topic**

Passages of Latin will be set for translation and linguistic analysis.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 704 A and B*

**LATIN 705A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 705B (2 Points)**

**Latin Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 705 A and B*

**LATIN 706A (1 Point)**

**LATIN 706B (1 Point)**

**Research Essays in Latin**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 706 A and B*

**LATIN 712A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 712B (2 Points)**

**Latin Poetry II**

Entire works or selected passages of Latin poetry will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 712 A and B*

**LATIN 713A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 713B (2 Points)**

**Latin Prose Authors II**

Entire works or selected passages of Latin prose writing will be set for translation and explanation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 713 A and B*

**LATIN 790A (2 Points)**

**LATIN 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 790 A and B*

**LATIN 797A (7 Points)**

**LATIN 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LATIN 797 A and B*

**Latin American Studies**

**Stage II**

**LATINAM 200 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103*

**LATINAM 201 (2 Points)**

**Latin American History and Culture Through Film**

A journey through five moments of Latin American history and culture, from its creation as a region

imagined through the gaze of colonialism, through to the contemporary era when 'subaltern' groups take charge of the camera, and produce an independent, revolutionary Third Cinema.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 103*  
*Restriction: LATINAM 100*

### Stage III

**LATINAM 301** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic

*Prerequisite: LATINAM 201; HISTORY 231 or POLITICS 234; and SPANISH 211 or 213 or 216*

### Linguistics

*LINGUIST 100 or 103, 200, 201 and 300 are required for a major in Linguistics.*

### Stage I

**LINGUIST 100** (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Linguistics

An introduction to the main areas of linguistics: the production and function of sounds in language (phonetics and phonology), word structure and formation (morphology), the principles of grammar through a study of sentence structure (syntax), and various aspects of meaning (semantics). The course is a self-contained introduction, and assumes no prior knowledge of linguistics or language study.

*Restriction: 175.106, LINGUIST 103*

**LINGUIST 101** (2 Points)

#### Language, Mind and Society

A survey of the interactions between language and other areas of human behaviour. Students will study the interaction between language structure and use on the one hand, and social structure and social norms on the other (sociolinguistics), the relationship between linguistic knowledge and cultural knowledge (anthropological linguistics), and the interrelationship of language and cognitive structures as revealed through language acquisition (psycholinguistics).

**LINGUIST 102** (2 Points)

#### Languages of the Pacific

An introduction to the linguistics of the Pacific Islands (Melanesia, Micronesia, and Polynesia), Australia, and New Guinea. The areas covered include: principles of historical change, the social use of language, oral literature and the organisation of linguistic systems of sound, meaning, and grammar. Pidgins and Creoles are explored, as is the interaction of language with cultural institutions and conceptual systems.

**LINGUIST 103** (2 Points)

#### Introduction to English Linguistics

An introduction to the core areas of language study. Topics include: how sounds are produced, the basic structure of the English sound system, primary word formation processes in English, the rules for English sentence structure and the fundamentals of word meaning. This course serves as an entry point into Stage II Linguistics, and provides an excellent background for students studying languages including English.

*Restriction: 175.106, LINGUIST 100*

### Stage II

**LINGUIST 200** (2 Points)

#### Syntax and Semantics

Continues on from LINGUIST 100 or 103 or 175.106 and consists of a formal and a functional part, providing problems and exercises in syntactic analysis, as well as an introduction to grammatical theories and types of grammatical systems.

*Prerequisite: 175.106 or LINGUIST 100 or 103*

**LINGUIST 201** (2 Points)

#### Phonology and Morphology

Continues on from LINGUIST 100 or 103 or 175.106: the study of sound systems and the structure of words; problems of analysis in phonology and morphology.

*Prerequisite: 175.106 or LINGUIST 100 or 103*

**LINGUIST 202** (2 Points)

#### Language Change

Introduces long-term historical trends, types of language change, language families and comparative reconstruction.

*Prerequisite: 175.106 LINGUIST 100 or 103*

*Restriction: LINGUIST 308*

**LINGUIST 203** (2 Points)

#### Applied English Grammar

Covers the form and functions of basic sentence types in English, with special attention to the relationship between grammatical structure and meaning; foregrounding and backgrounding in information structure; the role and relationship of tense and aspect; voice; and the English determiner system and its pragmatic functions. Students will be shown how to distinguish standard and non-standard varieties of written English, and how to judge if written sentences are effective, appropriate and grammatical.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points passed*

**LINGUIST 205** (2 Points)

#### Language and Identity in Aotearoa

Focuses on how New Zealanders use their language/s to reflect multiple aspects of their identities. Covers language use among Pakeha, Maori and Pasifika peoples, as well as language use of recent Asian immigrants.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I*

### Stage III

**LINGUIST 300** (2 Points)

#### Syntactic Theory

A continuation of LINGUIST 200.

*Prerequisite: LINGUIST 200*

**LINGUIST 301** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Phonology and Morphology

A continuation of LINGUIST 201

*Prerequisite: LINGUIST 201*

**LINGUIST 302** (2 Points)

#### Semantics and Pragmatics

An examination of the key areas of semantics and pragmatics, including lexical relations, categorisation, speech act theory, and conversational implicature.

*Prerequisite: LINGUIST 100 or 103 or 175.106*

- LINGUIST 303** (2 Points)  
**Conversational Analysis**  
 The organisation of conversation as an interactive activity.  
*Prerequisite:* 175.208 or ENGLISH 201 or LINGUIST 200 or 202
- LINGUIST 305** (2 Points)  
**Acquisition of Language**  
 A critical survey of recent theories of first and second language acquisition, research into language acquisition, and the relevance of language acquisition to theoretical linguistics.  
*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 200 or 201
- LINGUIST 306** (2 Points)  
**Polynesian Comparative Linguistics**  
 Comparative and historical study of the sound systems, grammar, and vocabulary of the Polynesian languages.  
*Prerequisite:* 260.205 or LINGUIST 202 or MAORI 201 or SAMOAN 201 or 202
- LINGUIST 307** (2 Points)  
**The English Language World-wide**  
 An overview of issues as they relate to the use of English in the world today. Topics include: the roles of American and British English, attitudes toward varieties of English, the development of new Englishes and English-based pidgins and creoles, and the notion of a 'standard' variety of English.  
*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Linguistics  
*Restriction:* 175.208 or LINGUIST 204
- LINGUIST 308** (2 Points)  
**Language Change**  
 Introduces long-term historical trends, types of language change, language families and comparative reconstruction.  
*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 200 and 201  
*Restriction:* LINGUIST 202
- LINGUIST 309** (2 Points)  
**Language and Philosophy**  
*Prerequisite:* Permission of the Programme Coordinator
- LINGUIST 310** (2 Points)
- LINGUIST 310A** (1 Point)  
**LINGUIST 310B** (1 Point)  
**Linguistics Essays Course**  
 Students undertake supervised research which will be presented in essay form without a final examination.  
*Prerequisite:* Permission of the Head of Department  
 To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 310 A and B, or LINGUIST 310
- LINGUIST 320** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite:* Permission of the Head of Department
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- LINGUIST 707** (4 Points)  
**Field Methods**  
 Description and analysis of an unfamiliar language, based on data collected by the students. The class meets weekly with a speaker of that language, and data is collected through elicitation and texts. Students analyse the phonetics/phonology of the language and a selected area of the grammar.
- LINGUIST 708A** (2 Points)  
**LINGUIST 708B** (2 Points)  
**Directed Study for MA**  
 A directed reading and individual study course designed in consultation with appropriate staff according to the field of research. (This course is not available for the BA(Hons).)  
 To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 708 A and B
- LINGUIST 709** (2 Points)  
**Linguistic Research**  
 An introduction to research methods and practices for graduate students in Linguistics. All graduate students, both BA(Hons) and MA, will be required to take this course.
- LINGUIST 720** (2 Points)  
**Syntax: Functional-typological Approaches**  
 Cross-linguistic discussion of selected topics, such as grammatical relations, transitivity, passives, ergativity and hierarchies.  
*Restriction:* 255.700
- LINGUIST 721** (2 Points)  
**Formal Syntax**  
 Formal theories of syntax and grammar, meta-theory, and topics of current interest to linguists working in formal syntax frameworks. Readings will be assigned in class.  
*Restriction:* 255.700
- LINGUIST 722** (2 Points)  
**Phonology**  
 Theories of Phonology; topics of current interest.  
*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 301  
*Restriction:* 255.701
- LINGUIST 724** (2 Points)  
**Semantics and Pragmatics**  
 An advanced course in semantics and pragmatics.  
*Prerequisite:* LINGUIST 302  
*Restriction:* 255.702
- LINGUIST 726** (2 Points)  
**Language Contact**  
 This course deals with ways in which languages may influence each other through the historical interactions of their speakers. The main points of reference are the syntheses of Weinreich (1953) and Thomason and Kaufman (1988).  
*Restriction:* 255.703
- LINGUIST 727** (2 Points)  
**Pidgins, Creoles and Mixed Languages**  
 This course deals with a range of language types which are extreme results of language contact situations and stand somewhat apart from the normal process of native-speaker language transmission. Topics will include: the universalist versus substratist debate on creoles, and the question of an appropriate typology for these languages.  
*Restriction:* 255.703
- LINGUIST 728** (2 Points)  
**Variationist Sociolinguistics**  
 Provides an overview of the development of variationist research and the major studies in the field. Focuses on the relationship between language

and age, gender, ethnicity, social class and social networks.

*Restriction: 255.704*

**LINGUIST 729 (2 Points)**

**Interactional Sociolinguistics**

Combines the perspectives of sociolinguistics with those of discourse analysis. Sociolinguistic questions about the nature of the relationship between language, social identity, and the social situation are approached through an examination of the dynamic processes of talk itself, and through an ethnographic analysis of interactional data.

*Restriction: 255.704*

**LINGUIST 730 (2 Points)**

**Discourse and Grammar**

This course deals with language beyond the sentence. The analysis will focus on the ways in which the demands of actual language use (both written and spoken) influence the distribution and form of linguistic constructions.

*Restriction: 255.705*

**LINGUIST 731 (2 Points)**

**Historical Linguistics**

An advanced course in historical linguistics.

*Restriction: 255.706*

**LINGUIST 733 (2 Points)**

**Readings in the History of Linguistic Theory**

A study of selected seminal courses in the history of linguistic theory. Through the reading of these courses and subsequent discussion thereof, students will develop the ability to differentiate between those theoretical developments which expand the field of discourse and those which, although of interest, ultimately lead nowhere.

*Restriction: 255.710*

**LINGUIST 734 (2 Points)**

**Lexicography of English**

A study of the principles and practices of dictionary-making, illustrated by different types of English-language dictionaries for native-speaker users, especially general-purpose monolingual dictionaries (GMDs) in one volume. Readings will be assigned.

*Restriction: 255.711, LANGTCHG 712*

**LINGUIST 735 (2 Points)**

**Pedagogical Lexicography of English**

A study of the principles and practices of pedagogical lexicography, illustrated by general-purpose monolingual learners' dictionaries (MLDs), especially for advanced learners of English as a second/foreign language, and with reference to workbooks and worksheets for dictionary use. Readings will be assigned.

*Restriction: 255.711, LANGTCHG 712*

**LINGUIST 740 (2 Points)**

**Directed Study**

A directed reading and individual study course designed in consultation with appropriate staff according to the field of research.

**LINGUIST 741 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LINGUIST 742 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LINGUIST 790 (4 Points)**

**LINGUIST 790A (2 Points)**

**LINGUIST 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

A topic in Linguistics to be selected in consultation with staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 790 A and B, or LINGUIST 790*

**LINGUIST 794A (5 Points)**

**LINGUIST 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis**

A topic in Linguistics to be selected in consultation with staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 794 A and B*

**LINGUIST 797A (7 Points)**

**LINGUIST 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LINGUIST 797 A and B*

---

**Logic and Computation**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**LOGICOMP 701 (2 Points)**

**Directed Studies**

Supervised research studies in an area of logic and computation.

**LOGICOMP 702 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**LOGICOMP 780 (4 Points)**

**LOGICOMP 780A (2 Points)**

**LOGICOMP 780B (2 Points)**

**Honours Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LOGICOMP 780 A and B, or LOGICOMP 780*

**LOGICOMP 796A (7 Points)**

**LOGICOMP 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in LOGICOMP 796 A and B*

---

**Maori Studies**

**Stage I**

**MAORI 101 (2 Points)**

**Beginners Structure I**

Provides students with basic skills in writing and understanding simple sentences in Maori.

*Restriction: 260.105, MAORI 106*

**MAORI 103 (2 Points)**

**Reo Timata-Kōrero: Oral I**

An introduction, for students who have no background in the Maori language, to basic skills in listening, speaking and writing Maori.

*Restriction: 260.102, MAORI 106*

**MAORI 104 (2 Points)**

**Reo Timata-Kōrero: Oral II**

Further development of the basic language skills taught in MAORI 103.

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 103 or Departmental approval required

*Restriction:* 260.102, MAORI-106

**MAORI 105 (2 Points)**

**Wetereo: Essential Structure**

Students who speak Maori will study the grammatical rules that underlie their competence. This course is intended for students with a good command of Maori.

*Restriction:* 260.102, MAORI 101

**MAORI 106 (2 Points)**

**Reo Tuatahi-Kōrero I**

The development of skills in speaking, writing and hearing language. This course is intended for students with a good command of Maori.

*Restriction:* 260.102, MAORI 101, 103

**MAORI 130 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Maori Society**

An introduction to the study of Maori society and culture both traditional and contemporary.

**MAORI 190 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**MAORI 191 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

**Stage II**

**MAORI 201 (2 Points)**

**Intermediate Structure II**

Students will be introduced to techniques and practice in translation and a structure component following on from MAORI 101.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 101 or 105

*Restriction:* 260.205, MAORI 206

**MAORI 203 (2 Points)**

**Reo Timata-Kōrero: Oral II**

Continuing the development of language skills that will facilitate students' own communicative ability.

*Prerequisite:* 260.102 or MAORI 103

*Restriction:* 260.202 or MAORI 206

**MAORI 204 (2 Points)**

**Reo Timata-Kōrero: Oral IIB**

Further development of students' fluency and communicative competence.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 203

*Restriction:* MAORI 106 and 206

**MAORI 206 (2 Points)**

**Reo Tuarua-Kōrero: II**

Further development of listening and oral skills.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 106

*Restriction:* 260.202, MAORI 201

**MAORI 210 (2 Points)**

**Ngā Kōrero Tuku Iho: Oral Literature**

Translation and study of selected texts of the oral literature.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from: 260.102, MAORI 101, 103, 105, 106

**MAORI 230 (2 Points)**

**The Ancient Maori World/Maori and Pakeha Perspectives**

Analyses traditional Maori society and examines the social, political and economic impact of European colonisation upon Maori culture.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 130

**MAORI 240 (2 Points)**

**Te Kete Aronui**

Focuses on knowledge recovery of past traditions and practices relating to Maori material culture with a strong emphasis on developing practical skills.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 130 or ARTHIST 102 or Departmental approval required

**MAORI 291 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 130

**MAORI 292 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 130

**Stage III**

**MAORI 301 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Structure III**

Continued study of grammar and translation of selected texts.

*Prerequisite:* 260.205 or MAORI 201

**MAORI 302 (2 Points)**

**Reo Tuatoru-Kōrero: Oral III**

Expansion of language ability and competence, furthering the development of conversational and compositional skills.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from: 260.202, MAORI, 203, 206

**MAORI 310 (2 Points)**

**Ngā Kōrero o Mua: Traditional Narratives**

Translation and study of selected texts from the oral literature.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from: 260.202, 260.205, MAORI 201, 203, 206

**MAORI 311 (2 Points)**

**Whaikōrero**

The language of oratory.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 206 or Departmental approval required

**MAORI 312 (2 Points)**

**Ngā Mōteatea: Maori Poetry and Song**

A study of selected traditional song texts, their musical and literary form, and the traditional circumstances of their composition.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from: 260.202, 260.205, MAORI 201, 203, 206

**MAORI 313 (2 Points)**

**Ngā Wānanga**

Ka tiroirohia etahi o nga tuhituhi o mua e pa ana ki nga wananga, ki nga tikanga o nehera. Writings relating to past wananga and lore of former times will be examined.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 206

**MAORI 320 (2 Points)**

**Matauranga Maori: Maori Knowledge**

Explores the various facets of Maori knowledge including: traditional Maori narratives (kōrero), genealogy (whakapapa), traditional songs (waiata), proverbs (whakatauki), prophetic sayings (kupu whakāri) and carving (whakairo). The aim is to help develop an understanding of the Maori way of knowing and the Maori way of seeing the world.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points from: 260.202, 260.205, MAORI 201, 203, 206

**MAORI 330 (2 Points)****Maori Governance and Government**

Issues and themes of contemporary relevance to Maori society, including human, civil and cultural rights, sovereignty and autonomy, unity and diversity, tradition and change, in an otherwise hegemonic political environment.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Maori Studies or 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*

**MAORI 331 (2 Points)****Te Hunga Noho Tāone: Urban Maori**

A course that will closely examine a range of issues relating to the lives of urban Maori.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Maori Studies*  
*Restriction: 260.391*

**MAORI 332 (2 Points)****Ngā Mahi Iritakiwa: Maori and the Media**

Exploring the location of Maori within the media.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Maori Studies or FTVMS 200*  
*Restriction: 260.392*

**MAORI 335 (2 Points)****Maori Affairs and Public Policy**

Examines public policy, economic and social changes in contemporary Aotearoa/New Zealand as they affect Maori.

*Prerequisite: POLITICS 229 or 4 points at Stage II in Maori Studies or 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*

**MAORI 340 (2 Points)****Te Whare Pora**

Research and teaching of practical skills to extend students' knowledge of tukutuku, raranga, whatu, taniko, feather attachment and dyeing techniques. Students are expected to attend a field-school.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 240 or Departmental approval required*

**MAORI 341 (2 Points)****Whakairo: Maori Carving**

Tikanga and the practical component of Whakairo.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Maori Studies or Departmental approval required*

**MAORI 342 (2 Points)****Te Ao Kōhatu**

Recovery of knowledge relating to traditions of stone, bone, wood, shell and fibre use by Maori.

*Prerequisite: MAORI 240 or Departmental approval required*

**MAORI 360 (2 Points)****Te Kaupapa Wāhine Maori**

An introduction to an understanding of the traditional and contemporary knowledge relevant to Maori women.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Maori Studies or Women's Studies or Departmental approval required*

**MAORI 393 (2 Points)****Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Maori Studies*

**MAORI 394 (2 Points)****Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage II in Maori Studies*

**Honours and Master's Courses****MAORI 700 (4 Points)****Reo Māori: Topic in Maori Language**

An examination of developments in Maori and Polynesian grammar over the past 30 years.

**MAORI 710 (4 Points)****Nga Tuhituhi Māori: Maori Manuscripts**

Translation and analysis of nineteenth century Maori manuscripts.

**MAORI 711 (4 Points)****Ngā Kōrero Tuku Iho: Maori Oral Literature**

Translation to English and analysis of texts derived from the oral tradition.

**MAORI 712 (4 Points)****Whakareo Kē: Translation of Maori Literature**

Intensive practice in the translation of a variety of texts.

**MAORI 713 (4 Points)****Te Reo Tuku Iho**

Advanced Maori language acquisition.

**MAORI 720 (4 Points)****Tikanga Māori**

A study of Maori customs and social practices.

**MAORI 721 (4 Points)****Tikanga Wāhine**

An examination of tikanga, ancestral rituals and practices, and the power bases of Maori women.

**MAORI 731 (4 Points)****Ahua Māori: Maori Ethnicity**

A study of selected aspects of Maori social and cultural life relevant to the maintenance of a Maori identity.

**MAORI 732 (4 Points)****Rangatiratanga: Politics of Culture**

A study of a theoretical framework for the analysis of cultural politics between Maori and Pakeha.

**MAORI 733 (4 Points)****Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic****MAORI 740 (4 Points)****Kaupapa Hōu: Te Ao Māori: Special Topic****MAORI 741A (2 Points)****MAORI 741B (2 Points)****Ngā Taonga Hanga: Material Culture**

An extension of skills and research methods in material culture.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 741 A and B*

**MAORI 742 (2 Points)****Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic****MAORI 743 (4 Points)****The Politics of Maori and Public Policy**

An examination of public policy and administration development strategies as they affect Maori.

**MAORI 744 (4 Points)****Kaupapa Hōu: Special Topic****MAORI 745 (4 Points)****Maori Cultural Heritage**

Against a cross-cultural and international backdrop, this course aims to explore the multi-stranded fabric of Maori Cultural Heritage; the growing appreciation of its contribution to New Zealand's heritage overall and the changes that have and/or need to occur in order that future generations succeed to a heritage of which they can be proud.

**MAORI 785** (6 Points)

**MAORI 785A** (3 Points)

**MAORI 785B** (3 Points)

**Honours Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 785 A and B, or MAORI 785

**MAORI 792A** (3 Points)

**MAORI 792B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 792 A and B

**MAORI 796A** (7 Points)

**MAORI 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

To complete this course student must enrol in MAORI 796 A and B

**MAORI 797A** (7 Points)

**MAORI 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in MAORI 797 A and B

## Medieval and Early Modern European Studies

### Honours and Master's Courses

**MEDEMS 700** (2 Points)

**Creating the Past**

A study of the various ways in which the European past has been represented and imagined, and the impact of these representations on the scholarly project of accurate knowledge of the past. Topics will include: the creation of the Middle Ages in the Renaissance and in the Romantic movements, historical approaches to the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, the Middle Ages and contemporary fantasy.

**MEDEMS 780A** (2 Points)

**MEDEMS 780B** (2 Points)

**Honours Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDEMS 780 A and B

**MEDEMS 796A** (7 Points)

**MEDEMS 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDEMS 796 A and B

**MEDEMS 797** (7 Points)

**MEDEMS 797** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDEMS 797 A and B

## Music Education

### Stage I

**MUSED 160** (2 Points)

**Foundations of Music Education**

A conceptual and practical foundation for ongoing work in music education. A survey of the field, the role of the music educator and the meaning and function of music in society. School and other pedagogical contexts are explored. Students are asked to critically reflect on their own musicianship and musical experiences.

**MUSED 164A** (2 Points)

**MUSED 164B** (2 Points)

**Practical Studies in Musicianship**

Students will have the chance to explore music, both at their own level, and in practical applications for schools and the community. Weekly lessons on chosen instrument or voice. Group experience offered from the following: singing, percussion, music technology, improvisation and guitar. Performing in University music groups is encouraged. For BMusEd students only.

Restriction: MUSIC 164

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSED 164 A and B

### Stage II

**MUSED 260** (2 Points)

**Critical Studies in Music Education**

A critical examination of issues and concepts related to the learning and teaching of music. Maori music education, music from a cultural studies perspective, and music in the postmodern condition. The impact of music technologies on education and the preparation of curriculum materials within the framework of the New Zealand Arts Curriculum. Practical considerations in relation to these theories.

Prerequisite: MUSED 160

Restriction: MUSIC 260

**MUSED 264A** (2 Points)

**MUSED 264B** (2 Points)

**Musicianship, Ensembles and Choirs**

The continued development of musicianship skills for teachers including sight singing and aural. Practical work in singing and instrumental groups. Examination of practical leadership, the development of group performance and composition in schools. School and community group observations. Students with MUSED 160 only must demonstrate musical competence. Students should consult the music education coordinator before enrolling in MUSED 264.

Prerequisite: MUSIC 164 or MUSED 160

Restriction: MUSIC 264

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSED 264 A and B

**MUSED 267** (2 Points)

**Contemporary Keyboard Styles**

A survey of piano and keyboard styles recognised in recent times including jazz, pop, gospel, blues and rock. Case studies of jazz pianists. An educational perspective is taken, outlining approaches to teaching these keyboard styles and the development of keyboard improvisation. Some self-directed practical work is required.

Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in MUSIC and/or MUSED courses.

**Stage III****MUSED 360 (2 Points)****Music Education Research**

Current research in the fields of social psychology and the philosophy of music education and an introduction to music education research methodologies. Students undertake their own fieldwork in schools and the community, in which this knowledge is applied.

*Prerequisite:* MUSED 260, MUSIC 260

*Restriction:* MUSIC 360

**MUSED 366 (2 Points)****Performance Practices and Analysis in Music Education**

Provides students with an opportunity to develop experience in a selected group of musical genres and practices in a school context. Contemporary, Maori and Pacific music are examined along with the formation of active performance groups. Students arrange and lead their own performance project using music technology where applicable.

*Prerequisite:* MUSED 264, MUSIC 264

*Restriction:* MUSIC 364

**MUSED 367 (2 Points)****Studies in Community and School Music**

Community Music theory and philosophical underpinnings. Exploration of issues of quality and access. A survey of the community music field, successful case studies and approaches to community music projects. A practical student study is developed in one aspect of community (or school) music. Involves practical work, music leadership, planning, facilitation and participation in a dedicated concert.

*Prerequisite:* MUSED 260 or MUSIC 260, and MUSED 264 or MUSIC 264

*Restriction:* MUSED 466

**Stage IV****MUSED 466 (2 Points)****Advanced Studies in Community and School Music**

Theoretical and practical concepts in Community and School Music. Relationship between Community and School Music is analysed. A more advanced leadership project is undertaken in conjunction with school/community placement requirements. Students bring their work to a concert as a result of ongoing planning, facilitation and music leadership. For BMusEd students only.

*Prerequisite:* MUSED 366 or MUSIC 364

*Restriction:* MUSED 367, MUSIC 464

**Music****Stage I****MUSIC 100 (2 Points)****Basic Musical Techniques**

An intensive overview of fundamental written skills in music, and practice in aural perception.

*Restriction:* May not be taken after passing 840.101 or MUSIC 102 or 103

**MUSIC 102A (1 Point)****MUSIC 102B (1 Point)****Harmony and Counterpoint**

Renaissance polyphony in two and three parts, and seventeenth century hymnody and simple four-part chorales.

*Prerequisite:* B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 102 A and B*

**MUSIC 103A (1 Point)****MUSIC 103B (1 Point)****Musical Skills and Perception**

Development of musical responses by means of aural perception, sight singing and keyboard skills. Required course for BMus and BMusEd, BA major in music, DipMus. A placement test will be held in the first week of lectures. Following this test, some students may be advised to transfer to MUSIC 100. The School of Music will also hold tests prior to enrolment.

*Prerequisite:* B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 103 A and B*

**MUSIC 106A (1 Point)****MUSIC 106B (1 Point)****Conducting**

An introduction to the study of conducting which includes an historical overview and work on posture, patterns and gesture. Emphasis will be placed on choral repertoire.

*Prerequisite:* B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 106 A and B*

**MUSIC 109 (2 Points)****Introduction to Music Technology**

A survey of the technology available to assist musicians. Topics will include: audio recording, computer notation, sound editing and synthesis, sequencing, MIDI, instructional software, music and the Internet.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required

**MUSIC 110A (1 Point)****MUSIC 110B (1 Point)****Composition**

Creativity and craftsmanship in original free composition are studied with some analysis of significant twentieth century works and exercises in important twentieth century techniques. Coordination with performers both within and outside the class is important.

*Prerequisite:* B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 110 A and B*

**MUSIC 120A (1 Point)****MUSIC 120B (1 Point)****Performance Studies**

Performance work covering music from different periods. Weekly individual lessons, performance classes and ensemble training in one of the following: singing, pianoforte, organ and/or harpsichord, guitar, recorder, baroque flute, baroque violin, baroque cello, percussion, an approved orchestral instrument.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 121 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 120 A and B*

**MUSIC 121A (1.5 Points)**

**MUSIC 121B (1.5 Points)**

**Recital**

Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of 25–35 minutes in length.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 120 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 121 A and B*

**MUSIC 123 (1 Point)**

**Second Instrument Study A**

Performance work for students who wish to maintain a high level of study in voice or instrumental performance to complement their existing Performance course. The work will include regular performance lessons and ensemble playing.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 120 A and B, or MUSIC 125 A and B*

*Restriction: 840.122*

**MUSIC 124 (1 Point)**

**Second Instrument Study B**

Performance work for students who wish to maintain a high level of study in voice or instrumental performance to complement their existing Performance course. The work will include regular performance lessons and ensemble playing.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 120 A and B, or MUSIC 125 A and B*

*Restriction: 840.122*

**MUSIC 125A (1.5 Points)**

**MUSIC 125B (1.5 Points)**

**Performance Studies**

Performance work covering music from different periods. Weekly individual lessons, performance classes and ensemble training in one of the following: singing, pianoforte, organ and/or harpsichord, guitar, recorder, baroque flute, baroque violin, baroque cello, percussion, an approved orchestral instrument. For the Diploma in Music only.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 127 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 125 A and B*

**MUSIC 127A (2 Points)**

**MUSIC 127B (2 Points)**

**Recital**

Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of 25–35 minutes in length. For the Diploma in Music only.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 125 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 127 A and B*

**MUSIC 132 (1 Point)**

**Orchestra A**

Participation in section ensembles and full orchestral rehearsals and public performance; the study of ensemble techniques and discipline, and relevant orchestral repertory.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 133 (1 Point)**

**Orchestra B**

Participation in section ensembles and full orchestral rehearsals and public performance; the study of ensemble techniques and discipline, and relevant orchestral repertory.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 134 (1 Point)**

**Choral Ensemble A**

Participation in choral singing in rehearsal and public performance, and the study of vocal ensemble techniques and choral repertory.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 135 (1 Point)**

**Choral Ensemble B**

Participation in choral singing in rehearsal and public performance, and the study of vocal ensemble techniques and choral repertory.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 136 (1 Point)**

**Accompanying A**

Candidates presenting keyboard instruments for Performance Studies will have the opportunity to work with singers or instrumentalists in a study of accompanying techniques and repertory, in rehearsal and public performance.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 120 A and B, or MUSIC 125 A and B*

**MUSIC 137 (1 Point)**

**Accompanying B**

Candidates presenting keyboard instruments for Performance Studies will have the opportunity to work with singers or instrumentalists in a study of accompanying techniques and repertory, in rehearsal and public performance.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 120 A and B, or MUSIC 125 A and B*

**MUSIC 141 (2 Points)**

**Musical Techniques and Styles**

A survey of musical styles and compositional techniques throughout the development of Western Music. Required course for BMus, BA major in music, DipMus.

*Prerequisite: B+ grade in MUSIC 100 or Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 144 (2 Points)**

**Turning-points in Western Music**

A study of the major discoveries and inventions in Western music, and their effect on the present-day listener's experience. No previous knowledge of music is assumed. Not available for BMus.

*Restriction: May not be taken after passing 840.101 or 840.140 or MUSIC 102*

**MUSIC 145 (2 Points)**

**Music and Dance in Popular Culture**

The growth of popular music and dance culture across the globe after 1900, from the Cakewalk and Classic Blues to Te Vaka and Rave. The role of the mass media in the creation of popular culture, from the player piano to the music video. The interaction of hegemonic and minority cultures and media.

**MUSIC 154 (2 Points)****Acoustics for Musicians**

The fundamental principles of: oscillations and wave propagation, stationary waves, resonance, loudness, pitch, tone quality, intervals and scales, the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments, and the acoustics of rooms.

**MUSIC 170A (1 Point)****MUSIC 170B (1 Point)****Languages for Singers**

Language study, based on the needs of singers. The language taught will normally be Italian. In addition to the weekly meetings of the class there will be prescribed language laboratory work, and some intensive periods of language activity.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 120 A and B, or MUSIC 125 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 170 A and B*

**MUSIC 180A (1 Point)****MUSIC 180B (1 Point)****Jazz Performance Studies**

The development of technical and interpretive skills, performance work covering different periods, and the preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of 20 minutes duration. Incorporates the development of basic jazz keyboard skills to assist studies. Tuition in one of the following: piano, guitar, bass, drums, trumpet, trombone, saxophone, clarinet, flute, or an approved instrument. Available to students taking the BMus Jazz option only.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 180 A and B*

**MUSIC 182A (1 Point)****MUSIC 182B (1 Point)****Jazz Improvisation**

Performance-related study of jazz theory and the harmonic information necessary to develop sound improvisational skills. The core repertoire is linked stylistically and harmonically to other Stage I courses.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 180 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 182 A and B*

**MUSIC 184A (1 Point)****MUSIC 184B (1 Point)****Jazz Styles**

An introduction to the history of jazz from its African origins through to contemporary trends. The original contributions of significant jazz artists will be observed, including the detailed study of performance style. Students will prepare and present seminars on chosen artists containing transcriptions and analysis of the technical details of solos. Students will present a journal of seminars.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 180 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 184 A and B*

**MUSIC 186A (1 Point)****MUSIC 186B (1 Point)****Jazz Ensemble A**

Participation in small and large ensembles addresses the interaction of the roles of various instruments and the development of communication skills in performance and provides the opportunity to practice improvisation. Performance workshop provides a forum for the critical assessment and discussion of performances. Students may select from: Big Band, Jazz Choir, Jazz Vocal Ensemble, Campus Cantoris, Guitar Ensemble, Percussion Ensemble, Rhythm Section Ensemble.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 180 A and B*

*Restriction: MUSIC 188*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 186 A and B*

**MUSIC 187A (1 Point)****MUSIC 187B (1 Point)****Jazz Ensemble B**

Participation in small and large ensembles addresses the interaction of the roles of various instruments and the development of communication skills in performance and provides the opportunity to practice improvisation. Performance workshop provides a forum for the critical assessment and discussion of performances. Students may select from: Big Band, Jazz Choir, Jazz Vocal Ensemble, Campus Cantoris, Guitar Ensemble, Percussion Ensemble, Rhythm Section Ensemble.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 180 A and B*

*Restriction: MUSIC 188*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 187 A and B*

**MUSIC 188 (1 Point)****Jazz Elective A**

Students not in the BMus Jazz option may be granted entry to a Large Ensemble offered as part of MUSIC 186. Entry will be by audition, and at the discretion of the Head of the School of Music.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: MUSIC 186, 187*

**MUSIC 189 (1 Point)****Jazz Elective B**

Students not in the BMus Jazz option may be granted entry to a Large Ensemble offered as part of MUSIC 187. Entry will be by audition, and at the discretion of the Head of the School of Music.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: MUSIC 186, 187*

**MUSIC 190A (1 Point)****MUSIC 190B (1 Point)****Jazz Arranging and Composition**

A study of arranging and composition in the Jazz idiom; basic musical techniques, including scoring and writing for the Jazz rhythm section and various four voice concepts. Final arrangements will be played and recorded.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 180 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 190 A and B*

**Stage II****MUSIC 201A (1 Point)****MUSIC 201B (1 Point)****Materials and Analysis**

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 261.

The study and analysis of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements, through the examination of a wide range of music, from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 201 A and B*

**MUSIC 202A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 202B** (1 Point)

#### Harmony and Counterpoint

Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on eighteenth and early nineteenth century practices.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Music, including MUSIC 102*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 202 A and B*

**MUSIC 203A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 203B** (1 Point)

#### Musical Skills and Perception

Further development of musical skills and responses by means of aural perception, sight singing and keyboard skills

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 103*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 203 A and B*

**MUSIC 206A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 206B** (1 Point)

#### Conducting

Practical work in elementary conducting (choral and orchestral) including rehearsal techniques, management, score preparation, and observation of rehearsals.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102, and MUSIC 106*

*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 206 A and B*

**MUSIC 210** (2 Points)

#### Composition A

The composition of works for a wide variety of media in conjunction with a study of short pieces. Expansion of technique and realisation of performances.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102 and 110*

*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 211** (2 Points)

#### Composition B

Continuation of the work undertaken in MUSIC 210.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 210*  
*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 214A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 214B** (1 Point)

#### Orchestration

Technical aspects of writing for orchestral instruments and problems of scoring, where possible using practical examples and performers within the group. Study of standard repertoire for classical and small orchestras.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*  
*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 214 A and B*

**MUSIC 216A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 216B** (1 Point)

#### Electronic Music

A study of the major works in this medium composed during the last 40 years. Introduction to studio techniques; tape music and different methods of sound synthesis.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102*

*Corequisite: Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 216 A and B*

**MUSIC 220A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 220B** (1 Point)

#### Performance Studies

Further performance work, individual weekly lessons, performance classes and ensemble training.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102, and 840.140 or MUSIC 141, and a pass of at least C in MUSIC 120 and 121*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 221 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 220 A and B*

**MUSIC 221A** (1.5 Points)

**MUSIC 221B** (1.5 Points)

#### Recital

Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of 30–40 minutes in length.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 220 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 220 A and B*

**MUSIC 223** (1 Point)

#### Second Instrument Study A

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 123 and/or 124.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 123 or 124*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 220 A and B, or MUSIC 225 A and B, and Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: 840.222*

**MUSIC 224** (1 Point)

#### Second Instrument Study B

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 123 and/or 124.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 123 or 124*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 220 A and B, or MUSIC 225 A and B, and Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: 840.222*

**MUSIC 225A** (1.5 Points)

**MUSIC 225B** (1.5 Points)

#### Performance Studies

Further performance work, individual weekly lessons, performance classes and ensemble training. For the Diploma in Music only.

*Prerequisite: 840.101 or MUSIC 100 or MUSIC 103, and at least a C pass in MUSIC 125 and 127*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 227 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 225 A and B*

**MUSIC 227A** (2 Points)

**MUSIC 227B** (2 Points)

#### Recital

Preparation and performance of a well-balanced

recital programme of 30–40 minutes in length. For the Diploma in Music only.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 225 A and B*

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 227 A and B

**MUSIC 232 (1 Point)**

**Orchestra A**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 132 and/or 133.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 132 or 133, and Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 233 (1 Point)**

**Orchestra B**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 132 and/or 133.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 132 or 133, and Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 234 (1 Point)**

**Choral Ensemble A**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 134 and/or 135.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 134 or 135*

**MUSIC 235 (1 Point)**

**Choral Ensemble B**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 134 and/or 135.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 134 or 135*

**MUSIC 236 (1 Point)**

**Accompanying A**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 136 and/or 137.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 136 or 137*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 220 A and B, or MUSIC 225 A and B, and Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 237 (1 Point)**

**Accompanying B**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 136 and/or 137.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 136 or 137*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 220 A and B, or MUSIC 225 A and B, and Departmental approval required*

**MUSIC 238 (1 Point)**

**Chamber Music A**

Rehearsal and public performance of chamber music and ensemble playing.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 220 A and B, or MUSIC 225 A and B, and Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: 840.230*

**MUSIC 239 (1 Point)**

**Chamber Music B**

Rehearsal and public performance of chamber music and ensemble playing.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 220 A and B, or MUSIC 225 A and B, and Departmental approval required*

*Restriction: 840.230*

**MUSIC 240 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Theatre**

The lyric stage, its conventions, problems, and practices, and the function and typical structures of music in the theatre. Opera will be the primary focus, with some attention to operetta and musicals. Video will be the chief medium for the

study of particular works against their social, cultural, political and intellectual background.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in Music including 840.140 or MUSIC 141*

**MUSIC 241 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Middle Ages**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in Music including 840.140 or MUSIC 141*

*Restriction: MUSIC 341*

**MUSIC 242 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Renaissance**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in Music including 840.140 or MUSIC 141*

*Restriction: MUSIC 342*

**MUSIC 243 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Classic-Romantic Era**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in Music including 840.140 or MUSIC 141*

*Restriction: MUSIC 343*

**MUSIC 244 (2 Points)**

**Music from Modernism to the Present**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in Music including 840.140 or MUSIC 141*

*Restriction: MUSIC 344*

**MUSIC 245 (2 Points)**

**From Jazz to Rock**

Study of development of jazz, rock and intermediate styles from 1850. In addition to the general and regional study of the growth of the musics, there will also be some concentration on particular styles, performers and performances.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in Music*

*Restriction: 840.146*

**MUSIC 246 (2 Points)**

**Music in the Baroque Era**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage 1 in Music including 840.140 or MUSIC 141*

*Restriction: MUSIC 346*

**MUSIC 247 (2 Points)**

**Music from Post-Romanticism to Modernism**

A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Music including 840.140 or MUSIC 141  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 347

**MUSIC 250 (2 Points)**  
**Musicology**

The aims and scopes of musicological research. Topics include: bibliography research tools, survey of standard reference works, specific areas of debate in the subject, and historical projects in selected areas.

*Prerequisite:* 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102, and 840.140 or MUSIC 141

**MUSIC 251 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Performance Practice**

A survey of baroque and classical instrumental and vocal performance practice, using eighteenth century treatises and modern commentaries. Practical application of principles in small group performances, in directing ensembles, or in the presentation of a performing edition of a work.

*Prerequisite:* 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 351, 357

**MUSIC 262A (1 Point)**  
**MUSIC 262B (1 Point)**

**Repertory and Pedagogy**

Repertoire and performance practice, and a survey of pedagogical practices relating to the interface of teaching with performance. The instrument or instrumental group focused on will vary from year to year.

*Prerequisite:* 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and MUSIC 102  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 262 A and B*

**MUSIC 270A (1 Point)**  
**MUSIC 270B (1 Point)**

**Languages for Singers**

More advanced work in languages as required by singers. The languages studied will normally be German and French.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 170  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 220 A and B, or MUSIC 225 A and B, and Departmental approval required  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 270 A and B*

**MUSIC 272 (2 Points)**  
**Asian Music and Dance**

In-depth study of Asian music and dance performance traditions, involving group performance training as well as academic study. Students will be expected to participate in ensemble performance, on the basis of training given in this course.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 and Departmental approval required

**MUSIC 273 (2 Points)**  
**Pacific Islands Music and Dance**

In-depth study of Pacific Islands music and dance performance traditions, involving group performance training as well as academic study. Students will be expected to participate in ensemble performance, on the basis of training given in this course.

*Prerequisite:* ANTHRO 103 and Departmental approval required

**MUSIC 280A (1 Point)**  
**MUSIC 280B (1 Point)**

**Jazz Performance Studies**

Further development of technical and interpretive skills on repertoire under study, including the continued development of basic jazz keyboard skills. Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of 20 minutes duration.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 180

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 280 A and B*

**MUSIC 284A (1.5 Points)**  
**MUSIC 284B (1.5 Points)**

**Jazz Styles and Musical Skills**

Continued study of the history of jazz and analysis of the performance style of significant jazz artists, including student seminars on chosen artists and a journal of seminars. Further development of improvisational skills. Study is aligned stylistically and harmonically to Year 2 repertoire. Continued development of aural perception skills.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 103, 182, 184

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 284 A and B*

**MUSIC 286A (1.5 Points)**  
**MUSIC 286B (1.5 Points)**

**Ensemble I**

Further development of ensemble performance skills in small and large ensembles. Projects include a small ensemble recording session (two tunes) and a recital programme of 20 minutes duration. Attendance at Performance Workshop performances including critical assessment and discussion. Instrumental and vocal places in core ensembles are subject to audition and satisfactory progress.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 186

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 286 A and B*

**MUSIC 288A (1 Point)**  
**MUSIC 288B (1 Point)**

**Jazz Elective**

Students will choose elective/s from: Jazz Choir, Jazz Vocal Ensemble, Big Band, Electronic Music, Guitar Ensemble, Percussion Ensemble (percussion majors: mallet percussion), Rhythm Section Ensemble, not taken under MUSIC 286. Students not in the BMus Jazz option may be granted entry at the discretion of the Head of the School of Music.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 186 or 188 and Departmental approval required

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 288 A and B*

**MUSIC 290A (1 Point)**  
**MUSIC 290B (1 Point)**

**Jazz Arranging and Composition**

Continuation of work carried out in Arranging and Composition 1, with an emphasis on a creative approach to thematic and motivic development and original composition. Includes a study of the Cool period, funk and latin fusions, and the vocal arrangement.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 190

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 280 A and B

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 290 A and B*

**Stage III****MUSIC 301A** (1 Point)**MUSIC 301B** (1 Point)**Analysis**

The extension of each student's analytical skills through the study of a variety of works, with more emphasis than at Stage II on student input in workshops and discussions.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music including MUSIC 201

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 301 A and B

**MUSIC 302A** (1 Point)**MUSIC 302B** (1 Point)**Advanced Harmony**

Exercises and analysis of harmonic and contrapuntal techniques based on nineteenth and early twentieth century practices.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music including MUSIC 202

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 302 A and B

**MUSIC 303** (2 Points)**Musical Skills and Perception**

Advanced exercises in aural perception, sight singing and keyboard skills.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 203

**MUSIC 306A** (1 Point)**MUSIC 306B** (1 Point)**Conducting**

Elements of baton technique, rehearsal planning, management, and advanced score preparation.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music including MUSIC 206

*Corequisite:* Departmental approval required

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 306 A and B

**MUSIC 310** (3 Points)**Composition A**

Composing for various instrumental and vocal resources, computer notation, study of major twentieth century composers and their methods.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 210 or 211

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 214 A and B, and Departmental approval required

**MUSIC 311** (3 Points)**Composition B**

Continuation of work undertaken in MUSIC 310, including a substantial chamber work.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 310

**MUSIC 316A** (1 Point)**MUSIC 316B** (1 Point)**Electronic Music**

Composition using advanced studio techniques; methods of analogue synthesis, FM synthesis, sampling, use of microcomputers for data storage, MIDI and synchronisation. Aesthetics of electronic music, study of selected examples from past and contemporary sources, especially New Zealand studios.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 216

*Corequisite:* Departmental Approval required

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 316 A and B

**MUSIC 320A** (1 Point)**MUSIC 320B** (1 Point)**Performance Studies**

Advanced work in all aspects of performance, individual weekly lessons, performance classes and ensemble training.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 201 and at least a C pass in MUSIC 220 and 221

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 202 A and B, and MUSIC 321 A and B  
To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 320 A and B

**MUSIC 321A** (2 Points)**MUSIC 321B** (2 Points)**Recital**

Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of 40–50 minutes.

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 320 A and B

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 321 A and B

**MUSIC 323** (1 Point)**Second Instrument Study A**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 223 and/or 224.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 223 or 224

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 320 A and B, or MUSIC 325 A and B, and Departmental approval required

*Restriction:* 840.322

**MUSIC 324** (1 Point)**Second Instrument Study B**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 223 and/or 224.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 223 or 224

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 320 A and B, or MUSIC 325 A and B, and Departmental approval required

*Restriction:* 840.322

**MUSIC 325A** (2 Points)**MUSIC 325B** (2 Points)**Performance Studies**

Advanced work in all aspects of performance, individual weekly lessons, performance classes and ensemble training. For the Diploma in Music only.

*Prerequisite:* 840.101 or MUSIC 103, and a pass of at least C in MUSIC 225 and 227

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 327 A and B

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 325 A and B

**MUSIC 327A** (2 Points)**MUSIC 327B** (2 Points)**Recital**

Preparation and performance of a well-balanced recital programme of 50–60 minutes. For the Diploma in Music only.

*Corequisite:* MUSIC 325 A and B

To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 327 A and B

**MUSIC 332** (1 Point)**Orchestra A**

Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 232 and/or 233.

*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 232 or 233, and Departmental approval required

- MUSIC 333** (1 Point)  
**Orchestra B**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 232 and/or 233.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 232 or 233, and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 334** (1 Point)  
**Choral Ensemble A**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 234 and/or 235.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 234 or 235
- MUSIC 335** (1 Point)  
**Choral Ensemble B**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 234 and/or 235.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 234 or 235
- MUSIC 336** (1 Point)  
**Accompanying A**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 236 and/or 237.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 236 or 237  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 320 A and B, or MUSIC 325 A and B, and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 337** (1 Point)  
**Accompanying B**  
 Continuation of the work undertaken in the courses MUSIC 236 and/or 237.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 236 or 237  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 320 A and B, or MUSIC 325 A and B, and Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 338** (1 Point)  
**Chamber Music A**  
 Advanced playing in the fields of chamber music and ensemble playing.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 238 or 239  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 320 A and B, or MUSIC 325 A and B, and Departmental approval required  
*Restriction:* 840.330
- MUSIC 339** (1 Point)  
**Chamber Music B**  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 238 or 239  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 320 A and B, or MUSIC 325 A and B, and Departmental approval required  
*Restriction:* 840.330
- MUSIC 341** (2 Points)  
**Music in the Middle Ages**  
 A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 241
- MUSIC 342** (2 Points)  
**Music in the Renaissance**  
 A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 242
- MUSIC 343** (2 Points)  
**Music in the Classic-Romantic Era**  
 A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 243
- MUSIC 344** (2 Points)  
**Music from Modernism to the Present**  
 A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 244
- MUSIC 346** (2 Points)  
**Music in the Baroque Era**  
 A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 246
- MUSIC 347** (2 Points)  
**Music from Post-Romanticism to Modernism**  
 A survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in music of the period. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 247
- MUSIC 348** (2 Points)  
**Choral Repertoire and Pedagogy**  
 A study of choral repertoire from Gregorian chant to the present day, including the study of selected major works. Significant emphasis will be placed on the pedagogical techniques required by choral conductors for rehearsals/performances, in addition to analytical and score preparation skills.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 206 or Departmental approval required
- MUSIC 350** (2 Points)  
**Miscology**  
 Continuation of work begun in MUSIC 250. Work with primary sources, and related bibliographical and reference tools, editing, individual research projects.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 201, 250  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 301 A and B
- MUSIC 351** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Studies in Performance Practice**  
 A survey of baroque and classical instrumental and vocal performance practice, using eighteenth century treatises and modern commentaries. Practical application of principles in small group performances, in directing ensembles, or in the presentation of a performing edition of a work.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 201  
*Restriction:* MUSIC 251, 357
- MUSIC 357** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music
- MUSIC 358** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Music

**MUSIC 380A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 380B** (1.5 Points)

#### Jazz Performance Studies A

Further development of technical, interpretive and improvisational instrumental skills. Study of a doubling instrument may be in the form of an advanced tutorial. The student will prepare and perform a well-balanced recital programme of 30 minutes duration. For Jazz Performance majors.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 280*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 380 A and B*

**MUSIC 381A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 381B** (1.5 Points)

#### Jazz Performance Studies B

Further development of technical interpretive and improvisational instrumental skills. Experiential work as an assistant musical director with a large ensemble. The student will prepare and perform a well-balanced recital programme of 30 minutes duration. For Arranging and Composition majors.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 280*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 381 A and B*

**MUSIC 385A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 385B** (1.5 Points)

#### Jazz Performance

Advanced development of ensemble performance skills for the student with high potential as a Jazz performer. Professional performance standards are expected in both recording and performance of a set repertoire of complex Jazz compositions and personal repertoire choices. A recital programme of 30 minutes duration at the end of each semester.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 380 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 385 A and B*

**MUSIC 386A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 386B** (1 Point)

#### Jazz Ensemble

Continued development of ensemble performance skills in a self-directed ensemble. Students will revise all set repertoire, select additional works, and apply professional initiatives to achieve the set objectives. Students will prepare and perform a well-balanced recital programme of 30 minutes duration.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 284 and 286*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 386 A and B*

**MUSIC 388A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 388B** (1 Point)

#### Jazz Elective

Students will choose elective(s) from: Jazz Keyboard, Jazz Choir, Big Band, Electronic Music, or another ensemble not already taken. Students not in the BMus Jazz option may be granted entry at the discretion of the Head of the School of Music.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 286 or 288, and Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 388 A and B*

**MUSIC 390A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 390B** (1.5 Points)

#### Jazz Arranging and Composition

Continuation of the work carried out in MUSIC 290, with a study of scoring techniques for the Jazz Big Band sections and ensemble. Lectures may take the form of practical work at Big Band rehearsals. A recital programme of 30 minutes duration, which includes original compositions, is expected at the end of each semester. For Arranging and Composition majors.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 290*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 381 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 390 A and B*

**MUSIC 396A** (1 Point)  
**MUSIC 396B** (1 Point)

#### Jazz Performance Research

The preparation and presentation of two essays and two practical seminars on a performer or period of stylistic development related to principal instrument or major study.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 380 A and B, or MUSIC 381 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 396 A and B*

#### Diploma Courses

**MUSIC 625A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 625B** (1.5 Points)

#### Performance Studies A

Advanced work in all aspects of solo performance. Relevant ensemble work, including orchestral rehearsals and performance, may be required.

*Prerequisite: B- grade in MUSIC 325 and 327*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 626 A and B and MUSIC 627 A and B*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 625 A and B*

**MUSIC 626A** (1.5 Points)  
**MUSIC 626B** (1.5 Points)

#### Performance Studies B

Additional work in selected areas of performance.

*Prerequisite: B- grade in MUSIC 325 and 327*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 625 A and B and MUSIC 627 A and B*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 626 A, and B*

**MUSIC 627A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 627B** (2 Points)

#### Recital

Preparation for and performance of a well-balanced public recital of 50–60 minutes.

*Prerequisite: B- grade in MUSIC 325 and 327*

*Corequisite: MUSIC 625 A and B and MUSIC 626 A and B*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 627 A and B*

#### Honours and Master's Courses

**MUSIC 701** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Analysis: Schenkerian

The study of Schenkerian analytical theory.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 301*

**MUSIC 702** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Analysis: Twentieth Century and Beyond

The extension of analytical techniques to more complex works of the twentieth century, with particular attention to set theory.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 301*

- MUSIC 710A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 710B** (2 Points)  
**Composition**  
 Composing for a wide variety of media; voices, instruments and electronic resources.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 310, 311  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 710 A and B
- MUSIC 714A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 714B** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Orchestration**  
 Orchestration and instrumentation in the twentieth century, including contemporary instrumental and vocal techniques, with practical scoring exercises.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 214  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 714 A and B
- MUSIC 715A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 715B** (2 Points)  
**Electronic Music**  
 Composition using advanced studio techniques, computer synthesis, and study of relevant programming languages such as Csound. The introduction to the programming language MAX.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 316  
*Restriction:* 840.716, 840.717  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 715 A and B
- MUSIC 722** (3 Points)  
**Performance I**  
 Advanced work in all aspects of solo performance. Relevant ensemble work, including orchestral rehearsals and performance, may be required. Preparation for and performance of a well-balanced public recital of 50 to 60 minutes. The recital will take place only when it has not been presented for MUSIC 723.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 320
- MUSIC 723** (3 Points)  
**Performance II**  
 Advanced work in all aspects of solo performance. Relevant ensemble work, including orchestral rehearsals and performance, may be required. Preparation for and performance of a well-balanced public recital of 50 to 60 minutes. The recital will take place only when it has not been presented for MUSIC 722.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 320
- MUSIC 738** (2 Points)  
**Chamber Music A**  
 More advanced work in the field of chamber music and ensemble playing, with particular attention to the literature of the sonata.  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 722 and Departmental approval required  
*Restriction:* 840.730
- MUSIC 739** (2 Points)  
**Chamber Music B**  
 More advanced work in the field of chamber music and ensemble playing, with particular attention to the literature of the sonata.  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 723 and Departmental approval required  
*Restriction:* 840.730
- MUSIC 740** (2 Points)  
**Approaches to Music Aesthetics A**  
 A general outline of music aesthetics, including attitudes to music in some non-Western societies, and a survey of major writings on the subject from Classical times to the Renaissance.
- MUSIC 741** (2 Points)  
**Approaches to Music Aesthetics B**  
 Continuation of work undertaken in MUSIC 740, and a survey of major writings on the subject from the Renaissance to the present day.  
*Corequisite:* MUSIC 740
- MUSIC 744A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 744B** (2 Points)  
**Studies in New Zealand Music**  
 Historical, analytical and bibliographical approaches to New Zealand music, with the emphasis on major composers and works of the last 50 years.  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 744 A and B
- MUSIC 745A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 745B** (2 Points)  
**Music and Text 1750–1950**  
 A study of the theory and practice of music with words, in the context of European literature and theatre during the period 1750–1950.  
*Restriction:* 840.742, 840.743  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 745 A and B
- MUSIC 746** (2 Points)  
**Stylistic Studies A**  
 Detailed survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in a period not previously covered in MUSIC 241–244, 246, 247 or 341–347.
- MUSIC 747** (2 Points)  
**Stylistic Studies B**  
 Detailed survey of genre, compositional technique, form and style in a period not previously covered in MUSIC 241–244, 246–247 or 341–347.
- MUSIC 750A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 750B** (2 Points)  
**Seminar in Musicology**  
 Musicological method, bibliographical studies, selected problems for discussion and investigation, with individual reports orally and in writing.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 350  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 750 A and B
- MUSIC 751A** (2 Points)  
**MUSIC 751B** (2 Points)  
**Aspects of Performance Practice**  
 Selected topics for discussion and investigation from the field of Performance Practice and its historical documentation. The study of source materials, individual projects, performance and/or teaching and direction of music from the area studied.  
*Prerequisite:* MUSIC 251 or 351  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 751 A and B
- MUSIC 752** (2 Points)  
**Studies in Music Notation A**

Detailed study of mensural notation of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, lute and keyboard tablatures. Basic problems of notation, transcription and editing, with assignments and an editing project.

**MUSIC 753** (2 Points)

**Studies in Music Notation B**

Continuation of work undertaken in MUSIC 752, with more advanced work in editing, assignments and an editing project.

*Corequisite: MUSIC 752*

**MUSIC 757A** (1 Point)

**MUSIC 757B** (1 Point)

**Special Studies in Music**

Supervised study on a topic in Music.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 757 A and B*

**MUSIC 758** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**MUSIC 759** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**MUSIC 760** (4 Points)

**Music Education**

An examination at advanced level of the historical, philosophical and psychological foundations of music education, together with an examination of recent theories and writings in educational thought and their implications for music education.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 360*

**MUSIC 767** (4 Points)

**Special Project in Music Education**

An introduction to methodologies of research relevant to music education, and a supervised project investigating research in some area of the field.

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 360*

**MUSIC 789A** (2 Points)

**MUSIC 789B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 789 A and B*

**MUSIC 792A** (7 Points)

**MUSIC 792B** (7 Points)

**Performance**

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 720 and 721, or MUSIC 722 and 723*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 792 A and B*

**MUSIC 795A** (7 Points)

**MUSIC 795B** (7 Points)

**Composition**

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 710*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 795 A and B*

**MUSIC 796A** (7 Points)

**MUSIC 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

*Prerequisite: MUSIC 750*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 796 A and B*

**MUSIC 797A** (7 Points)

**MUSIC 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MUSIC 797 A and B*

## New Zealand Studies

### Honours and Master's Courses

**NZSTUD 701A** (2 Points)

**NZSTUD 701B** (2 Points)

### New Zealand: Interdisciplinary Studies

An examination of the ways in which New Zealand has been and is studied in the humanities and social sciences; an analysis and evaluation of views and perspectives on the development of the country and its peoples.

*To complete this course students must enrol in NZSTUD 701 A and B*

**NZSTUD 792** (6 Points)

**NZSTUD 792A** (3 Points)

**NZSTUD 792B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in NZSTUD 792 A and B, or NZSTUD 792*

**NZSTUD 796A** (7 Points)

**NZSTUD 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in NZSTUD 796 A and B*

**NZSTUD 797A** (7 Points)

**NZSTUD 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in NZSTUD 797 A and B*

## Pacific Studies

### Stage I

**PACIFIC 103** (2 Points)

**Indigenous Knowledge and Western Science: Perspectives from the Pacific**

Indigenous knowledge and western scientific accounts of the natural world, specifically the islands of the Pacific including New Zealand. Topics will be examined using a bicultural approach, involving both an expert in aspects of traditional knowledge and a scientist trained in the western scientific paradigm. Where possible each topic will include both a 'pure' and 'applied' component, the latter focusing on current environmental issues.

### Stage II

**PACIFIC 201** (2 Points)

**Pacific Worlds**

Critically examines the responses of Pacific peoples to the changes resulting from contact with outside influences up to World War II. It will take the view that Pacific Islanders were active participants rather than passive victims in their encounters with outsiders.

*Prerequisite: ANTHRO 104 or LINGUIST 102 and one of COOKIS 101, 102, SAMOAN 101, 102, TONGAN 101, 102*

**PACIFIC 202** (2 Points)

**Pacific Language Structures**

This course is an analysis of the sound systems and grammatical structures of some of the major

languages of Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia.

*Prerequisite: LINGUIST 102*

**PACIFIC 203 (2 Points)**

**Pacific Language Lexicography**

After giving an overview of lexicographical achievements in the Pacific, this course will teach the basic principles and practices of bilingual and monolingual dictionary-making in Pacific languages. Emphasis will be on monolingual lexicography in major Polynesian languages.

*Prerequisite: 2 points from: COOKIS 101, SAMOAN 102, TONGAN 102*

**PACIFIC 204 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: PACIFIC 103*

**Stage III**

**PACIFIC 300 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Pacific Studies*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PACIFIC 700 (4 Points)**

**The Pacific: Interdisciplinary Studies**

An examination of the ways in which the Pacific has been and is studied in the humanities and social sciences; an analysis and evaluation of views and perspectives on the development of the region and its peoples. This course must be included for the MA in Pacific Studies.

**PACIFIC 701 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PACIFIC 702 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PACIFIC 792A (3 Points)**

**PACIFIC 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 792 A and B*

**PACIFIC 796A (7 Points)**

**PACIFIC 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 796 A and B*

**PACIFIC 797A (7 Points)**

**PACIFIC 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PACIFIC 797 A and B*

**Performing Arts**

**Diploma Courses**

**PERFORM 601A (7 Points)**

**PERFORM 601B (7 Points)**

**Performing Arts (Opera)**

A predominantly practical full-time study of Opera's three essential elements: music (vocal technique, coaching in diction, style, interpretation and ensemble), language (French, German, Italian, Russian, English and IPA) and drama (script analysis, movement characterisation, Alexander

technique and fencing) culminating in presentations of showcases at the end of each semester.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 601 A and B*

**PERFORM 651A (2 Points)**

**PERFORM 651B (2 Points)**

**Research Project**

Students will pursue a supervised project involving substantial written work, with the option of doing performative research. Background seminars will address issues related to: dance theory, current research methodologies, research design, archives and resources, literature reviews, research ethics, analysis and report writing.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 651 A, and B*

**PERFORM 652 (4 Points)**

**Sociocultural Contexts of Dance in Aotearoa**

Dance in Aotearoa/New Zealand is considered in its wide social and cultural contexts, covering such aspects as: identity, tradition, tourism, appropriation, elitism and gender. Both theoretical and practical elements will be covered, illustrated by the study of selected dance forms. Movement analysis skills will be taught and applied to these dance forms.

**PERFORM 653 (4 Points)**

**Dance in the 20th Century**

An overview of twentieth century stage dance with a focus on the major choreographers of the modern and postmodern period. The emphasis is principally on dance in Europe and America, as well as on the developments of stage dance in Aotearoa/New Zealand. Practical reconstructions of some choreography will be included.

*Restriction: 276.661*

**PERFORM 660 (2 Points)**

**Choreography**

An investigation and analysis of choreographic process and practice in the twentieth century with an emphasis on postmodern approaches. Issues such as funding, health and safety, contract writing, collaboration, and copyright will also be included. Students will be expected to develop work-in-progress culminating in a performance.

**PERFORM 662 (2 Points)**

**Choreography for the Screen**

The practice and theory of choreographing for the small screen, including differences from and similarities to stage choreography. Composition, lighting, storyboarding and editing will be considered. Prior choreographic experience is an advantage and participants are encouraged to procure a video camera.

**PERFORM 663 (2 Points)**

**Comparative Techniques**

The theory and comparative practices of selected dance genre and styles, with an emphasis on alternative training and release techniques. Issues such as body/mind connections, body image and safe dance will be investigated. Students will be expected to have passed (or to take concurrently) SPORTSCI 103 Human Anatomy or SPORTSCI 104 Functional Human Anatomy, or to satisfy the

Diploma Coordinator that they already have sufficient knowledge of anatomy.  
*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 101*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

- PERFORM 700** (4 Points)
- PERFORM 700A** (2 Points)
- PERFORM 700B** (2 Points)
- Professional Skills**

The course will survey the following areas (with emphasis on the New Zealand environment): the broad arts context, including presentations from each of the degree programmes; funding sources and application procedures; financial management; legal issues (copyright, intellectual property, moral rights, contracts, residuals, possible legal problems); marketing, health and safety issues; organisational issues, interdisciplinary projects, issues of diversity. The course will be taught in seminar format, with contributions from guest speakers with special expertise and from staff taking other courses.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 700 A and B, or PERFORM 700*

- PERFORM 720A** (2 Points)
- PERFORM 720B** (2 Points)
- Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 720 A and B*

- PERFORM 721A** (2 Points)
- PERFORM 721B** (2 Points)
- Special Topic**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PERFORM 721 A and B*

- PERFORM 725** (2 Points)
- Special Topic**
- PERFORM 726** (2 Points)
- Special Topic**

**Philosophy**

**Stage I**

- PHIL 100** (2 Points)
- Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge**

Metaphysics deals with fundamental problems about the nature of the world and human beings (for example, the question of the existence of God, the relationship between mind and body, the nature and identity of the self, and the way in which metaphysical schemes endow life with significance or reveal its absurdity). The Theory of Knowledge studies the sources, limits and justification of human knowledge.

*Restriction: 280.150*

- PHIL 101** (2 Points)
- Introduction to Logic**

Logic is the study of argument. This course aims to provide an understanding of central logical notions, such as consistency and inconsistency, logical truth, and, most importantly, what it means for an argument to be valid or invalid, sound or unsound. The course examines two main logical systems, propositional and predicate logic, and shows how

these formal systems are used to analyse and evaluate arguments.

*Restriction: 280.151*

- PHIL 102** (2 Points)
- Introduction to Ethics**

Ethics is the philosophical study of morality. This course examines several ethical theories (including Kantianism, Utilitarianism, and Virtue Ethics) and provides an introduction to fundamental questions about the nature of morality such as whether moral values are objective, subjective or culturally relative. The course will include discussion of selected current moral controversies and/or an introduction to some non-Western approaches to ethics.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 102*

- PHIL 103** (2 Points)
- Freedom, Rights and Justice**

Considers various questions concerning the relation between individuals and political societies such as: What principles of justice should communities adopt? What are rights? What limits can legitimately be placed on individual liberty? What is the source and nature of citizens' obligations to obey the law? What makes a decision procedure democratic and why does it matter? These questions are considered in relation to the New Zealand context, with discussion of the Treaty of Waitangi.

- PHIL 105** (2 Points)
- Critical Thinking**

Rational argument is a vital instrument in intellectual life. This course aims to provide an understanding of rational argument. The topic will be approached by informal methods. The contrast between deductive and inductive arguments will be discussed. Other topics will be drawn from fallacies, Mill's methods, scientific reasoning and rational dialogue analysis.

- PHIL 152** (2 Points)
- Philosophy and Theories of Human Nature**

What is human nature? The course covers competing conceptions of human nature, found in religious, philosophical, scientific and social thought, alongside theories that deny the existence of a human nature. Philosophers discussed may include: Plato, Hobbes, Marx, Freud, Sartre and Christian thinkers.

**Stage II**

- PHIL 200** (2 Points)
- Philosophy of Mind**

Examines critically influential views about the nature of mind, including dualism, behaviourism and various forms of physicalism.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*

- PHIL 201** (2 Points)
- Introduction to Metalogic**

An introduction to at least the two major ways of formulating systems of logic – proof theoretic and semantic. The relationship between such formulations is considered in terms of the metalogical notions of soundness, consistency, and completeness. The major emphasis will be on propositional logic.

*Prerequisite: 280.151 or PHIL 101*

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

**PHIL 204 (2 Points)****Greek Philosophy**

An introduction to some of the important figures in ancient philosophy and the issues with which they were concerned. The work of the Presocratics, Plato, and Aristotle will be explored, with a detailed discussion of the philosophical system of either Plato or Aristotle and its importance in the history of philosophy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or CLASSICS 120*

**PHIL 205 (2 Points)****Community, Society and Rights**

Adds a variety of topics in political philosophy such as: the political theories of Locke and Hobbes, the nature of rights and rights-holders, sovereignty, strategies for securing stable and just societies between people with significantly different moral, political and cultural views, and the relationship between individuals and communities. Topics will be related to contemporary political issues in New Zealand and, in particular, to the Treaty of Waitangi.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or 4 points in Political Studies*

**PHIL 207 (2 Points)****Philosophy of Religion**

A study of the relationship between reason and faith; is belief in the Judaeo-Christian God reasonable? Topics include: the problem of evil, the meaningfulness of religious language, alternative concepts of God, Hume on miracles, and Kierkegaard and William James on faith and reason.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 327*

**PHIL 208 (2 Points)****British Empiricists**

A study of the British empiricists: John Locke, George Berkeley and David Hume.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 328*

**PHIL 209 (2 Points)****Schopenhauer and Nietzsche**

A study of the philosophies of Arthur Schopenhauer (1788–1860) and Friedrich Nietzsche (1844–1900), focusing on their respective attitudes towards the value of life and the meaning of suffering. Schopenhauer's emphasis upon transcendent modes of awareness will be compared with Nietzsche's more down-to-earth existentialism, in light of their views on the redeeming value of artistic and aesthetic experience.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 329*

**PHIL 210 (2 Points)****Applied Ethics**

Philosophical analysis and discussion of contemporary moral issues, such as abortion, euthanasia, reverse discrimination, the ethics of charity and our treatment of animals.

*Prerequisite: PHIL 102 or PSYCHIAT 102 or 4 points in Philosophy*

**PHIL 211 (2 Points)****Ethical Theory II**

Philosophical study of moral theory, in both

normative ethics and meta-ethics. Topics covered include: theories of value, theories of right action, and the status and justification of such theories.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

**PHIL 212 (2 Points)****Philosophy of the Arts**

Considers a range of issues concerning the creation, presentation, interpretation and appreciation of art. The topics are approached via recent debates between philosophers about such issues as the colourisation of movies, the status of artistic fakes, and the paradox of our enjoying tragedy.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 12 points passed*

*Restriction: PHIL 332*

**PHIL 213 (2 Points)****Philosophical Issues in Feminism**

A selection of philosophical issues which arise within feminist thinking, such as: the nature of sexual equality; concepts of patriarchy, oppression and exploitation and their use in feminist analyses of women's social position; the nature of sexual harassment.

*Prerequisite: 4 points from courses in Philosophy and/or Political Studies and/or Women's Studies*

**PHIL 214 (2 Points)****Topics in Chinese and Japanese Philosophy**

A selective study of philosophical movements in East Asia, focusing on moral, aesthetic and metaphysical issues. Classical Chinese and contemporary Japanese philosophical outlooks will be considered, both in their own terms, and in contrast to some Western philosophical views.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points in Philosophy or ASIAN 100*

**PHIL 215 (2 Points)****20th Century French Philosophy**

An examination of the development of contemporary French Philosophy through the intellectual movements of Vitalism, Existentialism, Structuralism and Post-Structuralism.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 335*

**PHIL 216 (2 Points)****Introduction to Modal Logic**

An introduction to modal logic, especially normal modal logics. Consideration will be given to some applications of modal logics for possibility and necessity, knowledge and belief, time and conditionals. All systems will be considered in both axiomatic and semantic formulations.

*Prerequisite: 280.151 or PHIL 101*

**PHIL 217 (2 Points)****Philosophy of Law**

Themes in contemporary Western philosophy of law, relating to debates between liberal and non-liberal conceptions of law, including questions about the nature of legal rules, legal reasons, and the relationship between law and morality. Major positions in legal theory will be covered, from legal positivism to critical legal studies.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

*Restriction: PHIL 337*

**PHIL 218 (2 Points)**  
**Problems in Epistemology**

A study of problems in the theory of knowledge including the nature of justification and truth, and the nature, scope and limits of knowledge.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 338*

**PHIL 219 (2 Points)**  
**Argumentation Theory**

An examination of the role of argumentation in academic and everyday life. Topics to be considered will include some of the following: rational argument, defective argument, theories of fallacies, reasoning and logic, dialogue and interactive reasoning, non-deductive and non-monotonic reasoning, reasoning and education, and consistency and contradiction.

*Prerequisite: PHIL 101 or 105*

**PHIL 220 (2 Points)**  
**Kant and Hegel**

An examination of the development of German idealism from Kant to Hegel, focusing on Kant's *Critique of Pure Reason* (1781-1787) and Hegel's *Phenomenology of Spirit* (1807).

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: 280.312, PHIL 340*

**PHIL 221 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century German Philosophy**

An examination of the development of contemporary German Philosophy through the intellectual movements of Phenomenology, neo-Kantianism, Hermeneutics, and critical theory and such diverse figures as Dilthey, Husserl, Heidegger, Adorno, Habermas, Apel and Henrich.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 341*

**PHIL 250 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Ethics**

Ethical questions relating to the environment and our use of it, including: Does nature have intrinsic value? Do we have obligations to preserve species? Is biodiversity desirable? What responsibilities do we have to animals? Do we have obligations to future generations, especially concerning preservation of the environment? Are population control policies ethically defensible?

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*

**PHIL 252 (2 Points)**  
**Theories of Human Nature**

A continuation of PHIL 152 at a more advanced level with emphasis on theories of human nature as they have arisen in the history of philosophy from ancient to modern times, and the philosophies of human nature presupposed in human sciences such as biology, psychology, economics and anthropology. Included will be a discussion of rationality and human nature and the explanation of human action.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

**PHIL 260 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Science**

An introduction to some of the main conceptions of science that have been proposed by scientists and philosophers such as Newton, Popper, Einstein,

Kuhn, etc. Other topics may include: theories, laws and causation, scientific inference, explanation and prediction, the hierarchy of sciences, reduction, emergence and materialism, realism and anti-realism.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*  
*Restriction: 280.203*

**PHIL 261 (2 Points)**  
**Metaphysical Structures of the World**

Issues in metaphysics, including the metaphysical presuppositions of the sciences. Topics will include some of: the nature of laws, causation, time, space, chance, explanation, determinism and indeterminism, reduction, emergence and supervenience, kinds, the structure of theories and realism versus varieties of anti-realism, the metaphysics/science distinction.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*  
*Restriction: PHIL 361*

**PHIL 263 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Biology**

Topics may include: explanation, design and teleology, the status of evolutionary theory, creationism versus evolution, fitness and adaptation, species and the units of evolutionary selection, reduction and the DNA molecule, biological classification, altruism, sociobiology, evolution and ethics, selected topics in the history of biological sciences.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*  
*Restriction: PHIL 363*

**PHIL 264 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Social Science**

Topics may include: explanation, causality, prediction and laws, interpretation, meaning and understanding, reduction, individualism and holism, rational choice explanation and games theory, objectivity and values in social theory, unity or disunity of natural and social sciences, the sociology of knowledge, the evaluation of selected theories from Marx to Foucault.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy, or any 8 points*  
*Restriction: PHIL 364*

**PHIL 266 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Philosophy*

**Stage III**

**PHIL 302 (2 Points)**  
**Medieval Philosophy**

A detailed introduction to either the work of a leading medieval philosopher, for example Augustine, Abaelard, Scotus or Ockham, or to one or more of the topics which were of interest to medieval philosophers. The course aims to show how understanding medieval philosophy is essential for the history of Christian thought and philosophy up to modern times.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*

**PHIL 303 (2 Points)**  
**Heidegger**

A study of Heidegger.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*

**PHIL 304 (2 Points)**  
**Ethical Theory III**

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

Advanced philosophical study of moral theory (in both normative and meta-ethics), especially virtue ethics, Aristotelian ethics, and moral dilemmas.

*Prerequisite:* Either 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy including PHIL 205 or 210 or 211 or 250, or PHIL 102 and any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 305 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Metalogic**

The techniques and philosophical significance of modern logical theory, including some model theory, proof theory, set theory and recursion theory. The main objective is to provide a level of understanding of these topics sufficient for an appreciation of Godel's celebrated proof of the incompleteness of arithmetic.

*Prerequisite:* PHIL 201 or MATHS 225

**PHIL 306 (2 Points)**

**Language, Truth and Meaning**

The relationship between language, thought, and reality. Topics include: the nature of existence, theories of reference, meaning and truth, and Quine's radical views of meaning and reference. Students are strongly urged to take PHIL 101 (Introduction to Logic) before taking this course.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 307 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 308 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 309 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 310 (2 Points)**

**Political Philosophy III**

Advanced topics in Political Philosophy.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 313 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 314 (2 Points)**

**Topics in 20th Century Continental Philosophy**

A study of some of the major trends and texts in the Continental tradition in Philosophy. A non-exhaustive list includes the work of Husserl, Heidegger, Adorno, Sartre, Derrida, Foucault, Merleau-Ponty and Gadamer.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 315 (2 Points)**

**Logics of Time and Change**

Introduces students to the logics of time (temporal logic) and change (dynamic logic), and to the theory of belief revision and belief change. There will be discussion of the interrelation between these logics and the problems they raise for the philosophy of time and for artificial intelligence.

*Prerequisite:* PHIL 201 or 216 or 445.225

**PHIL 316 (2 Points)**

**Philosophical Logic**

The relation between language and metaphysics,

including such topics as conditionals, propositions, modality, possible worlds, and theories of truth.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 317 (2 Points)**

**Ethical Issues in Biotechnology**

A discussion of ethical issues arising from developments in biotechnology, such as reproductive and genetic technologies. It will focus particularly on the perceived need for social control of individual choice and action in using these technologies, and the difficulties of justifying such restrictions, or agreeing on appropriate constraints, in a morally pluralist society.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology, or 4 points from PSYCHIAT 201, 575.202, 575.203

**PHIL 318 (2 Points)**

**Theory of Applied and Professional Ethics**

The application of ethical theory to applied and professional ethics including: ethical particularism and the role of principles in applied ethics, ethical expertise, role ethics, dialogue ethics, the ethics of care, the relation between care and justice and the application of the ethics of care to areas of professional ethics (such as nursing).

*Prerequisite:* Either 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy including PHIL 205 or 210 or 211 or 250, or PHIL 102 and any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

**PHIL 320 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mind**

Critically examines influential views about the nature of mind, including dualism, behaviourism and various forms of physicalism.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201  
*Restriction:* PHIL 200

**PHIL 327 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Religion**

A study of the relationship between reason and faith; is belief in the Judaeo-Christian God reasonable? Topics include: the problem of evil, the meaningfulness of religious language, alternative concepts of God, Hume on miracles, and Kierkegaard and William James on faith and reason.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

*Restriction:* PHIL 207

**PHIL 328 (2 Points)**

**British Empiricists**

A study of the British empiricists: John Locke, George Berkeley and David Hume.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy

*Restriction:* PHIL 208

**PHIL 329 (2 Points)**

**Schopenhauer and Nietzsche**

A study of the philosophies of Arthur Schopenhauer (1788–1860) and Friedrich Nietzsche (1844–1900), focusing on their respective attitudes towards the value of life and the meaning of suffering. Schopenhauer's emphasis upon transcendent modes of awareness will be compared with Nietzsche's more down-to-earth existentialism, in light of their views on the redeeming value of artistic and aesthetic experience.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 209*

**PHIL 332 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of the Arts**

Considers a range of issues concerning the creation, presentation, interpretation and appreciation of art. The topics are approached via recent debates between philosophers about such issues as the colourisation of movies, the status of artistic fakes, and the paradox of our enjoying tragedy.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 212*

**PHIL 335 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century French Philosophy**

An examination of the development of contemporary French Philosophy through the intellectual movements of Vitalism, Existentialism, Structuralism and Post-Structuralism.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 215*

**PHIL 337 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Law**

Themes in contemporary Western philosophy of law, relating to debates between liberal and nonliberal conceptions of law, including questions about the nature of legal rules, legal reasons, and the relationship between law and morality. Major positions in legal theory will be covered, from legal positivism to critical legal studies.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 217*

**PHIL 338 (2 Points)**  
**Problems in Epistemology**

A study of problems in the theory of knowledge including the nature of justification and truth, and the nature, scope and limits of knowledge.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 218*

**PHIL 340 (2 Points)**  
**Kant and Hegel**

An examination of the development of German idealism from Kant to Hegel, focusing on Kant's *Critique of Pure Reason* (1781-1787) and Hegel's *Phenomenology of Spirit* (1807).

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: 280.312, PHIL 220*

**PHIL 341 (2 Points)**  
**20th Century German Philosophy**

An examination of the development of contemporary German Philosophy through the intellectual movements of Phenomenology, neo-Kantianism, Hermeneutics, and critical theory and such diverse figures as Dilthey, Husserl, Heidegger, Adorno, Habermas, Apel and Henrich.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 221*

**PHIL 350 (2 Points)**  
**Issues in Applied Ethics**

An advanced level discussion of ethics and its application in areas such as medicine, the environment, business, science and scientific research, international relations.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*

**PHIL 361 (2 Points)**  
**Metaphysical Structures of the World**

Issues in metaphysics, including the metaphysical presuppositions of the sciences. Topics will include some of: the nature of laws, causation, time, space, chance, explanation, determinism and indeterminism, reduction, emergence and supervenience, kinds, the structure of theories and realism versus varieties of anti-realism, the metaphysics/science distinction.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201*  
*Restriction: PHIL 261*

**PHIL 363 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Biology**

Topics may include: explanation, design and teleology, the status of evolutionary theory, creationism versus evolution, fitness and adaptation, species and the units of evolutionary selection, reduction and the DNA molecule, biological classification, altruism, sociobiology, evolution and ethics, selected topics in the history of biological sciences.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201*  
*Restriction: PHIL 263*

**PHIL 364 (2 Points)**  
**Philosophy of Social Science**

Topics may include: explanation, causality, prediction and laws, interpretation, meaning and understanding, reduction, individualism and holism, rational choice explanation and games theory, objectivity and values in social theory, unity or disunity of natural and social sciences, the sociology of knowledge, the evaluation of selected theories from Marx to Foucault.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy or 4 points from HISTORY 240, PHIL 260, SCIGEN 201*  
*Restriction: PHIL 264*

**PHIL 365 (2 Points)**  
**The Rise of Western Science**

How did science develop? This course examines the emergence and growth of science and theories of science from the ancient world onwards. A contrast may be drawn with the development of science in non-Western cultures (e.g. India, China, etc.).

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Philosophy*  
*Restriction: PHIL 265*

**Diploma Courses**

**PHIL 602 (2 Points)**  
**Business Ethics**

Topics in business ethics, such as: ethics of management, moral status of business firms, hiring and firing practices, sexual harassment, privacy and loyalty in employment, investment policy, advertising, labour negotiations, moral controversies in international business, worker safety. There will be a strong practical emphasis, and professional participation in teaching and seminar sessions.

**PHIL 603 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Ethics**

Theoretical perspectives and topics in environmental ethics, such as: 'deep ecology' positions and value pluralism, sentience-based positions, anthropocentric versus non-

anthropocentric perspectives, rationales for the preservation of species and ecologies and our treatment of animals. There will be a strong practical emphasis, and professional participation in teaching and seminar sessions.

**PHIL 605 (2 Points)**

**Ethics and Education**

Issues of relevance to the educator's role, such as: the role of educators in moral education, the pastoral role of educators, the values of individualism in education, the significance of recent economic policies for education, the value of knowledge and research, relationships between students and educators, codes of ethics in education, the importance of impartiality.

**PHIL 606 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 607 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 610A (1 Point)**

**PHIL 610B (1 Point)**

**Professional Ethics Seminar**

Seminars covering core topics concerning the nature of professional ethics and practice relevant to a wide range of professions. Topics will be chosen to indicate the grounding of theoretical ethical issues in concrete problems, and teaching is intended to enable students from different professional backgrounds to learn from each other's experience and understanding.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 610 A and B*

**PHIL 620 (4 Points)**

**PHIL 620A (2 Points)**

**PHIL 620B (2 Points)**

**Professional Ethics Project**

A project approved by the Course Coordinator on a topic concerning a particular ethical problem (or set of problems) as related to some professional context.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 620 A and B, or PHIL 620*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PHIL 720 (4 Points)**

**PHIL 720A (2 Points)**

**PHIL 720B (2 Points)**

**Special Studies**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 720 A and B, or PHIL 720*

**PHIL 721 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 722 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 723 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 724 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 725 (4 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**PHIL 726 (2 Points)**

**Ethics A**

**PHIL 727 (2 Points)**

**Ethics B**

**PHIL 728 (2 Points)**

**Political Philosophy A**

**PHIL 729 (2 Points)**

**Political Philosophy B**

**PHIL 730 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Law**

**PHIL 731 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of the Arts A**

**PHIL 732 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of the Arts B**

**PHIL 733 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy and Feminism**

**PHIL 734 (2 Points)**

**Applied Ethics A**

**PHIL 735 (2 Points)**

**Applied Ethics B**

**PHIL 736 (2 Points)**

**Logic A**

**PHIL 737 (2 Points)**

**Logic B**

**PHIL 738 (2 Points)**

**Philosophical Logic**

**PHIL 739 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Language**

**PHIL 740 (2 Points)**

**Metaphysics A**

**PHIL 741 (2 Points)**

**Metaphysics B**

**PHIL 742 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Religion A**

**PHIL 743 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Religion B**

**PHIL 744 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mathematics**

**PHIL 745 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mind A**

**PHIL 746 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Mind B**

**PHIL 747 (2 Points)**

**Epistemology A**

**PHIL 748 (2 Points)**

**Epistemology B**

**PHIL 749 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Science A**

**PHIL 750 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Science B**

**PHIL 751 (2 Points)**

**Philosophy of Social Science**

PHIL 752	(2 Points)
Ancient/Medieval Philosophy A	
PHIL 753	(2 Points)
Ancient/Medieval Philosophy B	
PHIL 754	(2 Points)
History of Philosophy A	
PHIL 755	(2 Points)
History of Philosophy B	
PHIL 756	(2 Points)
History of Philosophy C	
PHIL 757	(2 Points)
European Continental Philosophy A	
PHIL 758	(2 Points)
European Continental Philosophy B	
PHIL 759	(2 Points)
European Continental Philosophy C	
PHIL 762	(2 Points)
Special Topic: Chinese Philosophy	
PHIL 763	(2 Points)
Special Topic	
PHIL 764	(2 Points)
Medical Ethics	
PHIL 765	(2 Points)
Special Topic: Gadamer	
PHIL 766	(2 Points)
Special Topic	
PHIL 767	(2 Points)
Special Topic	
PHIL 768	(2 Points)
Special Studies	
Directed study on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.	
PHIL 769	(2 Points)
Special Studies	
Directed study on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.	
PHIL 780	(4 Points)
PHIL 780A	(2 Points)
PHIL 780B	(2 Points)
Honours Dissertation	
To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 780 A and B. or PHIL 780	
PHIL 792A	(3 Points)
PHIL 792B	(3 Points)
Dissertation	
To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 792 A and B	
PHIL 796A	(7 Points)
PHIL 796B	(7 Points)
Thesis	
To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 796 A and B	
PHIL 797A	(7 Points)
PHIL 797B	(7 Points)
Research Portfolio	
To complete this course students must enrol in PHIL 797 A and B	

---

**Polish**


---

**Stage I**

**POLISH 100** (2 Points)  
**Beginners' Polish A**

Introduction to elementary spoken and written Polish and the development of speaking, listening, comprehension, reading and writing skills, covering basic grammar and an introductory vocabulary.

**POLISH 101** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Contemporary Poland**

A survey of the Polish nation in the twentieth century, from the perspective of creative writers, that reflects Polish aspirations during the Second Republic (1918-39), the catastrophe visited upon Poland by both Nazism and Bolshevism (1939-45) and the era of Sovietisation (1945-89); a short sequence of lectures covering the emergence of solidarity, the collapse of communism (1989), and subsequent moves towards democratic government and economic and political integration with the West. Especially recommended to students wishing to acquaint themselves with a major emerging political and economic power of Eastern Europe.

**POLISH 102** (2 Points)  
**Beginners' Polish B**

Continues the study of the language with further development of the skills introduced in POLISH 100. Students completing this two-semester programme should be able to read simple texts and write and speak in Polish about everyday matters. Students with some prior knowledge of Polish may apply to be admitted directly to this course.

*Prerequisite: POLISH 100*

**Stage II**

**POLISH 210** (2 Points)  
**Poland, Heart of Europe**

Poland's geographic position in Europe has been both her vulnerability and strength. Surrounded by large and powerful nations vying for land and influence, Poland has often had a precarious existence, but her national spirit has remained indomitable. Through an examination of memoirs, major works of fiction and film, this course examines the nationalism which existed in pre-partitioned Poland and its significance to Poland's emerging role in the modern world.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points at Stage I in Polish or approval of the Head of Department*

---

**Political Studies**


---

**Stage I**

**POLITICS 106** (2 Points)  
**International Relations and Foreign Policies**

An introduction to the theory and practice of current international relations, followed by case studies in the making of diplomatic, economic, and defence policies.

*Restriction: 285.111*

**POLITICS 107** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand Politics**

An examination of who governs New Zealand and in whose interests. Topics include: government formation and functioning under MMP, political leadership, national identity, parties and elections, the role of the media in election campaigns, the place of Maori within the political system, and business and politics.

**POLITICS 109 (2 Points)**

**Foundations of Western Political Thought**

An examination, via the works of selected major European thinkers from Ancient Greece to late nineteenth century Britain, of ideas central to the western tradition of political thought: law, subjection, rights, justice, citizenship, authority, kingship, republicanism, and the right to resist governments. Thinkers studied include: Plato, Machiavelli, Hobbes, Locke, Hume, Bentham, Mill and Marx.

**POLITICS 110 (2 Points)**

**Comparative Politics**

An introduction to the main political institutions and processes in liberal democracies, and to the methods and purposes of the comparative study of politics.

*Restriction: 285.112*

**POLITICS 113 (2 Points)**

**Politics and the Media**

An examination of the political importance of media and communication. Introduces students to theories and research dealing with the role of mass-mediated messages, images, symbols, and opinions in political life. Topics include: the role of media in democracy, media and power relationships, the telecommunications revolution and its political consequences, newspaper and television constructions of political events, leaders, election campaigns, scandals, crises, foreign enemies.

**POLITICS 120 (2 Points)**

**Modern Political Thinking**

An introduction to the major styles of modern political thinking in New Zealand – liberalism, conservatism, socialism, feminism and nationalism – by way of studying major European thinkers in those traditions and applying their ideas to current issues in New Zealand politics.

*Restriction: POLITICS 209*

**Stage II**

**POLITICS 204 (2 Points)**

**New Zealand and United States Foreign Policies**

A review of New Zealand and USA foreign policies and foreign policy-making. Includes the politics and institutions concerned with foreign policy, and case studies of diplomacy, trade and defence relations.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*

**POLITICS 209 (2 Points)**

**Modern Political Thought**

An historical and analytical survey of modern clusters of leading political ideas: capitalism and socialism.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies or 8 points in B*

**POLITICS 213 (2 Points)**

**Women and Politics**

An examination of gender politics, including studies of feminist conceptions of politics, and of women's participation in decision-making.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies and/or Women's Studies or 8 points in BA, or Departmental approval required*

**POLITICS 214 (2 Points)**

**Democracy in Theory and Practice**

An examination of current theories as to what democracy is and ought to be, and a study of how these theories relate to current practice. Issues include: referendums, deliberation and voting, representative practices (including the question of Maori representation and future problems for democracy).

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*

**POLITICS 215 (2 Points)**

**Russian Politics and Foreign Policy**

Examines the transformation of Soviet authoritarian system into a more democratic governance, market economy and cooperative relations with the outside world. Analyses the main institutions of Russia (presidency, parliament, courts) as well as its major foreign policy activities.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*

**POLITICS 218 (2 Points)**

**Politics of the USA**

An introduction to the main institutions of the USA (the Presidency, the Congress and the Supreme Court) together with case studies of recent political issues and their treatment in the political system.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*

**POLITICS 220 (2 Points)**

**The European Union in a Changing Europe**

An examination of the European Union in the context of changes taking place in the European continent generally. The Union's relations with the USA, Japan, New Zealand and the former USSR/Russia will also be studied. Political, economic, social and security aspects will be covered.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies or EURLANG 100*

**POLITICS 221 (2 Points)**

**Public Policy, Economic Reform and Social Change in New Zealand**

An examination of public policy, economic and social changes in New Zealand since 1984.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political or Maori Studies or MAORI 130*

**POLITICS 222 (2 Points)**

**Public Policy: Power and Processes**

Designed to enable development of a conceptual 'tool-kit' for the explanation and evaluation of public policy. Examines the role of policy actors such as interest groups, business, technical experts and government agencies; the way in which the international economy and domestic political institutions shape policy outcomes, the recognition and diagnosis of policy problems, and the rationality of policy decision-making.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political or Maori Studies or MAORI 130*

- POLITICS 223** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: Politics, Resources and the Environment**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies or 8 points in BA, or Departmental approval required*
- POLITICS 226** (2 Points)  
**International Relations: Asia-Pacific**  
 A study of international relations in the Asia-Pacific region, with attention given to current issues and foreign policies of selected states, including: USA, Japan, China, Indonesia, Australia, Russia, New Zealand and ASEAN.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 228** (2 Points)  
**Japan's Political Economy and Policy-making**  
 Examines democracy in Japan in a comparative perspective. Japan's current political system will be compared with its pre-World War II system and with contemporary western democracies, and theoretical models of policy-making will be tested by applying them to contemporary political issues in Japan: budget crisis, deregulation, administrative reforms, trade disputes, and party realignment.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 229** (2 Points)  
**Maori Political Practice: Its History and Evolution**  
 Studies the principal actors in Maori politics, including individuals, iwi, federations of iwi, the New Zealand Maori Council, the Maori Congress and Maori MPs. Examines the grounds on which the actors claim to act and their main policy concerns as they are pressed in parliament, in official circles, and in public. Seeks to provide an understanding of leading Maori political ideas.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political or Maori Studies*
- POLITICS 230** (2 Points)  
**Australian Politics**  
 An examination of modern Australian politics: the workings of a federal system.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*  
 Restriction: 285.315
- POLITICS 231** (2 Points)  
**Media, Opinion and Propaganda**  
 Examines major theories and methods used in studying political opinion, persuasion, and propaganda. Highlighting the special role of communications media in these processes, the course explores the sources and political consequences of opinions, perceptions, myths, rituals, culture and socialisation processes, rhetoric, slogans, engineering of consent, public relations and candidate image-management strategies.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 232** (2 Points)  
**New Zealand Parties and Elections**  
 An examination of New Zealand's political parties and the changing party system. Topics will include: the emergence of multi-party politics, candidate selection methods, parties and the media, the controversy over party finance and campaign funding, the so-called 'Americanisation' of modern electoral campaigns, and changing patterns of electoral participation and support.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 233** (2 Points)  
**Tabloid News**  
 Increasingly common in the New Zealand commercial news media, tabloid news is sometimes dismissed as a debased form of journalistic discourse with few, if any, political implications. Critical analysis of typical news stories of personal tragedy, natural disaster, celebrity, and crime indicates that tabloid news is both commercially-responsive and liable to articulate narrowly ideological viewpoints.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 234** (2 Points)  
**Latin American Politics**  
 Examines Marxist and non-Marxist theories of development as they apply to Latin America. Covers traditional and modern forms of authoritarian rule, dependent economic relationships, Latin-American-USA relations, and the impact of the end of the Cold War on the region.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies or LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103*
- POLITICS 235** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic: From Community to Market**  
 Which is more important – the individual or the group? Are human needs and talents best served by political participation or by the pursuit of private interest? This course charts the change in Western political thought from the Aristotelian conception of 'man as a political animal' to modern notions of 'economic man'.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 236** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 237** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 238** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 239** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 240** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I in Political Studies*
- 
- Stage III**
- POLITICS 312** (2 Points)  
**Green Politics**  
 An examination of modern environmental problems and ecological thinking. Green politics, in a variety of countries, is explored.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*
- POLITICS 318** (2 Points)  
**International Relations: Theories and New Issues**  
 Modern theories and new issues of international relations examined in the light of empirical, logical and normative evidence.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies*

**POLITICS 320 (2 Points)****Distributive Justice**

An examination of the current leading theories and theorists of distributive justice: equality, giving priority to the worst off, desert, freedom, rights. How these figure in the work of utilitarians, and Rawls, Dworkin, Nozick and Gauthier.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 325 (2 Points)****Concepts of Control**

Studies the logic of concepts used in describing and evaluating political activity and institutions. Concepts include: power, rights, authority, sovereignty, representation, mana, rangatiratanga.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies or Philosophy or Maori Studies

**POLITICS 327 (2 Points)****Ethnic Conflict and International Security**

An analysis of the main factors behind the dramatic rise in the number of violent ethnic conflicts in the world and of their implications for regional and international security. Discussion of current national disputes in the former USSR and Yugoslavia constitutes the core of the course.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 328 (2 Points)****Political Content of Television**

An examination of the political content of television and the factors that influence that content.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 331 (2 Points)****The Politics of East Asian Development**

This course aims at an understanding of economic development and social changes in East Asian countries, and of international relations in the region. Students will develop theoretical and critical thinking, and apply these skills to formulating solutions to social, political, economic and sociocultural problems of East Asian nations.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 332 (2 Points)****Comparative Regime Transition**

Explores the ways in which twentieth century regimes have changed from being democratic to authoritarian (especially in the 1960s) and from being authoritarian to democratic (especially in the 1980s and 90s). Also considers current attempts to create and consolidate democratic regimes throughout the world.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies or (LATINAM 201; HISTORY 231 or POLITICS 234; and SPANISH 211 or 213 or 216)

**POLITICS 333 (2 Points)****The Political System We have Lost**

Examines the uses by recent political actors of descriptions and evocations of political activity and the structure of politics in New Zealand before the reforms which began in 1984 and compares the various descriptions and evocations with an account of the structure and activity of politics as reconstructed using the methods of political science.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 334 (2 Points)****Revolutions, Insurgencies and Counter-Hegemonic Movements**

Explores the theory and practice of subordinate group resistance to status quo politics. This includes both violent and non-violent forms of mass collective action, e.g. urban and rural guerrilla warfare, passive resistance, civil disobedience, eco-terrorism, guerrilla theatre and other types of counter-hegemonic vehicles as well as other forms of anti-establishment politics.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 335 (2 Points)****Reform and Conflict in the Former Soviet Union – Study Abroad**

The course will be taught in English over four weeks in November to December at the Russian Diplomatic Academy or similar institution in Moscow. It consists of lectures and field trips covering various aspects of domestic and foreign policies, economy, legal system, culture and society.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies and permission of Head of Department

**POLITICS 336 (2 Points)****Principles and Politics of Public Management**

An investigation into the principles and practices of government administration and management, in particular, into how the administration of government has been the focus of major reforms in New Zealand, and the effects the reforms have had on the government's policy-making capacity, public accountability and administrative ethics. It will look at New Zealand's status as a designer laboratory for government management, world-wide, and will discuss the implications of the changes in New Zealand for the definition of the 'public sphere' and the appropriate role of government.

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies or 4 points from MAORI 250, POLITICS 221, 222 and 229

**POLITICS 337 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 338 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 339 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 340 (2 Points)****Special Topic: New Zealand Diplomats in Action**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**POLITICS 341 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* Any 4 points at Stage II in Political Studies

**Honours and Master's Courses****POLITICS 703A (2 Points)****POLITICS 703B (2 Points)****Political Economy of Information**

Who pays and who benefits from deregulation in the communication and information industries? What are the political system implications and the social and cultural consequences? Are the trends in the applications of convergent information technologies exclusionary or inclusive?

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 703 A and B*

**POLITICS 712 (4 Points)**  
**Themes in the Politics of the USA**

A selection of topics, mostly on the modern Presidency, or the Supreme Court, showing political institutions coping with controversies and pressures.

**POLITICS 713A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 713B (2 Points)**  
**Public Administration: Current New Zealand Issues**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 713 A and B*

**POLITICS 720A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 720B (2 Points)**  
**Democracy in New Zealand?**

An examination of ways in which democracy can be achieved, comparing New Zealand with other countries using a democratic audit. Topics covered include: representation for individuals and groups, electoral systems, who should participate, deliberation and consensus, decision-making, and political rights.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 720 A and B*

**POLITICS 723A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 723B (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Political Theory**

Major topics in political theory. Includes: freedom and equality; space, time and justice; rational choice theory; markets, welfare and socialism.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 723 A and B*

**POLITICS 724 (4 Points)**  
**Identity Politics**

A political theory course discussing the compatibility of identity politics with the idea of equal citizenship. Topics covered are: Maori land-claims, feminism, group rights, affirmative action, special political representation, discrimination, difference and equality.

**POLITICS 725A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 725B (2 Points)**  
**States in the Global Political Economy**

Examination of both economic competition and cooperation among various states and non-state actors post-World War II. Topics include: the Bretton-Woods system and its transformation; trade liberalisation and mercantile trade policies; industrial policies and economic development, trade and domestic politics; trade disputes among industrialised states and international law; economic regionalism; globalisation and international finance; intellectual property rights, development and international law.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 725 A and B*

**POLITICS 728A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 728B (2 Points)**  
**Security, Diplomacy and Conflict Resolution**

An examination of current security challenges to global and regional order and the role of diplomacy in maintaining stability and resolving conflicts of

interest, as well as interstate and intrastate disputes. The course is focused on themes and issues in the Asia-Pacific region.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 728 A and B*

**POLITICS 729A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 729B (2 Points)**  
**Feminist Political Theory**

A survey of the major feminist contributions in political theory in the last 10 years. Examined are feminist theories of justice, power, citizenship, equality and difference, and feminist interpretations of Hannah Arendt.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 729 A and B*

**POLITICS 730A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 730B (2 Points)**  
**China in World Politics**

A study of the People's Republic of China as a 'bogy' in world politics since 1949, and an examination of the rise of China as an economic power in Asia Pacific.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 730 A and B*

**POLITICS 732A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 732B (2 Points)**  
**Audiences, Television and Elections**

An introduction to institutional and critical approaches to research on television audiences with a special focus on audiences for election campaign television. What do campaign audiences bring to, seek, and take from televised debates, news stories, current affairs programmes, political advertisements and the like? How do campaign audiences differ from audiences for other types of programming?

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 732 A and B*

**POLITICS 735A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 735B (2 Points)**  
**The Analysis of Public Policy**

The focusing question for this course is 'What constitutes good policy-making?' This question is examined from four competing perspectives which emphasise technical expertise, bargaining, negotiation and brokerage between conflicting interests and advocacy, coalitions, the usage of market-like mechanisms and disciplines, and models of participatory democracy applied to policy-making settings. In doing so, themes of knowledge, rationality, legitimacy and power are examined.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 735 A and B*

**POLITICS 736A (2 Points)**

**POLITICS 736B (2 Points)**  
**Transitional Dynamics**

Examines the ways in which recent politics, worldwide, has been a politics of regime transition, a politics of the creation of regional and global groupings, a politics of market penetration and global acculturation, and a politics of changing theoretical perceptions of what politics is. Examines and theorises the transitions these changes encompass and (probably) foreshadow.

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 736 A and B*

**POLITICS 737A** (1 Point)  
**POLITICS 737B** (1 Point)

**A Course-related Research Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 737 A and B*

**POLITICS 738A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 738B** (2 Points)

**Political Symbolism and Opinion Formation**

Focuses on the 'symbolic', 'subjective' and 'communicative' dimensions of human interaction in politics, with particular attention to issues at the intersection of public opinion, individual perception, and mass media. A broadly interdisciplinary perspective is taken, drawing from politically relevant theories and empirical research techniques in adjacent disciplines of psychology, sociology, anthropology and communication.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 738 A and B*

**POLITICS 739A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 739B** (2 Points)

**Civil Society**

Examines definitions of civil society, its values and virtues; the variety of citizen movements; a comparison of left-wing 'withering away' and right-wing 'rolling back' approaches to the state; globalisation, technology, ethnocentrism and international non-governing organisations; various case studies of citizen movements in the United States; methods of citizen participation, and an application of the theories and models to contemporary New Zealand.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 739 A and B*

**POLITICS 740A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 740B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Political Thinking in the English, Scots and French Enlightenment**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 740 A and B*

**POLITICS 741A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 741B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: Episodes in British Political Thought; The Civil Wars and the Anglo-Scottish Union**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 741 A and B*

**POLITICS 742** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**POLITICS 743** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**POLITICS 744A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 744B** (2 Points)

**Public Policy and the Welfare State**

An examination of how welfare states have been reformed and restricted in selected democracies, especially in New Zealand, Australia, Canada, the United States and Britain. Areas of interest include health, housing, pensions, employment policy, accident compensation and poverty.

*Restriction: 285.314*

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 744 A and B*

**POLITICS 745A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 745B** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 745 A and B*

**POLITICS 746** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**POLITICS 747A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 747B** (2 Points)

**Japan's Domestic and Foreign Policies**

Surveys Japan's modernisation from the Meiji Restoration to the present, and its foreign policy over the same period. Continuity and change in geopolitical contexts, development of Japanese democracy, development ideology, and their interaction with Japan's sociological changes are examined. Various contemporary political issues in Japan, including the changing political-economic structure, deregulation, trade disputes, ageing, increasing diplo-military role, and the political realignment will be discussed.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 747 A and B*

**POLITICS 748** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**POLITICS 750A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 750B** (2 Points)

**International Relations and Human Rights**

Explores the interaction between states, nongovernmental organisations, international institutions, and international law with regard to the protection of human rights. Instruments of statecraft ranging from diplomacy to military intervention are described and assessed in light of case studies of their employment, with domestic politics as well as changing international circumstances taken into account.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 750 A and B*

**POLITICS 751A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 751B** (2 Points)

**Politics, Statecraft and Regional Order**

Examines international and domestic politics in foreign policy-making in China and the United States, assessing the influences of national interests, ideology, interest groups, institutional interests, public opinion, etc. Considers Sino-American relations since the 1940s, and analyses some current major bilateral and regional issues in the Asia-Pacific region, with special attention to Northeast Asia.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 751 A and B*

**POLITICS 752A** (2 Points)  
**POLITICS 752B** (2 Points)

**Foreign and Defence Policies of Major Powers**

Reviews the wide spectrum of foreign policies available to governments of major states, ranging from diplomatic coalition-building through trade sanctions to military action. Introduces theories and examples of the exercise of persuasion, economic

influence, and military force to be researched and reported on, orally and in writing, by students.

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 752 A and B*

**POLITICS 753A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 753B** (2 Points)

Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 753 A and B*

**POLITICS 754A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 754B** (2 Points)

Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 754 A and B*

**POLITICS 755** (2 Points)

Research Essay

A supervised research essay for the programme in International Relations and Human Rights in the Master of Professional Studies. Its subject matter is to be chosen from among the topics, or as closely related to the topics, covered in the courses which the student has been permitted to take as part of this degree.

**POLITICS 756A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 756B** (2 Points)

Special Topic

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 756 A and B*

**POLITICS 757** (2 Points)

Special Topic

**POLITICS 758** (2 Points)

Special Topic

**POLITICS 780A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 780B** (2 Points)

Honours Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 780 A and B*

**POLITICS 790A** (2 Points)

**POLITICS 790B** (2 Points)

Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 790 A and B*

**POLITICS 796A** (7 Points)

**POLITICS 796B** (7 Points)

Thesis

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 796 A and B*

**POLITICS 797A** (7 Points)

**POLITICS 797B** (7 Points)

Research Portfolio

To complete this course students must enrol in *POLITICS 797 A and B*

**Russian**

**Stage I**

**RUSSIAN 100** (2 Points)

Beginners' Russian A

Written and oral use of elementary Russian tested by translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation and reading.

**RUSSIAN 101** (2 Points)

Beginners' Russian B

Written and oral use of Russian tested by translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation and reading.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 100* or Departmental approval required

**RUSSIAN 112** (2 Points)

Russian Civilisation

A survey of the political, social, economic, religious, intellectual and artistic forces that have shaped contemporary Russia.

**RUSSIAN 113** (2 Points)

Classics of Russian/Slavonic Literature in Translation

Studies in major examples of Russian/Slavonic prose fiction and drama.

**RUSSIAN 121** (2 Points)

Preliminary Russian for Business

Elementary reading knowledge of Russian based on passages from the financial pages of *Izvestia* is combined with English-language discussion of the Russian business environment. Topics covered include: profiles of major Russian corporations in the finance, energy and oil and gas sectors, relationships between business and government in Moscow today and prospects for expanding New Zealand exports to Russia.

Restriction: *RUSSIAN 100*

**Stage II**

**RUSSIAN 210A** (2 Points)

**RUSSIAN 210B** (2 Points)

Intermediate Russian

Written and oral use of intermediate Russian tested by translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation and reading.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 101*

To complete this course students must enrol in *RUSSIAN 210 A and B*

**RUSSIAN 214** (2 Points)

Russian Verbal and Visual Art

This course considers Russian lyric texts in relation to Russian painting. Discussions are accompanied by lectures on Russian culture before Pushkin and Russian poetic style.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 101*

Corequisite: *RUSSIAN 210 A and B*

Restriction: *290.211*

**RUSSIAN 250** (2 Points)

Archetypes in Russian Literature: Strong Women and Superfluous Men

Studies in major examples of Russian prose fiction and drama, in English translation. The main texts are *Hero of Our Time*, *Crime and Punishment*, *Cherry Orchard* and *Doctor Zhivago*.

Prerequisite: *HISTORY 101* or 4 points in BA courses

Restriction: *RUSSIAN 113*

**RUSSIAN 277** (2 Points)

Russian Study Abroad IIA

Refer to the entry for *Language Study Abroad*.

Prerequisite: Departmental approval required

Schedule of Prescriptions  
For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

**RUSSIAN 278** (2 Points)  
**Russian Study Abroad IIB**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: RUSSIAN 277 and Departmental approval required*

### Stage III

**RUSSIAN 310** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Russian**  
 Written and oral use of advanced Russian tested by translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation and reading.

*Prerequisite: RUSSIAN 210 or Departmental approval required*

*Corequisite: RUSSIAN 311 or 312*

**RUSSIAN 311** (2 Points)  
**The Slavonic Languages Today**  
 A survey of key linguistic and sociolinguistic features of Russian: phonology, morphology, historical phenomena and recent lexical developments.

*Prerequisite: 290.200 or RUSSIAN 210 or Departmental approval required*

**RUSSIAN 312** (2 Points)  
**Russian Narrative Art**  
 Readings of short Russian prose texts with special reference to narrative methods. Discussion ranges from the Russian fairy tale to the complex modes of Gogol.

*Prerequisite: RUSSIAN 214*

*Corequisite: RUSSIAN 310 A and B*

*Restriction: 290.212*

**RUSSIAN 313** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Russian Literature of the 20th Century**  
 Representative short texts in poetry and prose by major Russian writers active since 1900.

*Prerequisite: 290.200 and 290.211*

*Corequisite: RUSSIAN 310 A and B, and RUSSIAN 311*

**RUSSIAN 350** (2 Points)  
**Issues in Contemporary Russia**  
 Focuses on the economic, cultural and religious freedoms that have characterised Russia since the collapse of Soviet totalitarianism. Includes examination of financial developments and explores contemporary religious thought and literary expressions of similar issues.

*Prerequisite: HISTORY 101 and POLITICS 215*

**RUSSIAN 377** (2 Points)  
**Russian Study Abroad IIIA**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**RUSSIAN 378** (2 Points)  
**Russian Study Abroad IIIB**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: RUSSIAN 377 and Departmental approval required*

**RUSSIAN 390** (2 Points)  
**East European Interdisciplinary Essay**  
 Students taking this course will write a 6000-word essay on a historical, political or cultural problem deriving from their prior courses on Eastern Europe, in consultation with one or more of their principal teachers.

*Prerequisite: HISTORY 101, POLITICS 215 and RUSSIAN 350*

### Honours and Master's Courses

**RUSSIAN 710A** (2 Points)  
**RUSSIAN 710B** (2 Points)

#### Language Acquisition: Russian

Oral and written expression and aural and written comprehension in Russian, tested by comprehension, composition, explanation, conversation, translation, dictation, reading.

*To complete this course students must enrol in RUSSIAN 710 A and B*

**RUSSIAN 711** (4 Points)  
**The Structure of Russian**

An in-depth examination of selected areas of modern Russian phonology, morphology and syntax.

**RUSSIAN 714** (4 Points)  
**Slavonic Lexicography and Lexicology**

A study of dictionaries in specialised areas of Russian, principles of lexicology as applied to Modern Russian, the Russian vocabulary (including terminologies) in its Eurasian context.

**RUSSIAN 715** (4 Points)  
**Comparative Slavonic Linguistics I**

Introduction to West Slavonic languages; linguistic study of a West Slavonic language (Czech or Polish) through Russian.

**RUSSIAN 716** (4 Points)  
**Comparative Slavonic Linguistics II**

Introduction to South Slavonic languages; linguistic study of a South Slavonic language (Croatian, Serbian or Bulgarian) through Russian.

**RUSSIAN 717** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**

**RUSSIAN 718** (4 Points)  
**Research Methods in Russian Studies**

The theory and practice of academic discourse in either linguistics or literature.

**RUSSIAN 719** (4 Points)  
**Early Russian Literature**

A survey in the original of major works of Russian Literature prior to 1700, including folk, religious, political and satirical texts, and with special reference to the *Slovo o polku Igoreve* and the *Zhitie of Avvakum*.

**RUSSIAN 720** (4 Points)  
**18th Century Russian Literature**

A survey of the major genres of Russian Literature in the eighteenth century, with special reference to Radishchev, Derzhavin and Karamzin.

**RUSSIAN 721** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic in Russian Poetry**

Advanced study of either a single Russian poetic movement or of a major Russian poet.

**RUSSIAN 722** (4 Points)  
**Dostoevsky and Tolstoi**

The close study of selected prose and plays of Chekhov, with special attention to his legacy in the development of Russian and world literature.

**RUSSIAN 723** (4 Points)  
**Pushkin**

Detailed study of *Eugenii Onegin* and other poetry and prose texts by Pushkin.

**RUSSIAN 724A** (2 Points)  
**RUSSIAN 724B** (2 Points)

**Moscow in Russian Literature and Culture**

A survey of major texts on this theme by poets and prose writers from late medieval times onwards in the context of political, social and cultural developments.

To complete this course students must enrol in *RUSSIAN 724 A and B*

**RUSSIAN 725** (4 Points)

**Petersburg in Russian Poetry and Prose**

The Petersburg literary myth examined on the basis of major poetic and prose texts from the late eighteenth century onwards.

**RUSSIAN 726** (2 Points)

**Modern Russian Literature**

Readings of short lyric and prose texts by ten representative Russian authors, active since the time of Chekhov.

Restriction: *RUSSIAN 313*

**RUSSIAN 732** (4 Points)

**Advanced Russian Translation Practice**

Designed for students who wish to attain expertise in the field of translation. Coursework will consist of correct use of dictionary and reference materials in printed and electronic forms, practice in translation of written material from and into Russian in a variety of registers, critical evaluation of translations.

Prerequisite: *RUSSIAN 310*

Restriction: 290.712

**RUSSIAN 733** (2 Points)

**Practical Stylistics of Modern Russian**

An in-depth study of the functional styles of modern Russian, including grammatical and lexical stylistics.

Restriction: 290.713

**RUSSIAN 790** (4 Points)

**Dissertation**

**RUSSIAN 796A** (7 Points)

**RUSSIAN 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in *RUSSIAN 796 A and B*

**RUSSIAN 797A** (7 Points)

**RUSSIAN 797B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in *RUSSIAN 797 A and B*

**Samoan**

**Stage I**

**SAMOAN 101** (2 Points)

**Samoan Acquisition I**

The acquisition of basic Samoan; the development of skills in listening, speaking and writing.

**SAMOAN 102** (2 Points)

**Samoan Structure I**

An extension of basic skills of writing and reading and an introduction to complex sentence

structures. Samoan cultural behaviour and protocol at home.

Prerequisite: *SAMOAN 101*

**SAMOAN 103** (2 Points)

**Samoan Literature I**

Introduces students to the range of genres in Samoan that can be classified as 'literature'. These include: *tala o le vavau* (myths and legends); *talafatu/tala pupu'u* (narratives); *pese* (songs); *tusigatala/tusigasolo* (creative writing); *solo* (poetry), and *solo fa'aanamua* (chants); proverbs and sayings; historical accounts; and speeches. These genres will be analysed with a view to describing their purposes, history and context, cultural significance, the devices employed, and appreciation.

Prerequisite: Approval of Head of Department

**Stage II**

**SAMOAN 201** (2 Points)

**Samoan Acquisition II**

An extension of the skills of reading, writing, listening and speaking. Emphasis will be placed on the structure of Samoan sentences and the various meanings of terms within the context of a Samoan sentence. Practice in writing in Samoan and translation.

Prerequisite: *SAMOAN 101*

**SAMOAN 202** (2 Points)

**Samoan Structure II**

Concentrates on the language of speeches used in Samoan protocol. Examines further the relationship between ordinary and respectful language. We will look at respectful terms (*upu faaloalo*), metaphorical phrases (*alagaupu*), and be introduced to formal speeches (*lauga*). We will also be studying various protocols where the studied language aspects are practically applied. Students will be expected to prepare and present a formal Samoan speech as an important practical in this course.

Prerequisite: *SAMOAN 102*

**Stage III**

**SAMOAN 301** (2 Points)

**Samoan Acquisition III**

An extension of oral and writing skills so that students may be competent in conversation and composition skills in Samoan.

Prerequisite: *SAMOAN 201*

**SAMOAN 302** (2 Points)

**Samoan Structure III**

Extension of vocabulary and confidence in speaking and writing of Samoan in formal and informal situations. Analysis of proverbs, poems and articles on Samoan culture. The structure of Samoan oratory and the composition of speech in the language of orators. Examination of procedures, protocol and language involved in activities such as weddings, funerals and title bestowals.

Prerequisite: *SAMOAN 202*

**Scandinavian Studies**

**Stage I**

**SCAND 101** (2 Points)

**Swedish Language Introductory A**

Written and oral use of Swedish.

*Restriction: SCAND 161***SCAND 102****(2 Points)****Swedish Language Introductory B**

Written and oral use of Swedish.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 101**Restriction: SCAND 162***SCAND 107****(2 Points)****Garbo and Co: Scandinavian Women in Film**

'Some of the most innovative and by any standards high-ranking films happen to have been made by women: in terms of formal renewal they have undoubtedly been trailblazers for the Scandinavian cinema as a whole'. Critic Maaret Koskinen's high opinion will be put to the test on a wide range of films involving Scandinavian women in front of and behind the camera.

**SCAND 110****(2 Points)****Aspects of Scandinavian Civilisation**

A survey of Scandinavian civilisation, including aspects of nineteenth and twentieth century history, literature and cinema.

**SCAND 161****(2 Points)****Swedish Language Introductory A – Distance Learning**

Students will be taught the basics of Swedish: grammar, pronunciation, intonation, basic vocabulary, phraseology. General background of life in Sweden and Swedish history. This course will be taught by distance learning.

*Restriction: SCAND 101***SCAND 162****(2 Points)****Swedish Language Introductory B – Distance Learning**

This is a continuation of SCAND 101/161 and includes further knowledge of Swedish grammar, pronunciation, intonation, phraseology and a widened Swedish vocabulary. More detailed information on life in Sweden and Swedish history. This course will be taught by distance learning.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 101 or 161**Restriction: SCAND 102***Stage II****SCAND 101****(2 Points)****Swedish Language Intermediate**

Written and oral use of Swedish.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 102***SCAND 203****(2 Points)****Swedish Short Stories and Novels**

Selected nineteenth and twentieth century Swedish stories in a literary and social context.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 102**Restriction: SCAND 303***SCAND 204****(2 Points)****Swedish Poetry**

Swedish poetry in an historical context, with special emphasis on ballads and songs.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 102**Restriction: SCAND 304***SCAND 205****(2 Points)****Swedish Film**

Swedish-film classics from Sjöström and Stiller to Ingmar Bergman.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points passed**Restriction: SCAND 305***SCAND 277****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Studies Study Abroad IIA***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: Departmental approval required***SCAND 278****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Studies Study Abroad IIB***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: SCAND 277 and Departmental approval required***SCAND 290****(2 Points)****Special Topic***Prerequisite: SCAND 102***Stage III****SCAND 301****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Languages Advanced**

Written and oral Swedish and an understanding of written and spoken Danish and Norwegian.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 201***SCAND 303****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Short Stories and Novels**

Selected nineteenth and twentieth century Scandinavian stories in a literary and social context.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 201**Restriction: SCAND 203***SCAND 304****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Poetry**

Scandinavian poetry in an historical context, with special emphasis on ballads and songs.

*Prerequisite: SCAND 201**Restriction: SCAND 204***SCAND 305****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Film**

Scandinavian Films from Sjöström, Stiller and Dreyer to Ingmar Bergman and Bille August.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II**Restriction: SCAND 205***SCAND 307****(2 Points)****Ingmar Bergman: Cinema of the Golden Years**

The Ingmar Bergman films discussed range from the mid 1950s (Smiles of a Summer's Night) to the early 1970s (Whispers and Cries). They will be analysed from varying viewpoints: religious (The Seventh Seal; The Trilogy), motival (the artist versus society in The Magician), cinematographic (Persona as a meta-film), and as links in a literary tradition (Strindbergian influences on Wild Strawberries).

*Prerequisite: SCAND 205 or 305 or FTVMS 100 or 101***SCAND 377****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Studies Study Abroad IIIA***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: Departmental approval required***SCAND 378****(2 Points)****Scandinavian Studies Study Abroad IIIB***Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.**Prerequisite: SCAND 377 and Departmental approval required*

**SCAND 390**  
**Special Topic****(2 Points)***Prerequisite: SCAND 201***Sociology****Stage I****SOCIOL 100****(2 Points)****Issues and Themes in Sociology**

Introduction to sociology as a discipline and a review of some of its internal debates. Topics include: social class, gender, globalisation, power, sexual identity, family. Draws on material from a range of societies.

**SOCIOL 101****(2 Points)****Understanding Aotearoa/New Zealand**

An introduction to understanding Aotearoa/New Zealand. A critical examination of contested ideas about Aotearoa/New Zealand's colonial origins and development, to contemporary issues of race, gender and class relations. We look at Aotearoa/New Zealand as part of the Asia/Pacific and finish with the question 'Where is Aotearoa/New Zealand going?' in the global economy.

*Restriction: 315.104***SOCIOL 102****(2 Points)****Becoming Modern**

Sociology is a modern discipline, born of the 'dual revolution'. French political experience between 1789 and 1871, and British industrialisation are studied to explore the nature of modernity. And hence, of course, why sociology takes its current intellectual shape.

**SOCIOL 103****(2 Points)****Social Policy, Social Justice**

An introduction to sociological analysis and inquiry through the examination of several social policy areas of importance in contemporary New Zealand, in terms of the social features of these issues, and the sociology of the policy responses to them.

**SOCIOL 105****(2 Points)****Cultural Studies and Society**

A cultural studies approach to social life focuses on the way we experience the world, taking account of what we see, what we hear, what we consume and how we communicate. This course looks at how our lives are influenced by flows of images and objects around the world, and tracks the ways that global and local processes impact on each other.

**Stage II****SOCIOL 200****(2 Points)****Theory and Society**

An introduction to the major themes of social theory. The focus is on the analyses of modern society to be found in the works of classical and contemporary social analysts.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

*Restriction: SOCIOL 223***SOCIOL 201****(2 Points)****Social Research: An Introduction**

An introduction to social research through an

examination of both qualitative and quantitative approaches.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 208****(2 Points)****Work and Leisure**

Examination of the social aspects of work and leisure with emphasis on the impact of restructuring and globalisation. Material will be drawn from a number of societies but there will be some emphasis on the development of an understanding of the New Zealand situation.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 210****(2 Points)****Colonisation, Globalisation and Development**

From 1492 to Franz Fanon to the Zapatistas, we look at the 'West and the Rest' through the realities of colonialism and decolonisation; 'aid and development'; under/over development; globalisation; IMF/ World Bank/World Trade Organisation hegemony; the rise of the Non-Governmental Organisations and the anti-capitalist upsurges of the new millennium.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass or LATINAM 100 or SPANISH 103*

**SOCIOL 211****(2 Points)****Sociology and Popular Culture**

An interpretation of popular culture both as an indicator of social change and as a location of meaning and significance. Undertaken by the analysis of the industries which organise it, the texts which realise it, and the audiences which recognise it.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 212****(2 Points)****Race, Gender and Class in Australia and New Zealand**

This course looks at the persistence of race, gender and class inequality in Australia and New Zealand, from white settlement to the 'celebrations' of 1988/1990 and onwards to the bicultural and multicultural settlements in the twenty-first century.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

*Restriction: 315.305***SOCIOL 213****(2 Points)****Ethnicity and Identity**

Theories of ethnicity: ethnic socialisation and resocialisation, ethnocide and ethnogenesis, ethnicity and the individual, ethnic social movements, ethnicity in local, national and international affairs.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass*

**SOCIOL 214****(2 Points)****Sociology of Gender**

Introduction to the sociology of gender. Preliminary examination of the topics of concern to sociologists and the major theoretical perspectives - psychoanalytic, functionalist, Marxist, socialisation, feminist, antifeminist, biological. Critical analysis of key sites such as the family, reproduction,

mothering, sexuality, and violence against women, drawing on both international and local literature.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass

**SOIOL 215 (2 Points)**

**Law, Inequality and the State**

Examines, in a comparative mode, how law as a set of social relations and categories can both create and remedy inequalities of gender, race, and class.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass

**SOIOL 216 (2 Points)**

**Sociology and Crime: An Introduction**

What is crime? What causes crime? What are the best ways of dealing with crime? Why are specific actions labelled 'criminal'? Are some people more likely to be judged criminal than others? This course examines such questions by introducing and critically analysing selected theories of crime.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass

**SOIOL 220 (2 Points)**

**Last Call: The Sociology of Death and Dying**

Examines the location of death in modern life. Draws on perceptions of death from sociological, philosophical, religious, historical, secular and medical approaches.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass

**SOIOL 221 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass

**SOIOL 222 (2 Points)**

**Families, Labour and Love**

The focus of this course is how and why family life is influenced by economic and labour force trends, laws and social values, as well as personal ideals and decisions. Partnering, childbearing, gendered labour and divorce, from both historical and cross-national perspectives, will be studied.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass

**SOIOL 224 (2 Points)**

**Migration in the Pacific**

Reviews the history of human migration within the Pacific region from the earliest ancestral Polynesian settlements, through European missionisation and colonisation to the labour migrations of the late twentieth century. Concentrates on the social, demographic, political and economic forces which produce movements and consequences of migration for typical donor and recipient states' societies and economies. Will conclude with consideration of complex 'meta-communities' which now incorporate 'home societies' and their diasporic 'offshoot' communities in 'migration systems' between which people and resources flow.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage I in Sociology or 2 points at Stage I in Sociology with a minimum B+ pass

**Stage III**

**SOIOL 303 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of Religion**

Examines sociological accounts of the changing relationship between religion and the state in modern society and pays particular attention to two topics: contemporary religious movements and cults, and religion as a system of legitimation.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Sociology

**SOIOL 304 (2 Points)**

**Pakeha Identity: Issues and Processes**

A critical examination of the conception of national identity. Examines what is meant by national identity; how and why such identities come into being; what is meant by 'culture', and the relationship between 'culture and identity'. Focuses on the New Zealand Pakeha experience.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Sociology

**SOIOL 307 (2 Points)**

**The Pacific in the World**

Brief history of post-World War II theories of economic development; Wallerstein and elements of Modern World System; modern world system; and patterns of development in the Pacific; linkages between core and semi-periphery Britain, US, East Asia and Aotearoa/New Zealand and Samoa/Cooks and Tuvalu; limitations of world systems models.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Sociology

**SOIOL 308 (2 Points)**

**Law and Identity**

Survey of theoretical and practical approaches to understanding the relationship between law and society in the modern state. Emphasis on their potential application in New Zealand society.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Sociology or Law

**SOIOL 310 (2 Points)**

**Applied Social Research**

Develops methodological competence in applied social research methods within a wider and critical framework of understanding of the social policy process and apparatus.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Sociology

**SOIOL 311 (2 Points)**

**Sociology, Science and Technology**

An examination of the relation between science, technology and other social institutions, the internal relations of scientific communities and the social consequences of science and technology.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Sociology or 4 points at Stage II in History and Philosophy of Science and Technology

**SOIOL 313 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of Contemporary Asia**

Broad survey of socio-historical transformation in Asia: historical patterns of development; colonisation and nationalism; social, economic, and political trends of the post-World War II period; deindustrialisation and reindustrialisation.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Sociology

**SOIOL 314 (2 Points)**

**Women/Deviance**

An analysis of the construction of images and representations of women in relation to conceptions of normality and deviance in bodies, reproduction, and popular culture; the creation of feminist epistemologies.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology or Women's Studies*

**SOCIOL 317 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of the Welfare State: From Welfare to Workfare?**

An examination of the origins, history, the present crisis, and possible futures of the welfare state. The course looks at a range of contested theories from neo-liberal to neo-Marxist. It will be comparative but will focus on the New Zealand/Aotearoa case.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

*Restriction: 315.301*

**SOCIOL 318 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of the Media**

An exploration of the relationship and patterns of interaction between media, culture and society through an examination of the print and broadcasting media, and advertising, in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 320 (2 Points)**

**Qualitative Sociological Research**

An introduction to non-numerical research methodologies in sociology. Topics drawn from a wide range: ethnography, interviews, life history methods, archival research, analysis of text. Not all topics will be included in any one year.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 321 (2 Points)**

**Quantitative Sociological Research**

Principles and practice of the design, execution and analysis of the several forms of 'systematic social research' (including survey research, census and other social bookkeeping data, content analysis, systematic observation and unobtrusive methods) and their usefulness within sociological analyses. Not all topics will be included in any one year.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 323 (2 Points)**

**Consuming Interests: The Sociology of Food**

Food is basic to human society. This course blends social history, political economy and hermeneutics to examine sociological aspects of food production, processing, distribution and consumption. Other issues raised will include hunger and famine, colonialism, gender differences, and development.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 324 (2 Points)**

**Special Issues in Gender**

Focuses on current and controversial issues in the sociology of gender, especially debates on the natural or social status of sex, gender and sexuality. Issues will be approached from contemporary feminist perspectives, including post-structuralist and other critical feminist theories. Various topics (including sex, sexualities, reproduction, transgender and cybersex) will be critically examined in both theoretical and practical terms.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 325 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Sociology of Emotions**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 326 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Sociology of Violence**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 330 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 331 (2 Points)**

**Issues and Themes in Visual Culture**

Considers the significance of vision in the societies and cultures of modernity based on the notion that perception is socially and historically constructed. Looks at the impact of technology on vision and the way visual practices travel the world.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 333 (2 Points)**

**Sociology of Health and Medicine**

Examines the social construction of health, illness and medicine in New Zealand. A range of issues and sociological accounts will be addressed, including: competing conceptions of medicine and the sick role; the political economy of health; debates around professionalism and managerialism; the interface of medicalisation, risk and claims-making; medical ethics; the sociology of the body; lay-accounts and contested character of medical knowledge.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II in Sociology*

**SOCIOL 334 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**SOCIOL 700 (4 Points)**

**Advanced Problems in Sociological Theory**

Addresses contemporary developments and debates in the field of social theory and explores the effect of a range of complex social, cultural, economic and political processes of transformation on human experience and conduct.

*Restriction: SOCIOL 733*

**SOCIOL 701 (4 Points)**

**Advanced Problems in Sociological Method**

Examination of sociological issues arising from consideration of the principles and practice of the design, execution and analysis of various forms of social research.

**SOCIOL 702 (4 Points)**

**Asia and the Modern World-system**

Examination of historical patterns of social transformation in several regions of Asia; incorporation and peripheralisation; rise of East Asia.

**SOCIOL 708 (4 Points)**

**Complex Organisations**

Reviews methods and recent approaches to organisational analysis within a sociology of knowledge framework. Emphasises cross-cultural and comparative inquiry, focusing on such topics as Japanisation and post-Fordism.

**SOCIOL 712 (4 Points)**

**Capitalism in the 20th Century**

Through an analysis of the works of Marx, Polanyi, Schumpeter and other major theorists, provides an historically grounded, theoretical examination of capitalism in the twentieth century; restructuring of global patterns of trade, production, and labour migrations; hegemonic structures and political

institutions; industrialisation and de-industrialisation; rural transformations; anti-systemic movements.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 713 (4 Points)**

**Sociology of Law**

Recent theoretical developments in the study of law and society including the law and literature movement, feminist jurisprudence, and critical race theory.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 714 (4 Points)**

**Marxism and Sociology**

Examines the basic methodological differences between Marxism and sociology and their implications for the understanding and transformation of society, with reference to a range of areas of concern selected by students.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 715 (4 Points)**

**Development and the 'Third World' State**

Begins with the re-emergence of a concern with the 'political' in development policies. Explores both the issues and problems which emerge from this focus, such as a concern with Democracy, Human Rights, Civil Society, Legitimacy, and the relationship between the nation state, economic development and globalisation processes. The emphasis is on the Asia Pacific region.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 718 (4 Points)**

**Research Projects: Design and Practice**

Research problem formulation and refinement; searching and reviewing literatures; designing and redesigning research strategies; ethical issues and procedures; calculation of personnel, material, and other resource requirements; preparing formal proposals; pilot study design and implementation.

*Restriction: SOCIOLOGICAL 731*

**SOCIOLOGICAL 719 (4 Points)**

**Sport, Gender and Politics**

Offers students the opportunity to explore social, cultural and political aspects of sport and leisure.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 722 (4 Points)**

**Remaking Aotearoa/New Zealand**

Aotearoa/New Zealand has experienced several critical 're-makings', from: Maori society to white-settler colony; from colony to nation; from '30s depression to post-war boom; from the end of the 'golden weather' to de-regulated player in the global economy. Despite these episodes, the gaps between Maori/Pakeha; men/women and employers/workers remain as the objects of future contested settlements within Aotearoa/New Zealand as a nation, or nations.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 726 (4 Points)**

**Nature and Society**

A critical examination of the recent rise of the construction of 'nature' as a theme in social theory, which leads on to a reconsideration of the division between the natural and social sciences.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 727 (4 Points)**

**The Sociology of Governance, Sanction and Censure**

Why do we behave in the ways we do? What are the wider consequences of so acting? On the basis of

such questions, this course analyses the sanctioning and censoring processes by which we, as subjects of a given society, are governed. It engages a theoretical tradition in sociology concerned with developing non-violent and non-coercive methods of controlling people, and producing just social formations.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 728 (4 Points)**

**Family, Women and the State**

This seminar will examine how ideologies of mothering, family and work, as well as the political forces and pressure groups that promote them, have influenced both the development and restructuring of social policies in several industrialised nations, including New Zealand.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 729 (4 Points)**

**Modernity and Consciousness**

Operating on the boundary between sociologies of history and culture, this course employs the work of Walter Benjamin, Marshall Berman, Wolfgang Schivelbusch, Raymond Williams and Talcott Parsons to explore creatively tangled relationships among three superficially similar terms - 'modernisation', 'modernity' and 'modernism' - in sundry nineteenth and twentieth century urban and rural settings.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 730 (4 Points)**

**Globalisation and Market Governance**

Political sociology has traditionally focused on relationships between state and society. Recent theoretical and empirical changes challenge this approach. Post-structuralism, neo-Marxism and feminism have given rise to wider definitions of power, politics and social identities. Globalisation, the shift from government to governance, and the rise of 'new social movements' have transformed the social terrain of political struggle. Examines contemporary debates in political sociology.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 731 (2 Points)**

**Pre-Research Practicum**

Intended for students proposing either a thesis or dissertation as part of their Master's degree. Consists of a series of formal presentations of research proposals at various stages of their development.

*Restriction: SOCIOLOGICAL 718*

**SOCIOLOGICAL 732 (4 Points)**

**Tourism and Heritage**

Tourism is one of the world's largest and fastest growing industries. This course examines tourism's intersection with 'heritage', considering the political economy of tourist development, the tourist gaze, commodified 'authenticity', and cultural conflicts in tourism.

**SOCIOLOGICAL 733 (2 Points)**

**Critiquing Sociological Research**

Aims to provide analytic tools with which to critique research through a sociological lens. Discusses the meaning of research, with a particular emphasis on the precepts of sociological research, and will focus on key sociological debates in the areas of ontology, epistemology, theory and methodology.

*Restriction: SOCIOLOGICAL 700*

**SOCIOL 734 (4 Points)**  
**Gambling, Governance and Identity**  
 Provides sociological accounts of gambling locally and globally. Explores issues associated with diversification of the field, unstable policy networks, hegemony of medical models, new technologies and the role of gambling in the construction of communities and identities. Examines topical issues around gambling (e.g. problem gambling, licensing, disempowerment, taxation) and opens up broader discussions of the State, claims-making, and identity politics.

**SOCIOL 735 (4 Points)**  
**Current Debates in Gender and Sexuality**  
 Traces contemporary sociological debates in the analysis of gender and sexuality, specifically the ontological origin of gender difference. Also debated will be feminist concerns with 'bodies' as the basis on which cultural difference, sexual identity, citizenship and rights are configured in modernity. These issues will be taken up and explored through an examination of practices enacted on and/or through sexualised bodies.  
*Restriction: 315.723*

**SOCIOL 736 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**SOCIOL 737 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**SOCIOL 792 (6 Points)**

**SOCIOL 792A (3 Points)**  
**SOCIOL 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**  
*Prerequisite: SOCIOL 731 or 733*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOCIOL 792 A and B, or SOCIOL 792.

**SOCIOL 796A (7 Points)**  
**SOCIOL 796B (7 Points)**  
**Thesis**

*Prerequisite: SOCIOL 731 or 733*  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOCIOL 796 A and B

**SOCIOL 797A (7 Points)**  
**SOCIOL 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in SOCIOL 797 A and B

**Spanish**

**Stage I**

**SPANISH 101 (2 Points)**  
**Selected Texts in 20th Century Literature**  
 An introduction to twentieth century Hispanic literature through a series of selected texts from poetry, novel and drama.

**SPANISH 103 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Hispanic Civilisation**  
 An introduction to the rich and complex civilisation of Spain and Spanish America, focusing on major political events, social institutions and cultural phenomena.

**SPANISH 104 (2 Points)**  
**Beginners' Spanish A**  
 Designed for students who have no previous knowledge of Spanish. Teaching of grammar is reinforced by written exercises, aural and reading comprehension, oral practice and audio-visual work. This course does not count towards a major in Spanish. It is, however, a prerequisite for SPANISH 105.

*Restriction: SPANISH 107, 109*

**SPANISH 105 (2 Points)**  
**Beginners' Spanish B**  
 This language acquisition course follows on from SPANISH 104, giving students a thorough grounding in Spanish on which they can build in future years.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 104 or 109*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 108, 110*

**SPANISH 107 (2 Points)**  
**Spanish IA (Non-Beginners)**  
 This is a language acquisition course taught entirely in Spanish for students who have studied Spanish before and already have a good command of the language. This course does not count towards a major in Spanish.

*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 104, 109*

**SPANISH 108 (2 Points)**  
**Spanish IB (Non-Beginners)**  
 Advanced language acquisition following on from SPANISH 107, consolidating and advancing skills in the areas of oral and written expression and comprehension.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 107*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 105, 110*

**SPANISH 109 (2 Points)**  
**Beginners' Spanish A – Distance Learning**  
 Designed for students who have no previous knowledge of Spanish. Teaching of grammar is reinforced by written exercises, aural and reading comprehension, oral practice and audio-visual work. This course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and a CD-Rom drive. The course does not count towards a major in Spanish.

*Restriction: SPANISH 104, 107*

**SPANISH 110 (2 Points)**  
**Beginners' Spanish B – Distance Learning**  
 This language acquisition course follows on from SPANISH 109, giving students a thorough grounding in Spanish on which they can build in future years. The course will be taught by distance learning. Prospective students must have access to email and a CD-Rom drive.

*Prerequisite: SPANISH 104 or 109*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 105, 108*

**Stage II**

**SPANISH 200 (2 Points)**  
**Intermediate Spanish A**  
 Second-year language, building on the basic knowledge obtained in SPANISH 105, 108 or 110, revising and expanding work covered in Stage I.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

- SPANISH 201** (2 Points)  
**Intermediate Spanish B**  
 Builds on skills obtained in SPANISH 200 with special emphasis on practical work, spoken Spanish and development of aural-oral skills.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 200*
- SPANISH 202** (2 Points)  
**Iberian Cultures and Literatures 1200–1600**  
 An introduction to the development of Iberian literatures in their cultural contexts from the Mediaeval, Renaissance and Early-Colonial eras (thirteenth through sixteenth centuries).  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 203** (2 Points)  
**Literary Analysis, with Prescribed Texts**  
 An introduction to literary analysis and critical theory.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 204** (2 Points)  
**Tradition and Dissidence: 20th Century Texts**  
 An introduction to the historical background of modern Spain and to some of the best literature produced in Spain from 1936 through the Franco era to recent times.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 205** (2 Points)  
**20th Century Latin American Texts**  
 Focuses on representative works of Latin American literature, including poetry and prose.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 209** (2 Points)  
**'Practising Critics' in the Hispanic World**  
 A study of the intellectual currents in contemporary Hispanic writing. The texts will consist of critical works by well-known creative Hispanic writers.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 210** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Spanish Literature and its Context**  
 Development of a basic knowledge and critical awareness concerning the history of Spanish literature and its social and cultural context.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 211** (2 Points)  
**First Nations in Latin America**  
 Analysis of representation of first nations of Latin America in the context of struggles for self-determination under colonialism and in modern nation-states. Topics include: Latin American indigeneity, indigenous belief systems and mestizaje, nineteenth century genocidal wars and foundational fictions celebrating modernisation, testimonials, written, and visual texts of last decade. Focuses on the study of (self-)representation and role of mediators.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 103 or 105 or 108 or 110 or LATINAM 100*  
*Corequisite: SPANISH 200*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 212*
- SPANISH 213** (2 Points)  
**Cultural Critique in the Hispanic World**  
 Surveys the intellectual and popular currents of modernity in Latin America through the work of well-known writers. The focus is on the ways that the uneven processes of development typical of postcolonial societies produce 'hybrid' cultures.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 214** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 215** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 216** (2 Points)  
**Music, Poetry and Social Change in Latin America**  
 A theorised study of the history of twentieth century social movements in Latin America through its poetry and music, largely as expressed in popular forms. The major focus is on the political and cultural manifestations of these expressions as they respond to and instigate social change.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 103 or 105 or 108 or LATINAM 100*
- SPANISH 221** (2 Points)  
**Spanish for Business**  
 An intermediate language course that is a continuation of SPANISH 105, designed especially for students of business. Special terminology, uses, and structures proper to the Hispanic business world will be treated both in the textbook and in diverse supplementary materials. Prerequisite may be waived for students with adequate knowledge. This course does not count towards a major in Spanish.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 105 or 108*
- SPANISH 277** (2 Points)  
**Spanish Study Abroad IIA**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201 and Departmental approval required*
- SPANISH 278** (2 Points)  
**Spanish Study Abroad IIB**  
 Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*
- 
- Stage III**
- SPANISH 300** (2 Points)  
**Spanish 3**  
 After two years' grounding in Spanish, students move on at Stage III to study the language at a more advanced level.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 301** (2 Points)  
**Iberian Conquests: Epic Stories, Black Legends**  
 Cultural and literary interpretations of Iberian conquest and colonisation within Iberia and overseas (Mediterranean, Atlantic, Pacific) from medieval to early-modern eras. Historiographic texts about conquests by Castilian, Catalan and Portuguese authors are studied as historical and fictional literature within the contexts of debates about colonialism and comparisons of colonial encounters.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*

- SPANISH 302** (2 Points)  
**Culture of the Baroque and the Golden Age**  
An introduction to the main intellectual and philosophical currents of Golden Age literature covering drama, novel and poetry.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 303** (2 Points)  
**19th Century Literary Texts**  
An introduction to nineteenth century literary texts.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 304** (2 Points)  
**20th Century Spanish Literature**  
A selection of twentieth century Spanish poetry, novel and theatre.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 305** (2 Points)  
**20th Century Latin American Literary Texts**  
Study of twentieth century Latin American literature through a selection of poetry, drama and novels.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 307** (2 Points)  
**Modern Hispanic Literature**  
A study of a selection of twentieth century Spanish and Latin American literature.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 310** (2 Points)  
**Feminist Perspectives on Hispanic Literatures**  
An examination of a selection of Hispanic literary texts in the light of contemporary feminist thought.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 311** (2 Points)  
**Literature and its Others I**  
Analysis of the institution of literature and those forms of cultural expression that challenge its authority as central to social formation, including testimonials, diaries, chronicles, pulp fiction, fotonovelas, telenovelas, film, and other popular genres. Texts and tutorials are in Spanish.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 312*
- SPANISH 312** (2 Points)  
**Literature and its Others II**  
Analysis of the institution of literature and those forms of cultural expression that challenge its authority as central to social formation, including testimonials, diaries, chronicles, pulp fiction, fotonovelas, telenovelas, film, and other popular genres. Texts and tutorials are in English. This course does not count towards a major in Spanish.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 211 or 212 or 216*  
*Restriction: SPANISH 311*
- SPANISH 313** (2 Points)  
**Foundational Fictions: The Myth of the Nation as Family Romance**  
The debates on the gendered heritage of modernity in Latin America as a nation-building project, through the study of nineteenth century national fictions, coded as family romance.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 314** (2 Points)  
**Commerce and Communication**

- A practical course designed for the business and administrative worlds. The written component focuses on Spanish commercial correspondence. In the oral section students will learn to communicate appropriately in specific contexts.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201 and Departmental approval required*  
*Corequisite: SPANISH 300*
- SPANISH 315** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 316** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 317** (2 Points)  
**Books as Movies: Spanish Literature through Film**  
A study of Spanish texts and their representation in film. The course is divided into topics which introduce a variety of important authors and film directors.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 201*
- SPANISH 320** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Spanish B**  
Focuses on selected topics to consolidate finer points of Spanish grammar in more specialised contexts. This course does not count towards Stage III points for the major.  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 300*
- SPANISH 377** (2 Points)  
**Spanish Study Abroad IIIA**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: SPANISH 300 and Departmental approval required*
- SPANISH 378** (2 Points)  
**Spanish Study Abroad IIIB**  
*Refer to the entry for Language Study Abroad.*  
*Prerequisite: Departmental approval required*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

- SPANISH 700A** (2 Points)
- SPANISH 700B** (2 Points)  
**Language Acquisition**  
Aims to consolidate all language skills in a variety of registers and situations. Material will be drawn from a wide range of sources designed to expand vocabulary and grammar as well as focusing on aural and oral skills by exposing students to the language in different contexts and specialised uses.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 700 A and B*
- SPANISH 701** (4 Points)  
**A Topic in Medieval Literature**  
An introduction to Spanish medieval literature, encompassing the first poetry – the *jarchas* and *cantigas de amigo*, the epic *Poema de Mio Cid* and works written in the monasteries and convents. Special attention will be paid to the sociocultural and political context.
- SPANISH 703** (4 Points)  
**Iberian Utopias and Dystopias 1200–1600**  
A comparative study of the development of utopian and dystopian models of society in works from Mediaeval and Golden Age Iberia and Early-Colonial

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

Latin America. Special attention is paid to epic, chivalric, humanist, picaresque, colonialist and missionary texts.

**SPANISH 706 (4 Points)**  
**Cervantes**

A study of Cervantes and the evolution of what has been termed the most important work in Spanish literature.

**SPANISH 708 (4 Points)**  
**The '98 Generation**

A study of the role of major Spanish intellectuals and writers and their concern with Spanish cultural and political regeneration.

**SPANISH 709 (4 Points)**  
**The Contemporary Spanish Novel**

A study of the Spanish twentieth century novel, with particular emphasis on the post-Franco era and recent narrative trends.

**SPANISH 710 (4 Points)**  
**20th Century Spanish Poetry**

A study of Spanish poetry from the 1927 Generation to the dissident poets of post-Civil-War Spain and some of the work of Spain's leading younger women poets.

**SPANISH 711 (4 Points)**  
**20th Century Spanish Theatre**

A study of works by both male and female dramatists, paying special attention to the sociopolitical contexts in which their texts are embedded.

**SPANISH 712 (4 Points)**  
**20th Century Latin American Novel**

A study of the works of some of Latin America's leading contemporary authors, with particular reference to narrative techniques and autobiographical narrative.

**SPANISH 713 (4 Points)**  
**20th Century Latin American Poetry**

A survey of the poetic texts of some of the best known Latin American writers. The focus is on how they deconstruct the official history in order to construct another America and other realities with their new imagery.

**SPANISH 714 (4 Points)**  
**20th Century Latin American Theatre**

A study of some outstanding works of twentieth century Latin American theatre.

**SPANISH 716 (4 Points)**  
**Applied Linguistics as Related to Spanish**

An overview of basic linguistic concepts, present situation and basic problems, involved in Spanish language teaching/methodology.

**SPANISH 717 (2 Points)**  
**Research Techniques in Language/Literature**

Designed to give students intending to complete an MA thesis a thorough grounding in a wide range of research techniques, bibliographical and other resources, thesis planning and familiarisation with Hispanic journals.

**SPANISH 718 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Spanish Literature**

**SPANISH 719 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Latin American Literature**

**SPANISH 720 (4 Points)**  
**History of Ideas: Early Modern Colonialism**

Colonialism from the Early Modern Period. A survey of travel narratives and literary and philosophical works dealing with colonisation from the discovery of America.

**SPANISH 721 (4 Points)**  
**Linguistic Analysis of Spanish**

The core areas to be covered are phonetics, morphosyntax and semantics, as related to the Spanish language.

**SPANISH 722 (4 Points)**  
**Hispanic Women Writers**

A study of novelists, poets and dramatists, covering a variety of cultural and historical contexts.

**SPANISH 723 (4 Points)**  
**Advanced Spanish Translation Practice**

Practical skills in translating from and into Spanish in fields most commonly required in New Zealand.  
*Restriction: SPANISH 309*

**SPANISH 724 (4 Points)**  
**A Linguistic Topic**

**SPANISH 726 (4 Points)**  
**Advanced Literary Translation**

Practice of advanced literary translation from Spanish into English. Practical exercises will be supplemented by wide discussion of related issues and a special literary translation project.

**SPANISH 727 (4 Points)**  
**Colonising the Americas**

Explores the development of the notion of colonialism following the arrival of Columbus in the Americas. It will concentrate on the apprehension of cultural difference and the debates surrounding the status of Amerindians, as reflected in the literatures and cultural discourses of the time.

**SPANISH 728 (4 Points)**  
**Research Essays**

Four essays, to be submitted during the academic year, within a field, genre or period of literature, or a branch of linguistics. Students who have a particular field in mind should approach the Graduate Studies adviser in the Department to discuss the availability of this course. This course is particularly recommended to students who are not writing a dissertation or a thesis.

**SPANISH 730 (4 Points)**  
**Iberian Expansion History/Story**

Cultural-literary interpretations of Iberian expansion during the Reconquest from the Moors, colonising of the Mediterranean and Atlantic, and Conquest of America. Special attention is paid to various historiographic genres and critiques of colonialist discourse.

**SPANISH 731 (4 Points)**  
**Modern Hispanic Historical Fiction**

A study of the literary development and ideological function of historical fiction in Spain and Spanish

America in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Special attention is paid to issues of narrative, propaganda and reception in relation to cultural-historical developments.

**SPANISH 732 (4 Points)**

**Representing Violence in Colombian Culture**

Within a cultural studies framework, the course queries the concepts of representation, violence and nationhood as they pertain particularly to Colombia. Although centred on literary texts, the course pays attention to an assortment of cultural forms, including painting, film, advertising, journalism, sculpture, and music.

**SPANISH 733 (4 Points)**

**Postmodern Spanish American Fiction**

The aim of this course is dual: first, to inform students of a broad range of theories in the areas of literature, linguistics, architecture, epistemology, economic history, translation and mass-media studies, all under the heading of postmodernism or postmodernity; and second, to study how certain fictive texts from Spanish America establish a creative tension with the postmodernist discourse, both demonstrating its utility as a tool of analysis and signalling its internal lacunae and the limits of its validity.

**SPANISH 750 (2 Points)**

**Special Studies**

Supervised research on a topic or topics approved by the Head of Department.

**SPANISH 792A (3 Points)**

**SPANISH 792B (3 Points)**

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 792 A and B

**SPANISH 794A (5 Points)**

**SPANISH 794B (5 Points)**

**Thesis B**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 794 A and B

**SPANISH 796A (7 Points)**

**SPANISH 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis A**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 796 A and B

**SPANISH 797A (7 Points)**

**SPANISH 797B (7 Points)**

**Research Portfolio**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPANISH 797 A and B

**Theatre Studies**

**Stage I**

**THEATRE 101 (2 Points)**

**Theatre Studies I: New Zealand Theatre**

Drawing on a range of texts and performances, this course will study drama and theatre of different social and cultural contexts and styles. It will include other performance areas such as dance and music where the dramatic and theatrical context is significant. The theoretical issues to be addressed

will include: representation and signification, audience reception, colonialism and post-colonialism, and intertextual, interdisciplinary and intercultural questions.

**Stage II**

**THEATRE 201A (1 Point)**

**THEATRE 201B (1 Point)**

**Theatre Studies II: History and Practice**

A course relevant to students involved in dramatic productions, recognising practical work in the theatre. Classes survey particular periods in Western theatre history. Prescribed texts will be studied in English and the plays will be studied with reference to historical conditions and conventions of performance. Students will be required to participate in practical work, including a major project.

*Prerequisite: Any 8 points passed and English Departmental approval required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 201 A and B*

**Stage III**

**THEATRE 301 (2 Points)**

**Theatre Studies III: Topics and Themes**

Building on the principles of THEATRE 201 (student involvement in practical work in the theatre), the course will focus more narrowly on topics of theatrical practice and dramatic representation. Two to three topics will be explored. They could include: Chekhov, Stanislavsky and Naturalism; new versions of old plays; political theatre; street theatre or others. Classes involve theatrical workshops and collaborative projects.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II and English Departmental approval required*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**THEATRE 701 (2 Points)**

**Directed Study in Theatre**

A supervised study of some approved area in drama and theatre studies.

**THEATRE 710A (2 Points)**

**THEATRE 710B (2 Points)**

**Studio: Special Topic in Practical Theatre**

Students may undertake a supervised practical project in theatre of a limited scale, either as an individual or in a small group.

*To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 710 A and B*

**THEATRE 720A (2 Points)**

**THEATRE 720B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Theatre**

*To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 720 A and B*

**THEATRE 721 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Theatre**

**THEATRE 722 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Theatre**

**THEATRE 770A (4 Points)**

**THEATRE 770B (4 Points)**

**Studio/Project in Theatre**

Substantial individual and group project(s).

including some public presentation of project work.  
To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 770 A and B

**THEATRE 791A** (2 Points)

**THEATRE 791B** (2 Points)

**Dissertation in Theatre**

To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 791 A and B

**THEATRE 793A** (4 Points)

**THEATRE 793B** (4 Points)

**Dissertation in Theatre**

To complete this course students must enrol in THEATRE 793 A and B

## Tongan

### Stage I

**TONGAN 101** (2 Points)

**Tongan Acquisition I**

Seeks to develop initial fluency in Tongan. The content will constitute listening, speaking, reading and writing lessons in which students will be exposed intensively to Tongan conversations, stories, speeches and other kinds of input. Emphasis will be on conversational Tongan.

**TONGAN 102** (2 Points)

**Tongan Structure I**

Introduces the structure of the Tongan language. Topics include Tongan phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics. No prior knowledge of Tongan or linguistics is required. The course is designed to show something of the structure of the Tongan language and the way it 'works'.

**TONGAN 103** (2 Points)

**Tongan Literature I**

Introduces students to the range of genres that can be classified as 'literature'. These include: *talatupu'a* (myths and legends); *fananga* (folk tales); *hiva* (songs); *maau* including *ta'anga* and *laulau* (poetry including dance poetry and chants); *lea Tonga* (proverbs and sayings); historical accounts; and speeches. These genres will be analysed with a view to describing their purposes, history and context, cultural significance, the devices employed, and appreciation.

*Prerequisite: Approval of Head of Department*

### Stage II

**TONGAN 201** (2 Points)

**Tongan Acquisition II**

Seeks to extend language fluency developed in TONGAN 101, and will emphasis reading and writing skills. Will go beyond conversational Tongan to more sophisticated productive skills such as narrating myths and legends, and describing geographical features of Tonga and aspects of Tongan culture.

*Prerequisite: TONGAN 101*

**TONGAN 202** (2 Points)

**Tongan Structure II**

Extends the knowledge and skills developed in TONGAN 102. There will be more detailed treatment

of aspects of the language such as possession, parts of speech, and tense and aspect.

*Prerequisite: TONGAN 102*

### Stage III

**TONGAN 301** (2 Points)

**Tongan Acquisition III**

Extends the level of fluency and literacy developed in TONGAN 201. The emphasis on reading and writing will be maintained, but the language taught will be extended to social 'levels' or varieties of Tongan other than the 'neutral' level. These levels include chiefly and regal vocabulary.

*Prerequisite: TONGAN 201*

**TONGAN 302** (2 Points)

**Tongan Structure III**

Concentrates on the in-depth analysis of selected topics such as: possession, parts of speech, tense and aspect, transitivity, and stress. Emphasis will be on critical evaluation of existing works and independent interpretations of these aspects of Tongan linguistics.

*Prerequisite: TONGAN 202*

## Translation Studies

### Diploma Courses

**TRANSLAT 601** (2 Points)

**Theory, Ethics and Techniques of Interpreting**

This course develops an understanding of the theory and ethics of interpreting and how they impact on the interpreting process and the role of the interpreter. Techniques studied and perfected will include principles of public speaking and the Geneva notation system.

**TRANSLAT 602** (2 Points)

**Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business**

This course introduces future interpreters to certain professional areas in which they will be working and extends their knowledge and understanding of the terminologies of these areas.

*Restriction: TRANSLAT 704*

**TRANSLAT 605** (4 Points)

**Advanced Interpreting Practice**

Students will be taken from basic interpreting skills, in the context of triads, and short segments of discourse through to unilateral consecutive interpreting in legal, medical and business settings of medium to long stretches of discourse.

### Honours and Master's Courses

*Note: The following courses in Translation Studies may also be taken, with the permission of the relevant Head(s) of Department, as part of an MA in a language major.*

**TRANSLAT 702** (2 Points)

**Theory and Methodology of Translation**

A critical analysis of different theoretical models of translation will engender a greater understanding of the real nature of translation and the many phases of the translator's task. Methods will be established for the translation of a wide range of text categories.

*Restriction: 330.701*

**TRANSLAT 703 (2 Points)**  
**Issues in Translation**  
 Examines views of translation that encompass history, culture, politics, and gender. The basic premise upon which the analysis and evaluation of views is based is that the act and the process of translation involve much more than language.  
*Restriction: 330.701*

**TRANSLAT 704 (2 Points)**  
**Contextual Studies in Law, Medicine and Business**  
 Introduces future translators to three professional areas in which they will be working and extends their knowledge and understanding of the terminologies of these areas.  
*Restriction: TRANSLAT 602*

**TRANSLAT 710 (2 Points)**  
**Research Tools and Professional Issues**  
 Computing skills and electronic resources for translators. The impact of international and national legislation on the work of the translator, knowledge of the professional network and issues surrounding agency and freelance work.

**TRANSLAT 721 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Translation**

**TRANSLAT 722 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Translation**

**Women's Studies**

**Stage I**

**WOMEN 100 (2 Points)**  
**Gender and the Culture of Everyday Life**  
 Explores how gender and culture is continually re-created in the course of everyday life through an examination of practices, images and ideas about bodies and beauty, sexuality, race, ethnicity and women's 'proper place' in specific cultural sites, practices and at different historical junctures. Learning in this course is supported by a multimedia environment, 'the Virtual Shopping Mall'.  
*Restriction: Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 101 (2 Points)**  
**Representing Women**  
 Considers a range of artistic and popular cultural representations, including fashion, talk shows, film and dance performance, and asks what these might tell us about contemporary understandings of gender and sexuality.  
*Restriction: Certificate in Women's Studies*

**Stage II**

**WOMEN 200 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Feminist Theory**  
 Examines how contemporary feminists theorise sexuality, gender, knowledge and power.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 201 (2 Points)**  
**Sites of Performance**  
 From political campaigns to the avant-garde, the drama of the courtroom to the culture of eating and drinking, the contemporary world is fuelled by the

impulse of performance. This course examines how performance destabilises received notions of sexual, social and national identity and leads to the proliferation of new meanings.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 202 (2 Points)**  
**Women of the Pacific Basin**  
 Examines the position of women in Aotearoa/New Zealand and other Pacific basin societies. It includes a consideration of ethnic diversity, migration, constructions of nationalism and feminism, as well as notions of tradition and authenticity in the post-colonial Pacific basin region.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points in BA or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 203 (2 Points)**  
**Reading Sexuality**  
 Examines the historical shift from the policing of sexual acts to the articulation of sexual identities in relation both to the problematics of heterosexual/homosexual definition and the changing protocols of cinematic representation. This inquiry into sexuality frequently refers to film texts, both documentary and narrative, as they disclose the representational operation of sexual closets and logics of corruption, contagion and initiation.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage I or CCE Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 204 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Bodies on the Brink: Technologies of Gender and Sexuality**  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**WOMEN 205 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: 4 points in BA Courses or Certificate in Women's Studies*

**Stage III**

**WOMEN 300 (2 Points)**  
**Body Politics**  
 The phrase 'the body politic' is used to describe society as a body, but this metaphor also represents 'the body' as political, as shaped by cultural agendas. This course addresses the politics of embodiment, at how we experience our bodies through the lens of culture even as culture is shaped by the ways in which individuals manage their bodily experience. Film/TV, artistic and written texts are used to explore a range of bodily practices and representation (including hysteria, body-building, cyborg fictions, and dance) and the questions they might be seen to ask of cultural norms.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II*

**WOMEN 301 (2 Points)**  
**Feminist Research and Scholarship**  
 Issues raised by feminists about the research process. The course will address questions of feminist research ethics, theories of knowledge creation, research processes and methodologies, and the interactions of the researcher and the researched.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II*

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

**WOMEN 303 (2 Points)****Gender and Colonialism in the Pacific**

Explores the transformation of gender relations in the Pacific since the inception of European contact and the colonial process. Emphasis will be on the gendered nature of colonialism, both in terms of how it framed the process, as well as how the experience was lived.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II*

**WOMEN 304 (2 Points)****Femme Fatale**

This course focuses on the femme fatale and tough masculine detective figures to be found in classic film noir of the 40s and 50s, as well as on contemporary cinematic and theoretical revisions of film noir. Lectures are structured across topics which include: noir form and style, the voice-over, narration and desire, the homosexual subtext, and rethinking the place of noir in classic film theory.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II*

**WOMEN 305 (2 Points)****East Meets West: Migration, Media and Identity in Asia-Pacific**

New, complex configurations of identity both produce and are produced through a media culture that shapes as it draws on individual experience. Examines the interactions between media and gendered migrant identities. Asian and Pacific diasporas will be a particular focus, but material from the Black Atlantic as well as other ethnicities will be included.

*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II*

**WOMEN 306 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: 4 points in BA courses*

**Honours and Master's Courses****WOMEN 700A (2 Points)****WOMEN 700B (2 Points)****Contemporary Debates in Feminist Theory**

Current debates on feminist theory are explored in this course. The focus will be on the politics of difference, including how feminist theory has dealt with notions of ethnicity, class and gender, identity politics, nationalism and issues of post-coloniality.

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 700 A and B*

**WOMEN 701 (4 Points)****Research Design in Women's Studies**

Debates on feminist research methodologies provide a theoretical framework for considering issues central to the design of a research project, including problem formation, research ethics and accountability, literature review, development of appropriate methods, analysis and report writing. Students will formulate and pilot an individual or joint research project.

**WOMEN 702A (2 Points)****WOMEN 702B (2 Points)****Special Study**

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 702 A and B*

**WOMEN 703A (2 Points)****WOMEN 703B (2 Points)****Performing Culture**

Highlights the performative impulse in contemporary life and considers how performance features as a mode of sociality through which individuals and society are (re)constituted. Considers texts of performance, both artistic and everyday, drawing on new developments in the fields of performance, gender, and cultural theory to ask what functions performance, mundane or theatrical, serves for us and how we consolidate ourselves as social performers.

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 703 A and B*

**WOMEN 704A (2 Points)****WOMEN 704B (2 Points)****Sexual Narratives**

Investigates the interconnection between sexuality, cinema and space using cultural, narrative and film theory. The course reads a series of classical Hollywood and contemporary film texts for their inscription of narratives of sexual origin and sexual outcome, corruption and initiation, contagion and panic, all of which fail to secure any final distinction between heterosexuality and homosexuality, its demonised other.

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 704 A and B*

**WOMEN 705 (2 Points)****Special Topic****WOMEN 706 (2 Points)****Special Topic****WOMEN 785A (3 Points)****WOMEN 785B (3 Points)****Honours Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 785 A and B*

**WOMEN 792 (6 Points)****WOMEN 792A (3 Points)****WOMEN 792B (3 Points)****Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 792 A and B, or WOMEN 792*

**WOMEN 796A (7 Points)****WOMEN 796B (7 Points)****Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 796 A and B*

**WOMEN 797A (7 Points)****WOMEN 797B (7 Points)****Research Portfolio**

*To complete this course students must enrol in WOMEN 797 A and B*

**Faculty of Business and Economics****Accounting****Stage I****ACCTG 101 (2 Points)****Accounting Information**

Introduction to the role of accounting information and systems for monitoring organisational activities, and providing information to support

decision making and control. An introduction to general purpose financial statements and the interpretation of accounting information.

*Restriction: 600.121, 600.171, ACCTG 191*

**ACCTG 102 (2 Points)**

**Accounting Concepts**

Basic principles and concepts of accounting which underlie the production of information for internal and external reporting. This course provides the technical platform for second year courses in financial and management accounting, finance, and accounting information systems.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 101 or 191*

*Restriction: 600.111, ACCTG 192*

**ACCTG 191 (2 Points)**

**Accounting Information for Decision-making**

Introduction to the role of accounting information and systems for monitoring organisational activities, and providing information to support decision-making and control. An introduction to general purpose financial statements and the interpretation of accounting information. Analysis of funding sources and investment decisions and tools.

*Restriction: 600.121, 600.171, ACCTG 101*

**ACCTG 192 (2 Points)**

**Accounting Information Support**

Basic principles and concepts of accounting which underlie the production of information for internal and external reporting. This course provides the technical platform for second year courses in financial management and accounting. The emphasis is on designing recording systems that will generate information useful in the decision-making process and includes factoring institutional and legal obligations into the design process.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 101 or 191*

*Restriction: 600.111, ACCTG 102*

**Stage II**

**ACCTG 211 (2 Points)**

**Financial Accounting**

The study of financial accounting principles within New Zealand, to enable students to: (a) understand how they are developed and influenced; (b) understand and apply New Zealand Financial Reporting Standards; (c) report the results of complex business structures involving multiple entities and segments. Completing students will understand the role financial statements play in investment, analysis and contracting decisions, providing a base for advanced study and supporting other areas, particularly finance.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 212 (2 Points)**

**Accounting for Special Entities**

Costing, planning, decision-making and control, and related contemporary issues for trusts, farms and other special entities.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 221 (2 Points)**

**Cost and Management Accounting**

Budgets and standards, costing systems, cost information for decision-making and control, performance appraisal, and contemporary related issues.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 222 (2 Points)**

**Accounting Information Systems**

Encompasses the development and distribution of economic information about organisations for internal and external decision-making. Major themes include: objectives and procedures of internal control, the database approach to data management, data modelling, typical business documents and reports and proper system documentation through data flow diagrams and flowcharts.

*Prerequisite: 636.101 or INFOSYS 110, and ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 291 (2 Points)**

**Financial Decision Support**

Encompasses the development and distribution of economic information about organisations for internal and external decision-making. This includes the preparation of budgets, standard costing systems and cost information to support decision-making, performance appraisal and capital budgeting. The information requirements are linked back to the information management system to ensure the design anticipates the information needs of managers.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**ACCTG 292 (2 Points)**

**Financial Reporting**

Allows students to meet the demands of parties external to the business, such as banks, and shareholders. The emphasis is on being able to present external reports that meet the requirements of generally accepted New Zealand accounting practice. Also examines the need to have the information management system meet the demands of internal and external users and the incentives facing managers in making choices between accounting policies and procedures.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**Stage III**

**ACCTG 311 (2 Points)**

**Financial Accounting**

Explanatory and prescriptive theories of accounting provide the context for an examination of the determinants of financial reporting practice in New Zealand with special reference to accounting for pensions, foreign currency, deferred tax and financial instruments. Issues in international accounting and professional ethics are also addressed.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 211*

**ACCTG 312 (2 Points)**

**Auditing**

An introduction to the audit of financial statements. The objective of an audit is to add credibility to the information contained in the financial statements. Emphasises the auditor's decision-making process

in determining the nature and amount of evidence necessary to support management's assertions. The end result of a financial statement audit is a report that expresses the auditor's opinion on the fair presentation of the client's financial statements.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 211 and 222*

**ACCTG 321 (2 Points)**  
**Strategic Management Accounting**

A study of the design of revenue and cost management systems to facilitate strategic decisions. This includes activity-based costing and activity-based management. The learning environment is student-centred with the seminar leader's role being that of facilitator rather than lecturer. Students work not only as individuals but also in teams. The learning environment is a combination of lectures, case studies and related readings.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 221*

**ACCTG 323 (2 Points)**  
**Performance Measurement and Management Control**

The design of planning and control systems in organisations. This includes issues from control theory, strategic management and information systems, with an emphasis on performance evaluation, measurement and analysis. Pertinent areas from productivity theory and Data Envelopment Analysis support the performance analysis. The learning environment is a combination of lectures, case studies and related readings.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 221*

**ACCTG 331 (2 Points)**  
**Cost Management of Service Delivery**

Services are delivered by a combination of markets and governments with a cost management framework underpinning effective strategic decision-making. Components include: evaluation principles and methodologies, governance structures, cost driver appraisal, performance specification and measurement. Specific applications studied in previous years have included service delivery in health, transportation, telecommunications and education.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 221*

**ACCTG 371 (2 Points)**  
**Financial Statement Analysis**

How is financial statement information used to evaluate a firm's performance, risk, and value? An opportunity to examine this question, and to gain experience in evaluating performance, assessing risk and estimating value. Prerequisites are important since this applied course integrates students, prior accounting and finance knowledge.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 251 or 261, and ACCTG 211*

**ACCTG 381 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**ACCTG 382 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**ACCTG 391 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Financial Decision Support**

A study of cost and management accounting systems and their role in strategic decisions. This includes activity-based costing, activity-based management and performance appraisal, as well as advanced capital budgeting procedures. Topics are

generally framed around case studies and business simulations.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 291*

**ACCTG 392 (2 Points)**  
**Financial Reporting and Analysis**

More advanced reporting issues, along with a framework for analysing financial statements. The emphasis is on comparing performance between entities. This includes relating accounting information to sharemarket performance. Topics are generally framed around case studies and utilise appropriate analytical tools, including information search techniques.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 292*

**ACCTG 393 (2 Points)**  
**Project in Accounting**

The preparation and presentation of a proposal to secure funding for a business, in either the manufacturing or service sector. Involves compiling appropriate financial information to support the proposal, including an assessment of purchase options (lease versus buy), product costings and forecast cash flow, position and performance statements. The identification of risk factors would be an essential component. The project integrates the material developed within the accounting major.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 291 and 292, and INFOMGMT 294, and MGMT 291*

**ACCTG 394 (2 Points)**  
**Auditing**

The audit can be a cost-effective way of adding credibility to accounting and other information. The motivation for legislators to require an audit of certain information is examined. The process an auditor will take in collecting sufficient evidence to make an assertion about the information being audited is emphasised. The various forms of audit expression are also examined.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 292 and INFOMGMT 294*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ACCTG 701 (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods**

The theory and application of modern research methods in accounting. The content will include the philosophy, process and design of scientific research. Prior knowledge of basic statistical techniques is assumed.

*Restriction: FINANCE 701*

**ACCTG 702A (1 Point)**  
**ACCTG 702B (1 Point)**

**Information, Contracting and Governance**

An introduction to the economic literatures relating to property rights, transaction cost economics, and agency theory. Application of these notions to the way in which organisations are structured. Identification of why some transactions are internalised and some are undertaken through markets. The application of these ideas to financial and managerial accounting. The use of these notions in the New Zealand reform process.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ACCTG 702 A and B*

*Restriction: FINANCE 702 A and B*

**ACCTG 711 (2 Points)****Financial Accounting Research**

A study of the contracting-cost theories of accounting policy choice and the related empirical literature. It focuses on agency and efficient contracting explanations for accounting choice. In particular, the course explores the role of accounting in contracts between parties to the firm (e.g. manager, shareholders, debtholders, customers, etc.). The political process is also analysed to determine the impact on accounting policy choice. Incentives for managers to manipulate earnings under various economic settings are examined and the implications of this behaviour for accounting policy makers are analysed.

**ACCTG 712 (2 Points)****International Accounting**

An examination of the international dimensions of accounting in an environment that is increasingly global. Examines the international influences on current New Zealand practice and the diversity in accounting practices among New Zealand's economic partners. International harmonisation issues are studied as well as issues generated by foreign trade, e.g. accounting for foreign currency transactions and transnational business organisations.

**ACCTG 713 (2 Points)****Accounting History**

Issues in the methodology of historical research, and substantive topics including: ancient and medieval accounting systems, charge and discharge accounting, the invention of double entry book-keeping, cost and management accounting, corporate financial reporting, auditing, accounting standard setting, and a topic chosen from New Zealand's accounting history.

**ACCTG 714 (2 Points)****Contemporary Auditing Research**

An examination of the theoretical and empirical literature relating to the demand and supply of auditing; theoretical support for auditing activity; measures of audit quality and related topics.

**ACCTG 721 (2 Points)****Research in Management Control**

Provides an insight into the theoretical and empirical literature relating to management planning and control in private and public sector organisations. Explores the relationship between strategy, organisation design, performance measurement and evaluation, application of productivity analysis and Data Envelopment Analysis.

**ACCTG 722 (2 Points)****Research in Revenue and Cost Management**

An examination of revenue and cost management arising from changes in competitive environments. Includes recent research on the design of revenue and cost management systems including developments such as theory of constraints in manufacturing, service and public sector organisations.

**ACCTG 731 (2 Points)****Public Sector Accounting**

Examines developments in financial accounting

reporting in public sector organisations. Particular attention is given to public sector organisations in New Zealand. This course builds on knowledge gained in ACCTG 211.

**ACCTG 732 (2 Points)****Public Sector Management and Control**

Critically reviews management accounting's decision support role in public sector policy and service delivery. Theme-based seminars will focus on contemporary issues including health, transportation and local government.

**ACCTG 771 (2 Points)****Accounting Information and Capital Markets**

The study of issues in evaluating accounting information and the use of accounting information by investors and analysts. This includes the examination of the empirical relationship between accounting earnings and share prices and the relationship between financial statement analysis and market efficiency. Perceived market failures will be analysed.

**ACCTG 776 (2 Points)****Taxation Impact on Financial Reporting**

The interaction between accounting and taxation concepts of income. Influence of taxation upon business and investment decisions, and upon business structure and wealth distribution. Consequences of these decisions as they affect the financial statements. The effect of imputation upon the Capital Asset Pricing model. Mathematical analysis of the financial accrual rules.

**ACCTG 780 (2 Points)****Special Topic****ACCTG 781 (2 Points)****Special Topic****ACCTG 782 (2 Points)****Special Topic****ACCTG 783 (2 Points)****Special Topic****ACCTG 784 (2 Points)****Directed Readings in Literature Topics****ACCTG 785 (2 Points)****Directed Readings in Literature Topics****ACCTG 786 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Taxation Accounting**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department of Accounting and Finance.

**ACCTG 789 (2 Points)****Research Essay for BCom(Hons)****ACCTG 792A (4.5 Points)****ACCTG 792B (4.5 Points)****Dissertation in Taxation Accounting**

(For the MTaxS).

To complete this course students must enrol in ACCTG 792 A and B

**ACCTG 796A (7 Points)****ACCTG 796B (7 Points)****Thesis for MCom**

To complete this course students must enrol in ACCTG 796 A and B

---

**Business Administration**


---

**Diploma Courses**
**BUSADMIN 701 (2 Points)**  
**Accounting and Finance**

The interpretation of information contained in accounts prepared for use within the firm and for parties external to the firm. Understanding the sources of information contained in accounting statements. An overview of modern day capital budgeting techniques, the cost of capital, capital structures and their application to the business environment. Acceptance into this course is subject to sitting and passing a quantitative test to demonstrate competence in basic mathematics and algebra.

**BUSADMIN 702 (2 Points)**  
**Accounting for Decision-makers**

Financial analysis and management in decision contexts. Strategic analysis, evaluation and use of accounting information.

*Note: This course can be used to complete the requirements for the Graduate Diploma in Business Administration but not as an entry course to the Master's programmes. Students intending to further their studies towards an MBA should ensure they complete BUSADMIN 701.*

**BUSADMIN 704 (2 Points)**  
**International Economics**

Sources of a country's comparative and competitive advantage in international trade. Trade policy. Technology transfer. Exchange rate determination. The impact and management of international dimensions of economic risk.

**BUSADMIN 705 (2 Points)**  
**Business Law**

Examines the legal environment of business, contract law, legal rules governing the management of businesses, directorships and partnerships, selected aspects of the Commerce Act and the Fair Trading Act.

**BUSADMIN 710 (2 Points)**  
**Economics**

Principles and frameworks of economic thought to inform managerial decision-making. Monetary and fiscal policy, interpretation of the economic press, and the impact of globalisation of trade are considered.

*Restriction: 647.703*

**BUSADMIN 711 (2 Points)**  
**E-Commerce Strategies**

Strategic issues of information systems including their management and planning, their impact on the organisation and its culture and their effects on an organisation's competitive environment. An examination of the use of information technology within the organisation and how it has become of competitive importance. An exploration of the strategic planning process and discussion of the importance of relating it to the business strategy. The impact of technology-driven change on people and its broader effects on society as a whole.

*Restriction: 603.704*

**BUSADMIN 712 (2 Points)**
**Leadership and Organisation**

The role of leadership in implementing and sustaining quality management in an organisation. Topics include: leadership and management, creating shared vision, learning teams, empowerment and culture, change management and learning organisations.

*Restriction: 609.712*

**BUSADMIN 713 (2 Points)**  
**Managing People**

The nature of employment in the contemporary economy and society. Matching the goals of management with the needs and aspirations of employees. Functions of human resource management including: work organisation, recruitment and selection, employment negotiation and consultation, training and development, and pay and promotion. Performance management and the analysis of major problems including skill deficits and dysfunctional levels of labour turnover.

*Restriction: 607.756*

**BUSADMIN 715 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
**BUSADMIN 716 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
**BUSADMIN 717 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Financial Derivatives**


---

**Master's Courses**
**BUSADMIN 724 (2 Points)**  
**Financial Analysis**

Financial analysis and management in decision contexts. Strategic analysis, evaluation and use of accounting information.

**BUSADMIN 726 (2 Points)**  
**Business Ethics**

Ethical questions for the firm. The nature and role of core beliefs and social values. Ethics and the multinational corporation. Regulation and ethical behaviour. Ethics and social responsibility. Professional ethics. Case studies.

**BUSADMIN 728 (2 Points)**  
**Public Policy and the Corporation**

Aspects of public policy and their impact on business. Topics for consideration include: ownership of government trading organisations, superannuation, accident compensation, protection, 'user pays', legislative design and alternatives that might be considered.

**BUSADMIN 729 (4 Points)**  
**Integrating Strategy**

Advanced cross-functional analysis of the issues and systems that shape managerial thinking in a global economy, with a focus on the trends and critical issues in organisations and industries. Utilises the focus of strategy and competition to integrate issues of social responsibility, finance, planning and change management.

*Restriction: 647.723*

**BUSADMIN 730 (4 Points)**  
**Managing Organisational Change**

An overview of the major changes that have affected organisations during the 1980s and 1990s. Individual values, the corporation and the state. Organisation design, incentives and strategy in a changing environment. New dimensions to human resource management. The impact of information technology. Changes in the law and their impact on management. Looking ahead.

**BUSADMIN 731 (2 Points)**

**International Business Management**

Strategic management in international business. Formulation and execution of strategies, including e-commerce strategies in a multinational environment. Organisational challenges in global operations; strategies for entering markets; industry and competitor analysis.

**BUSADMIN 732 (2 Points)**

**Strategic Human Resource Management**

Critical dimensions of human resource management from the perspective of general managers. The role of human resource strategy as a necessary condition of firm viability and a possible source of sustained advantage.

**BUSADMIN 733 (2 Points)**

**Creativity and Management**

Fundamental processes that drive organisational learning and creativity. Leadership and teamwork. The role of leaders and organisation members in new venture decision-making processes. Case studies which examine entrepreneurial successful management. The identification, development and commercialisation of innovation. New markets and new technology.

**BUSADMIN 734 (2 Points)**

**Quality Management**

The tools, techniques, and frameworks necessary to take action to implement operations improvement. Information systems for coordinating operations. Managing supply chains. Managing product development.

**BUSADMIN 750 (2 Points)**

**Executive-in-residence Course**

Advanced analysis of issues that shape managerial thinking and leadership in a global economy, with a focus on current issues facing New Zealand organisations and industries.

**BUSADMIN 751 (2 Points)**

**Decision, Risk and Value**

Examines the sourcing of competitive advantage by evaluating strategies and investments, and quantifying and understanding risk associated with management decisions. This course shows managers how to develop and use computer-based models to analyse business situations and improve decision making.

**BUSADMIN 752 (2 Points)**

**Knowledge Management**

Examines the importance of knowledge management and supporting technologies to current business practise. This course examines in detail the WWW and intranets. In addition, it will review the generating, codifying and coordinating of knowledge

in organisations, the internal market for knowledge, management in consulting and the practical limits to technologies.

**BUSADMIN 753 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic 1**

**BUSADMIN 754 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic 2**

**BUSADMIN 755 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic 3**

**BUSADMIN 756 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic 4**

**BUSADMIN 757 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic 5**

**BUSADMIN 758 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic 6**

---

**Commercial Law**

---

**Stage I**

**COMLAW 101 (2 Points)**

**Law, Commerce and Government**

An introduction to the legal framework of business and government in New Zealand, including the principles of statutory interpretation and judicial reasoning, concepts of property and forms of legal liability relevant to business.

*Restriction: 610.103. COMLAW 191*

**COMLAW 191 (2 Points)**

**Legal Environment of Business**

An introduction to the legal environment in which businesses operate, including the rules governing commercial liability and obligation, with special emphasis on dealings involving intellectual property and valuable information.

---

**Stage II**

**COMLAW 201 (2 Points)**

**Commercial Contracts**

The general principles of the law of contract, including: the process of formation, contractual capacity, factors vitiating consent, consideration, privity of contract, contractual terms and the implication of terms, principles relating to the discharge of contracts, illegality and remedies for breach of contract.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 202 (2 Points)**

**Finance and Property Law**

An examination of the ways in which finance may be raised, the methods by which lenders are able to protect themselves and the concepts of property and ownership central to secured lending. Major topics include: the types of security available for both personal and real property, statutory provisions regulating the creation and dealing with property rights and the general principles of cheques and banking.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 203 (2 Points)**

**Company Law**

A detailed examination of the legal regulation of the

Schedule of Prescriptions  
For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

corporate form in New Zealand, including: the concepts of separate legal entity and limited liability, the statutory and administrative requirements of the Companies Act 1993, how to incorporate a company, corporate capacity and the powers of companies, the rules relating to capital shares and finance, director's duties and potential liability, shareholder remedies, accounting records and auditing requirements for companies and the rules governing takeover activity.

*Prerequisite: 610.103 or COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 204 (2 Points)**

**Employment Law**

The legal principles governing the employment relationship. Topics include: bargaining, personal grievances, enforcement of employment contracts, as well as strikes and lockouts.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 205 (2 Points)**

**Law of Marketing**

An introduction to the law of Marketing. Major topics include: intellectual property law as it relates to the marketing of goods and services, consumer protection legislation as it relates to the marketing of goods and services.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

*Restriction: COMLAW 208*

**COMLAW 206 (2 Points)**

**Insolvency**

An examination of the rules governing the dissolution of insolvent businesses trading as sole traders, partnerships and corporates. Major topics include: introduction to the causes of business failure, bankruptcy, the dissolution of unincorporated businesses, dissolution of partnerships, liquidation of corporate businesses, liquidator's powers, duties and obligations, calculation of creditors' claims, assets available in the liquidation, potential liability of shareholders, directors or related companies for the debts of an insolvent company; priorities for distribution on liquidation and the final dissolution of a company.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 207 (2 Points)**

**Cyberlaw**

An introduction to the legal rights, liabilities and restrictions affecting players operating in digital networked environments. Specific topics include: the enforcement of intellectual property rights and moral rights; privacy, the legal mechanisms used to control dealings in, and the structure of, digital communication industries; and the law as it affects databases and distance communication.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

**COMLAW 208 (2 Points)**

**Law and Sport**

An examination of the law relating to sports persons and the various activities that go to make up sport. Major topics include: the relationship between sports activities and law, the particular principles of law relevant to sport and the application of those principles, the policy goals behind sports legislation and the attitude of the courts.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or 191*

*Restriction: COMLAW 205*

**COMLAW 291 (2 Points)**

**Business Organisations**

A study of the legal rules governing different types of business structure with particular emphasis on the corporate form.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 191*

**COMLAW 292 (2 Points)**

**Commercial Transactions**

A detailed examination of the legal rules relating to contract, sales, property, trust, credit and security, as they affect management decision-making and tax planning, with special emphasis on electronic contracts and Internet transactions.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 191*

**Stage III**

**COMLAW 301 (2 Points)**

**Taxation**

An introduction to the Income Tax Act and the Goods and Services Tax Act. Specific topics include: the nature of income, taxation of common types of income, deduction of expenses, prohibition of various types of expenses, taxation of common types of entities, the imputation system, tax accounting issues (cash or accrual basis), provisional tax, PAYE system, tax returns, and the compliance and penalties regime and disputes procedure.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or 203*

**COMLAW 302 (2 Points)**

**Privacy and Information Management Law**

An introduction to the legal principles relating to the holding and management of information, and to rights and duties with respect to official information. Major topics include: the scope and application of the privacy and official information statutes, exemptions, remedies for breach and enforcement.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or 203 or 207*

**COMLAW 303 (2 Points)**

**Reconstructions and Receiverships**

An advanced study of the causes of business failure and of the law relating to the conduct of receiverships and business reconstructions. Major topics include: empirical studies into business failures, receiverships, informal reconstructions, statutory schemes of arrangement and statutory management.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 203 or 206*

**COMLAW 304 (2 Points)**

**Alternative Business Structures**

A comparative study of business structures with the emphasis on the differing legal consequences and relative merits of the structure. Structures examined include: franchises, joint ventures, unit trusts, sole traders, partnerships and special partnerships, unincorporated societies, and State Owned Enterprises.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 203*

**COMLAW 305 (2 Points)**

**Investment Law**

A detailed examination of the legal principles relevant to the raising of finance and investment. Topics include: securities regulation, overseas investment, the rules and functioning of the Stock

Exchange, mergers and takeovers, and insider trading.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 202 or 203*

**COMLAW 307 (2 Points)**  
**International Trade Law**

An introduction to the private law relationships which exist between buyers, sellers, insurers and bankers concerned with international trade. Major topics include: the sale of goods contract, the Vienna Convention, CIF and FOB contracts, marine insurance, the bill of lading, the Warsaw Convention and regional trade agreements such as CER.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201*

**COMLAW 308 (2 Points)**  
**Banking Law**

Aspects of the law relating to banking transactions and practice in New Zealand. Major topics include: the nature of the role and the functions of the Reserve Bank, the banker-customer contract, legal aspects of bank accounts (e.g. fund transfers, appropriations, attachment, combination, set-off, lien), safe custody and other non-account services, bank as trustee or fiduciaries, restitutionary recovery by and against banks (e.g. mistaken payments), cheques and bills of exchange and lender liability.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or LLB Part II*

**COMLAW 309 (2 Points)**  
**Insurance and Superannuation Law**

A detailed examination of insurance and superannuation law. Major topics include: general principles of insurance (the contract of insurance, adjusting the rights of insurers and insured), specialised forms of insurance relevant to business (life insurance, marine and aviation insurance, liability and professional risk insurance). A general survey of the legal rules governing superannuation in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201*

**COMLAW 310 (2 Points)**  
**Business Obligations**

An advanced study of a selected range of topics including: inter alia, doctrinal bases for the imposition of civil obligations, consequences of alternative taxonomies, the basis and content of the fiduciary obligations, the principle against unjust enrichment, economic torts, the nature and availability of remedies (particularly proprietary remedies).

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201*

**COMLAW 311 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Taxation**

An advanced study of Income Tax and Goods and Services Tax. Major topics include: dividends and imputation, corporate taxation, losses and grouping, partnerships, qualifying companies, trusts, financial accruals, alienation of income, international taxation and general anti-avoidance provisions.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 202 and 203 and 301, or LAW 429 and LLB Part II*

*Restriction: LAW 409*

**COMLAW 312 (2 Points)**  
**International Travel Law**

An introduction to the legal liabilities and

restrictions imposed on players in the international travel market. Specific topics include: the legal structures and mechanisms that facilitate travel and tourism across national boundaries, the legal issues and problems faced by market principals and the various international treaties and conventions affecting international air travel.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 205*

**COMLAW 313 (2 Points)**  
**Cyberlaw and Digital Contracting**

An examination of the legal rules that underpin transactions in Cyberspace. Topics include: digital contracting mechanisms, intellectual property online, data protection within and across national borders, privacy issues, and the non-contractual liability of buyers, sellers and intermediaries. The course provides an overview of choice of law and dispute resolution online.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 201 or 202 or 205*

*Restriction: COMLAW 207*

**COMLAW 320 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**COMLAW 321 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**COMLAW 391 (2 Points)**  
**Principles of Taxation**

The principles and processes of taxation in New Zealand, including the taxation of electronic commerce.

*Prerequisite: COMLAW 291 and 292*

**Diploma Courses**

**COMLAW 601 (2 Points)**  
**Taxation Structures and Processes Part A**

A study of institutions and mechanisms through which revenue is assessed and collected including: the role of the tax return, the assessment process, the collection mechanisms such as PAYE, provisional tax, resident and non-resident withholding tax, the agency provisions, use of money interest, penalties and recovery.

**COMLAW 602 (2 Points)**  
**Taxation Structures and Processes Part B**

A study of the institutions and mechanisms through which revenue is assessed and collected including: record retention, the Commissioner's statutory powers to obtain information, confidentially and privilege, the challenge procedure, the appeal and review processes, including: jurisdiction, procedure and evidence.

**COMLAW 603 (2 Points)**  
**Principles of Income Taxation**

An examination of the legal and accounting concepts which underlie the Income Tax Act. Topics include: the nature of income, special types of income, deductible expenses, prohibited deductions, timing of income and expenses, the tax status of trusts, partnerships and companies.

**COMLAW 604 (2 Points)**  
**Principles of Indirect Taxation**

An examination of the legal and accounting concepts that underlie Goods and Services Tax and

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

other indirect taxes. Topics include: taxable activities, taxable, exempt and zero-rated supplies, input deductions, gift and stamp duties.

**COMLAW 605 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in Taxation Part A**

An advanced study of issues of taxation relating to various entities such as companies trusts and partnerships. Topics include: the imputation system, company distributions, grouping, consolidation and amalgamation of companies, the financial accounts regime, losses.

**COMLAW 606 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in Taxation Part B**

An advanced study of issues of taxation relating to international taxation and anti-avoidance. Topics include: the concepts of residence and source, the taxation of overseas income and non-residence, the effect of the Double Taxation Agreements, special and general avoidance provisions and the role of the Common Law.

**COMLAW 607 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Taxation**

**COMLAW 608 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Taxation**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**COMLAW 701A (2 Points)**

**COMLAW 701B (2 Points)**

**Transport and Shipping Law**

The law relating to: the transportation of goods by sea and air, unimodal and multimodal transport, bills of lading and airway bills, carrier's liability, container transport, exclusion clauses, freight forwarding, standard forms and conditions, shipping conferences and exclusionary arrangements and cabotage.

*Restriction: LAW 732*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 701 A and B*

**COMLAW 702A (2 Points)**

**COMLAW 702B (2 Points)**

**International Sales and Finance**

A study of the law relating to contracts for the international sale of goods and their financing. This course will cover international sales, including: the standard forms of international sales contract, the international conventions covering international sales, the relevant national law of international sales, issues of conflicts of law pertaining to international sales. International finance including: documentary credits, transnational bank guarantees, factoring, foreign bills, forfeiting, performance bonds and electronic documentation and transfer of rights.

*Restriction: LAW 732*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 702 A and B*

**COMLAW 704A (2 Points)**

**COMLAW 704B (2 Points)**

**The Commercial Laws of Europe**

An analysis of the legal mechanisms used by business entities whose activities transcend Western Europe's national boundaries. Examines and compares the legal framework of business in the

European Union and EEA jurisdictions and investigates the legal problems in doing business in the countries of the region. Particular emphasis on the method of entry into foreign markets, selecting the appropriate business structure, international joint ventures, licensing, distribution and franchising.

*Restriction: LAW 745*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 704 A and B*

**COMLAW 705A (2 Points)**

**COMLAW 705B (2 Points)**

**Computer, Telecommunications and Multimedia Law**

An examination of the legal issues raised by the use of computers and other forms of information and communications technology. There will be a general description of those aspects of technology likely to give rise to legal problems, but the bulk of the course will be devoted to a discussion of the legal rules facilitating or regulating the use of that technology.

*Restriction: LAW 728*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 705 A and B*

**COMLAW 706A (2 Points)**

**COMLAW 706B (2 Points)**

**Competition Law and Policy**

Assesses the law's attempts to ensure that markets do not self-destruct through the aggregation of economic power or restrictive dealings or practices by participants. The provisions of the Commerce Act 1986 are examined in detail. Special emphasis is placed on the interaction of law and economics, and the conduct of competition litigation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 706 A and B*

**COMLAW 707 (2 Points)**

**Transnational Litigation and Arbitration**

A course designed to provide an insight into mechanisms for resolving disputes arising from transnational commercial transactions, or transactions with a relevant foreign element. The course will focus on: (i) jurisdiction and conflict of laws and issues raised by transnational litigation and (ii) arbitration as an alternative to resolving transnational commercial disputes (primarily in the context of shipping matters and international sale of goods).

*Restriction: LAW 731*

**COMLAW 710A (2 Points)**

**COMLAW 710B (2 Points)**

**Corporate Distress and Rescue**

Analyses the law relating to corporate collapse and rescue with particular emphasis on receiverships, schemes of arrangement and special statutory management and investigation schemes. Consideration is given to means whereby investors and managers can shield themselves from the consequences of insolvency. The duties, powers and liabilities of managers, receivers and liquidators are considered.

*Restriction: LAW 726*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 710 A and B*

**COMLAW 711A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 711B** (2 Points)

**Law of Corporate Finance**

This course deals with the legal rules which facilitate and regulate capital markets. Topics include: legal mechanisms for raising debt and equity finance/securities over real and personal corporate property; the role and powers of the Securities Commission; the control of public issues and other forms of capital formation; the regulation of the market for corporate control through takeovers and acquisitions (excluding competition questions); the role of the Stock Exchange and the legal basis of its powers; insider trading.

*Restriction: LAW 739*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 711 A and B*

**COMLAW 712A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 712B** (2 Points)

**Corporate Governance**

Examines: the legal capacity and powers of the company, and the mechanisms through which these powers are controlled; the legal nature of the relationship between the company and (i) its shareholders, and (ii) its board and officers; the duties and obligations of corporate management, both at common law and under the Companies Act 1993; the role of the courts in corporate governance; the extent to which company law is, and ought to be enabling and the circumstances in which contracting out may be possible; corporate governance in the context of SOEs and privatised entities; the social and other responsibilities of companies.

*Restriction: LAW 739*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 712 A and B*

**COMLAW 713A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 713B** (2 Points)

**The Regulation of International Trade**

A study of the public international law framework for regulating international trade. Focuses on the key international agreement and institutions such as the GATT, TRIPS, WTO, UNCTAD, UNCITRAL and the regional economic blocs and trade agreements of most relevance to New Zealand, including the EU and CER. There will also be a comparative study of anti-dumping and subsidies laws in some of the jurisdictions with which we trade.

*Restriction: LAW 720*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 713 A and B*

**COMLAW 714** (2 Points)

**Business Law in Post-Soviet Europe**

An investigation of the problems associated with creating and reviving legal structures for trade and investment in the post-socialist economies of Central and Eastern Europe. There will be particular emphasis on: attitudes to law and the role of lawyers, the law affecting state and private business organisations, intellectual property and licensing, investment controls business taxation, competition regimes, inward and outward trade barriers, privatisation and corporate governance, integration into regional and global trading systems.

**COMLAW 715A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 715B** (2 Points)

**Maritime Law**

A study of the jurisdictional, institutional and litigation aspects of shipping law. Topics include: the ownership of, and property in, ships, charterparties, ship mortgages, shipboard crimes and torts, the law of collisions, salvage and wrecks, the admiralty jurisdiction of the courts, national shipping laws, the international regulatory framework, conflict of laws applicable to admiralty disputes.

*Restriction: LAW 749*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 715 A and B*

**COMLAW 716A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 716B** (2 Points)

**Copyright Law**

A study of the New Zealand copyright and design laws, both in their local application and in their international setting. Topics include: economic and social policy underlying design and copyright protection, the structure of the legislation, the copyright and design interface, moral rights, international conventions, infringement and remedies, factors negating liability.

*Restriction: LAW 728*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 716 A and B*

**COMLAW 717** (2 Points)

**The Corporation in Law and Economics**

The way in which lawyers and economists conceive of the modern company and the impact of these concepts upon company law. The course is divided into three parts: legal theories of the corporation, economic theories of the corporation, the impact of legal and economic theories on the structure and rules of company law.

**COMLAW 720A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 720B** (2 Points)

**Biotechnology and the Law**

Innovation, particularly in the biotechnology industries, is a central concern of economic policy and a key element to the transformation of the economy. This course explores the role of the law in that transformation with particular emphasis on the interface between biotechnology and intellectual property rights and the emerging regulatory environments.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 720 A and B*

**COMLAW 722A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 722B** (2 Points)

**Life Insurance and Superannuation Law**

An examination of the law relating to negotiation, sale and administration of the life insurance contracts and superannuation schemes and the rights and liabilities of all the parties to such contracts and schemes.

*Restriction: LAW 727*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 722 A and B*

**COMLAW 723A** (2 Points)  
**COMLAW 723B** (2 Points)

**Patents and Allied Rights**

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

A detailed analysis of the law and theory of patents, international patent systems and associated licensing regimes, and related legal rules protecting know-how and valuable information.

*Restriction: LAW 727*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 723 A and B*

**COMLAW 724A** (2 Points)

**COMLAW 724B** (2 Points)

#### Employment Law

This course deals with the legal problems raised by the interaction of the Employment Relations Act 2000 with other statutes and the common law. Areas covered include: negotiation and second mediation, non-contractual duties, personal grievances, enforcement mechanisms and structures, redundancy and dismissal, strikes, lockouts and other forms of industrial action.

*Restriction: LAW 725*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 724 A and B*

**COMLAW 727A** (2 Points)

**COMLAW 727B** (2 Points)

#### Business Law in East Asia and Japan

Examines the laws of East Asia with particular reference to the legal issues likely to be encountered in doing business in the region. The focus is on the laws of Japan and the People's Republic of China.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 727 A and B*

**COMLAW 728A** (2 Points)

**COMLAW 728B** (2 Points)

#### Travel and Immigration Law

A study of the law relating to liability and regulation in international travel and tourism.

*Restriction: LAW 723*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 728 A and B*

**COMLAW 729A** (2 Points)

**COMLAW 729B** (2 Points)

#### Commercial Dispute Resolution

An analysis of the alternatives to litigation as a means of resolving business disputes and an examination of their effectiveness and overall place in the legal system.

*Restriction: LAW 703 and 717*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 729 A and B*

**COMLAW 731** (2 Points)

#### Franchising Law

The rules, legal and non-legal, regulating franchising in New Zealand and overseas, particular attention being given to the legal problems associated with the growth of franchising in general and business format franchising in particular. The course will concentrate on the following themes: agency issues, overseas regulatory approaches, statutory and tortious liability for the conduct of franchises, the implications of competition law and employment law for franchising.

**COMLAW 733** (2 Points)

#### Sports Law

An examination of the issues which arise from a

study of sport and the law. It is an amalgamation of many legal disciplines ranging from anti-competitive behaviour to tax law. These disciplines are supplemented by case law and a number of statutes specifically applicable to sports. Topics include: violence in sport including criminal acts, commercial issues such as sponsorship, right of publicity and privacy, restraint of trade, employment as a sportsperson.

**COMLAW 734** (2 Points)

#### Trade Secrets and Valuable Information

The common law relating to trade secrets, confidentiality and privacy, the origins of the cause of action, what it will and will not protect and in what circumstances, who may sue, the position of third parties, the public interest defence, remedies and procedural issues.

*Restriction: 610.718*

**COMLAW 735** (2 Points)

#### Electronic Trade and Finance

An introduction to the methods by which transactions in trade and finance can be facilitated by the use of computer and telecommunications technology.

**COMLAW 736** (2 Points)

#### Trade Marks and Unfair Competition

An in-depth analysis of how a person can prevent the misrepresentation or misappropriation of business reputation or identity, both at common law or under the Trade Marks and Fair Trading Acts.

**COMLAW 737** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic: The Law of Charities

An examination of the history of charity; the legal definition of charity (including issues pertinent to the reform of the definition and associated concepts such as 'public benefit'); the legal privileges of charity; the governance structures of charities (including trusts, trust boards, unincorporated associations, companies and statutory bodies); the administration of charities (including the role of the Attorney General); the dissolution of charities; dealing with charitable property; and charitable giving and fundraising.

*Restriction: LAW 723*

**COMLAW 738** (2 Points)

#### Cross-border Insolvency

Investigates issues arising on the insolvency of businesses which have operations and investors spread across differing jurisdictions. This investigation is coupled with a selective study of insolvency regimes operating in those overseas jurisdictions with which New Zealand trades.

*Restriction: LAW 726*

**COMLAW 739** (2 Points)

#### Privacy and Defamation

Examines the issues raised by the Privacy Act, the emerging common law surrounding privacy and related areas.

*Restriction: LAW 750, 754*

**COMLAW 740A** (2 Points)

**COMLAW 740B** (2 Points)

#### The Tax Base

The nature of income; its timing and recognition, its distinction from capital and methods of calculation. Deductions and rebates. The limited role of capital in the existing tax base and the likelihood of its expansions. Tax minimisation in the courts. Statutory responses to tax avoidance.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 740 A and B*

**COMLAW 741A (2 Points)**  
**COMLAW 741B (2 Points)**

**International Taxation**

Tests of residence for individuals and corporations. The wider tax base for off-shore income of New Zealand residents. Income derived by overseas residents from New Zealand activities. The Double Tax Treaty System. Selecting the country of residence. Anti-avoidance measures directed at transnational activity. The use of tax havens. As well as New Zealand taxation law, the course also examines the municipal revenue law of some of our trading partners.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 741 A and B*

**COMLAW 742A (2 Points)**  
**COMLAW 742B (2 Points)**

**Discretions, Disputes and Procedures**

The nature of a tax return and obligations in relation thereto. Commissioner's powers to obtain records and information. Assessments, financial arrangements and determinations. Public law restraints on the Commissioner's powers. The Commissioner's discretions and appeal and review mechanisms. Procedure, evidence and pleading in tax cases. The jurisdiction of the High Court and Taxation Review authorities. Recovery of underpaid or overpaid tax.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 742 A and B*

**COMLAW 746 (2 Points)**  
**Corporation and Investor Taxation**

The impact of business structures on tax liabilities of business organisations and their members. Trusts, partnerships, joint ventures, and groups of companies are considered, but the primary focus is on the allocation of the tax burden between companies, shareholders and other investors.

**COMLAW 747 (2 Points)**  
**The Goods and Services Tax**

The main focus of this course is on the Goods and Services Tax, although other indirect and asset taxes may be referred to for comparative purposes. While the course mainly deals with New Zealand GST, analogous taxes in overseas jurisdictions are also studied to provide a theoretical construct against which to assess the New Zealand experience.

**COMLAW 748 (2 Points)**  
**Current Developments in Taxation**

Selected in-depth studies of recent or imminent changes in the tax laws. The topics chosen will vary from year to year. Only those areas capable of rigorous academic analysis will be chosen for examination.

**COMLAW 749 (2 Points)**  
**Avoidance Provisions**

An examination of the general anti-avoidance provisions contained in the Income Tax Act 1994 and the Income Tax legislation of other jurisdictions including Australia, Canada, the United Kingdom and the United States. An analysis of the structure and function of anti-avoidance provisions and of the relation to the tax system. An analysis of the relationship of statutory and common law responses to tax-avoidance.

**COMLAW 754 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Taxation Law**  
(For the MTaxS.)

**COMLAW 755A (2 Points)**  
**COMLAW 755B (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Taxation Law**  
(For the MTaxS.)

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 755 A and B*

**COMLAW 765 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Contemporary Legal Issues**

A detailed analysis of a current legal issue relating to intellectual property, corporate law, competition policy or international business law.

*Restriction: LAW 720*

**COMLAW 766A (2 Points)**  
**COMLAW 766B (2 Points)**

**Commercial Indemnity Insurance**

This course considers the principles of law which underpin most forms of commercial insurance (it is not concerned with life insurance) together with a detailed study of the specialised rules which govern particular types of policy.

*Restriction: LAW 727*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 766 A and B*

**COMLAW 767A (2 Points)**  
**COMLAW 767B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: World Trade Regulation and Transnational Competition Policy**

Examines the national and international mechanisms for regulating world trade and the legal and policy tensions between trade regulation and competition policy. Topics covered include: the role of GATT, TRIPS and the WTO, anti-dumping and subsidies regimes, non-tariff barriers. Competition principles are analysed first through a comparative study of the relevant law in the United States, Australia, New Zealand and the European Union, and secondly by looking at unilateral, bilateral and multilateral attempts to expand or resist the extraterritorial application of local competition rules and their harmonisation across national boundaries.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 767 A and B*

**COMLAW 768A (2 Points)**  
**COMLAW 768B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Department of Commercial Law.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 768 A and B*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

- COMLAW 769 (2 Points)**  
**Professional Liability**  
 Examines the liability of professionals, concentrating on directors, lawyers and auditors, outlining the basis on which such liability is determined, and covering, in particular, the ways in which the law is developing principles to determine the liability of professionals to clients and third parties.
- COMLAW 770 (2 Points)**  
**Ideas of Property**  
 A consideration of the theoretical conceptions which underlie the notion of property in law, with emphasis on the uses and implications of property reasoning and the interrelationship with other concepts. Explores, inter alia, the determination of the status of property, the notion of equitable property, the notion of intellectual property and the use of property rights as a remedial device.
- COMLAW 771 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**  
 As prescribed by the Head of Department of Commercial Law.
- COMLAW 772 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Regulating Network Industries**  
 An examination of the legal mechanisms which may be used to facilitate and/or control competition in public utilities and other network industries. The industries studied will be: electricity; gas and water; telecommunications, travel, transport and shipping; the Internet and its environs. In each case there will be a focus on: the statutory framework, application of general competition principles, political and administrative control and judicial review, interface with property rights, including intellectual property, and comparison with other jurisdictions.  
*Restriction: LAW 716*
- COMLAW 773 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**  
 As prescribed by the Head of Department of Commercial Law.
- COMLAW 777 (2 Points)**  
**Arts Management and the Law**  
 An in-depth study of the law as it applies to the business of arts management. Particular attention will be given to the crucial importance of copyright and the management of other intellectual property rights within the arts milieu. Other legal issues that will be considered include aspects of employment law, taxation and contract.
- COMLAW 778 (4 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Mergers and Acquisitions**  
 An analysis of the law regulating business acquisitions on both sides of the Tasman. The course is divided into two parts: (a) the rules regarding the conduct of takeovers, mergers and buyouts. The objectives and functions of takeover regulation, the rights of shareholders and directors, and the role of regulatory authorities; (b) The competition rules governing mergers, takeovers and buyouts in Australia and New Zealand. The respective roles of the regulator and the courts, competition thresholds, market definition, barriers to entry, efficiency and consumer welfare, oligopoly, monopoly and market structure. The function of guidelines and regulatory safe harbours.
- COMLAW 779 (2 Points)**  
**Entertainment Law**  
 This course offers a broad spectrum approach to the legal protection available to artists, musicians, performers and film-makers through copyright, contract confidentiality, passing off and unfair competition law.  
*Restriction: 610.719*
- COMLAW 789 (2 Points)**  
**Research Essay for BCom(Hons)**
- COMLAW 791A (4.5 Points)**  
**COMLAW 791B (4.5 Points)**  
**MComLaw Dissertation B**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 791 A and B*
- COMLAW 792A (4.5 Points)**  
**COMLAW 792B (4.5 Points)**  
**Dissertation in Taxation Law**  
 (For the MTaxS.)  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 792 A and B*
- COMLAW 793 (1 Point)**  
**Research Methods**  
 Advanced instruction in the distinctive methodology of legal research and writing. The focus is on research sources, particularly those related to commercial law including the use of electronic research tools and databases and the peculiarities of legal referencing.
- COMLAW 796A (3 Points)**  
**COMLAW 796B (3 Points)**  
**Dissertation for MComLaw**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 796 A and B*
- COMLAW 797A (6 Points)**  
**COMLAW 797B (6 Points)**  
**Thesis for MComLaw**  
 Prescriptions for other courses included in this subject are listed under their respective subject codes.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 797 A and B*
- COMLAW 798A (7 Points)**  
**COMLAW 798B (7 Points)**  
**Thesis in Taxation Law**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMLAW 798 A and B*
- 
- Economics**
- Stage I**  
**Note:** Students intending to advance beyond Stage I should include MATHS 108, or equivalent, in their first year programme.
- ECON 101 (2 Points)**  
**Microeconomics**  
 Introduction to the economic behaviour of individuals and firms with emphasis on output and price determination in the various market

structures. Theories and selected applications will be presented.

*Restriction: ECON 191*

**ECON 111 (2 Points)**

**Macroeconomics**

The economic activity of the nation at large and its interrelationships with the rest of the world. Included are: the measurements of economic activity, determination of aggregate income, money, banking and prices, exchange rates, the balance of payments and government macroeconomic policy.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101*

**ECON 191 (2 Points)**

**Business Economics**

Introduction to economic analysis, with an emphasis on firms and their operating environment. Pricing and output decisions and cost and profit determination in competitive, imperfectly competitive, and monopolistic markets. Macroeconomic factors and policies affecting business activity in a small open economy.

*Restriction: ECON 101 and 111*

**Stage II**

*Note: Students intending to major in Economics must include ECON 201, 211 and 221 in their programme.*

**ECON 201 (2 Points)**

**Microeconomics**

Study of the allocation of scarce resources among competing end uses. Intermediate-level analysis of the economic behaviour of individual units, in particular consumers and firms. Although the focus is on perfectly competitive markets, attention is also given to other types of markets. Analysis also includes concepts of expected utility and uncertainty, and welfare economics.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111 and MATHS 108*

**ECON 202 (2 Points)**

**Managerial Economics**

An applied economics course which shows how various concepts and techniques drawn from economics, finance, mathematics and statistics can be used to develop and use computer-based models in decision-making, particularly in an uncertain environment.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**ECON 205 (2 Points)**

**The Contemporary New Zealand Economy**

The New Zealand economy has changed greatly over the last two decades. This course provides an overview of the structure and performance of the New Zealand economy, an examination of the context of economic reforms, and analysis of the objectives and consequences of contemporary economic policies. Topics covered include: the Reserve Bank Act, the higher education sector, the Employment Relations Act and labour market policy, and environmental management.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**ECON 211 (2 Points)**

**Macroeconomics**

Provides an introduction to the dynamic microfoundations of macroeconomics, and

demonstrates how we can utilise these foundations, first, to understand the trends and fluctuations of macroeconomic aggregates like national output, unemployment, inflation and interest rates, and secondly, to predict the outcome of alternative government policies related to current economic problems of New Zealand and the rest of the world.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**ECON 212 (2 Points)**

**Game Theory and Economic Applications**

Introduction to non-cooperative and cooperative game theory; introduction to two person zero-sum games and the min max value; n-person non-cooperative games and Nash equilibrium; examples and applications in auctions, bargaining and other economic models; applications in political science and other fields; the idea of backward induction and sub-game perfection; repeated games; introduction to games in coalitional form; the core and (Shapley) value; models of power and voting; problems in fair division, and optimal and stable matching.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191*

**ECON 221 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Econometrics**

An introduction to model building and empirical research methods in economics. Emphasises the use and interpretation of single equation regression techniques in formulating and testing microeconomic and macroeconomic hypotheses. Cross-section and time series modelling, as well as qualitative choice models will be covered. There will be examples of the uses of econometrics in a variety of areas through statistical analysis, problem solving and econometric estimation using a statistical computer package.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111, and 475.110 or STATS 101 or 108 or 120 or 191, and MATHS 102 or 108 or 130 or 151*

**ECON 232 (2 Points)**

**Development of the International Economy**

The development of the international economy and changing economic relationships that have taken place since the late nineteenth century. The causes and consequences of growing interdependency among nations are examined. Changing patterns of trade and migration of capital and labour are analysed, as are cyclical and secular trends in output, employment and investment. The focus is on the development of institutions as well as the economic and social conditions that induce and validate change.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

**ECON 241 (2 Points)**

**International Economics**

An introduction to international trade and finance. Important issues for the international economy and the development of conceptual frameworks for understanding and analysing these issues will be discussed. Emphasis will be given to issues of particular relevance to New Zealand. Topics include: exchange rate regimes, currency boards, currency crises, international capital flows and speculation, multilateral trade agreements, political economy of trade policy.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*

- ECON 271** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*
- ECON 272** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*
- ECON 273** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**  
*Prerequisite: ECON 101 or 191, and 111*
- 
- Stage III**
- ECON 301** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Microeconomics**  
 Advanced treatment of aspects of general equilibrium and game theory. Applications of this basic theory to the analysis of topics in uncertainty, contracts, auctions, oligopoly, and information economics.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 302** (2 Points)  
**Economics of Labour Markets and Industrial Relations**  
 Provides an economic perspective on the operation of labour markets, and the role of government policies and unions in determining their conditions. Topics covered include: employment and unemployment, wage determination and government policy, income and earnings inequality, the economics of education and training, mobility and migration, and the impact of labour unions on wages, employment, productivity and the welfare of workers.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 303** (2 Points)  
**Law and Economics**  
 Economic analysis of law and organisation, and the application of economics to property rights, patents and natural resource management. Includes: contracts, transaction cost analysis, classical contracting, long-run contracts, enforcement, role of market forces, risk aversion, remedies for breach, economic theory for torts, negligence rules, strict liability, multiple torts, product liability. Special topics may include: crime, insider trading, and business law.  
*Prerequisite: COMLAW 101 or LAW 101, and ECON 201*
- ECON 304** (2 Points)  
**Firms and Markets**  
 The study of firms in their markets, focusing on imperfect competition. Includes: oligopoly, monopolistic competition; analysis of strategic behaviour, government policies aimed at regulating oligopolistic and monopolistic behaviour, empirical applications.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 311** (2 Points)  
**Macroeconomic Theory and Policy**  
 This course is designed to teach students modern macroeconomic analysis and focuses on the standard dynamic general equilibrium model, which is central to current macroeconomic research. Students are given a careful introduction to the overlapping generations version of this model and shown how this model can be adapted in different ways to address a wide variety of economic issues and policy questions.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 211*
- ECON 321** (2 Points)  
**Econometrics**  
 Development of the linear regression model, its basis, problems, applications and extensions. Attention is also given to techniques and problems of simultaneous equations modelling, time-series analysis and economic forecasting.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201 or 211, and ECON 221 or STATS 208 or 210*
- ECON 322** (2 Points)  
**Applied Econometrics**  
 Provides a basic understanding of some of the econometric methods and models. Applications of basic linear regression, including: demand systems, time-series analysis including unit roots and co-integration, simulation and resampling methods. Also includes practical computing classes.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201 or 211, and ECON 221*
- ECON 331** (2 Points)  
**Economic History of Australia and New Zealand**  
 An examination of the methods of historical enquiry and the economic analysis of development in Australia and New Zealand.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201 or 211 or 232*
- ECON 341** (2 Points)  
**International Trade**  
 An analysis of the causes, characteristics and effects of international trade in goods and services, and of international movements of capital and labour. Economic effects of measures designed to restrict or promote trade. An introduction to the economics of regional trading arrangements, such as free trade areas, customs unions and common markets.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 342** (2 Points)  
**International Economic Policy Studies**  
 An analysis of international economic policy issues and their implications for New Zealand. A variety of approaches is used, including issue-based analysis of key international economic policy problems, comparative analysis of regional trading arrangements, and a case study approach embodied in an area studies module.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 341 or 352*
- ECON 343** (2 Points)  
**East Asian Growth and Trade**  
 A study of the economic factors underlying the dynamic trade and growth performance of the major economies of contemporary East Asia, and of the impact of their development on New Zealand's international trading environment. Study of individual East Asian economies is strongly emphasised.  
*Prerequisite: ECON 201*
- ECON 351** (2 Points)  
**Financial Economics**  
 A study of the modern literature on corporate finance, investments and derivative securities. An analysis of consumption and investment decisions in the presence of time and risk, asset pricing models and market efficiency. The term structure of interest rates and various issues in debt and equity

financing. The use of derivative securities e.g. forwards and/or options to manage exchange rate risk.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**ECON 352 (2 Points)**  
**International Finance**

A study of the modern literature on exchange rate markets, exchange rate determination and the implications of exchange rate movements for various economic issues. Students will gain an understanding of why exchange rates change, of financial market arrangements, and of the reasons for, and implications of, recent events in international financial markets.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201 and 211*

**ECON 361 (2 Points)**  
**Public Economics**

A study of the state in a modern mixed economy, its roles, measurement and accountability. Topics include: welfare theory, theory of public goods, budgetary issues and the Fiscal Responsibility Act, public choice, taxation theory and practice, tax reform, the welfare state, efficiency, targeting and poverty traps, insurance markets, social insurance, pensions and the economics of an ageing population.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**ECON 371 (2 Points)**  
**Development of Economic Theory**

An introduction to the history of economic ideas and to comparative economics.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201 and 211*

**ECON 372 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic: Resource Economics**

A study of the efficient allocation of non-renewable and renewable resources, resource markets and pricing, and natural resource policy.

**ECON 373 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Economics**

An overview of the theory and empirical practice of economic analysis as it is used in evaluating environmental problems. Topics include: static and dynamic efficiency; environmental policy (pollution and economic efficiency); analysis of economic instruments, such as tradable property rights and pollution taxes; the allocation of non-renewable and renewable resources, and contemporary issues of growth, trade and the environment, and sustainable development.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**ECON 374 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**ECON 381 (2 Points)**  
**Foundations of Economic Analysis**

A grounding in the quantitative methods of economic analysis with application to commonly used formal models in microeconomics, macroeconomics and econometrics. The emphasis will be on the unifying structure of the theory with a systematic treatment of the mathematical techniques involved. Preparation for continuing study in economic theory and econometrics.

*Prerequisite: ECON 201*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ECON 701 (2 Points)**  
**Microeconomic Theory**

A variety of topics in traditional 'core' microeconomics from an advanced perspective as well as a selection of issues arising from recent research directions.

**ECON 702 (2 Points)**  
**Industrial Organisation**

Industrial Organisation (IO) is concerned with the organisation of markets and the behaviour of firms under conditions of imperfect competition and imperfect information. The purpose of this course is to master some of the standard modern theories in IO and apply them to better understand the recent developments in various New Zealand and international markets.

**ECON 703 (2 Points)**  
**Labour Economics and Human Resources**

An advanced survey with emphasis on theoretic modelling, empirical research and policy applications. Topics include: labour force participation, investment in education, hiring and lay-offs, distribution of earning, unemployment, labour market contracts, worker mobility and immigration issues.

**ECON 711 (2 Points)**  
**Macroeconomics**

This is a core course in macroeconomic theory which addresses fundamental problems including output growth and business cycles, unemployment and inflation in the context of mainstream models of the economy, fiscal and monetary policies.

**ECON 712 (2 Points)**  
**Business Cycles**

A theoretical, historical and statistical study of business cycles, especially of the international cycle and its effects on New Zealand since the Second World War.

**ECON 713 (2 Points)**  
**Monetary Economics**

Examines a number of advanced topics in monetary economics. Topics include: relations of money, prices and output, macroeconomic models with money, monetary policy, roles of central banks, and monetary business cycles.

**ECON 721 (2 Points)**  
**Econometrics I**

Core econometrics including theory and applications. The development of the classical linear regression model and extensions to the most general case. Applications to types of linear models involving cross-section and time-series data, and simultaneous equation models. The method of maximum likelihood, other extremum estimators and associated methods of testing.

**ECON 723 (2 Points)**  
**Econometrics II**

An overview of time series econometrics, designed to introduce a range of material in stationary and nonstationary time series including: modern model determination methods, unit root and cointegration

theory, non-linear time series analysis and continuous time models. Students will be introduced to practical time series forecasting methods.

**ECON 724 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Econometrics**

A variety of econometric techniques will be used to analyse models from a number of selected areas of economics. A significant part of the course will be computer-based, involving the handling of empirical data and the computation and presentation of results.

**ECON 725 (2 Points)**  
**Economic Forecasting**

A survey of the various techniques used in economic forecasting, with applied work involving the empirical analysis and presentation of economic models relevant to forecasting. Discussion and analysis of the time-series approach to forecasting, and consideration of basic problems concerning difficulties and possibilities of ascertaining the future.

**ECON 741 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced International Trade**

Examines microeconomic aspects of international economics, theoretical and empirical research on international trade and trade policy under perfect and imperfect competition, and discusses and analyses political economy issues related to trade liberalisation. Topics which reflect current research including economic geography and multinational corporations.

**ECON 742 (2 Points)**  
**Trade Policy and Modelling**

Covers a range of commercial policies including tariffs, import quotas and export subsidies. Part of the course will be allocated to general equilibrium analysis of international trade policy.

**ECON 743 (2 Points)**  
**Economic Integration in the Pacific Rim**

Analysis of the developing economic relationships among the nations of the Pacific Rim, including both trade and investment flows and financial market integration. The economics of regional trade liberalisation initiatives such as NAFTA, CER and AFTA, and their implication for wider economic integration, for example, through APEC. Comparative analysis of factors underlying the economic performance of Pacific Rim economies.

**ECON 744 (2 Points)**  
**Emerging Economies of East Asia**

A comprehensive, comparative and historical analysis of the economic development of the emerging economies of East Asia, including China, the ASEAN and the emerging transitional economies of Indo-China. The impact of their development on the wider Asia-Pacific region is also emphasised.

**ECON 745 (2 Points)**  
**The Japanese Economy**

The modern Japanese economy and its international economic relations, including an examination of the role of distinctive Japanese institutions and patterns of economic behaviour.

**ECON 746 (2 Points)**

**The Chinese Economy**

Economics of the transition toward a market economy in modern China. Integration of China into the international economy, including an examination of the special roles of Hong Kong and Taiwan.

**ECON 747 (2 Points)**

**The European Economies**

International trade and monetary issues involved in integration in Western Europe and transition in Eastern Europe. History of the facts, theory of preferential liberalisation and analysis of the Single Market programme, Common Agricultural Policy, regional policy, and competition policy. An analysis of monetary issues: optimum currency areas, history of monetary integrations in Europe, analysis of the EMU, ECB and fiscal federalism.

**ECON 751 (2 Points)**

**Advanced International Finance**

A study of open-economy macroeconomic topics (theoretical, empirical and policy oriented), including models of exchange rate behaviour.

**ECON 761 (2 Points)**

**Public Economics I**

Economic aspects of the public sector, particularly of taxation. Includes welfare economics, commodity tax analysis and the use of taxes and other techniques in handling externalities.

**ECON 762 (2 Points)**

**Public Economics II**

**ECON 763 (2 Points)**

**Public Policy**

Examines the links between empirical research in economics and policy-making. The role of the policy economist. Communication skills. Ideology and policy. Welfare state policy issues. Analysis of policy in areas such as income support, housing, broadcasting, superannuation, accident compensation, arts funding and tertiary education. Original contribution to specific topical New Zealand policy debates.

**ECON 764 (2 Points)**

**Health Economics**

Economic aspects of health and health services. Analysis of expenditure on health care. The structure and financing of health services and health reform. Cost benefit and cost effectiveness and analysis in health care. Specific health care issues in the New Zealand health system.

**ECON 765 (2 Points)**

**Contemporary Issues in Fiscal Policy**

Desirable characteristics of a tax system. Equity, neutrality, simplicity, public acceptance. Administrative efficiency, responsiveness to economic changes, optimum levels for revenue need. The use of taxation to meet welfare and social goals. The machinery of tax reform.

**ECON 771 (2 Points)**

**Economics of Development**

Introduces students to contemporary issues in development economics. Topics include: the way economists' approaches to 'economic development'

have evolved and changed through the period from 1945 to the present, and looks at some leading development issues in this perspective; a set of topics in international trade, economic growth and development, with emphasis on the 'Newly Industrialising Countries' (NICs) and other Third World 'developing' countries.

**ECON 772 (2 Points)**

**Trade and Development**

Focuses on the link between trade and development and contemporary issues relating to trade strategies and structural adjustment policies with particular emphasis on developing countries.

**ECON 773 (2 Points)**

**The History of Economic Thought I**

**ECON 774 (2 Points)**

**The History of Economic Thought II**

A survey course covering a selection of topics in the history of economics ideas including: classical economics, post-classical microeconomics, Keynesian economics, monetarism, and developments in twentieth century macroeconomics, business cycle theory and international monetary economics.

**ECON 775 (2 Points)**

**Economics of the Environment**

Economics of natural resource use and policy. Externality, welfare economics, price theory. Sustainability, future generations and equity. Environmental macroeconomics, trade. Non-market valuation methods, species preservation. International issues.

**ECON 781 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Microeconomic Theory II**

A selection of topics from economic analysis, developing and extending the theories considered in ECON 701.

**ECON 782 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Regulation**

Network economics focusing on regulatory regimes which aim to stimulate competition in industries such as telecommunications, electricity, gas and water.

**ECON 783 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**ECON 789 (2 Points)**

**Research Essay for BCom(Hons)/BA(Hons)**

**ECON 790A (2 Points)**

**ECON 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation (MCom/MA)**

To complete this course students must enrol in ECON 790 A and B

**ECON 792A (4.5 Points)**

**ECON 792B (4.5 Points)**

**Dissertation in Economics of Taxation**

To complete this course students must enrol in ECON 792 A and B

**ECON 796A (7 Points)**

**ECON 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis (MCom/MA)**

To complete this course students must enrol in ECON 796 A and B

**Engineering Management**

**Diploma Courses**

**ENGMGMT 602 (3 Points)**

**Resource Management**

An overview of both global and New Zealand issues in resource management. The Resource Management Act and its implications for engineering activities.

**ENGMGMT 603 (3 Points)**

**Technology Management**

An introduction to current information and manufacturing technologies and present methods for their analysis, planning and successful implementation to create business advantage.

**ENGMGMT 605 (3 Points)**

**Quality Management for Engineers**

Concepts, tools and models of quality management with a particular emphasis on issues relevant to engineering disciplines.

**ENGMGMT 611 (1 Point)**

**Project in Engineering Management**

A project with limited supervision, requiring the application of engineering management techniques to investigate and solve a particular problem within a participant's own organisation.

*Restriction: 601.601*

**Finance**

**Stage II**

**FINANCE 251 (2 Points)**

**Financial Management**

Focuses on practical aspects of corporate finance. Topics covered include: concepts of value creation, risk and required rates of return, financial maths, capital budgeting, capital structure and dividend policies.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 OR 192*

**FINANCE 261 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Investments**

Markets for shares, fixed income securities, options and futures. Methods of valuing shares, fixed income securities, options, and futures. Simple techniques of hedging risk. Portfolio diversification. Portfolio evaluation.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192*

**Stage III**

**FINANCE 351 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Financial Management**

A rigorous study of advanced capital budgeting procedures, more difficult aspects associated with capital structure and dividend decisions, mergers and acquisitions. Case study applications of financial management are used. A continuation of the material introduced in FINANCE 251.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 251*

**FINANCE 361 (2 Points)**

**Modern Investment Theory and Management**

Portfolio theory and equilibrium asset pricing models and empirical tests. Portfolio management

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

(forecasting, construction, administration and evaluation) including issues relating to fixed interest and international equity investment. A continuation of the material introduced in FINANCE 261.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 261 and MATHS 208*

**FINANCE 362 (2 Points)**

**Risk Management**

Examines theoretical and practical aspects of risk management with an emphasis on the effective use of futures, options, and other financial derivatives to control market risk exposure. Reviews no-arbitrage methods used to value financial futures and options, including the Black-Scholes model and binomial tree numerical methods.

*Prerequisite: FINANCE 261 and MATHS 208*

**FINANCE 383 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**FINANCE 384 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**FINANCE 701 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods**

The theory and application of modern research methods in finance. The content will include the philosophy, process and design of scientific research. Prior knowledge of basic statistical techniques is assumed.

*Restriction: ACCTG 701*

**FINANCE 702A (1 Point)**

**FINANCE 702B (1 Point)**

**Information, Contracting and Governance**

An introduction to the economic literatures relating to property rights, transaction cost economics, and agency theory. Application of these notions to the way in which organisations are structured. Identification of why some transactions are internalised and some are undertaken through markets. The application of these ideas to finance. The use of these notions in the New Zealand reform process.

*Restriction: ACCTG 702 A and B*

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINANCE 702 A and B*

**FINANCE 751 (2 Points)**

**Modern Corporate Finance**

Examines fundamental principles of corporate financial theory and discusses current issues, seminal theoretical contributions and empirical evidence regarding those theories. Specific topics will be chosen from capital structure, dividend policy, security issuance, mergers and acquisitions, corporate control and initial public offerings.

**FINANCE 752 (2 Points)**

**Management and Financial Institutions**

An investigation of issues of financial management as applied to financial institutions. The orientation is to policy issues and principles more than operating techniques. Topics will include: asset and liability management, interest rate and risk management, and regulation, with attention to the New Zealand situation. The early sessions will survey broad issues while subsequent sessions will

investigate specific theories and empirical evidence as to their efficacy. This course builds on knowledge gained in FINANCE 251 and 702 A and B.

**FINANCE 761 (2 Points)**

**Portfolio Theory and Investment Analysis**

Advanced coverage of contemporary issues in investments through readings of classic theoretical articles and recent empirical studies. Topics include: market efficiency and empirical anomalies, risk-return relationships, and alternative investment vehicles and strategies. This course builds on material covered in FINANCE 261 and 361 and presumes the student has completed MATHS 208 or its equivalent.

**FINANCE 762 (2 Points)**

**Risk Management**

The theory and practice of financial risk management for portfolio managers with an emphasis on defining and measuring market risk. This course builds on material covered in FINANCE 362 and MATHS 208 with extensions to include the use of futures, options and other financial derivatives to manage market risk. It then proceeds to an examination of risk management methods based on the Value-at-Risk (VaR) framework developed by the Riskmetrics division of J.P. Morgan Bank.

**FINANCE 763 (2 Points)**

**International Finance**

An examination of theoretical and empirical perspectives on important issues in international finance. Topics will include: financial management of a multinational enterprise, macroeconomic effects, currency risk management and international capital budgeting. A portion of the course will also be devoted to international portfolio investments and diversification. This course builds on knowledge gained in FINANCE 251, 261 and 702 A and B.

**FINANCE 781 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**FINANCE 782 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**FINANCE 783 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**FINANCE 784 (2 Points)**

**Directed Readings in Literature Topics**

**FINANCE 785 (2 Points)**

**Directed Readings in Literature Topics**

**FINANCE 789 (2 Points)**

**Research Essay for BCom(Hons)**

**FINANCE 796A (7 Points)**

**FINANCE 796B (7 Points)**

**Tesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in FINANCE 796 A and B*

**Finance**

**Diploma Courses**

**FINMGMT 601 (3 Points)**

**Financial Management**

A study of the conceptual framework of modern

finance theory and the application of that theory to the major decisions facing a corporate financial manager. Particular attention will be given to the topics of capital budgeting, valuation including applications to property, financial structure, dividend policy, risk management and mergers and acquisitions. Implications of the theory and evidence for corporate financial decision-making are emphasised.

**FINMGMT 602 (3 Points)**  
**Investments**

An intensive study of the basic concepts and tools of investment analysis. The environment of investment decision-making in New Zealand is covered. Topics which are given particular emphasis include: efficiency of capital markets, role of diversification, risk assessment, relationship between risk and expected return, portfolio formation, financial statement analysis, derivative securities (options, futures etc.) and international finance.

*Prerequisite: FINMGMT 601*

**FINMGMT 611 (2 Points)**  
**Managerial Economics**

Provides frameworks of economic thought to inform managerial decision-making with particular regard to the economic behaviour of individuals and firms. Market structures, pricing and output phenomena, income distribution and public policy formulation and impact.

*Restriction: 602.607*

**FINMGMT 612 (2 Points)**  
**Finance Law**

**FINMGMT 613 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic**

**FINMGMT 614 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic**

*Restriction: 602.606*

**FINMGMT 615 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic**

*Restriction: 602.609*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**FINMGMT 703 (3 Points)**  
**Case Studies in Business and Finance**

A study of corporate financial and business management issues using case studies. Topics covered may include: capital expenditure decision making, capital structure choices, dividend policy, mergers and acquisitions, security pricing and selection, portfolio management, asset allocation and international pricing.

*Prerequisite: FINMGMT 602 or BUSADMIN 701*

*Restriction: 602.603*

**Health Informatics**

**Diploma Courses**

**HLTHINFO 713 (3 Points)**  
**Information Systems Technology**

The developments in information technology (IT) and how they are used to create information systems and share information securely. The emphasis is on systems integration and on making

information available where, when, and in the format, it is needed. Current IT requirements for healthcare and implications for the future.

*Restriction: INFORM 613*

**HLTHINFO 716 (3 Points)**  
**Health Information Systems**

The development of healthcare computing across different healthcare sectors. Conceptual design and organisation of modern clinical information systems and information sharing. Technological advances leading to new ways of delivering and facilitating care such as the electronic patient record, telemedicine, and care pathways. Issues of security and confidentiality.

*Restriction: INFORM 616*

**HLTHINFO 718 (2 Points)**  
**Computerised Patient Records**

The theory behind the use of medical records, their purpose, their computerisation and the benefits, disadvantages, and barriers to implementation. Key concepts of electronic patient and health records. Hierarchical functionality of electronic records, their role in primary, acute and seamless care. Record structure and content, and the technology for record implementation. Patient rights and privacy.

**HLTHINFO 720 (2 Points)**  
**Telemedicine and Telecare**

Definitions of telemedicine and telecare and their significance. Scope, benefits and limitations. Designing and evaluating telemedicine studies. Approaches to introducing telemedicine into mainstream medicine. Technology and practice. The main clinical applications and the legal and ethical dimensions of telemedicine.

**Human Resource Management**

**Diploma Courses**

**HRMGMT 601 (3 Points)**  
**Organisation and Society**

Organisational behaviour and theory and the techniques of organisational analysis in a changing and complex environment. The relationships between external contextual change and the internal dynamics of organisations. Problem-solving methodologies in organisational management.

**HRMGMT 602 (3 Points)**  
**Employment Relations**

Theory and practice of employment relations with special reference to New Zealand institutions and law. The goals and behaviour of employers, workers and the state in employment relations.

*Prerequisite: HRMGMT 601*

**HRMGMT 603 (3 Points)**  
**Human Resource Policies and Practice**

An analysis of research in the main functions of human resource management (such as HR planning, job analysis, recruitment and selection, performance management, remuneration, training and development, the management of labour relations). Contemporary issues. The evaluation of HR techniques.

*Prerequisite: HRMGMT 601 and 602*

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

**HRMGMT 604 (3 Points)****Managing Change in Organisations**

The theory and practice of change management in organisations drawing on the fields of organisational development (OD) and training and development (T&D). The diagnosis, planning and facilitation of change projects. Group dynamics and team learning. Culture change.

*Prerequisite: HRMGMT 601 and 602*

**HRMGMT 609 (1 Point)****Occupational Health and Safety****HRMGMT 612 (1 Point)****Special Topic**

*Restriction: 607.607*

**HRMGMT 613 (1 Point)****Special Topic**

*Restriction: 607.608*

**HRMGMT 650 (3 Points)****Special Topic****HRMGMT 652 (2 Points)****Special Topic****HRMGMT 653 (2 Points)****Special Topic****HRMGMT 654 (1 Point)****Special Topic****HRMGMT 655 (1 Point)****Special Topic**

---

**Information Management**

---

**Stage I****INFOMGMT 191 (2 Points)****Business Productivity Tools**

This is a computer course that develops hands-on competencies using the latest productivity tools and their integration through Visual Basic (A) programming.

*Restriction: INFOSYS 110, COMPSCI 101, 105*

**INFOMGMT 192 (2 Points)****Applications Programming**

Building on the business productivity tools course, the student will build computer applications. In addition, the student will develop information retrieval skills through the use of e-library and sophisticated search engines.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 191*

*Restriction: INFOSYS 110, COMPSCI 101, 105*

---

**Stage II****INFOMGMT 291 (2 Points)****Web Application Design**

The analysis and design of web business applications, including the architecture of client-server applications.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 192*

**INFOMGMT 292 (2 Points)****Database Applications**

Provides the student with skills in the analysis of data and the selection of appropriate designs for its storage and retrieval. The emphasis will be on

relational databases and multimedia document storage systems.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 192*

**INFOMGMT 293****Information Systems for Marketing**

Examines the key concepts in respect to designing and maintaining a marketing information system.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 291 and INFOMGMT 192*

*Restriction: INFOMGMT 294 and 295*

**INFOMGMT 294 (2 Points)****Information Systems for Accounting**

Introduction to data validation, internal control and the prevention of fraud. Systems security and disaster recovery planning. Transaction processing using a computerised accounting package, including designing a Chart of Accounts and appropriate reports. Modelling business relationships and using the model for simulation and strategy development.

*Prerequisite: ACCTG 102 or 192, and INFOMGMT 191 and 192*

*Restriction: INFOMGMT 293 and 295*

**INFOMGMT 295 (2 Points)****Information Systems Human Resource Management**

Analysis of the major human resource information systems and their characteristics and features, focusing on the data flow, analysis, reporting and forecasting functions, and emergent characteristics of such systems and their relationship to organisational effectiveness.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 292 and INFOMGMT 192*

*Restriction: INFOMGMT 293 and 294*

---

**Stage III****INFOMGMT 391 (2 Points)****E-Business**

The development and implementation of commercial application systems in the Internet, covering networking, security and integration with Enterprise Resource Planning systems.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 291 and 292, and INFOMGMT 293 or 294 or 295*

**INFOMGMT 392 (2 Points)****Multimedia Production**

This will involve the development of a website using ColdFusion and VB or equivalent market-leader object-oriented programming technique. Skills will also be developed in the use of common multimedia editing tools for graphics, animation and audio features.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 291*

**INFOMGMT 393 (2 Points)****Information Storage and Retrieval**

The emphasis will be on data warehousing and data mining for the purposes of decision support and the solution of common business problems.

*Prerequisite: INFOMGMT 292*

---

**Information Systems**

---

**Diploma Courses****INFORM 603 (3 Points)****Information Systems Management**

Examines the managerial practices required for the

quick and effective development and deployment of information systems. Guidelines for both technical and managerial personnel are described within the context of various system development life cycles. Common problems are identified and the practices which best reduce the risk of failure are presented.

**INFORM 610 (3 Points)**

**Electronic Commerce Applications**

Students will analyse the prospects for electronic commerce in an industry and propose an e-business strategy. Applications include the linking of manufacturers, suppliers and purchasers in a distribution network and the global delivery of information products and services. Systems architectural models and network structures are examined.

**INFORM 611 (3 Points)**

**Enterprise Systems**

Examines the cross-functional, integrated computer-based information systems, commonly referred to as Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems, designed to support an organisation's information needs. Management systems, common business processes, re-engineering/change management, and enterprise reference models are introduced with a holistic perspective. Considers issues associated with the analysis, design, implementation, and configuration of such enterprise systems.

**INFORM 612 (3 Points)**

**Project in Information Systems**

A supervised, independent study and investigation of a chosen aspect of information systems. The student is required to present a detailed investigative report.

**INFORM 613 (3 Points)**

**Information Systems Technology**

Introduces the business application of computer technologies via the use of an existing Access database. Data modelling and database design are taught in conjunction with hands-on exercises in querying and reporting. The role of business information system requirements in the development and/or purchase of software is explored.

**INFORM 614 (2 Points)**

**Electronic Commerce Strategies**

Describes how information system and networking technologies are employed to transform the business environment. Includes business-to-business and business-to-consumer aspects. Students study organisations noted for their mastery of electronic commerce. The profile of these organisations is investigated in terms of the interdependence of technology, business strategy and organisational culture.

*Restriction: BUSADMIN 711*

**INFORM 617 (2 Points)**

**Electronic Commerce Technology**

Introduces the business application of data communication technologies. Reviews the major elements and applications of electronic commerce (doing business online with one's customers, suppliers, allies and agents). Topics include: the

network infrastructure required, the effect on business processes, the distributed applications needed and website design.

**Information Systems**

**Stage I**

**INFOSYS 110 (2 Points)**

**Business Computing**

Information systems, their structure and business applications. Dimensions addressed include: applications and goals, system components and how they are developed, and data storage and data search techniques.

*Restriction: 636.101, INFOMGMT 191*

**Stage II**

**INFOSYS 220 (2 Points)**

**Systems Analysis and Design I**

Concepts and techniques of information systems analysis and design. Topics include: data structuring, process flow analysis, input and output design, program specification, unified modelling language and entity-relationship modelling.

*Prerequisite: Either INFOSYS 110 and COMPSCI 101, or 636.101 and COMPSCI 101, or COMPSCI 101 and 105*

**INFOSYS 222 (2 Points)**

**Database Systems**

Data modelling, relational theory, database design, and the manipulation of databases. Students will acquire a conceptual understanding as well as experience in using database system software.

*Prerequisite: Either INFOSYS 110 and COMPSCI 101, or 636.101 and COMPSCI 101, or COMPSCI 101 and 105*

**INFOSYS 223 (2 Points)**

**Information Systems for Managers**

The course is intended for students whose area of specialisation is not in Information Systems. The focus is on understanding how IS impact the broader organisation and the manager's role, how IS support the key functions, and how to manage the IS function. Topics will be taught from a management perspective.

*Prerequisite: 636.101 or INFOSYS 110*

**INFOSYS 224 (2 Points)**

**Data Communications**

Topics covered include: the representation, encoding, and transmission of information, transmission systems and media, communication techniques, networking fundamentals, network architectures, wide-area and local-area networks, wireless networks, distributed systems applications, client/server and intranet computing, Internet/WWW, network security and network control.

*Prerequisite: Either INFOSYS 110 and COMPSCI 101, or 636.101 and COMPSCI 101, or COMPSCI 101 and 105*

*Restriction: 636.324*

**INFOSYS 225 (2 Points)**

**Fundamentals of Electronic Commerce**

An introduction to the major elements and applications of electronic commerce (doing business online with customers, suppliers, allies and agents) including the network infrastructure required, the

effect on business processes, the nature of distributed applications, and the legal and ethical issues involved.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 110 and ACCTG 101 and MGMT 101 and ECON 111*

**INFOSYS 226 (2 Points)**

**Electronic Commerce Technologies**

An introduction to the technologies that are essential for the deployment of electronic commerce applications. Topics may include: an overview of the architecture of the internet and the web; tools for application design including representation and display languages; server and client side scripting languages; security, transaction, and workflow management systems; multi-agent and intelligent search technologies; application service provider technologies; and multimedia design.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 110 and ACCTG 101 and MGMT 101 and ECON 111*

**Stage III**

**Note:** With the permission of the Head of Department, BSc and BTech students may substitute COMPSCI 220 and 230 for COMPSCI 280 as a prerequisite, provided they have passed these courses with a B Grade or higher.

**Note:** Enrolment in INFOSYS 338, OPSMGT 383 and OPSRES 393 are subject to approval of Head of Department.

**INFOSYS 320 (2 Points)**

**Systems Analysis and Design II**

Information modelling, process/rules modelling, user interface design and the selection of tools and components in designing systems.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 and 230*

**INFOSYS 323 (2 Points)**

**Management of Information Systems**

An outline of the principles and practice of managing information systems in an enterprise. The role and functions of the information systems unit and its place and purpose within the management of the wider enterprise. The issues encountered in running an information systems unit and some of the accepted practices to deal with them.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222*

**INFOSYS 327 (2 Points)**

**Decision Support and Expert Systems**

The primary objectives of the course are to understand the theory, structure and construction of decision support and expert systems. Focus is on the study of their various components (e.g. data, knowledge, models and user interface) and methods of integration. The course also addresses emerging technologies (e.g. data mining, neural networks and intelligent agents) and research in these areas. Students will learn to work with system building tools to gain hands-on experience in prototyping DSS and ES.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 and 230*

**INFOSYS 328 (2 Points)**

**Electronic Commerce**

Reviews the major elements and applications of electronic commerce (doing business online with one's customers, suppliers, allies, and agents), including the network infrastructure required, the effect on business processes, the distributed applications needed, and the legal and ethical issues involved. Also studies the role of government policy in the success or failure of e-commerce environments.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 110, and INFOSYS 220 or 222 or OPSMGT 255 or 256 or ACCTG 222 or INTBUS 211 or MGMT 201 or MKTG 201*

**INFOSYS 329 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Data Communications**

Provides a comprehensive coverage of different networking technologies. Topics include: Wide Area Network devices, technologies and standards, Internet addressing, TCP/IP protocols, quality of service issues for Internet protocols, router components and configurations, routing protocols, wireless networks, and network trouble-shooting.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 224*

**INFOSYS 330 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Database Systems**

An in-depth examination of the technical aspects of database systems providing the essential foundation for a career in database systems. The emphasis will be to keep abreast with available database technology approaches and techniques in industrial and commercial information systems.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 and 230*

**INFOSYS 332 (2 Points)**

**Software Engineering**

Software Engineering is a discipline that integrates methods, tools and procedures for the development of computer systems. The course addresses a range of software development paradigms and processes and assesses these models against the broad array of tasks needed to develop and maintain information systems. Emphasis is on the IEEE standards to develop effective information systems.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 and 230*

**INFOSYS 338 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Information Systems**

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 220 and 230*

**INFOSYS 339 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Networks**

Covers the design, implementation and management of reliable and scalable networks. Topics include: Local Area Network (LAN), switching and virtual LANs, network analysis and design, routing protocols, Integrated Services Digital Networks, frame relay, Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) networks, and a review of the methodologies used to design Wide Area Networks.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 329*

**INFOSYS 340A** (2 Points)

**INFOSYS 340B** (2 Points)

**Information Systems Project**

The Information Systems Project allows students to apply their theoretical knowledge to a practical problem in the business world, while being reinforced with business planning and control skills. The overall goal is to develop an information system which, at the end of the project, meets the requirements of the user that sponsored the project.

*Prerequisite: INFOSYS 220 and 222 and COMPSCI 280, or INFOSYS 220 and 222 and a B Grade or higher in COMPSCI 220 and 230*

*To complete this course students must enrol in INFOSYS 340 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**INFOSYS 720** (2 Points)

**Information Systems Research**

A substantive review of research in the discipline of Information Systems. Behavioural, strategic and social issues relating to the design, implementation and impact of information technology applications will be studied.

**INFOSYS 722** (2 Points)

**Decision Support Systems**

A review of the literature in the area of Decision Support Systems (DSS), and DDS frameworks. Understanding the process of decision-making and issues involved in the design, implementation and evaluation of DSS. Additional topics include data mining, user interfaces, knowledge-based DSS, and research directions in DSS. Knowledge gained will be applied through the design and implementation of a DSS prototype.

**INFOSYS 724** (2 Points)

**Strategic Information Systems**

A comprehensive review of the research literature in the area of Strategic Information Systems. Topics include: competitive advantage through IT, business process re-engineering, electronic commerce and outsourcing.

**INFOSYS 725** (2 Points)

**Organisations and Information Systems**

Explores the social and cultural issues associated with the development and use of information systems in organisations. Topics include: global information systems, IT and changes in organisational structure, IT and work, and information privacy.

**INFOSYS 726** (2 Points)

**Information Modelling**

A study of various approaches to modelling information systems. Complex decision support problems are viewed as abstractions made up of diverse objects such as data, models and interfaces. Focuses on the representation of the semantics of complex problems and their manipulation. Prominent approaches such as semantic, object-oriented, structured, and unified modelling are studied. An organisational problem, modelled and implemented, forms the project section.

**INFOSYS 728** (2 Points)

**Software Engineering**

Various approaches to software design, testing and maintenance will provide an overview of the area. The development of software metrics and their applicability to software project estimation will be discussed.

**INFOSYS 730** (2 Points)

**Advanced Computer Networks**

Focuses on contemporary computer networking technologies available today. Design, implementation and operations issues will be discussed. Special emphasis is given to interoperability and internetworking of enterprise-wide systems.

**INFOSYS 731** (2 Points)

**Information Security**

Covers issues of confidentiality, integrity and availability of information. Topics include: threats to information security, risk management, methods to improve security, security policies and legislation.

**INFOSYS 732** (2 Points)

**Readings in Information Systems**

A comprehensive review of the research literature in a particular area of Information Systems. The particular area of research must be jointly agreed upon by the lecturer and students, and approved by the Head of Department.

**INFOSYS 733** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 734** (2 Points)

**Electronic Commerce**

Focuses on major research issues covering the design of information systems architectures for business-to-business, business-to-consumer, and cross-national processes. Application development and design strategies specific to electronic commerce are formulated and evaluated.

**INFOSYS 735** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 736** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Information Systems**

**INFOSYS 737** (2 Points)

**Enterprise Resource Planning Systems**

Examines the cross-functional integrated computer-based information systems, commonly referred to as Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems. Systems, common business processes, re-engineering/change management, and enterprise reference models are introduced with a holistic and research-oriented perspective. Considers issues associated with the analysis, design, implementation, and configuration of such enterprise systems and investigates topics such as: supply chain, planning and control systems, optimisation, scheduling systems, electronic commerce, and business information warehousing.

**INFOSYS 750** (2 Points)

**Research Methods I**

A comprehensive review of the methodological issues in systems research, including detailed coverage of univariate and multivariate data analysis.

**INFOSYS 751 (2 Points)****Research Methods II**

A comprehensive review of case study research, surveys, experimental research and interpretive research methods.

**INFOSYS 789 (2 Points)****Research Essay for BCom(Hons)**

A research essay will normally consist of either an in-depth, critical review of the literature in one area of management science, operations management or information systems, or a report on empirical research undertaken by the students.

**INFOSYS 791A (4 Points)****INFOSYS 791B (4 Points)****Project (MCom)**

To complete this course students must enrol in INFOSYS 791 A and B

**INFOSYS 794A (7 Points)****INFOSYS 794B (7 Points)****Advanced Research Studies in Information Systems**

An integrated combination of research projects and investigations in selected topics in management science and information systems, designed to meet the needs of each individual student. The selection is subject to the approval of the Head of Department of Management Science and Information Systems. Research proposals and reports will be grounded in the appropriate literature and quantitative and qualitative research methodologies.

To complete this course students must enrol in INFOSYS 794 A and B

**INFOSYS 796A (7 Points)****INFOSYS 796B (7 Points)****MCom Thesis in Information Systems**

To complete this course student must enrol in INFOSYS 796 A and B

---

**International Business**

---

**Stage II****INTBUS 202 (2 Points)****Foundations of Strategy**

Examines how firms and industries compete. Focuses on the frameworks and tools needed to formulate, select and implement strategies. Case studies are used to encourage students to develop skills in formulating strategy in a practical context.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 101

*Restriction:* MGMT 302

**INTBUS 210 (2 Points)****Global Perspectives on International Business**

The nation state as a political, social and economic entity, the political economy of international trade, direct foreign investment, the international monetary system, and international and regional integration.

*Prerequisite:* ECON 101 and 111

*Restriction:* 622.201

**INTBUS 211 (2 Points)****International Business: Operations and Management**

In-depth and systematic analysis of international business firm activities, encompassing the following

functional areas and core topics: strategy and structure of international business, strategic choice, control and coordination of international activities, modes of entry and strategic alliances, exporting and importing, global manufacturing, global marketing, global R&D, global HRM, accounting and financial management.

*Prerequisite:* ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101

*Restriction:* 622.201

**Stage III****INTBUS 301 (2 Points)****Strategy and Management in the International SME**

Examines international growth strategy options for small and medium-sized enterprises. These options are examined from a New Zealand perspective and within the context of contrasting internationalisation and strategic management frameworks. Case studies are used to facilitate practical application of concepts and techniques.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210 or 211, and INTBUS 202

**INTBUS 302 (2 Points)****Strategy and Management in the Transnational Organisation**

Examines the core international business theories underlying the creation and existence of multinational corporations. It focuses on the role of multinationals in international trade and examines how these complex organisations are strategically managed.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210 or 211, and INTBUS 202

**INTBUS 303 (2 Points)****Cross-cultural Management**

Study of management in the context of international and multicultural work environments, aimed at developing understanding of the influence of culture on organisations and organisational practices. Special emphasis is placed on the behaviour of people and groups in international organisations. The focus of the course is on the interaction between people of different cultures in work settings.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210 or 211

**INTBUS 304 (2 Points)****Governments and International Business**

Examination of the relationship between governments and international businesses and consideration of the internationally-active firm as a political strategist.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**INTBUS 310 (2 Points)****Business Environment of Europe**

Review, analysis, and projection of the environment for business in the European region including: economic, political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, scenarios for change, issues relating to the European market and the political economy of nation-states and regional groupings in the global context, and analysis of business strategies in the European market.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**INTBUS 311 (2 Points)**

**Business Environment of the Americas**

Review, analysis and projection of the environment for business in the Americas including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, impacts of technological change, issues relating to the natural environment, and the political economy of nation-states, regional groupings, and relationships in the global context.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**INTBUS 312 (2 Points)**

**Business Environment of Asia and the Pacific**

Focuses on two issues: the post-Second World War economic development of the East and Southeast Asian economies, particularly in terms of government-business relations and the managerial and cultural contexts in which business takes place in Asia.

*Prerequisite:* 622.201 or INTBUS 210, and INTBUS 202 or 211

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**INTBUS 701 (2 Points)**

**International Business**

Advanced study of trade and investment issues facing firms doing business across national boundaries. Selected topics include: global trade and investment environment, conceptual and theoretical trade and investment models, export and import management, exchange rate and distribution channels. The course has a particular focus on the Asia-Pacific region.

**INTBUS 702 (2 Points)**

**International Management**

Advanced study of management in the context of international and multinational environments.

**INTBUS 703 (2 Points)**

**Strategic Management**

Advanced concepts of strategy formation and implementation, models and techniques for strategic analysis in various environmental and organisational contexts, consequent management of change and organisational issues.

**INTBUS 704 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topics in Strategy**

Overview of strategy research and reviews of recent trends in leading management journals. Contemporary research issues in strategy, including those pertinent to thesis preparation.

**INTBUS 705 (2 Points)**

**International Entrepreneurship and Innovation**

Advanced study of entrepreneurship and innovation in an international context. Starting with a review of the contribution of the functional disciplines to the development of theory in the field, the course progresses to consider contemporary research issues including internationalisation, international new ventures, international collaborative strategies, cross-cultural entrepreneurship and innovation, and technology-based theories of trade.

**INTBUS 706 (2 Points)**

**Political Economy of International Business**

Consideration of the effects of international

business enterprises on national and global political economies.

**INTBUS 707 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods**

Application of modern research methods in strategy and international business, including both qualitative and quantitative approaches.

**INTBUS 711 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**INTBUS 712 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**INTBUS 751 (2 Points)**

**International Business 1**

Focusing on the volatile environment within which international businesses operate, the course provides an overview of some of the recent developments and emerging trends in international business and analyses the legal, financial and marketing factors that influence the operation of businesses across national boundaries. The course provides a strong theoretical base, sound analytical skills and practical case studies.

**INTBUS 752 (2 Points)**

**International Management 1**

Provides an analysis of aspects of management which are affected by conducting business across national and cultural boundaries. Topics include: cross-cultural organisational behaviour, cross-cultural communication, international human resource management, and comparative employment relations.

**INTBUS 753 (2 Points)**

**International Business 2**

Provides an understanding of global political, economic, social, technological and ecological relations, associated international institutions, and their implications for international business. Analytical frameworks, case studies and research seminars are used in order to develop students' analytical thinking and decision-making skills.

**INTBUS 754 (2 Points)**

**International Management 2**

Focuses on strategic management and marketing in the international firm, including management of international development in industries ranging from multi-domestic to global; development of export marketing and importing businesses; strategies for international networking and strategy implementation in multinational transnational organisations.

**INTBUS 755 (2 Points)**

**Business Environment of Asia and the Pacific 1**

Review, analysis, and projection of the environment for business in the Asia-Pacific region including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, impacts of technological change, issues relating to the natural environment, and the economics of nation-states, regional groupings, and relationships in the global context.

**INTBUS 756 (2 Points)**

**Business Environment of Asia and the Pacific 2**

Advanced treatment of topics introduced in Business Environment of Asia and the Pacific 1.

**INTBUS 757 (2 Points)****Business Environment of Europe 1**

Review, analysis, and projection of the environment for business in the European region including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, and the economics of nation-states, regional groupings, and Europe's relationships in the global context.

**INTBUS 758 (2 Points)****Business Environment of Europe 2**

Analyses specific business interests and markets within the European context for business. Consideration is focused on potential opportunities inside both Western and Eastern Europe. Provides for an in-depth understanding of the practical context of Europe in the international business arena and of the development and implementation of strategies for the European market.

**INTBUS 759 (2 Points)****Business Environment of the Americas 1**

Review, analysis and projection of the environment for business in the Americas' region including political and legal factors, socio-cultural characteristics, impacts of technological change, issues relating to the natural environment, and the economics of nation-states, regional groupings and relationships in the global context.

**INTBUS 760 (2 Points)****Business Environment of the Americas 2**

Advanced treatment of topics introduced in Business Environment of the Americas 1.

**INTBUS 765A (5 Points)****INTBUS 765B (5 Points)****International Business Practicum**

The international business practicum is an opportunity for students to experience the environment of international business first hand. It comprises a six-week, skills-based research preparation period followed by a supervised internship placement with an internationally-oriented company or organisation for approximately five months. Flexibility in the nature of these assignments is allowed, with the option of a supervised research or consulting project as appropriate. A substantial written report of the assignment must be submitted.

*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 765 A and B*

**INTBUS 766 (2 Points)****Strategic Management of the International Organisation**

An integration of the academic and practical experiences of students that focuses on the strategic management of the internationally-oriented firm. Sufficient flexibility to address aspects of students' specific overseas experiences is included.

**INTBUS 767A (2 Points)****INTBUS 767B (2 Points)****Second Language for Business**

*Restriction: 622.761*

*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 767 A and B*

**INTBUS 768A (2 Points)****INTBUS 768B (2 Points)****Business English**

*Restriction: INTBUS 762*

*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 768 A and B*

**INTBUS 769 (4 Points)****Intensive Language: Asian**

*Restriction: 622.763*

**INTBUS 770 (4 Points)****Intensive Language: European**

*Restriction: 622.764*

**INTBUS 789 (2 Points)****Research Essay for BCom(Hons)****INTBUS 796A (7 Points)****INTBUS 796B (7 Points)****Thesis (MCom)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in INTBUS 796 A and B*

**International Strategy and Leadership****Diploma Courses****INTSTRAT 651 (3 Points)****Strategy and Planning for International Competitiveness**

Conceptual analysis of strategy formation in SMEs and corporates, focusing on export development; the role of planning in formulating and implementing strategy; case study analysis of strategy and planning for international entry, including market assessment, resource analysis, environmental analysis.

**INTSTRAT 652 (3 Points)****International Trade Regimes**

Analysis of the growth and behaviour of international trading blocs, international trading regimes (e.g. GATT, WTO), their implications for New Zealand trade in terms of opportunities and obstructions.

**INTSTRAT 655 (3 Points)****Business Environment of Asia**

Analysis of the business environment of Asia, focusing on trading opportunities for New Zealand enterprises in the dynamic economics of East Asia.

**INTSTRAT 656 (1 Point)****Cross-cultural Dimension of Business**

Study of management in cross-cultural environment, understanding the impact of culture on organisations trading across national borders, cultural issues in entering a market, negotiation, and completion of trade contracts.

*Restriction: 601.654*

**INTSTRAT 657 (2 Points)****Strategic Leadership**

The role of the strategic decision-maker; strategy and leadership; cross-cultural issues in leadership; top management teams; the CEO role; CEO succession; top management reward structures.

**INTSTRAT 660 (1 Point)****Special Topic****INTSTRAT 661 (1 Point)****Special Topic****INTSTRAT 662 (1 Point)****Special Topic: International Business**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**INTSTRAT 750 (3 Points)**

**International Business**

An overview of the key dimensions of international business, including the international firm and its organisational structure, marketing, finance, human resource and strategic dimensions.

**MMgt/GradDipBus**

**Diploma Courses**

*Note: As indicated in their respective regulations, courses MANAGEMENT 720-723 are available for the MEdMgt and the MEMgt.*

**MANAGEMENT 621 (2 Points)**

**The Public Sector**

The reasons for and the theories behind the radical restructuring of the New Zealand public sector. It looks at the distinctive features of the public sector system (such as the separation of policy and service, purchase-provider split, competition and contestability) and weaves these into a strategic view for the delivery of services.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 622 (2 Points)**

**Organisation and Management in the Public Sector**

Examines the new organisational forms that have emerged in the restructured public sector (e.g. SOEs, LATEs etc) and their strategic response to the new environment. Topics include: strategic planning, organisational structure and design, contracting out and internal charging, pricing and costing.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 623 (2 Points)**

**Quality Management in the Public Sector**

Quality management in the public sector focusing on performance management. Topics include: the development of a customer focus and a quality culture, incentive contracting and remuneration systems, and the management of diversity.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 624 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Public Sector Management**

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 631 (2 Points)**

**Service Organisations**

Service as a source of differentiation, distinctive aspects of service management and marketing and developing the strategic service vision.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 632 (2 Points)**

**Managing for Service Quality**

Focuses on: designing the service delivery system, outlining tools and techniques for managing service quality, and techniques for managing capacity and demand fluctuations.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 633 (2 Points)**

**Managing Service Customers and the Service System**

Techniques for managing the external customer (ways to build customer loyalty) and managing the

internal customer (ways to motivate your staff and build their loyalty) to become a 'service-driven service company'.

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 634 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Services Management**

*Prerequisite: 643.601*

**MANAGEMENT 699 (2 Points)**

**Special Project (Strategic Project Management)**

Effective project management relies on alignment of organisational objectives of cost, timeliness and quality with those of the project. Successful projects need to be placed in the organisational context and fit both organisational and professional research objectives. Topics include: project identification and demand forecast techniques, project design and planning methods, technological forecasting and evaluation techniques, capital budgeting, project control, and scheduling techniques.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**MANAGEMENT 704 (2 Points)**

**Research Processes**

Provides insights into the business research process, particularly the interaction of quantitative and qualitative methods within the context of action research. Both the development and refinement of research programmes are discussed in depth.

**MANAGEMENT 705 (12 Points)**

**Managing a Strategic Intervention**

Project-based research into strategic change and/or organisational change. The project (or projects) will be supported by seminars, workshops, classroom attendance and readings. The written project(s) will be prefixed by a compulsory research processes course plus a research proposal. The individual research activity will document an analysis of particular strategic initiatives and the management of the processes involved. The project(s) will track each initiative from initiation through to implementation and may include a detailed analysis of all or part of the development, planning and implementation processes within an organisation.

*Restriction: 643.703*

**MANAGEMENT 706 (4 Points)**

**Business Research Project A**

Supervised empirical or analytical research on organisational change, organisational design, or governance, designed to cover areas of managerial competence. The form of the written report will depend upon the project's orientation. It will be grounded in the appropriate literature(s), and will provide an analysis and critique, and/or document an analysis of organisational needs and establish a planning and implementation framework.

**MANAGEMENT 707 (4 Points)**

**Business Research Project B**

Supervised empirical research which involves an organisational assessment. A written project will document an analysis of the student's organisation, based on a multi-disciplinary framework, and will draw appropriate conclusions and recommendations.

**MANAGEMENT 708 (4 Points)****Business Research Project C**

A written project which addresses major strategic and organisational issues, involving the analysis, evaluation and implementation of strategic change. This can also involve areas which cross-function within the organisation e.g. marketing and production, and can be benchmarked against organisational and international best practice.

**MANAGEMENT 712A (7 Points)****MANAGEMENT 712B (7 Points)****Applied Research in Organisations**

An integrated combination of supervised empirical or analytical research projects and investigations into strategic interventions and/or organisational change. Selections will be designed to meet the requirements of each individual student and are subject to the approval of the Programme Director. Research projects and investigations will track each strategic or organisational initiative, from initiation through to implementation, and may include a detailed analysis of all or part of the development, planning and implementation processes within an organisation. Research proposals and reports will be grounded in the appropriate literature and use of quantitative and qualitative research methodologies. *To complete this course students must enrol in MANAGEMENT 712 A and B*

**MANAGEMENT 720 (3 Points)****Organisation and Management**

Approaches to organisation strategy, structure and design as applied to professional organisations are considered. Management theory and practice in professional contexts. Differences in managerial and professional culture and values are examined with particular reference to the relationship between professional autonomy and managerial control systems. Leadership and management roles in collegial organisations.

**MANAGEMENT 721 (3 Points)****Financial Management**

The development and use of appropriate accounting information for organisational decision-making and planning. Topics to be considered include: deriving and analysing financial statements, financial planning, financial controls, capital budgeting, and business units (including profit and cost centres). An important aspect of the course will be the development of an understanding of the budgetary process.

**MANAGEMENT 722 (3 Points)****Human Resource Management**

A strategic and functional overview of the theory and practice of the management of people in paid employment. The special issues of managing professionals and support staff, New Zealand's changing demographic and legislative environment, and appraising professional performance, will be integrated into the course. Students will develop an understanding of models of human resource management appropriate to their own organisations and experience.

**MANAGEMENT 723 (3 Points)****Service Delivery**

Issues related to the successful delivery of an effective service to organisational stakeholders are covered, including operations management, scheduling, continuous quality improvement, customer orientation and focus, and employee satisfaction. Students will also develop an understanding of how consultation, planning, evaluation and accountability processes can facilitate organisational learning and improve service delivery. Issues related to the marketing of professional services are also considered.

**MANAGEMENT 724 (2 Points)****Strategic Management of Professional Organisations**

Advanced analysis of strategic management issues that confront health care and other professional organisations in a dynamic environment. These will include managing with professionals, organisation design, strategic planning and the management of change in professional organisations.

**MANAGEMENT 725 (2 Points)****Contemporary Health Care Delivery Systems**

Analysis of the management systems employed in contemporary health care organisations including case mix, managed care methods and health care integration systems. Comparative and international developments will be reviewed.

---

**Maori Development**

---

**Diploma Courses****MAORIDEV 601 (3 Points)****Maori Society: History and Resources**

A survey of Maori economic activity and resources by examining the interaction of culture, society and commerce. Considers the relevant regulatory environment as it pertains to Maori resource use and commercial development, the relevant findings and implications of the Waitangi Tribunal negotiations, Te Ture Whenua and the Maori Land Court.

**MAORIDEV 604 (3 Points)****Maori Business Development: Te Whakapakari Huanga Māori**

The principles of marketing and assessment and the evaluation of business opportunities. Participants examine an analysis of successful national and international collective-entrepreneurship models to develop a business checklist and present a case for finance. The focus of this course is the integration of concepts developed across all disciplines covered in the course. Students examine specific case scenarios relating to Maori development.

**MAORIDEV 610 (2 Points)****Accounting for Maori Business: Te Takinga mai me Te Tai**

Accounting practice for Maori organisations exploring the structure of accounting information and the use of accounting data for managerial planning, decision-making and control. Topics include: an introduction to financial statements, analysing financial statements and an analysis of the types of commercial information and accounting systems used by Maori organisations.

*Restriction: 604.602*

**MAORIDEV 611 (2 Points)****Legal Studies for Maori Business**

The general ideas, policies and practice of commercial law, the legal environment of business, contract law, legal aspects of company directing, partnerships, trust law, company floats, takeovers, and legislation governing private and corporate business practice in New Zealand. Cases and study will emphasise aspects of these in relation to their impact with and for Maori business with additional emphasis placed on the Treaty of Waitangi.

*Restriction: 604.608*

**MAORIDEV 612 (2 Points)****Management of Maori Organisations**

Analysis of the nature of Maori enterprise and the Maori manager in relation to modern management theory and frameworks.

*Restriction: 604.603*

**MAORIDEV 613 (1 Point)****Special Topic**

*Restriction: 604.605*

**MAORIDEV 614 (1 Point)****Special Topic**

---

**Marketing**

---

**Diploma Courses****MARKET 601 (3 Points)****Marketing Strategy**

Marketing, the role of marketing in an organisation and the relationship of marketing to other disciplines. Procedures for analysing internal competencies and competitive advantages, strategies for growth and development and new product development and the development of strategies and marketing plans are studied.

**MARKET 602 (3 Points)****Understanding Customers and Markets**

Develops an appreciation and understanding of consumer and buyer behaviour and marketing research, and their implications for management decision-making.

*Prerequisite: MARKET 601*

**MARKET 603 (3 Points)****Marketing Communications**

Develops an appreciation and understanding of the individual elements of the marketing communications mix: advertising, direct marketing, sales promotion and public relations. Further, how these may be managed as an integrated programme to implement and support the brand, product or service strategy.

*Prerequisite: MARKET 601*

**MARKET 605 (3 Points)****Special Project in Marketing**

A supervised, independent study and investigation of a chosen aspect of marketing or international business. The student is required to present a detailed investigative report.

**MARKET 608 (1 Point)****Special Topic: Advanced Strategy****MARKET 613 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Services Marketing****MARKET 614 (2 Points)****E-Commerce and Interactive Marketing**

Examines how new interactive marketing technologies are impacting on marketing strategy and communications. The sessions include: lectures, guest speakers and computer laboratories in order to explore the changing market environment from both a theoretical and an applied perspective. The purpose of this course is to examine demographic and psychographic trends in the New Zealand marketing environment in the context of changing marketing communications, media trends and communication opportunities.

*Restriction: 605.609*

**MARKET 615 (2 Points)****Creating and Managing Brands**

Brand equity is a crucial component of competitive advantage. This course explores the strategic role brands play in local and global competition, provides guidelines on how to develop and manage strong brands, and examines the emerging role of brands in an electronic environment.

**MARKET 621 (2 Points)****Sales Management**

Investigates the changing role and potential of the sales management function and how to effectively manage the interface of sales management with other aspects of management, particularly relationship marketing.

*Prerequisite: MARKET 601*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

---

**MARKET 713 (2 Points)****Marketing for Managers**

Marketing concept and process, the role of marketing and marketers within the organisation and wider social context, identification of marketing opportunities, developing marketing strategies, planning marketing programmes and managing the marketing effort.

---

**Management and Employment Relations**

---

**Stage I****MGMT 101 (2 Points)****Organisation and Management**

The relationships between organisations and society. Schools of management thought. Introduction to employment relations. Contemporary and critical issues in management, policy and practice.

*Restriction: MGMT 191 and 192*

**MGMT 191 (2 Points)****Introduction to Business**

An integrated business simulation is used as the focus of an introduction to the context and operation of business in New Zealand. Topics focus on the management of small- to medium-sized enterprises, particularly in relation to business communications and marketing planning.

**MGMT 192 (2 Points)****Business Management**

An integrated business simulation is used to advance understanding of the operation of business

in New Zealand. Topics focus on the management of small- to medium-sized enterprises, particularly in relation to decision analysis, and production and operations management.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 191

### Stage II

#### MGMT 201 (2 Points) Management

Theoretical perspectives on the practice of management, and the role and function of managers. This includes contemporary perspectives, together with New Zealand issues and research.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201

#### MGMT 211 (2 Points) Organisational Behaviour

Description and analysis of the behaviour of individuals and groups within organisations with a focus on the New Zealand context. Topics include: individual differences, group dynamics and the impact of culture and communication on individuals in organisational life. Knowledge of organisational behaviour is a prerequisite for effective management.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201

#### MGMT 212 (2 Points) Organisation Theory

The contribution of classical theorists to the study of organisations. The work of Marx, Weber, Durkheim, Barnard and Parsons. Bureaucracy, functionalism and systems theory. The critique of functionalist and systems approaches. Organisational typologies. Critical understanding of organisations. Symbolic, institutional and contingency theories of organisations. Introduction to organisational structure.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201

#### MGMT 213 (2 Points) Communication Processes

An introduction to the theories and processes of communication. Includes aspects of interpersonal and small group communication, particularly as they apply to the workplace.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 101 or SCIGEN 201

#### MGMT 223 (2 Points) Employment Relations in Theory and Practice

An introduction to the theory and practice of employment relations. Main theoretical schools and frames of reference. The roles and motivations of the parties involved in the employment relationship. The social, political and economic environment of employment relations. The New Zealand legislative framework for employment relations. Contemporary issues, including the changing nature of work and workplace relations, and the Employment Relations Act.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 101 or SOCIOL 101

*Restriction:* 641.221, 641.222

#### MGMT 231 (2 Points) Business in Society

An in-depth look at the ideology of modern business, the economic and social 'revolution' in New Zealand and the process of globalisation. An integrative course, considering the economic, social, psychological and moral impacts of global capitalism.

Most of the focus will be on the impacts of the market on key social indicators in New Zealand, but time will also be devoted to international issues.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 101 or SOCIOL 105

#### MGMT 232 (2 Points) Kaupapa Māori in Business

An introduction to an indigenous people's approach to business and ethics, and research. Maori people, their world view and the resulting ethical and knowledge frameworks, particularly those that relate to business development. Maori thought is compared with key ideas in Western, Islamic, Buddhist, African and Pacific thought and business ethics. Indigenous people's research method and the role of research in the construction of knowledge.

*Prerequisite:* MAORI 130 or MGMT 101 or PHIL 102 or 103 or 152

#### MGMT 291 (2 Points) Project Management and Communications

Tools to support project management and the development of skills in communication (written, oral and electronic) to support a project management effort, including executive summaries, progress reporting, documentation, and proposals. Issues in electronic communication and the impact of technology on communication will be addressed.

*Prerequisite:* INFOMGMT 191 and MGMT 192 and STATS 191

#### MGMT 292 (2 Points) Organisational Behaviour and Human Resource Practice

Analysis of the generic functions of human resource management from the perspective of underlying theory in organisational behaviour, including theories associated with perception, motivation, job satisfaction and psychological contracting. Functions studied include: job analysis, recruitment, selection, training and development, performance appraisal, and remuneration.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 192

#### MGMT 293 (2 Points) Employment Relations and Workplace Change

Analysis of the quality of management-union and management-workforce relations in New Zealand, including policy questions associated with employment negotiations and the management of technological change. Distinctive features of employment regulation in New Zealand. The role of work practices, workforce education and skills, and employee relations' philosophies and styles in workplace performance.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 192

#### MGMT 294 (2 Points) Contemporary Organisation Design

Principles of contemporary organisation design including relevant organisation theory. Consideration of the impact of environmental factors, information technology, and the implications of the knowledge economy for organisation design. Consideration of contemporary approaches to organisation design, including: team and project-based structures, knowledge creation and management, centres for innovation, and network and virtual organisations.

*Prerequisite:* MGMT 192

**Stage III****MGMT 301 (2 Points)****Management Theory and Practice**

Students create and manage virtual companies in a 12-week business simulation. Theory is linked to practice in multidisciplinary teams, personal and group effectiveness and other classic and contemporary management issues. Readings and assignments focus on reflective learning, with an emphasis on advanced written and oral communication skills.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 201 or 211 or ENGGEN 302*

**MGMT 302 (2 Points)****Business Policy and Strategy**

A case-based course, which focuses on analysing and responding to complex organisational situations from a general manager's perspective. Objectives and the business environment, competitive analysis and the formation of strategy.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 201 or 212*

*Restriction: INTBUS 202*

**MGMT 303 (2 Points)****Entrepreneurship and New Ventures**

Understanding of the role of entrepreneurship and innovation in new small ventures and existing firms. Exposure to the issues related to starting and managing new small ventures, and establishing entrepreneurial programmes in existing firms.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 201 or ENGGEN 302*

**MGMT 310A (2 Points)****MGMT 310B (2 Points)****Project in New Zealand Management**

Applied management within a New Zealand organisation. Theoretical understanding of management is linked to organisational practice in a student project, resulting in a management report and an independent research project.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 201 or 211 or 212 or 213 or 223 or 231 or 232*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGMT 310 A and B*

**MGMT 311 (2 Points)****Rethinking Organisational Design**

Examines key elements of organisational structure including informal and formal structures. The relationship between structure and strategy; theories of structure and design (resource dependence, economic models of organisation). Explores principles of organisation design and looks at the emergence of new organisational forms e.g. decentralisation and business units, self-designing organisations and alternative models or organisation.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 212 or 302*

**MGMT 313 (2 Points)****Women in Organisations**

The experiences and implications of increasing numbers of women in the paid workforce are explored in an interdisciplinary way. Topics include: home-work interface, female identity, influences of gender and ethnicity, sexual harassment issues, career development, women managers, leadership and power, feminist critiques of organisations,

women-run organisations, and micro and macro strategies for change.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 211 or WOMEN 100*

**MGMT 315 (2 Points)****Interpersonal Relations in Organisations**

Provides an intensive, experientially-based understanding of interpersonal relations in organised settings. Relational assumptions and styles are explored first-hand, using dyadic group and intergroup exercises.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 211 or WOMEN 100 or Departmental consent required*

**MGMT 316 (2 Points)****Organisational Culture**

Provides an overview of the organisational culture field. Topics include: modern and postmodern perspectives on culture, symbolism, culture types, psychodynamic influences on culture, organisational stories, and methods for accessing and reading cultural phenomena. Fieldwork is used to give students an experiential understanding of the topic.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 201 or 211 or 212 or 292 or PSYCH 263*

**MGMT 321 (2 Points)****Comparative Employment Relations**

Theories of comparative employment relations. The influence of changes in the global economy on employment relations. Debates over a social dimension to multilateral and regional trade environments and response to these debates from employers, labour and government. The rise of transnational corporations, their influence on the employment relationship, and developing trade union strategies in the face of that influence.

*Prerequisite: 641.221 or 641.222 or MGMT 223*

**MGMT 322 (2 Points)****Contemporary Employment Relations**

An advanced study of how employers, unions and workers manage employment relations in the contemporary context, including consideration of current issues and debates. The impact of a deregulated environment on trade unions, employers and workplace governance; labour market flexibility and atypical employment patterns; workplace reform; individual and collective bargaining.

*Prerequisite: 641.221 or 641.222 or MGMT 223*

**MGMT 323 (2 Points)****Human Resource Management**

Historical and philosophical bases of personnel management and HRM. Roles of HR specialists and their relationship to strategy. Influence of labour law on HR practices. HR functions such as job analysis and design, recruitment and selection, training and development, remuneration and benefits, management of labour relations and contemporary issues.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 211 or ENGGEN 302 or PSYCH 263*

**MGMT 324 (2 Points)****Women and Employment Relations**

A study of work, both paid and unpaid, from a gendered perspective. Women's functions in the labour market and the labour process, the gendered construction of skill, pay equity, women in management, women in trade unions, women in

industrial relations and policy initiatives arising out of these issues.

*Prerequisite: 641.221 or 641.222 or MGMT 223*

**MGMT 326 (2 Points)**

**Work, Technology and Organisation**

Issues in technological change, contemporary work and organisational practices. The social impact of new technologies such as advanced manufacturing technologies and advanced information technologies on organisations and the workplace; implications for management and labour relations, work and society.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 211 or 212 or 223*

**MGMT 327 (2 Points)**

**Maori Organisations and Governance**

An analysis of the historical, statutory, social and cultural imperatives and impediments that have shaped and continue to shape Maori development, Maori organisations and the governance of Maori organisations.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 232*

**MGMT 331 (2 Points)**

**Business Ethics**

An examination of ethical issues which arise in business contexts. Several frameworks for resolving such issues are presented. Three main areas are covered: ethical dilemmas facing individuals within organisations, ethical issues for organisations, fundamental questions about the ethical nature of business.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 231 or any 4 points at Stage II in the BA, Ethics Programme*

**MGMT 332 (2 Points)**

**Business and Culture**

An opportunity for study of issues arising at the interface between business and society; explores in particular the dynamics of a business culture and the role of business in cultural change.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 231*

**MGMT 335 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Innovation and New Product Development**

A hands-on project to identify, develop and prototype a new product, based on innovation and project management.

**MGMT 336 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Creating Wealth from Technology**

An intensive course in identifying opportunity and commercialising technology.

**MGMT 337 (2 Points)**

**Current Issues in Business, Society and Culture**

Business is conceived of differently in different cultural world views, some seeing it as a force that ought to be liberated from as much constraint as possible, others seeing it as a liability that must be controlled for the sake of the collective. A variety of cultural models of business and the impacts these have on social ordering will be examined.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 231*

**MGMT 338 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Career Management**

A practically-oriented programme of study in present day career structures and their likely

development in the twenty-first century. Includes career theories, effective career practice, and the development of relevant career skills. Personal career assessment and planning.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 201 or 211 or PSYCH 263*

**MGMT 339 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Honours Seminar**

Seminars on advanced topics in organisations and management behaviour. This course is available to students who are interested in going on to do an honours year in MER. It provides an introduction to the requirements and experiences of advanced learning in management and employment relations, within an intensive small group environment.

**MGMT 340 (2 Points)**

**Organisational Transformation**

The implications of IT led organisational transformations. Topics include: technology enabled strategies, organisational performance, emergent organisational designs and the management of technology. A case driven approach will be used to highlight the issues in this course.

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 258*

**MGMT 391 (2 Points)**

**Human Resource Management and Business Performance**

Analysis of the role of effective HR strategy as a necessary, but not sufficient, condition of firm viability and its potential to provide a source of sustained competitive advantage. General principles for improving business performance through human resource strategy and their adaptation in dynamic and complex contexts, including knowledge-intensive competition. Globalisation and the special problems of human resource strategy in multidivisional and international firms. Techniques for modelling and measuring the links between HRM, other business functions and firm performance.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 292*

**MGMT 392 (2 Points)**

**Managing Change**

Analysis of contemporary organisational and people management issues in a context of change, including innovation and imitation. Issues include leadership style, facilitation of creativity and the systemic management of complex change. Assessment of personal and professional responses to change and frameworks for the assessment of individual and group learning. The role of new technology as both a source and enabler of change.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 293 and 294*

**MGMT 393 (2 Points)**

**Project in Human Resource Management**

Applied integration of human resource management and information technology in a business setting, by completion of a supervised project.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 291, 292, 293 and 294*

**MGMT 394 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: MGMT 292*

**MGMT 395 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: MGMT 293*

**Honours and Master's Courses****MGMT 711 (2 Points)****Strategic Human Resource Management**

Theory and research in Human Resource (HR) strategy, including debates about 'best fit' and 'best practice'. The resource-based view of the firm and competition for human capital in the knowledge economy. The roles of HR specialists and the practice of HR planning.

*Restriction: 641.723, MGMT 761*

**MGMT 712 (2 Points)****Employee Recruitment and Development**

The 'make versus buy' decision in Human Resource Management (HRM) and review of key studies in recruitment, selection, socialisation, employee development and labour turnover. Skill development in job analysis and employment interviewing. Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) issues.

*Restriction: MGMT 777*

**MGMT 713 (2 Points)****Performance Management and Reward Systems**

Theories underpinning performance management and studies of performance appraisal, pay policies, promotion systems and non-pay rewards. Skill development in core techniques such as job evaluation and performance appraisal design.

*Restriction: MGMT 746*

**MGMT 714 (2 Points)****Work Organisation and Employment Negotiation**

International theories and research on work organisation, the future of work, and collective and individual bargaining including the nature and growth of more cooperative bargaining strategies, and review of bargaining and mediation practice in NZ. Skill-based negotiation exercises.

*Restriction: MGMT 768*

**MGMT 715 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Contemporary Themes in Management and Employment Relations**

Description and analysis of the behaviour of individuals and groups with a focus on the New Zealand context. Topics include: individual differences, group dynamics and the impact of culture and communication on individuals in organisational life. Knowledge of organisational behaviour is a prerequisite for effective management.

**MGMT 716 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MGMT 721 (2 Points)****The Change Agent**

Develops an historical context for the intersecting fields of organisational change and innovation, and locates this within relevant theoretical frameworks. The focus of this course is on the role of the change agent, surfacing mental models of change, and the underpinning values associated with those models.

**MGMT 722 (6 Points)****Organisational Change and Innovation: Theory and Practice**

Provides comprehensive, practical exposure to organisational change and innovation in a closely supervised, team-taught, intensive format. Examines

contemporary practices of change management; through interactions with companies, students will have the opportunity to explore real issues at the company or industry level of analysis. In addition, projects will allow students to develop their innovation skills, as they actively work with companies to make a difference.

*Restriction: MGMT 756*

**MGMT 723 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MGMT 724 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MGMT 731 (2 Points)****Contemporary Organisations and Management**

The world of organisations and management is changing as a consequence of new technologies, globalisation and increased competition for resources. In this course, students will examine the emergence of new organisational forms, such as network, project-based and virtual (e-business) organisations, and develop their theoretical understanding of the reasons for these developments. Students will also gain an understanding of the new managerial roles that are required in this new organisational environment. Through their participation in this course, students will also become familiar with, and be able to apply, the tools of organisational analysis.

*Restriction: MGMT 751*

**MGMT 732 (2 Points)****Critical Organisational Analysis**

Explores critical theories and ideas about formal organisations in contemporary Western societies. Emphasises and critically examines the relationships between the social contexts of organisations and the development of organisational theory and practice while also considering micro-processes in organisational enactments, such as organisational psychologies. In particular, the course considers the implications of the post-modern debate in social and cultural theory for organisational analysis. The questions explored include: the problematics of rationality, structure, agency, authority, legitimacy and their counter-practices.

*Restriction: MGMT 757*

**MGMT 733 (2 Points)****Issues in Society, Culture and Business**

Provides students with an opportunity for advanced study of issues arising at the interface between business, society and culture, and for analysis of the role of business and commerce in the construction and dissemination of culture. Topics covered at a level appropriate to graduate study will be selected from the following: the ethics of modern business; business and the environment; the market culture; the culture industries.

*Restriction: MGMT 770*

**MGMT 734 (2 Points)****Gender and Diversity in Organisations**

Focuses on the identity of individuals and the concomitant gendered analysis of organisational processes. The interactions of gender, ethnicity and class will be explored according to interests of

students. The application of identity in organisations will be studied through the dilemmas of managing and valuing diversity, its implication for everyday practice and alternate organisational forms.

*Restriction: 641.713, MGMT 752*

**MGMT 735 (2 Points)**

**Kaupapa Maori and Organisations**

Students will be introduced to a world view which draws on a uniquely Maori intellectual and philosophical framework that is manifest in tradition and practice (tikanga me ritenga). This is the basis from which the students will construct their perspectives (matauranga Maori) of Maori organisation and management.

*Restriction: MGMT 771*

**MGMT 736 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**MGMT 737 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**MGMT 740 (2 Points)**

**Foundations of Research**

Theory and philosophy of social science research methods.

*Restriction: 641.701*

**MGMT 741 (2 Points)**

**Research Practice**

The application of research methods in organisational contexts including different approaches to the study of organisations and organisational behaviour with special emphasis on qualitative methodology. Includes a practical application of different approaches to studying organisations such as: experimental, survey, qualitative, archival research, as well as some important issues in doing organisational research using qualitative methodologies.

*Restriction: 641.701*

**MGMT 789 (2 Points)**

**Research Essay**

**MGMT 790A (2 Points)**

**MGMT 790B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGMT 790 A and B*

**MGMT 796A (7 Points)**

**MGMT 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGMT 796 A and B*

**Marketing**

**Stage II**

**MKTG 201 (2 Points)**

**Marketing Management**

Introduction to the fundamentals of marketing management, including basic practical marketing concepts and elements of marketing practice: the nature of the role and operation of marketing within New Zealand, the global economy, and the individual firm.

*Prerequisite: ECON 101 and 111 and MGMT 101 and STATS 108*

**MKTG 202 (2 Points)**

**Marketing Research**

The fundamental concepts and stages of marketing research provided within an overall structural framework, including: how to integrate stages, carry out research in a scientific manner, read and analyse research reports, apply research skills.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and STATS 208*

*Restriction: 646.310*

**MKTG 291 (2 Points)**

**Marketing Management**

Introduction to the basics of marketing management, including the fundamental marketing concepts and elements of marketing practice. Particular attention is placed on the changing role of marketing within New Zealand firms and society as a whole. The impact that information technology has had, and will have, on the science and practice of marketing is also a key feature of this course.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 191 and STATS 191*

**MKTG 292 (2 Points)**

**Creating Market Knowledge**

The fundamental concepts and stages of marketing research provided within an overall structural framework, including how to integrate stages, carry out research in a scientific manner, read and analyse research reports and apply research skills. Statistical packages used in marketing and the impact of information technology developments on market information systems are examined.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 291*

**MKTG 293 (2 Points)**

**Understanding Consumers**

A theoretical framework for understanding aspects of buyer behaviour is examined, with special emphasis on the IT-mediated environment. This includes: individual and group decision-making processes, social and cultural influences, the involvement construct, individual differences, and environmental, situational and technological impacts.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 291*

**Stage III**

**MKTG 301 (2 Points)**

**Marketing Strategy**

Focuses on development, implementation, and control of marketing strategies needed to attain and sustain an organisation's competitive advantage with the objective of achieving long-term organisational goals. Introduces techniques and tools that assist in developing and evaluating the effectiveness of marketing strategies, as well as discussing the contemporary issues and trends in marketing practice. Instructional methods include: the use of case studies, the development of a marketing plan and a computer-based decision-making simulation (Mike's Bikes).

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 302 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Marketing Research**

Focuses on the more technical components of market research. Covers advanced methods used in marketing research such as: logistic regression, discriminant analysis, factor analysis, cluster

analysis, multidimensional scaling, analysis of variance, conjoint analysis and choice modelling.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

*Restriction: 646.310*

**MKTG 303 (2 Points)**

**Buyer Behaviour**

Essentially, the application of psychology to how people make consumption decisions and interpret advertising. This includes a consideration of individual differences and environmental/situational influences on consumers.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 305 (2 Points)**

**Services Marketing and Management**

The marketing management issues faced by organisations competing in the service sector or other firms developing service as a source of competitive advantage. The course also looks at the implications of relationships, customer satisfaction, service recovery and other critical elements in services marketing.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 306 (2 Points)**

**Marketing Communications**

Discusses the elements of the marketing communications mix: advertising, personal selling, public relations, sales promotion and direct marketing. The facilitation of marketing communications through electronic channels. The decision-making process when developing promotional campaigns to support a firm's brand or produce/service strategy will also be covered.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 307 (2 Points)**

**Retailing**

The fundamentals of retail marketing including the integration of spatial and aspatial characteristics of consumer store choice, the role of retailing in the overall marketing concept, and the practice and future of retailing in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 311 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: Public Relations: A Marketing Perspective**

Investigates how public relations affects today's marketing environment and how it can support the wider marketing objectives. A theoretical understanding of public relations and the broader socio-cultural and socio-political environment that impacts upon the marketing function from a managerial perspective will be considered. Systems theory and empirical research are integrated with New Zealand and international cases as a method of applying the theoretical concepts to both profit and not-for-profit organisations.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 312 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic: E-Commerce and Marketing**

An overview of marketing in an e-commerce environment. Marketing opportunities and problems created by the dramatic growth of e-commerce. Internet marketing strategy, purchasing behaviour on the web, Internet-based retailing and online marketing research techniques will be covered.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 313 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: MKTG 201 and 202*

**MKTG 314 (2 Points)**

**Customer Relationship Management**

An investigation of the use of electronic commerce technologies for the effective management of relationships with individual customers. Coverage includes topics related to product and service delivery on the web, communication using the web infrastructure, data collection and analysis, personalised exchange of information with customers, and new models of managing customer relationships both internal and external.

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 258*

**MKTG 391 (2 Points)**

**Strategic Services Marketing**

This course looks at traditional strategy topics from a service delivery perspective and within a relationship marketing perspective. Thus the decisions and challenges involved in strategy development, implementation and change are analysed in conjunction with issues such as relationship architecture, service recovery, customer satisfaction, internal marketing and return on quality. The use of information technology as a tool to create competitive advantage through service delivery is a feature of this course.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 292 and 293*

**MKTG 392 (2 Points)**

**Advertising and Communications**

A conceptual framework for the organisation, planning and control of the marketing communication process, including knowledge of the individual elements of the marketing communications mix and how these may be managed as an integrated programme to support brand product, service or corporate strategy. The interface between advertising and communications and e-commerce is also examined in depth.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 292 and 293 and INFOMGMT 293*

**MKTG 393 (2 Points)**

**Project in Marketing Practice**

An applied project concerning the interface between marketing and information technology either as a small group project or individually assessed.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 291 and MKTG 292 and 293 and INFOMGMT 293*

**MKTG 394 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

*Prerequisite: MKTG 292 and 293*

**MKTG 395 (2 Points)**

**International Marketing**

The unique challenges and issues faced by marketing managers operating in international arenas are presented in this course. The decisions marketers face in deciding whether to offer their products and services internationally is analysed. In-depth case studies of organisations in New Zealand operating overseas are a distinctive aspect of this course. The role information technology has played in opening up the global market is also highlighted.

*Prerequisite: MKTG 292 and 293*

**Honours and Master's Courses****MKTG 701 (2 Points)****Advanced Marketing A**

An introduction to marketing philosophy and theory, with an emphasis on developing critical and analytical skills required to undertake postgraduate research, and to develop an indepth research knowledge in particular areas of marketing.

**MKTG 702 (2 Points)****Advanced Marketing B**

An advanced study of marketing theory relating to contemporary issues. The aim is to develop the ability of critical evaluation. Examples of topics covered include: contemporary services marketing issues, relationship marketing, branding and corporate identity.

**MKTG 703 (2 Points)****Research Methods in Marketing A**

A core course for any student interested in conducting sound research. An overview of the research process, an examination of different types of research philosophies used in the discovery of theory. An introduction to both qualitative and quantitative research techniques is provided to assist students to think critically when designing a research study.

**MKTG 704 (2 Points)****Research Methods in Marketing B**

A continuation of MKTG 703, with the aim of providing students with a more indepth knowledge of data analysis using multivariate methods. The aim is to gain an appreciation of the appropriate types of quantitative methods of analysis and research designs suitable for different types of research problems.

**MKTG 705 (2 Points)****Advanced Buyer Behaviour A**

A core course in the postgraduate programme because it lays the foundation toward a deeper understanding of consumers. This is an advanced study of fundamental theories in consumer behaviour, where both classical and contemporary theories are critically evaluated.

**MKTG 706 (2 Points)****Advanced Buyer Behaviour B**

Builds upon the foundation of MKTG 705. The objective is to explore in-depth important and interesting issues to provide a stronger background in consumer research. Examples of topics include: diffusion of innovation, and the role of moods and emotions, self-referencing and cross-cultural research.

**MKTG 708 (2 Points)****Marketing Models**

The application of mathematical and statistical models in marketing. Topics covered will be consumer purchase models, media exposure models and sales response models.

**MKTG 709 (2 Points)****Information Technology in Marketing**

The advanced study of information technology (IT)

in pursuit of competitive advantage and in marketing communications. Topics include: database marketing and marketing in new media such as the Internet. Aims to provide MCom students with an understanding of the impact of IT on organisations and in marketing communications, and on resulting changes that are occurring in marketing theory and practice.

**MKTG 710 (2 Points)****Advanced Communications Research**

An examination of current and emerging research in communications. Examines relevant research into consumer behaviour as it relates to the receiving and processing of advertising messages. By examining various points of view, students should have a better understanding of the theoretical issues involving the use of the advertising media selection and creative execution of advertising programmes.

**MKTG 716 (2 Points)****Special Topic: Electronic Commerce**

This is an integrative course jointly taught by MSIS and Marketing. Reviews the major elements and applications of electronic commerce and inspects the ways in which integrated systems for electronic commerce might be realised. The emphasis of this course is on synthesising the many strands of developments in the field of electronic commerce by applying them to a major concrete situation. Accordingly, student teams will conduct an analysis of the prospects of using electronic commerce in an assigned industry. The team will also create an e-business/electronic strategy and a systems architectural model for an individual firm in the industry.

**MKTG 717 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MKTG 718 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MKTG 719 (2 Points)****Special Topic****MKTG 789 (2 Points)****Research Essay for BCom(Hons)****MKTG 790A (2 Points)****MKTG 790B (2 Points)****Dissertation (MCom)**

To complete this course students must enrol in MKTG 790 A and B

**MKTG 791A (4 Points)****MKTG 791B (4 Points)****Project (MCom)**

To complete this course students must enrol in MKTG 791 A and B

**MKTG 794A (7 Points)****MKTG 794B (7 Points)****Advanced Research Studies in Marketing**

An integrated combination of research projects and investigations in selected topics in marketing designed to meet the needs of each individual student. The selection is subject to the approval of the Head of Department of Marketing. Research proposals and reports will be grounded in the

appropriate literature and quantitative and qualitative research methodologies.

To complete this course students must enrol in MKTG 794 A and B

**MKTG 796A** (7 Points)

**MKTG 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis (MCom)**

To complete this course students must enrol in MKTG 796 A and B

## New Venture Management

### Diploma Courses

**NEWVENT 603** (3 Points)

**New Ventures**

The venture process and its context. Models of entrepreneurship. Profile of the entrepreneur.

**NEWVENT 604** (3 Points)

**Corporate Venturing**

The venturing process as part of a corporation. Aims to help managers who launch firms themselves, or as part of a larger organisation, to handle the practical problems that will arise and at the same time be able to understand the economic theory which explains why some organisations are more innovative and some more conservative, why some tend to product innovation and some to process innovation.

**NEWVENT 605** (1 Point)

**Franchising**

Franchising, as a special instance of the small and large business interface will be studied.

**NEWVENT 606** (1 Point)

**Special Topic in New Ventures**

**NEWVENT 609** (2 Points)

**Managing a Small Business**

The skills of owner management are explored. Open competition is used as a model to give understanding of small business dynamics as well as techniques for measuring a small firm's viability.

## Operations Management

### Diploma Courses

**OPSMAN 601** (3 Points)

**Strategic Operations**

The development and implementation of operations strategies within corporate, business and other functional strategies of the organisation. Topics include: the strategy formulation process, competitiveness, trade-offs in operations objectives and decisions, focused operations, facilities and capacity management and technology choice.

**OPSMAN 605** (3 Points)

**Project Management**

An exploration of the methods and issues inherent in planning programmes and projects. Topics include: the role of project management in new business thinking, the dynamics of project management, project organisation planning and scheduling, using computerised project management tools, politics and leadership in projects, building and managing a team, and handling conflict.

**OPSMAN 613** (1 Point)

**Quantitative Methods for Managers**

Topics include: statistics, regression analysis and the methods by which individuals or firms choose to measure results or performance.

*Restriction: 605.607*

**OPSMAN 614** (3 Points)

**Logistics and Supply Chain Management**

Logistics management at company level and management of the entire supply chain as an integrated system. Topics include: role of logistics in strategy, integrated logistics management, total cost concept, customer service, transportation, warehousing, inventory management (including order-pint systems and DRP) supply chain management, organising for logistics, order processing and information systems and global logistics.

**OPSMAN 615** (1 Point)

**Performance Frameworks**

The development of balanced scorecard performance frameworks at both an individual and organisational level. Emphasis is given to the development of appropriate measures for use in team-based organisations. Use of Microsoft Office software for creating graphical and numerical measurement frameworks to reflect strategic intent.

### Honours and Master's Courses

**OPSMAN 703** (2 Points)

**Operations Management**

An understanding of the importance of the operations management function for organisations, the strategic issues involved and the tools and techniques used to solve operations management issues. Topics include: decision analysis, resource planning, capacity planning and scheduling, supply and demand issues, location and layout and other issues considered core to the operations of an organisation.

*Restriction: 608.603, 608.604*

## Operations Management

### Stage II

**OPSMGT 255** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Operations Management**

An introduction to a subset of decision areas in operations management (e.g. quality, capacity and aggregate planning, inventory and transportation) and supporting operations research models (including forecasting, queuing and simulation, linear programming, and networks). Qualitative and quantitative issues will be addressed.

*Prerequisite: 636.101 or INFOSYS 110. and STATS 108*

*Restriction: 636.251, 636.252*

**OPSMGT 256** (2 Points)

**Management of Quality**

The objective of quality management is delivering quality products and services that have value for both external and internal customers, while reducing waste throughout the system. This necessitates a strategic framework that includes the organisation and parts of its environment. Includes

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

the judicious use of analysis, focusing on the correct leverage points, and the continual application of proven improvement methods.

*Prerequisite:* 636.101 or INFOSYS 110, and STATS 108

*Restriction:* 636.372, STATS 350

**OPSMGT 257 (2 Points)**

**Project Management**

An introduction to the management of projects in organisations, with a particular emphasis placed on the interdisciplinary nature and broad applications of projects. Topics covered include: project selection and initiation, external issues, human resources, planning, financing, ethics, scheduling and resource allocation, information systems, control, evaluation and termination.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 110 and STATS 108 and 4 points from ACCTG 101, COMLAW 101, ECON 101, 111, MGMT 101

*Restriction:* 636.380

**OPSMGT 258 (2 Points)**

**Business Process Design**

Business process modelling using visual maps, or diagrams, underpin all electronic commerce initiatives. Introduces the elements of business process modelling through mapping and design. Emphasis is on the analysis of how organisational processes need to be redefined in the electronic commerce context. Includes Event-driven Process Chain (EPC) diagrams which are used to model process, data, organisation and interaction. Other topics include: basic flows and processes, business process management, and supply chain and organisational performance metrics.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 225 and 226

**Stage III**

**OPSMGT 333 (2 Points)**

**Enterprise Systems Management**

Examines Enterprise Systems from the perspectives of information systems and operations management. Examines cross-functional integrated computer-based information systems, commonly referred to as Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems in detail. Considers issues associated with the selection, analysis, design, implementation, and configuration of such enterprise systems and investigates how such systems implement transaction processing, management information and decision support. Topics will also include re-engineering of business processes/change management, enterprise reference models and strategic issues.

*Prerequisite:* INFOSYS 110 and INFOSYS 220 or 222 or OPSMGT 255 or 256 or ACCTG 222 or INTBUS 211 or MGMT 201 or MKTG 201

**OPSMGT 370 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Operations**

Focuses on the formulation and implementation of operations strategy in both manufacturing and service organisations. Both structural (e.g. facilities, process choice, vertical integration) and infrastructural (e.g. quality, human resources, performance measurement) elements will be addressed, with attention being paid to linkages with other functional areas within the organisation.

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 255, and OPSMAN 256 or 257

**OPSMGT 371 (2 Points)**

**Business Logistics**

Covers current issues in business logistics. Focuses on logistics at the company level as well as at the level of the entire supply chain. Topic coverage has a modelling emphasis that is in keeping with e-commerce initiatives, and includes forecasting and inventory control models suitable for use in a distribution/supply-chain context.

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 255, and OPSMGT 256 or 257, and STATS 255

**OPSMGT 373 (2 Points)**

**Enterprise Systems and the Supply Chain**

An investigation of the role of enterprise systems and e-commerce in facilitating the exchange of information and goods between business partners. Topics include an analysis of the effectiveness of such applications (including procurement, advanced planning and scheduling software, trade exchanges, auctions and specialised portals), their impact on supply chain management, and the technologies required to effectively design and manage applications to support this activity in an organisation.

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 258

**OPSMGT 375A (2 Points)**

**OPSMGT 375B (2 Points)**

**Operations Management Project**

Provides students with the opportunity to participate in projects dealing with manufacturing and service operations, and quality management. These projects permit students to apply management principles and philosophies together with theory and tools to improve processes and the quality of goods and services.

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 255, and OPSMGT 256 or 257

*Restriction:* 636.379, INFOSYS 340

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPSMGT 375 A and B*

**OPSMGT 382 (2 Points)**

**Production Planning and Scheduling**

Planning and scheduling occur in a wide range of economic activities. They always involve accomplishing a number of activities that tie up various resources for periods of time. Scheduling problems are always complicated by large numbers of constraints relating activities to each other, resources to activities and to each other, and either resources or activities to events external to the system. This course explores the planning and scheduling problems in a production environment and methods of their solution.

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 255 and STATS 255

*Restriction:* 636.381

**OPSMGT 383 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Operations Management**

*Prerequisite:* OPSMGT 255, and OPSMGT 256 or 257

*Corequisite:* OPSMGT 370

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**OPSMGT 740 (2 Points)**

**Readings in Operations Management**

A comprehensive review of the research literature in a particular area of operations management. The

particular area of research must be jointly agreed upon by the lecturer and student(s) and approved by the Head of Department.

**OPSMGT 752 (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods III**

Simulation and modelling methods in information systems and operations management research. Includes simulation techniques, optimisation heuristic search, time series and other modelling methods.

**OPSMGT 760 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Enterprise Systems**

An important opportunity for students to gain knowledge regarding ways in which they can efficiently improve the internal and external service aspects of business. Production and operations decisions can provide major competitive advantage. The focus is on the methods of building a comprehensive enterprise system.

**OPSMGT 761 (2 Points)**  
**Systems Thinking for Decision-making**

An introduction to the concepts of system thinking and the application of methodologies such as social system design, interactive planning, soft systems methodology and critical system heuristics to complex socio-technical systems, such as the operations function in an organisation, as well as the organisation itself. The course will increase the effectiveness of inquiry into problem situations using an experiential approach to systems thinking.

**OPSMGT 762 (2 Points)**  
**Quality Management**

An investigation of the key concepts and theories of total quality management and its links between systems theory and learning organisation. Topics will include: theoretical underpinning of quality management, Denning's theory of profound knowledge, links between systems theory and learning organisation, continuous improvement models, and planning as learning.

**OPSMGT 763 (2 Points)**  
**Integrated Performance Frameworks**

This course addresses both intra- and inter-organisational performance at multiple levels. Views on organisational performance are changing rapidly, in-line with the critical mass of accessible information and communication technologies (ICTs). The Information Age brings a whole new set of frameworks that are likely to be key to future organisational success. Examines both 'Information Age' models, largely based on organisational networks (which have complexity theory as the underlying paradigm), as well as Industrial Age models such as the The Balanced Scorecard and Hoshin Planning. The course is cross-functional: studying material which has been developed from a broad range of disciplines including operations, accounting and human resources.

**OPSMGT 765 (2 Points)**  
**Systems Modelling for Operations and Strategy**

Introduces the emerging field of Systems Thinking and applies its concepts and models to strategic thinking in general and operations decisions in

particular. Uses the MIT approach which has Systems Dynamics as its underlying methodology. Also explores advanced topics in this field and uses modelling and simulation tools to reinforce the concepts and theories.

**OPSMGT 780 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 781 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 782 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 783 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Management**

**OPSMGT 789 (2 Points)**  
**Research Essay in Operations Management for BCom(Hons)**

**OPSMGT 791A (4 Points)**  
**OPSMGT 791B (4 Points)**

**Project (MCom)**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in OPSMGT 791 A and B*

**OPSMGT 794A (7 Points)**  
**OPSMGT 794B (7 Points)**

**Advanced Research Studies in Operations Management**

An integrated combination of research projects and investigations in selected topics in operations management designed to meet the needs of each individual student. The selection is subject to the approval of the Head of Department. Research proposals and reports will be grounded in the appropriate literature and quantitative and qualitative research methodologies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OPSMGT 794 A and B*

**OPSMGT 796A (7 Points)**  
**OPSMGT 796B (7 Points)**

**Thesis in Operations Management**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in OPSMGT 796 A and B*

**Operations Research**

**Stage III**

**OPSRES 385 (2 Points)**  
**Stochastic Methods in Management Science**

Simulation and Monte Carlo methods, an introduction to queues, inventory management, reliability and decision analysis.

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 255 and STATS 255*  
*Restriction: STATS 320*

**OPSRES 392 (2 Points)**  
**Optimisation in Management Science**

Matrix-vector algebra, linear programming, simplex and revised simplex methods, duality, post optimal analysis, network optimisation methods, machine and job shop scheduling problems and solution methods.

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 255 and STATS 255*  
*Restriction: STATS 391*

**OPSRES 393 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Operations Research**

*Prerequisite: OPSMGT 255 and STATS 255*  
*Coresquisite: OPSRES 385 or 392*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**OPSRES 784** (2 Points)

Special Topic in Operations Research

**OPSRES 785** (2 Points)

Special Topic in Operations Research

**OPSRES 786** (2 Points)

Special Topic in Operations Research

**OPSRES 789** (2 Points)

Research Essay in Operations Research for BCom(Hons)

**OPSRES 791A** (4 Points)

**OPSRES 791B** (4 Points)

Project (MCom)

To complete this course students must enrol in OPSRES 791 A and B

**OPSRES 794A** (7 Points)

**OPSRES 794B** (7 Points)

**Advanced Research Studies in Operations Research**

An integrated combination of research projects and investigations in selected topics in operations research designed to meet the needs of each individual student. The selection is subject to the approval of the Head of Department. Research proposals and reports will be grounded in the appropriate literature and quantitative and qualitative research methodologies.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPSRES 794 A and B

**OPSRES 796A** (7 Points)

**OPSRES 796B** (7 Points)

Thesis in Operations Research

To complete this course students must enrol in OPSRES 796 A and B

**Quality Management****Diploma Courses**

**QUALITY 602** (3 Points)

**Statistical Thinking in Quality Management**

Students will gain knowledge and understanding of statistical concepts and tools relevant to the management of quality. Topics will include: descriptive and inferential statistics, population parameters, probability concepts, statistical distributions, notions of variation, control charts, process capability and design of experiments.

**QUALITY 603** (3 Points)

**Quality Strategy and Implementation**

This course teaches the knowledge and skills needed to develop strategies to introduce and sustain quality management in organisations. Topics include: quality and strategic management, generic models of quality implementations, Shiba's model, Maani/Wilson model, Hoshkin planning and policy deployment, with New Zealand case studies.

**QUALITY 613** (3 Points)

**Quality Management**

Concepts, tools, models and implementation strategies of Quality Management and the contrast between them and traditional notions of management. Topics include: customer focus, continuous improvement, service-gap mode, vertical

and horizontal integration, ISO 9000 and business process re-engineering.

Restriction: 609.601, 609.611

**Faculty of Engineering****Chemical and Materials Engineering****Part I**

**CHEMMAT 121** (2 Points)

**Materials Science**

Atomic structure and bonding. Structure of solids. Microstructure. Mechanical properties. Alloying and phase diagrams. Engineering alloys and their heat-treatment. Engineering ceramics and glasses. Engineering polymers. Engineering composites. Biomaterials. Electronic, optical, superconducting and magnetic materials. Corrosion and degradation of metals.

Students intending to proceed to a degree in Chemical and Materials Engineering are strongly recommended to select CHEM 195 as their elective course. Students who do not do so should ensure that their knowledge of Chemistry is of a standard comparable with CHEM 195

**Part II**

**CHEMMAT 201** (1 Point)

**Materials for Electrical Engineering**

An introduction to electrical and electronic materials, essential for engineers working in electrical, electronic, computer, device and telecommunication industries. Contents include: electrical conduction theories, conducting materials and insulators, semiconductor properties and materials, magnetic and dielectric properties and materials. Emphasis is put on the basic properties of electronic materials and their applications in modern industries.

**CHEMMAT 211** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Process Engineering**

Materials and energy balancing with and without chemical reaction. The first law of thermodynamics. Types of chemical reactors and methods of operation. The importance of design and process options. Design concepts and safety as applied to processing. Introduction of fluid mechanics, heat and mass transfer principles and their importance in process engineering.

**CHEMMAT 212** (2 Points)

**Energy and Processing**

The second law of thermodynamics. Thermodynamics of power and refrigeration cycles and flow processes. Classical chemical thermodynamics including concepts of chemical potential, fugacity and activities; their applications to reacting systems. Thermodynamics of solutions; various stability zone diagrams. Multi-component physical equilibria. Multiple reaction equilibria and system-free energy minimisation. Appropriate computational techniques for energy and reaction calculations. Practical examples and applications.

**CHEMMAT 213** (2 Points)

**Transfer Processes 1**

Fluid properties and definitions – fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity, laminar and turbulent flow, compressible flow, forces and momentum relationships, flow measurement. Heat transfer via steady state conduction, convection and radiation. Effect of geometry, force and natural convection. Dimensionless correlations of heat transfer processes with flow processes. Film and overall heat transfer coefficients. Practical examples and applications.

**CHEMMAT 221 (2 Points)**

**Materials**

Solid state transformation – diffusion, vacancies, solidification, nucleation and growth. Dislocations and plastic deformation, grain boundaries and annealing. Mechanical performance of materials. Strengthening mechanisms. Iron/carbon alloy systems and transformations (including pearlitic, austenitic, bainitic and martensitic), effects of alloying elements. Analytical methods – stereography, X-ray diffraction and methods, scanning electron microscopy, microanalysis, surface analysis method. Texture, residual stress.

**CHEMMAT 231 (1 Point)**

**Process Design 1**

Safety issues in chemical plant design. Selection and specification of selected items of equipment – reactors, pressure vessels. Mechanics of solids and approximate analysis of stress and strain. Design of thin-walled pressure vessels. Applications to the design of pressure vessels, reactors, piping and heat transfer equipment.

**CHEMMAT 241 (1 Point)**

**Applied Chemistry 1**

Surface and interfacial processes, surface energies and adsorption. Heterogeneous catalysis, mechanisms of surface reactions. Solid/liquid interfaces, interfacial phenomena and applications to flotation. Techniques for characterising surfaces. Rate processes and surface reactions. Classical and titrimetric methods of analysis, introduction to instrumental methods. Chromatographic techniques and types of chromatographs. Optical spectroscopy and practical applications of spectroscopy in analysis.

**Part III**

**CHEMMAT 311 (1 Point)**

**Process Dynamics and Control**

Elementary, open-loop dynamic modelling of instruments and processes in the chemical industry, transfer functions, block diagrams, dynamic response of components to standard inputs, transport delay, linearisation, interactive systems, stability, open-loop and negative feedback control systems, controllers, root locus concepts, Routh stability criteria. Applications.

**CHEMMAT 312 (2 Points)**

**Transfer Processes 2**

Principles of continuous and staged processes. Mass transfer in various media, systems and phases. Interrelating reactor design to mass transfer processes. Studies of selected separation

processes such as absorption, adsorption, crystallisation and distillation. Heat transfer with phase change; nucleate and film boiling of liquids.

**CHEMMAT 315 (2 Points)**

**Chemical Reactor Engineering**

Kinetics of multiple reactions, analysis of basic reactors – batch, plug flow, and continuous stirred tank reactors. Reactor performance under the conditions of isothermal, adiabatic, and varying temperature. Effect of semi-continuous, counterflow and recycle on the performance of reactors. Heterogeneous reactions and catalysis, diffusion and reaction in porous catalysts, effects of external mass transfer resistance, fixed and fluidised bed reactors, gas-liquid reactors. Reactor engineering for biological systems and applications of biochemical engineering to selected process industries. Electrochemical reactor engineering.

**CHEMMAT 316 (1 Point)**

**Particulate Technology**

A course on particulate technology including characterisation of particles – fluid dynamics. Sedimentation and settling – analysis of separation processes and separation mechanisms. Size reduction and particle size measurement. Separation techniques.

**CHEMMAT 321 (1 Point)**

**Materials Performance**

Degradation and protection – electrochemical corrosion, corrosion rate, polarisation, corrosion protection, testing. Corrosion resistant alloys. Oxidation and high temperature behaviour. Engineering alloys especially non-ferrous. Introduction to the performance of polymers and ceramics. Selection and specification of materials especially for process plants. Selection software.

**CHEMMAT 331A (1 Point)**

**CHEMMAT 331B (1 Point)**

**Process Design 2**

The nature and function of design – process conception, alternatives, constraints and their simulation. Raw materials, safety and environmental considerations. Flow sheet representation of information. Separation systems, heat exchanger networks, and specification of equipment. Process economics and project documentation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 331 A and B.*

**CHEMMAT 341 (1 Point)**

**Applied Chemistry 2**

An extension of mechanistic interpretations for organic reactions, rearrangements in selected systems. Heavy organic chemicals, feedstocks and processing versus products. Polymeric and organic unit processing including synthesis of selected monomers from natural gas and petroleum feedstocks. Appropriate protective measures and safe handling procedures.

**CHEMMAT 361 (2 Points)**

**Engineering Biotechnology**

Principles of biochemical engineering. Exploitation of bioreaction and bioprocess systems. Enzyme

kinetics and microbial growth. Production of primary and secondary metabolites. Special considerations for biological reactors, reduced temperature preservation. Examples of biochemical process industries, waste water treatment and equipment design.

#### Part IV

#### CHEMMAT 411 (2 Points) Advanced Process Engineering

A practical, in-depth analysis of selected topics that influence the efficient design and performance of process plants, environmental preservation, resource management and safety.

#### CHEMMAT 421 (1 Point) Materials Processing

Deformation processing - forging, rolling, drawing, extrusion, etc., with emphasis on materials effects, defects and an introduction to the mechanics. Solidification and casting - methods, theory and applications. Joining technologies - adhesives, soldering, brazing, welding methods and metallurgy. NDT. Powder metallurgy. Surface technology. Design.

#### CHEMMAT 422 (2 Points) Non-Metallic Materials

Polymers - structure and physical properties, influence of structure and temperature on mechanical properties. Rubber elasticity, viscoelasticity. Engineering polymers and design. Biomaterials - structural hierarchical relationships, structural proteins, natural fibres, biomaterials as integrated multicomponent systems, mechanical gels, bioceramics. Ceramics - ternary phase diagrams, bonding, structure, mechanical and thermal properties, high performance ceramics, glasses and composites, processing techniques. Carbon-based materials.

#### CHEMMAT 423 (2 Points) Materials Engineering

Advanced aspects of mechanical behaviour, primarily application of fracture mechanics and failure analysis. Selected topics in primary materials processing, modern steel making. Further topics on materials joining - modern welding processes, standards and specifications, exotic materials. Surface engineering of materials and coating processes.

#### CHEMMAT 424 (2 Points) Electronic Materials and Their Applications

An introduction to electronic properties of materials and their applications. Contents include: basic theories of electrical conduction, conducting and insulating materials, semiconductor properties and materials, dielectric, magnetic, optical, thermal and sensing properties and materials, and superconductors. This course will cover the basic properties, processing methods and performance of electronic materials. The applications of electronic materials in various industries will be emphasised.

#### CHEMMAT 431A (1.5 Points)

#### CHEMMAT 431B (1.5 Points) Design Project

Specification, planning and executing a specific process design project. The detailed considerations in the project to include environmental impact, safety and occupational health issues, material selection, process energy demand and efficiency, costing and economics, process start-up and operation.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 431 A and B*

#### CHEMMAT 441A (1.5 Points) CHEMMAT 441B (1.5 Points)

#### Project

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 441 A and B*

#### CHEMMAT 461 (2 Points) Air Quality Engineering

Physics of air-flow over land. Gaussian modelling of dispersion of fumes and dusts in air. Unit operations to achieve sorption in solids and fluids. Dust control. Work-place Exposure Standards and their attainment. Environmental standards. Management of industrial air pollution. Regional and Local Air Quality Standards. Auditing procedures. Case studies.

#### CHEMMAT 462 (2 Points) Technology for Sustainability

Resource evaluation. Process short-listing. Materials and energy conservation. Reduction of losses due to corrosion. The application of 'exergy' and pinch-technology concepts. Water recycling. Decommissioning. Plastic and metal recycling. Design of compact process plant, its control and provision for subsequent innovation. Full economic appraisal of all constraints. Case studies.

#### CHEMMAT 463 (2 Points) Food Process Engineering

Application of engineering principles to food processing. Thermal treatment, dehydration and separation technologies. Physical properties and microstructure of foods. Meat and dairy technology. Food engineering design.

#### Honours and Master's Courses

#### CHEMMAT 711 (2 Points) Advanced Process Control

Advanced concepts of control, stability and optimisation. Analysis of non-linear systems. Computer control.

#### CHEMMAT 712 (2 Points) Chemical Engineering Seminar

A graduate course on a topic or topics from the advanced fields of fluid mechanics, transport phenomena, heat transfer, particulate technology, chemical reactors and fuel technology.

#### CHEMMAT 713 (2 Points) Studies in Chemical Engineering

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**CHEMMAT 715 (2 Points)****Advanced Chemical Engineering**

An advanced course on selected topics such as: fluid flow, rheology, heat transfer, mass transfer, separation processes.

**CHEMMAT 716 (2 Points)****Advanced High Temperature Processing**

A theoretical and applied treatment of selected topics related to industrial processing in New Zealand. Examples may include: electrochemical engineering for aluminium production, reactors, heat and mass transfer in electrothermal production of metals and slags, metallurgical reactors for treatment and quality control of metals and alloys.

**CHEMMAT 721 (2 Points)****Advanced Materials**

A graduate course with emphasis on new developments in materials science and engineering and their impact on technology and society. Topics may be selected from: surface engineering, nanocrystalline materials and composites, rapid solidification and mechanical alloying, diffusional synthesis, processing via solid state reaction, intermetallics, amorphous alloys and superconductors.

**CHEMMAT 722 (2 Points)****Materials Seminar**

A graduate course on a topic or topics in the field of materials to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**CHEMMAT 723 (2 Points)****Studies in Materials Engineering**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**CHEMMAT 724 (2 Points)****Advanced Materials Characterisation**

A graduate course on modern methods for materials microstructural characterisation and analysis including: electron microscopy (SEM and TEM), microanalysis and surface analysis, atomic force microscopy (AFM), scanning tunnelling microscopy (STM). The course will include both principles and practical experience of these techniques.

**CHEMMAT 725 (2 Points)****Advanced Materials Performance**

A theoretical and applied treatment of selected topics related to: materials performance relationships, advanced topics in fracture mechanics, fatigue wear and high temperature performance including creep and oxidation. An aspect of the course will be practical experience with techniques.

**CHEMMAT 731 (2 Points)****Biochemical Engineering Seminar**

Batch and continuous sterilisation of media and air. Deviations from ideal behaviour. Microbial kinetics and bioproduct production. Bioreaction stoichiometry and bioreactor mass balancing. Effects of inhibition. Batch, fed-batch and continuous fermentation. Relative merits of each.

**CHEMMAT 733 (2 Points)****Thermal Food Process Engineering Applications**

In-depth understanding of several key thermal food processes and equipment such as drying (spray drying, layer drying and fluidised bed, microwave drying etc.); immersion frying; thermal treatment; microwave heating; freezing and freeze drying; low temperature processing (ice cream making etc.); and other related processes. Particular attention will be paid to the interactions between the processes and the product quality. A small design-and-make project and a laboratory project will be conducted to reinforce the above concepts.

**CHEMMAT 787 (2 Points)****Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**CHEMMAT 788A (2 Points)****CHEMMAT 788B (2 Points)****Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 788 A and B*

**CHEMMAT 789 (4 Points)****Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**CHEMMAT 790 (1 Point)****ME Research Proposal (Chemical and Materials)****CHEMMAT 796A (7 Points)****CHEMMAT 796B (7 Points)****ME Thesis (Chemical and Materials)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHEMMAT 796 A and B*

---

**Civil Engineering**

---

**Part II****CIVIL 201 (1 Point)****Land Information Systems**

Aspects of elementary engineering surveying as used for gathering site information for the design and setting out of works. Land information systems, modern methods of gathering, processing and presenting information for engineering purposes.

**CIVIL 210 (2 Points)****Structural Mechanics 1**

Appreciation of structural systems. Equilibrium, bending moment and shear force. Deformation of structures, engineering beam theory, composite beams. Plastic analysis of simple frames, shear and torsion. Elementary elasticity, stress, strain, Mohr's circle, failure theories.

**CIVIL 211 (2 Points)****Structural Mechanics 2**

Matrix methods of structural analysis, stiffness and flexibility methods. Structural stability, column behaviour. Further beam bending and plastic analysis. Theory of elasticity. Practical analysis of structures using computer software.

**CIVIL 220** (1 Point)  
**Introductory Engineering Geology**  
 Principles of physical and structural geology. Elementary stratigraphy. Applied geomorphology. Geologic surveying and mapping. Elementary seismology; microzoning and seismotectonic hazard evaluation. Engineering properties, description and identification of geologic materials. General applications of geology to engineering.

**CIVIL 221** (1 Point)  
**Geomechanics 1**  
 Nature and classification of soils. Density, permeability, stress-strain relationships, shear strength. Fluid flow in soils. States of stress in soil. Compaction. Introduction to stability of soil and rock masses.

**CIVIL 230** (1 Point)  
**Fluid Mechanics 1**  
 Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Force and momentum relationship. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery.

**CIVIL 250** (1 Point)  
**Civil Engineering Materials**  
 Properties and testing of civil engineering materials. Constructional steels, Portland cement and concretes, timber, polymers and other materials. Protection systems. Solid mechanics material models. Stress and strain.

### Part III

**CIVIL 312** (2 Points)  
**Structural Design 1**  
 The preliminary design of structures in timber, concrete and steel and detailed design in timber.

**CIVIL 313** (2 Points)  
**Structural Design 2**  
 The design of structures using reinforced concrete and structural steel excluding seismic actions.

**CIVIL 322** (1 Point)  
**Geomechanics 2**  
 Stability analysis in geotechnical engineering; slope stability, soil pressures on retaining structures, bearing capacity. Consolidation and settlement.

**CIVIL 323** (1 Point)  
**Foundation Engineering**  
 Site investigation. Interface with engineering geology. Deep and shallow foundations – selection, design and construction. Performance of foundations. Retaining walls. Introduction to earthquake effects.

**CIVIL 331** (1 Point)  
**Hydraulic Engineering**  
 Pipe flow – fluid resistance, friction factor, simple pipe flow and minor losses, steady-state pipe flow and pipe networks. Open channel flow – energy and momentum, uniform flow and flow resistance, critical flow, specific energy and flow force, backwater analysis, channel transitions.

**CIVIL 332** (1 Point)  
**Fluid Mechanics 2**

Laminar and turbulent flow. Ideal fluid flows. Boundary layer theory and separation, drag and lift. River morphology and flows. River pollution. Unsteady flow in channels.

**CIVIL 360** (1 Point)  
**Transportation Engineering 1**  
 Impact of roads. Highway alignment geometrics, aesthetics and location impact considerations. Basis of the main pavement design techniques. Road materials. Construction and rehabilitation techniques.

**CIVIL 361** (1 Point)  
**Transportation Engineering 2**  
 Planning for land transport facilities and urban development. Basic operational analyses at priority and signalised intersections for vehicles and pedestrians. Highway capacity analyses. Parking design. Driver characteristics.

### Part IV

**CIVIL 401** (1 Point)  
**Civil and Resource Administration**  
 Application of legal principles to problems in Civil Engineering and Resource Engineering management. Contractual and project administration.

**CIVIL 402A** (1.5 Points)  
**CIVIL 402B** (1.5 Points)  
**Project**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering. The work is to be supervised by a member of staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 402 A and B*

**CIVIL 403** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Civil Engineering A**  
 A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**CIVIL 404** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Civil Engineering B**  
 A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**CIVIL 405** (1 Point)  
**History of Engineering**  
 Contributions of ancient civilisations to development of engineering. The Renaissance: architecture and building. The beginnings of the quantitative method. Seventeenth and eighteenth century European engineering. The rise of the sciences. The Industrial Revolution. Twentieth century engineering. Canals and the railway. Roading, the road vehicle. Aircraft. Communications and computers. Modern engineering and future prospects.

**CIVIL 406** (2 Points)  
**Management Techniques**  
 Introduction to project planning and the making and implementation of decisions.

**CIVIL 407** (1 Point)  
**Accounting for Engineers**

An introduction to the principles of accounting practice.

**CIVIL 411 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Design 3**

Structural design using structural steel and reinforced concrete with the emphasis on the design of details, the strut and tie method and continuity in structures. An introduction to design for seismic actions.

**CIVIL 412 (1 Point)**  
**Introductory Structural Dynamics**

Dynamics of single and multi degree-of-freedom structures. Response to ground motion and the use of response spectra. Mode superposition and spectral modal analysis. Equivalent static forces and background to the loadings code.

**CIVIL 413 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Seismic Design**

Considers the design of structures with an emphasis on the requirements for seismic design of buildings.

**CIVIL 414 (1 Point)**  
**Structural Concrete Theory**

Prestressed concrete and seismic performance of reinforced concrete with particular reference to bridges structures and an introduction to the behaviour and design of reinforced masonry.

**CIVIL 415 (1 Point)**  
**Applied Structural Mechanics I**

Modern techniques of structural analysis and their application to a range of practical structural systems.

**CIVIL 420 (2 Points)**  
**Geomechanics 3**

Shear strength - triaxial testing, pore pressures. Consolidation, anisotropic behaviour, numerical solutions, radial consolidation. Stress paths, effective and total stress paths for drained and undrained loading. Earth dams, stability analysis, flow net construction, piping resistance, instrumentation. Dynamic soil behaviour, site response during earthquakes, dynamic behaviour of earth dams.

**CIVIL 430 (1 Point)**  
**Fluid Mechanics 3**

Basic equations. Laminar and turbulent flows. Ideal fluid flows. Velocity distributions. Open-channel flows. Water hammer. Hydraulic physical modelling. Sediment transport. Unsteady flows.

**CIVIL 431 (2 Points)**  
**Maritime Engineering**

Waves, tides and currents. Wave forces. Wave structure interaction. Floating structures. Offshore structures. Pipeline design and construction. Coastal processes. Ports and harbours. Breakwaters.

**CIVIL 450 (2 Points)**  
**Mechanics of Materials**

A selection of topics from the following: elasticity and plasticity, beams, plates and shells, optimisation of structural systems, behaviour in fire, non-traditional composites, lightweight materials, strengthening and repair procedures, computation and computer packages.

**CIVIL 451 (2 Points)**  
**Timber Engineering**

Aspects of loadings, behaviour and design of timber structures such as light timber frame buildings, industrial buildings, bridges, retaining walls and marine structures. Quality control in wood processing and structural testing. Orthotropic material behaviour and fracture mechanics as related to timber engineering. Fire engineering.

**CIVIL 460 (1 Point)**  
**Traffic Systems Design**

Traffic signal timing analysis. Intersection analysis of performance. Introduction to transportation planning modelling and impact studies. Resource Management and Transit New Zealand requirements. Computer packages.

**CIVIL 461 (2 Points)**  
**Highway and Transportation Design**

Accident investigation and road safety audit. Pavement asset management systems. Pavement rehabilitation techniques. Use of cement/concrete and lime, heavy duty pavements. Environmental and economic assessment of transport projects. Channelisation and intersection design.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**CIVIL 701 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Civil Engineering A**

**CIVIL 702 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Civil Engineering B**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**CIVIL 703 (2 Points)**  
**Project Management A**

Planning, organisation and control of engineering projects.

**CIVIL 704 (2 Points)**  
**Project Management B**

Contract administration, negotiation and dispute resolution for engineering project managers.

*Prerequisite: CIVIL 703 or equivalent*

**CIVIL 705 (2 Points)**  
**Case Studies in Project Management**

Analysis of the management of some large engineering projects currently in hand or recently completed.

**CIVIL 710 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Dynamics**

Vibration theory. Linear theory of discrete and continuous systems including the shear beam and coupled shear walls. Introduction to the non-linear theory of vibration. Response of structures to earthquake, traffic and wind loading. Response spectra concepts. Normal mode analysis. Numerical integration techniques.

*Prerequisite: CIVIL 412 and 415 or equivalent*

**CIVIL 711 (2 Points)**  
**Structures Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in structural analysis and design.

- CIVIL 712 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Analysis**  
 Analytical methods for some or all of the following structures: frames and grids, slabs, shear wall systems, shell structures, bridge superstructures. Structural optimisation.
- CIVIL 713 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Design**  
 Design philosophies. Special considerations in steel, reinforced concrete, prestressed concrete and masonry structural design. The background to and the use of design codes:
- CIVIL 720 (2 Points)**  
**Earthquake Engineering**  
 The fundamentals of seismology including earthquake waves, magnitudes and felt-intensities. The damaging effects of earthquake upon land and the constructions of man. Study of some relevant historical earthquakes. Strong earthquake motions and the vibratory response of land and buildings. Fundamentals of the earthquake-resistant design of engineering structures.
- CIVIL 721 (2 Points)**  
**Geomechanics Seminar**  
 Ground improvement techniques. Reinforced earth, use of geosynthetics. Seepage, groundwater flow, dewatering techniques. Statistical and probability applications in geotechnical engineering. Properties of residual soils.  
*Prerequisite: CIVIL 221, 322, 323 or equivalent*
- CIVIL 722 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Geomechanics**  
 Application of the principles of soil mechanics, rock mechanics and engineering geology to practical problems in civil engineering.
- CIVIL 730 (2 Points)**  
**Fluid Mechanics Seminar**  
 Special topics selected from fluid dynamics, water resources engineering, statistics and numerical methods.
- CIVIL 731 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Fluid Mechanics**  
 Selected topics from applied fluid mechanics and hydraulics.
- CIVIL 732 (2 Points)**  
**Coastal Engineering**  
 Waves, wave theories, wave forces on structures. Breakers, tsunamis, flow induced oscillations, resonance problems in tidal estuaries. Sediment transport by waves. Topics from coastal and harbour engineering.  
*Prerequisite: CIVIL 431 or equivalent*
- CIVIL 750 (2 Points)**  
**Mechanics of Materials Seminar**  
 Topics selected from recent developments in the mechanics and properties of selected materials used in civil engineering.
- CIVIL 760 (2 Points)**  
**Traffic Engineering**  
 Selected topics from: signal performance measures (queues, delays, stops). Coordination of signals, platoon dispersion. One-way street systems. Pedestrian activity design, capacity analysis and levels of service. Queuing theory and applications. Simulation. Design of large-scale parking, street lighting.
- CIVIL 761 (2 Points)**  
**Transportation Engineering Seminar**  
 Selected topics from recent developments in the planning and design of transport facilities and systems.
- CIVIL 762 (2 Points)**  
**Transportation Planning**  
 Land use, transport and travel. Spatial interaction models. Data surveys. Forecasting techniques. Analytical models for trip generation/attraction, distribution, assignment and modal split. Urban planning models. Model and network tests. Operational, economic and environmental evaluations. Computer programmes.
- CIVIL 763 (2 Points)**  
**Transportation Systems Analysis**  
 Selected topics from transportation systems and land use planning with emphasis on analysis and evaluation.
- CIVIL 764 (2 Points)**  
**Highway Operations and Evaluation**  
 Selected topics from: highway capacity and level of service analyses for motorways, urban arterials and rural two-lane highways. Speed prediction and vehicle operating cost modelling. Passing/climbing lane evaluation. Computer simulation packages. Economic evaluation models and appraisal techniques.
- CIVIL 787 (2 Points)**  
**Project X**  
 A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.
- CIVIL 788A (2 Points)**  
**CIVIL 788B (2 Points)**  
**Project Y**  
 A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 788 A and B*
- CIVIL 789 (4 Points)**  
**Project Z**  
 A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.
- CIVIL 790 (1 Point)**  
**ME Research Proposal (Civil)**
- CIVIL 796A (7 Points)**  
**CIVIL 796B (7 Points)**  
**ME Thesis (Civil)**  
 A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in CIVIL 796 A and B*
- 
- Computer Systems Engineering**
- 
- Part III**
- COMPSYS 301A (1 Point)**  
**COMPSYS 301B (1 Point)**

**Engineering Design 3CS**

An appreciation of the engineering design process as applied to various computer-based systems. Design skills are enhanced through a variety of engineering projects which typically include elements of: computer hardware design, computer software design, system design and control, sensing, actuation, and interfacing to computers.

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSYS 301 A and B

**COMPSYS 302 (2 Points)**  
**Software Design 2CS**

A project-based course with extensive hands-on programming experience emphasising problem-solving techniques and applications in computer systems engineering. Topics selected from: software design and specification, software life cycle, algorithms and data structures, programming abstractions, parsing and translation, knowledge-based systems, concurrent programming, computer communications, interfacing with devices.

**Part IV**

**COMPSYS 401A (1.5 Points)**

**COMPSYS 401B (1.5 Points)**  
**Project**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a Computer Systems Engineering topic assigned by the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff.

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSYS 401A and B

**COMPSYS 402 (2 Points)**  
**Embedded Real-time Systems**

Microcontroller architectures, memory and input/output subsystems, assembly language programming, real-time programming, the development of real-time software, programmable logic controllers.

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering****Part I**

**ELECTENG 101 (2 Points)**  
**Electrical Engineering Systems**

This is a foundation course in electrical engineering intended for all engineering students. The aim of this course is to introduce students to electrical and electronic engineering systems and technology. Topics covered include: fundamentals of electrical engineering; electronic analog and digital systems; power systems and electrical machines; and communication systems.

**Part II**

**ELECTENG 202 (2 Points)**  
**Circuits and Systems**

This course concentrates on three fundamental areas: DC circuit analysis, steady-state AC circuit analysis and transient analysis. Basic network theory and analysis techniques are applied to typical electrical engineering systems. The signal waveforms and network responses of such systems are investigated.

**ELECTENG 203 (1 Point)**

**Software Design 1E**

A project-based course with extensive hands-on programming experience. Includes the fundamentals of a high-level programming language, the development environment, programming style and use of standard libraries, and introduction to algorithms, data abstraction and elementary data structures.

**ELECTENG 204 (2 Points)**  
**Engineering Electromagnetics 1**

Electrostatics and magnetostatics, steady electric currents, the magnetic field of steady electric currents, Ampere's law and its applications, electromagnetic induction, Faraday's law and its applications, electromagnetism, simple transmission lines, magnetic circuits, permanent magnets, inductors, transformers, introduction to electrical machines.

**ELECTENG 205 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Systems 1E**

Switching devices, algebra of logical variables, logical functions, combinational logic, sequential logic. Memory elements and a brief introduction to programmable logic devices. Number representation systems. Adders, subtractors, multipliers, dividers, arithmetic logic units, microprogramming, an introduction to a simple microprocessor and its instruction set, assembly language programming. Microcomputer systems design.

**ELECTENG 206 (1 Point)**  
**Engineering Design 2E**

An appreciation of the design process as applied to various electrical and electronic engineering systems. Design skills will be developed through a variety of engineering projects which will typically include elements of: electric wiring conventions, introduction to printed circuit design and CAD, design of simple electronic circuits using op-amps.

**ELECTENG 207 (1 Point)**  
**Microelectronic Circuits**

An introduction to semiconductor devices and their applications. Topics covered include: diodes, bipolar junction transistors, field-effect transistors and operational amplifiers, device models, terminal characteristics, biasing, coupling and design techniques, application to regulators, signal amplifiers, power amplifiers, switches and special circuits.

**Part III**

**ELECTENG 301A (1 Point)**  
**ELECTENG 301B (1 Point)**

**Engineering Design 3E**

An appreciation of the design process as applied to various electrical and electronic engineering systems. Design skills are enhanced through a variety of engineering projects which typically include elements of: analogue and digital electronic hardware design, system design and control, electronic design from concept to working prototype. To complete this course students must enrol in ELECTENG 301 A and B

**ELECTENG 302 (2 Points)****Engineering Electromagnetics 2**

The basic concepts of electromagnetism are completed with a formal treatment of Maxwell's equations and their applications. The course is divided into two areas: fields (leading to electromagnetic waves and communications) and machines (leading to power circuits and devices, including transformers, motors and generators).

**ELECTENG 303 (2 Points)****Systems and Control**

An introduction to the analysis and control of analogue and digital systems. Transfer functions, impulse response, steady-state sinusoidal response and system stability will be discussed. The fundamental theory underlying the control and enhancement of system behaviour will be presented, with specific reference to the analysis and control of electrical systems.

**ELECTENG 304 (2 Points)****Computer Systems 2E**

Microprocessor architecture; interface standards and devices, secondary storage; sampling, A/D and D/A conversion; time critical design issues, real time executives, device drivers, applications of microcomputers in embedded systems; PLCs; field programmable logic, EPLDs and FPGAs, basic logic cells, interconnects, complex digital circuit design cycle, high level design platforms.

**ELECTENG 305 (2 Points)****Electronic Devices and Technology**

The operation and analysis of a range of electronic equipment and systems selected from the full spectrum of the discipline of electrical and electronic engineering will be covered. Suitable electronic equipment and systems for analysis will include examples from the fields of: energy conversion, communication systems, signal conditioning.

**ELECTENG 306 (1 Point)****Transmission Lines and Systems**

The basic concepts of electromagnetism are completed with a formal treatment of Maxwell's equations and their applications including both transmission lines and electromagnetic waves.

**Part IV****ELECTENG 401A (1.5 Points)****ELECTENG 401B (1.5 Points)****Project**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ELECTENG 401 A and B*

**ELECTENG 411 (2 Points)****Power Systems**

Power system network modelling, load flow analysis, fault analysis, dynamic modelling of power system components, control of real power and frequency, control of reactive power and voltage, dynamic and transient stability, economic operation, power system protection, security and contingency

analysis, state estimation, HVDC transmission and power system harmonics.

**ELECTENG 412 (2 Points)****Communication Systems**

Broadband systems: FDM, TDM, PCM. Switched telecommunication systems; traffic theory. Television. Information theory, error control coding, data networks, waveform coding and data compression, baseband data transmission, digital modulation. Digital systems: ISDN, personal communication systems, spread spectrum communications.

**ELECTENG 413 (2 Points)****Signal Processing**

This course is intended to introduce students to the analytical tools required for signal and system analysis and signal conditioning. The course is broadly divided into five areas: deterministic signal processing, random signal processing, discrete (digital) signal processing, passive network synthesis and active filter synthesis.

**ELECTENG 414 (2 Points)****Power Electronics**

Introduction to power conversion, rectifier circuits, switched-mode dc-dc power supplies, control techniques for switching converters, resonant converters, unity power factor devices, waveform generation, brushless dc motors, AC motor control.

**ELECTENG 415 (2 Points)****Special Topics A**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**ELECTENG 421 (2 Points)****Radio Systems**

Transmission lines and waveguides, impedance matching, devices. Radio propagation, antennas and arrays. Radio system design - mobile, point to point, area coverage. Optical engineering, propagation in free space and fibres, introduction to laser systems and optical fibre communications.

**ELECTENG 422 (2 Points)****Control Systems**

State space analysis, relationship to transfer function methods, controllability and observability, multivariable plant. Computer simulation. Stability considerations. State variable feedback. Digital control system, design and realisation of digital controllers, adaptive controllers. Nonlinear systems, phase-plane and describing function techniques, Liapunov's method of stability analysis, design of controllers for nonlinear systems. Variable structure systems.

**ELECTENG 423 (2 Points)****Computer Systems 3E**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. It will include topics such as: advanced computer organisation, CISC and RISC architectures; performance enhancement-pipelining, memory interleaving, cache memories, virtual memory; system buses (32-bit, 64-bit); backplane standards; special purpose microprocessors, e.g. for

signal processing. Multiprocessors, cross-bar systems, shared memory systems; local and wide area networks, the OSI model, gateways, bridges and routers.

**ELECTENG 424 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topics B**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ELECTENG 701 (2 Points)**  
**Wireless Communication**

Aspects of the design and planning of wireless communication systems. Introduction to cellular system design. Issues related to radio propagation: multipath, path loss prediction, channel characterisation. System aspects: cellular technologies, system planning and reliability estimation. Wireless systems and standards.

**ELECTENG 702 (2 Points)**  
**Applied Electromagnetics**

Selected topics in electromagnetic theory. Consideration will be given to both analytical and numerical techniques.

**ELECTENG 703 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Power Systems**

Selected topics in power systems theory. Topics covered will include: computer analysis, control and protection, state estimation, economic optimisation, reliability, dynamic behaviour.

**ELECTENG 704 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Control Systems**

Theory of modern control systems with emphasis on optimisation techniques for both deterministic and stochastic processes. State-space modelling of dynamic systems and choice of suitable performance criteria. Adaptive, fuzzy logic and sliding mode control systems.

**ELECTENG 705 (2 Points)**  
**Heavy Current Electronics**

Vector and scalar control of cage induction motors. PWM waveform generation and analysis. Control of brushless dc motors. Introduction to electric vehicle drive systems. Analysis and simulation of power electronic circuits. Design and application of switch-mode and resonant converters.

**ELECTENG 706 (2 Points)**  
**Digital Signal Processing**

Fast Fourier Transform algorithms, design techniques for digital filters with finite impulse response or infinite impulse response, adaptive and multirate processing, statistical signal processing. Additionally, the following may be covered: Kalman filtering, computerised tomography, and speech recognition. Case studies. Use of commercial packages such as MATLAB.

**ELECTENG 707 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Information Engineering**

A graduate-level course on topics in information engineering including: Artificial Neural Network (ANN) models, software simulation methods,

hardware systems, engineering applications of ANNs, genetic algorithms, fuzzy logic systems, fuzzy logic neural networks, digital coding, variable length codes, synchronisation issues, error correcting codes, encryption techniques, public key cryptography.

**ELECTENG 709 (2 Points)**  
**Image Processing**

Digital image manipulation, enhancement and reconstruction techniques; basic tools for image processing; case studies in deconvolution and phase retrieval; studies of contemporary medical imaging systems (CAT, PET, ultrasound).

**ELECTENG 710 (2 Points)**  
**Embedded Systems**

The use of microcontrollers to add intelligence and effective user interfaces to instrumentation and control systems; the use of FPGA devices in conjunction with microcontroller systems to reduce chip count/add performance and to implement special purpose sub-systems.

**ELECTENG 711 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering D**

**ELECTENG 712 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering E**

**ELECTENG 713 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering F**

**ELECTENG 714 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering G**

**ELECTENG 715 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering H**

**ELECTENG 716 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering I**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**ELECTENG 787 (2 Points)**  
**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**ELECTENG 788A (2 Points)**  
**ELECTENG 788B (2 Points)**

**Project Y**  
A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ELECTENG 788 A and 788 B*

**ELECTENG 789 (4 Points)**  
**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**ELECTENG 790 (1 Point)**  
**ME Research Proposal (Electrical and Electronic)**

**ELECTENG 796A (7 Points)**  
**ELECTENG 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Electrical and Electronic)**  
A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ELECTENG 796 A and 796 B*

---

**Engineering, General**


---

**Part I****ENGGEN 104 (1 Point)****Professional Development 1**

Introduction to professional engineering; the role of professional engineers and professional bodies; professional skills including engineering documentation.

**ENGGEN 110 (1 Point)****Engineering Design 1A**

An introduction to engineering design and the design process. Overview of the practice of engineering design in consulting, construction, industrial and management contexts. 3-D visualisation and representation, graphical communication and graphical problem-solving. Exercises in conceptual design.

*Restriction: 670.102*

**ENGGEN 111 (1 Point)****Engineering Design 1B**

Innovation, product development and implementation of the design process. Projects in preliminary design, based on an understanding of fundamental mechanics.

*Restriction: 670.102*

**ENGGEN 121 (2 Points)****Engineering Mechanics**

An introduction to mechanics including: planar forces, free body diagrams, planar equilibrium of rigid bodies, friction, distributed forces, internal forces, shear force and bending moment diagrams, simple stress and strain and associated material properties, kinematics and kinetics of particles, work and energy, motion of rigid bodies in a plane.

**Part II****ENGGEN 202 (1 Point)****Professional Development II**

Engineering in society. Topics include: professional ethics, cultural perspectives, critical events in engineering history, political influences on engineering, design and aesthetics, and further development of professional skills.

**ENGGEN 203 (1 Point)****Sustainability Engineering**

Basic principles of sustainability; issues and practices that affect the sustainable use of resources and the impact on the environment; the application of engineering to sustainability issues, and engineering solutions to achieve sustainability.

**ENGGEN 299 (0 Points)****Workshop Practice****Part III****ENGGEN 302 (2 Points)****Professional Development 3**

Engineering management – an introduction to modern theory and practice of management, with particular reference to engineering projects and enterprises.

*Restriction: 670.301*

**Part IV****ENGGEN 402 (1 Point)****Professional Development 4**

Professional practice and related issues – the engineer's role in the profession and the community, including ethical, legal and cultural responsibilities.

*Restriction: 670.401*

**ENGGEN 499 (0 Points)****Practical Work****Diploma Courses****ENGGEN 601 (2 Points)****Case Studies in Engineering A**

The case study may include aspects of design or analysis, a survey and/or evaluation of a problem in any branch of engineering. A student is required to submit a report.

**ENGGEN 602 (2 Points)****Case Studies in Engineering B**

The case study may include aspects of design or analysis, a survey and/or evaluation of a problem in any branch of engineering. A student is required to submit a report.

**ENGGEN 611 (2 Points)****Case Studies in Operations Research**

A detailed examination of an operations research application, consideration being given to the problem formulation, modelling and solution implementation. A report must be submitted.

**ENGGEN 621 (2 Points)****Technology and Design**

Technological methods used to produce a product and the differences from the analytical scientific method. Exercises using the design process to solve problems and propose workable solutions. 'Design and build' projects. Educational strategies and the formulation of design problems.

**Honours and Master's Courses****ENGGEN 701 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering A****ENGGEN 702 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering B****ENGGEN 703 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering C****ENGGEN 704 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering D****ENGGEN 705 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering E****ENGGEN 706 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering F****ENGGEN 707 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering G****ENGGEN 708 (1 Point)****Special Topic in Engineering H**

*For each of the Special Topics in Engineering courses, students are required to attend and participate in a specified Engineering Short Course. Each student will*

then be required to carry out a detailed study within a company or organisation on the application of the engineering technique or procedure covered in the Short Course. The student must submit a report on the results of the study for assessment.

**ENGGEN 757A** (2 Points)

**ENGGEN 757B** (2 Points)

**Project M**

A student is required to submit a report on the project carried out. The project may include a survey and evaluation of modern advances in engineering management practices, the development of new management strategies, industrial case studies or the development of an engineering management-oriented computer package.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 757 A and B

**ENGGEN 760A** (4 Points)

**ENGGEN 760B** (4 Points)

**Project in Operations Research**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 760 A and B

**ENGGEN 790** (1 Point)

**ME Research Proposal (Engineering)**

**ENGGEN 796A** (7 Points)

**ENGGEN 796B** (7 Points)

**ME Thesis (Engineering)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 796 A and B

**ENGGEN 797A** (3.5 Points)

**ENGGEN 797B** (3.5 Points)

**Master of Operations Research Thesis**

**ENGGEN 798A** (7 Points)

**ENGGEN 798B** (7 Points)

**Master of Operations Research Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGGEN 798 A and B

**Engineering Science**

**Part I**

**ENGSCI 111** (2 Points)

**Mathematical Modelling 1**

Introduction to mathematical modelling. Differentiation and integration (polynomials, trigonometric, exponential, logarithmic, hyperbolic and rational functions). Integration by parts, substitution and numerical integration. Relational functions. Differential equations and their solutions (including Euler's method). Complex numbers and roots of functions. Vector and matrix algebra, geometry, transformations, sets of linear equations, curve fittings. Introduction to probability.

**ENGSCI 131** (1 Point)

**Engineering Computing**

Introduction to computing for engineers. Computer literacy, word processing, spreadsheets. Problem-solving and programming using the MATLAB package.

**Part II**

**ENGSCI 211** (2 Points)

**Mathematical Modelling 2**

First and second order ordinary differential equations and solutions. Laplace transforms. Taylor series and series in general. Multivariate and vector calculus including div grad and curl. Further linear algebra with partial pivoting. Fourier series and transforms. Application of the techniques through appropriate modelling examples.

**ENGSCI 212** (2 Points)

**Mathematical Modelling 2ES**

First and second order ordinary differential equations and solutions. Laplace transforms. Taylor series and series in general. Multivariate and vector calculus including div grad and curl. Further linear algebra with partial pivoting. Fourier series and transforms. Application of the techniques through appropriate modelling examples.

**ENGSCI 231** (1 Point)

**Computational Techniques 1**

Visual basic programming. Basic concepts of numerical computation. Solution of linear equations by LU factorisation, pivoting, numerical stability; ill-conditioning; iterative improvement. Numerical integration via Trapezoidal, Simpson, Gauss and Adaptive rules. Introduction to numerical solution of ODEs via Euler and Improved Euler methods. Introduction to Lagrange interpolation and splines. Nonlinear equations via Bisection, secant, regula falsi and Newton methods. Sorting and searching.

**ENGSCI 232** (1 Point)

**Computer Systems**

Introduction to digital logic, computer system design, and simple hardware interfacing. Laboratory time is used to develop hardware and software for a real-time data collection system.

**ENGSCI 255** (2 Points)

**Modelling in Operations Research**

Emphasises the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated operations research models. Software packages will be used to solve practical problems. Topics such as: linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, inventory models, and simulation will be considered.

*Restriction: STATS 255*

**ENGSCI 261** (1 Point)

**Engineering Design 2ES**

Further development of problem-solving skills and group project work. The use of computer tools in engineering design, including advanced spreadsheeting integrated with solid modelling.

**ENGSCI 262** (1 Point)

**Modelling in Engineering**

Introduction to concepts of modelling of engineering problems, including model formulation, dimensional analysis, solution procedures, comparisons with reality, and shortcomings, with examples from elementary mechanics, structures, hydrostatics, one-dimensional heat, diffusion and fluid motion.

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

Schedule of Prescriptions

**ENGSCI 271 (1 Point)****Modelling in Bioengineering**

Introduction to concepts of modelling of bioengineering problems, including: model formulation, dimensional analysis, solution procedures, comparisons with reality, and shortcomings, with examples from elementary biomechanics, biostructures, hydrostatics, one-dimensional heat, diffusion and fluid motion.

**ENGSCI 272 (2 Points)****Bioinstrumentation I**

General principles of instrumentation systems and signal processing. Measurement systems: transducers, amplifiers, filters and active circuits. Signal processing: data acquisition, digital signal processing frequency and time domain methods, introduction to imaging and image analysis.

**ENGSCI 274 (2 Points)****Mechanics of Biomaterials**

Importance of structural hierarchies in biomaterials. Protein-based biomaterials: keratins, silks, collagens, protein rubbers. Polysaccharide-based biomaterials. Integrated biomaterial systems with complex mechanical roles. Biogels, biocomposites, bioceramics. Bases of strength, stiffness, compliance, fracture toughness, energy, storage and time-dependent behaviour in biomaterials and their relevance to function.

**Part III****ENGSCI 311 (2 Points)****Mathematical Modelling 3**

A selection from: ordinary differential equations. Systems of equations, analytical and numerical methods, non-linear ODEs. Partial differential equations. Separation of variables. Numerical methods for solving PDEs. Models for optimisation. Industrial statistics. Data analysis, regression, experimental design reliability methods, process control.

*Restriction: STATS 255*

**ENGSCI 312 (1 Point)****Mathematical Modelling 3ES**

Mathematical modelling using ordinary and partial differential equations.

*Restriction: STATS 255*

**ENGSCI 321 (1 Point)****Probability and Statistics**

Probability. Conditional probability, random variables as models of a population, common distribution models, the Poisson process, applications to reliability. Exploratory data analysis, confidence intervals, tests of hypothesis, t-tests, sample tests and intervals, paired comparisons. Introduction to one-way ANOVA. Linear and polynomial regression, regression diagnostics.

**ENGSCI 331 (2 Points)****Computational Techniques 2**

Fortran programming. Linear equations. Numerical methods for ODEs. Taylor series, truncation error. Eigen problems. Gaussian quadrature. Nonlinear equations: Newton's method in multidimensions.

Multivariate minimisation: Steepest descent, Newton's method, Levenberg-Marquardt method. Finite differences for PDEs. Explicit and implicit difference schemes for heat equation. Stability by Von Neumann approach. ADI method.

**ENGSCI 332 (2 Points)****Computer Systems and Control**

Selected topics will be covered from: control system description, time response and feedback, root-locus, frequency response, state space methods, multivariable system control.

**ENGSCI 341 (1 Point)****Foundations of Continuum Mechanics**

Vector calculus and integral theorems as applied to continuum field problems such as heat flow. Language, methodology and basic equations of continuum mechanics, including: the continuum hypothesis, indicial notation, basic kinematics, displacement, deformation, finite strain, small strain, plane strain, strain rate, traction, stress, plane stress, rotation of axes, transformation rules, principal directions, tensors, invariants, velocity fields, constitutive laws for a range of materials, isotropy, homogeneity, physical meaning of parameters in the constitutive equations for the isotropic elastic solid and the incompressible Newtonian fluid, derivation of Navier-Stokes and Navier's equations.

**ENGSCI 342 (2 Points)****Modelling in Continuum Mechanics**

Isotropic elasticity, homogeneous deformations, elastic moduli, plane stress and plane strain, solutions with radial symmetry. Airy stress function, compatibility and the biharmonic equation, solutions in polar coordinates, applications including fracture and contact, mechanics. Viscous flow, simple exact solutions of the Navier-Stokes equations. Steady flow over a flat plate, boundary layers. Ideal flow, velocity potential and stream function, 2D flows. Introduction to hydraulics, flow in pipes, open channel flow.

**ENGSCI 361 (1 Point)****Engineering Design 3ES**

Structural design examples, using modern concepts and aids where available. Observation of near full-scale structural performance in the laboratory environment of a component or structure made from concrete, steel or structural timber. Performance of structures in fire, earthquake or wind.

**ENGSCI 371 (2 Points)****Continuum Modelling in Bioengineering**

Isotropic elasticity, homogenous deformations, elastic moduli, plane stress and plane strain, solutions with radial symmetry. Airy stress function, compatibility and the biharmonic equation, solutions in polar coordinates, applications including fracture and contact, mechanics. Viscous flow, simple exact solutions of the Navier-Stokes equations. Steady flow over a flat plate, boundary layers. Ideal flow, velocity potential and stream function, 2D flows. Introduction to biofluid mechanics.

**ENGSCI 372 (1 Point)**  
**Bioinstrumentation 2**  
 Specification and design of measurement systems for bioengineering. This modular course will have a strong practical component.

**ENGSCI 391 (2 Points)**  
**Optimisation in Operations Research**  
 Linear programming, the revised simplex method and its computational aspects, duality and the dual simplex method, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis. Network optimisation models, maximum flow, shortest path and spanning tree algorithms. Transportation, assignment and transshipment models, and the network simplex method.

**Part IV**

**ENGSCI 400A (1.5 Points)**  
**ENGSCI 400B (1.5 Points)**  
**Project**

An investigation carried out under the supervision of a member of staff on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Engineering Science. A written report on the work must be submitted.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 400 A and B*

**ENGSCI 401 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science A**  
*For BTEch students only*

**ENGSCI 402 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science B**

**ENGSCI 403 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science C**

**ENGSCI 404 (1 Point)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Science D**  
 Courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Engineering Science.

**ENGSCI 414 (2 Points)**  
**Mathematical Modelling 4A**  
 A selection of 12 lecture modules on mathematical modelling methods in engineering, including theory of partial differential equations, methods of characteristics, similarity solutions, asymptotic expressions, theory of waves, special functions, nonlinear ordinary differential equations, calculus of variations, tensor analysis, complex variables, wavelet theory and other modules offered from year to year. Students select four modules.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 415*

**ENGSCI 415 (1 Point)**  
**Mathematical Modelling 4B**  
 Students select two modules from those offered for ENGSCI 414.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 414*

**ENGSCI 416 (1 Point)**  
**Mathematical Modelling 4C**  
 This course offers a selection of 12 lecture modules on advanced mathematical modelling in engineering to suit the needs of both final year engineering and postgraduate students. Some modules may be available from the MM3 options. Students select two modules.

**ENGSCI 440 (2 Points)**  
**Continuum Mechanics**  
 Applications of continuum mechanics and mathematical modelling to problems in biomechanics, fluid mechanics and solid mechanics. In biomechanics applications of large deformation elasticity to soft tissues will be considered. In fluid mechanics important topics in classical fluid mechanics and environmental fluid mechanics will be selected from: inviscid flow theory, compressible flows, viscous flows, meteorology, oceanography, coastal ocean modelling, mixing in rivers and estuaries. In solid mechanics applications of linear elasticity, plasticity and viscoelasticity theory will be considered in the context of engineering problems.

**ENGSCI 441 (1 Point)**  
**Bioengineering**  
 Biophysics of membrane channels and pumps. Mechanics of striated muscle. Cardiac electromechanics. Biomedical instrumentation and signal analysis. Body surface mapping. Forward and inverse problems of electrocardiology.

**ENGSCI 442 (1 Point)**  
**Fluid Mechanics**  
 Turbulence and turbulence modelling. Advanced numerical techniques in computational fluid dynamics (cfd). Application of cfd to environmental flows and aerodynamics.

**ENGSCI 443 (1 Point)**  
**Solid Mechanics**  
 A variety of topics in engineering solid mechanics which could include composite materials, geomechanics, contact mechanics, fracture mechanics, rheology, constitutive theory and computational methods.

**ENGSCI 450 (2 Points)**  
**Computational Techniques 3A**  
 Students select four modules from those covering finite elements, boundary elements, finite differences, C/C++ programming, network programming, heuristics and unconstrained nonlinear optimisation, AMPL modelling language.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 451*

**ENGSCI 451 (1 Point)**  
**Computational Techniques 3B**  
 Students select two modules from those offered for ENGSCI 450.

*Restriction: ENGSCI 450*

**ENGSCI 452 (1 Point)**  
**Computational Techniques 3C**  
 Singular value decomposition and ill-conditioning, orthogonal factorisations, least squares. Eigenproblems. Iterative methods for linear systems.

**ENGSCI 453 (1 Point)**  
**Advanced Computer Systems**  
 An advanced course of study covering topics such as modern programming and development systems, object oriented design, database design, practical implementation issues, user interface design, client server computing and multi-user systems.

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

<b>ENGSCI 460</b> (2 Points) <b>Operations Research</b> Dynamic programming. Integer programming. An introduction to stochastic modelling and simulation. Multi-criteria optimisation.	<b>ENGSCI 720</b> (2 Points) <b>Seminar in Stochastic Operations Research</b> An advanced course in which students are required to present seminars on current development in stochastic operations research.
<b>ENGSCI 461</b> (1 Point) <b>Advanced Simulation</b> Builds on the simulation topics introduced in ENGSCI 460. Uniform and non-uniform random variate generation, input distribution selection, discrete-event simulation models, how discrete-event simulation software works, output analysis, variance reduction, optimisation and simulation. <i>Prerequisite: ENGSCI 460</i>	<b>ENGSCI 721</b> (2 Points) <b>Advanced Numerical Methods</b> An advanced course on finite elements, boundary elements and finite differences.
<b>ENGSCI 462</b> (1 Point) <b>Applied Statistics</b> Reliability models, maintenance and inspection schemes. Statistical process control. Design and analysis of experiments for industrial applications including incomplete block, factorial, fractional factorial designs.	<b>ENGSCI 741</b> (2 Points) <b>Studies in Continuum Mechanics A</b>
<b>ENGSCI 463</b> (1 Point) <b>Scheduling</b> Problems in production and machine scheduling, vehicle routing, facilities layout and personnel scheduling and rostering. Models and computational methods for the solution of scheduling problems.	<b>ENGSCI 742</b> (2 Points) <b>Studies in Continuum Mechanics B</b> Graduate courses in continuum mechanics covering topics in the mechanics of solids and fluids and other continua.
<b>ENGSCI 464</b> (1 Point) <b>Stochastic Programming</b> Models for planning under uncertainty. Two-stage and multi-stage programs with recourse. Decomposition methods. Scenario construction and solution validation.	<b>ENGSCI 743</b> (2 Points) <b>Geothermal Modelling</b> A study of mathematical methods currently used in geothermal reservoir engineering, and an introduction to the computer modelling of geothermal flows.
<b>ENGSCI 471</b> (2 Points) <b>Computational Methods for Bioengineering</b> Finite element basis functions. Galerkin methods for finite elements and boundary elements. Bioengineering applications in heat flow, gas transport, linear elasticity and fluid flow.	<b>ENGSCI 744</b> (2 Points) <b>Bioengineering</b> An introduction to the application of engineering principles and methods in biomedical research. Mechanical properties of living tissue – constitutive laws, structure/function relationships, myocardial and lung mechanics, haemodynamics. Biological control mechanisms. Electrophysiology. Instrumentation and measurement; principles and applications.
<b>ENGSCI 472</b> (2 Points) <b>Whole Organ Modelling</b> Advanced computational modelling of whole organs with an emphasis on integrative physiology and coupled field problems in bioengineering. Finite deformation elasticity theory and computational aspects. Current flow in excitable tissue. Finite element collocation techniques. Coupled finite element - boundary element problems.	<b>ENGSCI 751</b> (2 Points) <b>Studies in Operations Research A</b>
<b>Honours and Master's Courses</b>	<b>ENGSCI 752</b> (2 Points) <b>Studies in Operations Research B</b> Graduate courses in recent developments in operations research and applications.
<b>ENGSCI 701</b> (2 Points) <b>Studies in Engineering Science</b> A graduate course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Engineering Science.	<b>ENGSCI 787</b> (2 Points) <b>Project X</b> A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.
<b>ENGSCI 711</b> (2 Points) <b>Studies in Engineering Mathematics</b> A graduate course in mathematics applied to engineering problems on such topics as the theory of ordinary differential equations, partial differential equations, perturbation methods, advanced numerical analysis, etc.	<b>ENGSCI 788A</b> (2 Points) <b>ENGSCI 788B</b> (2 Points) <b>Project Y</b> A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department. <i>To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 788 A and B</i>
	<b>ENGSCI 789</b> (4 Points) <b>Project Z</b> A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.
	<b>ENGSCI 790</b> (1 Point) <b>ME Research Proposal (Engineering Science)</b>
	<b>ENGSCI 791</b> (2 Points) <b>Advanced Linear Optimisation</b> Techniques for basis handling in the revised simplex method, sparsity considerations, column

generation and decomposition methods, methods for semi-infinite and continuous-time problems, interior point methods for linear programming.

**ENGSCI 792 (2 Points)**

**Non-Linear Optimisation**

Theory of constrained and unconstrained non-linear optimisation, including optimality conditions, Karush-Kuhn-Tucker conditions, and solutions techniques for important classes of these problems including Newton-Raphson methods, Quasi-Newton methods, trust regions, penalty function methods, quadratic programming, sequential linear programming, dual methods, convex approximations and sequential quadratic programming.

**ENGSCI 793 (2 Points)**

**Structural Optimisation**

Optimal mechanical design, applications, formulation of problems, differential calculus, variational calculus, necessary and sufficient conditions for optimality, Lagrange function, limit analysis, linear programming, static analysis, Cholesky factorisation, potential energy, non-linear analysis, contact analysis, sensitivity analysis, finite differences, analytical differences, limit design, duality, sequential linear programming, quadratic programming, material section.

**ENGSCI 795 (2 Points)**

**Combinatorial Optimisation**

An introduction to the important theoretical and computational aspects of combinatorial optimisation problems. Topics include: complexity, sorting and searching algorithms, matching problems, matroids and their role in combinatorial optimisation, basis reduction methods, branch and cut methods, TSP/VRP as applications.

**ENGSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**ENGSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Engineering Science)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in ENGSCI 796 A and B

**Energy Technology**

**Diploma Courses**

**GEO THERM 601 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Resources and Their Use**

Basic features of geothermal resources, their classification and development, assessment of reservoirs, fluid production and steamfield equipment, methods of electricity generation, reservoir engineering, environmental considerations, development planning, geothermal project economics.

**GEO THERM 602 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Energy Technology**

Background information on earth science, thermodynamics, fluid mechanics and heat transfer, field work demonstrating exploration techniques, introduction to groundwater hydrology, corrosion and scaling.

*For Diploma students only*

**GEO THERM 603 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Exploration**

Geology (mapping geothermal fields and discharge features, reservoir permeability, drillhole logging, geothermal hazards). Geochemistry (chemistry of geothermal fluids, aqueous and gaseous geothermometers, boiling and mixing effects). Geophysics (rock properties, principles of gravity, magnetic, electric, seismic and thermal methods used for geothermal exploration).

*For Diploma students only*

**GEO THERM 611 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Geology**

Principles of hydrothermal alteration, use of mineralogy to assess geothermal reservoirs, fluid inclusion geothermometry, correlating data between drillholes, depiction of subsurface geology, integration of geological and geochemical data.

**GEO THERM 612 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Geophysics**

Interpretation of resistivity, self-potential, gravity, seismic and magnetic surveys, micro-earthquake studies, temperature surveys and geophysical drillhole logging, monitoring of mass changes in reservoirs.

**GEO THERM 613 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Geochemistry**

Interpretation of chemical and isotope data of geothermal liquids and gases, fluid-mineral equilibrium, production chemistry, environmental chemistry.

**GEO THERM 620 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Engineering**

Principles of heat and mass transfer, principles of energy cycles, well measurement and testing, basic components of fluid production and utilisation, concepts of energy conversion, optimisation, criteria for good design and plant maintenance, environmental monitoring.

*For Diploma students only*

**GEO THERM 621 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Reservoir Engineering**

Transient thermal conduction, theoretical and numerical solutions, flow in porous media, two-phase flow in wells, well testing and interpretation of measurements, interference testing, numerical reservoir simulation.

**GEO THERM 622 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Production Engineering**

Drilling techniques and completion tests, fluid separation and transmission, single and two-phase fluid flow, design of fluid-gathering systems and their optimisation, assessment of corrosion and scaling, well stimulation, safety codes and standards.

**GEO THERM 623 (2 Points)**

**Geothermal Utilisation Engineering**

Review of applied thermodynamics, industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat. Electricity production and process heat generation. Plant design criteria, optimisation of plants, cascaded use, waste disposal and environmental effects of

utilisation schemes. Maintenance of plant. Planning of plant developments and costing.

**GEOTHERM 689** (4 Points)  
**Geothermal Project**

Students are required to submit reports on a specified field exercise, a small team pre-feasibility study for a geothermal development, and a project making some contribution in relation to a geothermal development or to geothermal science or engineering.

*For Diploma students only*

---

**Mechanical Engineering**

---

**Part II**

**MECHENG 211** (2 Points)  
**Thermofluids**

The fundamentals of fluid mechanics, thermodynamics and heat transfer with practical applications to engineering devices and systems.

**MECHENG 222** (2 Points)  
**Dynamics**

Systems of forces and moments in two dimensions, equilibrium, free body diagrams. Kinematics of particles, rectilinear and curvilinear motion, kinematics of rigid bodies in the plane. Kinetics of particles, systems of particles and rigid bodies: Newton's laws, work and energy, impulse and momentum, general motion in the plane. Variable mass systems. Vibrations of single degree-of-freedom systems.

**MECHENG 223** (2 Points)  
**Machines and Mechanisms**

An introductory study of machines and mechanisms in terms of their function, design, manufacture and life. Aspects covered will include: gear trains, fluid power systems, electric motors, bearings, lubrication and wear, cooling systems, linkages, engines and manufacturing processes.

**MECHENG 232** (1 Point)  
**Engineering Design II M 1**

Sound skills and principles of mechanical engineering design. Basics of engineering drawing including: orthographic, auxiliary and sectional views, proper dimensioning and tolerancing schemes, working and assembly drawings. Introduction to Computer-Aided Design (CAD): geometrical and solid modelling methods, feature-based design technology, parametric design, incorporation of designer's intent into CAD model, and generation of working and assembly drawings from the CAD tool.

*Restriction: MECHENG 231*

**MECHENG 233** (1 Point)  
**Engineering Design II M 2**

Design process as a problem-solving activity and the design of simple structural and machine elements, and systems. Design as a teamwork activity. Continued application of the Computer-Aided Design techniques and tool(s).

*Restriction: MECHENG 231*

**MECHENG 242** (2 Points)  
**Mechanics of Materials**

Elastic tension and shear; bending of beams, stress-

moment and moment-curvature relationships, beam deflections; buckling of simple struts; shear in beams; torsion in bars and circular shafts, stress-torque and torque-twist relationships; general analysis of plane stress, failure criteria, safety factor; elastic strain energy, fracture, yield.

---

**Part III**

**MECHENG 311** (2 Points)  
**Thermal Engineering**

Second Law of Thermodynamics, entropy. Cycles and applications. Heat transfer, heat exchangers.

**MECHENG 312** (2 Points)  
**Mechatronics 1**

Overview of elements of mechatronic systems. Fundamentals of electronic devices and circuits applied to mechanical systems. Topics covered include: electromagnetics, sensors and actuators, electrical and electronic technology, signal conditioning and processing, amplifiers and power supplies, and A/D and D/A conversion.

**MECHENG 313** (2 Points)  
**Real Time Software Design**

An introduction into the design of Real Time software addressing issues such as software design and specification, software life cycle methods, operating systems, networks, programming in assembly and high-level languages, and simulation and analysis tools.

**MECHENG 322** (2 Points)  
**Control Systems**

Modelling of system's dynamics: differential equations, Laplace transforms and transfer functions; linearisation. Block diagrams and feedback. Time response and feedback, step response, steady-state errors and sensitivity, root-locus method. Frequency response: Bode and Nyquist methods, stability, gain and bandwidth. Controller design.

**MECHENG 324** (1 Point)  
**Machine Dynamics**

Kinematics of rigid bodies: velocity and acceleration diagrams, rotating reference frames. Kinetics of rigid bodies, gyroscopic forces and moments. Transient and forced vibrations of single- and two-degree of freedom systems and applications.

**MECHENG 332** (1 Point)  
**Engineering Design III M 1**

Good practice and standard methods in mechanical engineering design. Conceptual and detailed design in projects involving machine elements, engineering sciences and engineering mechanics. The focus is on fundamentals of mechanical engineering design.

*Restriction: MECHENG 331*

**MECHENG 333** (1 Point)  
**Engineering Design III M 2**

Good practice and standard methods in mechanical engineering design. Conceptual and detailed design in projects involving machine elements, engineering sciences, engineering mechanics, and manufacturing. The focus is on applications and practices of mechanical engineering design.

*Restriction: MECHENG 331*

- MECHENG 341** (1 Point)  
**Strength of Materials**  
States of stress and strain at a point, analysis of stress under conditions of plane stress and plane strain, strain rosettes, generalised stress-strain relationships for linearly elastic isotropic materials. Introduction to theories of failure in ductile and brittle materials.
- MECHENG 342** (1 Point)  
**Manufacturing Processes**  
An overview of manufacturing processes (welding-metallurgy and thermal stresses); metal forming processes; macroscopic plasticity (yield, flow rules, plastic work, strain hardening, tensile instability); extrusion, wire drawing, forging, rolling; sheet forming and anisotropic behaviour; polymer processing.
- MECHENG 351** (1 Point)  
**Manufacturing Systems**  
An introduction to the procedures and technology aspects of typical manufacturing systems; basic concepts of plant and work design; automation; design of products; planning, implementation and monitoring of production processes; project-based introduction to the tools and techniques applied by professional engineers in modern manufacturing plants.
- 
- Part IV**
- MECHENG 401** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering A**
- MECHENG 402** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering B**
- MECHENG 403** (1 Point)  
**Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering C**
- MECHENG 404** (1 Point)  
**Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering D**  
Courses on special topics are to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.
- MECHENG 405** (2 Points)  
**Mechatronics 2**  
Modelling and analysis of dynamic electro-mechanical systems. Fundamentals of digital control and systems, sequential logic, computers and microprocessors applied to mechanical systems. Topics covered include: simulation tools and techniques, sensor and actuator selection and interfacing, communication systems, microprocessor architectures and programming, and PLCs.
- MECHENG 406** (2 Points)  
**Mechatronics Design**  
A range of projects that demonstrate the application and integration of the material taught in lecture courses to create practical intelligent products and manufacturing processes.
- MECHENG 407** (1 Point)  
**Mechatronics Project 1**  
Comprises a microprocessor design and interfacing project.
- MECHENG 408** (2 Points)  
**Mechatronics Project 2**  
An innovative mechatronics system design project of some open-ended nature.
- MECHENG 409** (2 Points)  
**Industrial Automation**  
Simple and advanced automation devices for use in manufacturing processes; their selection and incorporation into systems. Topics covered include: pneumatic, hydraulic and electrical actuators, industrial and service robots, continuous and sequential control, and fieldbus, industrial Ethernet and Internet communications technologies.
- MECHENG 411** (2 Points)  
**Building Services**  
Principles and practice of heating, ventilation and cooling; psychrometry, refrigeration, heating/cooling loads. Mass transfer and air quality, refrigeration/heat pump systems, chillers, cooling towers, pumps, fans, valves. Networks of pipes and ducts.
- MECHENG 412** (2 Points)  
**Aerohydrodynamics**  
The study of fluid mechanics relevant to external flows e.g. windturbines, yachts, aircraft or wind loadings on buildings.
- MECHENG 413** (2 Points)  
**Industrial Process and Energy Technology**  
Industrial thermodynamics and energy conversion. Mass transfer, combustion and heat transfer.
- MECHENG 421** (2 Points)  
**Dynamics, Vibrations and Spectral Analysis**  
Vibrations – causes and effects; multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems, modal analysis, analytical, approximate and numerical methods. Analytical mechanics, receptance modelling. Random signals, spectral analysis, digital spectral analysis, aliasing, leakage, random vibrations. Vibrations instrumentation, measurement and testing. Vibration treatment. Applications.
- MECHENG 423** (2 Points)  
**Digital and Computer Control**  
The theory behind the design and implementation of discrete controllers for the control of electro-mechanical systems. Digital systems – discretisation, time and frequency domain characteristics, identification. Digital control – design, analysis and simulation. Real-time implementation – sensors, actuators, signal processing, software and microprocessors.
- MECHENG 431A** (1 Point)  
**MECHENG 431B** (1 Point)  
**Engineering Design 4M**  
A variety of engineering projects requiring the development and communication of design solutions to a professional standard, and using a wide range of advanced engineering methods.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 431 A and B*
- MECHENG 441** (2 Points)  
**Composite Materials**  
Ductile, brittle and viscoelastic behaviour, simple

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 551.

and compound models in viscoelasticity, creep, recovery, relaxation and rate effects; mechanics of composite materials, analysis and design of laminates, applications to sandwich composites; finite element techniques and their applications.

**MECHENG 443 (2 Points)**  
**Manufacturing Technology**

Forming components from metals and plastics; economics of machining, selection of machining parameters; sheet forming: forming paths, tensile instability, forming limit diagram, deep drawing, bending, springback, residual stresses, stretch forming; sheet forming by fluid pressure for strain hardening and viscous materials; polymer processing – methods and analysis.

**MECHENG 451 (2 Points)**  
**Technology Management**

An appreciation of the systems and technology management aspects of manufacturing and an introduction to the process of designing manufacturing systems suitable for a wide range of requirements, from initial concept through to manufacture.

**MECHENG 461A (1.5 Points)**  
**MECHENG 461B (1.5 Points)**  
**Project**

A comprehensive investigation leading to an oral presentation, a display and a report on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 461 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**MECHENG 701 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Mechanical Engineering A**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 702 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Mechanical Engineering B**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 703 (1 Point)**  
**Studies in Mechanical Engineering C**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 704 (1 Point)**  
**Studies in Mechanical Engineering D**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**MECHENG 711 (2 Points)**  
**Computational Fluid Dynamics**

The application of computational methods to fluid dynamics and heat transfer. Finite volume and finite difference methods. Convergence and stability. Mesh generation and post-processing. Application of commercial computer programs to industrial

problems. Students should be proficient in Fortran or C.

**MECHENG 714 (2 Points)**  
**Wind Engineering**

The wind-loading chain – planetary boundary layer flow, extreme winds, wind structure, wind loads, dynamic response, bluff body aerodynamics, vortex shedding, aero-elasticity, wind tunnel testing, pedestrian level winds.

**MECHENG 716 (2 Points)**  
**Internal Combustion Engines**

Combustion processes; calculations for Diesel and Otto cycles; ideal, fuel-air and real cycles; use of alternative fuels as supplements or replacements.

**MECHENG 718 (2 Points)**  
**Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer**

The application of the principles of heat and mass transfer to geothermal technology. Fluid flow in reservoirs, wells and pipes, steam-water separators, heat exchangers, condensers, waste heat rejection, economics and environmental considerations. Case studies.

**MECHENG 721 (2 Points)**  
**Mechanical Control Systems**

A control problem of interest to both the student and the lecturer will be identified. Appropriate techniques are then sought for its solution.

**MECHENG 723 (2 Points)**  
**Simulation of Mechanical Systems**

Techniques for the dynamic modelling of mechanical systems, numerical simulation, and applications.

**MECHENG 725 (2 Points)**  
**Structural Acoustics**

Structural vibration at higher frequencies, vibration transmission and control. Wave motion and modal analysis. Structural intensity and statistical energy analysis.

**MECHENG 727 (2 Points)**  
**Active Noise and Vibration Control**

The principles of active control of noise and vibration with special reference to digital control systems. Implementation considerations, sensors and actuators.

**MECHENG 729 (2 Points)**  
**Connectionists Networks and Fuzzy Logic Systems**

The problems of learning from experimental data (support vector machines and neural networks) and the problem of embedding human knowledge into mathematical expressions (fuzzy logic) are covered. Learning from noisy sparse data patterns (examples) will be put in the rigorous framework of the theory of approximations of multivariate functions.

**MECHENG 732 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Graphics and Visualisation**

Fundamentals of computer graphics and visualisation as related to applications in engineering, including: solid and surface modelling and computational fluid dynamics, principles of graphics programming, user interface design and

implementation. Students should be familiar with C, C++ or Java.

**MECHENG 741 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Mechanics of Materials**

Analytical methods of stress analysis. Mechanics of composite materials, laminated plates and shells, and fracture mechanics.

**MECHENG 742 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Materials Manufacturing**

Polymer processing - injection moulding, extrusion, rotational moulding; composites manufacturing - basic flow mechanisms, thermo-mechanical modelling; kinematic and numerical analysis; resin transfer moulding, pultrusion, composite sheet forming - theory and practice.

**MECHENG 751 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Manufacturing Technology**

A study of computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) appropriate to the needs of New Zealand industry. The course will deal with the integrated use of CAD/CAPP/CAM, robots, workstations, machine tools, materials handling and control systems.

**MECHENG 753 (2 Points)**  
**Manufacturing Information Systems**

A course dealing with the development of manufacturing management and information systems through the use of planning, modelling, simulation, communications and artificial intelligence computing techniques.

**MECHENG 758 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Management A**

Graduate courses for students previously or currently employed, covering contemporary topics in engineering management.

**MECHENG 759 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic in Engineering Management B**

Graduate courses for students previously or currently employed, covering contemporary topics in engineering management.

**MECHENG 787 (2 Points)**  
**Project X**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**MECHENG 788A (2 Points)**  
**MECHENG 788B (2 Points)**

**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 788 A and B*

**MECHENG 789 (4 Points)**  
**Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**MECHENG 790 (1 Point)**  
**ME Research Proposal (Mechanical)**

**MECHENG 796A (7 Points)**  
**MECHENG 796B (7 Points)**

**ME Thesis (Mechanical)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MECHENG 796 A and B*

**Pulp and Paper Technology**

**Diploma Courses**

**PULPAPER 601 (1 Point)**

**The Forest Products Industry**

Forest resources of the world in general and of New Zealand in particular. Study and measurement of wood quality. Growing and harvesting wood. Industries based on wood.

**PULPAPER 602 (1 Point)**

**Mechanical Pulping**

The science and technology of mechanical pulping of wood. Control of pulp quality. Energy consumption. Bleaching mechanical pulps. Environmental effects. Semi-chemical pulping. Mechanical pulping of non-wood raw materials.

**PULPAPER 603 (1 Point)**

**Chemical Pulping**

The science and technology of chemical pulping of wood. The Kraft and sulphite processes. Chemical recovery. Pulp bleaching. Chlorine-free bleaching. Environmental effects. Pulp cleaning and drying. Chemical pulping of non-wood raw materials.

**PULPAPER 604 (2 Points)**

**Papermaking**

The science and technology of stock preparation, sheet, pressing, drying, calendering, winding and coating. New developments in papermaking.

**PULPAPER 605 (1 Point)**

**Process and Environmental Control**

Review of control theory. Applications of control theory to pulp and paper industry processes. Modern trends in industrial control. Effects of pulp and papermaking processes on waterways. Control by aerobic and anaerobic treatment. Disposal of non-aqueous wastes.

**PULPAPER 606 (1 Point)**

**Properties and Uses of Pulp and Paper**

Paper as a fibrous structure. Fibre properties and their effects on paper properties. End-use requirements of paper and paperboard. Science and technology of printing. Paper grades and their applications. Uses of types of pulp.

**PULPAPER 690 (7 Points)**

**Dissertation**

The industrial project will be either a research project or a professional level investigation set by the course organisers in conjunction with industry and must be approved by the Board of Studies. There will also be 11 plant visits, each occupying one day.

**Resource Engineering**

**Part II**

**RESOURCE 201 (2 Points)**

**Resource Engineering**

An introduction to the utilisation and development of earth and water resources. Exploration, extraction and processing of minerals including

industrials, base and precious metals. Concepts of water resources engineering including: water sources, hydrological cycle, rainfall/runoff reservoir design and hydro-electric engineering. Energy resources including: coal, oil, gas, hydro and geothermal. Renewable and non-renewable strategies. Design assignments with case studies related to resource development.

**RESOURCE 210 (2 Points)**

**Solid Mechanics and Materials**

Elementary mechanics of materials: concepts of stress and strain, stress-strain relationships, and beam theory. Properties and testing of constructional steels, Portland cement and concretes, timber, polymers and other materials. Protection systems. Elastic and other material models.

**RESOURCE 243 (1 Point)**

**Introduction to Environmental Engineering**

Water quality, water and wastewater characteristics – physical, chemical and biological treatments (unit operations and processes). Solid waste characteristics and disposal, hazardous waste treatment.

*Restriction: 695.241*

**RESOURCE 244 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Engineering 1**

Water quality, water and wastewater characteristics – physical, chemical and biological treatments (unit operations and processes). Solid waste characteristics and disposal, hazardous waste treatment. Fundamentals of chemistry for environmental engineering including: basic concepts of general, physical, equilibrium and organic chemistry, and water and wastewater analysis.

*Restriction: 695.241, 695.242*

**Part III**

**RESOURCE 324 (1 Point)**

**Slope Engineering**

Site investigation for slope assessment. Geological appraisal of slope behaviour. Failure mechanisms, shear strength of soil and rock masses. Influence of groundwater. Evaluation of stability and risk. Slope instrumentation. Remedial measures.

**RESOURCE 333 (2 Points)**

**Engineering Hydrology**

Hydrologic processes. Analysis of atmospheric and surface waters. Design for atmospheric and surface waters. Occurrence of groundwater. Groundwater levels and environmental influence. Groundwater movement. Well hydraulics and design.

**RESOURCE 341 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Engineering 2**

Examines natural environmental processes and their relevance to engineering. Soil and water chemistry, microbiology, biochemistry and biological processes will be examined, focusing on the application of these in engineering design, practice and management.

*Restriction: 695.340*

**RESOURCE 342A (1 Point)**

**RESOURCE 342B (1 Point)**

**Environmental Engineering Design**

The applications of design practice in environmental

engineering with a number of design projects. Elements of water and wastewater engineering, industrial waste management and control, site remediation. Sampling and methods of risk assessment. Economic appraisal and cost-benefit analysis.

*To complete this course students must enrol in RESOURCE 342 A and B*

**Part IV**

**RESOURCE 401A (1.5 Points)**

**RESOURCE 401B (1.5 Points)**

**Project**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering. The work will be supervised by a member of staff.

*To complete this course students must enrol in RESOURCE 401 A and B*

**RESOURCE 402 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Resource Engineering A**

A course on a topic in Resource Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**RESOURCE 403 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Resource Engineering B**

A course on a topic in Resource Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**RESOURCE 404 (1 Point)**

**Resource Management**

Resource management legislation and administration: Resource Management Act and the Crown Minerals Act. Environmental assessment and integration of environmental concerns into engineering design and management.

**RESOURCE 405 (1 Point)**

**Special Topic in Resource Engineering C**

A course on a topic in Resource Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**RESOURCE 419 (2 Points)**

**Design Project**

A design project requiring input from more than one engineering subdiscipline. The department will offer a number of projects from which the students may select. It will be possible for groups of students to work together on a project. Assessment will be based on a report and an oral presentation of the outcome of the project.

**RESOURCE 441 (2 Points)**

**Water and Wastewater Engineering**

Chemistry and microbiology of water and wastewater treatment, flow models and reactors. Unit operations and process analysis and design. Treatment plant design and operation. Effluent and residues disposal.

**RESOURCE 442 (1 Point)**

**Solid and Hazardous Waste Management**

Topics in solid and hazardous waste management, including waste generation, waste minimisation and disposal. Best management practices for hazardous waste control. Legislation and administration.

**RESOURCE 444 (2 Points)**  
**Cleaner Production Engineering**  
 Engineering for efficiency in resource use in industrial processes and construction. Life cycle analysis and waste minimisation. Recycling, reuse and residue management.

**RESOURCE 470 (2 Points)**  
**Mineral Development and Rehabilitation**  
 Legal framework for mineral development, surface mine design; minimisation of environmental impacts; land rehabilitation techniques and optimisation of rehabilitation strategy.

**RESOURCE 471 (2 Points)**  
**Excavation Engineering and Design**  
 Theory, practical, and environmental aspects of ground excavation – rock cutting, ripping, drilling and other excavation techniques. Properties of commercial explosives, mechanics for blasting and blast design. Surface and underground excavation design – stress analysis, stability and support requirements.

**RESOURCE 472 (2 Points)**  
**Bulk Materials Handling**  
 Mechanics of bulk materials haulage systems – conveyors, rail, truck, pipelines and hoists. Loading and earth moving systems. Selection of materials handling equipment including costs. Analysis of bins and hoppers for bulk storage. Design of bulk materials handling and storage facilities.

**RESOURCE 480 (2 Points)**  
**Water Resources Engineering 1**  
 A selection from the following: introduction to stochastic hydrology, reservoir design and optimisation, flood control and design of flood control structures, micro to large scale hydroelectric engineering, river engineering and sedimentation. A water resources design project.  
*Prerequisite: RESOURCE 333 or equivalent*

**RESOURCE 481 (1 Point)**  
**Water Resources Engineering 2**  
 A selection from the following: water resources systems engineering, introduction to the TIDEDA hydrological database, graphical and computer water hammer analysis, computer applications and design of water distribution systems, Third World surface water engineering. A water resources design project.  
*Prerequisite: RESOURCE 333 or equivalent*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**RESOURCE 701 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Resource Engineering A**

**RESOURCE 702 (2 Points)**  
**Studies in Resource Engineering B**  
 Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**RESOURCE 703 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation**  
 Theoretical and practical geostatistics, including the application of commercial-scale computer packages to problems of natural resource evaluation. Further

study of extraction policy formulation and cutoff grade decisions.

**RESOURCE 723 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Rock Mechanics**  
 Selected topics from rock mechanics and the application of these in rock engineering.

**RESOURCE 740 (2 Points)**  
**Public Engineering Seminar**  
 Selected topics from water and wastewater engineering pollution control.  
*Restriction: 655.740*

**RESOURCE 741 (2 Points)**  
**Hazardous Substance Management**  
 A review of topics in hazardous substance management including: substance classification, legislation and enforcement, storage and handling practices, occupational safety and health, emergency preparedness and response, risk evaluation and control.  
*Restriction: 655.741*

**RESOURCE 742 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Systems Modelling**  
 A review of the theoretical and practical principles for modelling pollutant transport and dispersion within the land and water environments. A variety of numerical models are used to illustrate the application of models to real cases.  
*Restriction: 655.742*

**RESOURCE 777 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Mineral Processing**  
 An advanced course on a topic or topics in mineral processing to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil and Resource Engineering.

**RESOURCE 778 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Excavation Engineering**  
 Mechanics of rock cutting, excavation machinery and bulk handling systems; physical properties of explosives, rock breaking using explosives, practical blasting techniques, control of blast vibrations. Surface and underground excavation support and stability analyses.

**RESOURCE 779 (2 Points)**  
**Resource Engineering Seminar**  
 A selection of topics from subjects relevant to resource engineering.

**RESOURCE 780 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Water Resources**  
 Selected topics from hydrology and water resources engineering.

**RESOURCE 787 (2 Points)**  
**Project X**  
 A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**RESOURCE 788A (2 Points)**  
**RESOURCE 788B (2 Points)**  
**Project Y**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in RESOURCE 788 A and B*

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

**RESOURCE 789 (4 Points)****Project Z**

A student is required to submit a report on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

**RESOURCE 790 (1 Point)****ME Research Proposal (Resource)****RESOURCE 796A (7 Points)****RESOURCE 796B (7 Points)****ME Thesis (Resource)**

A student is required to submit a thesis on a topic assigned by the appropriate Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in RESOURCE 796 A and B

**Software Engineering****Part II****SOFTENG 206A (1 Point)****SOFTENG 206B (1 Point)****Engineering Design 2**

Project work over two semesters. Software specifications, design work, development, process improvements testing, and project specifications.

To complete this course students must enrol in SOFTENG 206 A and B

**SOFTENG 211 (2 Points)****Software Engineering Theory**

Discrete mathematics. Relations and functions. Graphs and trees. Logic. Principles of counting. Mathematical induction and recursion. Algorithms. Probability and statistics. Program correctness.

**SOFTENG 250 (2 Points)****Introduction to Software Engineering**

Introduction to Software Engineering. Software construction. Introduction to testing, debugging and performance monitoring. Abstract data types, classes and objects. Data structures and their representation as objects. Sorting and searching algorithms. Recursive structure and behaviour. Lists and trees.

**SOFTENG 251 (2 Points)****Software Engineering I**

The software development process from specification to quality assurance and documentation. Issues in the design and construction of large programs using an object-oriented programming approach. An introduction to object-oriented analysis. Reliability and program testing.

**SOFTENG 252 (2 Points)****Computer Organisation**

The organisation of a computer. Processors, registers, memory and peripherals. Binary representation of instructions and textual and numerical data. The interface between hardware and software. Multi-user operating systems. Assembly language programming. Security and the Internet.

**SOFTENG 253 (2 Points)****Algorithms**

Algorithms and algorithm design. Tradeoffs and choice of an algorithm. Formal analysis of algorithms. Algorithms and abstract data types. Engineering, measuring and improving the performance of

software systems. Introduction to formal language theory and models.

**Part III****SOFTENG 306A (1 Point)****SOFTENG 306B (1 Point)****Engineering Design 3**

Large group projects over two semesters. Projects will cover software applications and documentation, testing, working in team environments, project presentation, quality management and assurance, applications of software tools.

To complete course students must enrol in SOFTENG 306 A and B

**SOFTENG 325 (2 Points)****Software Architecture**

Database systems. Client-server and other distributed systems. Taxonomy of software architectures. Component-based programming. User interfaces. Software/hardware specification for complex tasks.

**SOFTENG 350 (2 Points)****Software Engineering 2**

Software life cycle models. Project management, teamwork and reviews, configuration management. Interviewing and data gathering techniques, analysis and design, modelling methods.

**SOFTENG 363 (2 Points)****Computer Architecture**

The architecture of computer hardware and firmware. Digital logic design. Processor design and implementation. Pipelining. Performance evaluation. Types of computer architectures. Case studies. Impact of programming languages on computer architecture. Translation, instruction formats and microprogramming. Virtual memory and memory hierarchies. Buses, interrupts and interfacing. Engineering computer systems.

**SOFTENG 364 (2 Points)****Computer Networks**

Local area networks and IEEE standards. Wide area networks and the internet. Data communications; representation and transmission. Security, reliability and error correction. The seven layers of the OSI model. Data link layer and transport protocols. Introduction to TCP/IP, ISDN and Frame Relay. Software engineering and networks.

**SOFTENG 370 (2 Points)****Operating Systems**

History of Operating Systems. Multi-user systems. Scheduling. Concurrent processes, threads and synchronisation. Memory allocation and virtual memory. Managing files, disks and other peripherals. Security, protection and archiving. Engineering distributed systems; location, migration and replication transparency. Real-time programming and embedded systems.

**Part IV****SOFTENG 401A (1.5 Points)****SOFTENG 401B (1.5 Points)****Project in Software Engineering**

A student is required to submit a report on project

work carried out on a Software Engineering topic assigned by the Head of Department.

To complete course students must enrol in SOFTENG 401 A and B

**SOFTENG 450 (2 Points)**  
**Software Engineering 3**

Software process models; an introduction to formal methods, software quality assurance, estimation, metrics; document engineering and traceability; software maintenance; software tools and their evaluation; reuse. CASE software and its applications.

**Faculty of Law**

**Environmental Law**

*Honours and Master's Courses*

**ENVLAW 701 (4 Points)**  
**Comparative Environmental Law**

Selected topics in environmental law from an internationally comparative perspective including: concepts of sustainable development, the precautionary principle, environmental impact assessment procedures, risk evaluation schemes, and advanced environmental legislation in various jurisdictions including the USA, the European Union, Japan, and New Zealand.

**ENVLAW 702 (2 Points)**  
**Conservation and Heritage Law**

The law, and international and regional conservation conventions and treaties, relating to the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources - i.e. national parks, reserves, wild flora, historic sites, cultural and natural heritage.

**ENVLAW 703 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Dispute Resolution**

Analysis of ways to resolve disputes on environmental issues. Experiences with negotiation and mediation in the area of resource management and environmental law including case studies and analyses of current issues.

**ENVLAW 704 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Ethics**

Environmental ethics as the theoretical framework of our interaction with the natural environment, examination of the ways in which nature has been explored and interrogated by both the sciences and humanities, including social sciences, paradigms of thinking and their implications for environmental cognition, and ecocentrism and its significance for a sustainable development of societies.

**ENVLAW 705 (4 Points)**  
**Environmental Law and Policy**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment including: dimensions of the global environmental crisis, principles and selected areas of international environmental law, environmental law and policy in a comparative perspective, methodological and philosophical concepts behind contemporary environmental law

and policy, and environmental law and policy in the New Zealand context.

**ENVLAW 707 (2 Points)**  
**Hazardous Substances Law**

Analysis of the legal framework for the control of hazardous substances and new organisms in New Zealand, consideration of problems arising from hazardous substances, including the scope and applications of chemical substances, and recent developments in biotechnology and genetic engineering, ethical considerations and their implications for the law, and studies of notification and control schemes in various jurisdictions.

**ENVLAW 708 (4 Points)**  
**International Environmental Law**

Selected problems of international law as related to the protection of the global environment including: the present concept of international environmental law and current trends toward a global law of sustainable development, law on climate change, the ozone layer, the marine environment, and biodiversity, and the implications of international environmental issues for municipal law.

**ENVLAW 709 (4 Points)**  
**Law of the Sea**

An analysis and criticism of the legal framework governing the use and protection of the marine environment, the 1982 UN Convention on the Law of the Sea, the concept of territorial sea and zones of restricted jurisdiction over the high seas, the legal regime for the seabed and ocean floors, the control of oil spillages and other forms of marine pollution, and protection of marine biodiversity including fish stocks.

**ENVLAW 710 (2 Points)**  
**Mining and Energy Law**

An examination of the legal principles, government policy, regulation, and administrative controls relating to ownership and exploitation of minerals, (including oil and gas), and alternative energy resources in New Zealand.

**ENVLAW 711 (2 Points)**  
**Natural Resources Law**

An examination of the legislative framework and legal principles relating to agriculture, forestry, and fisheries activities in New Zealand. Selected topics will include: legal ownership and interests in rural land and natural resources, the role of government, Maori claims, and resource development conflict resolution.

**ENVLAW 712 (4 Points)**  
**Resource Management Law**

Studies in the New Zealand law relating to resource management and environmental regulation including: evolution of the sustainable management concept, consideration of national objectives, Treaty of Waitangi application, national standards, coastal policies, regional statements and plans, district plans, designations, and heritage and conservation powers, resource consent procedures, and remedial powers and enforcement procedures.

**ENVLAW 713 (2 Points)**  
**Pollution and Waste Management Law**

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

Assessment of air and water pollution control laws and policies, and waste management regimes. Special consideration will be given to practice in New Zealand, Australia, United States and Europe, as well as developments in international environmental law. Main topics will include: contaminated land, hazardous substances, environmental auditing, pollution licensing, pollution taxes and charges, recycling and general principles of waste management.

**ENVLAW 714** (2 Points)

**Water Law**

Study of the legislative and institutional framework for water management in New Zealand, regulations relating to the allocation of surface water and groundwater, water quality control, the common law doctrine of riparian rights, the concept of total catchment management, and river basin and coastal management schemes.

**ENVLAW 715** (2 Points)

**Environmental Law Concepts**

An introduction to fundamental concepts and principles of environmental law including: the nature and purpose of environmental law, the methodology and structure of environmental law, the interrelationship between national and international environmental law, and a review of key environmental policy concepts which have shaped the development of environmental law.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 705*

**ENVLAW 716** (2 Points)

**Biotechnology Law**

Analysis of the law relating to biotechnology and genetic engineering including: the implications of the law relating to international trade and environment for the development of biotechnology (including patent rights) and for the protection of biodiversity (including indigenous rights), ethical dimensions of genetic engineering, studies of regulatory and other control schemes in selected jurisdictions.

**ENVLAW 717** (2 Points)

**Economic Instruments and Environmental Law**

An examination of the legal and policy dimensions concerning the use of financial mechanisms and economic analyses in environmental law (e.g. ecotaxes and tradeable pollution permits). Special consideration will be given to commercial law issues in an environmental context (e.g. insolvency and insurance law). Reference will be made to practice in New Zealand, Australia, United States and the European Union.

*Restriction: ENVLAW 721*

**ENVLAW 720** (4 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 721** (4 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 722** (4 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 723** (4 Points)

**Special Topic: Mining, Energy and Natural Resources Law**

**ENVLAW 724** (4 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 725** (4 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 726** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 727** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 728** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**ENVLAW 729** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**ENVLAW 790** (4 Points)

**Dissertation**

A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope, and depth of research, of a competent law review article.

**ENVLAW 796A** (6 Points)

**ENVLAW 796B** (6 Points)

**Thesis A**

A thesis of approximately 40,000 words resulting from original research of the student, displaying at a minimum: thorough research, a competent advanced understanding of the topic studied, and an ability to present the student's understanding of that topic in an orderly way.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVLAW 796 A and B*

**ENVLAW 797A** (10 Points)

**ENVLAW 797B** (10 Points)

**Thesis B**

A thesis of approximately 60,000 words resulting from original research of the student, displaying comprehensive understanding of the topic studied and an ability to contribute to the better understanding of that topic.

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVLAW 797 A and B*

---

**Law**

**Part I**

**LAW 101A** (1 Point)

**LAW 101B** (1 Point)

**The Legal System**

An introduction to theories of the nature, functions and origins of law and legal systems; the New Zealand legal system, including its sources of law, the nature of its courts and selected other legal institutions, and its operation in historical and contemporary New Zealand; Maori concepts of law and justice and their relationship to the New Zealand legal system; legal reasoning including both statutory interpretation and case-law reasoning.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 101 A and B*

---

**Part II**

**LAW 201A** (1.5 Points)

**LAW 201B** (1.5 Points)

**Criminal Law**

An introduction to the principles and practice of New Zealand criminal law; an analysis of doctrines of liability including defences to criminal charges; a study in detail of selected indictable and summary offences; and a critical survey of the chief elements of procedure relating to offences chargeable indictably or summarily. (Apart from the rules concerning burden of proof, no detailed study is made in this course of the law of evidence.)

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 201 A and B

- LAW 211A (1.5 Points)
- LAW 211B (1.5 Points)

**Public Law**

The principles and workings of the New Zealand constitution; the powers, privileges and immunities of the three branches of government; the exercise and control of public power; and the relationship between the individual and the state (including the position of Maori under the Treaty of Waitangi).

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 211 A and B

- LAW 221A (0.5 Points)
- LAW 221B (0.5 Points)

**Research and Writing 1A**

The research and writing requirements, as determined by the Dean of the Faculty of Law, associated with courses LAW 201, 211.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 221 A and B

- LAW 231A (1.5 Points)
- LAW 231B (1.5 Points)

**Law of Torts**

The general principles of civil liability for non-consensual wrongs. The principles of liability applying to selected torts, including the intentional torts such as: assault, battery, false imprisonment, intentionally inflicting emotional distress, trespass to land, wrongs to goods, negligence, strict liability, nuisance and defamation. The law relating to compensation for personal injury.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 231 A and B

- LAW 241A (1.5 Points)
- LAW 241B (1.5 Points)

**Law of Contract**

The general principles of contract law including: the formation of contracts at common law, New Zealand contract legislation, breach of contract, and remedies for breach of contract. An introduction to the general principles of agency.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 241 A and B

- LAW 251A (0.5 Points)
- LAW 251B (0.5 Points)

**Legal Research and Writing 1B**

The research and writing requirements, as determined by the Dean of the Faculty of Law, associated with courses LAW 231, 241.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 251 A and B

**Part III**

- LAW 301A (1 Point)
- LAW 301B (1 Point)

**Land Law**

A study of the history and principles of land law including: estates and interests in land, the effect of registration and indefeasibility of title, leasehold estates, easements and profits, mortgages, and concurrent interests in land, and covenants affecting freehold land.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 301 A and B

- LAW 306A (1 Point)
- LAW 306B (1 Point)

**Equity**

A study of the central principles and remedies of equity including: the fiduciary principle, relationships of confidence, unconscionable conduct, undue influence, estoppel, assignments, trusts (express, resulting and constructive), charities, tracing, third-party liability, the assignment in equity of choses in action, and priorities. Basic principles of the law of succession and of the administration of estates.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 306 A and B

- LAW 311 (1 Point)

**Law of Personal Property**

Introduction to the concepts and legal rights associated with personal property, covering: possessory rights and relationships, including bailment, reservation of title and security interests in goods, and principles relevant to the transfer and acquisition of personal property.

- LAW 316A (1 Point)
- LAW 316B (1 Point)

**Jurisprudence**

An introduction to the major schools of jurisprudence, the major contemporary disputes in jurisprudence and the major perspectives on law current in contemporary thought.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 316 A and B

- LAW 341 (2 Points)

**Air and Space Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of international and municipal law regulating the use of airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, and persons on board such craft; the rights and obligations of states, operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft; and the role of international and regional organisations in the use of airspace and outer space.

- LAW 342A (1 Point)
- LAW 342B (1 Point)

**Human Rights**

The legal modes for protection of human rights, including the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990 and the Human Rights Act 1993, freedom of expression and religion, criminal procedural rights, equality, and the prohibited grounds of discrimination.

Restriction: LAW 452

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 342 A and B

- LAW 343** (2 Points)  
**Commercial Equity and Restitution**  
 A study of ways in which the law of equity and the law of restitution impact upon commercial practices and transactions including: the fiduciary principle, the doctrine of unconscionability, the concepts of undue influence and duress, the use of equitable doctrines in insolvency and in trusts in commercial settings, recovery of mistaken payments, restitution for services given, restitution and equitable remedies, and restitution against public authorities.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 306*
- LAW 344** (2 Points)  
**Consumer Law**  
 Study of the protection of consumers in sales and credit transactions including the examination of existing legislation (e.g. Consumer Guarantees Act, Fair Trading Act, Credit Contracts Act) and proposals for reform.
- LAW 345** (2 Points)  
**Corporation Finance**  
 Problems in corporate finance law selected from the following: issues relating to the raising of equity and debt capital (including the securing of debt capital and the Securities Act 1978), the control of company distributions, company reconstructions, and the regulation of banking and finance institutions.  
*Prerequisite: LAW 417*
- LAW 346A** (1 Point)  
**LAW 346B** (1 Point)  
**Criminal Law and Policy**  
 An in depth analysis of current issues in substantive and procedural criminal law including: the role and function of forensic experts, developments in criminal law, criminal justice theory, and criminal law reform.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 346 A and B*
- LAW 347** (2 Points)  
**Criminal Procedure**  
 A consideration of selected topics in the law of criminal procedure including: bail, right to counsel, confessions, the exclusion of illegally obtained evidence, search and seizure, and the right to silence. Detailed study of the procedural guarantees of the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990.
- LAW 348** (2 Points)  
**Economic Regulation**  
 Study of the legal issues involved in regulating economic behaviour including: theories of regulation, forms of social and economic regulation, competition law, enforcement, and the effectiveness and future of regulation.
- LAW 349** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Law**  
 An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment including: dimensions of the global environmental crisis, principles and selected areas of international environmental law, environmental law in a comparative perspective, and the New Zealand Resource Management Act 1991.  
*Restriction: LAW 450*
- LAW 350** (2 Points)  
**Equality and Anti-Discrimination Law**  
 A study of the nature of equality; discrimination and affirmative action and the justification for law prohibiting discrimination on certain grounds; analysis of statutory, constitutional and common law remedies for discrimination; and interaction between anti-discrimination law and rights to freedom of speech, association and religion.
- LAW 351** (2 Points)  
**Law and Computers**  
 Advanced studies in respect of information systems in legal practice and research and the impact of the law on information technology, including computer crimes, torts, intellectual property, evidence, privacy, and assistance given to lawyers by information retrieval, office management, and litigation support systems.
- LAW 352** (2 Points)  
**Law and Society**  
 A study of selected aspects of the interrelation of legal processes and social change; legislation, courts, and other legal institutions, as they influence and are affected by social change; and the role of law in the modern state.
- LAW 353** (2 Points)  
**Law of International Business Transactions**  
 The law of international sales of goods (focusing on the 1980 Vienna Convention) including the carriage of goods and the financing of these transactions through the use of documentary credits and other mechanisms; and the law regulating the provision of international services and trade, including government regulation of international trade.
- LAW 354** (2 Points)  
**Law of Landlord and Tenant**  
 Studies in the law of landlord and tenant, including both commercial and residential tenancies.
- LAW 355** (2 Points)  
**Law of Secured Credit**  
 Aspects of the law relating to the taking of interests in property (including intellectual property) for securing debt repayment and the performance of other personal obligations selected from: (i) the range of possessory and non-possessory securities; (ii) registration regimes relating thereto; and (iii) options for law reform.
- LAW 356** (2 Points)  
**Legal History**  
 Historical analysis of problems currently facing the law in Aotearoa/New Zealand with reference to both English sources and indigenous developments.
- LAW 357** (2 Points)  
**Legal Problems of the European Union**  
 The objectives, structures, functions and relationships of the European Union; economic, social, and environmental, implications of the common market and the political union, external relations of the Union, and current trends in European and other regional arrangements.
- LAW 358** (2 Points)  
**Local Government Law**

A study of the legal structure, powers, and service delivery functions of local government selected from: the history of local government, reorganisation schemes, powers and administrative principles, civil liability, elections, council procedures, staff employment, works contracts, financial accountability, land valuation, rating systems, environmental functions, bylaws and the operation of related public bodies (e.g. education and health authorities).

*Restriction: LAW 443*

**LAW 359 (2 Points)**

**Maori Land Law**

Customary Maori land tenure and legal issues arising under Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993.

*Restriction: LAW 444*

**LAW 360 (2 Points)**

**Maritime Law**

A study of the law governing ships including: the ownership of and property in ships, charter parties, ship mortgages, law of carriage, shipboard crimes and torts, the law of collision, salvage, and wrecks, the admiralty jurisdiction of the courts, national shipping laws, the international regulatory framework, the conflict of laws rules applicable to admiralty disputes, and marine insurance.

**LAW 361A (1 Point)**

**LAW 361B (1 Point)**

**Media Law**

Topics on the law which governs the media and journalists including: defamation, contempt of court, breach of confidence, privacy, the broadcasting legislation, censorship, and copyright.

*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 361 A and B*

**LAW 362 (2 Points)**

**Medico-legal Problems**

Selected studies in the relationship between law and medicine including: the purchase and provision of health services, the relationship between health providers and consumers, professional accountability, codes of rights, legal/ethical issues at the start and end of life, and biomedical research.

*Restriction: LAW 427*

**LAW 363 (2 Points)**

**Penology**

A general analysis of theory and practice concerning the punishment and treatment of offenders including: sentencing theory and practice, the role of prisons and other carceral institutions, the disposition and treatment of inmates with special needs, and law reform.

*Restriction: LAW 423*

**LAW 364 (2 Points)**

**Problems in Legal Philosophy**

A detailed study of jurisprudential problems selected from: the nature of law, the concept of justice, the relation of law and morality, legal reasoning, the purpose of law or of central institutions of the law, and the character of particular legal concepts central to the law.

**LAW 365 (2 Points)**

**Registration of Title to Land**

Studies in the legal problems of the Torrens system of title registration.

**LAW 366 (2 Points)**

**Restitution**

Advanced studies in the law of restitution including: the concept of unjust enrichment, applications at law and equity of restitutionary principle to the recovery of value following a flawed or conditioned transfer, recovery outside contract for labour expended on another's behalf, and stripping wrongdoers of profits.

*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241*

*Corequisite: LAW 306 A and B, 311*

*Restriction: LAW 451*

**LAW 367 (2 Points)**

**Selected Topics in Comparative Law**

Analysis of selected topics to compare New Zealand law and common law with other legal systems such as civil law, and indigenous and religious legal systems.

**LAW 368A (1 Point)**

**LAW 368B (1 Point)**

**Studies in Public Law**

Advanced studies in respect of the principles and workings of the New Zealand constitution, the powers, privileges, and immunities of the three branches of government, the exercise and control of government power, and the relationship between the individual and the state (including the position of Maori under the Treaty of Waitangi).

*Restriction: LAW 403, 404*

*To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 368 A and B*

**LAW 369 (2 Points)**

**Studies in Torts**

A study of policy issues in the law of tort, developments in the law of negligence, the economic torts, breach of statutory duty, invasion of privacy, informed consent, defences, and remedies.

**LAW 370 (2 Points)**

**The Law Relating to Damages**

The principles governing damages in contract and tort, and for statutory breach.

*Restriction: LAW 449*

**LAW 371 (2 Points)**

**The Legal Regulation of Business Activity**

Study of the regulation of business practices by Government, analysing the scope of such control, the purposes of such control, and the dangers associated with it. Discussion of common law and legislative regulation of trade and commerce, the law of restraint of trade and monopolies, and restrictive trade practices.

**LAW 372 (2 Points)**

**United Nations Law and Problems of World Order**

Critical evaluation of the past, present, and future roles, of the United Nations in a rapidly changing world order, detailed analysis of the United Nations Charter, and an introduction to major international institutions.

**LAW 383A (1 Point)**

**LAW 383B (1 Point)**

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 264. For course availability refer to page 561.

**Studies in Contract Law**

Advanced studies of selected topics in contract law (and related areas), which may include consideration of the history of contract law, various jurisprudential and/or comparative approaches to contract law, various doctrines of contract law, the law of remedies, and statutory reform of contract law.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 383 A and B

**LAW 384A** (1 Point)

**LAW 384B** (1 Point)

**Special Topic: Interpretation of Statutes**

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 384 A and B

**LAW 385** (2 Points)

**Special Topic: International Human Rights Law**

This seminar examines issues in international human rights law including the substantive content of selected rights, the historical and political context of their international protection, the extent to which rights derived from international instruments are cognisable in domestic courts, and the legal machinery for the promotion and enforcement of human rights.

**LAW 386** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 387** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 388** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 389** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 390** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 391** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 392** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 393** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

**LAW 399** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

To be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**Part IV**

**LAW 402** (2 Points)

**Administrative Law**

A study of the general principles of judicial review of administrative action, including the ultra vires principle, the substantive and procedural restraints on the exercise of public power, and the remedies available for breach of these principles.

*Prerequisite: LAW 211*

**LAW 403** (2 Points)

**Advanced Administrative Law**

Advanced study of selected topics in administrative law with particular emphasis on recent developments in the field and consideration of New Zealand law and practice from a comparative common law perspective.

*Prerequisite: LAW 402*

*Restriction: LAW 368*

**LAW 404** (2 Points)

**Advanced Constitutional Law**

Studies in the law relating to the structure and functioning of the government system, including the rules which regulate relations between the different branches of government and between the different branches of government and the individual.

*Prerequisite: LAW 211, 402*

*Restriction: LAW 368*

**LAW 405** (2 Points)

**Advanced Contract**

An in-depth examination of various perspectives on the nature of contractual rights and obligations that may include study of the morality or utility of contract and of various doctrines of contract law.

*Prerequisite: LAW 241*

**LAW 406** (2 Points)

**Advanced Criminal Law**

The study of crime, in New Zealand and elsewhere as both an entity in law (substantive criminal law, procedure and evidence) and a human and administrative fact (explanations of offending and disposition of offenders).

*Prerequisite: LAW 201*

**LAW 407** (2 Points)

**Advanced Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

*Prerequisite: LAW 426*

**LAW 408** (2 Points)

**Advanced International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations; a critical analysis of existing and developing international law, and consideration of the relationship between law, economics, politics and international diplomacy.

*Prerequisite: LAW 435*

**LAW 409** (2 Points)

**Advanced Studies in Taxation**

Selected topics in taxation studies, including: current issues relating to goods and services tax, corporate taxation including an examination of dividends and the imputation of dividends, losses and groupings, and qualifying companies, taxation of trusts and partnerships, alienation of income, an introduction to financial accruals, an introduction to international taxation, and the general anti-avoidance provision.

*Prerequisite: LAW 429*

*Restriction: COMLAW 311*

**LAW 410** (2 Points)

**Advocacy**

An introduction to the general principles of trial and appellate advocacy in civil and criminal cases, the study of trial preparation and performance with a focus on practical instruction (including demonstrations and exercises which are videotaped and critiqued), and the study of tactical and ethical issues facing litigators.

*Corequisite: LAW 425*

*Restriction: LAW 347 or 413*

**LAW 411 (2 Points)****Agency and Partnership**

A study of the law of principal and agent, including the legal relationships between: (i) principals and third parties as created or altered by agents; (ii) agents and third parties; and (iii) principal and agent inter se. An introduction to the principles of partnership.

*Corequisite: LAW 241 A and B*

**LAW 412 (2 Points)****Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating the use of airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, and persons on board such craft, and the rights and obligations of states, operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft. The role of international and regional organisations in the settlement of international disputes arising out of the use of airspace and outer space.

**LAW 413 (2 Points)****Civil Procedure**

Advanced studies in procedure in civil actions and other civil proceedings with reference to the evolution and history of the present form of civil action, pleadings, discovery and other pre-trial devices; joinder of parties; jurisdiction (including equitable jurisdiction); and appellate procedure.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 414 (2 Points)****Commercial Arbitration and Dispute Resolution**

The law and procedure relating to the settlement of domestic and international commercial disputes including: a comparison of the primary dispute resolution processes, namely, negotiation, litigation/adjudication, arbitration, and mediation; detailed study of arbitration, including appointment, hearings, enforcement, judicial review, court ordered arbitration and international commercial arbitration, and the utility and working of mediation in commercial cases.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 415 (2 Points)****Commercial Law**

An introduction to the law relevant to the conduct of business, including the law relating to the sale of goods, hire purchase, personal property, secured transactions, credit contracts, consumer protection, and negotiable instruments.

*Prerequisite: LAW 241*

**LAW 416 (2 Points)****Company Finance**

Selected problems in company finance law including: issues relating to the formation of contracts with companies for the raising of equity and debt capital, issues relating to choice of method in the raising of capital, aspects of secured debt capital, and an introductory analysis of the Securities Act 1978.

*Prerequisite: LAW 417*

**LAW 417 (2 Points)****Company Law**

The law relating to companies incorporated under the Companies Act 1993 including: the nature of

corporate personality, pre-incorporation contracts, the rights and liabilities of promoters, an introduction to the raising of debt and equity capital and the regulation of the securities market, the rights of shareholders, and the duties of directors.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 418 (2 Points)****Comparative Law**

Relationship of the common law system to other contemporary legal systems of the world with particular reference to the development of civil law on the continent of Europe, the study of indigenous and religious legal systems, and the international comparison of individual legal problems such as gender issues, environmental issues and human rights.

**LAW 419 (2 Points)****Competition Law**

A study of the principles of competition law in New Zealand including the effect on competition law of the CER Agreement with Australia. Comparison with the competition laws of other countries including the United States, the European Union, and Australia.

**LAW 420 (2 Points)****Conflict of Laws**

An introduction to private international law (i.e., the body of law dealing with international civil or commercial issues or disputes that are not governed by substantive conventions) including: a study of the jurisdiction of the New Zealand courts, recognition and enforcement of foreign judgments and decrees, and choice of the governing legal system.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 421 (2 Points)****Contemporary Tiriti/Treaty Issues**

Contemporary legal issues arising under Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

**LAW 422 (2 Points)****Creditors Remedies**

A study of the remedies available to creditors prior to judgment and the methods for the enforcement of a judgment, a review of the Insolvency Act and the liquidation provisions of the Companies Act, and insolvency reform in other jurisdictions.

*Prerequisite: LAW 415*

**LAW 423 (2 Points)****Criminology**

The study of major theories of criminology; the definition, nature and causes of criminal behaviour; the administration of criminal justice; and the interrelation of specific crimes and the criminal justice system.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

*Restriction: LAW 363*

**LAW 424 (2 Points)****European Union Law**

The law related to the European Union and its institutional, economic and social structure as well as the general economic and political implications of the present status of the European Union.

**LAW 425 (2 Points)****Evidence**

An overview of the rules related to the presentation of proof in New Zealand courts (civil and criminal) and tribunals, including the rules relating to hearsay, opinion evidence, privilege, examination of witnesses, confessions, and the exclusion of illegally obtained evidence.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 426 (2 Points)****Family Law**

The law relating to cohabitation and marriage, the establishment of parenthood, and the relationship between parent and child. Study of the inter-relationship between the state, the family and child protection and support.

**LAW 427 (2 Points)****Health Care Law**

An introduction to the legal and ethical issues related to health care delivery including: the purchase and provision of health services, the relationship between health providers and consumers, professional accountability, codes of rights, legal/ethical issues at the start and end of life, and biomedical research.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

*Restriction: LAW 362*

**LAW 428 (2 Points)****Immigration and Refugee Law**

A consideration of the basic features of the Immigration Act 1987 with emphasis on the role of administrative law in the immigration field, an introduction to the law of refugee status, and the jurisprudence of the NZ Refugee Status Appeals Authority.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 429 (2 Points)****Income Tax**

A general introduction to the principles of income tax law covering: the determination of tax residency, the determination of income and expenditure (including an examination of income from the carrying on of a business, income from the disposal of property, income from employment relationships and income from the use of money), and an introduction to the fringe benefit regime.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 430 (2 Points)****Employment Law**

A study of the common law individual contract of employment and the mutual duties implied therein; the statutory system and the collective agreement under the Employment Relations Act and its predecessors; the impact on industrial law of specific statutory reforms such as the Human Rights Act, the Health and Safety in Employment Act, and the Parental Leave legislation; and analysis of strikes and lockouts, both as common law torts and as events subject to statutory control.

*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241*

**LAW 431 (2 Points)****Insurance Law**

Introduction to the principles and practice of the

law of insurance and the law regulating insurers and insurance intermediaries. Studies of selected branches of insurance including indemnity, liability, life and marine.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 432 (2 Points)****Intellectual Property**

Study of the laws which protect the products of intellectual endeavour including: passing off (and section 9 Fair Trading Act), the Trade Marks Act, the Copyright Act, the action for 'breach of confidence', the Designs Act, and the Patents Act.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 433 (2 Points)****International Environmental Law**

Concepts, principles, customs, and treaties, of international law as related to the protection of the global environment including: prevention of pollution, protection of the marine environment, ozone layer protection, climate change, biodiversity, the UNCED process, and the legal framework for sustainable development.

**LAW 434 (2 Points)****International Institutions**

The principles of international law as they relate to the structure and functioning of international institutions and regional relationships; the relationship of international and regional institutions with states, non-governmental organisations, and individuals, and the role of international and regional institutions in the settlement of international disputes.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II and LAW 435*

*Restriction: LAW 372*

**LAW 435 (2 Points)****International Law**

An introduction to the basic principles and nature of public international law and its role in contemporary society including an overview of the current legal framework, the sources of international law, the law of treaties, issues surrounding international personality, international dispute resolution and the use of force.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 436 (2 Points)****International Trade**

Study of the law relating to international trade and transnational business transactions including: contracts of sale, carriage, and insurance, conflicts of laws, and the law and policy surrounding the regulation of international trade.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 437 (2 Points)****Women and the Law**

A study of the dual role of law in addressing and maintaining gender inequality, feminist thought on the gendered nature of law, and specific legal issues relevant to the status and interests of women in society.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II, LAW 301, 306*

**LAW 438 (2 Points)****Law and Information Technology**

An introduction to the use of information systems in

legal practice and research and the impact of the law on information technology including: computer crimes, torts, intellectual property, evidence, privacy, and the assistance given to lawyers by information retrieval, office management and litigation support systems.

**LAW 440 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Legal Ethics**

An advanced study of ethical issues which are either peculiar to or particularly common in legal practice, including detailed examination of both theoretical perspectives relevant to professional and legal ethics and applied questions about, for instance, the duty of zealous advocacy, conflict of interest, confidentiality, alternative dispute resolution programmes, legal aid and the lawyer's role in the adversary system.

**LAW 441 (2 Points)**

**Legal History**

Historical analysis of problems currently facing the law in Aotearoa/New Zealand with reference to both English sources and indigenous developments.

**LAW 442 (2 Points)**

**Legislative Change**

Study of the relative effectiveness of different forms of regulatory intervention with particular reference to legislative intervention, the form and substance of legislation, judicial and other approaches to its interpretation, the process of legislative change, and the proper role for subordinate legislation.

*Prerequisite: LAW 402*

**LAW 443 (2 Points)**

**Local Government Law**

An introduction to the law relating to the structure, powers, and service delivery functions of local government including: reorganisation schemes, powers and administrative principles, civil liability, elections, council procedures, staff employment, works contracts, financial accountability, land valuation, rating systems, environmental functions, and bylaws. Study of related public bodies (such as education and health authorities).

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

*Restriction: LAW 358*

**LAW 444 (2 Points)**

**Maori Land Law**

Customary Maori land tenure and legal issues arising under Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993.

*Prerequisite: LAW 301*

*Restriction: LAW 359*

**LAW 445 (2 Points)**

**Law of Family Property**

Advanced study of the law of property in family contexts, including trusts, succession, and matrimonial property.

*Prerequisite: LLB Part II*

**LAW 446 (2 Points)**

**Mining and Natural Resources Law**

An examination of the common law principles, legislation, and administrative controls, in New Zealand relating to ownership of, prospecting for, extraction and utilisation of, minerals (including oil

and gas), alternative energy resources, forestry and fisheries resources.

**LAW 447 (2 Points)**

**Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution**

An introduction to negotiation, mediation and dispute resolution covering: (i) a conceptual study of these processes including the study of the function of law, roles of lawyer, ethics, analysis, cultural and socio-economic factors; and (ii) a practical study of these processes including criteria for choosing resolution methods, techniques, attitudes, problem solving strategies, communication techniques, and effectiveness.

**LAW 448 (2 Points)**

**Psychiatry and the Law**

A general introduction to the formal relationship between psychiatry and law; the legal processes affecting compulsory assessment and treatment, including consideration of constitutional and cultural issues, patients rights and the review process; and the law and practice concerning forensic patients.

**LAW 449 (2 Points)**

**Remedies**

Advanced study of civil remedies for breach of civil obligations including those arising both at common law and under statute, discretionary relief in equity and under statutes, and the assessment of damages and compensation.

*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241, 306*

*Restriction: LAW 370*

**LAW 450 (2 Points)**

**Resource Management Law**

An introduction to the law relating to resource management and environmental regulation including: evolution of the sustainable management concept, consideration of national objectives, application of the Treaty of Waitangi, national standards, coastal policies, regional statements and plans, district plans, designations, heritage and conservation powers, resource consent procedures, and remedial powers and enforcement procedures.

*Restriction: LAW 349, 457*

**LAW 451 (2 Points)**

**Restitution**

A study of the general principles of the law of restitution, including an analysis of the concept of unjust enrichment, selected applications of restitutionary principle for the recovery of value upon a flawed or conditioned transfer, recovery outside contract for labour expended on another's behalf, and stripping wrong-doers of profits.

*Prerequisite: LAW 231, 241, 306, 311*

*Restriction: LAW 366*

**LAW 452 (2 Points)**

**Rights and Freedoms**

The legal modes for protection of civil rights including study of the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990, the Human Rights Act 1993, freedom of speech and religion, criminal procedural rights, equality, and the prohibited grounds of discrimination.

*Prerequisite: LAW 211*

*Restriction: LAW 342*

<b>LAW 453</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LAW 483</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Roman Law</b>		<b>Special Topic 2001: Privacy Law</b>	
The significance of Roman Law as an enduring legacy from the ancient world to the modern; a study of the sources and historical development of Roman law; and a study of selected aspects of Roman law including the law of actions (procedure), the law of obligations (contract and delict), family and succession law, and criminal law.		An examination of the Law relating to privacy in New Zealand with special reference to the common law protection of privacy; the protection of privacy under the Broadcasting Act 1989; and the scope and application of the Privacy Act 1993.	
<b>LAW 454</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LAW 484</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Vendor and Purchaser</b>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
A study of the law relating to contracts for the sale and purchase of land, including the formation of the contract, the application of relevant statutes, the basic terms of such contracts and their significance, matters of title, settlement and completion, and remedies for breach.		<b>LAW 485</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<i>Prerequisite: LAW 241, 301</i>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>LAW 455</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LAW 486</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Welfare Law</b>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
A study of the law relating to income maintenance, physical and mental disability, housing and homelessness, and access to legal and related services.		<b>LAW 487</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>LAW 456</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>Supervised Research</b>		<b>LAW 488</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
A research course, approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law, written under the supervision of a teacher in the Faculty of Law.		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>LAW 457</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LAW 489</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Environmental Law for Non-Lawyers</b>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>LAW 458</b>	<b>(1 Point)</b>	<b>LAW 490</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Legal Ethics</b>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
A study of legal ethics and professional responsibility including: an introduction to ethical analysis which examines various theories of ethics; the applicability of ethical analysis to legal practice; the concept of a profession and the ethical and professional duties of practitioners (which will include, amongst other topics, conflicts of interest, confidentiality, duties to the court, duties of loyalty and fidelity); the wider responsibilities of lawyers in the community.		<b>LAW 491</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>LAW 459</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>Maritime Law</b>		<b>LAW 492</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
An introduction to shipping law, including: ownership and proprietary interests in ships, ship registration, charter parties, ship mortgages, shipboard crimes and torts, the law of collisions, salvage and wrecks, the admiralty jurisdiction, enforcement of maritime liens and other maritime claims, national shipping law and policy, the international regulatory framework, and conflict of laws issues applicable to maritime disputes.		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>LAW 480</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LAW 493</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic 2001: Law and Policy</b>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>LAW 481</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LAW 494</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic: Equitable Remedies</b>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>LAW 482</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>	<b>LAW 495</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic: Criminal Procedure</b>		<b>Special Topic</b>	
		<b>LAW 496</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>Special Topic</b>	
		<b>LAW 497</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>Special Topic</b>	
		<b>LAW 498</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
		<b>Special Topic</b>	
		To be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.	
		<b>LAW 499</b>	<b>(0 Points)</b>
		<b>LAW 499A</b>	<b>(0 Points)</b>
		<b>LAW 499B</b>	<b>(0 Points)</b>
		<b>Legal Practice</b>	
		Such work and practical experience in the detailed application of the law and in relation to the provision of legal services as approved by the Faculty of Law.	
		<i>To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 499 A and B, or LAW 499</i>	
		<b>Diploma Courses</b>	
		<b>LAW 690</b>	<b>(4 Points)</b>
		<b>Dissertation</b>	
		A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope, and depth of research, of a competent law review article.	

**Master's Courses****LAW 701 (4 Points)**  
**Administrative Law**

Advanced study of the principles of administrative law, comprising judicial review of administrative action and other mechanisms of accountability with emphasis on theoretical advances in the area, recent developments, and a comparative common law perspective.

**LAW 702 (4 Points)**  
**Building and Construction Law**

Study of the law affecting buildings and the construction industry including: relevant doctrine of contract and tort, real estate, the law governing planning and design, occupational health and safety, and cultural, archaeological, and environmental issues relevant to the building and construction industries.

**LAW 703 (4 Points)**  
**Commercial Arbitration and Dispute Resolution**

A comparative study of negotiation, litigation, arbitration and mediation in commercial contexts; New Zealand law relating to arbitration, international arbitration; and the operating and utility of mediation in commercial contexts.

**LAW 704 (4 Points)**  
**Commercial Conflict of Laws**

The principles and rules of private international law applicable to commercial dealings.

**LAW 705 (4 Points)**  
**Commercial Crime**

A detailed study of commercial crime and of the effectiveness of the law in dealing with it.

**LAW 707 (4 Points)**  
**Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to the distribution and financing of goods and services, including security devices and the rights of creditors and third persons.

**LAW 708 (4 Points)**  
**Commercial Leases**

An examination and analysis of the obligations, rights, and powers, of parties in modern commercial leases, including problems arising from assignments, subleases, mortgages of leases, enforcement of obligations, and remedies.

**LAW 709 (4 Points)**  
**Comparative Law**

Analysis of selected topics to compare New Zealand law and common law with other legal systems such as civil law, and indigenous and religious legal systems.

**LAW 710 (4 Points)**  
**Competition Law**

Advanced studies in competition law and its application to international transactions and commercial relationships, with comparative study of New Zealand law with that of other countries.

**LAW 711 (4 Points)**  
**Conceptual Foundations of the Law**

A study of theories about the nature of human action; analysis of the basic concepts used in discourse about action, including intention, negligence, reasons, responsibility, and fault; and an application of such theories and analysis to legal problems.

**LAW 712 (4 Points)**  
**Conflict of Laws**

An advanced study of private international law, including a study of the jurisdiction of the New Zealand courts and arbitrators, the recognition and enforcement of foreign judgments and decrees and arbitral awards, and choice of the governing legal system.

**LAW 713 (4 Points)**  
**Constitutional Law**

Studies in the law relating to the structure and functioning of the government system, including the rules which regulate relations between the different branches of government and between the different branches of government and the individual.

**LAW 714 (4 Points)**  
**Consumer Protection Law**

Detailed study of the law governing the rights and protection of consumers in sales and credit transactions including the relevance of consumer protection to public health and protection of the environment.

**LAW 715 (4 Points)**  
**Criminal Law and Policy**

The history and principles of criminal law, analysis of current issues in substantive and procedural criminal law, criminal justice theory, including the theory of punishment, and criminal law reform.

**LAW 716 (4 Points)**  
**Criminology**

The nature and extent of crime in our society, selected studies of the causes of crime, political aspects of the criminal law, and study of the criminal justice system including the objectives of the system, the role of the police, and a critical analysis of penal measures.

**LAW 717 (4 Points)**  
**Dispute Resolution**

The history and current practice of dispute resolution outside the courtroom, dispute settlement theories, and the principles of negotiation and mediation in the context of family, commercial, environmental, international and urban community disputes.

**LAW 718 (4 Points)**  
**Equity**

A detailed study of the history and principles of equity as they impact on modern society, including: the fiduciary obligation, the nature of equitable estates and interests, equitable priorities, estoppel, oppression and unconscionable dealing, specific equitable doctrines (such as contribution and subrogation), modern uses of the trust, and equitable remedies.

**LAW 719 (4 Points)**  
**Family Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to husband and wife, parent and child, and family relationships generally.

**LAW 720** (4 Points)  
**Global Legal Issues**

The impact of globalisation on nation-state sovereignty and national legal systems, the role of international financial institutions, models of regional integration and their effects, the liability of transnational corporations, the role of international agreements on economic, indigenous, social and environmental issues including their effect on Aotearoa/New Zealand.

**LAW 721** (4 Points)  
**Health Care Law**

A detailed study of the law and ethics related to health care delivery including: the purchase and provision of health services, the relationship between health providers and consumers, professional accountability, codes of rights, legal/ethical issues at the start and end of life, and biomedical research.

**LAW 722** (4 Points)  
**Human Rights**

A comparative study of the role of constitutions and judicial review in the protection of human rights, including: freedom of expression, association, equality and minority rights.

**LAW 723** (4 Points)  
**Immigration and Refugee Law**

Basic features of immigration law in New Zealand including: the process of admission to New Zealand, the process of deportation, the relationship between immigration and family law, legal status of aliens, and the protection of refugees from persecution abroad.

**LAW 724** (4 Points)  
**Indigenous Sovereignty and Self-determination**

Issues relating to indigenous peoples' struggle for legal recognition of their rights to determine their own future and government responses to these.

**LAW 725** (4 Points)  
**Employment Law**

Selected and comparative studies in employment law.

**LAW 726** (4 Points)  
**Insolvency Law**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties including: study of the rights of creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation, corporate failure and re-organisation, and insolvency law reform in this and other jurisdictions.

**LAW 727** (4 Points)  
**Insurance Law**

The principles and operation of the law relating to insurance.

**LAW 728** (4 Points)  
**Intellectual Property**

Aspects of the law protecting the products of intellectual endeavour selected from: the law of passing off, the law of copyright, patent law, and the law of breach of contract.

**LAW 729** (4 Points)

**International Law**

The principles of international law and their application to municipal law.

**LAW 730** (4 Points)

**International Law of Human Rights**

Study of international conventions and customary international law on human rights, including: free speech, exercise of religion, privacy and non-discrimination, enforcement mechanisms, human rights theories in international law, third generation human rights including rights to development and a functioning environment, and the recognition of these in international law.

**LAW 731** (4 Points)

**International Litigation and Arbitration**

The institutional and procedural framework applicable to the resolution of international civil or commercial disputes; and strategic planning in multi-jurisdictional litigation.

**LAW 732** (4 Points)

**International Trade**

Advanced study of selected topics in international trade law including: import and export of goods by sea and air, treaties affecting New Zealand's foreign trade, and transnational aspects of doing business abroad.

**LAW 733** (4 Points)

**Jurisprudence**

The study of selected topics from theories concerning the nature of law, the relation of law and morality, the nature of legal reasoning, theories of justice, and theories about the correct analysis of central legal concepts.

**LAW 734** (4 Points)

**Land Law**

The history and principles of land law.

**LAW 735** (4 Points)

**Law and Economics**

Selected topics relating to: the relevance of economic considerations in legal argument, the role of economic considerations in shaping the law, and the use of economic theory in assisting judgments about the effectiveness of laws.

**LAW 736** (4 Points)

**Law and Gender**

Advanced studies in the role of law in addressing and maintaining gender inequality, including examination of feminist thought on the gendered nature of law.

**LAW 737** (4 Points)

**Law and Society**

A study of selected aspects of the interrelation of legal processes and social change; legislation, courts, and other legal institutions as they influence and are affected by social change; and the role of law in the modern state.

**LAW 738** (4 Points)

**Law of Banking and Exchange Control**

The law and practice relating to banking and

exchange control regulations with special reference to New Zealand.

**LAW 739 (4 Points)**

**Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate**

The principles of the law as to corporations and unincorporated bodies with special reference to registered companies.

**LAW 740 (4 Points)**

**Law of Contract**

The history and principles of the law of contract, including the law as to the sale of goods, negotiable instruments, and all other special classes of contracts.

**LAW 741 (4 Points)**

**Law of Evidence**

The principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases.

**LAW 742 (4 Points)**

**Law of Torts**

The history and principles of civil liability for torts.

**LAW 743 (4 Points)**

**Legal Ethics**

The study of ethical issues arising in legal practice and of ethical theory relevant to these issues.

**LAW 744 (4 Points)**

**Legal Issues in Relation to Children**

A detailed study of the law as it affects the well-being and governance of children.

**LAW 745 (4 Points)**

**Legal Problems of the European Union**

The objectives, structures, functions and relationships of the European Union; economic, social, and environmental, implications of the common market and the political union, external relations, and current trends in European and other regional arrangements.

**LAW 746 (4 Points)**

**Legislation**

The relative effectiveness of different forms of regulatory intervention with particular reference to legislative intervention, the form and substance of legislation, judicial and other approaches to its interpretation, the process of legislative change, and the proper role for subordinate legislation.

**LAW 747 (4 Points)**

**Local Government Law**

The law relating to the structure, powers and service delivery functions of local government including: the history of local government, reorganisation schemes, powers and administrative principles, civil liability, elections, council procedures, staff employment, works contracts, financial accountability, land valuation, rating systems, environmental functions, and bylaws. Consideration of related public bodies (e.g. education and health authorities).

**LAW 748 (4 Points)**

**Maori Land Law**

Examination of tikanga whenua (Maori concepts relating to land tenure), important cases and statutes defining Maori land tenure, the provisions

of Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993 for a dual system of land tenure of Maori freehold land, and the effect of the Resource Management Act 1991 and the Crown Minerals Act 1991 on land held in Maori freehold title.

**LAW 749 (4 Points)**

**Maritime Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of carriage of goods by sea, contracts relating to ships including charter parties, the ownership, disposition, and mortgage of ships, the law of collision, salvage and wrecks, and the regulation by domestic and international law of conduct on the high sea.

**LAW 750 (4 Points)**

**Media Law**

The law relating to the media, including freedom of the press, broadcasting regulations, political and election broadcasting, defamation law, contempt of court, copyright, and the rights of journalists and broadcasters.

**LAW 751 (4 Points)**

**New Zealand Legal History**

Selected topics on the evolution and development of the New Zealand legal system, major changes and reforms within the system, the influence of legal personnel, the role of the law in relations between colonists and Maori, and the practical working of the system.

**LAW 752 (4 Points)**

**Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**LAW 753 (4 Points)**

**Partnership**

The principles of common law and equity applicable to partnerships.

**LAW 754 (4 Points)**

**Privacy Law**

The law governing data surveillance and techniques of social control through the use of information technology, privacy aspects of the prevention of credit and insurance fraud, and criminal investigation, and the balance between individual rights and commercial and/or public interests.

**LAW 755 (4 Points)**

**Public Utilities**

A study of the law relating to the establishment, operation and regulation of public utilities, primarily those in the business of producing and/or distributing water, gas, electricity, telephone and other telecommunication services.

**LAW 756 (4 Points)**

**Restitution**

Advanced problems focusing on situations and available remedies where benefits have been wrongfully or unfairly acquired.

**LAW 757 (4 Points)**

**Social and Economic Regulation**

Study of the legal issues involved in regulating social and/or economic behaviour including: theories of regulation, forms of social and economic regulation, enforcement, competition law, and the effectiveness and future of regulation.

**LAW 758 (4 Points)****Theories of Obligations in Commercial Transactions**

A study of the principles that underlie the law of civil obligations as they impact on commercial transactions.

*Restriction: LAW 706, 610.726*

**LAW 759 (4 Points)****Welfare Law**

A study of the law relating to the provision of welfare grants and services by the state including: the development of the welfare state, the reasons for the provision of welfare, and the practical operation of the welfare system.

**LAW 770 (4 Points)****Special Topic: International Family Law****LAW 771 (4 Points)****Special Topic: Law and Policy****LAW 772 (4 Points)****Special Topic: New Zealand Bill of Rights**

The interpretation and application of the New Zealand Bill of Rights in comparative and international context.

**LAW 773 (4 Points)****Special Topic: Maori and the Law – Contemporary Developments**

An examination of contemporary issues relating to Maori and the Law. Recent developments in Environmental/Land and Fisheries Law. A contemporary analysis of issues relating to Maori and the Law. Includes analysis of Maori concepts used in modern legal discourse, Maori relationships to natural resources and the environment, particularly fisheries.

**LAW 774 (4 Points)****Special Topic: Law of Agency**

An advanced study of the principles of agency law, and selected applications thereof.

**LAW 775 (4 Points)****Special Topic: International Economic Organisations and Agreements**

This course will explore the expanding inter-governmental framework of international economic law, with particular reference to the history, structure and procedures of the major international economic institutions and agreements, the major challenges which currently confront them and the tension between law and policy-making at the global and national levels.

**LAW 776 (4 Points)****Special Topic: Law and Economic Regulation**

This course is concerned with legal aspects of the process of economic regulation from both a conceptual and comparative perspective. It covers the differing approaches taken to economic

regulation, the relationship of regulatory techniques to principles of competition law and administrative law, and the approaches adopted in this area in the United States, United Kingdom and in the European Union. Aspects of the distinctive New Zealand approach to economic regulation in areas such as telecommunications, power and energy, state owned enterprises and recent deregulatory initiatives are examined in detail.

**LAW 777 (4 Points)****Special Topic: Common Law Theory and Practice****LAW 778 (4 Points)****Special Topic: Internationalisation of Domestic Law****LAW 779 (4 Points)****Special Topic: Mergers and Acquisitions****LAW 780 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LAW 781 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LAW 782 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LAW 783 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LAW 784 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LAW 785 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LAW 786 (2 Points)****Special Topic****LAW 787 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

To be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**LAW 788 (1 Point)****Legal Research Methodology**

Such study of methods of legal research, and of research perspectives, as is specified by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**Honours Dissertation****LAW 789 (4 Points)****Dissertation**

A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope, and depth of research, of a competent law review article. The topic of the dissertation must be approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**Master's Dissertation and Thesis****LAW 790 (4 Points)****Dissertation**

A dissertation of approximately 15,000 words resulting from original research of the student, having the scope, and depth of research, of a competent law review article.

**LAW 796A (6 Points)****LAW 796B (6 Points)****Thesis A**

A thesis of approximately 40,000 words resulting from original research of the student, displaying at a minimum: thorough research, a competent advanced understanding of the topic studied, and an ability to present the student's understanding of that topic in an orderly way.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 796 A and B

**LAW 797A** (10 Points)

**LAW 797B** (10 Points)

**Thesis B**

A thesis of approximately 60,000 words resulting from original research of the student, displaying comprehensive understanding of the topic studied and an ability to contribute to the better understanding of that topic.

To complete this course students must enrol in LAW 797 A and B

## Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences

### Anatomy with Radiology

**Part II**

**ANATOMY 201** (2 Points)

**Human Biology – Structure and Function**

Presents the structure of biological systems with special reference to human biology, from the levels of histology through to gross anatomy. Specific examples of the correlation between structure and function will be considered. An introduction to current techniques for the visualisation of biological structure will be presented.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 107, and HUMANBIO 142 or 405.105

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ANATOMY 702** (2 Points)

**Biology of Connective Tissue**

A study of the components that make up the extracellular matrix of tissues and the roles that they play in controlling cell growth, organ development and the physical properties of tissues.

**ANATOMY 703** (2 Points)

**Biology of Connective Tissue Diseases**

A study of the role of the extracellular matrix in disease processes with special emphasis on heritable disorders such as osteogenesis imperfecta, and on chronic degenerative diseases such as atherosclerosis, osteoarthritis and fibrosis.

*Prerequisite:* ANATOMY 702

**ANATOMY 704** (2 Points)

**Current Topics in Anatomical Research I**

Recent advances in anatomy. Topics include: the structure and function of tissues at the gross, macroscopic, cellular and molecular levels. Emphasis is placed on critical analysis of current research.

**ANATOMY 705** (2 Points)

**Current Topics in Anatomical Research II**

Recent advances in anatomy. Topics include: the structure and function of tissues at the gross,

macroscopic, cellular and molecular levels. Emphasis is placed on critical analysis of current research.

**ANATOMY 706** (2 Points)

**Neuroanatomy**

The organisation of the human nervous system with particular emphasis on the cellular, chemical and connective anatomy of the sensory and motor systems.

**ANATOMY 751** (2 Points)

**Advanced Biomedical Imaging**

Theory and practice of biomedical imaging with specific emphasis on recent developments in the field. Principles of digital image processing (including quantitative morphology), computed tomography and volume analysis. Imaging modalities including light microscopy, electron microscopy, x-ray, ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging.

### Audiology

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**AUDIOL 701** (2 Points)

**Auditory Neuroscience**

The anatomy and physiology of the auditory system, concentrating on the peripheral system. Topics include: the anatomy and neuroanatomy of the ear, the role of the middle ear, cochlear mechanics and micromechanics, transduction in the cochlea and vestibular system, responses of the auditory nerve and cochlear homeostasis. Emphasis will be placed on critical assessment of literature.

**AUDIOL 702** (2 Points)

**Basic Diagnostic Audiology**

The basic principles and techniques of diagnostic audiology in adults. Topics studied include: basic audiometric techniques (pure tone audiometry, speech audiometry, immittance audiometry, traditional site-of-lesion tests, non-organic hearing loss, history-taking). The course involves practicals and emphasis is placed on critical assessment of current literature.

**AUDIOL 703A** (2 Points)

**AUDIOL 703B** (2 Points)

**Basic Clinical Audiology**

The basis of clinical audiology and hearing disorders. Topics include: the nature of hearing disorders, diseases of the ear, technical aspects of hearing aids, child development, paediatric hearing assessment, occupational hearing conservation and clinical instruction in clinical audiology.

To complete this course students must enrol in AUDIOL 703 A and B

**AUDIOL 704** (2 Points)

**Central Auditory Function**

The neuroanatomy and neurophysiology of central auditory pathways, psychoacoustics, and speech and language. Topics include: the anatomy and physiology of the auditory nuclei in the mammalian brain, basic psychoacoustics and central processes involved in speech and language.

**AUDIOL 705 (2 Points)****Acoustics for Audiology**

The physics of sound, and instrumentation and principles of digital signal processing involved in audiological research. Topics include: the physics of sound waves, room acoustics, measurement of reverberation time, calibration of audiological instruments, instrumentation in audiology (digital systems and data acquisition, frequency and time-domain analysis of digital signals). The approach is practical and utilises computer programmes.

**AUDIOL 711 (2 Points)****Physiological Measures of Auditory Function**

Advanced study of the auditory system using physiological measurements of auditory function. Topics include: auditory evoked potentials, otoacoustic emissions, vestibulometry, and electrocochleography. The course is based on assessment of current literature and practical projects.

**AUDIOL 712A (2 Points)****AUDIOL 712B (2 Points)****Advanced Clinical Audiology**

Rehabilitation and management of the deaf and hearing-impaired. Topics include: educational and paediatric audiology – amplification strategies (including hearing aids, cochlear implants and assistive listening devices), aural rehabilitation and counselling. The course involves extensive clinical instruction and the critical assessment of current literature.

To complete this course students must enrol in AUDIOL 712 A and B

**AUDIOL 790A (4 Points)****AUDIOL 790B (4 Points)****Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in AUDIOL 790 A and B

**Behavioural Science****Part II****BEHAVSCI 201 (2 Points)****Mental Health**

Mental health is defined and examined in a way that incorporates social, community and individual elements. Contemporary theory and research on mental health will be reviewed along with detailed discussion of strategies for promoting mental well-being, changing alcohol, drug and other addictive behaviours and approaches to major mental disorders.

**Master's Courses****BEHAVSCI 700A (2 Points)****BEHAVSCI 700B (2 Points)****Interventions for Mental Health**

The design of appropriate psychosocially-oriented mental health interventions in the community and a variety of applied contexts.

To complete this course students must enrol in BEHAVSCI 700 A and B

**BEHAVSCI 710 (2 Points)****Effective Counselling in Alcohol and Drug Settings**

The theory, research and practice regarding counselling and psycho-therapeutic approaches used in mental health and addiction service contexts. Approaches will be critically examined in terms of history, theory, social context and trends in research. Particular attention will focus on counselling methods currently in use within services.

**BEHAVSCI 717 (2 Points)****Mental Health: Definitions and Perspectives**

Introduces the philosophy of mental health in an imaginative and practical way. Major conceptual issues are raised: What is mental health? What is good research? What are the goals of psychiatry?. These are explored by means of key case studies. These studies are presented by lecturers in the broader mental health programme and students are encouraged to think critically about their content.

**BEHAVSCI 721 (2 Points)****Alcohol, Tobacco and Other Drug Studies**

Provides an introduction and overview to studies on alcohol and other drugs. Incorporates theory and research developed within public health, mental health, and specialised treatment frameworks. Topics will include: coverage of historical developments, a review of major theoretical issues and an overview of current trends.

Restriction: 575.706

**BEHAVSCI 722 (2 Points)****Interventions for Lifestyle Change**

Focuses on the use of early and brief intervention strategies in addressing lifestyle issues with health consequences, particularly the use of alcohol, tobacco, and other drugs. Students will work in project teams in developing a lifestyle intervention strategy for use in a particular health context. Interventions will include those occurring in hospitals, primary and mental health care settings, workplaces, and educational institutions.

Restriction: 575.706

**BEHAVSCI 729 (2 Points)****Mental Health Promotion**

Explores the emerging field of Mental Health Promotion (MHP), which has its roots in both health promotion and the mental/social health field. Combines individual, community, and public health dimensions, with a central emphasis on a people perspective, empowering community development and major public health issues like youth suicide, violence and depression. Also considers issues of culture, quality of life and the kind of society we want.

Restriction: 575.707

**BEHAVSCI 730 (2 Points)****Spirituality and Health**

This course takes the concept of spirituality, often mentioned but rarely explored in the health and mental health field, and attempts to clarify what it means and how it can be used. Personal, community, societal and cultural perspectives are covered, and the contributions of different disciplines are considered.

Restriction: 575.707

**BEHAVSCI 736A (2 Points)****BEHAVSCI 736B (2 Points)**

**Assessment and Intervention with Addiction**

Aims to provide trainees with understanding and competency in assessment and intervention work with alcohol and drug affected clients. It is divided into a series of training modules focusing on comprehensive assessment, effective clinical interventions, drug specific interventions and approaches within families and communities. It will involve regular care-based supervision.

To complete this course students must enrol in BEHAVSCI 703 A and B

**BEHAVSCI 737 (2 Points)  
Coexistent Mental and Substance Abuse Problems**

This course is suitable for students who work within both the mental health and the alcohol and drug services. It introduces students to research and theory on coexistent disorders and examines recent developments in intervention strategies.

**BEHAVSCI 738 (2 Points)  
Interventions in Problem Gambling**

Provides an historical and sociological overview of gambling in New Zealand. Examines the emergence of gambling problems and reviews research and theory on service strategies at the level of prevention, intervention and treatment.

**BEHAVSCI 758 (2 Points)  
Social Research in Mental Health**

This course is directed to students engaging with social science research in relation to mental health. It provides a review of the principal methods (quantitative and qualitative) used, in the design, conduct and analysis of social science studies of mental health, including an examination of the conceptual foundations of the methods and guidelines for informed appraisals of published findings.

Restriction: PSYCHIAT 731

**BEHAVSCI 759 (2 Points)  
Qualitative Research Methods in Mental Health**

Provides practical experience in the appraisal and use of qualitative methods in research on mental health. The development of studies from research questions through design, conduct, analysis and interpretation of such studies is examined in detail. Students are required to prepare, present, and defend a proposal for qualitative research on a mental health issue.

Prerequisite: BEHAVSCI 758 or COMHLTH 710

**BEHAVSCI 770 (2 Points)  
Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Discipline, Applied Behavioural Science.

**BEHAVSCI 771 (2 Points)  
Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Discipline, Applied Behavioural Science.

**Community Health**

**Part I**

**COMHLTH 102 (2 Points)  
Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**COMHLTH 103 (2 Points)  
Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**Part II**

**COMHLTH 201 (2 Points)  
Health Systems I**

Economic considerations in health care. The New Zealand health system including: the history of health and health services in New Zealand: hospitals, their role and their staffing; management structures and management functions in health care; funders, purchasers and providers; the role of insurance.

**COMHLTH 203 (2 Points)  
Research Methods in Health**

A review of the different ways of approaching, designing and undertaking social science research in the health field, covering research paradigms and methodologies, including both quantitative and qualitative methods.

**COMHLTH 204 (2 Points)  
Health Promotion: Philosophy and Practice**

Based on a widely-acclaimed text, this course explains the theoretical basis of health promotion. The programme introduces conceptual analysis and applies it to the Ottawa Charter. It is explained that all health promotion rests on values, and that health promotion practice is inspired by political outlooks. Because of this it is essential that health promoters consciously adopt an explicit theory of health promotion. A theory is offered and applied to practical health promotion tasks.

Restriction: PSYCHIAT 201

**COMHLTH 205 (2 Points)  
Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**COMHLTH 206 (2 Points)  
Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**Part III**

**COMHLTH 301 (2 Points)  
Health Systems II**

The New Zealand health system in an international context. Health system reform, priority setting and rationing. Managed care and health integration. The future of health care in New Zealand.

Prerequisite: COMHLTH 201, 203

**COMHLTH 302 (2 Points)  
Special Topic in Health Services**

This course requires students to examine or research a contemporary issue in health services, health management or health systems, and present their findings in an extended essay.

Prerequisite: COMHLTH 201, 203

**COMHLTH 303 (2 Points)****Health Informatics**

This course examines the health information and information systems requirements of contemporary health care services in New Zealand. It draws together material covered in a number of the courses taken earlier in the programme.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 201, COMHLTH 203*

**COMHLTH 304 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**Honours and Master's Courses****COMHLTH 701 (2 Points)****Statistics in Health Science**

An introduction to statistics and statistical methods for health scientists.

**COMHLTH 703 (2 Points)****Epidemiology**

An introduction to epidemiological study design, measures of effect, screening, basic statistics for epidemiology and critical appraisal.

*Restriction: 515.702*

**COMHLTH 704 (2 Points)****Health and Society**

An introduction to key concepts in the social analysis of health and health care, with special reference to New Zealand institutions.

**COMHLTH 705 (2 Points)****Health and Public Policy**

An analysis of the policy process in New Zealand with special reference to issues of health and health care.

**COMHLTH 706 (2 Points)****Advanced Epidemiology**

Theory and methods for analysis and design of epidemiological investigations.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 703*

**COMHLTH 707 (2 Points)****Health Economics**

An introduction to basic concepts in economics and their application to health care, including the economic incentives associated with different methods of financing and organising health systems.

**COMHLTH 708 (2 Points)****Economic Evaluation**

The application of economic methods to the evaluation of health services and programmes. The principles and techniques of economic evaluation, the process of measuring costs and benefits of health services, quality of life measurement.

**COMHLTH 709 (2 Points)****Social Science Research – Issues**

Issues of utilisation, dissemination, ethics and funding of social science research in public health.

**COMHLTH 710 (2 Points)****Social Health Research Methods**

Provides experience in qualitative research methods, survey research and evaluation of health

services. Includes the use of complementary qualitative and quantitative methods. Complements topics covered in COMHLTH 744.

**COMHLTH 711 (2 Points)****Maori Health – Introduction**

Reviews the history of Maori health and contemporary health developments in the Maori community.

**COMHLTH 712 (2 Points)****Maori Health – Policies and Outcomes**

Expands upon COMHLTH 711. Examines current policies for Maori health and Maori responses to them.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 711*

**COMHLTH 713 (2 Points)****Health Promotion – Theory and Models**

The concept and scope of health promotion. The history, philosophy and values of health promotion in terms of various theoretical and practice models. The emphasis is on practical applications in a variety of settings.

**COMHLTH 714 (2 Points)****Health Promotion Strategies**

An overview of approaches and key strategies employed to promote health, with an emphasis on public policy, community action and advocacy. Practical application of the principles and techniques of design, implementation and evaluation of health promotion programmes.

**COMHLTH 715 (2 Points)****Health Management**

The application of general management principles to the health field, with particular reference to the nature of health organisations, leadership, managing change and managing with professionals in a turbulent environment.

**COMHLTH 716 (2 Points)****Health Care Organisation**

The principles, structure, organisation and funding of health systems. Special reference to how the New Zealand health system operates, and to current issues from an international perspective.

**COMHLTH 717 (2 Points)****Environmental Health**

Introduction to the mechanisms behind environmental hazards causing damage to human health. Links between industrial and agricultural development, environmental change and public health at local, national and global levels. The role of policies, legislation and public health actions in reducing environmental health risks.

**COMHLTH 718 (2 Points)****Health Protection**

Principles of health protection as an element of public health at local and national levels. Applications to environmental health, occupational health and communicable diseases. Identification of health hazards, development of prevention strategies, and field implementation methods. Food and drinking water monitoring. Screening for exposure and early diagnosis. Immunisation and quarantine programmes.

- COMHLTH 719** (2 Points)  
**Rapid Health Research in Small Populations**  
 Introduces epidemiological and statistical methods for small numbers and other topics, including participatory research, health systems/operations research, meta analysis, retrospective use of historical databases and appropriate computer databases.
- COMHLTH 720** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Epidemiology and Evidence-based Health Care**  
 The application of epidemiological principles to clinical and other health care decision-making.
- COMHLTH 721** (2 Points)  
**Public Health Nutrition**  
 Critically evaluates methods of assessing dietary intake and nutrition status. The dietary patterns of populations in relation to their disease status are examined, as are the principles and practices of diet and nutrition interventions in populations.
- COMHLTH 722** (2 Points)  
**Statistics in Health Science II**  
 Develops and builds on elementary statistical methods and prepares the student for advanced epidemiological and statistical analysis.  
*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 701*
- COMHLTH 723** (2 Points)  
**Quality in Health Care**  
 Quality health care is examined, with an emphasis on measurement and strategies that enable health care organisations to sustain performance improvement. The course's major assignment allows students to explore the application of quality principles to an area of their own choice.
- COMHLTH 724** (2 Points)  
**Health Information**  
 Exploration of the potential for information and information technology to assist those in health and health care to better meet their objectives by drawing together various aspects of information, technology and management.
- COMHLTH 725** (4 Points)  
**Foundations of Public Health**  
 The scope, key themes, methods and strategies of public health. Health is presented in its broader societal context as well as from an epidemiological perspective. Areas covered in some depth include basic epidemiology, determinants of health, and health services. Environmental and occupational health, Maori health and health promotion, are dealt with at an introductory level only.
- COMHLTH 726** (2 Points)  
**Public Health and Ageing**  
 Explores the complexities of the ageing process from a multidisciplinary perspective.
- COMHLTH 727** (2 Points)  
**Health Promotion in Later Life**  
 Key areas necessary to improve the physical and mental health and wellbeing of older people will be covered as well as the design, implementation and evaluation of health promotion programmes and services for older people.
- COMHLTH 728** (2 Points)  
**Research Methods in Applied Gerontology**  
 An introduction to research methods applied to the field of gerontology. Key areas covered include: operationalising gerontological concepts, sampling older populations, cross-sectional, cohort and case control designs, outcome assessments and process evaluation, critical appraisal, and elementary data analyses.
- COMHLTH 730** (2 Points)  
**Pacific Health: An Introduction**  
 Introduces issues in the health of Pacific Islands people in New Zealand and the Pacific. The application of these issues to improve health and health services of Pacific Island populations will be covered.
- COMHLTH 731** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Economics**  
 The application of economic methods in clinical decision-making and clinical resource allocation. Key areas covered include: cost-effectiveness, cost-benefit and cost-utility analyses, decision analysis, Markov modelling and outcomes/quality of life research.
- COMHLTH 732** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Trials Design, Analysis and Management**  
 An introduction to the methodological and practical aspects of clinical trial design, analysis and management. Participants will develop the skills to evaluate research findings and design and conduct a randomised clinical trial.  
*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 720 or equivalent experience*
- COMHLTH 733** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Practice Guidelines Development and Implementation**  
 An introduction to explicit, evidence-based guideline development and evaluation. Covers the process developed by Group Health Cooperative in Seattle and used as the recommended framework for guidelines by the New Zealand Guideline Group of the National Health Committee.
- COMHLTH 734** (2 Points)  
**Management with Health Professionals**  
 Examines health care organisations and their cultures and subcultures, with particular reference to managing in a professional environment. The issue of implementation of evidence-based clinical practice is considered in detail.
- COMHLTH 735** (2 Points)  
**Risk Assessment and Management**  
 Concepts and methods for quantitative assessment of health risks from environmental hazards. Application to public health practice and decision-making for resource management in case studies. The use of risk assessment in risk communication and risk management.
- COMHLTH 736** (2 Points)  
**Traditional Medicine in New Zealand**  
 Utilisation of traditional medicine and therapeutic medications in New Zealand. Investigation of use in a cultural context. Students will complete a small research project.

**COMHLTH 738** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Public Health**  
 As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**COMHLTH 739** (2 Points)  
**Systematic Reviews and Meta-analysis**  
 An introduction to the principles and critical appraisal of systematic reviews and meta-analysis and their role in evidence-based practice. Topics include: protocol development, question formulation, identification of evidence, selection of studies for inclusion, appraisal and quality of included studies, extraction and recording of data, synthesis (meta-analysis) and interpretation of results, and application.

*Prerequisite: COMHLTH 720 or equivalent experience*

**COMHLTH 740** (4 Points)  
**Clinical Assessment and Pathophysiology for Nurses**  
 This course is in two sections. The first section provides an advanced understanding of pathophysiology for practising nurses. The second section covers the core of assessment skills that every advanced nurse practitioner must have. The framework will take an evidence-based approach in relation to clinical decision-making.

**COMHLTH 741** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Public Health**  
 As prescribed by the Head of Division, Community Health.

**COMHLTH 742** (2 Points)  
**Principles of Health Informatics**  
 Scope and purpose of Health Informatics. Study of the technology and the information management concepts needed to deliver high-quality and cost-effective healthcare. Theoretical framework needed to assess the ethical aspects of computerised clinical care.

*Restriction: INFORM 615, COMHLTH 724*

**COMHLTH 743** (2 Points)  
**Health Promotion – Practicum**  
 Theoretical and practice principles of health promotion processes, combined with practical experience, in the context of relevant organisations, community groups and research projects.

**COMHLTH 744** (2 Points)  
**Research Methods for Health Professionals**  
 Provides students with the skills to plan and carry out small-scale research projects. Both qualitative and quantitative research skills will be covered, with illustrative examples from a range of health services.

**COMHLTH 745** (2 Points)  
**Child Health**  
 Need, assessment and evaluation of programmes concerning the health of infants and children and their families. Specific examples include injury and infection prevention, and child advocacy.

**COMHLTH 746** (2 Points)  
**Youth Health**  
 Youth injury prevention, resiliency factors and reproductive issues, and advocacy for young people.

**COMHLTH 747** (2 Points)  
**Healthcare Decision Support Systems**  
 Familiarises students with the main developments of decision support systems in healthcare. The theoretical concepts and the technology including data mining, clinical decision support systems, diagnostic systems and decision support in managed care. Ethical issues are also addressed.

**COMHLTH 790A** (3 Points)  
**COMHLTH 790B** (3 Points)  
**Dissertation**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMHLTH 790 A and B*

**COMHLTH 796A** (7 Points)  
**COMHLTH 796B** (7 Points)  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in COMHLTH 796 A and B*

---

## General Practice and Primary Health Care

---

### Diploma Courses

**GENPRAC 603A** (3 Points)  
**GENPRAC 603B** (3 Points)

### Practice in Community Emergency Medicine

A log book of skills such as: examination skills, common joint reductions, application of plasters and splints, repair of extensor tendons, use of slit lamp. Also includes: advanced cardiac life support skills, attendance at specialist clinics, practical work experience, case diaries.

*Corequisite: GENPRAC 751, 752*

*To complete this course students must enrol in GENPRAC 603 A and B*

**GENPRAC 604** (6 Points)

### Clinical Biological Aspects of Ageing

Theories of normal ageing, age associated changes in structure and function of the major body systems, the scope of prevention of disease and disability in later life, specific features of the presentation of clinical problems in the elderly, complications of illnesses of old age, diagnosis, assessment and management of specific clinical problems important in old age, terminal care, control of pain and other symptoms, and aspects of pharmacology and therapeutics in the elderly.

**GENPRAC 605** (4 Points)  
**Health Services to the Elderly**

Current and future demographic trends, social processes in ageing, retirement, patterns of care for elderly people, philosophy and practice of long term care, ethical and legal aspects of the care of older people, methods of supporting carers of older people at home, structure, functions and responsibilities of health and social services used by the elderly including availability and eligibility for subsidies, appropriate referral to special geriatric and psychogeriatric services, and principles of audit of quality of primary care.

**GENPRAC 606** (4 Points)  
**Psychological and Psychiatric Aspects of the Elderly**  
 Principles of functional assessment of activities of daily living and cognitive and emotional functions,

principles of rehabilitation including physiotherapy, speech language therapy and occupational therapy and availability and appropriate use of community services.

**GENPRAC 609A** (3 Points)

**GENPRAC 609B** (3 Points)

#### Practical Sports Medicine

Course requirements include: 100 hours of clinical attachments, along with a dissertation, a skills log, and case reports. The participant learns from leading practitioners in the fields of orthopaedics, sports medicine, physiotherapy and podiatry. This course applies the academic learning of courses GENPRAC 757 and 758 to the practical situation.

*Corequisite: GENPRAC 757, 758*

*To complete this course students must enrol in GENPRAC 609 A and B*

**GENPRAC 610** (2 Points)

#### Primary Care I

Exploring the dynamics of managing primary health care, particularly in general practice, practice accreditation tools, community networking and Maori health, information technology, the history and ethics of primary health care, legislation and financial management.

**GENPRAC 611** (2 Points)

#### Primary Care II

Developing quality improvement processes within primary health care. Topics include: integrated care, patient and community input into service provision. Introduction to research skills, resource planning, population analysis and project management, managing health professionals, the manager's role as trainer, and influencing health policy.

### Honours and Master's Courses

**GENPRAC 701** (2 Points)

#### Special Topics in General Practice

**GENPRAC 702** (2 Points)

#### Philosophy of General Practice

An exploration of general practice as a unique discipline within medicine with its own skills, methods and research principles. A survey of the history of general practice and its effect on our present day situation including the shift from a purely biomedical model to include the psychosocial aspect of general practice. Will be explored in terms of undergraduate and postgraduate training, personal preparation and political leadership.

**GENPRAC 703** (2 Points)

#### The Consultation and Communication

The different models for approaching the consultation will be reviewed and participants' own styles. In-depth study of advanced communication skills will include: the effect on communication of gender, sexual orientation, disability, religious belief and ethnicity, conflict resolution, assertiveness training, cross-cultural issues, application of Treaty of Waitangi, introduction to family therapy and communication within the practice team.

**GENPRAC 704** (2 Points)

#### Research Methods in General Practice

An in-depth exploration of: the asking of a research question, literature searching, study design, questionnaire development, measurement, management of data, analysis of data and publication as applicable to research in general practice. Also included will be a study of qualitative methodologies and ethical issues in relation to general practice research.

**GENPRAC 705** (2 Points)

#### Learning and Teaching in General Practice

Covers the basic principles of adult education and the ways they can be applied to promote effective learning in the clinical setting, for example the application of learning styles theory to selection of teaching methods. The same principles will apply to all education including patient education.

**GENPRAC 706** (2 Points)

#### Educational Programme Planning and Evaluation

Deals with the planning activities necessary to bring about specific learning outcomes in students. The influences on these activities, together with approaches to and constraints on implementation of the programme, are considered. Methods of programme evaluation, together with their strengths and weaknesses, are covered.

**GENPRAC 707** (2 Points)

#### Guideline Theory and Practice

The components of guideline development and implementation are covered in this course including: problem identification, suitability screening, data acquisition and literature evaluation, use of the balance sheet, guideline writing, implementation and evaluation. This course will include practical examples and will prepare students for facilitating guideline development and implementation.

**GENPRAC 708** (2 Points)

#### Quality and Health Outcomes

A study of the different models for defining quality in health care, followed by an exploration of the parameters of quality in general practice. The role of the various quality processes such as total quality management, continuous quality improvement, use of audit tools and the place of minimum standards. The use of quality measurements of structure, process and health outcomes.

**GENPRAC 709** (2 Points)

#### Practice Management and Organisation

The organisation of general practice is a constant challenge to general practitioners. The role of strategic planning, management structure and function, staff management and relations, teamwork and leadership, marketing, management accounting, information systems and the external environment as a means to improve practice delivery.

**GENPRAC 721** (2 Points)

#### Primary Mental Health I

The common mental health presentations of general practice: mood disorders, sleep disturbance, fatigue, somatisation/unexplained physical symptoms, anxiety disorders, detection and management of psychoses, comorbidity and management of

psychiatric emergencies. Includes: mental health epidemiology, recognition, assessment and diagnosis of these disorders.

**GENPRAC 722 (2 Points)**

**Primary Mental Health II**

The recognition, assessment and brief intervention in disorders of alcohol and substance abuse and gambling. An introduction to the management of eating disorders, sexual abuse, impulse control disorders, anger and aggression. Cultural aspects of mental health particularly in relation to the Treaty of Waitangi and new migrants.

**GENPRAC 723 (4 Points)**

**Mental Health Therapeutics**

The practical skills of assessment, problem solving, cognitive therapy, stress reduction techniques, case management and family therapy. Evidence-based prescribing of psychotropic agents. Students will be expected to participate in a number of community clinical experiences (including emergency care and community mental health clinics) and complete a logbook of clinical activities.

**GENPRAC 730 (2 Points)**

**Management of Opioid Dependency**

This course takes a harm reduction approach in reviewing current treatment protocols and recent developments in research on options for treating opioid dependency. Content will include a detailed analysis of the use of opioid substitutes such as methadone, LAAM and buprenorphine. It will examine the theoretical and evidential base for these strategies and will include teaching on the pharmacology, case management and counselling approaches with this group. It is designed primarily for general practitioners who are prescribing opioid substitutes and for other health professionals working with opioid-dependent clients.

**GENPRAC 735 (2 Points)**

**Health and Lifestyle**

Theory and research regarding lifestyle issues influencing health and the information base for the delivery of health advice. Topics include: the epidemiology of risk and protection factors affecting physical and mental health; responses to alcohol, tobacco, gambling and other drug issues; reproductive health and the evidence on other lifestyle behaviours affecting health.

**GENPRAC 736 (2 Points)**

**Health Promotion and Education**

The delivery of health interventions and the development of the processes used in providing health advice and education. Critical appraisal of the effectiveness of strategies for assisting lifestyle changes such as weight reduction, substance use and increasing exercise. Students will examine the issues and practicalities associated with introducing health interventions into primary health contexts.

**GENPRAC 737 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, General Practice.

**GENPRAC 738 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, General Practice.

**GENPRAC 739A (2 Points)**

**GENPRAC 739B (2 Points)**

**Managing Lifestyle Change**

Develops the clinical skills required in the management of lifestyle choices. Lifestyle assessment and intervention planning, forms of recording and office systems, techniques of early recognition and identification, strategies for brief counselling and other brief interventions, and advanced skills in motivational interviewing.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GENPRAC 739 A and B*

**GENPRAC 740 (2 Points)**

**Travel Medicine**

Proactive travellers' health care. Aspects of: the influence of travel and disease, travellers' health, risks and illnesses, immunisation theory and available vaccines, informatics of travellers' health (running a travel health service), generic health advice (mosquito protection, safe water, medical kits, insurance, air travel, sea travel, problem travellers and fitness to travel, extreme travellers, injury, sexually transmissible diseases and travel, HIV infection and the international traveller, the returning traveller, safety and security).

**GENPRAC 741 (2 Points)**

**Tropical Medicine**

Proactive and preventative management of tropical diseases. Aspects of: diseases spread by food, water, and soil, travellers' diarrhoea, diseases transmitted through person to person contact, vector-borne diseases, diseases spread by animals, malaria, diseases commonly presenting as fevers, diseases commonly presenting as diarrhoea, parasitic worms, anaemia in the tropics, skin conditions in the tropics, poisonous bites and plants.

**GENPRAC 742 (2 Points)**

**International Mobility and the Control of Diseases**

Consideration of the theory and clinical practice of migration medicine. The impact of international mobility on the health of travellers and migrants, common diseases of migrants, the medical assessment and screening of migrants and refugees, the work of humanitarian organisations, refugees in the face of war, relief workers in a field of conflict, migrant post-traumatic stress disorder, special immigration problems and legal issues relating to refugees.

**GENPRAC 743 (2 Points)**

**Current Topics in Travel and Tropical Medicine**

In-depth examination of the literature relating to specified topics in current Travel and Tropical Medicine. Directed reading of research publications with emphasis placed on critical analysis of the development of key concepts and techniques.

**GENPRAC 751 (4 Points)**

**Orthopaedic and Plastic Surgical Emergencies**

The anatomy, examination and management of

injuries and acute problems of the musculoskeletal system. Problem-solving modules include: radiological diagnosis and reporting, the care of wounds, the management of hand injuries, use of local anaesthetics and the assessment and immediate management of burns.

*Restriction: 520.601*

**GENPRAC 752 (4 Points)**

**Medical and Other Surgical Emergencies**

Medical emergencies are covered using evidence-based material with a problem-solving approach. Topics include: trauma and patient transport, cardiopulmonary resuscitation, anaphylaxis, psychiatric emergencies, specific organ system emergencies, diving accidents, near drowning, hypo/hyperthermia, toxicology, sexually transmitted infections and acute paediatric emergencies. Also included are: child abuse, sexual abuse and family violence, medicolegal and forensic issues.

*Restriction: 520.602*

**GENPRAC 757 (4 Points)**

**Sports Medicine**

The management of medical problems in sports people. It is designed to allow the practitioner to help those with medical conditions to exercise safely and also to help those already competing to maximise their performance through the control of their medical problems. Such topics as asthma, diabetes, rheumatology, cardiology and haematology are taught with special application to the exercising individual. Other related topics include: drugs in sport, exercise physiology, sports psychology and sports nutrition, which help the practitioner gain an overall insight into the management of the sporting person.

*Restriction: 520.607*

**GENPRAC 758 (4 Points)**

**Sports Injury**

The management of acute and chronic sporting injuries. Initial management, surgical intervention and rehabilitation programmes are discussed. An evidence-based, multidisciplinary approach is taken to the management that gives the participant wide exposure to the options for injury treatment. Topics included are: facial and eye injury, foot and ankle injury, shin pain, knee injury, shoulder, elbow, hand, wrist and spinal injury.

*Restriction: 520.608*

**GENPRAC 760 (2 Points)**

**Ethics, Culture and Societal Approaches to Death**

Approaches to death by Maori and other cultures. Resource and legal issues in the New Zealand context. Ethical issues: euthanasia versus palliative care, privacy, living wills and end of life medical decision-making – particularly treatment abatement. Duties after death, the nature of teamwork, the multidisciplinary nature of palliative care, the role of volunteers, emotional self care for palliative care providers, and home-versus residential care.

**GENPRAC 761 (2 Points)**

**Psycho-oncology**

The psychological and social study of patients with cancer or active, progressive disease, unresponsive

to curative treatment. Existential philosophy and models of coping with suffering, communication in palliative care, psychiatric disorders in palliative care, and bereavement.

**GENPRAC 762 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Symptom Management in Terminal Illness**

Management of pain, nausea and vomiting, respiratory symptoms, bowel care, mouth and skin care, cognitive mood and sleep disorders, oncological emergencies, palliative care for non malignant conditions, HIV/AIDS, and paediatric palliative care.

**GENPRAC 763 (2 Points)**

**Research Project in Palliative Care**

Advanced study in an appropriate area of palliative care that is of special interest to the student as approved by the Head of Division.

**GENPRAC 770 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Gerontology**

The basic biology, demographics, social policy, sociology, psychology and economics of ageing.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 605*

**GENPRAC 771 (2 Points)**

**Health Services for Elderly People**

Regulatory and accreditation requirements for facilities caring for the elderly in a wide variety of organisations and models of care for the elderly. Critical review of innovative services in elderly care.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 605*

**GENPRAC 772 (2 Points)**

**Mental Health in Old Age**

The psychological aspects of ageing, common psychiatric presentations in the elderly, sleep disturbance, grief and loss, anxiety disorders, drug and alcohol abuse, depression, delirium, dementia, behavioural disorders, psychosis, and medico-legal aspects.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 606*

**GENPRAC 773 (2 Points)**

**Rehabilitation in Later Life**

The rehabilitation of elderly people having suffered from stroke, amputation, fractures and invasive procedures. Includes a practical attachment to a rehabilitation unit for the elderly.

**GENPRAC 774 (2 Points)**

**Medical Care of the Elderly I**

The clinical pharmacology, altered disease presentation, interpretation of laboratory data, surgical and anaesthetic risk, analgesia, infections, falls, vascular disease, oral and dental disorders commonly seen in the elderly.

*Restriction: GENPRAC 606*

**GENPRAC 775 (2 Points)**

**Medical Care of the Elderly II**

Ophthalmic disease, respiratory disease in the elderly, orthopaedic disorders, rheumatic disorders, health issues of the elderly male and female, sexually transmitted diseases and the utility of medical imaging procedures in the care of the elderly.

**GENPRAC 776 (2 Points)**

**Medical Care of the Elderly III**

Medical aspects of assessment of the psycho-

geriatric patient, psychopharmacology, medical matters in the depressed and anxious patient, depression and bipolar affective disorder, differential diagnosis of delirium and dementia and its medical and pharmacological management, treatment of psychotic disorders, Parkinson's disease and Parkinsonism, and gait disorders.

**GENPRAC 777** (2 Points)

#### **Sociology and Psychology of Ageing**

Exploration and review of sociological and psychological theoretical concepts relating to the ageing process, and the assimilation of this knowledge with key stages of development in later life. Draws on theories and concepts surrounding personality development.

**GENPRAC 778** (2 Points)

#### **Biology of Ageing**

The systematic analysis of the physiological changes in ageing and the relationship of these changes to current beliefs and theories around the ageing process. Current issues around biogerontology are discussed.

### **Health Management**

#### **Honours and Master's Courses**

**HLTHMGT 790A** (2 Points)

**HLTHMGT 790B** (2 Points)

#### **Dissertation**

A topic related to health management or organisation and jointly supervised by both faculties.

*To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHMGT 790 A and B*

### **Health Psychology**

#### **Part I**

**HLTHPSYC 102** (2 Points)

#### **Introduction to Health Care Ethics**

Using a succession of cases from health care practice this course enhances practical reasoning skills. Basic techniques of philosophical analysis, theories of ethics and the principles of health care ethics are explained and discussed. Students are given ample opportunity to experiment with these tools in order to develop their analytic prowess.

*Restriction: PSYCHIAT 102*

#### **Honours and Master's Courses**

**HLTHPSYC 714** (2 Points)

#### **Health Psychology**

A review of the psychological factors involved in health and illness. Topics include: the understanding of patient behaviour in medical settings, preventative health behaviour, cognitive models of illness, stress and illness, communication and adherence to treatment, the psychology of physical symptoms and coping with chronic disease.

**HLTHPSYC 715** (2 Points)

#### **Research Methods in Health Psychology**

A review of the principal methods used in the design, conduct and analysis of studies in the health psychology area. This will focus on quantitative

research, but qualitative methodologies will also be addressed.

**HLTHPSYC 716** (2 Points)

#### **Psychoneuroimmunology**

Outlines the nature of the human immune system, its measurement and limitations of current practices and models. The main focus of the course is the extent to which psychological processes such as stress, emotions, and social interactions have been found to influence immune behaviour and the implications of these findings for health and wellbeing. Various theoretical frameworks through which psycho-immune relationships might be understood are presented and discussed.

**HLTHPSYC 742A** (2 Points)

**HLTHPSYC 742B** (2 Points)

#### **Professional Practice in Health Psychology**

Focuses on the professional intervention skills necessary to practice Health Psychology. Topics include: interviewing and assessment skills, formulation of problems, design and evaluation of interventions and models for interdisciplinary and multidisciplinary functioning. Relevant contexts include: hospitals, hospices, consultancies, general practice, etc.

*To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHPSYC 742 A and B*

**HLTHPSYC 743** (2 Points)

#### **Research Topic in Health Psychology I**

This course offers the opportunity for academic staff to provide a specific course of study for one or several students. It is available only by arrangement between the staff member(s) and students.

**HLTHPSYC 744** (2 Points)

#### **Research Topic in Health Psychology II**

This course offers the opportunity for academic staff to provide a specific course of study for one or several students. It is available only by arrangement between the staff member(s) and students.

**HLTHPSYC 745A** (5 Points)

**HLTHPSYC 745B** (5 Points)

#### **Practicum in Health Psychology**

A practical component of supervised applied work of not less than 1500 hours in approved health settings, and other work as required. A detailed written report of the work undertaken will be required of the student.

*To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHPSYC 745 A and B*

**HLTHPSYC 756** (2 Points)

#### **Self-organising Systems in Biology and Health**

The nature of self-organisation in living systems will be addressed. Examines how the principles of self-organisation apply at molecular, cellular and organismal levels and that by exploring these we can better understand what constitutes health and illness.

**HLTHPSYC 757** (2 Points)

#### **Psychosomatic Processes**

Focuses on the psychological, social and biological mechanisms behind illnesses that present with medically unexplained symptoms. Such illnesses

include: chronic fatigue syndrome, chronic pain, irritable bowel syndrome and the somatoform disorders. The diagnostic controversy surrounding these disorders and treatment approaches for these conditions will be addressed.

**HLTHPSYC 796A** (7 Points)  
**HLTHPSYC 796B** (7 Points)

**MSc Thesis in Health Psychology**

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHPSYC 796 A and B

**Health Sciences**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**HLTHSCI 790A** (3 Points)  
**HLTHSCI 790B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHSCI 790 A and B

**HLTHSCI 796A** (7 Points)  
**HLTHSCI 796B** (7 Points)

**Thesis**

To complete this course students must enrol in HLTHSCI 796 A and B

**Human Biology**

**Part I**

BHB courses are intended for students enrolled in the BHB. However, Part I courses are available for other students within the overlapping Year 1 scheme. Students enrolling in the BHB must include the following courses in their first year programme: BIOSCI 106, 107, CHEM 110, PHYSICS 160.

**HUMANBIO 111** (2 Points)  
**Population Health**

Introduction to the principles and uses of epidemiology, which is the major population-based science of public health and health care. Description and analysis of the influence of socio-economic factors on health and health care.

**HUMANBIO 122** (2 Points)  
**Behaviour, Health and Development**

Introduction to the relationship between behaviour and the major biological, cognitive and social-emotional processes, applying them to health and development across the life span. Focuses on aspects of behaviour and development particularly relevant for the health care professional.

**HUMANBIO 142** (2 Points)  
**Biology for Biomedical Science: Organ Systems**

Introduction to human biology with particular emphasis on integrated organ function. The course will deal with: structures and processes associated with the function of the nervous, locomotor, cardiovascular, respiratory, digestive, renal, endocrine and reproduction systems.

**Part II**

**Note:** BHB students must complete 14 points in Part I before enrolling in Part II.

**HUMANBIO 251** (2 Points)  
**Disease Processes and Therapeutic Principles**

Introduction to the description and pathogenesis of general disease processes as a basis for the systematic study of human disease. General principles and mechanisms of drug action and therapeutic intervention in the management of human illness.

**HUMANBIO 252** (2 Points)  
**The Cardiovascular System**

Multidisciplinary approach to the scientific basis of normal and abnormal structure and function of the human cardiovascular system. This is focused around clinically important cardiovascular diseases and includes relevant clinical examination skills. Population and behavioural perspectives of cardiovascular health will also be considered.

**HUMANBIO 253** (2 Points)  
**The Musculoskeletal System**

Integrated study of the human musculoskeletal system with emphasis on the structural and functional aspects that underpin common clinical problems such as: fractures; soft tissue, nerve and joint injuries; hernias; osteo- and rheumatoid-arthritis; and osteoporosis. Practical work links anatomy, radiology, physiology and pathology and includes appropriate clinical skills.

**HUMANBIO 254** (2 Points)  
**The Respiratory System**

Integrated approach to the normal and abnormal structure and function of the airways, lungs and respiratory pump and an introduction to common diseases that affect the human respiratory system.

**HUMANBIO 255** (2 Points)  
**Gastroenterology and Nutrition**

Multidisciplinary study of digestion and absorption of food components, their metabolic roles and actions. Nutritional significance of macro- and micro-nutrients. The structure and function of the gastrointestinal system in health and disease, with relevant clinical examples. Includes fundamental anatomical, biochemical and pathological principles of gastrointestinal structure, digestion and nutrition.

**HUMANBIO 256** (2 Points)  
**The Genitourinary System**

Multidisciplinary approach to the normal and abnormal structure and function of the renal and genital systems, including an overview of important diseases, their therapy, and population and behavioural perspectives. Clinically important examples and relevant clinical examination skills will be taught.

**HUMANBIO 257** (1 Point)  
**Practitioner Development I**

Multidisciplinary approach to personal and professional development. Topics include: ethics, communication skills, personal development, health promotion and consideration of cultural issues, with emphasis on clinical interactions and the development of professional skills for medical practitioners

**HUMANBIO 258** (1 Point)  
**Medical Humanities Electives**

A variety of options from the study of medical humanities.

**Part III**

**Note:** BHB students must complete 14 points in Part II before enrolling in Part III.

**HUMANBIO 351 (1 Point)****Special Senses**

Multidisciplinary approach to scientific basis of normal and abnormal structures and functions of the systems of the head and neck. Emphasis is placed on the major structures and those of particular clinical relevance. Each major component such as cranium, meninges, face and neck, orbit and eye, ear, nose, throat, pharynx, larynx, thyroid and salivary glands, and the cranial nerves are described. Clinically important examples and clinical examination skills will be taught during this course.

**HUMANBIO 352 (2 Points)****Medical Neuroscience**

A coordinated, multidisciplinary approach to the central and peripheral nervous systems. Provides a firm scientific understanding of the structure and function of the nervous system with particular emphasis on clinical problem solving, clinical examination skills and clinically important aspects of the nervous system.

**HUMANBIO 353 (2 Points)****Reproduction, Development and Ageing**

An integrated study of the biology of reproduction, development and ageing. Emphasis is placed on understanding the endocrine regulatory mechanisms of the hypothalamic/pituitary/gonadal axis and the control of oogenesis and spermatogenesis, on the endocrinology and physiology of the menstrual cycle and pregnancy, and on the control of growth, development and ageing from conception through puberty, menopause and beyond. Aspects of metabolic endocrinology are also covered and include glucose and calcium metabolism, and thyroid and adrenal function. Throughout there is a strong emphasis on clinical relevance and clinical sessions are an important component of the course.

**HUMANBIO 354 (1 Point)****Medical Genetics**

The application of genetics and genomics in medicine. Genome structure, transcription and the proteome will be reviewed in the context of technologies that have been developed for their analysis. Clinical examples and leading research will be used to explore the fields of disease gene discovery (including complex genetic disorders), prenatal diagnosis, molecular diagnostics in microbiology and cancer genetics. New therapeutic opportunities, including gene therapy, will be discussed, along with consideration of ethical issues that surround the field of molecular medicine.

**HUMANBIO 355 (2 Points)****Regulation of Body Function**

An integrated treatment of the regulation of human body function and its modification by drugs. Topics include: the regulation of gastrointestinal function; electrolytes and fluid volume; cardiovascular function; respiration; energy balance and body weight; body temperature; and the physiology of

exercise. Clinical problem sessions are an important component of this course. Common illnesses are analysed in detail to demonstrate that knowledge of normal function provides a basis for understanding and managing these disorders.

**HUMANBIO 356 (2 Points)****Blood, Immunity and Infection**

An integrated and multidisciplinary approach to the normal and abnormal function of the haematopoietic and immune systems, and how bacteria and viruses produce infections. Teaching and learning will be based around clinical examples, and will include instruction in relevant examination skills.

**HUMANBIO 357 (1 Point)****Practitioner Development 2**

A continuation of the coordinated multidisciplinary approach to personal and professional development, with an increasing emphasis on the clinical context. Topics include: ethics, communication skills, personal development, health psychology and consideration of cultural issues. Teaching will be focussed around clinical interactions and the development of professional skills.

**HUMANBIO 358 (1 Point)****Part III Option A**

A variety of options, including opportunities for research experience and the study of humanities and medicine, will be offered.

**HUMANBIO 359 (1 Point)****Part III Option B**

A variety of options, including opportunities for research experience and the study of humanities and medicine, will be offered.

**HUMANBIO 360 (1 Point)****Clinical Methods**

An introduction to clinical medicine during which knowledge, attitudes and core procedural skills necessary to work in a clinical environment will be covered. Students will further develop skills in obtaining a history from and examining patients. This course is undertaken in both the medical school and the hospital environments.

**Honours and Master's Courses****HUMANBIO 790A (4 Points)****HUMANBIO 790B (4 Points)****Honours Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in HUMANBIO 790 A and B

**HUMANBIO 99H (1 Point)****Introductory Physical Science**

Provides instruction in elementary concepts in physics and chemistry. Physics topics focus on: mechanics (kinematics, forces, Newton's Laws of motion, equilibrium, circular motion, energy and its conservation, momentum and its conservation, periodic motion), with smaller sections on electricity and wave motion. Chemistry topics include: states of matter, gas laws, atomic structure and bonding, chemical equations, reaction rates and solution chemistry.

Students who have not taken Bursary Chemistry and/or Bursary Physics may be directed to take this course as will other students who do not have a recent academic background in these subjects.

**MBChB**

**Part IV**

- MBChB 401A (7 Points)
- MBChB 401B (7 Points)
- MBChB Part I

The clinical learning process is based on six-week ward clerkships. Ward attachments take place in: medicine, surgery, orthopaedics, psychiatry, pathology, family medicine, anaesthetics/critical care, ophthalmology, radiology, pharmacology, behavioural science and community health. A three-day visit to a Marae for practical instruction on Maori and Pacific health needs, practices and values is compulsory.

To complete this course students must enrol in MBChB 401 A and B

**Part V**

- MBChB 501A (7 points)
- MBChB 501B (7 points)
- MBChB Part II

Students continue the series of ward clerkships and are offered a period of elective study. Topic teaching continues in disciplines introduced in the fourth year. Additional topics covered include: medico-legal aspects of practice, ethics, management of head injuries and malignant diseases, alcoholism, aspects of rehabilitation medicine. Behavioural science, community health and teaching in radiology are also included. Clerkships take place in: obstetrics and gynaecology, surgery, speciality medicine, geriatrics, general practice, emergency medicine and paediatrics.

To complete this course students must enrol in MBChB 501 A and B

- MBChB 551A (7 points)
- MBChB 551B (7 points)
- MBChB Part III

Students will be allocated to either Auckland or Hamilton for this year. The 52-week trainee intern year is divided into four quarters of 12 weeks each and includes four weeks' holiday. One quarter is an 'elective' period when students may undertake optional training in an area of medicine of their choice. The remaining 36 weeks are spent participating under supervision, in the care of sick people in hospitals, community facilities and the home. Students undertake patient care in the disciplines of: medicine, surgery, psychiatry, general practice, paediatrics, and obstetrics and gynaecology.

To complete this course students must enrol in MBChB 551 A and B

**Medicine**

**Diploma Courses**

- MEDICINE 601 (2 Points)
- Principles of Occupational Medicine

Occupational medicine practice, management and industrial relations, and principles of workplace assessment. It also includes: occupational toxicity, rehabilitation, health surveillance, occupational hygiene, risk management, occupational psychological medicine, occupational epidemiology, statistics and research practice in occupational medicine.

- MEDICINE 602 (2 Points)

**Clinical Occupational Medicine I**

Diagnosis and management in occupational medicine. Topics include: noise and vibration, occupational cancers, cardiovascular fitness, environmental health hazards, occupational respiratory diseases, vision in the workplace, and illnesses and injuries from flying and diving.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 601 This course is run in the inter-semester break

- MEDICINE 603 (2 Points)

**Clinical Occupational Medicine II**

Diagnosis and management in occupational medicine. Topics include: noise and vibration, occupational cancers, cardiovascular fitness, environmental health hazards, occupational respiratory diseases, vision in the workplace, and illnesses and injuries from flying and diving.

Prerequisite: MEDICINE 601, 602

- MEDICINE 604A (1 Point)
- MEDICINE 604B (1 Point)

**Project: A Rehabilitation Programme**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Division and workplace management. The student is required to design a rehabilitation programme for the nominated workplace.

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 604 A and B

- MEDICINE 605A (1 Point)
- MEDICINE 605B (1 Point)

**Project: A Health Surveillance System**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Division and workplace management. The student is required to design a health surveillance system for the nominated workplace.

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 605 A and B

- MEDICINE 606A (1 Point)
- MEDICINE 606B (1 Point)

**Project: A Hazard Control System**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Division and workplace management. The student is required to design a hazard control system for the nominated workplace.

To complete this course students must enrol in MEDICINE 606 A and B

- MEDICINE 607A (1 Point)
- MEDICINE 607B (1 Point)

**Project: A Reactive Health Service**

The student will nominate a specific workplace in the area in which they live, approved by the Head of Division and workplace management. The student

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

is required to design a reactive health service for the nominated workplace.

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDICINE 607 A and B*

### Honours and Master's Courses

**MEDICINE 703 (2 Points)**

#### Special Topics in Medicine

Advanced study in a specific area usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

**MEDICINE 704 (2 Points)**

#### Principles and Practice in Old Age Care

Covers the impact of interventions on the everyday lives of older people with physical and neurological disabilities. Emphasis will be given to prognosis, measurement of function and health, treatment guidelines and impact on caregiving. Two areas will be used to illustrate major themes (stroke and neurological rehabilitation, musculoskeletal and orthopaedic rehabilitation).

**MEDICINE 705 (2 Points)**

#### Systems of Service Delivery in Old Age Care

Considers models of care, organisation of health care teams, management and business practice in old age care settings, goal setting and evaluation, and quality control of programmes directed at older people.

**MEDICINE 713 (2 Points)**

#### Cardiovascular Medicine

Cardiovascular anatomy and physiology with a detailed study of the pathophysiology of common cardiovascular conditions and management principles. Areas of study include atherosclerosis, hypertension, coronary artery disease and heart failure.

Restriction: *MEDICINE 701*

### Medical Science

#### Diploma Courses

**MEDSCI 691A (2 Points)**

**MEDSCI 691B (2 Points)**

#### PG Diploma Dissertation (Medical Science)

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDSCI 691 A and B*

### Honours and Master's Courses

**MEDSCI 790A (4 Points)**

**MEDSCI 790B (4 Points)**

#### Dissertation

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDSCI 790 A and B*

**MEDSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**MEDSCI 796B (7 Points)**

#### Thesis

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDSCI 796 A and B*

### Special Topics

**MEDSCI 896A (7 Points)**

**MEDSCI 896B (7 Points)**

#### Thesis

To complete this course students must enrol in *MEDSCI 896 A and B*

### Managed Care

#### Honours and Master's Courses

**MGCARE 701A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 701B (1 Point)**

#### Legislation and Managed Care

The New Zealand legislation that is relevant to managed care and especially that related to health and disability, health and safety in employment, human rights, privacy, unemployment and accident rehabilitation and compensation.

Restriction: *517.601*

To complete this course students must enrol in *MGCARE 701 A and B*

**MGCARE 702A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 702B (1 Point)**

#### Principles of Case Management

Concentrates on models of managed care. Subjects include: personal requirements for health care managers and models of managed care as well as contributory subjects such as team management and leadership techniques, and methods of counselling, mediation and conflict resolution.

Restriction: *517.602*

To complete this course students must enrol in *MGCARE 702 A and B*

**MGCARE 703A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 703B (1 Point)**

#### Assessment and Management of Disability

Concentrates on the assessment and management of disability. Subjects include: the common accidental causes of occupational, recreational, vehicular and domestic morbidity in New Zealand and an introduction to methods of assessing function and managing disability.

Restriction: *517.603*

To complete this course students must enrol in *MGCARE 703 A and B*

**MGCARE 704A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 704B (1 Point)**

#### Rehabilitation Practice

Concentrates on rehabilitation practice as it has, and could, evolve in New Zealand. Subjects include: various approaches to rehabilitation practice and special interest areas such as head injury, spinal cord injury and paid management. Students will be expected to think strategically about the development of high quality rehabilitation services in New Zealand.

Restriction: *517.604*

To complete this course students must enrol in *MGCARE 704 A and B*

**MGCARE 705A (1 Point)**

**MGCARE 705B (1 Point)**

#### Health Systems in New Zealand

Concentrates on the existing health systems in New Zealand. Subjects include: health and safety related legislation in New Zealand, principles of health surveillance, methods of hazard and risk management, principles of toxicology and environmental medicine and ergonomics.

Restriction: *517.605*

To complete this course students must enrol in *MGCARE 705 A and B*

**MGCARE 706A** (2 Points)

**MGCARE 706B** (2 Points)

### Rehabilitation Case Studies

This course is based on two health case studies that involve or should have involved some form of managed care. The student may or may not have been directly involved. Each case report is expected to be appropriately referenced to include the case history – a review of the underlying health problem including aetiology, pathology, clinical features, management and prognosis. The report should also include an assessment of the case management including the identification of strengths and weaknesses, and an outline of ideal management should such a person present again.

*Restriction: 517.606*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MGCARE 706 A and B*

## Molecular Medicine

### Part II

**MOLMED 201** (2 Points)

### Microbiology and Immunology

An introduction to the nature and roles of bacteria, viruses, fungi and parasites as the causative agents of human diseases. Topics include: the defence mechanisms of the body, the immune system including autoimmunity and allergy, control of disease by antimicrobials, sterilisation, disinfection and sterile manufacturing practice.

*Prerequisite: 2 points from BIOSCI 101, BIOSCI 102, BIOSCI 106, BIOSCI 107*

*Restriction: OPTOM 241, PHARMACY 203*

### Honours and Master's Courses

**MOLMED 701** (2 Points)

### Developmental Biology

An examination of contemporary issues in developmental biology, using the haematopoietic and nervous systems as models. Concepts of fate decision, lineage commitment and regulation of these processes will be explored. Experimental approaches used to address questions in developmental biology will be examined.

**MOLMED 707** (2 Points)

### Special Topic in Molecular Medicine

An in-depth analysis of a topic related to that in which the student is undertaking thesis research.

**MOLMED 708** (2 Points)

### Infection, Immunity and Disease

The ways in which host immune mechanisms control infection, infectious organisms evade defence mechanisms, and the consequences of these processes. Examples of human infectious diseases with interesting biology will include: HIV, hepatitis B, influenza, tuberculosis and streptococcal infections. Consideration of the consequences of infection will incorporate discussion of immune self/non-self discrimination, immune tolerance and autoimmune mechanisms, including the impact of response against infections on autoimmunity.

**MOLMED 710** (2 Points)

### Genetic Disease

Examines a range of medical genetic disorders that illustrate principles of disease mechanisms, diagnosis and management. These will include: haemophilia, familial cancer, late-onset neurological disorders and mitochondrial disease.

**MOLMED 711** (2 Points)

### Advanced Medical Microbiology

The dynamic interaction between pathogenic microorganisms and humans will be explored. Examines the molecular mechanisms which enable microbes to survive, proliferate and cause disease; to evolve and acquire new genes; and to control the expression of their genes. Emphasis will be placed on recent advances in the understanding of major human microbial diseases.

**MOLMED 712** (2 Points)

### Advanced Immunology

Recent advances in immunology including: the genes and proteins involved in the innate and adaptive immune response, cell adhesion molecules and their role in regulating cell-cell contact, migration and homing, intracellular signalling mechanisms that determine immune outcomes, and the mechanisms by which the immune system learns 'self' from 'non-self'. Discusses cytokines and chemokines, mechanisms of inflammation and disease, and current immunotherapies.

## Maori and Pacific Health

**MPHEALTH 10H** (2 Points)

### Introduction to Human Biology

An introduction to human biology through a study of the structure and function of mammalian organ systems with special reference to humans.

**MPHEALTH 11H A** (1 Point)

**MPHEALTH 11H B** (1 Point)

### Introduction to Physical Sciences for Health

Covers the basic physico-chemical principles and concepts relevant to an understanding of biological systems.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MPHEALTH 11H A and B*

**MPHEALTH 12H** (2 Points)

### Introduction to Social Sciences in Health

An introduction to the study of individuals, groups and people and the application of such studies in health care.

**MPHEALTH 13H** (2 Points)

### Introduction to Maori Health

Maori models and values for health, current policies for improved Maori health, Maori health priorities and tikanga Maori for improved health services and health outcomes for Maori will be studied.

**MPHEALTH 14H** (2 Points)

### Introduction to Pacific Health

Pacific models and values for health, current policies for improved Pacific health, health factors affecting the health status of Pacific people, health priorities for improved health services and health outcomes for Pacific people will be studied.

**MPHEALTH 15H (2 Points)****Introduction to Chemistry**

Fundamentals of chemistry are explored with a view to enhancing appreciation of the chemical nature of the world around us as well as providing the foundation for further study in chemistry. Special attention is paid to familiarisation with the language of chemistry and the chemist's perspective of the properties of matter and its transformations.

**MPHEALTH 16H (2 Points)****Introduction to Physics**

Covers topics relevant to biological systems: mechanics, optics, waves, radiation and electricity.

**MPHEALTH 17H (2 Points)****Personal and Professional Development**

Additional study, academic and health skills for Maori and Pacific students interested in tertiary studies and careers in the health sector. Topics covered include: basic first aid, maths for chemistry and physics, time management, note taking, speed reading, essay writing, and test/exam preparation.

**Part II****MPHEALTH 20I (2 Points)****Maori and Pacific Health**

The history of Maori and Pacific health development, traditional health modalities, health status and current health policy, public health and personal health practices.

**Honours and Master's Courses****MPHEALTH 710 (2 Points)****Maori Concepts of Health and Mental Illness**

Explores Maori understandings of mental illness within the framework of Maori conceptualisations of health, such as Whare Tapa Wha. Other cultural frameworks of health and mental illness such as DSM IV and the biopsychosocial model of well-being will be examined.

**MPHEALTH 711 (2 Points)****Maori Mental Health Development**

Reviews the social, political, economic and cultural influences on Maori mental health. Policy developments and projects for the promotion of Maori mental health will be assessed within a public health perspective and in relation to Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

**MPHEALTH 712 (2 Points)****Maori Models of Health Practice**

Maori models of assessment, treatment, healing and health. Students will carry out assessments with Maori clients, whanau, and communities to achieve improved treatment, recovery and health outcomes for Maori. Students will recognise the diversity of Maori clients and will be able to work individually and collectively with different Maori groups to achieve the requested outcomes.

**MPHEALTH 713 (2 Points)****Case Studies in Maori Health**

A practicum incorporating different Maori treatment, healing and public health perspectives. Students will become involved in assessing the needs of different Maori clients and whanau in relation to age, gender, diagnosis, whanau support, socioeconomic circumstances and involvement in Maori culture.

**MPHEALTH 714 (2 Points)****Practicum: Non-clinical Placement**

The opportunity to develop social assessment and critical analysis skills through the documentation of an approved practicum. Students will be expected to be able to use and demonstrate knowledge of different Maori views, concepts and frameworks. Each student will have supervision and practicum developed appropriate to their learning interests.

**MPHEALTH 715 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Maori Health**

To be prescribed by Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 716 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Maori Health**

To be prescribed by Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 717 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Maori Health**

To be prescribed by Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 720 (2 Points)****Pacific Islands: Environment, Health and Society**

The historical and contemporary physical and social environments leading to the health situations of Pacificans. This provides the context for identifying and discussing present and future Pacific health issues.

**MPHEALTH 721 (2 Points)****Clinical Practicum in Pacific Health**

This practicum allows clinicians and health professionals to work under supervision within a Pacific-specific clinical service. A course of study relevant to the area of placement will also be prescribed.

*Only students holding current registration as a health professional may enrol in this course*

**MPHEALTH 722 (2 Points)****Non-clinical Practicum in Pacific Health**

Non-clinical supervised experience for students in a Pacific-specific non-clinical service (e.g. interpretation or social service). A course of study relevant to the area of placement will be provided.

**MPHEALTH 723 (2 Points)****Food, Nutrition and Development**

Food security, preparation, utilisation and production among Pacificans and the effects on their socio-economic development in New Zealand and the Pacific. This will provide a platform for policies and strategies for healthy development of Pacificans.

**MPHEALTH 724 (2 Points)****Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 725 (2 Points)****Pacific Health Research Practicum**

Data analysis, development and production of a research paper suitable for publication in a health journal, either from an existing database or a new research project. An oral presentation of the

research, and critique of the research paper will be required.

**MPHEALTH 726 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Pacific Health**

To be prescribed by the Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 727 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Pacific Health**

To be prescribed by the Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 728 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Pacific Health**

To be prescribed by the Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**MPHEALTH 729 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Pacific Health**

To be prescribed by the Head of Division, Maori and Pacific Health.

**Nursing**

**Part I**

**NURSING 101 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Nursing**

An introduction to the nursing profession, nursing practice and the role of nursing in the New Zealand health and disability support services. The theoretical basis for nursing practice and legal and ethical boundaries for practice are introduced. The focus of this course is on the role of the nurse in health maintenance and health promotion.

**NURSING 102 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Professional Nursing Practice**

An introduction to clinical nursing practice, the parameters surrounding nursing practice and the development of clinical and communication skills. Skills in assessment of clients and planning client care are introduced. Students undertake a clinical attachment.

**NURSING 104 (2 Points)**

**Applied Science for Nurses**

Provides an opportunity for the application of specific and selected topics from the biological and physical sciences to be related to beginning nursing practice.

**Part II**

**NURSING 201 (7 Points)**

**Nursing Clients with a Pathophysiological Problem**

A problem-based course where students acquire the skills associated with nursing clients requiring medical and surgical interventions and subsequent rehabilitation. Understanding the mechanisms of disease and prevention of such diseases is the basis for the course. The student is introduced to the principles of pharmacology and pharmacokinetics. Issues such as caring for clients with chronic pain and an understanding of death and grief are included. Practicums and teaching take place in a variety of clinical settings.

**NURSING 202 (7 Points)**

**Nursing Clients with a Disability**

This course allows students to understand perspectives of mental health and illness, the crisis nature of mental illness and the therapeutic models of mental health management. Students acquire the specific nursing skills required to care for people with mental health problems and also those who have a long-term disability. Students undertake a range of clinical attachments in hospital and community settings.

**Part III**

**NURSING 301 (7 Points)**

**Child and Family Health Nursing**

An understanding of concepts related to family women's and child health. The focus is on childbirth as a healthy event in the life of a family, care in the community, together with then nursing care of children suffering illness in a hospital setting. Clinical attachments are in a variety of clinical and community settings.

**NURSING 302 (7 Points)**

**Professional Nursing Practice**

This course allows the student to make the transition from student to professional nurse. A period of practice in an elected area of clinical speciality is included. Issues such as: the development of nursing knowledge, autonomy of practice, accountability for practice, and the legal and ethical parameters of competency as a nurse are emphasised.

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**NURSING 701 (4 Points)**

**Dissertation**

A dissertation on a topic related to the student's area of speciality nursing practice.

**NURSING 702 (4 Points)**

**Speciality Nursing Practice**

This course allows the student to extend their nursing knowledge and skills in a speciality practice area. The student's focus will include recognition of the contextual factors that impact on the practice area and a critique and analysis of their practice.

**NURSING 704 (2 Points)**

**Applied Science for Registered Nurses**

Nurses' knowledge, understanding and application of scientific concepts is extended in order to assist registered nurses to safely plan and deliver care for clients. Students have the opportunity to apply concepts to their own area of practice.

**NURSING 705 (2 Points)**

**Health Assessment**

Nurses' knowledge and skills in performing comprehensive client assessments are extended. The focus is on physical, social and emotional dimensions of assessment, together with family and community assessment.

**NURSING 706 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Pharmacology and Pharmacokinetics**

Drug therapy for advanced nursing practice is introduced through the study of the principles of pharmacology and pharmacokinetics.

- NURSING 707 (2 Points)**  
**Adult Acute Care Nursing**  
 Provides the basis for advanced/specialist nursing practice for nurses who work in complex acute care and emergency settings with adult clients and their families.
- NURSING 708 (2 Points)**  
**Community and Primary Health Care Nursing**  
 Provides the basis for specialist and advanced nursing practice for nurses who work in community and primary health care settings.
- NURSING 709 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Teaching**  
 Explores theoretical and practical approaches to clinical teaching and learning within the health professions.
- NURSING 710 (2 Points)**  
**Special Studies in Nursing**  
 As prescribed by the Director of Academic Programmes in Nursing.
- NURSING 711 (2 Points)**  
**Occupational Health Nursing at an Advanced Level**  
 Specific topics covered include: industrial relations and relevant workplace legislation, principles of rehabilitation and return to work, ergonomics, health surveillance and risk management, occupational hygiene, statistics and research in occupational health, occupational toxicity and psychological health issues.
- NURSING 712 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Occupational Health Nursing I**  
 The focus is on body systems and the effects of occupational diseases. Health and safety issues and environmental health hazards are included, together with specialist subjects such as aviation, diving injuries and occupational cancers.
- NURSING 713 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Occupational Health Nursing II**  
 The focus is on body systems and the effects of occupational diseases. Health and safety issues and environmental health hazards are included, together with specialist subjects such as aviation, diving injuries and occupational cancers. This course builds on and adds to the content of NURSING 712.  
*Prerequisite: NURSING 711 and 712*
- NURSING 714 (2 Points)**  
**Nursing Practicum**  
 The application of advanced nursing knowledge and skills within a clinical setting. The demonstration of expert nursing practice within a specialist clinical area is a requirement of this course.
- NURSING 715 (2 Points)**  
**Long Term Nursing Care**  
 The basis for specialist and advanced nursing practice for nurses who work with clients who have long term health problems.
- NURSING 716 (2 Points)**  
**Child Health Nursing**  
 The development of nursing knowledge specific to professional nursing practice in a child health or paediatric clinical setting.
- NURSING 717 (2 Points)**  
**Special Clinical Nursing Project**  
 The development of nursing knowledge specific to professional nursing practice in a clinical speciality area. This course may only be taken by arrangement with the Assistant Dean, Nursing.
- NURSING 718 (2 Points)**  
**Advancing Nursing Practice**  
 Nurses are assisted to explore the nature, purpose and context of advanced practice nursing, and develop and expand their own practice in order to improve the health outcomes for clients, within a given set of health circumstances.
- NURSING 719 (2 Points)**  
**Specialty Nursing Knowledge and Practice**  
 Allows the student to extend their nursing knowledge and skills in a specialty practice area.
- NURSING 720 (2 Points)**  
**Evidence-based Nursing**  
 A guide to nurses' clinical decision-making and the consideration of the clinical effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of practice, as well as client preference and practitioner expertise.
- NURSING 721 (2 Points)**  
**Nurse Prescribing Practicum**  
 Detailed knowledge of the medicines applicable to the nurse's prescribing scope are developed. Through case studies and practical experience the nurse will have supervision of their knowledge and skills in their identified prescribing scope.  
*Prerequisite: NURSING 722*
- NURSING 722 (2 Points)**  
**Principles of Therapeutics for Advanced Nursing**  
 The principles of therapeutics and mechanisms necessary for prescribing to be safe and effective.  
*Prerequisite: NURSING 706*
- NURSING 723 (2 Points)**  
**Clinical Scholarship**  
 Dominant themes and concepts in contemporary nursing knowledge are explored and applied to the nurse's area of specialist practice.
- NURSING 724 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
- NURSING 725 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**
- NURSING 796A (7 Points)**  
**NURSING 796B (7 Points)**  
**Thesis**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 796 A and B*
- NURSING 797A (7 Points)**  
**NURSING 797B (7 Points)**  
**Research Portfolio**  
 Comprises two to three substantial research projects or essays which form a coherent whole.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in NURSING 797A and B*

**Nutrition**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**NUTRN 700 (2 Points)**

**Nutrition in Health and Disease**

The influence that dietary patterns, foods and food components have on the promotion and protection against the common nutrition-related diseases in New Zealand. The relevant epidemiological, clinical, and biochemical/physiological aspects of each disease are covered.

**NUTRN 701 (2 Points)**

**Nutrition Mechanisms**

The mechanisms by which food and food components can influence disease processes. Topics covered include: the interaction between genotype and nutrition, antioxidants and oxidation protection mechanisms, dietary toxicology; the process of atherosclerosis, and the influence of the intra-uterine environment on growth and disease.

**NUTRN 702 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Nutrition**

Prevention of malnutrition and maintenance of nutritional status during acute and chronic illness through 'artificial' or 'interventional' means. Diagnosis and quantitation of malnutrition, and monitoring of nutrition support therapy. Practical techniques, common complications and quality assurance through a multidisciplinary team approach. Includes treatment of anorexia nervosa and cancer cachexia.

**NUTRN 703 (2 Points)**

**Critical Evaluation Of Nutritional Therapies**

The suggested roles for micronutrients, 'nutriceuticals' and functional foods in general health, exercise performance and disease are evaluated using an evidence-based approach. The roles of micronutrients as dietary supplements and the potential actions of nutriceuticals and functional foods are also critically evaluated. Regulatory and ethical issues in the use of nutritional remedies are considered, including their use as supplements in chemotherapy or other conventional therapies, or in individuals with no symptoms.

**NUTRN 704 (2 Points)**

**Special Studies In Nutrition**

As prescribed by the Head of Discipline, Nutrition. Selected topics in nutrition will provide an advanced course of study in nutrition.

**Obstetrics and Gynaecology**

**Part III**

**OBSTGYN 351 (2 Points)**

**Reproductive Biology**

Aspects of reproductive biology including: regulation of gonadal function, the menstrual and oestrus cycles, ovulation spermatogenesis, feto-maternal physiology including placental function, animal reproduction and assisted reproductive technologies.

*Prerequisite: 405.105 or BIOSCI 107 or HUMANBIO 142 or BIOSCI 203*

**Diploma Courses**

**OBSTGYN 601A (7 Points)**

**OBSTGYN 601B (7 Points)**

**Diploma in Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology**

This course covers: the anatomy, physiology, pathology and management of normal and abnormal pregnancy, labour and puerperium, including the care of the newborn in the first month of life. It will also cover: the physiology and pathology of medical gynaecology, including abnormal menstruation, amenorrhoea, and dysmenorrhoea, endocrine therapy, abortion, infertility, contraception, ectopic and molar pregnancies, vaginal discharge, the diagnostic facets of malignancy, and such minor surgical procedures as may be encountered in a predominantly obstetric practice.

*To complete this course students must enrol in OBSTGYN 601 A and B*

*Contact Division for prospectus including information on Special Topics*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**OBSTGYN 701 (2 Points)**

**Basic Reproductive Endocrinology**

An introduction to reproductive endocrinology including: basic aspects of neuroendocrinology, the neuroendocrine control of gonadal function, the biosynthesis and activity of steroidal hormones, the prostanoids, mechanisms of hormonal action, laboratory methods in molecular endocrinology and hormone immunoassay.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 203 or 350 or 351 or 353*

**OBSTGYN 702 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Reproductive Endocrinology**

A study of: physiological and fertility aspects of the human ovulatory/menstrual cycle, the menopause, andrology, infertility and assisted reproductive technologies, abnormalities of steroid metabolism, steroid pharmacology including hormonal contraception, endocrine aspects of puberty and the endocrinology of pregnancy.

*Prerequisite: OBSTGYN 701*

**OBSTGYN 703 (2 Points)**

**Physiology of Pregnancy I**

An introduction to research in feto-maternal physiology, including: research principles, study design and its relationship to statistics, maternal adaptation to normal pregnancy, endocrinology and physiology of early pregnancy, basic genetics, the biochemistry and biology of prostaglandins, fetal growth, lung morphology and development, and the preparation for extrauterine life by the fetus.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 350 or 351 or 353*

**OBSTGYN 704 (2 Points)**

**Physiology of Pregnancy II**

Further develops subjects explored in Physiology of Pregnancy I. Topics include: maternal adaptation and maladaptation to pregnancy (including pre-eclampsia), new reproductive technologies, common genetic disorders, mechanisms of parturition, growth and maturation of the fetal lung, immunology of pregnancy, preterm birth and its associated

problems, exploration of the human feto-maternal circulation, and physiology of lactation.

*Prerequisite: OBSTGYN 703*

**OBSTGYN 705** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Obstetrics and Gynaecology**

Advanced study of specific aspects of obstetrics, gynaecology, or reproductive science, usually related to the field of study of the thesis research.

**OBSTGYN 706** (2 Points)

**Molecular Biology of Reproduction**

Focuses on understanding normal reproductive events, such as sex determination and sexual development, menstruation, ovulation, spermatogenesis, conception, contraception, pregnancy and menopause and how they are coordinated and regulated at a molecular level.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 or 202 or 203 or 204 or 351 or 353 or 356*

**OBSTGYN 707** (2 Points)

**Molecular Biology of Reproductive Disorders**

A range of disorders of reproduction, including gynaecological cancer, will be examined, focusing on molecular and genetic aspects and how they translate to become a clinical disorder. Attention will be given to the recent advances in understanding disease at a molecular level.

*Prerequisite: OBSTGYN 706*

**Paediatrics**

**Diploma Courses**

**PAEDS 601A** (7 Points)

**PAEDS 601B** (7 Points)

**Diploma in Paediatrics**

This course covers: genetic and antenatal factors in development, neonatal paediatrics, assessment of a child's physical, intellectual, emotional and social needs, epidemiology of childhood disease, cultural factors and child health, general and preventative paediatrics, management of common disorders of childhood, and the practical working of the statutory and voluntary services available in New Zealand for the care of children.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PAEDS 601 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PAEDS 704** (2 Points)

**Special Topics in Paediatrics**

Advanced study in a specific area, usually related to the field of study of the thesis.

**PAEDS 711A** (1 Point)

**PAEDS 711B** (1 Point)

**Paediatrics and Child Health**

Common paediatric problems (including iron deficiency anaemia, allergy, eczema, urinary tract infection) and well childcare (nutrition, growth and development, breastfeeding, immunisation) are explored in detail.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PAEDS 711 A and B*

**PAEDS 712** (2 Points)

**Youth Health I**

Discusses the biological, psychological and social aspects of normal adolescent growth and development as a framework for understanding adolescent health problems. Addresses issues such as adolescent sexuality and youth suicide.

**PAEDS 713** (2 Points)

**Respiratory Disease in Childhood**

Asthma is the most common chronic disease in childhood affecting almost one in four children. Death and morbidity from pneumonia in New Zealand is higher than many other developed countries. This course discusses the major respiratory diseases in childhood.

**PAEDS 714** (2 Points)

**Emergency Paediatrics**

Combines theoretical knowledge with clinical practice. Medical practitioners will learn to how to manage the major paediatric medical and surgical emergencies until transfer.

**PAEDS 715** (2 Points)

**Childhood Communicable Diseases**

Discusses the major infectious diseases in childhood and their prevention. Addresses the concern that despite antibiotics and immunisations infectious diseases continue as a major health problem in New Zealand.

**PAEDS 716** (2 Points)

**Behavioural Paediatrics**

Concentrates on the diagnosis, aetiology and management of common behavioural problems and the recognition of serious mental illness in childhood.

**PAEDS 717** (2 Points)

**Child Protection and Injury**

Examines the complex problem of child abuse and injury. The nature and prevalence of various types of child abuse are examined. Road traffic injuries, poisoning and drowning each affect different age groups. These conditions will be discussed with special emphasis on the child's developmental age. Prevention strategies are explored and evaluated.

**PAEDS 718** (2 Points)

**Paediatric Disability and Chronic Diseases**

Disability is common and with the shift from residential to community care, health professionals need skills in addressing their special needs. This course addresses the causes and problems faced by children with disability and chronic diseases. The biological and social factors are also discussed.

**PAEDS 719** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Paediatrics.

**Pathology**

**Part II**

**PATHOL 251** (2 Points)

**Mechanisms of Disease**

Pathogenesis of various types of disease at the molecular, cellular and tissue levels. Provides an introduction to: cell injury, inflammation, healing,

neoplasia and circulatory disturbances, and includes the pathogenesis of selected specific diseases which are common in New Zealand or are the focus of current biomedical research.

*Prerequisite:* 405.105 or BIOSCI 107 or HUMANBIO 142

### Part III

#### **PATHOL 301 (2 Points)** **Organ and Systems Pathology**

An introduction to organ and systematic pathology, with detailed study of the nature of selected diseases of the cardiovascular, respiratory, renal, endocrine, musculoskeletal and nervous systems which are common in the Western world.

*Prerequisite:* PATHOL 251

#### **PATHOL 302 (2 Points)** **Cancer Biology I**

A study of the scientific basis of cancer including: mechanisms underlying the pathogenesis of cancer, carcinogenesis, DNA damage and repair, properties of cancer cells (including abnormalities of growth and cell cycle control), the growth of tumours, the classification and histopathology of cancers, and an introduction to therapeutic strategies.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 356 or PATHOL 251

*Restriction:* PATHOL 705

#### **PATHOL 303 (2 Points)** **Environmental Factors in Disease**

Study of the pathogenesis of selected common diseases in which the precipitating or contributing causes are changes in the environment of the organism or its cells and tissues. Aetiological factors considered will include: air pollution, radiation, thermal, acoustic and electrical injury, drug abuse, decompression sickness, and malnutrition.

*Prerequisite:* PATHOL 251

### **Honours and Master's Courses**

#### **PATHOL 703 (2 Points)** **Special Topics in Pathology**

An examination of a selection of topics in pathology that are of current research interest.

#### **PATHOL 704 (2 Points)** **Principles of Cancer Therapy**

The course examines: the molecular and cellular processes underlying cancer treatment and the development of tumour-selective therapy; the principles of radiotherapy and chemotherapy; DNA and the basis for its interactions with anticancer drugs; recognition of DNA by proteins; exploitation of these processes by anticancer drugs, oncogenes and other regulatory gene products; signal transduction mechanisms and strategies for changing cell cycle control; cytokines and the role of host responses in cancer therapy; new approaches to cancer therapy including gene therapy and photodynamic therapy.

*Prerequisite:* 560.701 or PATHOL 705

*Restriction:* 560.702

#### **PATHOL 705 (2 Points)** **Cancer Biology II**

Advanced studies of concepts related to the biology of cancer. These will include: molecular mechanisms, cytokines, the micro-environment of

tumours, tumour angiogenesis and blood flow, and the spread of tumours.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 350 or 351 or 353 or 354 or 356 or PATHOL 251

*Restriction:* 560.701

### **Pharmacy**

#### **Part I**

#### **PHARMACY 101 (2 Points)** **Pharmacy Practice I**

The role of medicines in society (including complementary and alternative medicines), the legal definition of a medicine and the regulatory requirements for licensing, sale and supply. The evolution and role of the pharmacist as a health care professional, pharmacy organisations and sources of pharmaceutical information and professional communication.

#### **Part II**

#### **PHARMACY 201 (2 Points)** **Pharmacy Practice II**

The processes of drug therapy, pharmaceutical formulations and the concept of pharmaceutical care. The course covers: dispensing of prescriptions, pharmaceutical calculations, and preparation of extemporaneous medicines in common use. Development of the knowledge, skills and attitudes required for communicating with other health professionals and patients on the effective use of medicines.

#### **PHARMACY 202 (2 Points)** **Pharmaceutics I**

The physical and chemical properties of materials used in the design of medicinal dosage forms. The application of these principles in the formulation and evolution of medicines is considered.

#### **Part III**

#### **PHARMACY 301 (2 Points)** **Pharmacy Practice III**

Systematic methods for the identification of medication problems, patient needs and risk assessment and pharmaceutical care planning; including interviewing, counselling and problem-solving skills. Effective pharmaceutical information management, including record systems, search strategies, evaluation methods and reporting (written and verbal). Application in the sale and supply of both prescription and over the counter medicines (OTC) is demonstrated in a simulated general practice pharmacy and on practice placements.

#### **PHARMACY 302A (2 Points)** **PHARMACY 302B (2 Points)**

#### **Pharmacotherapy**

Mechanisms of action and therapeutic use of drugs with reference to the following systems and disorders: cardiovascular system disorders and risk management, respiratory system, endocrine system, central nervous system and mental health, gastrointestinal and hepatic disorders, common bacterial, viral and fungal infections, skin disorders,

rheumatic disorders, haematopoietic and malignant disorders and pain control.

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMACY 302 A and B

**PHARMACY 303** (2 Points)  
**Pharmaceutics II**

The course covers: formulation, manufacture, quality control and assurance of sterile and non-sterile products, including: preformulation studies, tablet processing, semi-solid formulation, processing of injectables, environmental monitoring, the role of good manufacturing practice and the role of the qualified person.

**Part IV**

**PHARMACY 401** (4 Points)  
**Applied Pharmacotherapy/Pharmaceutical Care**

Through practice placements and case study work in a variety of practice settings, pharmacotherapeutic and pharmaceutical care principles are applied to: cardiovascular disease, asthma, diabetes, mental health (and drug abuse), cancer care, infections and other conditions and special populations. The role of the pharmacist as a prescribing adviser and provider of primary health care advice and promotion is explored.

**PHARMACY 402** (2 Points)  
**Pharmaceutical Management**

The applications of general management and specific pharmaceutical management systems for the safe and effective use of medicines in society are considered. Particular reference is made to: quality standards and accreditation programmes for pharmacy, the principles and application of pharmacoeconomics and drug use evaluation in pharmaceutical management, and special pharmaceutical services e.g. aseptically prepared and sterile products, needle exchange and addiction programmes, residential care services.

**PHARMACY 403** (2 Points)  
**Legal and Ethical Issues in Pharmacy**

Aspects of professionalism and professional development in pharmacy. The Medicines Act, Pharmacy Act, Code of Ethics and their application are considered, together with relevant regulatory and legislative requirements and policies. Current and future models and methods for funding, reimbursement and access to prescribed medicines and pharmaceutical services are described and explored.

**PHARMACY 404** (2 Points)  
**Pharmaceutics III**

The course examines a range of specialised drug delivery systems in current clinical practice and research together with pharmaceutical factors in the production and use of biotechnological medicines.

**PHARMACY 405** (4 Points)  
**Research Dissertation**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PHARMACY 700** (2 Points)  
**Critical Evaluation of Complementary Medicinal Products**

A critical review of the evidence in the biomedical literature and other sources concerning a range of complementary medicinal products including herbals, homeopaths and ethnopharmaceuticals. Includes consideration of efficacy, safety and interactions with conventional medicines.

**PHARMACY 710** (2 Points)  
**Clinical Pharmacy Skills**

Enhances basic knowledge and skills for effective pharmaceutical practice. Includes oral and written communication skills, efficient utilisation of reference sources, critical evaluation of drug literature, review of patient medication, individualisation of drug therapy, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans.

**PHARMACY 711** (2 Points)  
**Pharmacy Practicum**

Within a pharmacy practice setting the student will further develop and apply key pharmaceutical knowledge and skill in the rational and effective use of medicines. This will include: the review of prescribed medicines, the provision of drug information, the recommendation of appropriate drug therapy, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans.

**PHARMACY 720** (2 Points)  
**Issues in Concordance**

Factors influencing the prescribing and recommendation of drug therapy and those which influence patients in their use of medicines. Addresses the issue of an ethical framework for prescribing and strategies to promote effective use of medicines by patients.

**PHARMACY 730** (2 Points)  
**Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of cardiovascular disease. The critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with cardiovascular disease.

**PHARMACY 731** (2 Points)  
**Respiratory Pharmacotherapy**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of respiratory disease. The critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with respiratory disease.

**PHARMACY 732** (2 Points)  
**Endocrine Pharmacotherapy**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of endocrine disorders and in regard to reproduction. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with endocrine disorders.

**PHARMACY 733** (2 Points)  
**GIT/Rheumatology Pharmacotherapy**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of gastrointestinal disease and rheumatic disorders. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with gastrointestinal disease and rheumatic disorders.

**PHARMACY 734 (2 Points)**

**Pharmacotherapy of Infections**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy and vaccination in the management of infectious diseases. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with infectious diseases.

**PHARMACY 735 (2 Points)**

**Pharmacotherapy in Psychiatry**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of psychiatric disorders. Critical review of the relevant literature, the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans, and address the role of drug therapy in the overall management of psychiatric disorders.

**PHARMACY 736 (2 Points)**

**Pharmacotherapy in Dermatology**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of preparations and drug therapy in the management of dermatological conditions. Critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for patients with dermatological conditions.

**PHARMACY 737 (2 Points)**

**Pharmacotherapy in Oncology**

The application of pharmaceutical and pharmacological knowledge to the selection and use of drug therapy in the management of cancer and the care of the terminally ill patient. Critical review of the relevant literature, the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for cancer and terminally ill patients, and address the role of drug therapy in the treatment of neoplastic disease.

**PHARMACY 740 (2 Points)**

**Evidence-based OTC Prescribing**

Examines the evidence base for the use of OTC medicines in the management of minor disease states. Includes a critical review of the relevant literature and addresses the issues of advice and recommendations when responding to patient symptoms.

**PHARMACY 741 (2 Points)**

**Pharmacotherapy in the Elderly**

Examines patient factors that influence drug use in elderly patients. Addresses the issues of dosage modifications, polypharmacy and medicine management in elderly patients, and includes a critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for elderly patients.

**PHARMACY 742 (2 Points)**

**Paediatric Pharmacotherapy**

Examines patient factors that influence drug use in the new born through to adolescence. Addresses the issues of dosage modifications, appropriate drug formulations and the use of unlicensed medicine in paediatric patients. and includes a critical review of the relevant literature, and the design and implementation of pharmaceutical care plans for paediatric patients.

**PHARMACY 743 (2 Points)**

**Nutrition for Pharmacists**

Examines nutritional requirements in pregnancy and lactation, in infants and the elderly and in relation to specific disease states. Includes a critical review of the relevant literature and the determination of patient requirements in respect of parenteral feeding.

**PHARMACY 792 (6 Points)**

**Dissertation**

**PHARMACY 796 (14 Points)**

**Thesis**

**Pharmacology**

**Part II**

**PHARMCOL 201 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Pharmacology**

An introduction to the principles of pharmacology with particular reference to humans. Topics include: the fate of drugs within the body, pharmacodynamics (including receptor structure and function), drug development (including clinical trial design), pharmacoeconomics and poisoning.

**Part III**

**PHARMCOL 301 (2 Points)**

**Principles of Pharmacology**

Topics covered are: passage of drugs across membranes; drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, excretion and elimination; pharmacokinetics; pharmacogenetics; mechanism of drug action; drug development and analysis; and novel drug delivery.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or PHYSIOL 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 302 (2 Points)**

**Molecular Pharmacology**

Considers the modification by drugs of human peripheral physiological and pathological functions. The cellular and molecular mechanisms of drugs at receptors, ion channels, enzymes and intermediate messengers are covered. The modification by drugs of peripheral neurotransmission and the actions of local hormones are reviewed.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or PHYSIOL 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 303 (2 Points)**

**Applied Pharmacology and Chemotherapy**

Applied pharmacology relates the principles of pharmacology to the development and therapeutic use of drugs. Emphasis is placed on the application

of pharmacology to human therapeutics and chemotherapy of infection and cancer.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or PHYSIOL 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 304 (2 Points)**

**Systematic Pharmacology**

Considers the modification by drugs of human systems under physiological and pathological conditions. Systems that will be considered include the cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, reproductive and respiratory. The cellular and molecular mechanisms of the drugs are considered.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or PHYSIOL 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 305 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Toxicology**

This introductory course considers the basic principles and concepts in toxicology. It addresses: biochemical pathways and targets in the toxicity of chemicals, the observed effects, e.g. cell death, cancer and hypersensitivity, as well as the basis for cell- and organ-selective toxicity. Drugs, occupational and environmental toxicants are discussed.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or PHYSIOL 220 or BIOSCI 203*

**PHARMCOL 306 (2 Points)**

**Neuropharmacology**

An introduction to the principles and concepts involved in neuropharmacology. The course covers: the anatomy, neurochemistry and pharmacology of the normal and diseased human brain; the biochemical causes of psychiatric and Neurological diseases; and the types and mechanisms of action of drugs used to treat brain disorders.

*Prerequisite: PHARMCOL 201 and PHYSIOL 210 or PHYSIOL 220 or BIOSCI 203*

---

**Diploma Courses**

**PHARMCOL 690A (2 Points)**

**PHARMCOL 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Pharmacology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 690 A and B*

**PHARMCOL 691A (2 Points)**

**PHARMCOL 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Pharmacology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 691 A and B*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PHARMCOL 710 (2 Points)**

**Special Topics**

The study of selected fields of pharmacology at advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. Possible topics include: anaesthetics, pain management, oncology, clinical pharmacology, toxicology, cardiovascular pharmacology and reproductive pharmacology.

*Prerequisite: Divisional consent required*

**PHARMCOL 711 (2 Points)**

**Toxicology**

An evaluation of types of toxic effects. The course

covers: mechanisms of toxicity, including delayed, environmental, food and clinical toxicity.

**PHARMCOL 712 (2 Points)**

**Drug Disposition and Action**

Advanced study of: the absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of drugs; cellular and molecular sites and mechanisms of drug action; and analysis of these processes. Also included are in vivo/in vitro techniques in drug disposition studies and drug analysis in biological matrices.

**PHARMCOL 713 (2 Points)**

**Molecular Neuropharmacology**

Topics to be covered include: the molecular basis of chemical neurotransmission; the molecular basis of brain diseases such as Alzheimer's, epilepsy, stroke, schizophrenia etc.; and the molecular mechanisms of action of CNS drugs.

**PHARMCOL 714 (2 Points)**

**Cardiovascular Pharmacology**

A study of the mechanism of action of drugs on the cardiovascular system. Drugs used to treat hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, angina pectoris and heart failure; and the drugs affecting blood coagulation.

**PHARMCOL 715 (2 Points)**

**Pharmacology of Anaesthetics and Analgesics**

General aspects of anaesthetics and analgesics.

**PHARMCOL 716 (2 Points)**

**Pharmacometrics**

An introduction to the application of mathematical models used in the interpretation of pharmacological observations. Computer-based analysis methods are investigated using individual and population-oriented approaches.

**PHARMCOL 717 (2 Points)**

**Biochemical Endocrinology**

An introduction to nomenclature, biosynthesis, metabolism and mechanisms of action of protein, steroid and other lipid hormones. Also covers interactions with receptors and intracellular signalling.

**PHARMCOL 719 (2 Points)**

**Biomedical Research Techniques**

An introduction to a broad base of research techniques ranging from tissue culture through microscopy to gene expression and cloning. Emphasis is placed on practicalities.

**PHARMCOL 721 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Toxicology**

The course covers: major classes of toxic chemicals, testing and monitoring of potentially toxic agents, and assessment of toxic risk.

**PHARMCOL 722 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Pharmacology**

The disposition and action of drugs in the elderly, young and in pregnancy will be considered, as well as therapeutic drug monitoring, pharmacoeconomics, adverse drug reactions, ethnic differences in PKs and PDs, evaluation of clinical trials and population kinetics. Emphasis is placed on the use of medicines in humans.

**PHARMCOL 723 (2 Points)****Advanced Molecular Neuropharmacology**

An advanced course focusing on topics relevant to students pursuing research in molecular neuropharmacology, including neuronal signalling cascades involved in neurotoxicity and neuroplasticity.

**PHARMCOL 724 (2 Points)****Special Topics in Cardiovascular Pharmacology**

Advanced studies of topics in cardiovascular pharmacology relevant to students wishing to undertake research in this area.

**PHARMCOL 725 (2 Points)****Special Topics in Anaesthetics and Analgesics**

The focus is on special topics in anaesthetics and analgesics relevant to students wishing to undertake research in this field.

**PHARMCOL 726 (2 Points)****Advanced Pharmacometrics**

An examination of various classes of models in detail. Typical classes of model include: delayed drug effects, tolerance, physiological-pharmacokinetic, pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic, agonist/antagonist and time-variant models.

**PHARMCOL 727 (2 Points)****Topics in Reproduction**

Major physiological processes in reproduction and important associated pathologies. An integrated approach will be applied, describing the underlying biochemical/molecular basis and the physiological symptoms and outcomes.

**PHARMCOL 728 (2 Points)****Cancer Pharmacology**

The pharmacological basis of the action of anti-tumour drugs relevant to human cancer therapy, emphasising the variability of chemotherapy effects, interactions between anti-cancer agents and early phase clinical trials.

**PHARMCOL 729 (2 Points)****Pharmacoeconomics and Clinical Economics**

An introduction to methods and application of economic evaluation to clinical decision making and purchasing. These methods will enable identification of sources of economic information, evaluation and development of economic arguments, use of simple economic decision analytic tools, presentation cogent clinicoeconomic arguments, and advise on clinical and purchasing decisions on resource allocation.

**PHARMCOL 789 (4 Points)****PHARMCOL 789A (2 Points)****PHARMCOL 789B (2 Points)****BSc(Hons) Dissertation**

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 789 A and B, or PHARMCOL 789

**PHARMCOL 796A (7 Points)****PHARMCOL 796B (7 Points)****MSc Thesis in Pharmacology**

To complete this course students must enrol in PHARMCOL 796 A and B

**Public Health Social Science****Honours and Master's Courses****PHSOCSCI 700 (2 Points)****Planning for Programme Evaluation**

Evaluation theory, strategic evaluation, measurability and evaluation, using evaluation resources efficiently over a project life cycle, evaluating community programmes, Treaty issues and evaluation, evaluation and culture, evaluation standards, ethics, politics and evaluation, risk management, evaluation objectives and programme logic, managing stakeholders, dissemination and evaluation contracting. Students will plan an evaluation of their choice.

**PHSOCSCI 701 (2 Points)****Methods for Programme Evaluation**

Advanced concepts and methods in evaluation. Evaluation theory, philosophy of science issues in evaluation, issues in measurability, selection of evaluation methods, quantitative and qualitative evaluation methods, detailing and designing evaluation methods, reporting and interpretation of evaluation findings. Students will work on an evaluation project of their choice.

*Prerequisite: PHSOCSCI 700*

**Physiology****Part II****PHYSIOL 210 (2 Points)****Human Physiology: The Survival Machine**

An integrative approach is used to study fundamental physiological processes which enable the body to overcome the challenge of life. Drawing on examples of normal and abnormal function, the course examines the interaction of vital physiological processes, from cellular control mechanisms to multiple organ systems. Topics include: energy utilisation, control of fluid and electrolytes, delivery of oxygen and metabolites. The cardiovascular system will receive special attention as an example of a highly integrated physiological system which accurately meets a wide range of challenges in day to day survival.

*Prerequisite: 4 points from 405.105, BIOSCI 107, HUMANBIO 142*

*Restriction: 570.202*

**PHYSIOL 220 (2 Points)****Human Physiology: The Neural Machine**

The impact of the neuroscience revolution on our understanding of human physiology. Topics include: mechanisms of neurotransmission, learning, memory and sensory perception (vision, hearing, touch and smell). Special emphasis is placed on the integration and control of physiological function by the nervous system. Examples include: control of movement and coordination, regulation of reproduction, blood pressure, breathing, digestion and body weight. Developmental neuroscience is also considered. Laboratory exercises will provide insight into neural function.

*Prerequisite: 4 points from 405.105, BIOSCI 107, HUMANBIO 142*

*Restriction: 570.201*

**Part III****PHYSIOL 301 (2 Points)****Molecular Physiology**

Considers the molecular basis of the physiology of cellular homeostasis and signalling, and the implementation of advanced techniques in molecular neurobiology and neuroscience associated with understanding the physiological significance of ion channels, gap-junctions, membrane transporters and second-messenger coupled receptor pathways. Emphasis is placed on functional studies (such as applications in neurotransmission, hearing, vision and weight control), which combine molecular biological and electrophysiological techniques. The analysis extends to the use of recombinant DNA technology and physiological imaging to study protein trafficking and regulation of gene expression, including gene therapy applications. The laboratory exercises focus on using current techniques for analysis of gene expression and gene cloning, including the polymerase chain reaction (PCR).

*Prerequisite:* 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220, and 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210

**PHYSIOL 302 (2 Points)****Biophysics of Nerve and Muscle**

An advanced treatment of the physiology of excitable cells. Topics include: the biophysical basis of membrane potential, the spread of electrical activation and synaptic transmission, structure, excitation, mechanics and energetics of muscle and functional differences among muscle types. The approach is quantitative with particular emphasis on current advances in the field.

*Prerequisite:* 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220, and 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210

**PHYSIOL 303 (2 Points)****Physiology of the Brain**

The role of the central nervous system and the general pattern of its structure and functional organisation. The processing of sensory information, motor outputs and their control, the integrative functions of the central nervous system and techniques used to study brain structure and function are covered at an advanced level.

*Prerequisite:* 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220, and 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210

**PHYSIOL 304 (2 Points)****Cardiovascular Biology**

An advanced treatment of the human cardiovascular system that provides an integrated framework for understanding the structure, function and regulation of the heart and circulation, and their modification by drugs. Topics include: the energetics and mechanics of the heart, the regulation of heart rhythm and the control of blood pressure and the regulation of flow through the microcirculation. The course is illustrated using examples drawn from current research in the field and from representative disease states.

*Prerequisite:* 570.202 or PHYSIOL 210

**PHYSIOL 305 (2 Points)****The Biology of Fetal and Postnatal Growth**

Normal growth and metabolism is of paramount

importance to survival and normal development. This course studies the biochemistry and physiology of prenatal and postnatal mammalian development and growth with particular emphasis on the role of endocrine regulation and environmental influences. The topics include: development, growth and function of organs and tissues from implantation until adulthood.

*Prerequisite:* BIOSCI 203, PHYSIOL 210

*Restriction:* PAEDS 301

**Diploma Courses****PHYSIOL 690A (2 Points)****PHYSIOL 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Physiology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSIOL 690 A and B*

**PHYSIOL 691A (2 Points)****PHYSIOL 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Physiology)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSIOL 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****PHYSIOL 701 (2 Points)****Experimental Design**

Principles of experimental design and data analysis in physiological research. Topics include: analysis of variance, post-hoc multiple comparisons, non-linear and multiple linear regression, analysis of covariance and statistical power. The approach is practical and computer statistical packages are used.

**PHYSIOL 702 (2 Points)****Measurement in Biomedical Science**

Principles of instrumentation and digital signal processing used in biomedical research. Topics covered include: signals and systems analysis, instrumentation systems, computers and data acquisition, frequency and time-domain analysis of digital signals, and digital filters. The approach is practical and computer digital signal processing packages are used.

**PHYSIOL 703 (2 Points)****Neurophysiology**

Recent advances in neurophysiology. Topics include: cellular and molecular mechanisms of neural function, in normal and diseased brains, particularly the role of excitatory amino acids in neuro degenerative disorders (e.g. motoneurone disease, stroke, epilepsy etc.). Emphasis is placed on critical analysis of current research.

**PHYSIOL 704 (2 Points)****Sensory Physiology**

An examination of peripheral and central processes associated with somato-sensory function. Topics covered range from cellular mechanisms which underlie transduction to the processing and integration of sensory information and its relevance to effector mechanisms. Emphasis is placed on critical analysis of current research.

**PHYSIOL 705 (2 Points)****Contractile Function**

Recent advances in understanding of the structure, excitation, activation, mechanics, energetics and thermodynamics of contractile tissue. The course centres on rigorous assessment of current research in the field with particular emphasis on critical analysis of the methodologies involved.

**PHYSIOL 706 (2 Points)**

**Physiology of Rest and Exercise**

Recent advances in understanding of human physiological responses and adaptations to physical activity, including maximal exertion, occasional and habitual exercise, exercise under special conditions (heat, cold stress, alterations in oxygen supply), and the effects of prolonged inactivity.

*Restriction: SPORTSCI 706*

**PHYSIOL 707 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Current Physiology Research**

An in-depth examination of the literature relating to specified topics in current physiology research. This course involves directed reading of research publications with emphasis placed on critical analysis of the development of key concepts and techniques.

**PHYSIOL 708 (2 Points)**

**Current Research in Fetal and Postnatal Growth Biology**

The fetal environment has long-term consequences for the developing phenotype. This advanced course offers topics that cover a wide range of related research themes including: placental development, fetal physiology, fetal origins of adult disease, and postnatal growth and development. Research topics include endocrine regulation and metabolic function during fetal and postnatal life.

*Restriction: PAEDS 701, 702, 703*

**PHYSIOL 789 (4 Points)**

**BSc(Hons) Dissertation**

**PHYSIOL 796A (7 Points)**

**PHYSIOL 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Physiology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSIOL 796 A and B*

---

**Psychiatry**

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PSYCHIAT 713A (2 Points)**

**PSYCHIAT 713B (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Mental Health**

This course offers the opportunity for academic staff to provide a specific course of study for one or several students. It is available only by arrangement between the staff member(s) and students.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 713 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 718 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Academic Psychiatry I**

Descriptive psychopathology and the characteristics of the major mental disorders. The assessment, diagnosis, and measurement of symptom severity in psychiatry focusing on clinically relevant symptoms and signs.

*Restriction: 575.701*

**PSYCHIAT 720 (2 Points)**

**Liaison Psychiatry**

Liaison psychiatry is the practice of psychiatry in general hospitals and deals with people who have a mixture of physical and psychological/psychiatric problems. This course provides students with a knowledge of the academic and theoretical basis of the practice of liaison psychiatry and includes deliberate self-harm, somatisation, coping with illness, depression in the physically ill, and delirium. A major part of the course will be the principles of psychological intervention in this group of patients.

**PSYCHIAT 723 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Neuroscience**

An overview of the anatomy, development, pharmacology and physiology of the brain. A major emphasis is the interaction of drugs with the brain and how this leads to concepts of brain functioning at a molecular level.

*Restriction: 575.702*

**PSYCHIAT 724 (2 Points)**

**Neurobiology of Psychiatric Disorders**

This course deals with current concepts as to what is known about the biology of psychiatric disorders and those neurological diseases which have a psychiatric component. The molecular actions of the drugs used for psychiatric illnesses will be described. What the actions of these drugs can and cannot tell us about the nature of the diseases will be discussed.

*Restriction: 575.702*

**PSYCHIAT 731 (2 Points)**

**Evidence-based Mental Health Care I**

This course is intended for students who will work within the health care system and provides an introduction to the evidence-based mental health care perspective. Students will learn how to (i) frame relevant and answerable questions, (ii) search the literature, (iii) critically appraise the literature, and (iv) apply the results to the mental health context. Emphasis will be placed on questions related to diagnosis, prognosis, aetiology and treatment effectiveness.

*Restriction: 575.709 and BEHAVSCI 758*

**PSYCHIAT 732 (2 Points)**

**Evidence-based Mental Health Care II**

Introduces students to the conduct of clinical research in mental health care settings. Students will be taught how to design and conduct research studies about diagnosis, prognosis, aetiology and treatment effectiveness. The aim of the project is to produce a research protocol suitable for funding.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 731*

*Restriction: 575.709*

**PSYCHIAT 733 (2 Points)**

**Psychosocial Aspects of Ageing**

Explores gerontological issues which affect the health and wellbeing of older people. Ageing is approached from a psychosocial and developmental perspective. Intergenerational, family and caregiving issues are discussed during the course, together with exploration of the important life changes that occur with ageing such as loss, loneliness and bereavement.

**PSYCHIAT 734 (2 Points)****Old Age Psychiatry**

The study of mental disorders in late life from a mental health and psychiatry perspective. This will include: epidemiology, aetiology, phenomenology, and treatment of major disorders and their complications from a biopsychosocial perspective.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 733*

*Restriction: 575.712*

**PSYCHIAT 740A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 740B (1 Point)****Child and Adolescent Psychopathology**

Includes teaching on conceptualisation of mental disorder in children and adolescents, specifically considering the benefits and pitfalls of an illness model. The major focus will be a biopsychosocial and developmental perspective and there will be specific teaching focusing on the DSM IV classification in child and adolescent psychiatry.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 740 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 741 (2 Points)****Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Theory**

Covers the range of treatment modalities used in child and adolescent mental health. Rationale and nature of current therapies will be covered. Students will undertake critical appraisal of the evidence base for therapy pertinent to specific clinical situations.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 740*

**PSYCHIAT 742 (2 Points)****Therapy in Child and Adolescent Mental Health – Practice**

Includes the practical application of major therapies required in clinical practice. Students will see children and adolescents and their families in a clinical setting and under supervision. Students will be required to complete a logbook of specific cases and write up two of these cases with a clinical appraisal of the relevant literature and evaluation of therapies.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 741*

**PSYCHIAT 745 (2 Points)****Suicide Studies**

Epidemiology and possible causes of suicide and deliberate self-harm (attempted suicide). Evaluation of suicide risk and self-harm in individuals. The consequences of suicide at an individual and systemic level.

**PSYCHIAT 746 (2 Points)****Research Topic in Forensic Psychiatry**

A detailed research study of key issues in forensic psychiatry.

**PSYCHIAT 747A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 747B (1 Point)****Child and Adolescent Development**

Evaluation of research support for major conceptual and theoretical frameworks for understanding development will be addressed. There will be a focus on specific aspects of development in relation to mental health in childhood and adolescence. These will include: theories of attachment, cognitive development, and social and emotional development

in the context of the family; and identity and self-concept issues in adolescence.

*Restriction: 575.620*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 747 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 748A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 748B (1 Point)****Child, Adolescent and Family Assessment**

Recognition of normal and abnormal development, psychopathology and ability to assess family function in a culturally appropriate way will be the major focus of the course. Critical analysis of validity and reliability of methods of assessment in children, adolescents and their families, communication skills with children and adolescents, legal issues, assessment of risk of self-harm, harm to others, and abuse will be addressed.

*Restriction: 575.621*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 748 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 749A (1 Point)****PSYCHIAT 749B (1 Point)****Case Studies in Child and Adolescent Mental Health**

This course will be a practicum in which students will be asked to assess (under supervision) and write up cases. A formulation of the clinical problem, a management plan and a critical review of the literature pertaining to one aspect of the case will be expected.

*Restriction: 575.622*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 749 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 750 (2 Points)****The Social Context of Mental Health Nursing Practice**

Mental health nursing cannot be regarded as unproblematically good, but involves analysis of power and the place of mental health in the social order. This course involves a critical analysis of sociopolitical issues in mental health nursing practice including the history, scope and context of practice, the construction of nursing knowledge, consumer issues, cultural safety and the Treaty of Waitangi.

*Restriction: 575.610*

**PSYCHIAT 751 (2 Points)****Advanced Practice in Mental Health Nursing**

An exploration of the conceptual, clinical and professional basis for advanced practice including supervision, mentorship, clinical teaching, development of standards and clinical audit. In this course, students will focus on their area of specialist practice.

*Restriction: 575.615*

**PSYCHIAT 752A (2 Points)****PSYCHIAT 752B (2 Points)****Mental Health Nursing Case Studies**

Case studies will form the basis of discussion, critique and structured reflection on clinical practice and the practice context. Students will be required to present four detailed case studies from their area of practice, demonstrating involvement as an advanced nurse practitioner.

*Restriction: 575.616*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 752 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 753A** (2 Points)

**PSYCHIAT 753B** (2 Points)

**Speciality Practice in Mental Health Nursing**

Focuses on the integration of theory and practice of mental health nursing in the first year of clinical practice. Students will extend their theoretical understanding and clinical skills in assessment, care and treatment of people with mental distress and illness, and will participate in preceptorship and supervision aimed at enhancing their professional practice in mental health nursing.

*Restriction: 575.601*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCHIAT 753 A and B*

**PSYCHIAT 754** (2 Points)

**Ethical and Legal Issues in Mental Health Nursing**

Critical reflection on ethical and legal issues related to mental health nursing practice. Topics include: ethical analysis of mental health nurses' involvement in compulsory treatment; consent, compliance and issues related to the Mental Health (Compulsory Assessment and Treatment) Act and other relevant legislation.

*Restriction: 575.611*

**PSYCHIAT 755** (2 Points)

**Mental Health Nursing Assessment**

An exploration of assessment in mental health nursing. Students will undertake a variety of clinical assessment tasks and critique the models and evidence for assessments used in clinical practice.

*Restriction: 575.614*

**PSYCHIAT 760** (2 Points)

**Legal Issues in Psychiatry**

An overview of the key issues in the interface between the law and psychiatry, including issues in criminal law (legal insanity, fitness to stand trial, sentencing issues of mentally abnormal offenders), mental health law and civil forensic psychiatry. Report writing and the principles of expert testimony will be addressed.

**PSYCHIAT 761** (2 Points)

**Clinical Forensic Psychiatry I**

Addresses the major clinical themes of forensic psychiatry. Students will develop an understanding of the relationship between mental disorder and dangerous behaviour, the principles of risk assessment and management, and the service needs of mentally abnormal offenders.

**PSYCHIAT 762** (2 Points)

**Clinical Forensic Psychiatry II**

Examines the literature in detail in relation to key forensic psychiatric issues including: the assessment of risk of violence, the impact of treatment services, the nature and application of the concept of psychopathy, and the role and directions of forensic psychiatric research.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 761*

**PSYCHIAT 763** (2 Points)

**Psychiatric Epidemiology and Social Psychiatry**

Covers key topics in psychiatric epidemiology and social psychiatry. Covers major research themes, such as: the determination of prevalence and incidence of mental disorder, mental health service

use, and biological, psychological and social risk factors for mental disorder. Emphasis will be placed on the definition of 'caseness', and the measurement of explanatory and outcome variables in psychiatric epidemiology studies.

*Prerequisite: 515.702 or COMHLTH 720 or PSYCHIAT 731 or equivalents*

**PSYCHIAT 764** (2 Points)

**Clinical Academic Psychiatry II**

Prognosis and treatment of the major mental disorders from an evidence-based perspective. Pharmacological and psychosocial interventions for the major mental disorders. Measurement of the process of care and treatment outcome.

*Prerequisite: PSYCHIAT 718, 731*

**PSYCHIAT 766** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Psychiatry.

**PSYCHIAT 767** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

As prescribed by the Head of Division, Psychiatry.

---

## Faculty of Science

---

### Biomedical Science

---

#### Honours and Master's Courses

**BIOMED 790A** (7 Points)

**BIOMED 790B** (7 Points)

**Research Portfolio in Biomedical Science**

An integrated combination of research in an advanced biomedical science research option, consisting of supervised practical work and independent critical analysis of research in the field.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOMED 790 A and B*

---

### Biological Sciences

---

#### Stage I

**BIOSCI 100** (2 Points)

**Our Biological World**

A general introduction to Antarctica and its environs including the Southern Ocean and the sub-Antarctic islands. Emphasis will be placed on the evolution of Antarctica and how resident plants, animals and microorganisms are adapted to cope with the extreme environment. Specific topics to be addressed include: the history of Antarctic exploration and its impact on the development of Antarctic science, Antarctic ecosystems, Antarctica as a wilderness region, and the impact of humans including the exploitation of resources and the effects of pollution. This course is suitable for students with both science and non-science backgrounds.

**BIOSCI 101** (2 Points)

**Essential Biology: From Genomes to Organisms**

An introduction to the structures and processes which are common to micro-organisms, animals and plants at the cellular, molecular and biochemical levels. Genetic principles and processes and an overview of evolution and evolutionary concepts are included.

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

*This course assumes a knowledge of Bursary Biology and at least 6th Form Chemistry.*

**BIOSCI 102 (2 Points)**

**Plants, Microbes and Society**

A multidisciplinary approach is taken to studying the relationships between plants, microbes and humans. The course begins with an introduction to the key characteristics of plants and microbes and then goes on to show how they are used for food and pharmaceuticals. The impact of plants and microbes on human health, as well as their role in a variety of industrial and biotechnological processes, will be highlighted.

**BIOSCI 103 (2 Points)**

**Comparative Animal Biology**

A comparative approach to the study of animals, focusing on the processes which underlie and unite all animal life. Emphasis will be placed on evolutionary relationships and history, and on the relationship between form and function and the predictability of animal design. Reference will be made to the New Zealand fauna and to other animals of economic or evolutionary importance, where appropriate.

**BIOSCI 104 (2 Points)**

**New Zealand Ecology and Conservation**

An introduction to the diversity of animals and plants in New Zealand including: endemic, native and introduced species; biogeographical and evolutionary relationships; community structure and interrelationships; behaviour and ecology; Maori perspectives in biology; and current conservation, environmental, social, animal welfare, and economic issues relevant to New Zealand biology.

**BIOSCI 106 (2 Points)**

**Foundations of Biochemistry**

Biochemical reactions as essential elements of life processes with reference to the genes that control them. Material covered includes: the molecular structure and action of proteins, the synthesis and metabolism of carbohydrates and fats in the fed and starved states, and elements of enzymology, energetics, metabolism, nutrition and hormonal control in health, physical performance and disease. Reference will be made to specific biomedical examples where appropriate.

**BIOSCI 107 (2 Points)**

**Biology for Biomedical Science: Cellular Processes and Development**

The cellular basis of mammalian form and function including embryology and development. Particular emphasis will be placed on the cellular components of the blood, neural, muscular, reproductive, immune and supporting systems, and how they contribute to the structure and function of the body as a whole.

**Stage II**

**BIOSCI 200 (2 Points)**

**Current Topics on the Biology of Humans**

A moderate and broadly-based knowledge of biology is assumed for this course. It examines topics such as: human evolution, development and genetic

disorders; the immune system and a variety of diseases; ageing and afflictions of old age.

*Prerequisite: 4 points from Biology or Departmental Consent*

*Restriction: Any other Stage II or III course in Biology This course is for students NOT intending to progress in other Stage II courses within the School of Biological Sciences.*

**BIOSCI 201 (2 Points)**

**Cellular and Molecular Biology**

The basic structures of biomolecules, the evolution and structure of cells and their organisation into tissues and organs are examined first. This is followed by a study of the nucleus, the regulation of gene expression, and DNA, RNA and protein synthesis. Further sections deal with cell behaviour, development, cancer, and the basis of immunity.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101 and 106, or 101 and 107, and 2 points from either CHEM 110 or 120*

**BIOSCI 202 (2 Points)**

**Genetics**

The basic principles of mutation, recombination and genetic mapping are established in this course. These principles are developed in a variety of prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms. Laboratory work uses molecular, microbial and eukaryotic material to explore the key features of heredity.

*Prerequisite: 4 points from Stage I Biological Sciences including BIOSCI 101*

**BIOSCI 203 (2 Points)**

**Biochemistry**

This course presents core areas of modern animal and plant biochemistry. Emphasis is on macromolecular (protein, enzyme and membrane) structure and function, central metabolism, including metabolic integration and control, and signal transduction in hormone action and vision. Plant biochemistry includes nitrogen fixation, photosynthesis and cell wall structure.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101, 106 and 2 points from either CHEM 110 or 120*

**BIOSCI 204 (2 Points)**

**Applied and Environmental Microbiology**

Functions and behaviour of micro-organisms (prokaryotes, eukaryotes and viruses) as individuals and in communities. The fundamental role of micro-organisms in ecosystems. Application of microbial capabilities to biotechnology, food production, agriculture and industry. Methods for the isolation, culture and study of micro-organisms.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101 and at least 2 points from BIOSCI 102, 106, 107*

**BIOSCI 205 (2 Points)**

**Plants: Specialisation Through Design**

A foray into the spectacular diversity in plant architecture and function, integrating the research findings from molecular biology, cell biology, plant development, systematics and ecology. This course shows how internal control mechanisms work in concert with the environment to generate plant form, optimise growth, and generate diversity.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101 and 102*

**BIOSCI 206 (2 Points)**

**Ecology**

The principles of ecology, emphasising those factors

which determine the distribution and abundance of organisms. The relationships between an organism and its environment, population biology, the role of behaviour, the determinants of population growth and abundance, the structure and properties of communities. Field courses involve either marine ecology and terrestrial plant ecology, or behavioural ecology. Students advancing in Ecology must take BIOSCI 209.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101 and 104*

*Corequisite: BIOSCI 209*

**BIOSCI 207 (2 Points)**

**Animal Function and Design**

The functional organisation of animals with emphasis on morphological, physiological and behavioural adaptations to their environments. Sensory and central mechanisms involved in spatial orientation are discussed within a control systems framework. The practical course emphasises lower vertebrate morphology and physiological principles using, wherever possible, invertebrate models.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101 and 103*

**BIOSCI 208 (2 Points)**

**Biology of Marine Organisms**

The classification, structure and functioning of marine organisms and the occurrence of these within coastal marine communities. Morphology, development and lifestyles of representative members of selected phyla, using local examples. The course provides an awareness of the detailed complexity of inshore marine organisms and habitats as a basis for advanced courses in marine ecology and conservation.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 101 and 103*

**BIOSCI 209 (2 Points)**

**Biometry**

Understanding the logic of statistical techniques. The topics covered include: data description, simple probability and probability distributions, hypothesis testing, correlation and regression, one and two-way analysis of variance, goodness of fit tests and simple non-parametric methods. A knowledge of seventh form mathematics is strongly recommended.

*Prerequisite: 8 points in Stage I Science courses*

**Stage III**

**BIOSCI 320 (2 Points)**

**Pure and Applied Entomology**

An introduction to the systematics of insects describing the characters that define the major lineages, discussion of the role insects play in different ecological systems, and insect anatomy, physiology, and genetics. Their impact on agriculture and as disease vectors is discussed with descriptions of various control methods for insect pests and how these methods are integrated. Students wishing to complete a course in plant protection should take both BIOSCI 320 and 321.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 103 and 2 points from Stage II Biological Sciences courses*

**BIOSCI 321 (2 Points)**

**Plant Pathology**

Micro-organisms are of major importance to agriculture. This course will examine the biology of

plant pathogens, plant-microbial interactions at the cellular and sub-cellular level, and the epidemiology and control of plant diseases. Practicals will focus on techniques for isolation, culture, identification and study of plant pathogens.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 204 or 205*

**BIOSCI 322 (2 Points)**

**Evolution of Genes, Populations and Species**

Fundamentals of molecular evolution, population genetics, phylogenetic and organismal evolution. Examples from animals, plants and microbes, as well as current issues, including speciation, adaptation, co-evolution, conservation, genomics, biotechnology and human disease, will be considered.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 202*

**BIOSCI 328 (2 Points)**

**Fisheries and Aquaculture**

Harvest and capture of aquatic organisms and inter-relationships with aquaculture. Fisheries and aquaculture are treated not as distinct disciplines but in the context of integrating exploitation and sustainable environmental integrity. Case studies include deepsea and coastal fisheries, and shellfish culture.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 207 or 208*

**BIOSCI 329 (2 Points)**

**Biology of Fish**

A comprehensive coverage of the biology of fish including their evolution, diversity and organism biology. Coverage includes habitats of particular interest to New Zealand such as Antarctica, the deepsea, coral and temperate reefs, and New Zealand's lakes and rivers.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 207 or 208*

**BIOSCI 330 (2 Points)**

**Freshwater and Estuarine Ecology**

The structure, biodiversity and ecology of lakes, streams, wetlands and estuaries. The linkages between human activities and ecosystem dynamics will be explored. Topics also include the management of fresh and estuarine waters, including methods used to assess and monitor ecological health.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 206 and 209*

**BIOSCI 333 (2 Points)**

**Marine Ecology**

Patterns and processes in the ecology of benthic and pelagic organisms, including algae, invertebrates and fish. Emphasis is placed upon the quantitative description of patterns in distribution and abundance, and the experimental techniques used to elucidate causative processes. The relationship between the ecology and physiology of selected organisms is also discussed.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 206 and 209, and one of BIOSCI 205 or 208*

**BIOSCI 335 (2 Points)**

**Ecological Physiology**

Focuses on the strategies used by animals to cope with physical and biological challenges in the environment. Accordingly, we work at the level of the individual and the interface between physiological, biochemical or molecular approaches on the one hand, and ecology on the other. The

adaptive strategies employed by a range of species, with an emphasis on aquatic organisms, in response to physical factors such as temperature, oxygen and food availability, are considered. Energetics and nutrition are emphasised. The course aims to meet the needs of students with ecological interests wishing to recognise the experimental approach to solving problems in environmental biology. The practical work is project oriented rather than laboratory based.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 207 or 208*

**BIOSCI 337 (2 Points)**

**Animal Behaviour**

Proximate and ultimate causes of behaviour are investigated experimentally in the field and the laboratory. Responses by animals to variations in the physical environment and to other organisms are studied. The development and organisation of behaviour and the theoretical background to topics of current interest are covered, using both New Zealand and overseas examples. A knowledge of BIOSCI 206 and 207 is recommended.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 209 or STATS 201*

**BIOSCI 340 (2 Points)**

**Plant Physiology and Development**

Selected topics, illustrating experimental approaches ranging from in vitro molecular studies to whole plant ecophysiology.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 205*

**BIOSCI 349 (2 Points)**

**Biomedical Microbiology**

The major biochemical, physiological and genetic systems involved in the biology of micro-organisms affecting human health. Properties of micro-organisms important in pathogenesis and virulence, and examples of infectious diseases. The molecular response of the host cells during infection; the molecular basis for antimicrobial therapy, acquisition of resistance, and vaccination; use of micro-organisms in medical biotechnology.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 204 or MOLMED 201 or PHARMACY 203*

**BIOSCI 350 (2 Points)**

**Protein Structure and Function**

The relationship of molecular structure to protein function will be emphasised. Techniques for the purification, characterisation, production of native and recombinant proteins and three-dimensional structure determination will be combined with a description of protein structure. Specific groups of proteins will be selected to illustrate structure/function relationships and protein evolution.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 203*

**BIOSCI 351 (2 Points)**

**Molecular Genetics**

The analysis of genetic material in prokaryotes, viruses, yeast, plants and humans is addressed in this course. The molecular analysis of the means by which genetic information is transferred and the mechanisms underlying genome diversity will be examined, together with the study of eukaryote genomes at the level of chromosome structure and organisation. The molecular mechanisms

underpinning selected inherited human disorders will be examined as well as the role of transgenic mouse models in developing gene-based therapies.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 202*

**BIOSCI 352 (2 Points)**

**Applied and Food Microbiology**

Physiological and behavioural ecology of micro-organisms, and microbial communities in food and natural environments including plants, animals and water. Applications of biotechnology in waste management. Bacterial signalling systems, inducible responses, biofilm formation, microbial interactions and genetics. Molecular approaches to the study of micro-organisms and the use of phylogenetic methods. Relevant national and international policy and legislation governing the occurrence and use of micro-organisms.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 204 or PHARMACY 203 or MOLMED 201*

**BIOSCI 353 (2 Points)**

**Molecular and Cellular Regulation**

The molecular mechanisms which mediate intracellular sorting and targeting of biologically active molecules and the networks of intracellular and extracellular signals which regulate cell function form the focus of this course. The roles of growth factors, oncogenes, plasma membrane receptors, nuclear receptors, ion channels and membrane transporters are emphasised.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 203*

**BIOSCI 354 (2 Points)**

**Gene Expression and Gene Transfer**

Molecular biology of plant and animal cells is stressed in topics covering gene expression, and genetic engineering. These include: methods of gene isolation, transcription factors and the control of gene expression, animal viruses as gene vectors, gene therapy in humans and genetic engineering of livestock, methods of gene transfer in plants, and examples of genetic engineering for crop improvement.

*Prerequisite: One of BIOSCI 201-203*

**BIOSCI 356 (2 Points)**

**Developmental Biology and Cancer**

Molecular, cellular and genetic aspects of normal and abnormal development focusing on a variety of model systems including *Drosophila*, the zebrafish and the mouse. Molecular events underlying the development of body form, the differentiation of specific tissues such as the blood, and abnormalities of development which contribute to diseases of the body such as cancer. Implications of transgenic techniques on development.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201 and 202*

**BIOSCI 357 (2 Points)**

**Immunology**

The biology and molecular events underlying the immune response. The structure and synthesis of antibodies and the cellular nature of the immune response. The relationship of the immune response to the activities and strategies of pathogenic organisms. Genetics, structure and function of antibodies, T cell receptors, histo-compatibility

antigens, cytokines, and adhesion molecules. Applied immunology including biotechnology and diagnostic tools. Disorders of immunity including allergy, AIDS and autoimmune disease. In addition to lectures, this course includes practical classes, tutorials and computer-aided learning programmes.  
*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 201*

**BIOSCI 358 (2 Points)**

**Nutritional Science**

The scientific basis of nutrition focusing on its biochemistry and physiology in health and disease. Nutritional aspects of carbohydrates, fats, proteins, vitamins and trace nutrients are covered in an integrated manner. The methodologies which underpin nutritional science and its applications are included. Reference will be made to a broad range of examples, and a number of specific nutritional topics of current interest will also be included.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 203*

**BIOSCI 359 (2 Points)**

**Bioinformatics**

An overview of the methods and applications of computational biology with specific reference to: internet accessible database technology, technology and database mining, search algorithms, applications for gene and protein sequence analysis, phylogenetic analyses, and three-dimensional protein prediction methods.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220 and 2 points from Biological Sciences and 2 points from Mathematics or Statistics*

**BIOSCI 391 (2 Points)**

**New Zealand Forest Ecology and Soils**

Forest dynamics and regeneration. Holocene vegetation history and stratigraphy. Modern gradients of forest composition. Plant and animal biogeography, conservation and restoration of degraded ecosystems. Islands as refuges for endemic biota. New Zealand soil classification. Forest soil profiles and catenas. Monitoring and field survey techniques. Consult the Department for details of field work.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 205, 206 and 209*

**BIOSCI 393 (2 Points)**

**Ecological Restoration and Management**

The application of ecological principles to restoration. Principles of ecosystem and landscape management, project management and the integration of ecosystem services into productive landscapes. Policy and planning for mainland and island restoration; evaluation of pest and weed impacts and priorities for control as well as cultural, social and economic considerations.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 206 and 209*

**BIOSCI 394 (2 Points)**

**Conservation Ecology**

Conservation of species and ecosystems. Population ecology, population growth, harvesting and pest control, marine and terrestrial conservation practice, forest and fisheries management. Impacts and control of invasive species. Population viability analysis and case studies in the conservation of threatened species. International conservation.

*Prerequisite: BIOSCI 206 and 209*

**BIOSCI 395 (2 Points)**

**Pacific Biogeography and Biodiversity**

Island biogeography and insular biodiversity across the Pacific. A multi-disciplinary approach involving the study of both plant and animal systematics and biogeography.

**Diploma Courses**

**BIOSCI 690A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Biological Sciences)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 690 A and B*

**BIOSCI 691A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Biological Sciences)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**BIOSCI 703A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 703B (2 Points)**

**Advanced Plant Pathology**

In-depth consideration of selected topics relating to epidemiology, plant pathogen interactions and disease control, (e.g. modern techniques for pathogen characterisation and disease diagnosis, molecular aspects of host-pathogen interactions, disease resistance and biological control).

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 703 A and B*

**BIOSCI 706A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 706B (2 Points)**

**Evolution**

Focuses on a range of contemporary issues in evolutionary biology, such as the role of selection, the origin of mutations, concepts of heredity, the mechanisms that produce macroevolutionary patterns, and the use of phylogenetic methods for testing evolutionary hypotheses.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 706 A and B*

**BIOSCI 708A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 708B (2 Points)**

**Entomology and Pest Management**

The functional anatomy, reproductive- and life-history strategies that make insects so varied and abundant; modern views of pest management leading up to a review of integrated strategies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 708 A and B*

**BIOSCI 709A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 709B (2 Points)**

**Antarctic and Southern Oceans Ecosystem**

The tectonics and palaeoclimatology of southern continents, present day ocean circulations and biogeography. Biology of Antarctica and Southern Ocean ecosystems.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 709 A and B*

**BIOSCI 710A (2 Points)**

**BIOSCI 710B (2 Points)**

**Marine Ecology and Invertebrate Fisheries**

Ecology of coastal waters at the population, community and ecosystem levels, and the effect of human perturbation and control of this. The practice and management of invertebrate fisheries, and methods of enhancing these fisheries.

*Restriction: 423.717, 423.724, 423.725*

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 710 A and B*

**BIOSCI 711A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 711B** (2 Points)

#### Zoophysiology

Selected topics in comparative physiology emphasising functional design in lower vertebrates.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 711 A and B*

**BIOSCI 712A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 712B** (2 Points)

#### Aquaculture: Biology and Management

Case studies of fish, invertebrate and algal aquaculture industries in New Zealand; assessment of aquaculture opportunities worldwide; review of general environmental and biological problems important to aquaculture and its management, e.g. maintenance of water quality, control of parasites, development of hatchery technology.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 712 A and B*

**BIOSCI 713A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 713B** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Biological Data Analysis

Introduces students to advanced methods in biological data analysis including: randomisation and Monte Carlo procedures, likelihood, multivariate statistics, sampling techniques, and general linear models. Greater emphasis is placed in providing a conceptual framework than on specific applications of the methods discussed.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 713 A and B*

**BIOSCI 714A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 714B** (2 Points)

#### Molecular Genetics and Development

Advanced concepts of molecular genetics in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms; the study of DNA variation as it relates to human disease-causing genes; and the biochemical and genetic control of development.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 714 A and B*

**BIOSCI 715A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 715B** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Gene Expression and Transfer

Molecular biology of the eukaryotic cell, with emphasis on plant and animal transgenics; applications of molecular biology to bio-medical, horticultural and agricultural industries.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 740*

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 715 A and B*

**BIOSCI 716A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 716B** (2 Points)

#### Cellular and Molecular Biomedicine

Selected examples of biomedical research, in which

cellular and molecular techniques are applied to advance knowledge of disease processes and their treatments, will be discussed. Topics will overlap biomedical research themes in Auckland.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 716 A and B*

**BIOSCI 717A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 717B** (2 Points)

#### Molecular Structure in Biomedicine

The ways in which knowledge of macromolecular structure can transform our understanding of biological mechanisms and lead to new applications in biomedicine and biotechnology will be addressed. Topics covered will include: protein folding and misfolding, structure-based drug design and protein engineering.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 717 A and B*

**BIOSCI 718A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 718B** (2 Points)

#### Control of Cell Function

A series of biomolecular topics which complement those taught in BIOSCI 717.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 718 A and B*

**BIOSCI 719A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 719B** (2 Points)

#### Molecular Evolution and Phylogenetics

The mechanism of change at the level of the gene and the genome. Interpreting this molecular archive by reconstructing relationships that reflect the branching history of inheritance and mutation. Discussion of current topics in these disciplines with the goal of interpreting evolutionary change of genes, genomes, populations and species of animals, plants and microbes.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 719 A and B*

**BIOSCI 720A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 720B** (2 Points)

#### Fish Biology and Fisheries

Current research in fish biology which underpins our understanding, management and utilisation of fish resources. Areas covered include larval survival, recruitment processes and the physiology of stress. Principles of stock assessment and fisheries modelling are illustrated by examples from local fisheries.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 720 A and B*

**BIOSCI 721A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 721B** (2 Points)

#### Plant Physiology, Biochemistry and Development

An in-depth study of contemporary research into plant physiology, biochemistry and development. Cellular and morphological aspects of the subject will also be included. Selected research topics will be discussed, in the form of seminars and essays, with the aim of critically evaluating the literature.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 721 A and B*

**BIOSCI 722A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 722B** (2 Points)

### Microbial Interactions and Ecosystems

Interactions within and between micro-organisms and macro-organisms in natural and artificial assemblages are fundamental processes in all living systems. Topics will investigate microbial diversity and survival strategies, microbial assemblages in the environment, and microbial-host interactions.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 722 A and B*

**BIOSCI 723A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 723B** (2 Points)

### Advanced Animal Behaviour

Advanced concepts in behaviour, behavioural ecology and the mechanisms underlying behaviour.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 723 A and B*

**BIOSCI 740** (2 Points)

### Molecular Biotechnology

Manipulation of gene expression in eukaryotic organisms, plant and animal transgenics in biotechnology, applications of recombinant DNA technology to biomedicine.

*Restriction: BIOSCI 715*

**BIOSCI 741** (2 Points)

### Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology

Historical overview of the development of industrial microbiology. Diversity of applications and their level of complexity. Biodiversity of fermentations. Microbial metabolism and the assimilation of carbon, nitrogen, and sulphur. Interconnections between catabolic and biosynthetic pathways. Metabolic considerations in continuous culture. Selection, isolation and construction of useful organisms. Manipulation of growth conditions to optimise process yield. Contemporary examples of industrial processes using microbes.

**BIOSCI 742** (2 Points)

### Bioinformatics and Computational Biology

The methods and applications of computational biology with specific reference to: Internet accessible database technology and database mining, search algorithms, applications for gene and protein sequence analysis, phylogenetic analyses, plus three-dimensional protein prediction methods.

**BIOSCI 743** (2 Points)

### Advanced Bioinformatics 1

Biological sequence analysis focussing on RNA, DNA, genes and proteins. Students will be introduced to advanced probabilistic and computational methods of alignment, phylogenetic reconstruction, gene discovery and structural prediction. The use of genetic markers as disease correlates, and the analysis of quantitative trait loci will also be covered.

**BIOSCI 744** (2 Points)

### Advanced Bioinformatics 2

Introduction to structural, functional and comparative genomic analysis, and the analysis of micro-array and gene expression data. This course will also survey recent developments in bioinformatics.

**BIOSCI 761** (2 Points)

### MSc Thesis Proposal

An extensive review of background material associated with the thesis topic, and a detailed outline of the proposed research and its significance. Students will also be required to present an overview of the proposal in a seminar.

**BIOSCI 762** (2 Points)

### BSc(Hons) Dissertation Proposal

A review of the literature associated with the dissertation topic and an outline of the proposed research and its significance. Students will also be required to present an overview of the proposal in a seminar.

**BIOSCI 789A** (2 Points)

**BIOSCI 789B** (2 Points)

### BSc (Hons) Dissertation in Biological Sciences

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 789 A and B*

**BIOSCI 796A** (7 Points)

**BIOSCI 796B** (7 Points)

### MSc Thesis in Biological Sciences

*To complete this course students must enrol in BIOSCI 796 A and B*

## BTECH Projects

### Stage IV

*Project topics to be chosen in conjunction with the Coordinator of the Programme.*

**BTECH 410** (4 Points)

### Project in Animal Technology

The study of a selected field in Animal Technology at an advanced level.

**BTECH 420** (4 Points)

### Project in Biomedical Science

The study of a selected field in Biomedical Science at an advanced level.

**BTECH 430** (4 Points)

### Project in Biotechnology

The study of a selected field in Biotechnology at an advanced level.

**BTECH 432** (2 Points)

### Biotechnology Research Proposal

A review of background literature relevant to the project topic and a detailed outline of the proposed research and its significance.

**BTECH 440** (4 Points)

**BTECH 440A** (2 Points)

**BTECH 440B** (2 Points)

### Project in Industrial Mathematics

The study of a selected field in Industrial Mathematics at an advanced level.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 440 A and B, or BTECH 440*

**BTECH 450** (4 Points)

**BTECH 450A** (2 Points)

**BTECH 450B** (2 Points)

### Project in Information Technology

The study of a selected field in Information Technology at an advanced level.

To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 450 A and B, or BTECH 450

**BTECH 460A** (2 Points)  
**BTECH 460B** (2 Points)

#### Project in Materials

The study of a selected field in Materials at an advanced level.

To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 460 A and B

**BTECH 470A** (2 Points)  
**BTECH 470B** (2 Points)

#### Project in Optoelectronics

The study of a selected field in Optoelectronics at an advanced level.

To complete this course students must enrol in BTECH 470 A and B

## Chemistry

### Stage I

For students who have not had the opportunity to study Chemistry previously, or wish to refresh their knowledge, attention is drawn to the Preparatory Chemistry course offered by the Department of Chemistry at the start of each academic year. For exceptionally well qualified students, Stage I requirements may be waived.

**CHEM 100** (2 Points)  
**Chemistry in Society**

For students interested in the role of chemistry in contemporary society. Chemical issues, such as the use of plastics and pesticides, can elicit a range of public responses. Modules, which will change from year to year, will cover selected issues from a scientific point of view. Considers the role of chemical science in the development and/or control of new technologies and how we can evaluate conflicting information on such topics. Not intended as background for other Chemistry papers.

*Prerequisite:* No formal prerequisites, but the course assumes a science background at Form 5 level or higher

**CHEM 110** (2 Points)  
**The Chemistry of the Living World**

A foundation for understanding the chemistry of life is laid by exploring the diversity and reactivity of organic compounds. A systematic study of reactivity focuses on the site and mechanism of reaction including application of chemical kinetics. A quantitative study of proton transfer reactions features control of pH of fluids in both living systems and the environment.

*It is recommended that students with a limited background in chemistry take CHEM 150 prior to CHEM 110.*

*Restriction:* CHEM 195

**CHEM 120** (2 Points)  
**The Chemistry of the Material World**

The focus is on enhancing appreciation of the far-reaching role of inorganic chemistry. The periodic table acts as a guide to explore the chemistry of the elements and their compounds, the relationship between structure and reactivity, the principles underlying chemical bond formation, and the driving forces for chemical reaction (electron transfer, equilibrium and thermodynamics).

*It is recommended that students with a limited background in chemistry take CHEM 150 prior to CHEM 120.*

**CHEM 150** (2 Points)  
**Concepts in Chemistry**

The fundamentals of chemistry are explored with a view to enhancing appreciation of the chemical nature of the world around us as well as providing the foundation for further study in chemistry. Special attention is paid to familiarisation with the language of chemistry and the chemist's perspective of the properties of matter and its transformations.

*It is recommended that students with a limited background in chemistry take this course prior to CHEM 110 or CHEM 120.*

*Restriction:* May not be taken with or after any other Chemistry course

**CHEM 195** (2 Points)  
**Chemistry for Engineering**

Chemical principles are fundamental to nearly all aspects of engineering. This course provides an introduction to these underlying principles. It will cover kinetics, thermodynamics and reaction mechanisms that can be applied to biotechnology and the food and processing industries.

*This course is intended for Engineering students.*

*Restriction:* CHEM 110

### Stage II

**CHEM 201** (2 Points)  
**Molecules, Energy and Radiation in Chemistry**

Modern physical chemistry provides a quantitative framework for the study of chemistry. Spectroscopy and reaction kinetics provide information about molecular structure and dynamics. The forces that determine chemical and phase equilibria are explored in thermodynamics, while electrochemistry is concerned with ions and electron transfer processes. The use and application of computers is an integral part of the course.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of those aspects of physical chemistry and laboratory practice covered in CHEM 110 and CHEM 120 will be assumed. An understanding of basic mathematics at the level covered in MATHS 102 will also be assumed.*

**CHEM 202** (2 Points)  
**Inorganic Compounds: Structure, Bonding and Reactivity**

Modern inorganic chemistry encompasses a diversity of structures, bonding types and reactivities. These will be developed using examples drawn from coordination, bioinorganic, organometallic and main group chemistry. The associated laboratory course provides complementary experience in synthesis and measurement of physical properties for selected inorganic compounds.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of inorganic chemistry and basic laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 120 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 203** (2 Points)  
**Molecules for Life: Synthesis and Reactivity**

A deeper understanding of the framework for contemporary organic chemistry is provided. Students will build on their repertoire of fundamental reaction types that have previously been encountered with the introduction of new reactions and their application to more complex

molecules of biological and medicinal importance. The laboratory component is an integral part of the course which emphasises preparative chemistry and the use of modern spectroscopic techniques for structure determination.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of organic chemistry and basic laboratory practice at the level covered in CHEM 110 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 204 (2 Points)**

**Measurement and Analysis in Chemistry**

The detection and determination of chemical species in solids, liquids and gases. This course is an introduction to chemical and instrumental techniques for the analysis of elements and molecules in systems such as foodstuffs, biological matrices, materials and the environment. Topics include: chromatographic methods for the separation of complex mixtures, the application of modern electrochemical and spectroscopic techniques to solve analytical problems, and methods for assessing the reliability of results. Experiments illustrating these principles are an integral part of the course.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of aspects of chemistry and laboratory practice covered in CHEM 110 and 120 will be assumed. An understanding of basic mathematics at the level covered in MATHS 102 will also be assumed.*

*Restriction: CHEM 209*

**CHEM 207 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Chemical Processes**

Chemical processes and transport in air, soil, sediments and water. Global biogeochemical cycles. Equilibrium and rate in natural systems. Environmental analysis and modelling. Radionuclides and trace metals in the natural environment.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of aspects of chemistry and laboratory practice covered in CHEM 110 and 120 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 208 (2 Points)**

**Functional and Smart Materials**

Forms of interatomic bonding, bulk and surface structures and defects, semiconductors and semiconductor technology, thermodynamics of pure and composite materials, biomimetic materials, and the nature of polymeric materials.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of aspects of chemistry and laboratory practice covered in CHEM 110 and 120 will be assumed. An understanding of basic mathematics at the level covered in MATHS 102 will also be assumed.*

**CHEM 209 (2 Points)**

**Analytical and Physical Chemistry for Biomedical Sciences**

The physico-chemical principles and techniques underlying a wide range of modern analytical methods used in biomedical sciences. Data analysis including statistical methods. Electronic spectroscopy including atomic spectroscopy and practical applications. Molecular spectroscopy including simple molecular orbital theory. Solution chemistry and titrimetry, complex formation and equilibria. Electrochemistry, pH, non-ideal solutions, measurements. Separations, chromatography, theory of phase equilibria.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of aspects of chemistry and laboratory practice covered in CHEM 110*

*will be assumed. An understanding of basic mathematics will also be assumed.*

*Restriction: CHEM 204*

**Stage III**

**CHEM 301 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Physical Chemistry**

A selection of topics from advanced physical chemistry, including: molecular symmetry and spectroscopy, surface chemistry and catalysis, quantum chemistry and molecular dynamics. Throughout the course, examples of applications in chemical and industrial processes will be used.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of physical chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of CHEM 201 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 302 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Inorganic Chemistry**

Recent developments in coordination, bioinorganic and organometallic chemistry will be explored. Applications will include the synthesis and structure of new materials, and the role of metals in catalytic processes and biological systems. The associated laboratory component provides complementary experience in synthesis and measurement of physical properties for selected inorganic compounds.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of inorganic chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of CHEM 202 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 303 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Organic Chemistry**

Topics in advanced organic chemistry, including the synthesis, reactions and uses of compounds containing phosphorus, selenium, boron and silicon. Asymmetric synthesis and stereochemistry. Heterocyclic chemistry and pericyclic reactions. The laboratory component emphasises synthetic and structural methods.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of organic chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of CHEM 203 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 304 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Analytical Chemistry**

Principles and applications of modern instrumental analytical chemistry. Statistical methods, quality control and assurance, sampling, instrumentation, chromatographic and other separation methods, spectrophotometric methods, electro-analytical methods.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of analytical chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of CHEM 204 will be assumed.*

**CHEM 305 (2 Points)**

**CHEM 305A (1 Point)**

**CHEM 305B (1 Point)**

**Topics in Chemistry**

This course deals with a number of aspects of modern chemistry. Students will select three of the modules offered depending on availability. Not all choices are available every year. Further information may be obtained from the Department of Chemistry.

*No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of appropriate aspects of chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of Stage II will be assumed.*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 305 A and B, or CHEM 305

**CHEM 307** (2 Points)

**Advanced Environmental Chemistry**

Anthropogenic chemicals in the environment and their influence on environmental systems and processes, including the chemistry of waste water, marine pollutants, pesticides, CFCs, geothermal effluents and ozone.

No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of environmental chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of CHEM 207 will be assumed.

**CHEM 308** (2 Points)

**Advanced Materials Chemistry**

Structure and synthesis of materials, defects and non-stoichiometry and their role in: technology, colour centres, catalytic materials, thermal phenomena in materials, step and chain polymerisation, conformation and stereochemistry, specialty polymers, composites and blends.

No formal prerequisite, but knowledge of materials chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of CHEM 208 will be assumed.

**CHEM 309** (2 Points)

**Medicinal Chemistry**

Concepts, principles and applications of medicinal chemistry, including: the drug discovery and development process, molecular recognition and structure-activity relationships in biological systems, drug-DNA interactions, enzymes as therapeutic targets, mechanisms of ligand-receptor interactions, combinatorial approaches to the discovery of novel chemotherapeutic agents.

No formal prerequisites, but knowledge of organic chemistry and laboratory practice at the level of CHEM 203 will be assumed.

**CHEM 315** (2 Points)

**Issues in Drug Design and Development**

Intellectual property and patent law in the pharmaceutical industry. An overview of the legal and regulatory framework for drug design and development. Clinical trials: formulation of a drug; phase I, phase II and phase III protocols. An introduction to the principles involved in the Codes of Good Manufacturing Practice and Good Laboratory Practice (quality control and quality assurance procedures) as applied to the manufacture of drug products and the quantification of drugs and metabolites in biological fluids. Occupational health and safety issues.

**Diploma Courses**

**CHEM 690A** (2 Points)

**CHEM 690B** (2 Points)

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Chemistry)**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 690 A and B

**CHEM 691A** (2 Points)

**CHEM 691B** (2 Points)

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Chemistry)**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 691 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**CHEM 710** (2 Points)

**Physical Chemistry of Materials**

The physical chemistry of the bulk behaviour of matter, with emphasis on the relationship between physical principles and practical applications. Vibrational spectroscopy and properties of polymers and electronic materials. Surface analysis and its relationship to catalytic materials.

**CHEM 711** (2 Points)

**Physical Chemistry of Atoms and Molecules**

The relationship between chemical properties and molecular behaviour. Quantum mechanics, molecular structure at the fundamental level. The physical principles of magnetic resonance. Statistical thermodynamics, the relationship between bulk and molecular energy properties.

**CHEM 720** (2 Points)

**Frontiers of Inorganic Chemistry A**

The topics covered in this course will be chosen from areas of current research in inorganic chemistry, and will vary from year to year.

**CHEM 721** (2 Points)

**Frontiers of Inorganic Chemistry B**

The topics covered in this course will be chosen from areas of current research in inorganic chemistry, and will vary from year to year.

**CHEM 730** (2 Points)

**Organic Chemistry: Reactions and Synthesis**

The use of organic reactions in synthesis with emphasis on carbon-carbon bond formation and control of stereochemistry. Principles and practice of synthesis design based on retrosynthetic analysis. Each student presents and discusses a recent synthesis of an important organic compound.

**CHEM 731** (2 Points)

**Topics in Contemporary Organic Chemistry**

Concepts and principles of biologically relevant chemistry will be presented. The topics covered include: enzyme catalysis in medicine and organic chemistry, biosynthesis, catalytic antibodies, the chemistry of C- and O-glycosides and combinational chemistry.

**CHEM 735** (2 Points)

**Advanced Medicinal Chemistry**

An overview of combinational chemistry and its impact on the drug discovery process, antiviral agents, antineoplastics, antibiotics, antimicrobial agents and antifungal agents, antihypertensives, cholinergic drugs, antidepressants.

**CHEM 740** (2 Points)

**Analytical Chemistry**

Principles and applications of modern analytical chemistry. Emphasis will be on the solution of problems met by analytical chemists, including a study of the development of instrumentation, and a study of current trends in analytical research.

**CHEM 750** (2 Points)

**CHEM 750A** (1 Point)

**CHEM 750B** (1 Point)

**Advanced Topics in Chemistry A**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 750 A and B, or CHEM 750

**CHEM 751** (2 Points)

**CHEM 751A** (1 Point)

**CHEM 751B** (1 Point)

**Advanced Topics in Chemistry B**

A modular course comprising topics in physical, inorganic, organic and analytical chemistry related to departmental research interests, which will vary from year to year. Students satisfactorily completing three modules will be awarded CHEM 750. Students satisfactorily completing an additional three modules will be awarded CHEM 751.

To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 751 A and B, or CHEM 751

**CHEM 770** (2 Points)

**Environmental Chemistry**

Selected current research topics in environmental chemistry. Examples include: antarctic meltwater chemistry, impacts of geothermal energy and earth resource exploitation, marine chemistry of the Hauraki Gulf, indoor air chemistry and the atmospheric impact of aircraft emissions.

**CHEM 780** (2 Points)

**Materials: Synthesis, Properties and Characterisation**

Selected topics in materials chemistry. The overall theme of the course will be synthesis and characterisation of advanced materials such as polymers, polymer blends and polymer-based composites, semiconductors, nanostructures, oxides and catalysts.

**CHEM 789** (4 Points)

**CHEM 789A** (2 Points)

**CHEM 789B** (2 Points)

**BSc(Hons) Dissertation in Chemistry**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 789 A and B, or CHEM 789

**CHEM 790** (2 Points)

**MSc Thesis Proposal in Chemistry**

A comprehensive computer-prepared review of the background literature material relevant to a thesis topic, including the significance of the topic, and the relationship of the published work to the research proposed. Candidates will also be required to deliver an oral presentation.

**CHEM 796A** (7 Points)

**CHEM 796B** (7 Points)

**MSc Thesis in Chemistry**

To complete this course students must enrol in CHEM 796 A and B

**Computer Science****Stage I**

**COMPSCI 101** (2 Points)

**Principles of Programming**

An introduction to computers and computer programming in a high-level language. The role of computers and computer professionals in society is also introduced. The course is intended for students

who may wish to advance in Computer Science or in Management Science and Information Systems.

Restriction: 415.114, 415.115

**COMPSCI 105** (2 Points)

**Principles of Computer Science**

Extends the programming skills of COMPSCI 101, covering more advanced data structures and their representation and manipulation. Topics include: pointers, dynamic data structures (lists, queues, stacks, trees), recursion, sorting and searching, data representation and machine-level concepts.

Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101 or 415.114 or 415.115

**COMPSCI 111** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Computing and the Internet**

An introduction to practical computing that focuses on the Internet and World Wide Web. Topics include: web design and development, digital images and sound, multimedia presentations, using the Internet as a communication medium, and programming.

Restriction: 636.101, INFOSYS 110. May not be taken with or after any other Computer Science course

**Stage II**

For the purposes of prerequisites for Stage II Computer Science, 415.114 and 415.115 are equivalent to COMPSCI 101.

**COMPSCI 210** (2 Points)

**Computer Systems**

Computer systems, as viewed at the interface between computer hardware and software. Representation of data in terms of bit patterns, a case study of the architecture of a particular computer, assembly language programming, input/output, operating system software and hardware support.

Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101 and 105

Restriction: 415.212

**COMPSCI 220** (2 Points)

**Algorithms and Data Structures**

An introduction to the study of algorithms, including examples of graph algorithms. Abstract data types. Tools and techniques for analysing and improving the performance of a program. Techniques of algorithm design, including such strategies as divide-and-conquer, greedy algorithms, and dynamic programming. An introduction to automata theory.

Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101, 105, and either 445.107, MATHS 108, 130, or 151

Restriction: 415.231, 415.233

**COMPSCI 225** (2 Points)

**Discrete Structures in Mathematics and Computer Science**

An introduction to logic, principles of counting, mathematical induction, recursion, relations and functions, graphs and trees, and algorithms. This course is suited to students who are interested in the foundations of computer science, mathematics and logic.

Restriction: 445.225

**COMPSCI 230** (2 Points)

**Software Design and Construction**

Issues in the design and construction of large programmes. Advanced object-oriented programming. The software development process. An introduction to object-oriented analysis. Programme testing.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101, 105, and 2 points at Stage I in Maths*

*Restriction: 415.232, 415.234*

**COMPSCI 280 (2 Points)**

**Applications Programming**

A programming course principally for BCom students specialising in Management Science and Information Systems. It continues on from COMPSCI 101 in developing practical programming skills, but with a focus on using component-based approaches and object-oriented programming. The course offers an introduction to graphical user interfaces, client-server architectures, and techniques for integrating applications with databases and the Web/Internet.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 101 and either COMPSCI 105 or 636.101 or INFOSYS 110 Normally for BCom students only.*

**Stage III**

*For the purposes of prerequisites for Stage III Computer Science, COMPSCI 220, 415.231, 415.233 are equivalent; COMPSCI 230, 415.232, 415.234 are equivalent; and COMPSCI 210, 415.212 are equivalent.*

**COMPSCI 313 (2 Points)**

**Computer Organisation**

The functioning and organisation of modern computer systems. Architecture of computers and computer systems. Processor organisation and implementation. Data representation and instruction formats, microprogramming, input/output systems, virtual memory and hierarchical memory systems.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 210 and either PHYSICS 219 or 243*

*Restriction: 415.310*

**COMPSCI 314 (2 Points)**

**Data Communications Fundamentals**

The structure of data communications and networks, particularly the lower levels of the communications architecture hierarchy. The OSI communications model, data transmission and coding, link-level protocols, local area networks, wide area networks and internetworking, transport protocols, introduction to ISDN, BISDN, Frame Relay.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage II Computer Science courses, including COMPSCI 210*

**COMPSCI 320 (2 Points)**

**Algorithmics**

Further development of problem-solving and algorithm design methods, including: induction, divide-and-conquer, dynamic programming, greedy algorithms and graph algorithms. New topics such as: proof of correctness, amortised complexity, complexity lower bounds, decision trees, backtracking, branch-and-bound, probabilistic algorithms, advanced information structures and NP-completeness.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220 and, COMPSCI 225 or 445.225*

**COMPSCI 330 (2 Points)**

**Language Implementation**

The compilation and interpretation of computer languages, lexical analysis, top-down and bottom-up parsing, interpreters, procedure call conventions,

symbol table analysis, code generation for control structures and expressions, attribute grammars.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 210 and 230*

*Restriction: 415.333*

**COMPSCI 334 (2 Points)**

**Internet Programming**

Covers the programming and configuration aspects of the Internet, specifically programming with various protocols and programming for dynamic web content generation. Specific areas covered will include: the HTTP protocol, web servers, proxies and caches, performance and security aspects of servers and server-client interaction, scripting languages such as JavaScript and PHP, programming for dynamic content generation with scripting languages, and programming Internet applications such as search engines and shopping carts.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage II Computer Science courses including COMPSCI 230, or COMPSCI 280 and INFOSYS 222*

**COMPSCI 335 (2 Points)**

**Distributed Objects and Algorithms**

This course gives an appreciation of modern client-server development, based on distributed objects and their integration with databases and the Web. A comparative study of relevant technologies such as RMI, CORBA and DCOM.

*Prerequisite: 4 points in Stage II Computer Science courses including COMPSCI 230, or COMPSCI 280 and INFOSYS 222*

**COMPSCI 340 (2 Points)**

**Operating Systems**

What is an operating system? Operating system principles: concurrent processes, processor management, memory management, disk management, management of other peripherals, computer security. Interacting with people: system implementation and job control languages.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 210 and 230*

*Restriction: 415.341*

**COMPSCI 345 (2 Points)**

**Human-computer Interaction**

Provides the student with the necessary knowledge and skills to design, build, test and evaluate human-computer interfaces, including user documentation.

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220 and 230*

*Restriction: COMPSCI 370*

**COMPSCI 350 (2 Points)**

**Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science**

The aim is to create a mathematical model for computers and computation, and to derive results about what can and cannot be computed. The course deals with idealised computers (automata) which operate on idealised inputs and outputs (formal languages).

*Prerequisite: COMPSCI 220 and, COMPSCI 225 or 445.225 or PHIL 201*

**COMPSCI 360 (2 Points)**

**Functional and Logic Programming**

A practical introduction to programming in functional and logic programming languages. In particular, the course introduces a declarative style

of programming, in which the emphasis is placed more on what a programme achieves than how it is to achieve it.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220 and 230

**COMPSCI 366 (2 Points)**  
**Foundations of Artificial Intelligence**

An introduction to the basic concepts of artificial intelligence from the analytical point of view, using intelligent agents as the main focus point. Introduces some of the foundations of artificial intelligence, such as the well known A\* algorithm, reasoning techniques based on logic and constraints, techniques for reasoning under uncertainty, and planning methods.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220, and COMPSCI 225 or 445.225

*Restriction:* COMPSCI 365

**COMPSCI 367 (2 Points)**  
**The Practice of Artificial Intelligence**

An introduction to the basic concepts of artificial intelligence from the empirical point of view, using intelligent systems as the main focus point. Introduces some of the foundations of artificial intelligence, such as rule-based reasoning, techniques based on knowledge engineering and representation, and neural and evolutionary models of computation and their application.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220, and COMPSCI 225 or 445.225

*Restriction:* COMPSCI 365

**COMPSCI 372 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Graphics**

An introduction to 3D computer graphics using a standard graphics programming interface, such as OpenGL, as a focus. The course covers: graphics systems, geometric transformations, viewing and projection, polygon rendering, ray tracing and basic geometric modelling.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 220 and 230

*Restriction:* COMPSCI 370

**COMPSCI 375 (2 Points)**  
**Image Processing and Analysis**

Introduction to analog image quantisation, digital images, digital image topology and geometry, and image binarisation. Analysis of image regions and of point patterns (contour tracking, contour approximation, convex hull computation, Hough transform, Voronoi and Delaunay diagram), classification (statistical pattern analysis, neural networks), image processing operators, (Fourier transform, image filtering), and image compression.

*Prerequisite:* COMPSCI 210 and 230, and MATHS 108 or 130 or 151

**COMPSCI 380 (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 380A (1 Point)**

**COMPSCI 380B (1 Point)**

**Undergraduate Project in Computer Science A**

Each student taking one of these courses will be expected to do an individual practical project under the supervision of a member of staff. Only students with excellent academic records will be allowed to take these courses, and only after a supervisor and topic have been agreed upon by the Head of Department.

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 380 A and B, or COMPSCI 380

**COMPSCI 381 (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 381A (1 Point)**

**COMPSCI 381B (1 Point)**

**Undergraduate Project in Computer Science B**

Each student taking one of these courses will be expected to do an individual practical project under the supervision of a member of staff. Only students with excellent academic records will be allowed to take these courses, and only after a supervisor and topic have been agreed upon by the Head of Department.

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 381 A and B, or COMPSCI 381

**COMPSCI 390 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science A**

**COMPSCI 391 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science B**

**COMPSCI 392 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science C**

**COMPSCI 393 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Computer Science D**

**Diploma Courses**

**COMPSCI 690A (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Computer Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 690 A and B

**COMPSCI 691A (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Computer Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 691 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

The content of the Advanced Topic courses is liable to vary from one year to the next, depending on the research interests of staff and visitors. Consult the department for information about which courses are being offered, and their content.

**COMPSCI 701 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science A**

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

**COMPSCI 702 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science B**

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

**COMPSCI 703 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science C**

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

**COMPSCI 704 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science D**

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

**COMPSCI 705 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science E**

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

**COMPSCI 706 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic in Computer Science F**

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Head of Department

- COMPSCI 707** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Topic in Computer Science G**  
*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*
- COMPSCI 708** (2 Points)  
**Multimedia and Hypermedia Systems**  
 Multimedia and hypermedia systems in general: a survey of ideas, applications and typical systems, current research issues; technical aspects, standards, information system and database aspects, networked systems. Project(s).  
*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*
- COMPSCI 709** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Topic in Computer Science H**  
*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*
- COMPSCI 711** (2 Points)  
**Parallel and Distributed Computing**  
 Computer architectures and languages for exploring parallelism, conceptual models of parallelism, principles for programming in a parallel environment, different models to achieve interprocess communication, concurrency control, distributed algorithms and fault tolerance.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 313 and 340*
- COMPSCI 715** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Computer Graphics**  
 Review of fundamental algorithms in 3D graphics. Illumination, shading, shadowing and texturing. Anti-aliasing theory and practice, ray tracing, radiosity methods, volume rendering. Use of wavelets in computer graphics. Local research topics.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 370*
- COMPSCI 720** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms**  
 Techniques for solving hard combinatorial optimisation problems including: backtracking, branch-and-bound, hill climbing, simulated annealing and genetic algorithms. Enumeration algorithms; advanced topics in graph algorithms, amortised analysis of algorithms; algorithms in computational biology.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 320*
- COMPSCI 725** (2 Points)  
**Software Security**  
 Denial of service, privacy violations, primary and collateral damage. Eavesdropping, playback, binary tampering during delivery, introduction of hostile code, malicious hosts. Unauthorised use by copying, dongle mimicry, decompilation and recompilation, reverse engineering. Software patents, copyrights, trade secrets. Sandbox, blackbox, and cryptographic security. Steganography. Obfuscation, robust and fragile watermarks, fingerprints.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 330 or 415.333, and COMPSCI 320 or 340*  
*Restriction: COMPSCI 704*
- COMPSCI 730** (2 Points)  
**Programming Language and Compiler Design**  
 Advanced topics in language implementation, including, attribute grammars, compiler-compilers, code generation issues, inter- and intra-procedural code optimisation, parallel compilation, parallelising compilers, implementation of novel programming languages and language constructs.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 330 and, 313 or 360*
- COMPSCI 731** (2 Points)  
**Language Design and Definition**  
 An examination of the issue of what a programming language construct really means. Topics include: operational and denotational semantics; semantics of a variety of major language styles, including functional, parallel, logic and object-oriented; types and language design.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 313, 330 and 360*
- COMPSCI 735** (2 Points)  
**Object-oriented Systems**  
 An advanced course on object-oriented (OO) programs and systems, covering topics such as: OO languages, advanced OO techniques, large-scale OO design, OO environments and frameworks, OO databases, research issues in OO systems.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 360 and 370*
- COMPSCI 740** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Operating Systems**  
 An advanced course in operating systems, covering topics such as: process scheduling, interprocess communication mechanisms, and distributed operating systems. Case studies of one or more operating systems.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 313 and 340*
- COMPSCI 742** (2 Points)  
**Data Communications and Networks**  
 The protocols and performance of Local Area Networks. The special requirements of very high speed networks (100 Mb/s and higher). Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) and its relation to other protocols. The TCP/IP protocol suite.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 314*
- COMPSCI 750** (2 Points)  
**Computational Complexity**  
 Definitions of computational models and complexity classes: time complexity (e.g. P and NP), space complexity (e.g. L and PSPACE), circuit and parallel complexity (NC), polynomial-time hierarchy (PH), interactive complexity (IP), probabilistic complexity (BPP), and fixed-parameter complexity.  
*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 320 or 350*
- COMPSCI 755** (2 Points)  
**Unconventional Models of Computation**  
 The conventional trend of computation is approaching a critical phase and new technologies are required to provide significant further progress. The course will focus on three new categories of unconventional models: quantum computation, biologically-inspired computing and reversible models of computation. A key objective will be the search for efficient solutions for problems that are difficult or impossible to solve using classical (Turing or equivalent) models.  
*Recommended preparation: 6 points from Stage III Computer Science courses including COMPSCI 320 or 340 or 350*
- COMPSCI 760** (2 Points)  
**Datamining and Machine Learning**  
 An overview of the learning problem and the view of learning by search. Techniques for learning such as: Decision Tree Learning, Rule Learning, Exhaustive Learning, Bayesian Learning, Genetic

Algorithms, Reinforcement Learning, Neural Networks, Explanation-Based Learning and Inductive Logic Programming. Experimental methods necessary for understanding machine learning research.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 365*

**COMPSCI 765 (2 Points)**  
**Advanced Artificial Intelligence**

A selection of one or two research issues in artificial intelligence, such as the technique of constraint satisfaction, or temporal/spatial reasoning. The precise content may vary from year to year. Consult the Department for details.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 360 and 365*

**COMPSCI 766 (2 Points)**  
**Intelligent Active Vision**

Intelligent control of autonomous agents in a complex domain. High-level reasoning functions such as strategic planning and task acquisition and their interaction with low-level reasoning processes. Some aspects of image processing, control theory, artificial life, planning, machine learning and multi-agent coordination.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*

*Restriction: COMPSCI 703*

**COMPSCI 767 (2 Points)**  
**Intelligent Software Agents**

An introduction to the design, implementation, and use of intelligent software agents (e.g. knowbots, softbots, etc.). Reviews standard artificial intelligence problem-solving paradigms (e.g. planning and expert systems) and knowledge representation formalisms (e.g. logic and semantic nets). Surveys agent architectures and multi-agent frameworks.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 365*

**COMPSCI 773 (2 Points)**  
**Robotics and Real-time Control**

A study of the engineering and computing aspects of controlling real-time systems (such as machines, assembly lines, and robots) by computers. The course involves student projects and seminars as well as lectures.

*Recommended preparation: 2 points at Stage III in Computer Science and 2 points at Stage II in Mathematics*

**COMPSCI 775 (2 Points)**  
**Computer Vision**

Introduction to digital images, and 3D image analysis. Image acquisition and camera calibration, stereo image analysis, motion analysis (3D motion and 2D displacement, optical-flow, Horn-Schunck algorithm), shading-based shape reconstruction (surface models, gradient space, shape from shading, photometric stereo), 3D object segmentation, and 3D object analysis.

*Recommended preparation: 415.317 or COMPSCI 375, and 445.207 or 445.230 or 445.251 or MATHS 208*

**COMPSCI 776 (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 776A (1 Point)**

**COMPSCI 776B (1 Point)**

**Postgraduate Project in Image Technology**

Advanced topics in image technology, in particular

computer vision such as 3D image analysis and understanding, query by image data retrieval, or active computer vision.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 370 or 375*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 776 A and B, or COMPSCI 776*

**COMPSCI 780 (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 780A (1 Point)**

**COMPSCI 780B (1 Point)**

**Postgraduate Project in Computer Science A**

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 780 A and B, or COMPSCI 780*

**COMPSCI 781 (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 781A (1 Point)**

**COMPSCI 781B (1 Point)**

**Postgraduate Project in Computer Science B**

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 781 A and B, or COMPSCI 781*

**COMPSCI 789A (2 Points)**

**COMPSCI 789B (2 Points)**

**BSc(Hons) Dissertation**

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 789 A and B*

**COMPSCI 790 (2 Points)**

**History of Computing and Computers**

A survey of the historical context of modern computing and information technology. History of computing and computing devices prior to the computer age. Developments in computing since the introduction of electronic computers. Significant software developments and applications of computers.

*Recommended preparation: 8 points from Stage III Computer Science courses*

**COMPSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**COMPSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Computer Science**

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 796 A and B*

**COMPSCI 797A (7 Points)**

**COMPSCI 797B (7 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in Computer Science**

An integrated combination of courses, research projects, and investigations in a selection of topics, designed to meet the requirements of each student.

*To complete this course students must enrol in COMPSCI 797 A and B*

## Electronics and Computing

### Diploma Courses

**ELECCOMP 692A (2 Points)**

**ELECCOMP 692B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Electronics and Computing)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ELECCOMP 692 A and B*

**ELECCOMP 693A (2 Points)**

**ELECCOMP 693B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Electronics and Computing)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ELECCOMP 693 A and B*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses****ELECCOMP 797** (14 Points)  
**MSc Thesis in Electronics and Computing**

---

**Environmental Management**

---

**Diploma Courses****ENVMGT 601** (2 Points)  
**Society and Environment**

The evolution of society-environment relations with an emphasis on contemporary community, cultural, business and institutional attitudes to the environment. This course covers the range of political, economic and ethical perspectives that are significant for environmental management, as well as the management tools available for encouraging and facilitating community-wide input into environmental decision-making.

**ENVMGT 602** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Processes**

The natural processes that provide the physical and ecological context for environmental management. This course includes the effects of perturbation at macro (global) and micro (local) levels.

**ENVMGT 603** (2 Points)  
**Management, Economy and Environment**

The theory and practice of management and economics as they relate to the environment. This course covers macro- and micro-economic theories, their implications for and application to environmental management, and includes economic indicators, decision analysis and the use of economic instruments. Business responses to environmental issues (e.g. environmental management systems, and their links to quality standards and international trade) are also covered.

**ENVMGT 604** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Law and Policy**

Contemporary international and national law and associated policy. This course includes: international environmental developments and agreements, significant national laws, the roles of state, regional and local government, policy development and implementation, and constraints. There is special emphasis on the Resource Management Act 1991, its purpose, principles, and the processes involved in its application.

**ENVMGT 662** (2 Points)  
**Ecotourism**

Interactions between tourism, recreation and the environment. This course includes: definitions, models and organisation of the ecotourism industry, evaluation of tourism and recreation resources, environmental factors important for tourism development, visitor motivation and behaviour, assessment of environmental and sociological impacts, and the role of government agencies.

**ENVMGT 665** (2 Points)  
**Resource Management**  
Principles, methods and techniques for resource

management. This course includes: sustainable land management, soil management, air and water quality management, amenity values and social conditions; integration within the framework of policies, plans and law; methods for environmental auditing, scoping and due diligence; identification of environmental effects and options for mitigation; and methods for resource allocation.

---

**Environmental Science**

---

**Stage II****ENVSCI 201** (2 Points)  
**Sustaining Our Environment**

An introduction to local, regional and global environmental issues, especially those related to the resource exploitation and pollution, resulting from everyday activities, and options for reducing environmental effects of these activities. The tools and methodology of interdisciplinary environmental science, and how they can be used to contribute to environmental management. Includes tutorials and a one-day field trip.

*No formal prerequisites although an understanding of Stage I level science is assumed.*  
*Restriction: 425.201*

**Stage III****ENVSCI 301** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Systems and Processes**

Focuses on the effect of human production requirements on environmental systems and processes. The course includes a series of case studies that illustrate the need for an integrated approach to understanding human interaction with environmental systems and processes. These case studies relate to issues of local, national and international significance. An integral part of the course is to develop an understanding of how to achieve optimal solutions to the pressures created by humans.

*No formal prerequisites but knowledge of those aspects of environmental science covered in ENVSCI 201 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: 425.301*

**ENVSCI 310** (2 Points)  
**Modelling Environmental Systems**

An introduction to how models are used in the study and management of environmental impacts in a range of natural environments (e.g. terrestrial, fluvial, atmospheric, subterranean, coastal, etc.). Developing skills in designing and critically assessing ecological, geochemical, chemical, physical and numerical models of the environment.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of data analysis is assumed.*

*Restriction: 422.310*

---

**Diploma Courses****ENVSCI 696A** (2 Points)**ENVSCI 696B** (2 Points)**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Environmental Science)**

*Restriction: 423.690, 423.692, 423.694*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVSCI 696 A and B*

- ENVSCI 697A** (2 Points)  
**ENVSCI 697B** (2 Points)  
**PG Diploma Dissertation (Environmental Science)**  
*Restriction: 423.691, 423.693, 423.695*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVSCI 697 A and B*

### Honours and Master's Courses

- ENVSCI 701** (2 Points)  
**Research Planning and Communication**  
 An introduction to the methodologies of establishing an interdisciplinary research programme. This will include: an extensive literature review; how to identify potential end users and their needs, an evaluation of potential research methods and an understanding of ways to communicate effectively with different stakeholders. Students will be required to present an overview of their research proposal in a seminar.  
*Restriction: 422.701*
- ENVSCI 702** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Environmental Science**  
 Seminars, lectures, laboratories and field work as prescribed by the Head.
- ENVSCI 703** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic in Environmental Science**  
 Seminars, lectures, laboratories and field work as prescribed by the Head of the School.
- ENVSCI 704** (2 Points)  
**Analysis and Modelling of Environmental Systems**  
 Developing skills in the quantitative analysis and display of environmental data. Practical exercises processing and displaying data (e.g. using Matlab), managing large databases, handling data gaps, filtering and spectral analysis and statistical treatment. An introduction to modelling and simulation, and result communication. Example datasets from environment monitoring, climatology, satellites, etc.  
*No formal prerequisites but a knowledge of Statistics and data analysis to at least Stage II is assumed*
- ENVSCI 710** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Science**  
 An overview of the principles, knowledge base and methods of interdisciplinary environmental science. An examination of fundamental tools, technologies and techniques used in interdisciplinary approaches to prevention, mitigation and remediation of environmental problems. Includes case studies and practical work.  
*Restriction: 425.701*
- ENVSCI 711** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Effects and Monitoring**  
 Scientific industry and government perspectives the resource consent application and award process in New Zealand. Environmental effects assessment, compliance and performance monitoring, and the use of indicators. Focus on standard AEE methodology and consenting procedures. Case studies and practical work.  
*Restriction: 425.741*
- ENVSCI 712** (2 Points)  
**Measures of Environmental Change**  
 Qualitative and quantitative science-based methods used for scoping and characterising environmental effects and impacts, including social impact assessment. Selection and use of environmental indicators on local, regional, national and global scales, standards and criteria for and assessment of environmental quality (including use of direct and indicative measures). Case studies and practical work.  
*Restriction: 425.741*
- ENVSCI 713** (2 Points)  
**Air Quality Science and Technology**  
 Natural processes operating in the atmosphere. Interactions between air quality and human activities in indoor and outdoor environments. Monitoring procedures and equipment. Dispersion modelling. Air quality standards and guidelines. Applications of science and technology to indoor and outdoor air pollution prevention, mitigation and remediation. Case studies, and practical work related to monitoring and modelling air quality.  
*Restriction: 425.728*
- ENVSCI 714** (2 Points)  
**Water Quality Science and Technology**  
 Water contaminants, monitoring techniques and modelling systems for impact prediction and assessment of effects for both point and non-point sources. Application of science and technology to water pollution prevention, mitigation and remediation. Case studies and practical work.  
*Restriction: 425.729*
- ENVSCI 715** (2 Points)  
**Cleaner Production and Waste Management**  
 Cleaner production and similar concepts. Their role in achieving sustainability and in eliminating or minimising the production of wastes and adverse environmental effects throughout the complete life cycle of products and processes. Waste composition and characterisation including solid, liquid, hazardous and special wastes. Technologies utilised in cleaner production, waste treatment and waste disposal. Case studies and practical work.  
*Restriction: 420.664, 425.730*
- ENVSCI 716** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Risk Assessment**  
 Environmental, human health, ecological and industrial risk assessment. Identification and characterisation of environmental hazards, effect pathways, consequences and likelihood of occurrence. Environmental and human toxicology (including occupation and public exposure) and establishing cause-effect and dose-response relationships. Relevant policy, strategic and legislative contexts. Case studies and practical work.  
*Restriction: 425.742*
- ENVSCI 717** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Risk Management**  
 Application of risk assessment to the management of environmental and human health risks. Risk-based decision-making in the management of environmental hazards, including the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act. Case studies detailing risk management procedures, including

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

the assessment, remediation and future use options of contaminated sites. Practical work.

Restriction: 425.742

**ENVSCI 722 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Biogeochemistry**

The interaction between geochemical and biochemical processes in natural and anthropogenically affected environments. Consists of a series of research case studies demonstrating the important role biological processes can play in the perturbation of geochemical reactions, cycles and their products.

Restriction: 424.712

**ENVSCI 726 (2 Points)**

**Principles and Dynamics of Marine Reserves**

The application of biogeographical and ecological principles to the design of marine reserve systems. Topics will include: network design, scientific controls, conservation of biological diversity, support for fisheries, case studies, existing and future policies with examples from New Zealand and overseas.

Restriction: 424.721

**ENVSCI 731 (2 Points)**

**Ecological Assessment**

The scientific principles and methods for assessment and monitoring of the natural environment, and the use of the biota for monitoring the quality of the environment. The course will consist of one block of intensive instruction, at the Golden Cross Mine Rehabilitation Project, Waihi. The focus will be on the use and communication of modern field techniques and analysis methods in ecological research, survey and monitoring. Examples will include: determination of methodology appropriate to issue, methods for measuring abundance, recording behaviour, assessing pattern, vegetation classification and ordination, as well as assessing damage and disturbance.

Restriction: 422.741

**ENVSCI 732A (2 Points)**

**ENVSCI 732B (2 Points)**

**Forest Ecology and Management**

The dynamics of change in forest ecosystems, with emphasis on the effects of climate change. Plantation forestry. Influences and management of pests, especially herbivores and weeds. Sustainable management, conservation and community restoration in New Zealand. Techniques in vegetation reconstruction, assessment and monitoring. Students are expected to participate in field exercises.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of Ecology at Stage III or equivalent to BIOSCI 391 is assumed*

Restriction: 422.721

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVSCI 732 A and B*

**ENVSCI 733 (2 Points)**

**Biodiversity Management and Conservation**

Management techniques for ecosystems, threatened species, and conservation areas, including potential synergies and conflicts with the management of historic resources, Bio-security and pest management for conservative purposes. National

and international mechanisms for the effective and sustainable management of natural resources.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding equivalent to BIOSCI 394 is assumed.*

Restriction: 420.661, 422.720, 422.742

**ENVSCI 734 (2 Points)**

**Landscape and Restoration Ecology**

The integration of ecological principles and ecological services at the landscape level for both management and restoration. Topics include: the ecology of fragmented ecosystems such as demography, metapopulation issues, ecological genetics, biota-physical environment interactions, the consequences and techniques for restoration of damaged ecosystems and mitigation of the effects of development. Emphasis will be on sustainable solutions including biophysical, legal, social, cultural and economic considerations.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding equivalent to BIOSCI 393 is assumed.*

Restriction: 422.722, 422.743, 422.744

**ENVSCI 735 (2 Points)**

**Maori Resource Management**

An introduction to cultural concepts and practices concerning the environment and resource management. Consideration of the ways in which the indigenous peoples of Australia and North America have cared for and managed their resources will provide a comparative context for a more detailed study of traditional Maori-environment relationships. Particular attention will be given to kaitiakitanga and how natural resources were traditionally managed. Modern approaches incorporating both traditional ecological knowledge (TEK) and Western science will then be discussed. Students will be expected to carry out their own research with either a traditional or contemporary focus, concerning the sustainable management of resources by indigenous peoples.

Restriction: 422.720, 422.745

**ENVSCI 736 (2 Points)**

**Sustainable Production and Consumption Systems**

Managing the interface between ecological and social systems for the purpose of achieving environmentally sustainable resource use. The relevant economic, legal, political and other social factors that contribute to sustainable production and consumption. Linking programmes at government, business and household levels to encourage changes to production processes, products and purchasing.

Restriction: ENVMGT 665

**ENVSCI 796A (7 Points)**

**ENVSCI 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Environmental Science**

*To complete this course students must enrol in ENVSCI 796 A and B*

**Ergonomics**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**ERGONOM 796A (7 Points)**

**ERGONOM 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Ergonomics**

*Prerequisite: Permission of Chair of Board of Studies*

*To complete this course students must enrol in ERGONOM 796 A and B*

---

**Food Science**


---

**Stage II****FOODSCI 201 (2 Points)****Foundations of Food Science**

The aim of this course is to give the student a general appreciation of the composition and structure of food. Material covered includes the molecular structure of the major food components and how they are altered by processing and preservation. Common foods will be studied in order to understand the complex relationships between food molecules and the physical structure of foods. Topical issues such as genetically modified foods and food irradiation will be included.

**Stage III****FOODSCI 301 (2 Points)****Food Quality Attributes**

Attributes that make food attractive, such as colour, flavour and texture, and how they alter during processing are studied. Texture measurement and sensory science are major components of this course. Methods of studying food structure will be discussed. Lectures will be given on non-destructive testing of food.

**FOODSCI 302 (2 Points)****Food Preservation**

The fundamental principles of freezing and thawing, thermal processing and canning, fermentation and dehydration are studied. Consideration is also given to emerging technologies, with an eye to methods of most interest to New Zealand food industries. An overview of the major causes of food degradation, from microbiological to chemical, is presented. Methods of shelf-life testing are introduced with an emphasis on the maintenance of the nutritive value, safety of the food product and appeal to the consumer.

**Diploma Courses****FOODSCI 691A (2 Points)****FOODSCI 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Food Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in FOODSCI 691 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses****FOODSCI 703 (2 Points)****Food Processing**

Preservation of food by standard methods including freezing, dehydration and thermal processing. New developments in food preservation. Unit operations, mass and energy balance, and heat transfer are covered. Chemical and physical changes food undergoes during processing.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.702*

**FOODSCI 704 (2 Points)****Food Biotechnology**

Bioprocess engineering fundamentals, fermentation processes, fermenter design and operation, bioseparations, food biotechnology.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.702*

**FOODSCI 705A (1 Point)****FOODSCI 705B (1 Point)****Project in Food Science**

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*To complete this course student must enrol in FOODSCI 705 A and B*

**FOODSCI 706 (2 Points)****Food Safety**

The understanding of the changing regulations that apply to the New Zealand food industry is of paramount importance. The Food Amendment Act of 1996 which allows the Australia New Zealand Joint Food Standards Agreement to come into force will be examined in detail. HACCP and risk management plans will be generated.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Programme Director*

**FOODSCI 707 (2 Points)****Food Science**

Chemical, biological and physical aspects of foods. The decomposition of food due to lipid oxidation, enzymic and non-enzymic browning. Emulsions and foams. Integrated study of selected basic foods.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.701*

**FOODSCI 708 (2 Points)****Advanced Food Science**

The functions and properties of food additives. Food attributes including colour, flavour and texture. Sensory science. Introduction to the Food Regulations. Interaction of macromolecules.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

*Restriction: 426.701*

**FOODSCI 709A (1 Point)****FOODSCI 709B (1 Point)****Selected Topics in Food Science and Technology**

Modules will be organised by the staff and invited lecturers. Topics offered will usually be based on the specialist interests of the lecturers, although controversial issues may be included (for example, genetically modified food, irradiated food). Students may be required to participate actively by contributing seminars. Topics may vary from year to year.

*To complete this course students must enrol in FOODSCI 709 A and B*

**FOODSCI 710 (2 Points)****Industrial Internship**

The industrial internship is an opportunity for students to experience the food industry at first hand. While the placement would normally be in New Zealand, overseas internships are possible. The student will work in the food organisation on a defined project under the supervision of a suitably qualified person. A detailed written report on the assignment must be submitted.

**FOODSCI 789A (3 Points)****FOODSCI 789B (3 Points)****BSc(Hons) Dissertation in Food Science and Technology**

A research proposal will be prepared on the dissertation topic. Students will be required to present an overview of the proposal in a seminar.

Students will participate in the critical analysis of scientific papers. The student will carry out an original piece of research. The results will be presented and discussed in a dissertation. A seminar based on the research will be given.

To complete this course students must enrol in FOODSCI 789 A and B

**FOODSCI 796A** (7 Points)

**FOODSCI 796B** (7 Points)

**MSc Thesis in Food Science**

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

To complete this course student must enrol in FOODSCI 796 A and B

**Forensic Science**

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**FORENSIC 701** (2 Points)

**Fundamental Concepts in Forensic Science**

Ethics and quality assurance in forensic science. Principles of criminal law, principles of evidence and procedure, expert evidence, interpretation of scientific evidence, probability and statistics. Forensic pathology, psychology and psychiatry.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 702** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Forensic Science**

Forensic biology, documents, fingerprints, physical evidence, toolmarks, fire examination, explosives, hairs and fibres, drugs, toxicology, alcohol (including blood and breath alcohol), crime scene examination, firearms identification.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 703** (2 Points)

**Statistics and Biology for Forensic Science**

Statistics: data summarisation and reduction, laws of probability, conditional probability, likelihood ratios and Bayes theorem. Interpretation of statistical results. Forensic biology: basic principles of population genetics, genomic structure, conventional blood grouping. DNA profiling: structure, enzymology and basic chemistry of nucleic acids, RFLP analysis, PCR and microsatellites, interpretation of DNA profiles.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 704** (2 Points)

**Techniques and Applications for Forensic Science**

Analytical techniques: GC, HPLC, GC-MS chromatography, IR and UV spectroscopy. Applications: toxicology, illicit drugs, sports drugs, racing chemistry. Physical and trace evidence.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 705A** (1 Point)

**FORENSIC 705B** (1 Point)

**Project in Forensic Science**

A research essay on an aspect of forensic science.

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Programme Director*

To complete this course students must enrol in FORENSIC 705 A and B

**FORENSIC 706** (2 Points)

**Environmental Forensic Science**

Concepts of environmental science. Environmental monitoring and spill analysis, environmental

legislation, criminal and environmental law. Case studies and practical work.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**FORENSIC 796A** (7 Points)

**FORENSIC 796B** (7 Points)

**MSc Thesis in Forensic Science**

*Prerequisite: Permission of the Programme Director*

To complete this course students must enrol in FORENSIC 796 A and B

**Geography**

**Stage I**

**GEOG 101** (2 Points)

**Geography of the Natural Environment**

Examines the interrelationships between various components of the natural environment and includes: climate, hydrology, coastal and fluvial geomorphology, and biogeography using environmental processes as an integrating theme. Topics include: the atmospheric and hydrological systems, channel processes and stream patterns, physical forces shaping the coast, glacial processes and environmental change.

*Restriction: GEOG 151*

**GEOG 102** (2 Points)

**Geography of the Human Environment**

Examines the relationships among personal geographies and global geographies of uneven development, economic, environmental and socio-cultural change. Using a variety of examples from New Zealand and the world we illustrate the connection between local places and global issues.

*Restriction: GEOG 152*

**GEOG 151** (2 Points)

**Earth and Atmospheric Systems**

An introduction to general principles and issues of contemporary geoscience. Emphasis is on the structure and dynamics of climatic and earth surface processes and the flow of energy and water through natural environmental systems. Relationships with human activity are also considered.

*Restriction: GEOG 101*

**GEOG 152** (2 Points)

**Geography and Human Affairs**

Introduces geographic approaches to environmental, economic and social processes as they impact on social patterns of human development and resource use at regional, national and international levels. The relationships among processes and their geographic outcomes are explored through discussion of sustainable development, urbanisation and the organisation of cities, uneven development, globalisation, and economic restructuring.

*Restriction: GEOG 102*

**Stage II**

*Students majoring in Geography should note the regulations for the Geography Major; in particular, they must complete GEOG 204.*

**GEOG 201** (2 Points)

**Processes in the Natural Environment**

Selected topics in climatology, hydrology,

biogeography, and geomorphology. The course focuses on near-surface processes in the physical environment, explored using a range of conceptual approaches and research methods.

*Restriction: GEOG 251*

**GEOG 202 (2 Points)**

**Geography of Society and Economic Change**

A critical examination of the geographic processes and consequences in contemporary society. Topics are selected from the instructors' research interests, which include: the transformation of urban places and spaces; the forms and location of industries and retailing; social geographies of the city; New Zealand's linkages with the global economy and society; urban historical geographies; and demographic and social changes in New Zealand and the Pacific region. The course is developed around the core themes of production, consumption and identity as important foci for the examination of society.

*Restriction: GEOG 252*

**GEOG 204A (1 Point)**

**GEOG 204B (1 Point)**

**Geographic Data Analysis**

Introduces a range of techniques employed in geographical analysis, focusing on data analysis and display. The course covers instruction in the use of computer applications, cartography, introductory geographic information systems [GIS], remote sensing and statistical analysis. It caters for students with all levels of mathematical background but assumes that students have some familiarity with computers from the Stage I Geography courses, and at some stage have done a course in basic statistical methods.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 204 A and B*

**GEOG 205 (2 Points)**

**Environmental Processes and Management**

Provides a foundation for understanding approaches to environmental management. Case studies demonstrate the importance of considering both physical and human dimensions, including biophysical processes, cultural attitudes to the environment, political processes, and socio-economic factors.

*Restriction: GEOG 255*

**GEOG 251 (2 Points)**

**Earth Surface and Atmospheric Processes**

Selected studies of natural processes operating in climatic, hydrologic, geomorphic and biotic systems. Emphasis is on the role of water and energy in earth surface and atmospheric processes. Relationships with human activity are also considered.

*Restriction: GEOG 201*

**GEOG 252 (2 Points)**

**Society and Environment**

Develops geographic concepts and analytical models relevant to the study of change in the relationships between society and environment. How processes and changes impact upon people and environment is examined in the context of social and economic development; the social geography of the city; links between culture, identity and place; historical

geographies of the the city; and the location of economic activities.

*Restriction: GEOG 202*

**GEOG 255 (2 Points)**

**Human Impact on the Environment**

A wide range of perspectives on the roles of people and society in environmental change are presented in this course. Economic, sociological, behavioural, political, biological and physical topics are explored within the theme of human impact on the environment.

*Restriction: GEOG 205*

**Stage III**

*Students majoring in Geography should note the regulations for the Geography Major; in particular, they must complete one of GEOG 315, 330, 353.*

**GEOG 302 (2 Points)**

**Regions, Industries and Enterprises**

Examines economic, social and political processes underpinning recent transformations in the global economy. Debates concerning the transition from Fordism to post-Fordism and flexible accumulation are examined in conjunction with an analysis of the role of firms, industries, nation states and supra-national organisations in changing the character of regions.

**GEOG 305 (2 Points)**

**Population, Health and Society**

A survey of major themes in population, health and social geography. An examination of the dynamics of population complements analyses of health and health care, the education sector, the welfare state, and the changing character of urban places.

**GEOG 312 (2 Points)**

**Development in the Asia-Pacific Region**

Examines development processes and issues in the countries of South-East Asia and the Pacific Islands. Themes central to development studies in this broad region on the Western Pacific Rim include: development theory, colonialism and historical change, population dynamics, agrarian systems and change, migration, urbanisation, international linkages, and development strategies.

**GEOG 313 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Analytical Methods in Geography**

An introduction to multivariate statistical methods and their application to model building and systems analysis.

**GEOG 315 (2 Points)**

**Research Design and Methods in Human Geography**

A lecture, practical and field course, the focus of which is a residential field section during the mid-semester study break. The course provides students with experience in designing and executing a research project. It is designed both to prepare students for the increasing number of jobs that require these research skills and as an introduction to research for those proceeding to higher degrees.

**GEOG 317 (2 Points)**

**Remote Sensing of the Environment**

An introduction to the basic concepts and theories

in aerial photography, remote sensing from space, and image analysis. The characteristics of a wide variety of remote sensing images are examined. The course also includes the development of image interpretation skills and mastering of various interpretation instruments. Emphasis is on the proper use of remotely-sensed material.

**GEOG 318 (2 Points)**  
**Geographic Information Analysis**

An introduction to a range of basic concepts and methods involved in using Geographic Information Systems (GIS). The course covers the analytical and display capabilities of GIS, with a practical emphasis on non-programmable solutions.

*Restriction: 430.314*

**GEOG 319 (2 Points)**  
**Adapting GIS for Analysis**

An extension of the material presented in GEOG 318, furthering the knowledge of the theory and practice of geo-spatial analysis and culminating in a practical GIS project. The lectures develop conceptual and technical material associated with GIS, covering a wide range of object- and field-based spatial data models for GIS. The laboratory sessions serve as an introduction to various customisation languages, one of which will then be practised in-depth in a GIS project in an area identified by the student.

*Restriction: 430.314*

**GEOG 320 (2 Points)**  
**Resources and Environmental Management**

Examines the development and conservation of the environment in its use as a resource base, with particular reference to the way in which institutional structures in society determine provision and allocation. Attention is balanced between international experience and the policy framework in New Zealand. The course provides an understanding of key concepts, practices and methods.

**GEOG 321 (2 Points)**  
**Geography of the Maori**

Focuses upon Maori concepts in geography. Specific topics include: environmental and cultural landscape; an historical geography including origins, migrations and settlement patterns, population, land tenure and land loss, early agriculture and trade; and the contemporary scene - urbanisation, housing, health, resource management and the fisheries.

**GEOG 322 (2 Points)**  
**Culture and Environment in East Asia**

This course takes a topical and regional approach to the geography of East Asia. The unity and diversity of East Asia, environment and cultural development, industrialisation and urbanisation, population problems, and environmental management are emphasised.

**GEOG 330 (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods in Physical Geography**

Research design and associated research methods from the component fields of physical geography. A residential field trip forms a focus for the course. On

this trip, students will work under supervision in small groups and apply selected research methods and techniques to a research project. Fieldwork will be followed by the development and presentation of the research project.

**GEOG 331 (2 Points)**  
**Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology**

An integrated study of hydrological and fluvial processes in a river basin context. Content includes: examination of the water balance, run off generating processes and river hydrology, integrated with investigation of sediment sources and transport and resulting deposits. Scientific principles are applied to selected practical problems.

**GEOG 332 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Physical Geography**

This course deals in detail with topics drawn from one or more of: geomorphology, environmental change, climatology or biogeography. The emphasis is on understanding natural environmental processes.

**GEOG 333 (2 Points)**  
**Topics in Geography**

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department*

**GEOG 351 (2 Points)**  
**Coastal and Marine Geography**

An investigation of natural processes and mechanisms operating at a range of scales in coastal and marine environments, with an emphasis on estuaries and open coast sandy beaches. This provides the basis for discussion of applications in modelling and resource management.

**GEOG 352 (2 Points)**  
**Environmental Geography**

In this course, people's interactions with the environment are examined from perspectives and approaches that include ecology, political economy, culture, technology and history. Emphasis is placed on understanding the roles of environmental knowledge, grass roots organisations, government policy, poverty and underdevelopment within an environmental framework, and with the issue of sustainability in mind.

**GEOG 353 (2 Points)**  
**Field Studies in Geography**

This course is designed to integrate the natural and human aspects of geography in applied situations. Emphasis is placed on the design of field experiments, techniques for data collection, analysis and presentation of results. The course includes a fieldwork component, plus a laboratory component.

---

**Diploma Courses**

**GEOG 690A (2 Points)**  
**GEOG 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Geography)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 690 A and B*

**GEOG 691 (4 Points)**

**GEOG 691A (2 Points)**

**GEOG 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Geography)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 691 A and B, or GEOG 691*

**Honours and Master's Courses****GEOG 701A (1 Point)****GEOG 701B (1 Point)****Theory and Practice of Geography**

The discipline of geography is shaped within a dynamic philosophical and methodological context. Sub-disciplinary research foci reflect both a history of ideas and a fusion of contemporary debates. The historical and philosophical context of contemporary geography, plus issues relating to research methods, are addressed.

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 701 A and B*

**GEOG 711 (2 Points)****Regions, Networking and Governance**

The changing geography of growth and globalisation in the contemporary world economy, as a context for enterprise strategy, governance arrangements, economic and environmental transformation and regional change.

**GEOG 712 (2 Points)****Society and Culture**

Contemporary geographic perspectives on society and culture, focusing on constructions of place and environment, ethnicity, gender and identity.

**GEOG 718 (2 Points)****Special Topic****GEOG 719 (2 Points)****Geography of Urbanisation**

An examination of New Zealand urbanisation in a historical geographical perspective, by drawing upon comparisons with Australian, North American and British urbanisation. The course is concerned with historical processes structuring urban society, the regional distribution of cities, the changing built form of cities and towns, changing social and economic patterns within cities, changing conceptions of what constitutes urban problems and urban planning, and environmental aspects of urbanisation.

**GEOG 721 (2 Points)****Place and Transformations in the Pacific**

Economic, socio-cultural, geopolitical and environmental transformations of Pacific Island nations and societies are considered in their historical context, but with a focus on the contemporary implications of change. The study of place ranges from the meaning of land to the international linkages which are increasingly important in mediating change.

**GEOG 722 (2 Points)****Sustainable Land Use**

The role of natural resources, the state and economic and social forces in influencing the sustainable use of land in rural and urban areas of developed economies.

**GEOG 723 (2 Points)****Cultural Geography**

A review of traditional and new cultural geographic approaches and an examination of topics in cultural landscape as text, genementality, ethnogeography, place and folklore.

**GEOG 724 (2 Points)****Geography of Production and Trade**

Focuses upon the role of production-consumption systems in the formation of regional economies. Attention is given to the characteristics of the firms and industries which comprise these systems, and to the global capitalist economy in which they operate.

**GEOG 725 (2 Points)****Population Studies**

Explores the changing nature of human populations in New Zealand, the Pacific and worldwide. The theories and methods of population studies are reviewed, but the focus is on the implications of these changes for contemporary societies.

**GEOG 726 (2 Points)****Geographies of Health and Place**

An exploration of the contested concept of place and relationships between place and identity, health status and service provision.

**GEOG 727 (2 Points)****Geography of the Built Environment**

The built environment is both a locus of social interaction and a medium of investment. The dynamic interrelationships between economic social processes and the built environment of developed economies are considered. Topics covered include: housing issues (privatisation and gentrification), office development processes, 'selling cities' and planning issues.

**GEOG 731 (2 Points)****Earth Surface Processes**

Contemporary processes operating at or near the earth's surface. The emphasis is on those processes, and their measurement and evaluation, which are common to investigations within the fields of biogeography, climatology, hydrology, geomorphology and pedology.

**GEOG 732 (2 Points)****Environmental Change**

The character and causes of environmental change at various time scales. Present understanding will be reviewed in the context of theory, field evidence and research techniques. Emphasis will be on past and present climate, sea-level, landform and biotic changes, but projections of future environmental change will also be considered.

**GEOG 738 (2 Points)****Special Topic****GEOG 739 (2 Points)****Special Topic****GEOG 741 (2 Points)****Biogeography**

Theory and quantitative methods (especially ordination and classification) for analysis of biodiversity, community species composition, and species-environment relationships. Methods for mapping species distributions, modelling habitat relationships, and conducting biological gap analyses are examined. Quantifying the effect of landscape spatial structure on species distributions and metapopulations is an underlying theme.

**GEOG 742 (2 Points)****Environmental Climatology**

Study of the atmosphere as environment. The focus is on the interplay between climate and human systems. Themes include: climate change, climate resource evaluation, impact assessment, climate and planning, recreation climates, thermal comfort, atmospheric hazards, and other topics in environmental climatology. Special consideration is given to human dimensions of climate.

**GEOG 743 (2 Points)****Geomorphology**

An analysis of major ideas in systematic and regional geomorphology, with examples from the Southwest Pacific and New Zealand. Topics covered include: tectonic geomorphology, estimating erosion, uplift and incision rates, glacial and eustatic influences on landscape development, karst and dating techniques. Associated fieldwork in New Zealand.

**GEOG 744 (2 Points)****Hydrology**

A field-based study of catchment hydrology. Emphasis is on near-surface processes, the water balance and hydrological modelling. Relevance to water resource planning is an important theme.

**GEOG 745 (2 Points)****Fluvial Geomorphology**

The transport of sediment in rivers. Theoretical foundations and quantitative analyses of open channel flow, movement of sediment, river morphology and channel types are explored.

**GEOG 746 (2 Points)****Coastal Dynamics**

An advanced study of the driving mechanisms and associated processes which shape coastlines and inner continental shelf environments. Morphodynamics is a unifying theme. The emphasis is on sand shorelines, but consideration is given to other coastal environments. Fieldwork is an essential part of the course.

**GEOG 747 (2 Points)****Coastal Evolution**

The evolution of coastal environments is examined, with particular reference to the primary variables that control landform development on the coast. Field investigations are used to demonstrate the interpretation of coastal evolution.

**GEOG 748 (2 Points)****Coastal Management**

Environmental management principles and practices are combined with our knowledge of the physical operation of coasts to consider coastal management. Particular emphasis is placed on recent developments in New Zealand, and includes current case studies.

**GEOG 751 (2 Points)****Resource Management**

A review of advanced management principles and concepts relating to New Zealand's resources and environment. A pragmatic examination of ethical

thought on human-environment relations and use of the environment as a resource. Interpretations of sustainability and sustainable development in the context of resources and the environment.

**GEOG 752 (2 Points)****Human-environment Relations**

The nature of human-environment relations and how theoretical and philosophical perspectives on these relations have changed through time. Special topics include: the environment-poverty relation, environmental change and human security, and human responses to environmental change.

**GEOG 753 (2 Points)****Environmental Management**

A critical review of environmental management grounded in the policy requirements for sustainable development. Examples from New Zealand explore social and environmental outcomes of management approaches. This analysis includes: consideration of agendas which potentially compete with environmental management: property rights, Maori heritage values, Treaty of Waitangi settlements and the call for environmental justice.

**GEOG 759 (2 Points)****Special Topic in Geography****GEOG 771 (2 Points)****Spatial Analysis**

Applications in human and physical geography are used to review theories and methods for quantitative analysis of spatial data. Software tools from spatial statistics, geostatistics, GIS and morphometry are used to analyse phenomena such as autocorrelation, clustering, and the modifiable areal unit problem.

**GEOG 772 (2 Points)****Remote Sensing**

In-depth examination of various components of digital image analysis, including image enhancement, rectification, classification, integration of remotely sensed data with GIS. Use of an image processing system. Development of research skills through completion of a project.

**GEOG 773 (2 Points)****GIS: Advanced Query and Display Systems**

The issues of query and display of geographic data are explored with particular emphasis on interactive cartography, visualisation tools, the map user interface, spatio-temporal queries and decision support. The needs of different users of geographic information are stressed and a project forms the basis for developing and evaluating specific aspects of interactive query and display.

**GEOG 774 (2 Points)****GIS and Modelling**

This course is on advanced spatial modelling with both GIS and other tools of geo-computation. Conceptual models in geography and neighbouring disciplines are examined leading towards an analysis of their possible implementation. At the end of the course, successful participants are expected to be able to argue for the 'G' in GIS. The contents will reflect the latest developments in cybernetics and geography.

<b>GEOG 779</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Special Topic</b>	
<b>GEOG 789A</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>GEOG 789B</b>	<b>(2 Points)</b>
<b>Honours Dissertation in Geography</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 789 A and B</i>	
<b>GEOG 796A</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>GEOG 796B</b>	<b>(7 Points)</b>
<b>Master's Thesis in Geography</b>	
<i>To complete this course students must enrol in GEOG 796 A and B</i>	

**Geology**

**Stage I**

**GEOLOGY 110** (2 Points)  
**Earth's Hazards and Resources**  
 Earth's hazards and their impact on society, including earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, landslides, climate change, flooding and erosion. The use of Earth's resources including minerals, rocks, water and energy, and its environmental impact.  
*May not be taken by students with 4 points or more at Stage II or Stage III in Geology.*

**GEOLOGY 111** (2 Points)  
**Physical Earth**  
 The Earth as a planet: Earth processes - volcanism, plutonism, metamorphism, sedimentation, formation and evolution of the Earth's lithosphere through time; geological evolution of New Zealand.

**GEOLOGY 112** (2 Points)  
**Earth's Dynamic Environments**  
 Major environmental events in Earth's development are examined including the evolution of life, past climate change, and processes that operate at Earth's surface such as weathering, erosion, sediment transport and deposition, and the deformation of rocks.  
*Restriction: 435.122*

**Stage II**

*For those majoring in Geology the field courses GEOLOGY 201 and 301 are compulsory.*

**GEOLOGY 201** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Field Geology**  
 An introduction to basic techniques of geological field work and mapping. The major part of this course focuses on the compulsory seven days of field work during which each student will be required to produce a geological map and supporting field records, rocks, fossils and a brief report based on a field mapping exercise. Field trip: refer to Department for details.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 112*  
*Corequisite: GEOLOGY 111*

**GEOLOGY 202** (2 Points)  
**Earth History**  
 Geological time and sedimentary records. Global cycles, extraterrestrial impacts and biotic events. Modern, integrative stratigraphic principles and

paleontology. Historical development of landscapes. Earth and life history, both global and New Zealand.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 112*  
*Restriction: 435.221*  
**GEOLOGY 203** (2 Points)  
**Earth Materials**  
 Principles of crystallography, optical mineralogy, identification of minerals in thin section, classification of rocks, interpreting rock textures, rock forming processes.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 111*  
*Restriction: 435.231 and 435.251*

**GEOLOGY 204** (2 Points)  
**Earth Structure**  
 Methods of structural geology, analysing sequences of deformation, introduction to applied geophysics, geophysics of plate boundaries and lithosphere.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 112*  
*Restriction: 435.211*

**GEOLOGY 205** (2 Points)  
**Dynamic Geology and Biota of New Zealand**  
 Faults and earthquakes in central and southern New Zealand, volcanism in the North Island, Gondwanan and New Zealand flora, evolution of New Zealand biota, development of the New Zealand land mass, New Zealand in the South-West Pacific.  
*Prerequisite: Any 10 points*

**Stage III**

**GEOLOGY 301** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Field Geology**  
 Introduction to photogeology and advanced field techniques. Students will be required to undertake a variety of field studies and produce field reports and geological maps of selected areas.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 4 points from GEOLOGY 202-204*

**GEOLOGY 302** (2 Points)  
**Modern Methods in Earth Science**  
 Geological and geochemical tools used to solve problems in Earth Science. Integrated case histories. Laboratories include problem sets, from alteration mineralogy and petrology.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 203*  
*Restriction: 435.341*

**GEOLOGY 303** (2 Points)  
**Paleoenvironments and Paleoecology**  
 Investigation and interpretation of past environments, illustrated with case studies from the fossil record and Quaternary sediments. Examination of the high-resolution records of Quaternary environments, as well as the dynamic signatures of evolution, paleobiology and paleoecology.  
*Prerequisite: Any 4 points at Stage II in Geology, Geography or Biological Sciences*  
*Restriction: 435.321 and 435.373*

**GEOLOGY 304** (2 Points)  
**Earth Systems and Processes**  
 Magmatic systems and processes, metamorphic reactions and processes, sedimentary budgets and cycles.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 203*  
*Restriction: 435.351 and 435.354*

- GEOLOGY 305** (2 Points)  
**Tectonics and Crustal Evolution**  
 Global mass balances, tectonics, basin analysis, rock associations and plate tectonics. Geochemical evolution of the lithosphere through geologic time.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 201 and 204*  
*Restriction: 435.311*
- GEOLOGY 340** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Mineral Deposits**  
 An introduction to the recognition of geological settings, utilisation and assessment of fossil fuel, metallic and industrial mineral deposits. Environmental impact of resource extraction and utilisation. Each student will be required to attend a one-day field class, usually arranged at a weekend during the semester.  
*Prerequisite: Either GEOLOGY 301 or enrolment in Resource Engineering*  
*Restriction: 435.241*
- GEOLOGY 361** (2 Points)  
**Applied Geophysics**  
 Geophysical techniques and their application to geological investigations, including the design and execution of field surveys, critical assessment of data, data processing, computer modelling and interpretation. Each student will be required to attend a total of three days of field classes, arranged during the mid-semester break and a weekend during the semester.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 204.*  
*An understanding of basic mathematics at the level covered in MATHS 102 and basic geology at the level covered in any Stage I course will be assumed.*
- GEOLOGY 372** (2 Points)  
**Case Histories in Engineering Geology**  
 The geology of dams, canals, tunnels, roads, viaducts, waste management and land development. Geotechnical hazards, seismotectonic hazard evaluation, photogeology, core logging and outcrop mapping. Site investigation methods. Each student will be required to attend two, one-day field classes, usually arranged at weekends during the semester.  
*Prerequisite: Either CIVIL 220 or GEOLOGY 201.*
- 
- Diploma Courses**
- GEOLOGY 690A** (2 Points)  
**GEOLOGY 690B** (2 Points)  
**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Geology)**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 690 A and B*
- GEOLOGY 691A** (2 Points)  
**GEOLOGY 691B** (2 Points)  
**PG Diploma Dissert (Geology)**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 691 A and B*
- GEOLOGY 693A** (2 Points)  
**GEOLOGY 693B** (2 Points)  
**PG Diploma Dissertation (Applied Geology)**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 693 A and B*
- 
- Honours and Master's Courses**
- GEOLOGY 701** (2 Points)  
**Engineering Geological Mapping**  
 A field-based course which provides hands-on experience in outcrop mapping, geomorphic mapping, and simple field testing of rocks and soils for geotechnical purposes.  
*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 372*
- GEOLOGY 703** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- GEOLOGY 704** (2 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- GEOLOGY 705** (2 Points)  
**Geological Hazards**  
 Principles of hazard assessment, risk evaluation and hazard mapping from a geological perspective. Examples from the literature and local experience of volcanic, seismic, tectonic, landslide and coastal zone hazards. Consideration of the type of hazard, magnitude, frequency, consequences and relation to risk assessment.
- GEOLOGY 706** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- GEOLOGY 707** (4 Points)  
**Special Topic**
- GEOLOGY 708** (1 Point)  
**Research Methods and Current Issues in Geology 1**  
 Current issues in geological sciences. Analytical tools and geological techniques essential for research in geological sciences (Part 1).
- GEOLOGY 709** (1 Point)  
**Research Methods and Current Issues in Geology 2**  
 Current issues in geological sciences. Analytical tools and geological techniques essential for research in geological sciences (Part 2).
- GEOLOGY 712** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Structural Geology and Tectonics**  
 Advanced methods and new developments in structural geology. Structural geology in the applied sciences (e.g. engineering geology, mineral deposits, hydrology, etc.). Recent results in global and extraterrestrial tectonics. West Pacific tectonics.  
*Prerequisite: A major in Geology or Geophysics including GEOLOGY 204*
- GEOLOGY 721** (2 Points)  
**Paleontology: Principles and Practice**  
 Advanced paleontology and paleoecology. Methods and various current topics, such as life in extreme environments, use of trace fossils in paleoenvironmental and basin analysis, anoxia signatures in past ocean basins, early life, reefs through time, biometric analysis of fossils.
- GEOLOGY 731** (2 Points)  
**Environmental Geochemistry**  
 Aqueous geochemistry, speciation, metal transport and solubilities in surface waters. Surface properties including colloids and weathering of minerals. Atmospheric chemistry. Geochemical cycles.  
*A knowledge of chemistry equivalent to that of GEOLOGY 302 will be assumed.*
- GEOLOGY 732** (2 Points)  
**Mineralogy**  
 Instrumental methods for physical and chemical

analysis of minerals. Minerals as reactants and products in geochemical reactions.

**GEOLOGY 741 (2 Points)**

**Geochemistry of Ore Deposits**

Geochemistry of hydrothermal systems and fluids.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 302*

**GEOLOGY 742 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Ore Deposit Models**

Genesis of ore deposits. Models and case studies.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 340*

**GEOLOGY 751 (2 Points)**

**Igneous Processes**

The petrology of the major igneous associations and their role in the development and evolution of the earth's crust, with particular emphasis on igneous associations in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 304*

**GEOLOGY 752 (2 Points)**

**Volcanology**

Volcanic eruption processes, methods of study of volcanic products, the interpretation of volcanic deposits, structure of volcanoes, volcanic hazards and their mitigation.

**GEOLOGY 753 (2 Points)**

**Metamorphic Processes**

Processes of rock alteration, recrystallisation and material migration in the crust and lithosphere. Metamorphic phase equilibria and pressure-temperature-time-deformation relations, with examples from various metamorphic belts.

*Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 304 or 305*

**GEOLOGY 754 (2 Points)**

**Sedimentary Processes**

Development of sedimentary basins. Global versus local inputs. Fluid movement. Diagenesis.

**GEOLOGY 771 (2 Points)**

**Engineering Geology**

Geology applied to engineering construction and land development, geotechnical hazard assessment, waste disposal and the geotechnical aspects of resource management. Case studies and a field project.

*No formal prerequisites but knowledge of engineering geology and practical methods at the level of GEOLOGY 372 will be assumed.*

**GEOLOGY 772 (2 Points)**

**Hydrogeology and Ground Water Resources**

Principles of hydrogeology, the practice and methods of defining and managing groundwater resources and water quality.

**GEOLOGY 773 (2 Points)**

**Quaternary Geology**

Glacial/interglacial sequences, sea-level change, paleoclimates, correlation (isotopes, tephra, palynology etc.), neotectonics, landscape evolution and paleoenvironmental reconstruction, human impact. Case Studies.

**GEOLOGY 789 (4 Points)**

**GEOLOGY 789A**

**GEOLOGY 789B**

**BSc(Hons) Dissertation in Geology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 789 A and B, or GEOLOGY 789*

**GEOLOGY 795A (7 Points)**

**GEOLOGY 795B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Applied Geology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 795 A and B*

**GEOLOGY 796A (7 Points)**

**GEOLOGY 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Geology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in GEOLOGY 796 A and B*

**Geophysics**

**Stage III**

**GEOPHYS 330 (2 Points)**

**Solid Earth and Applied Geophysics**

Discussion of the physics of the solid Earth, includes: the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics. The applied geophysics section covers the theoretical basis of geophysical exploration techniques, including seismic, potential field and electrical methods.

*No formal prerequisites, but it will be assumed that students have either passed, PHYSICS 213, 230 and 2 points in Geology, or GEOLOGY 204, and PHYSICS 111 or MATHS 151, and 2 other points in Physics.*

*Restriction: 453.330*

**GEOPHYS 331 (2 Points)**

**Physics of the Atmosphere and Ocean**

The application of fluid dynamics to the motion of the atmosphere and oceans. Marine topics include: ocean structure, oceanic circulation, underwater acoustics, tides and waves. Atmospheric topics include: boundary layer meteorology and the microphysics of clouds and precipitation. A weekend field trip is a component of the course.

*No formal prerequisites, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 213, and 230 will be assumed*

*Restriction: 453.331, GEOPHYS 332, 333*

**GEOPHYS 332 (2 Points)**

**Physics of the Ocean**

The principles of physics governing ocean circulation with emphasis on the effects of the Earth's rotation on fluid motion. Topics include: properties of seawater, underwater acoustics, geostrophic flow, global wind and density driven circulation, planetary waves, El Nino, air-sea interaction, tides, and coastal and estuarine dynamics.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 213 and 230 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: 453.331, PHYSICS 331*

**GEOPHYS 333 (2 Points)**

**Physics of the Atmosphere**

The application of physics to describing atmospheric composition, motion and energy transfers. Vertical structure, moisture, and stability are treated together with radiative driving to provide a context for discussion of large scale systems such as cyclones and fronts.

No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 213 and 230 will be assumed.  
Restriction: 453.331, PHYSICS 331

### Diploma Courses

**GEOPHYS 690A** (2 Points)

**GEOPHYS 690B** (2 Points)

#### Graduate Diploma Dissertation in Geophysics

To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 690 A and B

**GEOPHYS 691A** (2 Points)

**GEOPHYS 691B** (2 Points)

#### PG Diploma Dissertation in Geophysics

To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 691 A and B

### Honours and Master's Courses

**GEOPHYS 761** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Applied Geophysics 1

The theory and practice of seismic and ground-penetrating radar methods. Topics include: basic theory, theory of methods, data acquisition, data processing, and interpretation. Students are required to select four of the five topics.

Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 361 and 330

Restriction: GEOPHYS 763

**GEOPHYS 762** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Applied Geophysics 2

The theory and practice of potential field, electrical and electro-magnetic methods. Topics include: basic theory, theory of methods, data acquisition, data processing and interpretation of gravity and magnetic data and of electrical data. Students are required to select four of the five topics.

Prerequisite: GEOLOGY 361 and 330

Restriction: GEOPHYS 763

**GEOPHYS 763A** (1 Point)

**GEOPHYS 763B** (1 Point)

#### Advanced Applied Geophysics 3

A selection of four of the topics in GEOPHYS 761 and 762. Either the physical principles of applied geophysical methods, or the practice of applied geophysical methods, including data acquisition, data processing, and interpretation.

Prerequisite: Either 2 points in Stage III Physics or Geophysics or GEOLOGY 361

Restriction: GEOPHYS 761, 762

To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 763 A and B

**GEOPHYS 796A** (7 Points)

**GEOPHYS 796B** (7 Points)

#### MSc Thesis in Geophysics

To complete this course students must enrol in GEOPHYS 796 A and B

### Marine Science

#### Stage II

**MARINE 202** (2 Points)

#### Principles of Marine Science

An introduction to the physical and biological structure of the oceans, sea floor, coastlines and the biological communities that inhabit them. Subject matter includes: physical and chemical properties of

seawater; structure of estuarine, coastal and open water masses; the nature of coastlines, continental shelves and deep sea sediments; biological communities of open ocean sea floor systems.

No formal prerequisites although an understanding of Stage I level science is assumed

Restriction: 423.202, 424.201, ENVSCI 202

#### Stage III

**MARINE 302** (2 Points)

#### Dynamics of Marine Systems

An overview of fundamental processes in the marine environment with an emphasis on interdisciplinary linkages in the functioning of marine ecosystems. Ocean-atmosphere interaction in global climate and El Nino marine sedimentary processes; the oceans role in biogeochemical cycles.

No formal prerequisites although an understanding of marine science to the level of MARINE 202 will be assumed

Restriction: 423.302, 424.301, ENVSCI 302

### Honours and Master's Courses

**MARINE 701A** (1 Point)

**MARINE 701B** (1 Point)

#### Selected Topics in Marine Science

Interdisciplinary case studies in marine science including: the role of hydrodynamic processes in biological processes such as larval dispersal and fertilisation; the importance of chemical processes in biological productivity and ecological interactions in the sea; geomorphological processes and their interactions with the physical and biological environment in both coastal and the deep sea environments.

Prerequisite: No formal prerequisites but an understanding of marine processes equivalent to MARINE 301 is assumed

Restriction: ENVSCI 721

To complete this course students must enrol in MARINE 701 A and B

**MARINE 723** (2 Points)

#### Estuarine and Coastal Processes

Physical, biological and geochemical properties and processes of estuaries and coastal oceans including fjords, drowned river valleys, bar-built and tectonic estuaries, and continental shelf seas. Issues of enhancement and management of environmental health and biological productivity are emphasised. Topics include: circulation and mixing in estuaries and shallow seas; exchanges with the deep ocean; estuarine vegetation and fauna; sediments. Themes are illustrated through discussion of case studies from New Zealand and other regions.

Restriction: 424.719, 424.720, ENVSCI 723

**MARINE 727** (2 Points)

#### Physical Oceanography

The description of the physical processes and properties of the ocean. Topics include: properties of seawater, hydrologic cycle, major ocean current systems, global distribution of winds, wind driven and density driven currents, air-sea interaction, equations of motion, Coriolis effects, waves, tides, diffusion and mixing, coastal and estuarine processes.

Restriction: 424.711, ENVSCI 727

**MARINE 796A** (7 Points)  
**MARINE 796B** (7 Points)  
**MSc Thesis in Marine Science**  
 To complete this course students must enrol in MARINE 796 A and B

## Mathematics

### Stage I

Students who do not have a strong background in Mathematics should contact the Student Learning Centre for details of its Maths Workshops.

**MATHS 101** (2 Points)  
**Mathematics 1**

Aims to build confidence in using mathematics in practical situations. Various pre-calculus topics are used to analyse problems in medicine, packaging, maps, patterns, chance and the environment.

For teacher education students and students who have not studied Mathematics at Bursary level. This course may not be taken with or after any other Mathematics course at Stage I or above.

**MATHS 102** (2 Points)  
**Mathematics 2**

A course for students whose mathematical background precludes entry to the courses MATHS 108 and 151. Syllabus includes: mathematical modelling; graphs and calculus of polynomial, trigonometric, exponential and logarithmic functions; graphs of rational and piecewise-defined functions; trigonometry; mathematical induction.

Recommended for students with no more than 55% in Bursary Mathematics with Calculus or 65% in Bursary Mathematics with Statistics, or equivalent. This course may not be taken with or after any other Mathematics course at Stage I except MATHS 101.

**MATHS 108** (2 Points)  
**Mathematics for Business and Technology 1**

Selected topics in algebra and calculus and their application in business, economics and technology including: sets; real numbers; integers; matrices; linear algebra including linear functions, equations and inequalities; linear programming; non-linear algebra including non-linear functions, equations and inequalities; limits and continuity; differential calculus of one and several variables; integral calculus of one variable.

Restriction: 445.107, ENGSCI 111, MATHS 130, 151, PHYSICS 111

**MATHS 109** (2 Points)  
**Further Mathematics**

A complementary course to MATHS 108, covering other topics from the standard core courses MATHS 151 and 152 essential to further study of mathematics including: vector geometry, number systems, induction, calculus of trigonometric functions, complex numbers, polynomials. Recommended preparation: MATHS 108.

Cannot be taken with or after 445.207 or MATHS 208  
 Restriction: MATHS 130, 151, 152, 230, PHYSICS 112

**MATHS 130** (2 Points)  
**Advanced Mathematics 1**

An accelerated Stage I course for very well prepared students which, along with its companion MATHS

230, covers the content of three courses (MATHS 151, 152 and 253) in two semesters. Topics include: complex numbers, introduction to linear algebra and vectors, differential and integral calculus of one variable.

Restriction: 445.107, ENGSCI 111, MATHS 108, 109, 151, 152, PHYSICS 111, 112

**MATHS 151** (2 Points)  
**Mathematics 3**

The standard entry-level course for students scoring well in Bursary Mathematics. Linear equations, matrix algebra, determinants. Functions, limits, differentiation, curve sketching, applications. Antiderivatives, integration, logarithmic and exponential functions, growth and decay problems. Recommended preparation: MATHS 102 or at least 50% in Bursary Mathematics with Calculus.

Restriction: 445.107, ENGSCI 111, MATHS 108, 109, 130, PHYSICS 111

**MATHS 152** (2 Points)  
**Mathematics 4**

Vector spaces and subspaces, linear transformations, linear independence, bases, coordinates. Eigenvalues. Dot and cross product, complex numbers, integers, Euclidean algorithm. Derivatives and integrals of trigonometric functions and their inverses, L'Hospital's rule, improper integrals. Applications. Parametric curves. Power series, Taylor and Maclaurin expansions. Partial derivatives, tangent planes, linear approximation, gradient. Recommended preparation: MATHS 108 or 151.

Restriction: MATHS 109, 130, 230, PHYSICS 112

**MATHS 153A** (1 Point)

**MATHS 153B** (1 Point)

### Accelerated Mathematics

Covers the essentials of MATHS 151 and 152 for high achieving seventh form students who have taken, or are currently taking, Bursary Mathematics with Calculus.

Enrolment requires permission from department

Restriction: ENGSCI 111, MATHS 108, 109, 130, 151, 152, PHYSICS 111, 112

To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 153 A and B

**MATHS 162** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Applied and Computational Mathematics**

An introduction to mathematical techniques and computer programming for modelling in the physical and non-physical sciences. Included are scientific computing, applications of algebra and calculus, Monte Carlo simulation, and mathematical modelling. Concurrent or prior enrolment in one of MATHS 108, 130 or 151 is recommended.

### Stage II

**MATHS 202** (2 Points)  
**Tutoring in Mathematics**

A mainly practical course in which selected students learn mathematics tutoring skills in a first-year university Mathematics classroom situation, following five weeks of lectures.

Prerequisite: Departmental consent required

**MATHS 208** (2 Points)  
**Mathematics for Business and Technology 2**

A sequel to the course MATHS 108 covering: further

matrix and vector algebra (solution of linear systems, least squares, eigenvalues, vector spaces), calculus of series and Taylor approximation, multivariable calculus and optimisation, differential equations and difference equations, and the use of symbolic computing with applications. Recommended preparation: MATHS 108, 130 or 152.

*Restriction: 445.207, 445.231, 445.251, MATHS 230, 260, PHYSICS 211*

**MATHS 210A** (1 Point)  
**MATHS 210B** (1 Point)

#### Contemporary Topics in Maths

A selection of six topics from various branches of the mathematical sciences, for students interested in teaching or in pursuing mathematics to graduate level. Further information about this course may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics. Recommended preparation: MATHS 109, 130, or 152 and concurrent enrolment in at least one other Stage II course in Mathematics.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 210 A and B*

**MATHS 230** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Mathematics 2

An accelerated Stage II course for very well prepared students which, along with its companion MATHS 130, covers the content of three courses (MATHS 151, 152 and 253) in two semesters. Topics include: vector spaces, linear transformations, eigenvalues and diagonalisation; differential and integral calculus of several variables; vector calculus.

*Restriction: MATHS 109, 152, 208, 253, ENG 211, 212*

**MATHS 253** (2 Points)

#### Mathematics 5

Inner product spaces and applications. Orthogonal diagonalisation and quadratic forms. Differential calculus for functions of several variables. Multiple integrals. Vector valued functions and space curves. Vector calculus. Green's theorem. Series.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 109, 130, 152, or 208*  
*Restriction: 445.252, MATHS 230, PHYSICS 211*

**MATHS 255** (2 Points)

#### Principles of Mathematics

An introduction to logic and proof; sets, relations and operations on sets; natural numbers, congruences; algebra of polynomials; complex numbers; examples of groups. Fundamental concepts of calculus in a rigorous setting: real numbers, sequences and convergence, continuity, uniform continuity, theorems on derivatives, Taylor's theorem.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 109, 130, 152, or 208*

**MATHS 260** (2 Points)

#### Differential Equations

Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations, including the solution of differential equations in terms of elementary functions, and qualitative and elementary numerical methods for gaining information about solutions. Applications of differential equations to scientific modelling. Concurrent or prior enrolment in MATHS 253 or its equivalent is strongly recommended.

*Restriction: PHYSICS 211*

**MATHS 267** (2 Points)

#### Applied and Computational Mathematics

Development and solution of mathematical models with examples from economics, environmental systems and industry. These models are often in the form of differential or difference equations and the course considers methods for their solution using symbolic and numerical computation.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 162 and concurrent or prior enrolment in MATHS 208 or its equivalent*

*Restriction: MATHS 270*

**MATHS 270** (2 Points)

#### Numerical Computation

An introduction to algorithms that are used to solve frequently-occurring problems in computation. The problems covered include linear and nonlinear systems of equations, interpolation, quadrature and ordinary differential equations. The use of a high-level programming language in scientific computing is also taught.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 109 or 152 and a computing course such as COMPSCI 101 or MATHS 162*

*Restriction: MATHS 267*

#### Stage III

**MATHS 302** (2 Points)

#### Introduction to Mathematics Education

A broad-based study of mathematics education in New Zealand which includes: social-political, gender, curriculum, assessment, technology and physiological issues in mathematics teaching and learning.

*Recommended preparation: at least 6 points from courses in Mathematics or Statistics*

*Restriction: 165.394*

**MATHS 307** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic in Mathematics Education A

**MATHS 308** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic in Mathematics Education B

Both MATHS 307 and 308 deal with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in Mathematics Education.

**MATHS 310** (2 Points)

#### History of Mathematics

A study of some of the topics occurring in the history of mathematics which facilitate the understanding of modern mathematics. These include: concepts of number, geometry, algebra, and the differential and integral calculus. Concurrent or prior enrolment in at least 4 points at Stage 3 in Mathematics is recommended.

*Corequisite: At least 4 points at Stage III in Mathematics*

**MATHS 315** (2 Points)

#### Mathematical Logic

Semantic and syntactic approaches to propositional logic, introduction to set theory and formal systems, first-order predicate logic, soundness and completeness of predicate calculus, an introduction to model theory, Godel's incompleteness theorem.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 225 or MATHS 225, and MATHS 255*

**MATHS 320** (2 Points)

#### Algebraic Structures

An introduction to modern algebra through the

study of groups, rings, fields, and other algebraic structures. Concepts such as those of a normal subgroup, homomorphism and isomorphism, direct products, quotients and extension fields, are illustrated with numerous examples.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 255*

**MATHS 322 (1 Point)**

**Applied Linear Algebra**

Eigen values, eigenvectors, normal and unitary matrices, spectral decomposition. The Jordan canonical form, the Cayley-Hamilton theorem and applications. Factorisations of matrices including QR-factorisation, singular-value decomposition, applications. Quadratic forms. The exponential and other functions defined on matrices.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 230, 253 or 270*

**MATHS 326 (2 Points)**

**Combinatorial Computing**

Aspects of the representation and generation of discrete mathematical structures, searching and sorting methods, graph algorithms, block designs, coding theory, and computational complexity (in a combinatorial setting). Some use of computer packages may be included.

*Recommended preparation: COMPSCI 225 or MATHS 225, and COMPSCI 101 or 111 or 114 or MATHS 162*

**MATHS 328 (2 Points)**

**Mathematics for Data Communication**

Applications of modern algebra, number theory and combinatorics to information theory: cryptography, error-correction, secret sharing and data compression.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 152, COMPSCI 225*  
*Restriction: MATHS 381*

**MATHS 330 (1 Point)**

**Introductory Real Analysis**

A study of the essentials of analysis (the theoretical background to calculus), including: elements of set theory, definition and properties of the real number system, sequences and series, continuity and differentiability, uniform convergence, and Riemann integration.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 255*  
*Restriction: 445.230*

**MATHS 331 (2 Points)**

**Analysis**

A course covering the combined content of MATHS 335 and 340. Metric and normed linear spaces, compactness, connectedness and completeness, differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables, and applications.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 230 and MATHS 330, or A- or better in MATHS 253*  
*Restriction: MATHS 335, 340, 347*

**MATHS 335 (1 Point)**

**Metric and Normed Spaces**

Metric and normed linear spaces (with particular reference to non-dimensional Euclidean space and continuous function spaces), concepts of uniform continuity, uniform convergence, compactness, connectedness and completeness, the contraction mapping theorem, and applications including the implicit function theorem and Banach's fixed-point theorem.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 255*

*Restriction: MATHS 331*

**MATHS 340 (2 Points)**

**Multivariable Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables: partial and directional derivatives, chain rule, divergence and gradient, maxima and minima, multiple and repeated integrals, Green's theorem, surface integrals, the Gauss divergence theorem and Stokes' theorem, applications.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 230 or 253*  
*Restriction: MATHS 331, 347*

**MATHS 345 (1 Point)**

**Introductory Complex Analysis**

Techniques of complex variables: the complex plane, differentiation of complex functions, the Cauchy-Riemann equations and applications, linear fractional transformations, complex integration, analytic functions and power series, calculation of integrals by residues.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 230 or 253.*

**MATHS 347 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of functions of several variables: complex numbers and introduction to functions of a complex variable, integral transforms, eigenvalue problems for differential equations, application to the solution of boundary value problems.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 208 or 253*  
*Restriction: MATHS 331, 340*

**MATHS 353 (2 Points)**

**Geometry and Topology**

A selection of topics providing an introduction to a range of concepts in geometry and general topology, with emphasis on visualisable aspects of these subjects. Topics include: some or all of the following: axiom systems, affine geometry, Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, projective geometry, symmetry, convexity, the geometric topology of manifolds, and algebraic structures associated with topological spaces.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 255*  
*Restriction: 445.350, 445.355*

**MATHS 361 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Methods in Applied Mathematics A**

Differential equations and differential calculus of applied mathematics: vector calculus; classification and methods for solution of partial differential equations; special solutions to wave, diffusion, and Laplace equations; special functions; qualitative analysis of systems of nonlinear ordinary differential equations.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 230 or 253, and MATHS 260*

**MATHS 362 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Methods in Applied Mathematics B**

Further mathematical methods for applied mathematics. Topics include: an introduction to the calculus of variations; orthogonal polynomials and applications; solutions of the diffusion and wave equations using Fourier series; Fourier transforms

and their approximation by discrete Fourier transforms; other integral transforms.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 361*

**MATHS 367** (2 Points)

**Advanced Applied and Computational Mathematics**

Development and solution of models related to a variety of industrial problems. Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations and partial differential equations, including numerical methods, are considered.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 260; 267 or 270, and MATHS 347 or 361*

*Restriction: MATHS 370*

**MATHS 370** (2 Points)

**Advanced Numerical Methods**

A sequel to the course MATHS 270, on the use and analysis of numerical algorithms. Topics covered include: numerical methods for the algebraic eigen value problem, matrix factoring, iterative methods for linear equations, ordinary differential equations, and elliptic and parabolic partial differential equations.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 270 and 361*

*Restriction: MATHS 367*

**MATHS 371** (1 Point)

**Mathematical Theory of Control**

Classical and modern theory of control: frequency space and state space descriptions of observation and control systems, stochastic and optimal control. The course covers dynamical and stability theories including Nyquist and Lyapunov stability.

**MATHS 372A** (1 Point)

**MATHS 372B** (1 Point)

**Industrial Mathematics Clinic**

An industrial case study involving the formulation, solution and interpretation of a problem presented by an industrial client. Field work, team effort, project presentation and report writing are emphasised.

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 267*

*Prerequisite: Departmental consent required*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 372 A and B*

**MATHS 381** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Mathematics A**

**MATHS 382** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Mathematics B**

**MATHS 383** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Mathematics C**

**MATHS 384** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Mathematics D**

Each of these courses deals with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in Pure Mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 386** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Applied Mathematics A**

**MATHS 387** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Applied Mathematics B**

**MATHS 388** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Applied Mathematics C**

*Recommended preparation: MATHS 361 and concurrent or prior enrolment in MATHS 347*

**MATHS 389** (2 Points)

**Special Topic in Applied Mathematics D**

Each of these courses deals with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in Applied and Computational Mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

---

**Diploma Courses**

**MATHS 690** (4 Points)

**MATHS 690A** (2 Points)

**MATHS 690B** (2 Points)

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Mathematics)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 690 A and B, or MATHS 690*

**MATHS 691** (4 Points)

**MATHS 691A** (2 Points)

**MATHS 691B** (2 Points)

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Mathematics)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 691 A and B, or MATHS 691*

**MATHS 692** (4 Points)

**MATHS 692A** (2 Points)

**MATHS 692B** (2 Points)

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Applied Mathematics)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 692 A and B, or MATHS 692*

**MATHS 693** (4 Points)

**MATHS 693A** (2 Points)

**MATHS 693B** (2 Points)

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Applied Mathematics)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 693 A and B, or MATHS 693*

---

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**MATHS 701** (2 Points)

**Research Issues in Mathematics Education**

Research methodology for mathematics and statistics education, designed to meet the needs of students planning a Master's level dissertation in Mathematics Education.

**MATHS 702** (2 Points)

**Mathematics Curriculum**

The historical development, current trends, theories and practice of the mathematics and statistics curricula, and the interconnections between curriculum development and other mathematics education issues.

**MATHS 703** (2 Points)

**Assessment in Mathematics Education**

The historical background, theories and recent research into the ways in which learners are assessed in mathematics and statistics education. This includes a focus on both theoretical and practical aspects of assessment in the mathematics classroom, and examination of the relationship between assessment and curriculum in the wider sense.

- MATHS 704** (2 Points)  
**Politics and History of Mathematics Education**  
 A critical examination of theories and recent writing about the way mathematics education changes across cultures and is a function of social variables within particular cultures, including the way mathematics itself is culturally and socially constructed. A case study approach is taken.  
*Restriction: 780.766*
- MATHS 705** (2 Points)  
**Socio-political Issues in Mathematics Education**  
 A selection of topics from cultural, social, historical and political issues arising in mathematics education. Critical examination of theories and current literature will be made, within a case-study approach.  
*Restriction: 780.765*
- MATHS 706** (2 Points)  
**Technology in Mathematics Education**  
 The use of computers and calculators in mathematics education, with a focus on both theoretical and practical aspects of the use of computers in the mathematics classroom. The pedagogical implications of computers for the present and the future of mathematics education are discussed.
- MATHS 707** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Mathematics Education A**
- MATHS 708** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Mathematics Education B**
- MATHS 709** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Mathematics Education C**
- MATHS 710** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Mathematics Education D**
- MATHS 711A** (2 Points)  
**MATHS 711B** (2 Points)  
**Special Topics in Mathematics Education E**  
 Each of these courses deals with some special topic(s) of contemporary interest in mathematics education. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 711 A and B*
- MATHS 712** (2 Points)  
**Mathematics and Learning**  
 An examination of a mathematical topic up to undergraduate level in the light of current research. The focus will be on investigating how that topic may be effectively learned at senior levels. Students taking this course should normally have studied mathematics or statistics at Stage II level.  
*Restriction: MATHS 704*
- MATHS 713** (2 Points)  
**Logic and Set Theory**  
 A study of the foundations of pure mathematics, formalising the notions of mathematical proof and mathematical structure through Predicate Calculus and Model Theory. Includes an exploration of the limits of these formalisations (including Godel's incompleteness theorems), and a study of Axiomatic
- Set Theory (including a discussion of consistency and independence). Offered every second (even) year.
- MATHS 714** (2 Points)  
**Number Theory**  
 A broad introduction to aspects of elementary, analytic and computational number theory, including some or all of the following: primitive roots, quadratic residues, Diophantine equations, primality testing (and applications to cryptography), the two- and four-squares theorems, arithmetical functions, Diophantine approximation, distribution of primes. Offered every second (odd) year.
- MATHS 715** (2 Points)  
**Graph Theory and Combinatorics**  
 Theory and applications of combinatorial graphs (networks), block designs, and error-correcting codes. Topics include: graph connectivity, trees, colourings, embeddings, digraphs, matchings, incidence matrices, eigen value methods, Steiner systems, perfect and linear codes.
- MATHS 720** (2 Points)  
**Groups, Fields and Galois Theory**  
 Fundamentals of group theory (including isomorphism, group presentations, group actions, Sylow's theorems, subnormal series and solubility), and the application of group theory to the study of fields and field extensions via the Galois group of a polynomial.
- MATHS 721** (2 Points)  
**Rings, Modules, Algebras and Representations**  
 A sequel to the course MATHS 320, investigating the properties, extensions and applications of further algebraic structures (such as modules and other algebras), and the representation of algebras in terms of matrices.
- MATHS 730** (2 Points)  
**Measure Theory and Integration**  
 Concepts, examples and properties of measures of sets, with emphasis on the Lebesgue and Lebesgue-Stieltjes measures, the Lebesgue integral, measure spaces, the Fubini theorems, signed and complex measures, the Lebesgue-Radon-Nikodym theorem, the Vitali system, absolutely continuous functions, and the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus.
- MATHS 731** (2 Points)  
**Functional Analysis**  
 Normed linear spaces, Banach spaces and Hilbert spaces, and some of the main developments in these areas. Highlights include: the Hahn-Banach theorem, the Banach-Steinhaus theorem, the Riesz Representation theorem, Fourier series, and the Spectral theorem.
- MATHS 735** (2 Points).  
**Analysis on Manifolds and Differential Geometry**  
 An introduction to differential geometry via the study of differentiable manifolds, tangent spaces and vector fields, differential forms, Stokes theorem, Frenet formulae, quadratic forms on surfaces, and the Gauss-Bonnet theorems.
- MATHS 737** (2 Points)  
**Topic(s) in Analysis**

A number of advanced or special topics in analysis. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 740 (2 Points)**

**Complex Analysis**

Analytic and harmonic functions, complex integration, hyperbolic geometry, conformal mappings, normal families, the Riemann mapping theorem, Mittag-Leffler and Weierstrass Theorems.

**MATHS 745 (2 Points)**

**Chaos, Fractals and Bifurcation**

Chaos, fractals and bifurcation, and their commercial, medical and scientific applications. Discrete iterations, including the Julia and Mandelbrot sets, iterated function systems and higher dimensional strange attractors. Quantum chaos and complexity theory are also discussed. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 747 (2 Points)**

**Topic(s) in Complex Analysis**

A number of advanced or special topics in complex analysis. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 750 (2 Points)**

**Topology**

Aspects of general, set-theoretic and algebraic topology including: properties and construction of topological spaces, continuous mappings, axioms of separation, countability, connectivity and compactness, metrisation, covering spaces, the fundamental group, homology groups, fixed-point theorems, and applications.

**MATHS 755 (2 Points)**

**Topic(s) in Geometry**

A number of advanced or special topics in geometry. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 757 (2 Points)**

**Topic(s) in Topology**

A number of advanced or special topics in topology. This course may not be offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 761 (2 Points)**

**Ordinary Differential Equations and Dynamical Systems**

Qualitative properties of nonlinear ordinary differential equations. Topics covered include: recurrent dynamics, asymptotic stability, structural stability, the Smale horseshoe, chaos, local and global bifurcations. This course is taught jointly with the Physics Department.

**MATHS 763 (2 Points)**

**Partial Differential Equations**

A study of partial differential equations frequently arising in applications. Topics include: classification of partial differential equations as hyperbolic,

parabolic, or elliptic equations, Hilbert space and approximate methods for analytic and numerical solution. This course is taught jointly with the Physics Department.

**MATHS 770 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Numerical Analysis**

Advanced techniques in numerical linear algebra, numerical ordinary and partial differential equations and numerical quadrature. The construction and analysis of algorithms for the solution of numerical problems. Introduction to numerical methods for integral equations, functional differential equations and differential algebraic equations.

**MATHS 775 (2 Points)**

**Mathematical Software**

The use of mathematical software in scientific computation. Topics include: the organisation of software libraries, the selection of the appropriate software, documentation, techniques to ensure the software is used correctly, the verification of the results, and the influence of different computer architectures.

**MATHS 781 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics A**

**MATHS 782 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics B**

**MATHS 783 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics C**

**MATHS 784 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Mathematics D**

Each of these courses deals with some special topic(s) from pure Mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 786 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics A**

**MATHS 787 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics B**

**MATHS 788 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics C**

**MATHS 789 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Topic(s) in Applied Mathematics D**

Each of these courses deals with some special topic(s) from Applied and Computational Mathematics. Not all of them are offered every year; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 791 (2 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics A**

**MATHS 792 (4 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics B**

**MATHS 793 (2 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics C**

**MATHS 794 (4 Points)**

**Project in Mathematics D**

Each of these courses involves participation in a research project or investigation in some topic from pure or applied mathematics, under the supervision

of one or more staff members, and presentation (by the student) of the results in a seminar; further information may be obtained from the Department of Mathematics.

**MATHS 795A (7 Points)**

**MATHS 795B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Applied Mathematics**

To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 795 A and B

**MATHS 796A (7 Points)**

**MATHS 796B (7 Points)**

**Master's Thesis Mathematics**

To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 796 A and B

**MATHS 797A (7 Points)**

**MATHS 797B (7 Points)**

**Advanced Studies in Mathematics**

An integrated combination of courses, research projects and investigations in a selection of topics in Mathematics, designed to meet the requirements of each individual student. The selection is subject to approval by the Head of Department of Mathematics.

To complete this course students must enrol in MATHS 797 A and B

**Optometry and Vision Science**

**Stage I**

**OPTOM 110 (2 Points)**

**Visual Optics**

Evolution and optics of the vertebrate and invertebrate eye. Schematic eyes. Ocular ametropia, mechanisms of accommodation. Light transmission in the eye. Aspherical and gradient index structures in the eye. Ocular aberrations. Measurement of ocular dimensions. Refractive errors of the human eye. Optical correction of refractive errors.

**OPTOM 150A (1 Point)**

**OPTOM 150B (1 Point)**

**Ocular Anatomy and Physiology**

Anatomy of the eyeball and related structures. Orbital fascia, vascular supply, lids, extraocular muscles, lacrimal apparatus, cornea, visual pathways, skull and orbit. Metabolism and physiology of the ocular tissues, media and the visual pathways.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 150 A and B

**OPTOM 160 (2 Points)**

**Geometrical and Physical Optics**

Optical radiation. Refraction and reflection at plane and spherical surfaces, prisms, thick lens theory, thin lens theory, lens systems, magnification, stops, paraxial ray tracing, aberrations, wave theory, interference, diffraction, absorption and scattering, polarisation, thin film optics, coherent optical processes, holography, fibre optics, optical materials.

**OPTOM 170 (2 Points)**

**Visual Science 1**

Light and vision, form vision, motion perception, colour vision, visual psychophysical measurements, eye movements and binocular vision.

**Stage II**

**OPTOM 211A (2 Points)**

**OPTOM 211B (2 Points)**

**Optometry**

The history and development of optometry as a health care profession, scope of optometric practice. Introduction to the optometric examination: vision and visual acuity, contrast sensitivity, visual fields, colour vision, slit lamp biomicroscopy, ophthalmoscopy, objective and subjective examination, near visual examination, routine binocular vision examination, history taking, communication skills, clinical problem-solving.

Restriction: 450.210, 450.220

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 211 A and B

**OPTOM 231 (2 Points)**

**General Pathology**

Mechanisms of disease, infection, inflammation, repair, cardiovascular disease, neoplasms, ageing.

**OPTOM 251A (1 Point)**

**OPTOM 251B (1 Point)**

**Ocular Pathology**

Pathophysiology of the eye. Histopathology of eye disease. Pathology of orbit, lacrimal system, conjunctiva, cornea, uvea, lens and retina. Developmental anomalies of the eye.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 251 A and B

**OPTOM 260A (1 Point)**

**OPTOM 260B (1 Point)**

**Applied Optics and Dispensing**

Optics of ophthalmic lenses, ophthalmic lens materials, strength of materials, ophthalmic prisms, tinted lenses, coatings, multifocal and progressive addition lenses, special lens designs, diffractive ophthalmic lenses, magnification, isogonal and iseikonic lens design. Finite ray tracing, optical design, chromatic and monochromatic aberrations of ophthalmic lenses. Ophthalmic dispensing, fabrication of ophthalmic aids. Principles of optical instruments.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 260 A and B

**OPTOM 270 (2 Points)**

**Visual Science 2**

Models of spatial vision. Velocity perception. Signal detection theory. Theories of colour vision, defective colour vision. Visually evoked potentials. Binocular space perception. The development of vision. Recent advances in visual science. Aetiology of refractive errors - hereditary factors, environmental factors. Prevalence of ametropia and changes with age.

**Stage III**

**OPTOM 311A (2 Points)**

**OPTOM 311B (2 Points)**

**Clinical Optometry**

The routine optometric examination, diagnosis and management of disorders of the visual system, case analysis. Myopia control. Examination and treatment of patients in the Optometry Clinic under supervision.

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 311 A and B

**OPTOM 330A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 330B** (1 Point)

#### Contact Lens Practice

Examination procedures for contact lens practice. Principles of contact lens fitting. Optics of contact lenses. Complications of contact lenses. Materials used in contact lens manufacture. Designs of contact lenses. Scleral lens impressions. Recent advances in contact lenses. Practical sessions in contact lens fitting, verification techniques and patient care.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 330 A and B

**OPTOM 340A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 340B** (1 Point)

#### Paediatric and Geriatric Optometry

Developmental aspects of vision in children. Investigation of vision in children. Disorders of binocular vision, visual training, sports optometry, visual aspects of learning disabilities, aniseikonia. Ocular and vision problems of the elderly. Low vision, interdisciplinary rehabilitation resources, counselling and referral. Optics of low vision appliances. Optometric management of low vision patients.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 340 A and B

**OPTOM 350A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 350B** (1 Point)

#### Diseases of the Eye

Diseases of the eye and ocular adnexa. Signs of systemic disease. Management of patients with visual disorders. Examination of patients in the Optometry Clinic, Hospital Eye Departments and other sites.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 350 A and B

**OPTOM 360A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 360B** (1 Point)

#### Community Optometry and Visual Ergonomics

Organisation of health care services in New Zealand. Delivery of health care. The role of optometry in the team approach to health care. Visual ergonomics including visual display terminals, visual screening and visual standards. Principles of industrial safety. The elements of illuminating engineering. Lamp types - principles and applications.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 360 A and B

**OPTOM 370A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 370B** (1 Point)

#### Practice Management

Introduction to law, optometric legislation, codes of practice, ethics, starting a practice, modes of practice, partnerships, practice management, computer software packages, advertising, total quality management (TQM) in optometric practice, continuing education, competency.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 370 A and B

---

#### Stage IV

**OPTOM 410A** (2 Points)  
**OPTOM 410B** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Clinical Optometry 1

Clinical work with responsibility, under supervision, for patients.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 410 A and B

**OPTOM 420A** (2 Points)  
**OPTOM 420B** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Clinical Optometry 2

Clinical work with greater emphasis on particular areas in optometry including: contact lenses, low vision, binocular vision, paediatric optometry and practice management.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 420 A and B

**OPTOM 461A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 461B** (1 Point)

#### Specialist Optometry

Supervised clinical work in external clinics, which may include: private optometric practice, hospital eye departments, overseas institutions, or experience in some other approved locations.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 461 A and B

**OPTOM 470A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 470B** (1 Point)

#### Project

Supervised investigation into an approved topic relating to optometry or visual science, including clinical and applied research. Experimental design in research projects, report writing, ethics.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 470 A and B

**OPTOM 480A** (1 Point)  
**OPTOM 480B** (1 Point)

#### Advanced Optometric Science

Anatomy and physiology, contact lenses, ocular pharmaceutical agents, ophthalmic disease, visual science and optics. Both established work from previous academic teaching and recently published research papers will be reviewed.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 480 A and B

---

#### Diploma Courses

**OPTOM 680** (2 Points)  
**Ocular Pharmacology**

**OPTOM 691A** (2 Points)  
**OPTOM 691B** (2 Points)

#### PG Diploma Dissertation (Optometry)

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 691 A and B

---

#### Honours and Master's Courses

**OPTOM 711A** (2 Points)  
**OPTOM 711B** (2 Points)

#### Advanced Visual Optics

Optics of the vertebrate eye, with emphasis on current methods of measurement of the ocular refracting surfaces, determination of the gradient

refractive index of the crystalline lens, ocular aberrations and adaptive optics.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 711 A and B

**OPTOM 750A** (1 Point)

**OPTOM 750B** (1 Point)

#### Tools for Vision Research

Procedures for generation and calibration of visual stimuli. Techniques for measurement and analysis.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 750 A and B

**OPTOM 754A** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 754B** (2 Points)

#### Anatomy and Physiology of Vision

A guided course of advanced study in topics selected from the following areas: cornea and sclera; lacrimal apparatus and tears; crystalline lens and accommodation; pupillary physiology and pharmacology; aqueous humour and intra-ocular pressure; photoreceptors and the retina; neurophysiology of the retina, visual pathways and visual cortex.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 754 A and B

**OPTOM 756A** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 756B** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic in Vision Science

The study of selected fields in Vision Science at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 757 A and B

**OPTOM 757A** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 757B** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic in Optometry 1

The study of selected fields of Clinical Optometry at an advanced level with detailed study of the particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 757 A and B

**OPTOM 758A** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 758B** (2 Points)

#### Special Topic in Optometry 2

Study to an advanced level of topics selected from the following clinical areas: corneal topography, keratoconus, orthokeratology, tear film, special contact lenses.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 758 A and B

**OPTOM 770A** (2 Points)

**OPTOM 770B** (2 Points)

#### Vision Science

Includes a review of light and the eye. Spatial vision, temporal vision, colour vision, models of visual perception, neural basis of vision, visual electrophysiology, binocular vision and space perception, stereopsis, development of vision. Advanced methods for analysis of vision. In-depth consideration of current topics.

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 770 A and B

**OPTOM 796A** (7 Points)

**OPTOM 796B** (7 Points)

#### MSc Thesis in Optometry

To complete this course students must enrol in OPTOM 796 A and B

### Pharmacology

Prescriptions for Pharmacology courses are listed under the Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences starting at PHARMCOL.

### Physics

#### Stage I

**PHYSICS 101** (2 Points)

#### History and Philosophy of Physics

A non-advancing course in Physics for students interested in the development of Physics since the time of the Greeks. The course requires a minimal background in Mathematics and Physics and is descriptive in nature. Student work emphasises essays and tutorial discussion. Demonstration experiments are conducted from time to time.

**PHYSICS 102** (2 Points)

#### Basic Concepts of Physics

A non-advancing course in Physics for students interested in understanding the Physics of everyday phenomena. The course requires a minimal background in Mathematics and Physics, and will stress the conceptual understanding of important physical ideas. Demonstration experiments are a major feature.

Restriction: Cannot be taken either with or after any of PHYSICS 120-160

**PHYSICS 107** (2 Points)

#### Planets, Stars and Galaxies

A non-advancing course in Physics for students interested in astronomy. Topics include a survey of astronomical objects in the universe, the tools of observational astronomy, stellar evolution, quasars and black holes, cosmology. This course does not require a formal background in Mathematics or Physics.

**PHYSICS 111** (2 Points)

#### Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1A

Covers analytical techniques associated with Stage I physical science courses, relating the associated mathematical framework to physical systems and including laboratory work. Topics include: scalar and vector physical observables, waves, time development of physical and chemical systems and first order differential equations, applications of complex numbers and matrices in electrical circuits, applications of calculus to physical systems, error analysis.

For students in experimental sciences. Provides a minimal preparation in mathematical techniques for Stage II Physics courses.

Restriction: MATHS 108, 130, 151, ENGSCI 111

**PHYSICS 112** (2 Points)

#### Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 1B

Covers supplementary analytical techniques associated with Stage I physical science courses.

relating the associated mathematical framework to physical systems and including laboratory work. Topics include: vector spaces and linear transformations, differentiation, extrema, definite integrals, sequences and series.

*In conjunction with PHYSICS 111, provides access to Stage II Mathematics courses. Students majoring in Physics should take this course.*

*Restriction: MATHS 109, 130, 152*

**PHYSICS 120 (2 Points)**

**Physics of Energy**

A course designed for students either advancing in physical science or with a major interest in field studies offered at both campuses. It covers motion and its causes, as well as the production, transformation and propagation of energy in its thermal and mechanical forms. Physics and Mathematics at Bursary level or equivalent or a pass in PHYSICS 102 are recommended for students intending to enrol in this course.

*Restriction: PHYSICS 160*

**PHYSICS 130 (2 Points)**

**Properties of Matter**

Static equilibrium of solids and fluids with an introduction to fluid mechanics. The physical properties of condensed matter including strength, elasticity, and other mechanical characteristics. The electrical, optical and thermal characteristics of materials with technological applications including alloys, ceramics, polymers, glasses and plastics. Physics and Mathematics at Bursary level or equivalent, or a pass in PHYSICS 102 are recommended for students intending to enrol in this course.

*Restriction: CHEMMAT 121*

**PHYSICS 150 (2 Points)**

**Physics of Technology**

Prescribed for students advancing either in the physical sciences or in the special science and technology programmes offered on both campuses. It covers basic aspects of circuits, fields, optical systems and quantum effects common to modern communication systems and devices. Physics and Mathematics at Bursary level or equivalent, or a pass in PHYSICS 102 are recommended for students intending to enrol in this course.

**PHYSICS 160 (2 Points)**

**Physics for the Life Sciences**

Designed for students intending to advance their studies in the Life Sciences. Topics covered will be especially relevant to biological systems: mechanics, thermal physics, wave motion, electricity and instrumentation. This course requires a knowledge of Physics and Mathematics to at least 6th Form level.

*Restriction: PHYSICS 120*

**Stage II**

*For the purposes of recommended preparation for Stage II Physics courses: PHYSICS 120 and 160 are equivalent; PHYSICS 111, MATHS 107, 108, 130 and 152 are equivalent; and COMPSCI 101 and INFOSYS 110 are equivalent.*

**PHYSICS 200A (1 Point)**

**PHYSICS 200B (1 Point)**

**Physics in Action**

An introduction to a variety of topics in Physics of contemporary interest, such as Space Physics, Biophysics, Astrophysics, Geophysics, Nuclear Physics and Communications Technology. The course is descriptive in nature and makes extensive use of audio-visual and experimental demonstrations. One, two-hour lecture per week is devoted to each topic. The course is examined by continuous assessment.

*No formal prerequisites, but an understanding of Stage I level Physics will be assumed.*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 200 A and B*

**PHYSICS 211A (1 Point)**

**PHYSICS 211B (1 Point)**

**Analytical Techniques in Physical Sciences 2**

Covers analytical techniques associated with Stage II Physics courses, relating appropriate mathematical concepts to various physical systems and including laboratory work. Provides a minimal preparation in mathematical techniques for Stage III Physics courses. Topics include: oscillations and waves, numerical and analytical solution of differential equations describing physical systems, vector calculus, description of physical systems by sets of linear equations.

*No formal prerequisites, but an understanding of the material in either PHYSICS 111 or at least two of MATHS 151, 152 or 162 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: 445.207, 445.251, MATHS 208, 230, 253, 260 To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 211 A and B*

**PHYSICS 213 (2 Points)**

**The Geophysical Environment**

An understanding of the atmospheric, oceanic and solid Earth environment in terms of physical principles. Topics include: the shape of the Earth, gravitational variations, seismic waves, global heat balance and atmospheric dynamics, ocean waves and tides, and general properties of fluids applied to the environment.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of Stage I level Physics and Mathematics will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 219A (1 Point)**

**PHYSICS 219B (1 Point)**

**Computer Electronics**

Provides an introduction to digital computer hardware, interfacing and communication systems, and how these elements interact with, and are controlled by software. Lectures will be supplemented by laboratory experiments designed to illustrate the principles discussed.

*No formal prerequisites, but an understanding of the material in COMPSCI 101 and PHYSICS 150 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 243, 453.246 and 453.294*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 219 A and B*

**PHYSICS 220 (2 Points)**

**Electromagnetism and Thermal Physics**

Develops the principles of electric and magnetic field phenomena and magnetism and introduces the mathematical formalisms used. It covers the electric and magnetic properties of materials. It also provides an introduction to the laws of

thermodynamics and their application to the properties of materials and technology.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 120 and 150 will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 230 (2 Points)**

**Materials and Waves**

Classical mechanics, including combined rotational and translational motion and rotating reference frames. The properties of materials, including fluid statics and dynamics, and elasticity. Travelling and standing waves on a string; wave propagation in fluids and solids.

*No formal prerequisites, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111 and 120 will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 240 (2 Points)**

**Electronics and Optics**

Covers AC circuit theory with phasors and complex operators, semiconductor devices treated as circuit elements and active and passive circuit analysis. The principles of classical and modern optics are developed, including advanced geometrical optics, polarisation, interference and diffraction.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 120 and 150 will be assumed. Restriction: PHYSICS 242 and 453.241*

**PHYSICS 242 (2 Points)**

**Electronic Systems**

A selection of topics on electric circuit theory, semiconductor devices, optical systems and detectors, signal processing, and digital communication.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in MATHS 108 and PHYSICS 150 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 240 and 453.241, 453.246*

**PHYSICS 243 (2 Points)**

**Digital Electronics and Instrumentation**

This is an introduction to the principles of digital logic, circuit design, and measurement techniques. Digital logic elements, instrumentation, and their practical uses with various physical transducers are presented.

*No formal prerequisites, but an understanding of the material in MATHS 108 and PHYSICS 150 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: PHYSICS 219, 453.246 and 453.294*

**PHYSICS 250 (2 Points)**

**Quantum Physics**

An introduction to quantum behaviour and microscopic physics. The Schrodinger equation is used to treat one-dimensional bound systems and quantum tunnelling and also the three-dimensional hydrogen atom, which is extended to include a first treatment of angular momentum and spin. Further topics comprise the periodic table, molecules, solids, nuclei and particles.

*No formal prerequisites, but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 120 and 150 will be assumed.*

**PHYSICS 270 (2 Points)**

**Astrophysics**

Techniques of optical and radio astronomy; determination for the solar system and stars of such properties as distance, radius and mass; the

Hertzsprung-Russell diagram; equations of stellar structure, energy production and transport; introduction to stellar evolution, galactic structure and cosmology.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 120 or 150 or 160, and MATHS 152 or PHYSICS 111 will be assumed.*

*Restriction: 453.370*

**Stage III**

*For the purposes of recommended preparation for Stage III Physics courses: The combination PHYSICS 111 and 112 is equivalent to the combination MATHS 151 and 152; PHYSICS 211 is equivalent to the combination MATHS 253 and 260; 445.207, 445.230, 445.251 and MATHS 208 and 253 are equivalent; and MATHS 260 and 267 are equivalent.*

**PHYSICS 315A (1 Point)**

**PHYSICS 315B (1 Point)**

**Classical and Statistical Physics**

Statistical physics topics emphasise the description of macroscopic properties using microscopic models and include: temperature, the partition function and connections with classical thermodynamics, paramagnetic solids, lattice vibrations, indistinguishable particles, classical and quantum gases. Classical mechanics topics include: vector mechanics, coordinate transformations, rotating frames, angular momentum, rigid body dynamics, variational formulation, constraints, Lagrange equations, Hamiltonian mechanics and relationships with quantum mechanics.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 220 and 230 will be assumed. Restriction: PHYSICS 310*

*To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 315 A and B*

**PHYSICS 325 (2 Points)**

**Electromagnetism and Optics**

A systematic development of Maxwell's theory of electromagnetism and its applications to optics. Topics include: electrostatics, dielectrics, polarisation, charge conservation, magnetostatics, scalar and vector potentials, magnetic materials, Maxwell's equations, the wave equation. Propagation of electromagnetic waves in vacuum, dielectrics, conducting media and waveguides. Energy and momentum in e-m waves, interaction of light with atoms, origin of the refractive index.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 220 and 240 will be assumed. Restriction: PHYSICS 320*

**PHYSICS 326 (2 Points)**

**Electronics and Optoelectronics**

Characteristics and modelling of electronic devices, small- and large-signal behaviour, applications in linear and non-linear circuits. Introduction to the design and analysis of electronic and computer systems for data acquisition, processing and analysis. Laser systems, resonator theory, rate equation analysis of light amplification, propagation of laser beams, optical waveguides, dispersion, fibre optics, optoelectronic devices.

*No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211, 220 and 240 will be assumed.*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

Concurrent enrolment in one of Physics 390-396 is recommended.

Restriction: PHYSICS 321

**PHYSICS 340 (2 Points)**

**Circuits, Systems and Signals**

Describes the physical principles involved in the operation of electronic circuits and computer algorithms for processing information, and is essential for experimental physicists. Topics include: electronic circuits as linear systems, analytical and numerical network analysis, steady-state (AC) and transient response of networks, stability of systems, feedback and oscillation, transmission lines, introduction to digital signal processing concepts and techniques.

No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211 and 240 will be assumed. Concurrent enrolment in one of Physics 390-396 is recommended.

**PHYSICS 350A (1 Point)**

**PHYSICS 350B (1 Point)**

**Quantum Mechanics and Atomic Physics**

Non-relativistic quantum mechanics will be developed using the three-dimensional Schroedinger equation, and will be applied particularly to the physics of atoms and molecules. The interaction of like particles and the quantisation of angular momentum will be studied.

No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 111, 112, 211 and 250 will be assumed.

To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 350 A and B

**PHYSICS 355 (2 Points)**

**Condensed Matter and Sub-Atomic Physics**

An introduction to the quantum and statistical mechanical foundation of modern studies in condensed matter and sub-atomic physics. Topics include: quasiparticles, the band theory of electronic structure, semiconductors, magnetism, superconductivity, the fundamental particles and their interactions within the standard model, the systematic behaviour of nuclei, fission and fusion.

No formal prerequisites but an understanding of the material in PHYSICS 211 and 250 will be assumed. Concurrent enrolment in one of Physics 390-396 is recommended.

Restriction: PHYSICS 351

**PHYSICS 390 (2 Points)**

**Experimental Physics I**

Students may select experiments from a wide spectrum of physics that are appropriate to the lecture courses being taken from PHYSICS 315-355.

No formal prerequisites but concurrent enrolment in one or more of Physics 315-355 is recommended.

**PHYSICS 391 (2 Points)**

**Experimental Physics II**

Experimental work as for PHYSICS 390.

No formal prerequisites but concurrent enrolment in one or more of Physics 315-355 is recommended.

**PHYSICS 395 (1 Point)**

**Experimental Physics III**

A limited programme of experimental work, otherwise as specified in the prescription for PHYSICS 390.

No formal prerequisites but concurrent enrolment in one or more of Physics 315-355 is recommended.

**PHYSICS 396 (1 Point)**

**Experimental Physics IV**

A limited programme of experimental work, otherwise as specified in the prescription for PHYSICS 390.

No formal prerequisites but concurrent enrolment in one or more of Physics 315-355 is recommended.

**Diploma Courses**

**PHYSICS 690A (2 Points)**

**PHYSICS 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Physics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 690 A and B

**PHYSICS 691A (2 Points)**

**PHYSICS 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Physics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 691 A and B

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PHYSICS 701 (2 Points)**

**Linear Systems**

Many physical situations are treated by making linear approximations to actual behaviour and analysing the resulting systems. Topics include: generalised functions, Green's function, convolution, sampling theory, Fourier, Laplace and Hilbert transforms, with applications to statistics, optics, solution of differential equations, filtering and digital signal processing.

**PHYSICS 703 (2 Points)**

**Quantum Mechanics**

Includes a review of the general formalism of quantum theory, making use of: Dirac notation, scattering theory, time-dependent perturbation theory, relativistic quantum mechanics and spin, many-body quantum mechanics, rotations and other symmetry operations, quantum theory of radiation and introductory quantum field theory. Applications are taken from atomic, nuclear and particle physics.

**PHYSICS 704 (2 Points)**

**Waves and Fluid Mechanics**

A unified treatment of the wave equation in three dimensions will include sound waves in fluids and solids, electromagnetic waves, interface waves, waves on liquids and solids and propagation in waveguides. Fluid mechanics will include derivation of the Navier-Stokes equations and potential function solutions for two-dimensional flow.

**PHYSICS 705 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Electromagnetism**

Includes the following topics: a covariant formulation of electrodynamics, the charges, currents and fields in different inertial frames, electromagnetic wave propagation in media and radiation from moving charges.

**PHYSICS 706 (2 Points)**

**Quantum Field Theory**

Follows on from PHYSICS 703 Quantum Mechanics.

The first part treats relativistic generalisations of the Schroedinger equation and many-particle quantum mechanics. The second part is an introduction to quantum electrodynamics, using Feynman diagram techniques. Applications are made to atomic, condensed matter and particle physics.

**PHYSICS 707 (2 Points)**

**Inverse Problems**

Inverse problems involve making inferences about physical systems from experimental measurements. Topics include: Bayes' theorem, prior and posterior probabilities, inference, multivariate Gaussian processes, model fitting, parameter estimation in noise, matched filters, maximum likelihood techniques, the linear inverse problem, regularisation, the Kalman filter and an introduction to multidimensional optimisation.

**PHYSICS 708 (2 Points)**

**Statistical Mechanics and Stochastic Processes**

Lectures on phase transitions and critical phenomena, stochastic methods, master equations, Fokker-Planck equations and stochastic differential equations.

**PHYSICS 710 (2 Points)**

**Relativity**

Following a necessary introduction to the theory of tensor calculus, the special theory of relativity is developed systematically in four-dimensional space-time. This covers kinematics, mechanics, electrodynamics and angular momentum. The general theory of relativity and Einstein's theory of gravitation is outlined, and implications for cosmological models presented.

**PHYSICS 726 (2 Points)**

**Optoelectronics**

Discusses selected topics in laser physics including a discussion of resonator theory and laser beam diagnostics, together with mode-locked lasers, frequency stabilised lasers, non-linear optics and interferometry.

**PHYSICS 727 (2 Points)**

**Optoelectronics and Communications**

Topics covered include: optical data storage systems, scanners and printers, propagation in optical waveguides, non-linear effects in optical fibres, amplifiers, semiconductor laser sources, LEDs and the detection of optical radiation, optical communication systems architecture and an introduction to network topology.

**PHYSICS 730 (2 Points)**

**Geophysics**

Topics covered may include: the fundamental processes involved in the atmosphere with emphasis on the roles of rainfall and solar radiation, the microphysical processes involved in the formation of clouds and rainfall and the marine physics of underwater sound propagation in shallow and deep water.

**PHYSICS 750 (2 Points)**

**Nuclear Physics**

Topics covered may include: the general properties of nuclei as described by the Liquid Drop and Fermi

Gas and Shell models; properties of beta decay, and recent developments in neutrino mass theory and experiments; relativistic nuclear collisions, and recent theory and experiments of highly compressed nuclear matter leading to the quark-gluon plasma.

**PHYSICS 755 (2 Points)**

**Particle Physics**

An introduction to some ideas in particle physics: the particles and their interactions, QED and field theory, gauge invariance (consequences, its role in particle physics), electroweak interaction (left-handed neutrinos, W and Z, bosons, neutrino mass) and strong interaction (quark model, problems, colour, confinement and QCD compared with QED).

**PHYSICS 760 (2 Points)**

**Quantum Optics**

Lectures in light, non-classical, squeezed and anti-bunched light, quantum theory of the interaction of light with atoms, manipulations of atoms by light.

**PHYSICS 791 (2 Points)**

**Selected Topics 1**

As for PHYSICS 792, the choice of subject will depend on the availability of a suitable visiting lecturer or on the needs of particular students.

**PHYSICS 792 (2 Points)**

**Selected Topics 2**

**PHYSICS 796A (7 Points)**

**PHYSICS 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Physics**

To complete this course students must enrol in PHYSICS 796 A and B

**Physiology**

Prescriptions for Physiology are listed under Medical and Health Sciences starting with PHYSIOL.

**Polymers and Coatings Science**

**Diploma Courses**

**POLYMER 691A (2 Points)**

**POLYMER 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Polymers and Coatings Science)**

To complete this course students must enrol in POLYMER 691 A and B

**Master's Courses**

**POLYMER 701 (2 Points)**

**Polymer Science**

Polymer structures, polymerisation processes, polymer solutions and polymer characterisation. Bulk properties of thermoplastic polymers, network polymers and elastomers.

*Prerequisite: Permission of programme Director*

**POLYMER 702 (2 Points)**

**Synthetic Resin Technology**

The chemistry of synthetic resins used in adhesive, ink, and surface coatings applications. The aim is to provide the student with the knowledge to formulate resins for specific applications.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Programme Director*

**POLYMER 703 (2 Points)**

**Synthetic Resin Design**

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

A laboratory-based course, teaching principles of resin synthesis and testing through a selection of laboratory experiments on specific resin types.

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Programme Director

**POLYMER 711 (2 Points)**

**Interfacial Science and Coatings Technology**

Principles of surface and interfacial science, and modification of surfaces by coatings. Coatings manufacture and related topics.

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Programme Director

**POLYMER 713 (2 Points)**

**Coatings Design**

A laboratory-based course relating to all aspects of the design, manufacture and characterisation of surface coatings and related products.

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Programme Director

**POLYMER 796A (7 Points)**

**POLYMER 796B (7 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Polymers and Coatings Science**

*Prerequisite:* Permission of Programme Director

To complete this course students must enrol in POLYMER 796 A and B

**Psychology**

**Stage I**

**PSYCH 108 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to General Psychology**

Topics covered may include: developmental and social psychology including group behaviour, the measurement of mental abilities, intelligence, models of personality, clinical and health psychology, methods of therapeutic intervention, and the psychological similarities and differences between cultures. A laboratory component in which students are required to participate as subjects, forms part of the course.

*Restriction:* PSYCH 128, 461.118

**PSYCH 109 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

Topics covered may include: the nature of sensory and perceptual processes, the cause of perceptual illusions, the structure and function of the human brain, approaches to animal and human learning, models of human language and memory, and the design of psychological experiments. A laboratory component, in which students are required to participate as subjects, forms part of the course.

*Restriction:* PSYCH 129

**PSYCH 128 (2 Points)**

**Psychology as a Social Science**

An introduction to psychology viewed as a social science, including: the study of language, social and organisational psychology, developmental psychology, the measurement of mental abilities, intelligence and personality, abnormal psychology, health psychology, cross-cultural psychology, and research methodology.

*Restriction:* PSYCH 108, 461.118

**PSYCH 129 (2 Points)**

**Psychology as an Experimental Science**

This course stresses the scientific bases of modern psychology, including: the study of learning,

sensation, perception, cognition, and the nervous system. Topics in applied experimental psychology may also be introduced.

*Restriction:* PSYCH 109

**Stage II**

**PSYCH 201 (2 Points)**

**Perception and Cognition**

An introduction to a variety of topics in human experimental psychology. Topics covered may include: perceptual processes, attention, memory, mental imagery, language development, theory of mind, problem solving and decision making.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology

*Restriction:* PSYCH 261, 461.220

**PSYCH 202 (2 Points)**

**Biopsychology**

Provides a basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, neuropsychology, and genetic and hormonal influences on behaviour.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology or BIOSCI 101 or 103

*Restriction:* 461.230

**PSYCH 203 (2 Points)**

**Learning and Behaviour**

A consideration of the environmental factors that control and modify animal (including human) behaviour. Generally, an experimental laboratory approach is taken, and quantitative theories are stressed. Topics include: classical and operant conditioning, theories of reinforcement, the stimulus control of operant behaviour, behavioural analyses of problem solving, concept learning and language, choice, self control, remembering and experimental design.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology or BIOSCI 101 or 103

*Restriction:* 461.250

**PSYCH 204 (2 Points)**

**Social Psychology**

Lecture topics include: social cognition, attitudes, group processes, interpersonal relationships, communication, the effects of the physical environment and other relevant topics.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology

*Restriction:* PSYCH 263, 461.240

**PSYCH 206 (2 Points)**

**Abnormal Psychology**

The major theories and paradigms concerned with abnormal behaviour are presented in their historical context and by discussing the major contributors to their development. Mental health problems that are commonly encountered by clinical psychologists are defined and described. The ways the various theories and paradigms are employed to assist understanding of causation will be the major focus of the course. Particular attention will be given to the Aotearoa/New Zealand context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology

*Restriction:* 461.205

**PSYCH 261 (2 Points)**

**Experimental Psychology**

An introduction to research in a wide range of areas

of experimental psychology, with some emphasis on the application of research findings to practical problems. Specific areas include: perception, memory, language, reasoning and decision-making.  
*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology  
*Restriction:* PSYCH 201, 461.220

**PSYCH 262 (2 Points)**

**Psychological Methods**

A broadly-based introductory treatment of methodologies widely used in both experimental and applied psychological research. Topics include: non-experimental and experimental design, data analysis, single-subject techniques, observational techniques, and qualitative methods.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology

**PSYCH 263 (2 Points)**

**Social and Organisational Psychology**

Provides a broad introduction to the social psychology of group and interpersonal behaviour and some of its applications to educational health, and work contexts. Topics include: the self, interpersonal relationships, gender, learned helplessness, motivation, social influence, groups and organisations, leadership, performance and productivity, communication in groups and other topics in applied social psychology.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points in Stage I Psychology

*Restriction:* PSYCH 204 and 461.240

**Stage III**

**PSYCH 301 (2 Points)**

**Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of individual differences and their measurement, and the purpose, construction, use and implications of psychometric tests. Issues in personality measurement will be covered, and the cognitive assessment of special conditions like head injury and epilepsy. Also includes practical training in the use and interpretation of psychometric tests.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 303 (2 Points)**

**Cognitive Science**

Provides an introduction to cognitive science and cognitive neuroscience. Topics covered include: visual and auditory perception, attention, memory, thinking and problem-solving.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 305 (2 Points)**

**Human Neuroscience**

Covers material relating to the neural basis of cognitive processes, including perception, attention, memory, and language. Students will be introduced to different methods of inferring mind-brain relations in normal and neurologically-impaired individuals, and different ways of conceptualising mind-brain relations, such as connectionism and modularism.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics, or 570.201 or PHYSIOL 220

**PSYCH 306A (1 Point)**

**PSYCH 306B (1 Point)**

**Research Methods in Psychology**

This course deals with principles and practices relevant to psychological research, including philosophy of science, research ethics, research design, measurement of dependent variables, describing and analysing data, and interpreting results. Students take a common core of lectures, and then choose amongst more specialised areas.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 306 A and B

**PSYCH 307 (2 Points)**

**Sensation and Perception**

Important issues in the psychology of vision, hearing and taste will be discussed with emphasis on both the acquisition of information through the senses and the processing and interpretation that follows. Topics may include: applied practices in sensory evaluation, the importance of illusions in perception, relevant research-based methods, and the mechanisms underlying various perceptual phenomena.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

**PSYCH 308A (1 Point)**

**PSYCH 308B (1 Point)**

**Research Topic**

A course of research supervised by a staff member and written up as a course for publication instead of a final examination. A list of available supervisors and topics is published each year in the Psychology Department Undergraduate Handbook.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

*Corequisite:* 8 points in Stage III Psychology plus Head of Department approval

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 308 A and B

**PSYCH 309 (2 Points)**

**Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified by discriminative stimuli and by consequential reinforcers and punishers. The emphasis is on laboratory research with animals, but with some human data also considered. Topics include: choice behaviour, punishment, avoidance, psychophysics, memory, and cognition.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics or 6 points at Stage II in Biological Sciences

*Restriction:* PSYCH 362

**PSYCH 310 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Clinical Psychology**

Describes and evaluates psychological approaches to the assessment and treatment of those mental health problems, in adults and children, most commonly encountered by clinical psychologists. Consideration is given to work in mental health, corrections, child protection and neuropsychology rehabilitation. Issues relevant to Maori mental health, gender, cross-cultural work and prevention are included.

*Prerequisite:* 6 points at Stage II in Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics

*Restriction:* 461.315

**PSYCH 311 (2 Points)****Social and Community Psychology**

Focuses on people as social beings. First, issues in social and collective behaviour will include: aggression and violence, crowd dynamics, social discontent and revolution, intergroup conflict and prejudice and the impact of culture on social behaviour. Secondly, the contribution of social context to emotions and body image, the creation of identity including gender and ethnic identity, social isolation and the philosophy and practice of community psychology will also be examined.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 312 (2 Points)****Organisational Psychology**

Psychological aspects of organisations. The focus is on critical evaluation of theoretical approaches, their value for the international world of work, and their application in organisations. Topics covered are work motivation, work-related attitudes, turnover and absenteeism, stress, climate and culture, groups, leadership and organisational development.

*Prerequisite: MGMT 211 or 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 314 (2 Points)****Ergonomics**

Also known as 'human factors' or 'engineering psychology', ergonomics is the multidisciplinary field concerned with improving human well-being and productivity by optimising person-machine-environment systems. The course emphasises applied experimental psychology.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 316 (2 Points)****Cognitive Development in Childhood**

This course will address theoretical and applied issues in children's cognitive development. Different domains of development will be explored, and will include: language, reading acquisition, numeracy, and meta-abilities. The practical relevance of theories to deal with problems of atypical development, such as giftedness, dyslexia, and autism, will also be discussed.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 317 (2 Points)****Evolution, Behaviour and Cognition**

Do other animals have language? Do they have culture? Can human behaviour be explained in evolutionary terms? This course addresses these questions and the methods that can be used to answer them.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics or 6 points at Stage II in Biological Science*

**PSYCH 318 (2 Points)****Cultural Psychology**

The discipline of Cultural Psychology looks at the ways in which the psyche and culture, subject and object, and person and world make up each other. The course examines cultural similarities and differences in mind, self, emotion, and morality with

special reference to the predominant cultures represented in the society of Aotearoa.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics or MAORI 230*

**PSYCH 319 (2 Points)****Psychology, Discourse and Gender**

An introduction to feminist and discursive psychologies, in the context of social constructionist and postmodern moves in and around psychology. Research, theory and practices will be discussed, along with specific topics such as sexuality, gendered bodies, violence and race discourse.

**PSYCH 320 (2 Points)****Special Topic****PSYCH 321 (2 Points)****Special Topic****PSYCH 361 (2 Points)****Applied Cognitive Psychology**

This course is designed to extend theoretical conceptions and models in cognitive psychology to a variety of applied settings, and to assess the extent to which such theoretical accounts can be applied. It will deal primarily with psychological analyses and appraisals of problems in perception, memory, attention, thinking, and language, as they are evident in everyday human activity.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 362 (2 Points)****Learning and Memory**

A treatment of how behaviour is controlled by prior and subsequent events, drawing on both animal and human experimental research. Topics include: quantitative models of behaviour, signal detection, stimulus control, theories of learning, memory, and behaviour modification.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

*Restriction: PSYCH 309*

**PSYCH 363 (2 Points)****Social Behaviour**

Examines issues and topics in the social psychological study of interpersonal, group and collective behaviour. Topics include: aggression and violence, interpersonal attraction, prejudice, intergroup behaviour, social conflict, crowd behaviour, culture and social behaviour, and other specialised topics.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**PSYCH 364 (2 Points)****Health Psychology**

An introduction to the study of links between psychological processes and health/illness. The course will discuss a number of psychological issues relating to serious illnesses (cancers, coronary heart disease etc.) and links to other aspects of physical well-being (e.g. exercise, diet). Consideration will be given both to the theoretical models which have been developed within health psychology and to the types of methodology used in their investigation.

*Prerequisite: 6 points in Stage II Psychology and 2 points at Stage I in Statistics*

**Diploma Courses**

**PSYCH 601A** (3 Points)  
**PSYCH 601B** (3 Points)

**Intro to Professional Practice**

This is a seminar course covering interview skills, ethics, research methods, cross-cultural communication and bicultural issues. Evaluation will be by internal assessment.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 601 A and B*

**PSYCH 602A** (4 Points)  
**PSYCH 602B** (4 Points)

**Child, Family and Adult Mental Health**

Includes a section on child and family work and a section on adult mental health. These sections are matched by two community placements, each lasting four months. Evaluation is by internal assessment.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 602 A and B*

**PSYCH 603A** (7 Points)  
**PSYCH 603B** (7 Points)

**Clinical Internship**

Includes a practical component of supervised clinical work of not less than 1500 hours in an approved mental health setting and other work as required. Passes are required in both the practical component and a final examination.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 603 A and B*

**PSYCH 650A** (3 Points)  
**PSYCH 650B** (3 Points)

**Practicum**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 650 A and B*

**PSYCH 690A** (2 Points)  
**PSYCH 690B** (2 Points)

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation in Psychology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 690 A and B*

**PSYCH 691A** (2 Points)  
**PSYCH 691B** (2 Points)

**PG Diploma Dissertation in Psychology**

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

**PSYCH 701A** (2 Points)  
**PSYCH 701B** (2 Points)

**Health Psychology Assessment, Interventions and Applications**

The principles of psychological assessment in general, as well as areas specific to health psychology such as the assessment of quality of life and the development of specific assessment tools for use in health settings. The course covers common quantitative and qualitative research designs used in health psychology research. It reviews the application of health psychology to areas such as cardiac rehabilitation and the promotion of health-related behaviours such as health screening, diet and exercise.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 701 A and B*

**PSYCH 702A** (2 Points)

**PSYCH 702B** (2 Points)

**Organisational Psychology**

In this seminar-based, research-oriented course, a review of the basic concepts, theories and methods of the field will be followed by investigation of current research and applications in such areas as work-related attitudes, leadership, organisational decision-making, organisational culture, organisational change, and development.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 702 A and B*

**PSYCH 703A** (2 Points)  
**PSYCH 703B** (2 Points)

**Applied Behaviour Analysis**

This course will be concerned with the measurement, analysis, and modification of human and animal behaviour in applied settings. The philosophical, experimental and technological underpinnings of Applied Behaviour Analysis will be covered in general terms, and students will be required to carry out practical exercises in their application.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 703 A and B*

**PSYCH 704A** (2 Points)  
**PSYCH 704B** (2 Points)

**Sensation and Perception**

This course will discuss conceptual issues of recent work in perception and evaluate the methodological issues involved. Although theoretical issues will be emphasised, the practical project and technical aspects of perception research will be involved.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 704 A and B*

**PSYCH 705** (2 Points)

**Applied Decision Assessment**

Focuses on the application of a prominent method, called ROC analysis, that can be used to effectively assess the degree of success of many decision-making technologies, for example: clinical diagnosis, medical imaging, aptitude testing, product assessment, polygraph lie detection, or the natural functioning of sensory systems.

*Restriction: 461.730*

**PSYCH 706** (2 Points)

**Clinical Psychology: Aetiology and Assessment**

This course deals with the various theories about the causes of a range of mental health problems, and the research issues relating to those theories. In addition, some of the ways in which clinical psychologists assess clients' issues/difficulties, and their social/cultural contexts, are discussed.

**PSYCH 707** (2 Points)

**Clinical Psychology in Forensic and Correctional Settings**

Covers psychological theories of crime and violence, empirical research relevant to the assessment and treatment of offenders, with particular emphasis on violent, sexual and mentally-disordered offenders, and the range of roles for clinical psychologists in forensic and correctional settings such as prisons, forensic psychiatric hospitals, and the courts.

**PSYCH 708A (2 Points)****PSYCH 708B (2 Points)****Clinical Neuropsychology**

Consists of: an introduction to neuroanatomy and neuropathology and general methodology; seminars on the major areas of neuropsychological dysfunction, introduction to community-used test materials and theoretical issues of neuropsychological assessment, neuropsychological dysfunction, individual assessment and individual case studies.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 708 A and B

**PSYCH 709A (2 Points)****PSYCH 709B (2 Points)****Clinical Psychology: Assessment and Formulation**

Focuses on assessment and formulation as practised by clinical psychologists. Topics include: diagnostic practices using DSM, the clinical interview, psychometric assessment, and behavioural observation. Emphasis is placed on how the psychologist's practice is informed by psychological models about disorders, a psycho-social perspective in relation to gender, culture, and economic resources, and the psychologist's personal processes.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 709 A and B

**PSYCH 710 (2 Points)****Language, Number and Symbol**

The human capacity for symbolic processing is something that characterises our species. Our ability to use language and number are two of the most obvious examples of this skill. In this course, these and other aspects of the human mind are examined, from the perspective of cognitive neuroscience.

Restriction: 461.729

**PSYCH 711A (2 Points)****PSYCH 711B (2 Points)****Advanced Operant Behaviour**

A seminar course on advanced treatments of learning and behaviour including both reinforcement and stimulus control. A research-oriented approach is stressed in both pure and applied areas and in the technological application of basic principles in educational and clinical procedures.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 711 A and B

**PSYCH 713A (2 Points)****PSYCH 713B (2 Points)****Advanced Child Psychology**

This course is seminar-based involving critical evaluation of research and theory in child psychology. Set readings will be discussed on topics in areas such as: early cognitive development, language and reading development, attachment and temperament, self-regulation, social competence, behavioural problems and parenting.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 713 A and B

**PSYCH 714 (2 Points)****Basic Neuroscience**

An advanced seminar on brain organisation and function. Topics include: neuronal signalling,

principles of cerebral organisation, brain development, mechanisms of plasticity, cerebral rhythms, and high-level neuronal integration. Emphasis will be placed on current developments relevant to the understanding of human psychological processes.

Restriction: 461.724

**PSYCH 716 (2 Points)****Social Psychology**

Key empirical and theoretical areas in modern social psychology form the basis of this seminar-based course. Topics will include: social cognition, attitudes, group processes, intergroup relations, and close personal relationships. Other topics may be introduced after class consultation.

Restriction: 461.712

**PSYCH 717 (2 Points)****Community Psychology**

This course is about the application of psychological knowledge and research skills to issues faced by local community organisations. Students will work with outside organisations to design an evaluation of an intervention or a research project relevant to the organisations involved. Theoretical approaches to working in community settings and the practical challenges involved will be discussed.

Restriction: 461.728

**PSYCH 720A (2 Points)****PSYCH 720B (2 Points)****Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the direct supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation, instead of a final examination paper. A list of staff available for supervision, and their areas of interest and expertise, is published each year in the Psychology Department Postgraduate Handbook.

Restriction: 461.728

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 720 A and B

**PSYCH 721 (2 Points)****Consciousness and Cognition**

This course will discuss recent research on consciousness from the perspective of cognitive neuroscience. Topics covered may include: implicit learning, implicit memory, blindsight, the split-brain syndrome, amnesia, and hemineglect.

Restriction: 461.724

**PSYCH 725 (2 Points)****Evolutionary Psychology**

This course will cover evolutionary concepts as they apply to psychological issues. Specific topics may include: the evolution of tool use, language, cerebral asymmetry, theory of mind, culture and the sociobiology/evolutionary psychology debates.

**PSYCH 731 (2 Points)****Collective Behaviour and Social Problems**

Focuses on the application of social psychological knowledge and theory to the understanding of broad social and cultural processes and phenomena, such as violence, prejudice, group behaviour and conflict, intergroup dynamics, collective behaviour, social beliefs, cultural differentiation and contact.

Restriction: 461.728

**PSYCH 732 (4 Points)**  
**Advanced Cultural Psychology**  
 Current issues where the cultural component has significant bearing on how people perceive themselves and others in various social contexts. General topics will include the following: culture and imperialism, culture and identity, culture and conflict, and culture and language.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 318*

**PSYCH 735A (2 Points)**  
**PSYCH 735B (2 Points)**

**Issues in Human Perception and Performance**  
 This is a seminar-based introduction to contemporary theoretical accounts of the nature of perceptual-motor integration, control and learning. It will focus on theories of perception and cognition as they apply to the control of action, as well as consider the theoretical implications of applications as diverse as handwriting, locomoting, and sports.  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 735 A and B*

**PSYCH 737 (2 Points)**

**Human Factors 1**  
 Human factors, otherwise known as 'ergonomics' or 'engineering psychology', is the multidisciplinary study of human-machine environment systems. Using lectures, seminars, practical projects, and field studies, this course reviews basic concepts and methods, identifies key factors, and examines current research in the field.  
*Restriction: 461.726*

**PSYCH 738 (2 Points)**

**Human Factors 2**  
 A continuing investigation of current research in selected topics in general and organisational ergonomics, including aviation, health and safety, and human-computer interactions. A seminar-based, research-oriented approach is complemented with practical projects and field studies.  
*Prerequisite: PSYCH 737*  
*Restriction: 461.726*

**PSYCH 739 (2 Points)**

**Reading Acquisition**  
 Reading is a developmental milestone. How children learn to read, why they fail, and the cognitive processes underlying reading are the main issues addressed in this course. Adult models of reading and acquired dyslexia will also be considered, as they relate to developmental models.

**PSYCH 740 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**PSYCH 741 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**PSYCH 742 (2 Points)**  
**Special Topic**

**PSYCH 743 (2 Points)**

**Critical Qualitative Research**  
 An in-depth focus on critical and discursive approaches to psychological research will be provided in this seminar-based course. Content will include examination of key theoretical underpinnings of critical qualitative research, as well as the practical application of such approaches.

**PSYCH 744 (2 Points)**  
**Experimental Design and Qualitative Methods for Psychology**

Covers applications of the general linear model to research design and analysis. Topics include: univariate techniques (analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, regression) and multivariate techniques (multivariate analysis of variance, discriminant analysis, multivariate regression, and factor analysis).

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 306 or consent of Department*

**PSYCH 745 (2 Points)**

**The Psychology of Death and Dying**  
 Introduction to psychological aspects of death and dying. There will be a brief introduction to psychological models and demography. Special problems of research in this field will also be addressed.

*Restriction: PSYCH 734*

**PSYCH 789A (2 Points)**  
**PSYCH 789B (2 Points)**

**Honours Dissertation in Psychology**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 789 A and B*

**PSYCH 796A (7 Points)**  
**PSYCH 796B (7 Points)**

**Master's Thesis in Psychology**  
*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 796 A and B*

**Doctor of Clinical Psychology Courses**

**PSYCH 811A (1 Point)**  
**PSYCH 811B (1 Point)**

**Clinical Practice I**  
 Psychological assessment and therapy for diverse clinical populations, including adult, and child and family. Cognitive behaviour therapy and family therapy are central, but other models are included. Consideration of psychotherapy research and practical exercises are incorporated. Includes one, 200-hour practicum in either an adult health setting or a child and family health setting. Evaluation is by internal assessment, including assessments by field supervisors.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 811 A and B*

**PSYCH 812A (1 Point)**  
**PSYCH 812B (1 Point)**

**Clinical Research Design and Professional Issues**  
 Advanced clinical research design, ethics, bicultural and cross-cultural practice, supervision practice, and other professional issues relevant to the practice of clinical psychology are covered. Evaluation is by internal assessment.

*To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 812 A and B*

**PSYCH 813A (1 Point)**  
**PSYCH 813B (1 Point)**

**Clinical Practice II**  
 Advanced psychological assessment and therapy for diverse clinical populations, including adult, and child and family. Cognitive behaviour therapy, narrative therapy, psychodynamic therapy, and the

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 561.

trauma model are emphasised. Includes one, 200-hour practicum in either an adult health setting or a child and family health setting. Evaluation is by internal assessment, including assessment by field supervisors.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 813 A and B

**PSYCH 814A** (1 Point)

**PSYCH 814B** (1 Point)

#### Clinical Specialisation

An advanced consideration of clinical practice in the specialist setting, corresponding with staff interests and community placement availability. Options may include: clinical neuropsychology, forensic psychology, assessment and psychological treatment of psychoses, child and adolescent clinical psychology, drug and alcohol addiction, and others. Theory, research methods, and practical exercises are included. Includes one, 200-hour practicum designed to cover a range of clinical skills in the specialist area. Evaluation will be by internal assessment, including assessments by field supervisors.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 814 A and B

**PSYCH 821A** (3 Points)

**PSYCH 821B** (3 Points)

#### Internship

This includes a practical component of supervised clinical work of not less than 1500 hours in an approved health setting. Emphasis is placed on the application of research principles and designs in routine psychological clinical practice. A university-based seminar course that covers topics relevant to advanced, intern-level practice is included. Evaluation is by internal assessment, and assessment by field supervisors.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 821 A and B

**PSYCH 894A** (4 Points)

**PSYCH 894B** (4 Points)

#### Portfolio of Clinical Research I

Three original research projects demonstrating appropriate use of the scientist-practitioner model (single case design or group research) will be included. One project will be conducted within each of the three practicum placements associated with courses PSYCH 811, 813, and 814. One project must be related to research with an adult population, one with a child and family population, and one in the specialist area chosen by the candidate. Each will be worth 2 points. The projects will be examined by two academic psychologists and one senior psychologist practising in the community.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 894 A and B

**PSYCH 895A** (2 Points)

**PSYCH 895B** (2 Points)

#### Portfolio of Clinical Research II

Two original research projects, usually carried out within the intern setting, will be included. The projects will be examined by three academic psychologists, one of whom will be external to the University of Auckland.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 895 A and B

**PSYCH 896A** (8 Points)

**PSYCH 896B** (6 Points)

**PSYCH 896C** (4 Points)

#### Thesis for Doctor of Clinical Psychology

An original research dissertation completed over the three years of the degree (14 points in years 1 and 2; 4 points in year 3). The research may be basic or applied, but should be broadly relevant to some area of psychological health or clinical neuropsychology, and represent a significant contribution to knowledge in the field.

To complete this course students must enrol in PSYCH 896 A, B and C

## Science: General

### Stage I

**SCIGEN 100** (2 Points)

#### Introductory Science for Teaching

This course is intended to provide an introduction to the nature and practice of physics, chemistry, biology and geology together with a working knowledge of some of the basic principles. Some laboratory experiences will be included. This course is available only to students who are enrolled for an Education Degree or Diploma.

**SCIGEN 101** (2 Points)

#### Science Communication

Focuses students' skills in communicating science effectively using oral, written, visual and electronic communication. Course modules give the student an understanding of the nature and methods of both science and communication, types of scientific audiences and how to analyse them, ways of managing and presenting statistical data, effective scientific writing, scientific poster and seminar presentation and an introduction to electronic communication technologies.

### Stage II

**SCIGEN 201** (2 Points)

#### Managing Science and Technology

An interdisciplinary examination of issues relating to the management of science and technology. At a policy level, topics include the international context for science and technology, the role of business and research organisations, and policies for emerging technologies. At an organisational level, issues range from strategic analysis of the business environment to planning a corporate response. At project level, topics include the management of specialist staff and resources, and implementation of research strategies.

## Speech Science

### Honours and Master's Courses

**SPCHSCI 711** (2 Points)

#### Speech Language Therapy I

Typical and atypical language development. Language Disorders – the assessment and treatment of language disorders; this will include

causes for delayed language development, specific language impairment, congenital syndromes and learning disabilities. Motor Speech Disorders (Paediatric and Adult) – introduction to brain mechanisms and disorders of neurogenic origin. Augmentative Communication – introduction to management of clients with complex communication disabilities who require an augmentative communication system in order to facilitate speech.

**SPCHSCI 712 (2 Points)**

**Linguistics for Speech Language Therapy**

The study of acoustic and articulatory phonetics, phonemic transcription using the International Phonetic Alphabet, and the relationship between articulatory phonetics, acoustic phonetics and speech perception. An examination of normal speech sound acquisition, phonological development, and the assessment and treatment of articulation and phonological disorder. Additional language analysis covering phonology, syntax, semantics and pragmatics.

**SPCHSCI 713 (2 Points)**

**Anatomy and Physiology of the Speech Language and Hearing Systems**

Study of the anatomy and physiology of the speech and hearing mechanisms including human development with specific attention to the respiratory, phonatory and other nervous systems. Neurocognition of language – the representation of linguistic systems in the brain.

**SPCHSCI 714 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum I**

Clinical observation under supervisor guidance in a variety of settings, establishing links between theory and practice. This course is supported by weekly tutorial sessions.

**SPCHSCI 721 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy II**

Aphasia and Related Disorders – assessment and management of clients with acquired communication disorders. Dysphagia Diagnosis (Paediatric and Adult) – assessment of clients with dysphagia. Dysphagia Management (Paediatric and Adult) – management of clients with dysphagia.

**SPCHSCI 722 (2 Points)**

**Psychology and Education in Speech-language Therapy**

Child Development and Learning – the study of normal child development and patterns of learning. Language Acquisition and the Development of Literacy – the study of the normal acquisition of literacy skills with specific reference to the School Curriculum. Communication and Mental Health – communication and counselling skills required in order to work effectively with clients and their families.

**SPCHSCI 724 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum II**

Clinical observation and practice in a variety of settings, enabling students to work with clients under supervision. This course is supported by weekly tutorials.

**SPCHSCI 731 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy III**

Voice Science and Disorders – study of the voice, and the assessment and management of voice disorders. Fluency – assessment and management of clients with dysfluency disorders (adult and paediatric). Study of causative factors and differing approaches in dysfluency treatment.

**SPCHSCI 732A (2 Points)**

**SPCHSCI 732B (2 Points)**

**Audiology for Speech Language Therapy**

Study of types of hearing impairment, pathologies of the hearing mechanism, tests and clinical procedures used in audiological evaluations. Audiology with adults and children and the role of the speech language therapist in the assessment and management of adults with hearing loss.

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPCHSCI 732 A and B*

**SPCHSCI 734 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum III**

Clinical practice in a variety of settings with students taking responsibility for the assessment and management of cases with supervisor guidance. Weekly tutorials support the course.

**SPCHSCI 741 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Professional Practice**

Professional and organisational skills relevant to current speech language therapy practice. Legal and ethical issues, best practice, professional development and multi-disciplinary team work, evidence-based practice, and implications for SLT practice in a bi-cultural and multi-cultural environment.

**SPCHSCI 742 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Project**

**SPCHSCI 744 (2 Points)**

**Speech Language Therapy Clinical Practicum IV**

Clinical practice in a variety of settings with the student demonstrating independent practice and problem solving skills. Supervisory guidance will be given and the course will be supported by weekly tutorials.

**SPCHSCI 751 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic**

**SPCHSCI 752 (2 Points)**

**Research Project**

**SPCHSCI 796 (14 Points)**

**MSc Thesis in Speech Science**

---

**Sport and Exercise Science**

---

**Stage I**

**SPORTSCI 102 (2 Points)**

**Sport and Society**

An introduction to the sociology of sport. Sport and social theories. Sport and New Zealand culture. Gender, race and class issues in sport. Sport and the media, nationalism, Olympism, commercialism and globalisation. Future trends.

**SPORTSCI 103 (2 Points)**  
**Human Anatomy**

The study of the gross anatomical organisation of the neural, muscular and skeletal systems, with particular reference to the neck, limbs, back and abdominal wall. Practical work includes gross anatomy laboratories and CD-ROM study.

*Restriction: 470.101*

**SPORTSCI 104 (2 Points)****Functional Human Anatomy**

Assessment of static and dynamic posture and balance, flexibility, strength and power, body composition, proportionality, and qualitative analysis of locomotion. Practical work will include techniques for measuring the variables noted above, including their use in current human performance assessment.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 103*

**Stage II****SPORTSCI 201 (2 Points)****Introductory Exercise Physiology**

The biology and physiology of skeletal muscle, liver and adipose tissue, including its metabolism, energetics, activation and control. The adaptations of muscle strength, power and endurance to habitual physical activity and inactivity.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104, or 470.101 and 470.202*

**SPORTSCI 202 (2 Points)****Mechanics of Injury**

Incidence, severity and mechanisms of sports injuries. Pathology/histology of tissue response to injury. Biomechanical principles useful in understanding musculoskeletal dysfunction from injury. Strategies for prevention of sports injuries. Methods of recovery from sport injuries.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104*

**SPORTSCI 203 (2 Points)****Introductory Biomechanics**

Mechanical analysis of human movement, using qualitative, quantitative and predictive techniques. The focus is on sports techniques, musculoskeletal stress and locomotion.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104*

**SPORTSCI 204 (2 Points)****Psychology of Physical Activity**

An introduction to the study of psychology as it relates to sport, exercise, health and rehabilitation.

*Prerequisite: PSYCH 108 or 109 or 128 or 129*

**SPORTSCI 205 (2 Points)****Exercise Prescription**

An introduction to the risks and benefits of exercise, exercise policy and safety, physical fitness testing, guidelines for exercise test administration, principles of exercise prescription, cardiorespiratory and neuromuscular training.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104*

**SPORTSCI 206 (2 Points)****Exercise Nutrition**

A cross-disciplinary focus on nutrition, examining nutritional enhancement of sports performance, diet and physiological function, eating disorders,

energy balance, body composition and the role of diet in growth and exercise.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104*

**Stage III****SPORTSCI 301 (2 Points)****Exercise and Work Physiology**

Cardiopulmonary, endocrine and immune responses to acute exercise and adaptations to habitual physical activity. Physiological aspects of exercise and adaptation under different environmental conditions. Exercise and cardiovascular health and fitness.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 201*

**SPORTSCI 302 (2 Points)****Sport and Exercise Physiology for Special Populations**

Specific functional needs of, and adaptations to, exercise in different sporting codes. Physiological responses to exercise in persons with specific disabilities. Training requirements of these special populations.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 301*

**SPORTSCI 303 (2 Points)****Physical Ergonomics and Rehabilitation**

Evaluation of musculoskeletal stresses in industry. The role of quantitative analysis in the identification, assessment and control of workplace risks. Qualitative and quantitative assessment of locomotion and posture. Rehabilitation in gait problems.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 203*

**SPORTSCI 304 (2 Points)****Sport Psychology**

Examination of psychological factors affecting behaviour and performance in exercise and sport. The individual performer is the major consideration, but group influences on individual performance are also considered.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 204*

**SPORTSCI 305 (2 Points)****Motor Control and Learning**

An examination of the mechanisms by which movements are controlled and motor skills are acquired. Neuro-physiological, cognitive and dynamical aspects of motor control and the plasticity of systems with learning.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 104, or 470.101 and 470.202, and SPORTSCI 204*

**SPORTSCI 306 (2 Points)****Technique Assessment in Sport**

An overview of current biomechanics methodology for assessing movement in sport, with emphasis on image analysis, force measurement techniques and electromyography. A technique assessment project is completed.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 203*

**SPORTSCI 307 (2 Points)****Physical Activity and Social Issues**

An examination of topical issues in sport and physical activity based in sociological theory. Includes an introduction to qualitative research methods and analysis. Specific topics follow student interests.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 102 and 204*

**SPORTSCI 308 (2 Points)****Management of Sport and Recreation**

Business aspects of sport and recreation; national and local sports funding and organisations; management planning, organising, leadership and control in a sport and recreation context; marketing sport and recreation; leadership and human resource management; managing voluntary organisations; managing sports projects and events.

*Prerequisite: SPORTSCI 102 and 204*

**SPORTSCI 309A (1 Point)****SPORTSCI 309B (1 Point)****Practicum in Sport and Exercise Science**

This practicum provides an opportunity to combine theoretical knowledge with practical skills in exercise rehabilitation, physical/cognitive ergonomics or sport science settings.

*Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department, and three of SPORTSCI 201, 202, 203 and 204*

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 309 A and B*

**Diploma Courses****SPORTSCI 690A (2 Points)****SPORTSCI 690B (2 Points)****Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Sport and Exercise Science)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 690 A and B*

**SPORTSCI 691A (2 Points)****SPORTSCI 691B (2 Points)****PG Diploma Dissertation (Sport and Exercise Science)**

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 691 A and B*

**Honours and Master's Courses****SPORTSCI 701 (2 Points)****Age and Human Performance**

The effects of ageing on human performance with respect to physiological, psychological, biomechanical and skill development factors.

**SPORTSCI 702 (2 Points)****Project in Sport and Exercise Science**

Provides students with an opportunity to collect data in an area of interest, with the aim of validating an area of study towards their theses.

**SPORTSCI 703 (2 Points)****Cardiac Rehabilitation**

The role of the Exercise Scientist in cardiac rehabilitation. Topics include electrocardiography, exercise testing and exercise prescription. The course combines theory and laboratory/clinical study of these topics.

**SPORTSCI 704 (2 Points)****Human Performance in Industry**

An examination of techniques for the development of strategies to maximise human performance in industry. It uses approaches and techniques from cognitive and physical ergonomics to evaluate task demands and human capabilities in the workplace.

**SPORTSCI 705 (2 Points)****Seminar in Sports Science**

The role of science in sport – current developments

and future needs. Practical seminar and research skills. Meta-analysis and critiquing of journal articles. Development and presentation of literature reviews.

**SPORTSCI 706 (2 Points)****Physiology of Exercise and Rest**

Recent advances in understanding human physiological responses and adaptations to physical activity, including maximal exertion, occasional and habitual exercise, exercise under special conditions (heat and cold stress, alterations in oxygen supply), and the effects of prolonged inactivity.

*Restriction: PHYSIOL 706*

**SPORTSCI 707 (2 Points)****Advanced Seminar in Biomechanics**

A seminar and laboratory-based course which examines theoretical and practical concerns in quantitative biomechanical data collection and analysis. Topics include: signal processing methods, 2D and 3D video analysis, human body modelling.

**SPORTSCI 708 (2 Points)****Contemporary Topics in Human Motor Control**

A theoretical and practical study of contemporary topics in human motor control. The multidisciplinary approach of this course examines the mechanisms, laws and principles which govern the coordination and control of movement.

**SPORTSCI 709 (2 Points)****Group Dynamics**

A seminar-based course covering the following topics relative to sport, exercise, business and industry groups – group environment, structure, processes, cohesion and development.

**SPORTSCI 710 (2 Points)****Exercise Rehabilitation**

The role of exercise in a multi-component approach to rehabilitation. Risks and benefits of exercise, particularly with respect to sedentary individuals and/or those with medical considerations. Exercise test administration. Exercise prescription and monitoring, physical and functional assessment of performance.

**SPORTSCI 711 (2 Points)****Exercise Psychology**

Exercise adherence/compliance behaviour in both clinical and non-clinical populations is examined. In addition, the psychological benefits and costs associated with acute and chronic involvement in exercise will be reviewed. Finally, the strength of any field is intimately linked to the quality of its assessment tools. Hence, quantitative and qualitative self-report, behavioural and physiological measures of exercise, as well as measures of suspected consequences of exercise, are described and critiqued.

**SPORTSCI 789A (2 Points)****SPORTSCI 789B (2 Points)****BSc(Hons) Dissertation in Sport and Exercise Science**

*To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 789 A and B*

**SPORTSCI 791A (2 Points)****SPORTSCI 791B (2 Points)**

**Dissertation in Exercise Rehabilitation**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 791 A and B

**SPORTSCI 796A** (7 Points)

**SPORTSCI 796B** (7 Points)

**MSc Thesis in Sport and Exercise Science**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 796 A and B

**SPORTSCI 797A** (7 Points)

**SPORTSCI 797B** (7 Points)

**MSc Thesis in Exercise Rehabilitation**

To complete this course students must enrol in SPORTSCI 797 A and B

**Statistics****Stage I**

**STATS 101** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Statistics**

Statistics and the process of investigation, types of statistical study, tools for exploring and summarising data, probability and distributions, estimation, confidence intervals to convey uncertainty, statistical significance (includes t-tests and p-values), quantitative variables and comparing groups (includes one-way analysis of variance), nonparametric methods, qualitative variables and tables of counts (includes chi-square test), relationships between quantitative variables (includes simple linear regression and correlation).

*Restriction: STATS 102, 107, 108, 191*

**STATS 102** (2 Points)

**Statistics for Social Science**

This is the standard Stage I Statistics course for the Faculty of Arts. Its syllabus is as for STATS 101, but it places more emphasis on examples from social science.

*Restriction: STATS 101, 107, 108, 191*

**STATS 107** (2 Points)

**Statistics for Science and Technology**

This is the standard Stage I Statistics course for all students at the Tamaki Campus, except those in the Faculty of Business and Economics. Its syllabus is as for STATS 101, but it places more emphasis on examples from science.

*Restriction: STATS 101, 102, 108, 191*

**STATS 108** (2 Points)

**Statistics for Commerce**

This is the standard Stage I Statistics course for the Faculty of Business and Economics or for Arts students taking Economics courses. Its syllabus is as for STATS 101, but it places more emphasis on examples from commerce.

*Restriction: STATS 101, 102, 107, 191*

**STATS 120** (2 Points)

**Information Visualisation**

Emphasises computer visualisation and analysis of data from several different disciplines. Introduction to: statistical computing, computer graphics, strategies of information visualisation; computer-intensive statistical techniques, presentation of scientific information.

*Prerequisite: 65% or more in Bursary Mathematics with Statistics or one of STATS 101, 102, 107, 108*

**STATS 191** (2 Points)

**Quantitative Methods For Business**

Statistics and the process of investigation, types of statistical inquiry, tools for exploring and summarising data, probability and distributions. This includes estimation of confidence intervals and statistical significance, the comparison of groups (including one-way analysis of variance), nonparametric methods and assessment of qualitative variables. The relationships between quantitative variables (including simple linear regression and correlation), and the use of computers for statistical analysis.

*Restriction: STATS 101, 102, 107, 108*

**Stage II**

**STATS 201** (2 Points)

**Data Analysis**

Time series and index numbers. Exploratory data analysis, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, regression techniques, contingency tables, goodness of fit. The emphasis is on data analysis using computers which are provided in the departmental computing laboratory.

*Prerequisite: 2 points in Stage I Statistics*

*Restriction: STATS 208*

**STATS 208** (2 Points)

**Data Analysis for Commerce**

Time series and index numbers. Exploratory data analysis, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, regression techniques, contingency tables, goodness of fit. The emphasis is on data analysis using computers which are provided in the departmental computing laboratory.

*Prerequisite: 2 points in Stage I Statistics*

*Restriction: STATS 201*

**STATS 210** (2 Points)

**Statistical Theory**

Probability axioms, discrete and continuous distributions, multivariate distributions, moment generating functions, sampling theory for the normal distribution. This course is a prerequisite for the more theoretical Stage III Statistics course and for the BSc(Hons) and Master's degree in Statistics.

*Corequisite: MATHS 253 or equivalent*

**STATS 220** (2 Points)

**Data Technologies**

Explores the processes of data acquisition, storage and analysis using current technologies. Students will gain experience and understanding of the processes of data acquisition, storage, retrieval, manipulation, management and analysis, and how the technologies that perform these processes connect and interact with statistical packages, users and each other.

*Prerequisite: One Stage I course in Computer Science or Statistics.*

**STATS 255** (2 Points)

**Introduction to Operations Research**

Emphasises the relationship between business and industrial applications and their associated Operations Research models. Software packages will be used to solve practical problems. Topics such

as linear programming, transportation and assignment models, network algorithms, queues, Markov chains, inventory models, and simulation will be considered.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Stage I Statistics or Mathematics  
*Restriction:* ENGSCI 255, 311

**Stage III**

**STATS 301 (2 Points)**

**Data Management and Analysis**

Introduction to the SAS software implemented on a UNIX operating system. Basic principles of good experimental design and analysis. Datastep programming, data entry and manipulation and preparing data for analysis. Methods for analysing experimental data involving discrete explanatory variables, including ANOVA and contingency table analysis.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 201 or 208 or 210

**STATS 302 (2 Points)**

**Applied Multivariate Analysis**

Covers the exploratory analysis of multivariate data, with emphasis on the use of statistical software and reporting of results. Topics covered include: techniques for data display, dimension reduction and ordination, discrimination and tree-based methods. Some additional topics such as time series and computer intensive methods may also be covered.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 201 or 208 or 210

**STATS 310 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Statistical Theory**

Estimation, likelihood methods, hypothesis testing, linear models, decision theory.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 210, and MATHS 253

**STATS 320 (2 Points)**

**Applied Stochastic Modelling**

Introduction to stochastic modelling, with an emphasis on queues. Application areas include: biology, inventory control, scheduling of manufacturing processes. Some computer simulation will be required. Estimation and variance reduction.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Stage I Statistics, and MATHS 253 or equivalent

*Restriction:* OPSRES 385

**STATS 325 (2 Points)**

**Stochastic Processes**

Introduction to stochastic processes, generating functions, recurrent event theory; Markov chains including applications to random walks and discrete branching processes; Poisson processes, birth and death processes including applications to queuing processes; miscellaneous topics.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 210, and MATHS 253 or equivalent

**STATS 330 (2 Points)**

**Advanced Statistical Modelling**

Application of the generalised linear model to fit data arising from a range of sources including multiple regression models, logistic regression models, and log-linear models. The graphical exploration of data. The S-plus computer package will be used.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 201 or 208 or 210

*Restriction:* ECON 321

**STATS 340 (2 Points)**

**Design of Experiments and Surveys**

Survey methods including stratified, multistage and cluster sampling; experimental designs including incomplete block, Latin square, split plot, factorial and fractional designs.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 201 or 208 or 210

**STATS 350A (1 Point)**

**STATS 350B (1 Point)**

**Total Quality Management**

Statistical quality control; quality planning; total quality management; Deming approach; costs of quality; integration of operations management and quality, in both manufacturing and services; relationship between quality management and information systems.

*Prerequisite:* STATS 201 or 208 or 210

*Restriction:* 636.372

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 350 A and B

**STATS 370 (2 Points)**

**Financial Mathematics**

Mean-variance portfolio theory; options, arbitrage and put-call relationships; introduction of binomial and Black-Scholes option pricing models; compound interest, annuities, capital redemption policies, valuation of securities, sinking funds; varying rates of interest, taxation; duration and immunisation; introduction to life annuities and life insurance mathematics.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Stage II Statistics and 2 points in Stage II Mathematics and, either FINANCE 251 or 2 further points in Stage III Statistics

**STATS 390 (2 Points)**

**Topics in Statistics**

*Prerequisite:* STATS 210, and MATHS 253 or equivalent

**STATS 391 (2 Points)**

**Optimisation in Operations Research**

Linear programming, the revised simplex method and its computational aspects, duality and the dual simplex method, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis. Network optimisation models, transportation and flow problems, the network simplex method, integer programming, branch and bound.

*Prerequisite:* MATHS 253 or equivalent, and COMPSCI 101 or MATHS 162

*Restriction:* OPSRES 392

**Diploma Courses**

**STATS 690A (2 Points)**

**STATS 690B (2 Points)**

**Graduate Diploma Dissertation (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 690 A and B

**STATS 691A (2 Points)**

**STATS 691B (2 Points)**

**PG Diploma Dissertation (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 691 A and B

**STATS 692A (1 Point)**

**STATS 692B (1 Point)**

**Graduate Diploma Project (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 692 A and B

**STATS 693A** (1 Point)

**STATS 693B** (1 Point)

**PG Diploma Project (Statistics)**

To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 693 A and B

### Honours and Master's Courses

**STATS 708** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Statistical Education

Covers a wide range of research in statistics education at the school and tertiary level. There will be a consideration of, and an examination of, the issues involved in statistics education in the curriculum, teaching, learning, technology and assessment areas.

**STATS 710** (2 Points)

#### Probability Theory

Covers some of the most fundamental ideas in probability theory and statistical inference including: probability spaces, distribution theory, characteristic functions, limit theorems, the likelihood principle, point and interval estimation, testing statistical hypotheses.

*Prerequisite: STATS 210*

**STATS 711** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Probability A

**STATS 712** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Probability B

**STATS 720** (2 Points)

#### Stochastic Processes

Continuous-time jump Markov processes. A selection of topics from: point processes, renewal theory, martingales, Brownian motion, Gaussian processes, and inference for stochastic processes.

*Prerequisite: STATS 325*

**STATS 721** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Stochastic Processes A

**STATS 722** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Stochastic Processes B

**STATS 723** (2 Points)

#### Stochastic Methods in Finance

Basic theory of finance, interest, risk, simulation, variance reduction, sensitivity analysis, continuous time models in finance, option pricing.

**STATS 724** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Operations Research A

**STATS 725** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Operations Research B

**STATS 726** (2 Points)

#### Time Series

Stationary processes, moving average and autoregressive (ARIMA) models, modelling and estimation in the time domain, seasonal models, forecasting, spectral analysis and bivariate processes.

**STATS 727** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Time Series

**STATS 730** (2 Points)

#### Statistical Inference

Sufficiency and ancillarity, exponential families, likelihood and information. General theories of inference including Bayesian, Fisherian and Neyman-Pearsonian. Decision theory. Sequential analysis.

**STATS 731** (2 Points)

#### Bayesian Inference

A course in practical Bayesian statistical inference covering: the Bayesian approach specification of prior distributions, decision-theoretic foundations, the likelihood principle, asymptotic approximations, simulation methods, Markov Chain Monte Carlo methods, the BUGS and CODA software, model assessment, hierarchical models, application in data analysis.

**STATS 732** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Statistical Inference B: Quantitative Fisheries Science

Introduction to quantitative issues, methods and terminology of fisheries science. Stock assessment modelling, including stock-recruit, surplus production and sequential population analysis. Statistical techniques for coping with the particular nuances of fisheries data with topics including measurement-error, penalised likelihood and state-space models. Introduction to recent developments in quantitative fisheries science, including Bayesian and Markov Chain Monte Carlo methodologies and automatic differentiation software for fitting complex models.

**STATS 734** (2 Points)

#### Nonparametrics

A selection of topics chosen from U-statistics, theory of statistical functionals, permutation tests, bootstrapping and jack-knifing.

**STATS 740** (2 Points)

#### Sample Surveys

Simple random sampling: basic theory for means and proportions. Finite population central limit theorem. Estimates for subclasses. Stratification: proportional and optional allocation, post-stratification. Ratio and regression estimators. Multi-stage sampling: cluster-sampling, systematic sampling, two-stage sampling. Sampling with probability proportional to size. Horvitz-Thompson estimates. Variance estimation for complex designs; linearisation. Randomisation and super-population theories of inference. Adjusting for non-response. Repeated surveys. Methods for the analysis of survey data. Further topics.

**STATS 741** (2 Points)

#### Topics in Sampling

**STATS 747** (2 Points)

#### Statistical Methods in Marketing

Stochastic models of brand choice, applications of General Linear Models in marketing, conjoint analysis, advertising media models and marketing response models.

**STATS 750** (2 Points)

#### Experimental Design

The design and analysis of data from experiments involving factorial and related designs and designs which have the property known as general balance (this includes most of the standard designs), and more general designs with blocking and replication. Response surface methodology. Sequential experimentation.

**STATS 751** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Study Design**

**STATS 752** (2 Points)  
**Design of Medical Studies**  
 Design and analysis of clinical trials; design and analysis of case-control, cohort and cross-sectional studies. Meta analysis.

**STATS 760** (2 Points)  
**Regression Modelling**  
 Linear and generalised linear models. Extensions selected from the topics nonlinear regression, estimating equation methods, nonparametric regression and robust methods; general strategies for modelling. Applications to the analysis of data on continuous, ordinal and categorical response variables.

*Prerequisite: STATS 310*

**STATS 761** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Regression Modelling**

**STATS 764** (2 Points)  
**Analysis of Failure Time Data**  
 Topics in the theory and analysis of survival data. Survival data arises both in the Health Sciences and in industrial testing. Such data is often subject to censoring and truncated data. Both parametric and nonparametric methods, such as Kaplan-Meier estimates, will be covered. Other topics may include: proportional hazards regression, censored data and reliability.

**STATS 766** (2 Points)  
**Multivariate Analysis**

Selection of topics from multivariate inference (one and two samples, multivariate regression and analysis of variance), dimension reducing techniques (including principal components, factor analysis and multidimensional scaling), discriminant analysis and cluster analysis.

*Prerequisite: STATS 310*

**STATS 767** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Multivariate Analysis**

**STATS 770** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Medical Statistics**

An introduction to ideas of importance in medical statistics, such as measures of risk, basic types of medical study, causation, ethical issues and censoring, together with a review of common methodologies.

**STATS 771** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Biostatistics A**

**STATS 772** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Biostatistics B**

**STATS 773** (2 Points)  
**Design and Analysis of Clinical Trials**

The theory and practice of clinical trials, including: design issues, data management, common analysis methodologies, intention to treat, compliance, interim analyses and ethical considerations.

**STATS 775** (2 Points)  
**Design of Ecological Experiments**

Factorial designs, nested hierarchies and mixed models; variance components and expected mean squares; precision and power analysis; multivariate analysis in ecology; designs to detect environmental impact; resampling methods and permutation tests for complex designs.

**STATS 776** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Environmental and Ecological Statistics**

**STATS 778** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Statistical Methods for Quality Improvement**

**STATS 780** (2 Points)  
**Statistical Consulting**

Training in statistical consulting, i.e., applying statistical methods to practical research problems in other disciplines. Together with a member of staff of the Statistics Department, small groups of students will discuss with researchers and other clients, the design and analysis of their quantitative investigations.

**STATS 782** (2 Points)  
**Computing for Statisticians**

This course, which is a compulsory course for a BSc(Hons) or Master's degree in Statistics, is an introduction to the computer as a tool for the professional statistician. Topics include: an introduction to computer operating systems, editors, text processing and typesetting. Data manipulation and programming using a statistical package.

**STATS 783** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Statistical Computing**

**STATS 784** (2 Points)  
**Statistical Data Mining**

Data cleaning, missing values, data warehouses, security, fraud detection, meta-analysis, regression and decision trees, neural networks, the classification problem.

**STATS 785** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Statistical Data Management**

**STATS 787** (2 Points)  
**Topics in Computational Data Analysis and Graphics**

**STATS 788A** (3 Points)  
**STATS 788B** (3 Points)

**Dissertation in Medical Statistics**

*To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 788 A and B*

**STATS 789** (2 Points)

**STATS 789A** (1 Point)  
**STATS 789B** (1 Point)

**Honours Project in Statistics**

*To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 789 A and B, or STATS 789*

**STATS 790** (4 Points)

**STATS 790A** (2 Points)  
**STATS 790B** (2 Points)

**Master's Dissertation A***Restriction: STATS 796**To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 790 A and B, or STATS 790***STATS 791 (6 Points)****STATS 791A (3 Points)****STATS 791B (3 Points)****Master's Dissertation B***Restriction: STATS 796**To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 791 A and B, or STATS 791***STATS 792 (2 Points)****Topics in Statistics A****STATS 793 (2 Points)****Topics in Statistics B****STATS 794 (2 Points)****Topics in Statistics C****STATS 795 (2 Points)****Topics in Statistics D****STATS 796A (7 Points)****STATS 796B (7 Points)****Master's Thesis in Statistics***To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 796 A and B***STATS 797A (7 Points)****STATS 797B (7 Points)****Advanced Studies in Statistics**

An integrated combination of courses, research projects, and investigations in a selection of topics, designed to meet the requirements of each student.

*To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 797 A and B***STATS 798A (7 Points)****STATS 798B (7 Points)****MLitt Thesis in Statistics***To complete this course students must enrol in STATS 798 A and B*

---

**Wine Science**

---

**Honours and Master's Courses****WINESCI 701 (2 Points)****Advanced Winemaking**

The history of winemaking in New Zealand is studied to familiarise students with the industry. Principles and methods of making various wine types, including grape types and varieties. The engineering and logistics of production, including bottling and winery design and layout for an efficient operation. This course will cover the composition of wine and factors that cause change, including deteriorative process. Special characteristics, such as bubble size and formation, will be included. Students will also be introduced to ethics associated with winemaking.

**WINESCI 702 (2 Points)****Chemistry and Physiology of Wine**

The anatomy, physiology and biochemistry of the grape during berry development will be studied, as well as aspects of grape composition relevant to

winemaking. Students will gain knowledge of viticulture and the practices associated with cool climate grape growing. Identifying new areas to grow grapes based on the interaction of soil type and climate. Plant, climatic, soil and rainfall factors important in grape growing and winemaking will be introduced in this course. Control of yeast and bacteria during production as well as fermentation processes will be covered.

**WINESCI 703 (2 Points)****Advances in Wine Analysis**

The principles of wine analysis, grape juice and analysis of different wine types will be studied. Methodologies employed, rationale and instrumental analysis will be included. Students will critique methods commonly used and study new advances in analysis. Chemical composition of different wine types will be studied. Focus will be on the chemical structure of the components of wines, such as phenolics. Emphasis will be placed on those components that influence the sensory appeal and those that are antioxidants.

**WINESCI 704 (2 Points)****Sensory Analysis**

This course will introduce the principles of sensory science, sensory analysis of wine and the differences among wine types, regional styles and grape types. Use of statistical methods will be covered.

**WINESCI 705 (2 Points)****Internship with Industry**

Students will visit designated wineries during the course to observe and learn about the processing of grapes, wine production and practical aspects of winemaking. Assessment will involve a critical evaluation of methods of winemaking with special emphasis on factors associated with different regions in New Zealand and novel approaches developed in the production of cool climate wines.

**WINESCI 706 (2 Points)****Financial and Economic Aspects of Wine Management**

Financial management, business planning and management, strategic planning and economics. Operating a small business enterprise, marketing, intellectual property, branding and appellation. Other topics include law as it affects wine trading, labelling, international sales and contracts, particularly those relating to winery/grape grower relationships.

**WINESCI 707 (2 Points)****Project in Wine Science**

This will include a proposal and presentation on a selected topic associated with wine science. Critical assessment of the literature will be undertaken, and the thesis proposal and seminar will also be included.

**WINESCI 796 (14 Points)****MSc Thesis in Wine Science**

Advanced research on an aspect of wine science. This may be undertaken with the wine industry, CRIs and University staff.

**Joint Board of Studies in Theology**

**Biblical Studies**

**Stage I**

**BSTHEO 101 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to the First Testament**

Indicates to students, methods and areas of study which illuminate the background and nature of the First Testament (also known as the Old Testament or Hebrew Bible).

*Restriction: BSTHEO 102*

**BSTHEO 102 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to First Testament Interpretation**

Gives students an introduction to the First Testament (Old Testament or Hebrew Bible) in the light of scholarship, with particular attention to the methodologies of reading which are applied to its interpretation, and to what is of value for theological understanding today.

*Restriction: BSTHEO 101*

**BSTHEO 135 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Biblical Hebrew**

The aim of this course is to give students a basic knowledge of Biblical Hebrew, enabling them to use dictionaries and commentaries and read simple texts.

**BSTHEO 136 (2 Points)**

**Linguistic Tools for Exegesis**

The aim of this course is to equip students with an understanding of the grammar and syntax of Classical Hebrew and Koine Greek, enabling them to: (i) use Biblical Hebrew and Koine Greek dictionaries, commentaries and computer Bibles in biblical exegesis; and (ii) understand discussion of linguistic issues raised in journal articles and commentaries. No prior knowledge of the languages is assumed. Students intending to read biblical languages should take BSTHEO 135 or 175.

**BSTHEO 141 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to the New Testament**

This course will introduce students to a sensitive, critical reading of the literature which makes up the New Testament, based primarily on the approach of contemporary critical methodology.

**BSTHEO 175 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to New Testament Greek**

The aim of the course is to give students a basic knowledge of New Testament Greek, enabling them to use dictionaries and commentaries and read simple texts. No prior knowledge of Greek is assumed.

**Stage II**

**BSTHEO 201 (2 Points)**

**The World of the First Testament**

The aim is to study the geography, ecology and socio-political organisation of ancient Israel and related societies.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 202 (2 Points)**

**Genesis**

Torah; an examination of this major section of the First Testament through a detailed study of Genesis, with exegesis of selected passages.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 203 (2 Points)**

**Jeremiah**

A study of the history and nature of Biblical prophetic movements with particular reference to the Book of Jeremiah – its history, theology, literary character, rhetorical features, with exegesis of selected passages.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 204 (2 Points)**

**Deuteronomistic History**

A study of the books of Joshua, Judges, 1 and 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings, in the light of their relationship to the Book of Deuteronomy.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 205 (2 Points)**

**Hebrew Short Story**

A specialised study of the Hebrew Short Story. The book(s) studied will be determined on an annual basis.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 206 (2 Points)**

**Daniel**

A study of literary, historical and theological aspects of the book of Daniel, including the deuterocanonical works and the relevant Qumranic traditions and exegesis of the book of Daniel.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 207 (2 Points)**

**Wisdom Literature**

A study of First Testament Wisdom Literature with emphasis on Job, Proverbs, and Qoheleth. Exegesis of selected passages from these texts will be included.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 208 (2 Points)**

**The Book of Psalms**

A study of literary, historical and theological aspects of the book of Psalms, with exegesis of selected passages.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 231 (2 Points)**

**Early Post-Biblical Judaism**

An introduction to: the history of the period from 200 BCE to 135 CE which stretches from the Seleucid domination of the region to the aftermath of the Bar Kochbar revolt; the origin and development of streams of religious thought and practice within the Judaism of this period; the influence of Hellenism and the effects of Hellenisation.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 235 (2 Points)**

**Biblical Hebrew**

The aim of this course is to consolidate knowledge of Biblical Hebrew gained in the introductory course and to translate selected texts from the Hebrew Bible.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 135*

Schedule of Prescriptions

For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

**BSTHEO 236 (2 Points)****Exegesis of the Hebrew Bible**

Translation and exegesis of selected texts from the Hebrew Bible. Texts specified annually.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 and 235 or equivalent*

**BSTHEO 241 (2 Points)****The World of the New Testament**

A study of the historical, political, social, economic and religious worlds that lie behind the texts of the New Testament.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 242 (2 Points)****Luke's Gospel**

A study of Luke's Gospel as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind the text, the teaching presented by it, its relationship to other gospels, and its link to the historical Jesus.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 243 (2 Points)****Matthew's Gospel**

A study of Matthew's Gospel as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind the text, the teaching presented by it, its relationship to other gospels, and its link to the historical Jesus.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 244 (2 Points)****John's Gospel**

A study of the Gospel of John as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind that text, and the place of John's Gospel in early Christianity.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 247 (2 Points)****Mark's Gospel**

A study of Mark's Gospel as a literary text, together with an investigation of the community that lies behind the text, the teaching presented by it, its relationship to other gospels, and its link to the historical Jesus.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 249 (2 Points)****Corinthian Correspondence**

A study of the history and fundamental Pauline theology in the Epistles, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 251 (2 Points)****1 Thessalonians and Philippians**

An examination of the general issues surrounding the production of 1 Thessalonians and Philippians and an exegetical examination of their significant theological and literary characteristics.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 252 (2 Points)****Colossians and Ephesians**

An exegetical study of the epistles of Colossians and Ephesians, with attention to issues of their interrelationship and authorship, social and theological contexts.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 253 (2 Points)****Paul and Galatians**

A systematic survey of the main talking points in current Pauline Studies which draw upon historical, linguistic, rhetorical, theological and biographical approaches to Paul and his world and have a bearing on what Paul has written to the churches of Galatia; and in the light of that survey to embark upon a close, chapter by chapter exegetical reading of his letter to the Galatians.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141*

**BSTHEO 275 (2 Points)****New Testament Greek**

The aim of this course is to consolidate knowledge of New Testament Greek gained in the introductory course and to translate selected texts from the Greek New Testament.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 175*

**BSTHEO 276 (2 Points)****Exegesis of the Greek New Testament**

An advanced course in the grammar of New Testament Greek, and a careful study and translation of selected texts of the Gospels of Mark and Matthew.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141 and 275 or equivalent*

**BSTHEO 281 (2 Points)****The Bible in Literature**

The Bible in Literature investigates a variety of biblical symbols, themes and concerns common to life situations, by exploring portrayals of God, faith, liberation, journey, exile, land, evil, suffering and celebration in contemporary literature. The course includes exegesis of selected biblical texts.

*Prerequisite: Either 2 points at Stage I in Biblical Studies or the approval of the Head of Department*

**BSTHEO 282 (2 Points)****Bible and Mission**

Examines the biblical foundations of a theological understanding of mission and approaches to the use of the biblical text as a mission resource.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 141 and either BSTHEO 101 or 102*

**BSTHEO 283 (2 Points)****Approaches to Interpreting Scripture**

This course will cover: (i) methods of exegesis; (ii) illustrations of the methods, with particular attention to selected texts from both Testaments; (iii) reflection on the implications of the method for faith communities.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 101 or 102, and 141*

**Stage III****BSTHEO 301 (2 Points)****Wisdom Literature – Themes and Issues**

An advanced study of First Testament Wisdom Literature. Focuses on wisdom themes in Job, Qoheleth, the Wisdom of Solomon, and Sirach. Canonical, literary, and historical aspects of selected texts will be explored.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 302 (2 Points)****Patriarchs and Matriarchs in Hebrew Tradition**

A study of the literary, historical and theological aspects of the traditions concerning the patriarchs and matriarchs of Genesis, from both a Christian and Jewish perspective.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 303 (2 Points)**  
**Isaiah – Themes and Issues**

A study of the historical and theological context of the Book of Isaiah with particular reference to Isaiah 40–55. Prophetic witness, forms of prophetic teaching, and the role of the prophet will be examined.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 304 (2 Points)**  
**Liberation and the City**

Examines missiological issues in the First Testament, through consideration of the two themes of liberation and city.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 305 (2 Points)**  
**First Testament Theology**

The aim is to draw on exegetical and introductory studies in order to explore overall theological structures in the First Testament.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies or Christian Thought and History*

**BSTHEO 306 (2 Points)**  
**Worship in Ancient Israel**

Studies the nature and origins of the rites, the seasons, the personnel and the beliefs associated with worship in ancient Israel in their socio-historic context.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 314 (2 Points)**  
**Prophets and Justice**

Literary and rhetorical features of the prophetic corpus (The Book of Jeremiah) will be studied, with particular attention to the questions of oppression and justice. Issues of the process of composition of the prophetic books will be raised and selected passages examined in depth.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 329 (2 Points)**

**BSTHEO 329A (1 Point)**  
**BSTHEO 329B (1 Point)**

**First Testament Research Essay**

A reading and research course catering for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of course offerings in First Testament. Intended for advanced students with at least a B average and majoring in Biblical Studies. The area of study is chosen in consultation with an Adviser appointed by the Biblical Studies Department.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage III in First Testament and the permission of the Head of the Department*  
*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 329 A and B, or BSTHEO 329*

**BSTHEO 336 (2 Points)**

**Exegesis of the Hebrew Bible**

Translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Hebrew language. Texts specified annually.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 236*

**BSTHEO 341 (2 Points)**  
**Passion Narratives**

A study of the passion narratives of the synoptic gospels and of John's gospel, with particular attention to historical and theological issues.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 343 (2 Points)**  
**Johannine Epistles**

An examination of the situation and purpose of I, II, and III John, their relationship to the Gospel of John and their place within the development of the Johannine community.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 344 (2 Points)**  
**The Parables of Jesus**

A study of the parables of Jesus as a literary form, the literary and social world of the parables and an investigation of the place of the parables within individual gospels.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 345 (2 Points)**  
**The Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament**

A study of the Resurrection Traditions in the New Testament. This will look at both the content and the development of the traditions from the perspectives of critical New Testament study. It will also look at how these traditions are interpreted by a selected group of contemporary theologians.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 347 (2 Points)**  
**Romans – Themes and Issues**

This course focuses on the context, concerns and major issues of Romans, together with exegesis of the epistle.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 348 (2 Points)**  
**The General Letters**

Focuses on the contexts and concerns of one or more of the following letters: Hebrews, 1 and 2 Peter, James and Jude. Themes appearing in these epistles will also be explored.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 349 (2 Points)**  
**Apocalyptic and the Apocalypse**

An introduction to apocalyptic literature with particular focus on Apocalypse.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 350 (2 Points)**  
**New Testament Eschatology**

An examination of the nature, types and roles of

eschatology in the New Testament, with reference to selected texts.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 351 (2 Points)**

**Corinthians and Conflict**

A theological study of the cultural and social issues of conflict in 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 352 (2 Points)**

**Biblical Themes in Literature, Art and Film**

Principles and applications of contemporary critical methods in Biblical Studies. Identifying a variety of genres, interpretations, expositions and illustrations of Biblical themes. Focuses particularly on New Zealand and Pacific literature, art and film.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II Biblical Studies, or permission of the Head of Department*

**BSTHEO 353 (2 Points)**

**The Pastoral Epistles**

An examination of the context, concerns and major issues of 1 and 2 Timothy and Titus. Investigates the situation(s) that led to the writing of these epistles, and explores their theological outlook and practical responses. Their contribution to the transmission of the Pauline tradition will be evaluated.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in New Testament and 2 points at Stage II in Biblical Studies*

**BSTHEO 369 (2 Points)**

**BSTHEO 369A (1 Point)**

**BSTHEO 369B (1 Point)**

**New Testament Research Essay**

A reading and research paper catering for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of course offerings in New Testament. Intended for advanced students with at least a B average and majoring in Biblical Studies. The area of study is chosen in consultation with an Adviser appointed by the Biblical Studies Department.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage III in New Testament and the permission of the Head of Department*

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 369 A and B, or BSTHEO 369*

**BSTHEO 376 (2 Points)**

**Exegesis of the Greek New Testament**

The course will comprise the translation and exegesis of selected texts in the Greek New Testament. Texts specified annually.

*Prerequisite: BSTHEO 276*

**BSTHEO 381 (2 Points)**

**Women of the Bible**

An analysis and critique of feminist literary-critical and feminist historical-critical methodologies, through an examination of selected passages from the First and New Testaments.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage II in First Testament and 2 points at Stage II in New Testament*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

*Prerequisite: 16 points in Biblical Studies including 6 points at Stage III. Students will be required to demonstrate knowledge of the appropriate biblical*

*languages for exegesis, to the levels of courses BSTHEO 236 and 275 if they intend to concentrate their study on the First Testament, or to the levels of courses BSTHEO 276 and 235 if they intend to concentrate their study on the New Testament*

*Requirement: 28 points in the subject Biblical Studies constituted as follows: 12 points selected from BSTHEO 701-750; 2 points from BSTHEO 781 Research Methods in Biblical Studies and 14 points from BSTHEO 798 (Thesis)*

**BSTHEO 701A (2 Points)**

**BSTHEO 701B (2 Points)**

**Israel's Origins**

Study of ancient Israel's traditions of origin in the light of contemporary archaeological and social science perspectives.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 701 A and B*

**BSTHEO 702 (4 Points)**

**Exile as Catalyst**

Considerations of the impact of the sixth century exile on the formation of the Torah and on the Prophetic traditions of ancient Israel.

**BSTHEO 703 (4 Points)**

**Biblical Hermeneutics**

A critique of interpretative methods from Midrash to reader-response theory.

**BSTHEO 735 (4 Points)**

**Hebrew Bible Aramaic**

Analysis of the text and context of Aramaic sections of selected texts.

**BSTHEO 741A (2 Points)**

**BSTHEO 741B (2 Points)**

**The Search for the Historical Jesus**

The history of the investigation of the problem with particular attention paid to issues of method and to key figures who have joined the search.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 741 A and B*

**BSTHEO 742 (4 Points)**

**Pre-Gospel Traditions of the Sayings of Jesus**

The Q tradition, gnostic traditions and criteria of authenticity.

**BSTHEO 743 (4 Points)**

**Paul and Group Boundaries**

Getting in and staying in, Christian distinctiveness and discipline, authority and community cohesiveness; an investigation of selected themes within the Pauline corpus.

**BSTHEO 744A (2 Points)**

**BSTHEO 744B (2 Points)**

**Emergence of Christianity and Rabbinic Judaism**

Explores the emergence of two of the world's major religions from the same cultural and religious setting and their inter-relationship. Topics include: Jesus the Jew, the Pharisees, Rabbinic texts, the Interpretation of the Scripture and the Parting of the Ways.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 744 A and B*

**BSTHEO 745 (4 Points)**

**Paul in Focus**

A specialised study of Paul as a New Testament personality in the context of what he wrote.

**BSTHEO 746A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 746B** (2 Points)

#### New Testament Theology

The possibilities, problems and prospects for New Testament theology. The course will examine the work of some contributors to the debate, and include a representative sample of New Testament theologies.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 746 A and B*

**BSTHEO 747A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 747B** (2 Points)

#### Creation in the Bible

An exploration of images of God as Creator, and creation themes occurring throughout the Bible.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 747 A and B*

**BSTHEO 750A** (2 Points)  
**BSTHEO 750B** (2 Points)

#### The Bible and Electronic Media

As the codex was to the second millennium, so electronic texts will be for the next. Explores what digital literacy means in the context of Biblical Studies. Critical literacy in digital media will be encouraged through exploration of both Internet and CD resources including Bible software products as well as databases of archaeological digs, collections of images of artefacts etc. Particular attention will be paid to criteria for assessing both the scholarly and technical merits of electronic publications. Students will critique electronic resources of different genres and prepare their own hypertext presenting a biblical exegesis.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 750 A and B*

**BSTHEO 781** (2 Points)  
**Research Methods in Biblical Studies**

Designed to help students majoring in Biblical Studies engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised and to develop research method skills specific to students' thesis topics.

**BSTHEO 798A** (7 Points)  
**BSTHEO 798B** (7 Points)

#### Thesis

The thesis of approximately 35,000 words should embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject.

*To complete this course students must enrol in BSTHEO 798 A and B*

## Christian Thought and History

### Stage I

**CTHTHEO 103** (2 Points)  
**A Maori Theology Perspective**

An introduction to Christian theology using what are seen to be a number of Maori concepts and values, such as 'tangata', 'tika', 'pono', 'aroha', 'tapu' and 'mana'.

**CTHTHEO 106** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Theology: Traditional and Contemporary Approaches**

Provides an introduction to systematic theology and inquiry. The course has three interconnected dimensions: (i) a study of the nature, sources and methods of theology; (ii) an introductory study of several traditional theological themes such as revelation, creation, Jesus Christ and salvation, grace and sin, Trinity and mission; (iii) participation in a process of contemporary theological reflection.

*Restriction: 705.101, CTHTHEO 107, 108, 109*

**CTHTHEO 107** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Theology: Thinking of God**

An introduction to the content and methods of Christian theology, focusing on the knowledge and being of God. Drawing on different theological perspectives, the course will look at such themes as the sources of theology, revelation, language about God, philosophy and theology, faith and life, personhood, creation, the Trinity, humanity and the cosmos.

*Restriction: 705.101, CTHTHEO 106, 108, 109*

**CTHTHEO 109** (2 Points)  
**Introduction to Theology: Evangelical and Classical Approaches**

A study of evangelical and classical approaches to the content and method of Christian theology. Explores the role of the Bible and other resources for theological discourse and examines Christian understandings of Christ, God, Trinity and Revelation.

*Restriction: 705.101, CTHTHEO 106, 107, 108*

**CTHTHEO 142** (2 Points)  
**Christianity in Aotearoa New Zealand**

The first part of this course looks at the nineteenth century in Aotearoa New Zealand: the interaction of the Gospel, missionaries and Maori; settler churches and their involvement in the land wars, with one another and with society. The second part looks at the church in the twentieth century; from religious bigotry through prohibition, the churches at war, depression, ecumenism, the decline in church attendance, the recognition of the multi-cultural context and bicultural partnership, the contribution of women and the impact of the charismatic renewal.

**CTHTHEO 144** (2 Points)  
**Christian Missions in History and Culture**

An introduction to the history of Christian missions from the discovery of the New World to the present day.

*Restriction: 715.174*

**CTHTHEO 145** (2 Points)  
**The Early Church**

Provides a broad introduction to the history of the early Church, based on a thematic approach. Including topics such as: early Christian writings, issues of authority within the Church, asceticism and the monastic movement, church-state relationships, theological controversies, worship and sacraments, social and ethical questions, the role of women, and the interrelationship of church and culture.

*Restriction: 705.141*

**Stage II**

- CTHTHEO 201 (2 Points)**  
**Ecotheology**  
 Contemporary approaches to the Christian understanding of creation. This course will focus particularly on the relationship between ecology and theology, with some attention also to the origins and destiny of created reality.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
- CTHTHEO 202 (2 Points)**  
**Theology of Church**  
 Explores the theology of Church, including Biblical foundations, historical and contemporary models of Church and the nature of ministry. Other aspects may include sacraments, mission, eschatology and ecumenical considerations.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
- CTHTHEO 203 (2 Points)**  
**Christology**  
 An introduction to the study of Christology, both historical and theological. Areas covered will include a selection of the following: the New Testament matrix, historical developments up to and including Chalcedon, Christian faith and the Jesus of history, the approach to Christology of several leading theologians of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, the place of Jesus Christ in Christian life and worship, soteriology, sin and redemption.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
- CTHTHEO 204 (2 Points)**  
**Sacramental Theology**  
 A study of sacramentality in Christian thought and practice, focusing particularly on such areas as initiation, Eucharist, reconciliation, healing, marriage and ministry.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
- CTHTHEO 205 (2 Points)**  
**Contemporary Christian Thought from a Feminist Perspective**  
 An exploration of contemporary Christian feminist thought in dialogue with the Christian tradition and the experience of women.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
- CTHTHEO 208 (2 Points)**  
**A Maori Theology Perspective II**  
 A continuation of the study of Christian theology using what are seen to be a number of Maori concepts and values. This course will highlight Maori revelation as a basis for Christian living.  
*Prerequisite:* CTHTHEO 103
- CTHTHEO 209 (2 Points)**  
**Theology and Science**  
 A study of some of the interrelationships between theology and science.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
- CTHTHEO 210 (2 Points)**  
**Theology of Mission**  
 An examination of the theology of mission, including the following: biblical foundations, formative thinkers of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, contemporary discussion regarding the nature of mission, approaches to living faiths and ideologies, gospel and culture.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109
- CTHTHEO 212 (2 Points)**  
**Theology, Story and Imagination**  
 An investigation of the connection between theology, story and imagination. Attention will be paid to hermeneutical problems deriving from the subject matter of theology to which categories such as narrative, parable, metaphor, model and myth have been applied.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109 or with permission of the Head of Department
- CTHTHEO 222 (2 Points)**  
**World Religions and Christian Thought**  
 A brief introduction to major religious traditions other than Christianity and an examination of salient issues raised by them for Christian thought.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109 or with permission of the Head of Department  
*Restriction:* 705.218
- CTHTHEO 244 (2 Points)**  
**The Baptist Churches**  
 An introduction to the origins, growth and principles of the Baptist churches.  
*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History
- CTHTHEO 245 (2 Points)**  
**The History of the Catholic Church in Aotearoa-New Zealand and Australia**  
 A study of the development of the Catholic Church in Aotearoa-New Zealand and/or Australia which may include a variety of specialised studies.  
*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History
- CTHTHEO 246 (2 Points)**  
**Introduction to Anglicanism**  
 This course discusses the history and nature of Anglicanism, with particular attention to theology, spirituality and worship in the past and also in the Anglican Communion today.  
*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History
- CTHTHEO 247 (2 Points)**  
**The Methodist Church: Its Ethos, History and Theology**  
 A study of the Methodist Church, with particular attention to its ethos, history and theology, relating them particularly to issues facing contemporary New Zealand Methodism, including Ministry in 'Cooperating Ventures'.  
*Prerequisite:* 2 points in Christian Thought and History
- CTHTHEO 248 (2 Points)**  
**Church and Society in the South Pacific I**  
 A survey of aspects of the history of the missionary impact on the South Pacific, excluding New Zealand, up until the outbreak of the Second World War.  
*Prerequisite:* 705.141 or 705.143 or CTHTHEO 142  
*Restriction:* 705.341
- CTHTHEO 249 (2 Points)**  
**Women in Christian History**

Addresses the history of women in the Church from the first to the twentieth centuries. Attention will be given to methodological issues involved in the study of 'women's history', to changes in the status and roles of women in the pre-Reformation, Catholic and Protestant churches, and to the theological teachings and beliefs about women involved in such changes.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points in *Christian Thought and History*  
*Restriction:* 705.342, 705.343

**CTHTHEO 250 (2 Points)**

**The Medieval Church**

A study of themes in the history of the Church from the sixth to the sixteenth century. Themes will be selected from the following: relationships between Church, State and society in Europe; the emergence of Christendom; missionary expansion; Christianity and culture; medieval spirituality; medieval monasticism; the age of cathedral building; medieval theological thought and dissent; the division of the Church between East and West; the challenge of Islam and the Crusader response; the Renaissance; the Conciliar Movement; the search for Reformation; the beginnings of Luther's reformation.

*Prerequisite:* 705.141 or 705.143 or *CTHTHEO 142 or 145*  
*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243

**CTHTHEO 251 (2 Points)**

**The Modern Church**

A study of the history of the Church from the sixteenth century to the present day. Focuses on issues such as: Protestant and Catholic reformations; missionary expansion; the development of religious toleration; religious movements including the Wesley revival and Modern Pentecostalism; relationships between Church and State; the Enlightenment and the challenge of modernity; revivalism and fundamentalism; the development of ecumenism; the impact of secularism; the second Vatican Council and its results; the inculturation of the Christian gospel.

*Prerequisite:* 705.141 or 705.143 or *CTHTHEO 142 or 145*  
*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243

**Stage III**

**CTHTHEO 302 (2 Points)**

**Current Issues in Theology**

This will be a seminar course in which students will be invited to study and then respond, through seminar presentation and written work, in a number of theological areas where transformation is taking place.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at *Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent* and 2 further points in *Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 303 (2 Points)**

**Special Topic in Systematic Theology**

Detailed study of a subject in systematic theology which is not covered elsewhere in the degree. The topic will be chosen annually.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at *Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent* and 2 further points in *Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 306 (2 Points)**

**Mission and the Western Mind**

The focus of this course is the missionary challenge

represented by contemporary Western culture. The nature of that culture will be investigated, and the implications of this for theology of mission explored. Topics include: epistemological roots of Western culture, theology and the legacy of the Enlightenment, relationship between gospel and culture, the theological challenge of pluralism, theology in postmodern society, gospel as public truth.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at *Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent* and 2 points at *Stage II in Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 307 (2 Points)**

**The Holy Spirit**

Explores the Christian understanding of the person and work of the Holy Spirit and its relation to the Christian life. Topics include: biblical foundations for the doctrine, theology of the Pentecostal and charismatic movements, the relation of the doctrine to a wide range of key concepts and concerns in Christian life and tradition.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at *Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent* and 2 points at *Stage II in Christian Thought and History*  
*Restriction:* 705.301

**CTHTHEO 308 (2 Points)**

**The Trinity**

An exploration of the Christian understanding of God as Trinity, and the relation of the doctrine of the Trinity to the rest of Christian theology. Topics to be studied include: the Biblical foundations for the Trinitarian understanding of God as Father, Son and Holy Spirit; the historical development of the doctrine in the early centuries; the doctrine of the Trinity in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries; the implications of the doctrine of the Trinity in relation to revelation, Christology, eschatology, mission, ecclesiology and the Christian life.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at *Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent* and 2 points at *Stage II in Christian Thought and History*  
*Restriction:* 705.301

**CTHTHEO 309 (2 Points)**

**The Eucharist**

Examines the Eucharist against the background of the Jewish Passover and will discuss the development of the eucharistic doctrine.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at *Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent* and 2 points at *Stage II in Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 312 (2 Points)**

**Humanity and Hope**

An exploration of Christian understandings of the nature of human being and eschatology.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at *Stage II in Systematic Theology or equivalent* and 2 points at *Stage II in Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 321 (2 Points)**

**Theology and Interfaith Relations**

A detailed examination of a selection of Christian responses to, and reflections on, the multi-religious context of the world with special reference to inter-religious dialogue and theologies of religion. An exploration of the encounter between Christianity and a major religion will feature as a case study.

Particular attention will also be given to the work of the World Council of Churches and the Vatican in inter-religious dialogue.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Systematic Theology* or equivalent and 2 points in *Christian Thought and History*  
*Restriction:* 705.313

**CTHTHEO 329** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 329A** (1 Point)

**CTHTHEO 329B** (1 Point)

**Systematic Research Course**

This is a reading and research course for advanced students majoring in Systematic Theology. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of unit offerings in Systematic Theology. Students will normally have already proven their competence in the Systematic Theology Studies field by achieving at least a B average, and will also have demonstrated their ability to work independently. The area of study will usually be one of interest in recent Systematic Theology research and will be chosen in consultation with the Adviser appointed by the Christian Thought and History Department. The bibliography and methodology will also be determined in consultation with the Adviser.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage III in *Systematic Theology* or equivalent and the permission of the Head of Department and the Dean

To complete this course students must enrol in CTHTHEO 329 A and B, or CTHTHEO 329

**CTHTHEO 334** (2 Points)

**Theology of Place**

Provides a contextual restatement of the Christian faith with specific reference to the relation between God and humanity, between individual persons, and between humankind and the rest of the created order, as seen through the eyes and heard through the ears of the peoples of Oceania and Aotearoa.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Systematic Theology*

**CTHTHEO 345** (2 Points)

**The History of Christian Spirituality**

An examination of aspects of the history of Christian spirituality.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Church History* or equivalent and 2 further points in *Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 346** (2 Points)

**Critical Issues in Twentieth Century Church History**

The study of selected issues of significance in the history of Christianity in the twentieth century, for example: Ecumenism, Fundamentalism, War and Peace, Totalitarianism, Feminism, and the Pentecostal and Charismatic Movements.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Church History* or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in *Christian Thought and History*

*Restriction:* 705.344

**CTHTHEO 347** (2 Points)

**Special Topic**

Detailed study of a subject in church history which is not covered elsewhere in the degree. The topic will be chosen annually.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Church History* or equivalent and 2 further points in *Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 348** (2 Points)

**The Medieval Church**

A study of themes in the history of the Church from the sixth to the sixteenth century, but with a greater emphasis on historiographical and methodological questions. Students will be expected to do research using primary documents and present a seminar based on this primary documentary research.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Church History* or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in *Christian Thought and History*

*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243, CTHTHEO 250

**CTHTHEO 349** (2 Points)

**Church and Society in the South Pacific II**

A study of churches in the South Pacific from the beginnings of the Second World War with particular attention to topics such as: the impact of the Second World War, new religious movements, the emergence and independence of Island churches, ecumenical relations, ministerial training, the growth and impact of sects, the churches and social, political and economic questions, the development of Pacific Island churches in New Zealand.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Church History* or equivalent and 2 further points in *Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 350** (2 Points)

**Women in the Churches in Aotearoa New Zealand, Australia and Oceania**

An historical study of the changing status and roles of women in the churches in Aotearoa New Zealand, Australia and Oceania in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, and of the theological issues involved in those changes. Students will be encouraged to begin independent research on specific topics.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Church History* or equivalent and 2 further points in *Christian Thought and History*

**CTHTHEO 351** (2 Points)

**The Modern Church**

A study of the history of the Church from the sixteenth century to the present day, but with greater emphasis on historiographical and methodological questions. Students will be expected to do research using primary documents and present a seminar based on this primary documentary research.

*Prerequisite:* 2 points at Stage II in *Church History* or equivalent and 2 points at Stage II in *Christian Thought and History*

*Restriction:* 705.241, 705.243, CTHTHEO 251

**CTHTHEO 359** (2 Points)

**CTHTHEO 359A** (1 Point)

**CTHTHEO 359B** (1 Point)

**Church History Research Course**

This is a reading and research course for advanced students majoring in Church History. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of unit offerings in Church History. Students will normally have already proven their competence in the Church History Studies field by achieving at least a B average, and will also have demonstrated their ability to work independently. The area of study will

usually be one of interest in recent Church History research and will be chosen in consultation with the Adviser appointed by the Christian Thought and History Department. The bibliography and methodology will also be determined in consultation with the Adviser.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage III in Church History or equivalent and the permission of the Head of Department and the Dean*

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHTEO 359 A and B, or CHTHTEO 359*

**Honours and Master's Courses**

*Prerequisite: 16 points in Christian Thought and History including 6 points at Stage III*

*Requirement: 28 points in the subject Christian Thought and History constituted as follows: 12 points selected from CHTHTEO 701-749; 2 points from CHTHTEO 781 Research Methods in Christian Thought and History and 14 points from CHTHTEO 798 (Thesis)*

**CHTHTEO 701A (2 Points)**  
**CHTHTEO 701B (2 Points)**

**System and Method in Theology**

The quest for theological method in contemporary theology as illustrated in the writings of selected theologians.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHTEO 701 A and B*

**CHTHTEO 702A (2 Points)**  
**CHTHTEO 702B (2 Points)**

**Twentieth Century Theology**

The study of a major twentieth century theologian or theological issue.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHTEO 702 A and B*

**CHTHTEO 703 (4 Points)**

**Postmodernity and Theology**

An examination of the key texts on the breakdown of 'modernity', with critical discussion of various theological responses.

**CHTHTEO 704 (4 Points)**

**Theology in Aotearoa New Zealand**

An exploration of selected themes, issues, and methods relevant to theology in Aotearoa New Zealand.

**CHTHTEO 706 (4 Points)**

**Topics in Historical Theology**

An advanced study of selected developments in Christian theology prior to the twentieth century, in relation to their intellectual, political and/or social contexts.

**CHTHTEO 741 (4 Points)**

**Subordination or Equivalence? Women and Imago Dei**

Involves students in reading significant Christian writers, including Augustine, Aquinas and Luther. Critical evaluation of their understanding of gender, sex, and sexuality within their own context and in the light of contemporary debates.

**CHTHTEO 743A (2 Points)**  
**CHTHTEO 743B (2 Points)**

**Religious Movements in the Nineteenth Century**

A study of religious movements within the context of nineteenth century society. The topics will be

chosen from: the Oxford Movement, the Scottish Disruption, Evangelicalism, and Christian Socialism and will raise questions about their relation to New Zealand church history.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHTEO 743 A and B*

**CHTHTEO 744 (4 Points)**  
**Protestant Missionaries in Historical Perspective: 1790 to the present**

Examines selected themes dealing with inter-relation between missionaries and issues to do with culture, colonialism, commerce, indigenisation, and gender, with special reference to the Pacific.

**CHTHTEO 747 (4 Points)**  
**The Ecumenical Movement in Historical Perspective**

Studies the origins and development of the ecumenical movement, particularly in the twentieth century. Attention is given to the World Council of Churches, the Roman Catholic Church, and major ecumenical events and texts, with selected topics studied in depth.

**CHTHTEO 748A (2 Points)**  
**CHTHTEO 748B (2 Points)**

**Special Study - Church History**

A supervised reading course. The topic may be related to one of the Church History courses offered at master's level and shall be selected in consultation with one or more lecturers and approved by the Head of Department.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHTEO 748 A and B*

**CHTHTEO 749 (4 Points)**  
**God, Violence and Power: Religion and Politics in Stuart England**

An advanced study of the links between theology, repression and resistance 1603-1689. Particular attention will be paid to the role of religion in the English Civil wars and in the political developments of the Restoration period.

**CHTHTEO 781 (2 Points)**  
**Research Methods in Christian Thought and History**

Designed to help students majoring in Christian Thought and History engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised and to develop research method skills specific to students' thesis topics.

**CHTHTEO 798A (7 Points)**  
**CHTHTEO 798B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

The thesis of approximately 35,000 words should embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject.

*To complete this course students must enrol in CHTHTEO 798 A and B*

**Moral and Practical Theology**

**Stage I**

**MPTHEO 101 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to the Pastoral Situation**

The aim of this course is to develop understanding of the situations and typical problems met in

Schedule of Prescriptions  
 For further information refer to the note on page 254. For course availability refer to page 581.

ministry, to develop a caring attitude to human and spiritual growth and to provide skills needed in pastoral care. Areas covered will include a selection of the following: introduction to the principles and to the theology of pastoral care, to the role of people engaged in the caring ministry and to the attitudes which are appropriate to this ministry in the context of New Zealand society; introduction to the processes of growth, of human and spiritual development; introduction to the counselling methods that equip the pastoral carer for the task.

*Restriction: MPTHEO 103*

**MPTHEO 102 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Spirituality**

A study of the sources and traditions of spiritualities in Christianity and their relevance in Aotearoa New Zealand.

**MPTHEO 103 (2 Points)**

**Awahi Whanau: A Cultural Approach to Pastoral Theology**

This foundation course will address a broad range of issues in pastoral theology and ministry. It will give particular attention to Maori, Pakeha, and Oceanic cultures, to the influence of broader socio-economic conditions, emerging cultural concerns, and their implications for pastoral ministry.

*Restriction: MPTHEO 101*

**MPTHEO 143 (2 Points)**

**Introduction to Christian Ethics**

An introduction to the sources, methods and praxis of Christian ethics. In addition to an introduction to the subject, topics to be covered will be chosen from the nature of ethics and its relationship with systematic theology, scripture and ethics, situation ethics, natural law, utilitarianism and cultural relativism. A range of contemporary issues will be considered to demonstrate the application of the methods discussed.

**MPTHEO 171 (2 Points)**

**Communication Performance**

An introduction to the theory and practice of communication with an emphasis on individual speaking performance in a variety of contexts.

**MPTHEO 172 (2 Points)**

**Maori Language A**

This is an introductory course designed to help each student acquire confidence and competence in: reading liturgical and biblical material, conversation sessions (including the writing of the same), speech-making, and waiata (sung poetry).

**MPTHEO 173 (2 Points)**

**Cross-cultural Studies**

This course draws attention to the social knowledge and understanding of all the participants and utilises this knowledge to examine the cultural, political and social implications for contemporary New Zealand society and to develop greater awareness, sensitivity and appropriate actions which express the demands of justice, reconciliation and human liberation.

**MPTHEO 176 (2 Points)**

**Liturgics**

Aims to assist the student in developing an understanding of the theology and practice of Christian worship. Attention will be paid to historical, pastoral and cultural perspectives with particular reference to contemporary worship in Aotearoa New Zealand. Topics to be covered will be chosen from: nature and principles of worship; sign, symbol and ritual, sacraments, with particular reference to baptism and Eucharist; the liturgical year; time and space in worship; scripture and preaching in worship; leadership of worship; prayer in worship, liturgy and social justice.

**Stage II**

**MPTHEO 201 (2 Points)**

**Principles and Practice of Pastoral Counselling**

Aims to extend the awareness of pastoral theology and to develop the skills needed in the various aspects of pastoral care.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 101 or 103*

**MPTHEO 203 (2 Points)**

**Understanding Oneself and Others**

Explores the spiritual and psychological resources which help people understand themselves and thus, better understand others. Includes an examination of the roles of women and men in society, and self-analysis using both genograms and the Myers-Briggs Personality Inventory. Seeks to develop an understanding of holiness and dysfunction and the role of the pastor in ministry to others.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 101 or 103*

**MPTHEO 204 (2 Points)**

**Clinical Pastoral Education**

An intensive course of 400 hours of supervised pastoral ministry, often undertaken in the context of a clinical setting, usually over a 10-week period.

*Prerequisite: Approval of Board of Studies*

*To complete this course students must enrol in MPTHEO 204 A and B, or MPTHEO 204*

**MPTHEO 205 (2 Points)**

**Contemporary Christian Spirituality**

An applied study of the foundations of Christian spirituality with particular emphasis on the relationship of contemporary spiritualities to traditional roots.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 206 (2 Points)**

**Cross-cultural Issues in Pastoral Care**

Examines in depth the pastoral, cultural and social issues and tensions among the various ethnic groups and cultures in Aotearoa New Zealand and the South Pacific. Course contents will emphasise the role of tradition in pastoral care and its critical hermeneutical application, pastoral apologetics, conflict resolution between cultures and cross-cultural sensitivity and respect of otherness.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 101 or 103*

**MPTHEO 242 (2 Points)**

**Spirituality and Justice**

A study of contemporary social issues from a Christian perspective with an emphasis on Aotearoa New Zealand. It will explore values for developing a spirituality of justice.

*Prerequisite: Any 2 points in Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 243 (2 Points)**  
**Christian Ethics II**

A study of historical and contemporary Christian ethical thought and praxis and its relation to theology and philosophy. A special study will be made of the understanding of grace in Christian thought and its relation to ethical practice.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 271 (2 Points)**  
**Communication Studies: Power, Myth and Symbol in Mass Media**

Explores implications of modern forms of mass media for Christian faith and mission; icon, myth and symbol in the media culture; the place of the Church in a mass media environment; an exploration of strategies for faith communities in media education and engagement.

*Prerequisite: 4 points from the BTheol schedule*

**MPTHEO 272 (2 Points)**  
**Maori Perspectives**

Examines Maori perspectives on Maori society in the past and today. It includes the spiritual and material concepts that underlie and support Maori history and culture, as well as Maori responses to various initiatives, including those of the Church.

**MPTHEO 273 (2 Points)**  
**Maori Language B**

Aims at increasing the student's competence in reading, conversation, writing, speech-making and waiata.

*Prerequisite: MPTHEO 172*

**MPTHEO 274 (2 Points)**  
**Church and Society**

Examines biblical, historical and theological responses of the community of faith to the society which forms its context. The aim is to critically examine such responses with a view to shaping the Church's interaction with contemporary societies, with particular emphasis on New Zealand society. Some attention is given to the examination and critique of Pakeha culture.

*Prerequisite: 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109*

**MPTHEO 275 (2 Points)**  
**Mission in an Urban Context**

A study of justice, politics and power, as they relate to specific issues of urban ministry.

*Prerequisite: 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109*

**MPTHEO 276 (2 Points)**  
**Homiletics**

Seeks to give theoretical and practical help in the construction and presentation of sermons. Class time will be divided between lecturing on and discussing various aspects of sermon preparation, history, context, various types, illustrations, structures etc. and the practical delivery of a trial sermon.

*Prerequisite: 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109*

**MPTHEO 277 (2 Points)**  
**Communication of Faith**

A study of the theology and practice of evangelism and Church planting.

*Prerequisite: 705.101 or CTHTHEO 106 or 107 or 108 or 109*

**MPTHEO 278 (2 Points)**  
**Religious Education and Adult Learning**

Aims to extend the awareness and knowledge of students in the area of adult learning, particularly as it applies to Christian religious education. Covers aspects such as: adult religious education in New Zealand and overseas in the twentieth century; theories and practices of adult Christian education in parish and other settings; and the task of the minister/priest/leader as the Christian religious educator.

*Prerequisite: 2 points at Stage I in Moral and Practical Theology*

**MPTHEO 281 (2 Points)**  
**Christian Ritual**

Explores symbol and ritual, particularly in relation to the Christian Liturgies. Includes aspects of inculturation with research on and participation in rituals.

*Prerequisite: 2 points in either Christian Thought and History or Moral and Practical Theology*

**Stage III**

**MPTHEO 301 (2 Points)**  
**Pastoral Care in Human Relationships**

Examines in depth; human relationships including family systems, sexuality and marriage, focusing in particular on dysfunction problems in human interactions. It will also examine the systems and networks in the New Zealand context which could better support and enhance these relationships.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II or equivalent in Pastoral Care*

**MPTHEO 302 (2 Points)**  
**Pastoral Care and Gender Studies**

The latest development in the field of Pastoral Care and Pastoral Theology addresses the role of gender in affecting human behaviour and response. This seminar-style course will examine some of the Christian traditions concerning gender difference and human sexuality. It will concentrate on the more recent impact of women's studies, men's studies, and gay liberation theology, and the way pastors understand and provide support for those seeking pastoral care.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II or equivalent in Pastoral Care*

**MPTHEO 306 (2 Points)**  
**Human Development and Pastoral Care**

A consideration of the phases of human development and their relationship to pastoral care.

*Prerequisite: 4 points at Stage II or equivalent in Pastoral Care*

*Restriction: 715.202*

**MPTHEO 341 (2 Points)**  
**Justice in Context**

A research seminar intended to deepen student's

understanding of social analysis. A biblical/theological foundation for justice will be complemented with analytical method, to the end of applying Christian social analysis to specific issues in our contemporary context.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology

**MPTHEO 371 (2 Points)**

**Maori Language C**

As for Maori Language B, but at an advanced level.

*Prerequisite:* MPTHEO 273

**MPTHEO 372 (2 Points)**

**Maori Language D: Kauhau**

Aims to give theoretical and practical guidance from a Maori perspective in the construction and presentation of Kauhau. It is expected that students who undertake this course are fluent speakers of Maori.

*Prerequisite:* BSTHEO 101 or 102, and BSTHEO 141 and MPTHEO 371

**MPTHEO 383 (2 Points)**

**Moral and Practical Theology Research Course**

This is a reading and research course for advanced students majoring in Moral and Practical Theology Studies. It is intended to cater for specific study interests or needs not met within the current schedule of course offerings in Moral and Practical Theology. Students will normally have already proven their competence in the Moral and Practical Theology Studies field by achieving at least a B average, and will also have demonstrated their ability to work independently. The area of study will usually be one of interest in recent Moral and Practical Theology research and will be chosen in consultation with the Adviser appointed by the Moral and Practical Theology Department. The bibliography and methodology will also be determined in consultation with the Adviser.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in the Department of Moral and Practical Theology and permission of the Head of Department

**MPTHEO 386 (2 Points)**

**Religious Education as Praxis**

A study of the nature and development of faith, the context, purposes and models used in Christian education, and the implications for the educator. The course involves participation in practical work, reflection and evaluation.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology

**MPTHEO 387 (2 Points)**

**Guided Research in Moral and Practical Theology**

Provides students with experience of some of the tools and methods for practical theological research. The topics for study will be chosen to suit the research interests of participants. Students need to have the minimum of a B average in their Stage 2 courses.

*Prerequisite:* 4 points at Stage II in Moral and Practical Theology and permission of Head of Department

**Honours and Master's Courses**

*Prerequisite:* 16 points in Moral and Practical Theology including 6 points at Stage III

*Requirement:* 28 points in the subject Moral and Practical Theology constituted as follows: 12 points selected from MPTHEO 701-704; 2 points from MPTHEO 781 Research Methods in Moral and Practical Theology and 14 points from MPTHEO 798 (Thesis)

**MPTHEO 701 (4 Points)**

**Spirituality and Counselling**

Explores the place of spirituality in formal pastoral counselling and in 'secular' counselling settings. Many traditional and non-traditional types of spirituality are investigated, including those associated with ethnicity and gender.

**MPTHEO 702 (4 Points)**

**Moral and Practical Theology II**

A reading and research course intended to cater for specific study interests or needs. As the subject may vary from year to year, students will need to contact the staff coordinating the course.

**MPTHEO 703 (4 Points)**

**Men, Women and Bodies**

Engages in an in-depth exploration of issues relating to embodiment for men and women. The course will cover a range of subject areas: a Theology of Body, Redemption, Sin and the Body, Body as Object and Subject, Disability and the Body, Body and Woundedness, and other related pastoral theological issues.

**MPTHEO 704 (4 Points)**

**Interpersonal Issues in Pastoral Theology**

Explores the most difficult cutting-edge interpersonal issues in pastoral care and counselling, such as erotic transference, AIDS ministries, the role of narrative in changing community identity, congregational care of the marginalised, the theologies of suffering, and the brokering of power and authority. Special attention will be given to indigenous ministry issues.

**MPTHEO 781 (2 Points)**

**Research Methods in Moral and Practical Theology**

Designed to help students majoring in Moral and Practical Theology engage with some of the challenges of the discipline as currently practised and to develop research method skills specific to students' thesis topics.

**MPTHEO 798A (7 Points)**

**MPTHEO 798B (7 Points)**

**Thesis**

The thesis of approximately 35,000 words should embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject.

*To complete this course students must enrol in MPTHEO 798 A and B*

# 2002 COURSE AVAILABILITY

## Availability Key

Semester: S1 = Semester One  
T1 = Trimester One

S1 = Semester Two  
T2 = Trimester Two

SS = Summer School  
T3 = Trimester Three

Location: B = Carey Baptist  
E = Auckland College of Education  
K = Unspecified within New Zealand  
N = Northland Polytechnic  
S = North Shore  
W = Te Unga Waka (Epsom)

C = City Campus  
H = Medical & Health Sciences Campus  
L = Trinity  
O = Online Virtual Campus  
T = Tamaki  
X = Auckland Extramural

D = Distance Learning  
J = St John's  
M = Manukau Institute of Technology  
P = Palmerston North  
V = Overseas  
Z = Waikato

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ACCTG 101	S1	C	ANCHIST 322	S1	C	ANTHRO 328	S2	C	ARCHDES 770	S1	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 703A	S1	C	ANTHRO 332	S2	C		S2	C
	SS	C	ANCHIST 703B	S2	C	ANTHRO 336	S1	C	ARCHDES 770A	S1	C
ACCTG 102	S1	C	ANCHIST 705A	S1	C	ANTHRO 339	S1	C	ARCHDES 770B	S2	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 705B	S2	C	ANTHRO 340	S1	C	ARCHDES 771	S1	C
	SS	C	ANCHIST 715	S1	C	ANTHRO 343	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 191	S1	M S T	ANCHIST 716	S2	C	ANTHRO 344	S2	C	ARCHDES 771A	S1	C
	S2	M S T	ANCHIST 720A	S1	C	ANTHRO 700A	S1	C	ARCHDES 771B	S2	C
ACCTG 192	S1	M S T	ANCHIST 720B	S2	C	ANTHRO 700B	S2	C	ARCHDES 772	S1	C
	S2	M S T	ANCHIST 740A	S1	C	ANTHRO 701A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 211	S1	C	ANCHIST 740B	S2	C	ANTHRO 701B	S2	C	ARCHDES 772A	S1	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 742A	S1	C	ANTHRO 706	S2	C	ARCHDES 772B	S2	C
	SS	C	ANCHIST 742B	S2	C	ANTHRO 707	S1	C	ARCHDES 773	S1	C
ACCTG 221	S1	C	ANCHIST 743A	S1	C	ANTHRO 710A	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 743B	S2	C	ANTHRO 710B	S2	C	ARCHDES 773A	S1	C
ACCTG 222	S1	C	ANCHIST 753	S1	C	ANTHRO 711A	S1	C	ARCHDES 773B	S2	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 780A	S1	C	ANTHRO 711B	S2	C	ARCHDES 774	S1	C
ACCTG 291	S2	M S T	ANCHIST 780B	S2	C	ANTHRO 715A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 292	S2	M S T	ANCHIST 790A	S1	C	ANTHRO 715B	S2	C	ARCHDES 774A	S1	C
ACCTG 311	S1	C	ANCHIST 790B	S2	C	ANTHRO 720	S1	C	ARCHDES 774B	S2	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 792	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHDES 775	S1	C
ACCTG 312	S1	C	ANCHIST 794A	S1	C	ANTHRO 721A	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	C	ANCHIST 794B	S2	C	ANTHRO 721B	S2	C	ARCHDES 775A	S1	C
ACCTG 321	S1	C	ANCHIST 797A	S1	C	ANTHRO 727A	S1	C	ARCHDES 775B	S2	C
ACCTG 323	S2	C	ANCHIST 797B	S2	C	ANTHRO 727B	S2	C	ARCHDES 776	S1	C
ACCTG 331	S1	C	ANTHRO 100	S1	C	ANTHRO 729	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 371	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C	ARCHDES 776A	S1	C
	S2	C	ANTHRO 101	S1	C	ANTHRO 730A	S1	C	ARCHDES 776B	S2	C
ACCTG 701	S1	C		S2	C	ANTHRO 730B	S2	C	ARCHDES 777	S1	C
	S2	C	ANTHRO 102	S1	C	ANTHRO 731A	S1	C		S2	C
ACCTG 702A	S1	C		SS	C	ANTHRO 731B	S2	C	ARCHDES 777A	S1	C
ACCTG 702B	S2	C	ANTHRO 103	S1	C	ANTHRO 736	S1	C	ARCHDES 777B	S2	C
ACCTG 711	S1	C	ANTHRO 104	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHDRC 100	S1	C
ACCTG 713	S2	C	ANTHRO 200	S1	C	ANTHRO 736A	S1	C	ARCHDRC 101	S1	C
ACCTG 714	S1	C	ANTHRO 201	S2	C	ANTHRO 736B	S2	C	ARCHDRC 200	S2	C
ACCTG 721	S1	C	ANTHRO 203	S1	C	ANTHRO 737	S1	C	ARCHDRC 201	S1	C
ACCTG 722	S2	C	ANTHRO 204	S2	C	ANTHRO 738	S1	C	ARCHDRC 300	S1	C
ACCTG 732	S2	C	ANTHRO 206	S2	C	ANTHRO 739	S1	C	ARCHDRC 301	S1	C
ACCTG 771	S2	C	ANTHRO 207	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHDRC 302	S1	C
ACCTG 781	S2	C	ANTHRO 210	S1	C	ANTHRO 740	S2	C	ARCHDRC 303	S1	C
ACCTG 785	S2	C	ANTHRO 211	S1	C	ANTHRO 780	S1	C	ARCHDRC 304	S1	C
ACCTG 789	S1	C	ANTHRO 215	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHDRC 305	S2	C
	S2	C	ANTHRO 219	S1	C	ANTHRO 792A	S1	C	ARCHDRC 306	S1	C
ANATOMY 201	S1	C H	ANTHRO 221	S2	C	ANTHRO 792B	S2	C	ARCHDRC 377	S2	C
ANATOMY 702	S1	H	ANTHRO 222	S1	C	ANTHRO 797A	S1	C	ARCHDRC 400	S2	C
ANATOMY 703	S2	H	ANTHRO 232	S2	C	ANTHRO 797B	S2	C	ARCHDRC 401	S1	C
ANATOMY 704	S1	H	ANTHRO 234	S2	C	ARCHDES 100	S1	C	ARCHDRC 470	S1	C
ANATOMY 705	S2	H	ANTHRO 239	S2	C	ARCHDES 101	S2	C	ARCHDRC 471	S1	C
ANATOMY 706	S1	H	ANTHRO 241	S1	C	ARCHDES 200	S1	C	ARCHDRC 472	S2	C
ANATOMY 751	S1	H	ANTHRO 242	S2	C		SS	C	ARCHDRC 473	S2	C
ANCHIST 100	S2	C	ANTHRO 243	S2	C	ARCHDES 201	S2	C	ARCHDRC 474	S1	C
ANCHIST 102	S1	C	ANTHRO 300	S1	C		SS	C	ARCHDRC 475	S1	C
ANCHIST 103	S2	C	ANTHRO 306	S2	C	ARCHDES 300	S1	C	ARCHDRC 476	S2	C
ANCHIST 200	S2	C	ANTHRO 307	S1	C		SS	C	ARCHDRC 477	S2	C
ANCHIST 203	S2	C	ANTHRO 309	S2	C	ARCHDES 301	S2	C	ARCHDRC 570	S1	C
ANCHIST 210	S1	C	ANTHRO 314	S2	C	ARCHDES 400	S1	C	ARCHDRC 571	S1	C
ANCHIST 220	S2	C	ANTHRO 315	S2	C		SS	C	ARCHDRC 572	S2	C
ANCHIST 222	S1	C	ANTHRO 316	S2	C	ARCHDES 401	S2	C	ARCHDRC 573	S2	C
ANCHIST 300	S2	C	ANTHRO 317	S1	C		SS	C	ARCHDRC 574	S1	C
ANCHIST 303	S2	C	ANTHRO 320	S1	C	ARCHDES 500	S1	C	ARCHDRC 575	S1	C
ANCHIST 310	S1	C	ANTHRO 324	S2	C		SS	C	ARCHDRC 576	S2	C
ANCHIST 314	S1	C	ANTHRO 325	S1	C	ARCHDES 501	S2	C	ARCHDRC 577	S2	C

2002 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/Deva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/Deva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ARCHDRC 770	S1	C	ARCHHTC 303	S1	C	ARCHPRM 475	S1	C	ARCHTECH 471	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 304	S1	C	ARCHPRM 476	S2	C	ARCHTECH 472	S2	C
ARCHDRC 770A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 305	S1	C	ARCHPRM 477	S2	C	ARCHTECH 473	S2	C
ARCHDRC 770B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 307	S2	C	ARCHPRM 478	S1	C	ARCHTECH 474	S1	C
ARCHDRC 771	S1	C	ARCHHTC 308	S2	C	ARCHPRM 479	S2	C	ARCHTECH 475	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 309	S2	C	ARCHPRM 501	S1	C	ARCHTECH 476	S2	C
ARCHDRC 771A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 310	S2	C	ARCHPRM 502	S2	C	ARCHTECH 477	S2	C
ARCHDRC 771B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 312	S2	C	ARCHPRM 511	S1	C	ARCHTECH 500	S2	C
ARCHDRC 772	S1	C	ARCHHTC 318	S1	C	ARCHPRM 512	S2	C	ARCHTECH 570	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 319	S1	C	ARCHPRM 521	S1	C	ARCHTECH 571	S1	C
ARCHDRC 772A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 323	S1	C	ARCHPRM 522	S2	C	ARCHTECH 572	S2	C
ARCHDRC 772B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 405	S2	C	ARCHPRM 570	S1	C	ARCHTECH 573	S2	C
ARCHDRC 773	S1	C	ARCHHTC 411	S2	C	ARCHPRM 571	S1	C	ARCHTECH 574	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 412	S1	C	ARCHPRM 572	S2	C	ARCHTECH 575	S1	C
ARCHDRC 773A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 413A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 573	S2	C	ARCHTECH 576	S2	C
ARCHDRC 773B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 413B	S2	C	ARCHPRM 574	S1	C	ARCHTECH 577	S2	C
ARCHDRC 774	S1	C	ARCHHTC 470	S1	C	ARCHPRM 575	S1	C	ARCHTECH 704	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 471	S1	C	ARCHPRM 576	S2	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 774A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 472	S2	C	ARCHPRM 577	S2	C	ARCHTECH 705	S1	C
ARCHDRC 774B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 473	S2	C	ARCHPRM 578	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 775	S1	C	ARCHHTC 476	S2	C	ARCHPRM 579	S2	C	ARCHTECH 770	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 477	S2	C	ARCHPRM 770	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 775A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 570	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 770A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 775B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 571	S1	C	ARCHPRM 770A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 770B	S2	C
ARCHDRC 776	S1	C	ARCHHTC 572	S2	C	ARCHPRM 770B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 771	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 573	S2	C	ARCHPRM 771	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 776A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 574	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 771A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 776B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 575	S1	C	ARCHPRM 771A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 771B	S2	C
ARCHDRC 777	S1	C	ARCHHTC 576	S2	C	ARCHPRM 771B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 772	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 577	S2	C	ARCHPRM 772	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHDRC 777A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 700B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 772A	S1	C
ARCHDRC 777B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 770	S1	C	ARCHPRM 772A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 772B	S2	C
ARCHGEN 400	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 772B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 773	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 770A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 773	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHGEN 590	S1	C	ARCHHTC 770B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 773A	S1	C
ARCHGEN 591	S1	C	ARCHHTC 771	S1	C	ARCHPRM 773A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 773B	S2	C
ARCHGEN 592	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 773B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 774	S1	C
ARCHGEN 593	S2	C	ARCHHTC 771A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 774	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHGEN 595A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 771B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 774A	S1	C
ARCHGEN 595B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 772	S1	C	ARCHPRM 774A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 774B	S2	C
ARCHGEN 700	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 774B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 775	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 772A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 775	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHGEN 787	S1	C	ARCHHTC 772B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 775A	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 773	S1	C	ARCHPRM 775A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 775B	S2	C
ARCHGEN 787A	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 775B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 776	S1	C
ARCHGEN 787B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 773A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 776	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHGEN 790	S1	C	ARCHHTC 773B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 776A	S1	C
	S2	C	ARCHHTC 774	S1	C	ARCHPRM 776A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 776B	S2	C
ARCHGEN 790A	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 776B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 777	S1	C
ARCHGEN 790B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 774A	S1	C	ARCHPRM 777	S1	C		S2	C
ARCHGEN 791A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 774B	S2	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 777A	S1	C
ARCHGEN 791B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 775	S1	C	ARCHPRM 777A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 777B	S2	C
ARCHGEN 792A	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHPRM 777B	S2	C	ARTHIST 101	S2	C
ARCHGEN 792B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 775A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 100A	S1	C	ARTHIST 102	S1	C
ARCHGEN 793A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 775B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 100B	S2	C	ARTHIST 103	S2	C
ARCHGEN 793B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 776	S1	C	ARCHTECH 102	S1	C	ARTHIST 104	S1	C
ARCHGEN 794A	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 103	S2	C	ARTHIST 105	S2	C
ARCHGEN 794B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 776A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 200A	S1	C	ARTHIST 111	S1	C
ARCHGEN 795A	S1	C	ARCHHTC 776B	S2	C	ARCHTECH 200B	S2	C	ARTHIST 201	S2	C
ARCHGEN 795B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 777	S1	C	ARCHTECH 202	S1	C	ARTHIST 204	S1	C
ARCHGEN 797A	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 203	S2	C	ARTHIST 205	S2	C
ARCHGEN 797B	S2	C	ARCHHTC 777A	S1	C	ARCHTECH 306	S1	C	ARTHIST 207	S2	C
ARCHHTC 100	S1	C	ARCHHTC 777B	S2	C		S2	C	ARTHIST 210	S2	C
ARCHHTC 101	S2	C	ARCHPRM 300	S2	C	ARCHTECH 308	S2	C	ARTHIST 212	S2	C
ARCHHTC 202	S1	C	ARCHPRM 303	S1	C	ARCHTECH 309	S1	C	ARTHIST 222	S1	C
ARCHHTC 203	S1	C		S2	C	ARCHTECH 374	S1	C	ARTHIST 224	S1	C
ARCHHTC 204	S1	C	ARCHPRM 401	S1	C	ARCHTECH 400A	S1	C	ARTHIST 302	S2	C
ARCHHTC 205	S1	C	ARCHPRM 402	S2	C	ARCHTECH 400B	S2	C	ARTHIST 305	S1	C
ARCHHTC 207	S2	C	ARCHPRM 411	S1	C	ARCHTECH 401	S2	C	ARTHIST 307	S1	C
ARCHHTC 208	S2	C	ARCHPRM 412	S2	C	ARCHTECH 403	S1	C	ARTHIST 310	S2	C
ARCHHTC 209	S2	C	ARCHPRM 421	S1	K	ARCHTECH 404	S1	C	ARTHIST 312	S2	C
ARCHHTC 210	S2	C	ARCHPRM 422	S2	K	ARCHTECH 412	S1	C	ARTHIST 318	S2	C
ARCHHTC 212	S2	C	ARCHPRM 470	S1	C	ARCHTECH 414	S1	C	ARTHIST 319	S2	C
ARCHHTC 218	S1	C	ARCHPRM 471	S1	C	ARCHTECH 416	S2	C	ARTHIST 320	S2	C
ARCHHTC 219	S1	C	ARCHPRM 472	S2	C	ARCHTECH 418	S1	C	ARTHIST 322	S1	C
ARCHHTC 223	S1	C	ARCHPRM 473	S2	C	ARCHTECH 419	S2	C	ARTHIST 324	S1	C
ARCHHTC 302	S1	C	ARCHPRM 474	S1	C	ARCHTECH 470	S1	C	ARTHIST 703A	S1	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ARTHIST 703B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 700B	S2	H	BIOSCI 717B	S2	C	CHEM 202	S1	C
ARTHIST 704A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 710	S1	H	BIOSCI 720A	S1	C	CHEM 203	S2	C
ARTHIST 704B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 717	S1	H	BIOSCI 720B	S2	C	CHEM 204	S1	C
ARTHIST 707A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 721	S1	H K	BIOSCI 721A	S1	C	CHEM 207	S2	C
ARTHIST 707B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 722	S2	H K	BIOSCI 721B	S2	C	CHEM 208	S1	C
ARTHIST 709	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 729	S2	H	BIOSCI 722A	S1	C	CHEM 209	S1	C
ARTHIST 709A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 736A	S1	H	BIOSCI 722B	S2	C	CHEM 301	S2	C
ARTHIST 709B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 736B	S2	H	BIOSCI 723A	S1	C	CHEM 302	S1	C
ARTHIST 714	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 737	S2	H	BIOSCI 723B	S2	C	CHEM 303	S2	C
ARTHIST 718A	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 738	S2	H K	BIOSCI 740	S1	C	CHEM 304	S1	C
ARTHIST 718B	S2	C	BEHAVSCI 758	S1	H	BIOSCI 741	S1	C	CHEM 305	S1	C
ARTHIST 719	S1	C	BEHAVSCI 759	S2	H	BIOSCI 742	SS	C	CHEM 305A	S1	C
ARTHIST 720	S1	C	BIOMED 790A	S1	C	BIOSCI 761	S1	C	CHEM 305B	S2	C
ARTHIST 790A	S1	C	BIOMED 790B	S2	C				CHEM 307	S2	C
ARTHIST 790B	S2	C	BIOSCI 91WA	S1	C				CHEM 308	S2	C
ARTHIST 792A	S1	C	BIOSCI 91WB	S2	C	BIOSCI 762B	S1	C	CHEM 309	S1	C
ARTHIST 792B	S2	C	BIOSCI 100	S1	C				CHEM 690A	S1	CT
ARTHIST 793	S1	C	BIOSCI 101	S1	C	BIOSCI 789A	S1	CT	CHEM 690B	S2	CT
			BIOSCI 102	S2	C	BIOSCI 789B	S2	CT	CHEM 691A	S1	CT
ARTHIST 795A	S1	C	BIOSCI 103	S2	C	BSTHEO 101	S1	C J	CHEM 691B	S2	CT
ARTHIST 795B	S2	C	BIOSCI 104	S1	C	BSTHEO 102	S2	B	CHEM 710	S1	C
ARTHIST 797	S1	C	BIOSCI 106	S2	C	BSTHEO 135	S1	J	CHEM 711	S2	C
			BIOSCI 107	S1	C	BSTHEO 136	S2	J	CHEM 720	S1	C
ARTSGEN 688A	S1	CT	BIOSCI 201	S1	C	BSTHEO 141	S1	B	CHEM 721	S2	C
ARTSGEN 688B	S2	CT	BIOSCI 202	S2	C				CHEM 730	S1	C
ARTSGEN 690A	S1	CT	BIOSCI 203	S2	C	BSTHEO 175	S1	B	CHEM 731	S2	C
ARTSGEN 690B	S2	CT	BIOSCI 204	S1	C	BSTHEO 202	S1	B	CHEM 740	S2	C
ARTSGEN 740	S1	C	BIOSCI 205	S2	C	BSTHEO 206	S2	J	CHEM 750	S1	C
			BIOSCI 206	S1	C	BSTHEO 235	S2	J			
ARTSGEN 740A	S1	C	BIOSCI 207	S2	C	BSTHEO 236	S1	J	CHEM 750A	S1	C
ARTSGEN 740B	S2	C	BIOSCI 208	S1	C	BSTHEO 241	S2	C	CHEM 750B	S2	C
ARTSGEN 750	S2	C	BIOSCI 209	S1	C	BSTHEO 242	S1	B	CHEM 751	S1	C
			BIOSCI 320	S1	C	BSTHEO 247	S2	J			
ARTSGEN 751	S2	C	BIOSCI 321	S1	C	BSTHEO 251	S1	C	CHEM 751A	S1	C
			BIOSCI 322	S1	C	BSTHEO 275	S2	B	CHEM 751B	S2	C
ARTSGEN 777	S1	V	BIOSCI 328	S1	C	BSTHEO 276	S1	J	CHEM 770	S2	C
			BIOSCI 329	S2	C	BSTHEO 281	S2	C	CHEM 780	S2	C
			BIOSCI 330	S1	C	BSTHEO 283	S1	J	CHEM 789	S1	CT
ARTSGEN 778	S1	V	BIOSCI 333	S1	C	BSTHEO 303	S1	C			
			BIOSCI 335	S2	C	BSTHEO 306	S2	J	CHEM 789A	S1	CT
			BIOSCI 337	S2	C	BSTHEO 329	S1	T			
ARTSGEN 780	S1	C	BIOSCI 340	S2	C				CHEM 789B	S2	CT
			BIOSCI 349	S1	C	BSTHEO 329A	S1	T	CHEM 790	S1	C
ARTSGEN 780A	S1	C	BIOSCI 350	S1	C	BSTHEO 329B	S2	T			
ARTSGEN 780B	S2	C	BIOSCI 351	S1	C	BSTHEO 343	S1	J	CHEMMAT 121	S2	C
ARTSGEN 792A	S1	C	BIOSCI 352	S2	C	BSTHEO 344	S2	C	CHEMMAT 201	S1	C
ARTSGEN 792B	S2	C	BIOSCI 353	S2	C	BSTHEO 353	S2	B	CHEMMAT 211	S1	C
ARTSGEN 794A	S1	C	BIOSCI 354	S2	C	BSTHEO 369	S1	T	CHEMMAT 212	S2	C
ARTSGEN 794B	S2	C	BIOSCI 356	S1	C				CHEMMAT 213	S2	C
ARTSGEN 797A	S1	C	BIOSCI 357	S2	C	BSTHEO 369A	S1	T	CHEMMAT 221	S1	C
ARTSGEN 797B	S2	C	BIOSCI 358	S2	C	BSTHEO 369B	S2	T	CHEMMAT 231	S2	C
ARTSMGT 702	S1	C	BIOSCI 391	S1	T	BSTHEO 381	S1	C	CHEMMAT 241	S1	C
ARTSMGT 703	S2	C	BIOSCI 393	S2	T	BSTHEO 741A	S1	J	CHEMMAT 311	S2	C
ARTSMGT 704	S2	C	BIOSCI 394	S1	T	BSTHEO 741B	S2	J	CHEMMAT 312	S1	C
ARTSMGT 705	S1	C	BIOSCI 395	S2	C	BSTHEO 747	S1	C	CHEMMAT 315	S2	C
ARTSMGT 791A	S1	C	BIOSCI 690A	S1	CT	BSTHEO 781	S1	J	CHEMMAT 316	S2	C
ARTSMGT 791B	S2	C	BIOSCI 690B	S2	CT	BTECH 420	S1	C	CHEMMAT 321	S1	C
ASIAN 100	S1	C	BIOSCI 691A	S1	CT	BTECH 440A	S1	T	CHEMMAT 331A	S1	C
ASIAN 201	S2	C	BIOSCI 691B	S2	CT	BTECH 440B	S2	T	CHEMMAT 331B	S2	C
ASIAN 202	S2	C	BIOSCI 703A	S1	C	BTECH 450A	S1	T	CHEMMAT 341	S1	C
ASIAN 790A	S1	C	BIOSCI 703B	S2	C	BTECH 450B	S2	T	CHEMMAT 361	S2	C
ASIAN 790B	S2	C	BIOSCI 708A	S1	C	BTECH 460A	S1	C	CHEMMAT 411	S1	C
ASIAN 794A	S1	C	BIOSCI 708B	S2	C	BTECH 470A	S1	C	CHEMMAT 421	S1	C
ASIAN 794B	S2	C	BIOSCI 709A	S1	C	BUSADMIN 702	T1	C	CHEMMAT 422	S1	C
ASIAN 797A	S1	C	BIOSCI 709B	S2	C	BUSADMIN 711	SS	C	CHEMMAT 423	S2	C
ASIAN 797B	S2	C	BIOSCI 710A	S1	C	BUSADMIN 712	T2	C	CHEMMAT 424	S1	C
AUDIOL 701	S1	H	BIOSCI 710B	S2	C	BUSADMIN 713	T2	C	CHEMMAT 431A	S1	C
AUDIOL 702	S1	H	BIOSCI 711A	S1	C	BUSADMIN 717	SS	C	CHEMMAT 431B	S2	C
AUDIOL 703A	S1	H	BIOSCI 711B	S2	C	BUSADMIN 753	SS	C	CHEMMAT 441A	S1	C
AUDIOL 703B	S2	H	BIOSCI 713A	S1	C	CHEM 91WA	S1	C	CHEMMAT 441B	S2	C
AUDIOL 704	S2	H	BIOSCI 713B	S2	C	CHEM 91WB	S2	C	CHEMMAT 463	S1	C
AUDIOL 705	S2	H	BIOSCI 714A	S1	C	CHEM 100	SS	C	CHEMMAT 711	S2	C
AUDIOL 711	S1	H	BIOSCI 714B	S2	C	CHEM 110	S1	C	CHEMMAT 712	S1	C
AUDIOL 712A	S1	H	BIOSCI 715A	S1	C				CHEMMAT 713	S1	C
AUDIOL 712B	S2	H	BIOSCI 715B	S2	C	CHEM 120	S2	C	CHEMMAT 715	S2	C
AUDIOL 790A	S1	H	BIOSCI 716A	S1	C	CHEM 150	S1	C	CHEMMAT 721	S2	C
AUDIOL 790B	S2	H	BIOSCI 716B	S2	C	CHEM 195	S2	C	CHEMMAT 722	S2	C
BEHAVSCI 700A	S1	H	BIOSCI 717A	S1	C	CHEM 201	S2	C	CHEMMAT 723	S1	C

**2002 Course Availability**  
 Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change.  
 For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva)

Course Code	Semester	Location									
CHEMMAT 724	S1	C	CIVIL 402B	S2	C	COMHLTH 742	S1	H	COMLAW 789	S1	C
CHEMMAT 733	S1	C	CIVIL 403	S2	C	COMHLTH 743	S1	H		S2	C
CHEMMAT 787	S1	C	CIVIL 404	S2	C		S2	H	COMLAW 791A	S1	C
	S2	C	CIVIL 405	S1	C	COMHLTH 744	S1	H		S2	C
CHEMMAT 788A	S1	C	CIVIL 411	S1	C	COMHLTH 745	S2	H	COMLAW 791B	S2	C
CHEMMAT 788B	S2	C	CIVIL 412	S1	C	COMHLTH 746	S2	H	COMLAW 792A	S1	C
CHEMMAT 789	S1	C	CIVIL 413	S2	C	COMHLTH 790	S1	H	COMLAW 792B	S2	C
	S2	C	CIVIL 420	S1	C		S2	H	COMLAW 793	S1	C
CHEMMAT 790	S1	C	CIVIL 430	S2	C	COMHLTH 790A	S1	H		S2	C
	S2	C	CIVIL 431	S1	C		S2	H	COMLAW 797A	S1	C
CHINESE 100	S1	C	CIVIL 451	S1	C	COMHLTH 790B	S1	H	COMLAW 797B	S2	C
	SS	C	CIVIL 460	S1	C		S2	H	COMPLIT 100	S2	C
CHINESE 101	S2	C	CIVIL 461	S2	C	COMLAW 101	S1	C	COMPLIT 200	S2	C
CHINESE 110	S1	C	CIVIL 701	S1	C		S2	C	COMPLIT 202	S1	C
CHINESE 130	S2	C	CIVIL 702	S2	C		SS	C	COMPLIT 701	S2	C
CHINESE 200	S1	C	CIVIL 703	S1	C	COMLAW 191	S2	M S T	COMPLIT 702	S1	C
CHINESE 201	S2	C	CIVIL 705	S1	C	COMLAW 201	S1	C	COMPLIT 703	S1	C
CHINESE 210	S2	C	CIVIL 710	S2	C	COMLAW 202	S2	C	COMPLIT 704	S1	C
CHINESE 221	S2	C	CIVIL 711	S2	C	COMLAW 203	S1	C	COMPLIT 792A	S1	C
CHINESE 277	S1	V	CIVIL 720	S1	C		S2	C	COMPLIT 792B	S2	C
	S2	V	CIVIL 721	S2	C	COMLAW 204	S1	C	COMPLIT 794A	S1	C
	SS	V	CIVIL 722	S1	C	COMLAW 205	S1	C		S2	C
CHINESE 278	S1	V	CIVIL 730	S1	C	COMLAW 301	S1	C	COMPLIT 794B	S2	C
CHINESE 300	S1	C	CIVIL 731	S2	C		S2	C	COMPLIT 797A	S1	C
CHINESE 301	S2	C	CIVIL 732	S2	C	COMLAW 303	S1	C	COMPLIT 797B	S2	C
CHINESE 304	S1	C	CIVIL 737	S1	C	COMLAW 304	S1	C	COMPSCI 101	S1	C
CHINESE 305	S2	C		S2	C	COMLAW 305	S2	C		S2	CT
CHINESE 377	S1	V	CIVIL 788A	S1	C	COMLAW 307	S1	C		SS	C
	S2	V	CIVIL 788B	S2	C	COMLAW 308	S2	C	COMPSCI 105	S1	T
	SS	V	CIVIL 789	S1	C	COMLAW 311	S2	C		S2	C
CHINESE 378	S1	V		S2	C	COMLAW 313	S2	C	COMPSCI 111	S1	C
CHINESE 700	S1	C	CIVIL 790	S1	C	COMLAW 701A	S1	C		S2	C
CHINESE 707	S2	C		S2	C	COMLAW 701B	S2	C	COMPSCI 210	S1	T
CHINESE 719A	S1	C	CLASSICS 110	S1	C	COMLAW 705A	S1	C		S2	C
CHINESE 719B	S2	C	CLASSICS 130	S2	C	COMLAW 705B	S2	C	COMPSCI 220	S1	T
CHINESE 722A	S1	C	CLASSICS 240	S2	C	COMLAW 707	S1	C		S2	C
CHINESE 722B	S2	C	CLASSICS 270	S1	C	COMLAW 710A	S1	C	COMPSCI 225	S1	C
CHINESE 724A	S1	C	CLASSICS 285	S2	C	COMLAW 710B	S2	C		S2	CT
CHINESE 724B	S2	C	CLASSICS 340	S2	C	COMLAW 711A	S1	C	COMPSCI 230	S1	C
CHINESE 725	S1	C	CLASSICS 370	S1	C	COMLAW 711B	S2	C		S2	T
CHINESE 726A	S1	C	CLASSICS 385	S2	C	COMLAW 712A	S1	C	COMPSCI 280	S1	C
CHINESE 726B	S2	C	COMHLTH 201	S2	H	COMLAW 712B	S2	C		S2	C
CHINESE 727	S2	C	COMHLTH 203	S1	H	COMLAW 716A	S1	C	COMPSCI 313	S2	C
CHINESE 728	S1	C		S2	H	COMLAW 716B	S2	C	COMPSCI 314	S1	C
	S2	C	COMHLTH 301	S1	H	COMLAW 723A	S1	C		S2	T
CHINESE 729A	S1	C	COMHLTH 302	S1	H	COMLAW 723B	S2	C	COMPSCI 320	S2	C
CHINESE 729B	S2	C		S2	H	COMLAW 727A	S1	C	COMPSCI 330	S1	C
CHINESE 730	S1	C	COMHLTH 303	S1	H	COMLAW 727B	S2	C	COMPSCI 334	S1	T
	S2	C	COMHLTH 701	S1	H	COMLAW 729A	S1	C	COMPSCI 335	S2	T
CHINESE 731A	S1	C	COMHLTH 703	S2	H	COMLAW 729B	S2	C	COMPSCI 340	S2	C
CHINESE 731B	S2	C	COMHLTH 705	S1	H	COMLAW 731	S1	C	COMPSCI 350	S1	C
CHINESE 732A	S1	C	COMHLTH 707	S2	H	COMLAW 735	S2	C	COMPSCI 360	S1	C
CHINESE 732B	S2	C	COMHLTH 708	S1	H	COMLAW 736	S1	C	COMPSCI 366	S1	C
CHINESE 780A	S1	C		S2	C	COMLAW 737	S2	C	COMPSCI 367	S2	C
CHINESE 780B	S2	C	COMHLTH 710	S2	H	COMLAW 740A	S1	C	COMPSCI 372	S1	C
CHINESE 790A	S1	C	COMHLTH 711	S1	H	COMLAW 740B	S2	C	COMPSCI 375	S1	T
CHINESE 790B	S2	C	COMHLTH 712	S2	H	COMLAW 741A	S1	C	COMPSCI 380	S1	CT
CHINESE 794A	S1	C	COMHLTH 713	S1	H	COMLAW 741B	S2	C		S2	CT
CHINESE 794B	S2	C	COMHLTH 714	S2	H	COMLAW 742A	S1	C		SS	CT
CHINESE 797A	S1	C	COMHLTH 715	S1	H	COMLAW 742B	S2	C	COMPSCI 380A	S1	CT
CHINESE 797B	S2	C	COMHLTH 716	S2	H	COMLAW 746	S2	C	COMPSCI 380B	S2	CT
CIVIL 201	S1	C	COMHLTH 717	S2	H	COMLAW 747	S1	C	COMPSCI 381	S1	CT
CIVIL 210	S1	C	COMHLTH 718	S1	H		S2	C		S2	CT
CIVIL 211	S2	C	COMHLTH 719	S1	H	COMLAW 749	S2	C		SS	C
CIVIL 220	S1	C	COMHLTH 720	S1	H	COMLAW 754	S2	C	COMPSCI 381A	S1	CT
CIVIL 221	S2	C	COMHLTH 722	S2	H	COMLAW 765	S1	C	COMPSCI 381B	S2	CT
CIVIL 230	S1	C	COMHLTH 723	S1	H		S2	C	COMPSCI 690A	S1	CT
CIVIL 250	S2	C	COMHLTH 725	S1	H	COMLAW 766A	S1	C	COMPSCI 690B	S2	CT
CIVIL 312	S1	C		S2	H	COMLAW 766B	S2	C	COMPSCI 691A	S1	CT
CIVIL 313	S2	C	COMHLTH 730	S1	H	COMLAW 767A	S1	C	COMPSCI 691B	S2	CT
CIVIL 322	S1	C	COMHLTH 731	S2	H	COMLAW 767B	S2	C	COMPSCI 702	S1	C
CIVIL 323	S2	C	COMHLTH 732	S1	H	COMLAW 769	S2	C	COMPSCI 708	S1	C
CIVIL 331	S1	C	COMHLTH 733	S2	H	COMLAW 770	S1	C	COMPSCI 711	S1	C
CIVIL 332	S2	C	COMHLTH 735	S2	H	COMLAW 771	S1	C	COMPSCI 715	S2	C
CIVIL 360	S1	C	COMHLTH 736	S2	H		S2	C	COMPSCI 720	S2	C
CIVIL 361	S2	C	COMHLTH 738	S1	H	COMLAW 772	S1	C	COMPSCI 725	S1	C
CIVIL 401	S2	C	COMHLTH 739	S2	H	COMLAW 773	S2	C	COMPSCI 735	S1	C
CIVIL 402A	S1	C	COMHLTH 741	S2	H	COMLAW 779	S2	C	COMPSCI 742	S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
COMPSCI 750	S1	C	CTHTHEO 743B	S2	J	ECON 232	S2	C	EDCARR 612A	S1	C
COMPSCI 755	S1	C	CTHTHEO 748A	S1	T	ECON 241	S1	C	EDCARR 612B	S2	C
COMPSCI 760	S1	C	CTHTHEO 748B	S2	T	ECON 301	S1	C	EDCARR 613A	S1	C
COMPSCI 765	S2	C	CTHTHEO 781	S1	J	ECON 303	S2	C	EDCARR 613B	S2	C
COMPSCI 766	S1	T	DANCE 101A	S1	C	ECON 304	S1	C	EDCARR 619A	S1	C
COMPSCI 767	S1	C	DANCE 101B	S2	C	ECON 311	S2	C	EDCARR 619B	S2	C
COMPSCI 773	S2	T	DANCE 102	S2	C	ECON 321	S2	C	EDCARR 620A	S1	C
COMPSCI 775	S2	T	DANCE 201A	S1	C	ECON 322	S1	C	EDCARR 620B	S2	C
COMPSCI 776	S1	T	DANCE 201B	S2	C	ECON 331	S2	C	EDCARR 622A	S1	C
	S2	T	DANCE 202	S2	C	ECON 341	S2	C	EDCARR 622B	S2	C
COMPSCI 776A	S1	T	DANCE 202A	S1	C	ECON 343	S1	C	EDCARR 623A	S1	C
COMPSCI 776B	S2	T	DANCE 202B	S2	C	ECON 351	S1	C	EDCARR 623B	S2	C
COMPSCI 780	S1	CT	DANCE 203A	S1	C	ECON 352	S2	C	EDCARR 624A	S1	C
	S2	CT	DANCE 203B	S2	C	ECON 361	S2	C	EDCARR 624B	S2	C
	SS	CT	DANCE 250	S2	C	ECON 381	S2	C	EDCARR 625A	S1	C
				SS	C	ECON 701	S1	C	EDCARR 625B	S2	C
COMPSCI 780A	S1	CT	DANCE 751	S1	C	ECON 702	S2	C	EDCARR 626A	S1	C
COMPSCI 780B	S2	CT	DANCE 753A	S1	C	ECON 703	S1	C	EDCARR 626B	S2	C
COMPSCI 781	S1	CT	DANCE 753B	S2	C	ECON 711	S2	C	EDCARR 627A	S1	C
	SS	CT	DANCE 760	S2	C	ECON 713	S1	C	EDCARR 627B	S2	C
COMPSCI 781A	S1	CT	DANCE 762A	S1	C	ECON 721	S1	C	EDCARR 628A	S1	C
COMPSCI 781B	S2	CT	DANCE 762B	S2	C	ECON 723	S2	C	EDCARR 628B	S2	C
COMPSCI 789A	S1	CT	DANCE 765A	S1	C	ECON 741	S2	C	EDCARR 629A	S1	C
COMPSCI 789B	S2	CT	DANCE 765B	S2	C	ECON 747	S2	C	EDCARR 629B	S2	C
COMPSCI 790	S1	C	DANCE 766	S1	C	ECON 751	S1	C	EDCARR 630A	S1	C
COMPSCI 797A	S1	CT		SS	C	ECON 763	S1	C	EDCARR 630B	S2	C
COMPSCI 797B	S2	CT	DANCE 767	S2	C	ECON 764	S2	C	EDCARR 631A	S1	C
COMPSYS 301A	S1	C	DANCE 770	S2	C	ECON 771	S1	C	EDCARR 631B	S2	C
COMPSYS 301B	S2	C		SS	C	ECON 774	S1	C	EDCARR 632A	S1	C
COMPSYS 302	S1	C	DANCE 771	S1	C	ECON 775	S2	C	EDCARR 632B	S2	C
COMPSYS 401A	S1	C	DANCE 791	S1	C	ECON 781	S2	C	EDCARR 635A	S1	C
COMPSYS 401B	S2	C	DANCE 791A	S1	C	ECON 782	S2	C	EDCARR 635B	S2	C
COMPSYS 402	S2	C	DANCE 791B	S2	C	ECON 789	S1	C	EDCARR 636A	S1	C
COOKIS 101	S1	C	DANCE 793	S1	C		S2	C	EDCARR 636B	S2	C
COOKIS 102	S2	C	DANCE 793A	S1	C	ECON 790A	S1	C	EDCARR 637A	S1	C
COOKIS 201	S1	C	DANCE 793B	S2	C		S2	C	EDCARR 637B	S2	C
COOKIS 202	S2	C	DEVELOP 700A	S1	C	ECON 790B	S1	C	EDCARR 638A	S1	C
COOKIS 203	S1	C	DEVELOP 700B	S2	C		S2	C	EDCARR 638B	S2	C
COOKIS 301	S1	C	DEVELOP 701	S1	C	ECON 792A	S1	C	EDCARR 639A	S1	C
COOKIS 302	S2	C	DEVELOP 702A	S1	C	ECON 792B	S2	C	EDCARR 639B	S2	C
CROATIAN 100	S1	C	DEVELOP 702B	S2	C	EDCARR 101A	S1	C M	EDCARR 640A	S1	C
CROATIAN 101	S2	C	DEVELOP 792	S1	C	EDCARR 101B	S2	C M	EDCARR 640B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 103	S1	W		S2	C	EDCARR 201A	S1	C M	EDCARR 641A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 106	S1	C	DEVELOP 792A	S1	C	EDCARR 201B	S2	C M	EDCARR 641B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 107	S1	J	DEVELOP 792B	S2	C	EDCARR 210A	S1	C M	EDCARR 646A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 109	S2	B	DEVELOP 797A	S1	C	EDCARR 210B	S2	C M	EDCARR 646B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 142	S2	J	DEVELOP 797B	S2	C	EDCARR 211A	S1	C M	EDCARR 647A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 145	S2	C	DRAMA 701A	S1	C	EDCARR 211B	S2	C M	EDCARR 647B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 201	S1	C	DRAMA 701B	S2	C	EDCARR 212A	S1	C M	EDCARR 648A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 202	S2	J	DRAMA 704A	S1	C	EDCARR 212B	S2	C M	EDCARR 648B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 203	S1	B J	DRAMA 704B	S2	C	EDCARR 213A	S1	C M	EDCARR 649A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 204	S2	C	DRAMA 705A	S1	C	EDCARR 213B	S2	C M	EDCARR 649B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 205	S2	C	DRAMA 705B	S2	C	EDCARR 214A	S1	C M	EDCARR 650A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 208	S2	W	DRAMA 721	S1	C	EDCARR 214B	S2	C M	EDCARR 650B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 210	S1	J		S2	C	EDCARR 215A	S1	C M	EDCARR 651A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 222	S1	J	DRAMA 790A	S1	C	EDCARR 215B	S2	C M	EDCARR 651B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 246	S2	J	DRAMA 790B	S2	C	EDCARR 216A	S1	C M	EDCARR 661A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 247	S2	J	DRAMA 794A	S1	C	EDCARR 216B	S2	C M	EDCARR 661B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 249	S2	J	DRAMA 794B	S2	C	EDCARR 301A	S1	C M	EDCARR 663A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 251	S1	C	DRAMA 797A	S1	C	EDCARR 301B	S2	C M	EDCARR 663B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 307	S2	B	DRAMA 797B	S2	C	EDCARR 601A	S1	C	EDCARR 664A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 308	S1	C	ECON 101	S1	C	EDCARR 601B	S2	C	EDCARR 664B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 312	S1	C		S2	C	EDCARR 602A	S1	C	EDCARR 665A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 329	S1	T		SS	C	EDCARR 602B	S2	C	EDCARR 665B	S2	C
	S2	T	ECON 111	S1	C	EDCARR 603A	S1	C	EDCARR 666A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 329A	S1	T		S2	C	EDCARR 603B	S2	C	EDCARR 666B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 329B	S2	T		SS	C	EDCARR 604A	S1	C	EDCARR 667A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 334	S2	J	ECON 191	S2	M S T	EDCARR 604B	S2	C	EDCARR 667B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 345	S1	J	ECON 201	S1	C	EDCARR 605A	S1	C	EDCARR 668A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 349	S2	J		S2	C	EDCARR 605B	S2	C	EDCARR 668B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 351	S1	C		SS	C	EDCARR 606A	S1	C	EDCARR 670A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 359	S1	T	ECON 202	S2	C	EDCARR 606B	S2	C	EDCARR 670B	S2	C
	S2	T	ECON 205	S2	C	EDCARR 607A	S1	C	EDCARR 671A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 359A	S1	T	ECON 211	S1	C	EDCARR 607B	S2	C	EDCARR 671B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 359B	S2	T		S2	C	EDCARR 608A	S1	C	EDCARR 672A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 702A	S1	C	ECON 212	S1	C	EDCARR 608B	S2	C	EDCARR 672B	S2	C
CTHTHEO 702B	S2	C	ECON 221	S1	C	EDCARR 611A	S1	C	EDCARR 675A	S1	C
CTHTHEO 743A	S1	J		S2	C	EDCARR 611B	S2	C	EDCARR 675B	S2	C

2002 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
EDCURR 676A	S1	C	EDPROF 790B	S1	C	EDUC 746	SS	C	ELECTENG 716	S2	C
EDCURR 676B	S2	C		S2	C	EDUC 748A	S1	C	ELECTENG 787	S1	C
EDCURR 677A	S1	C	EDPROF 794	S1	C	EDUC 748B	S2	C		S2	C
EDCURR 677B	S2	C		S2	C	EDUC 749A	S1	C	ELECTENG 788A	S1	C
EDPROF 601A	S1	C	EDPROF 794A	S1	C	EDUC 749B	S2	C	ELECTENG 788B	S2	C
EDPROF 601B	S2	C	EDPROF 794B	S2	C	EDUC 751A	S1	C	ELECTENG 789	S1	C
EDPROF 602	S1	C	EDPROF 797	S1	C	EDUC 751B	S2	C		S2	C
EDPROF 603A	S1	C		S2	C	EDUC 753	S1	C	ELECTENG 790	S1	C
EDPROF 603B	S2	C	EDPROF 797A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
EDPROF 604A	S1	C	EDPROF 797B	S2	C	EDUC 762	S2	C	ENGGEN 104	S1	C
EDPROF 604B	S2	C	EDPROF 841A	S1	C	EDUC 768	S2	C	ENGGEN 110	S1	C
EDPROF 609A	S1	C	EDPROF 841B	S2	C	EDUC 769A	S1	C		S2	C
EDPROF 609B	S2	C	EDPROF 842A	S1	C	EDUC 769B	S2	C	ENGGEN 111	S2	C
EDPROF 610A	S1	C	EDPROF 842B	S2	C	EDUC 770	S2	C	ENGGEN 121	S1	C
EDPROF 610B	S2	C	EDUC 101	S1	C	EDUC 778	S2	C		SS	C
EDPROF 611A	S1	C		S2	M	EDUC 782	S1	C	ENGGEN 202	S2	C
EDPROF 611B	S2	C	EDUC 102	S1	M	EDUC 783	S2	C	ENGGEN 203	S2	C
EDPROF 612A	S1	C		S2	C	EDUC 784	S1	C	ENGGEN 299A	S1	K
EDPROF 612B	S2	C	EDUC 103	S1	C M		S2	C	ENGGEN 299B	S2	K
EDPROF 614A	S1	C	EDUC 201	SS	C	EDUC 784A	S1	C	ENGGEN 302	S1	C
EDPROF 614B	S2	C	EDUC 206	S1	C M	EDUC 784B	S2	C	ENGGEN 402	S1	C
EDPROF 622A	S1	C	EDUC 207	S2	C	EDUC 785	S1	C	ENGGEN 499A	S1	C
EDPROF 622B	S2	C	EDUC 208	S2	C		S2	C	ENGGEN 499B	S2	K
EDPROF 624A	S1	C	EDUC 210	S1	C	EDUC 785A	S1	C	ENGGEN 601	S1	C
EDPROF 624B	S2	C	EDUC 221	S2	C	EDUC 785B	S2	C	ENGGEN 602	S2	C
EDPROF 625A	S1	C	EDUC 223	S1	C	EDUC 787A	S1	C	ENGGEN 611	S1	C
EDPROF 625B	S2	C	EDUC 224	S2	C M	EDUC 787B	S2	C		S2	C
EDPROF 633	S1	C	EDUC 301	S1	C	EDUC 790	S1	C	ENGGEN 701	S1	C
EDPROF 634	S2	C	EDUC 303	S2	C		S2	C	ENGGEN 702	S1	C
EDPROF 667	S1	C	EDUC 304	S1	C	EDUC 790A	S1	C	ENGGEN 703	S1	C
	S2	C		SS	C	EDUC 790B	S2	C	ENGGEN 704	S1	C
EDPROF 667A	S1	C	EDUC 305	S2	C	EDUC 797A	S1	C	ENGGEN 705	S2	C
EDPROF 667B	S2	C	EDUC 306	S1	C		S2	C	ENGGEN 706	S2	C
EDPROF 691	S1	C	EDUC 309	S1	C	EDUC 797B	S1	C	ENGGEN 707	S2	C
	S2	C	EDUC 310	S2	C		S2	C	ENGGEN 708	S2	C
EDPROF 691A	S1	C	EDUC 311	S1	M	ELECCOMP 692A	S1	CT	ENGGEN 757A	S1	C
EDPROF 691B	S2	C	EDUC 312	SS	C	ELECCOMP 692B	S2	CT	ENGGEN 757B	S2	C
EDPROF 692	S1	C	EDUC 313	S2	C	ELECCOMP 693A	S1	CT	ENGGEN 760A	S1	C
	S2	C	EDUC 313B	S2	C	ELECCOMP 693B	S2	CT	ENGGEN 760B	S2	C
EDPROF 692A	S1	C	EDUC 340	S1	C	ELECCOMP 797	S1	CT	ENGGEN 790	S1	C
EDPROF 692B	S2	C	EDUC 341	S1	C		S2	CT		S2	C
EDPROF 693	S2	C	EDUC 349	S2	C	ELECTENG 101	S2	C	ENGGEN 797	S1	C
EDPROF 693A	S1	C	EDUC 351	S1	C M		SS	C		S2	C
EDPROF 693B	S2	C	EDUC 352	S2	C	ELECTENG 202	S1	C	ENGGEN 797A	S1	C
EDPROF 697A	S1	C	EDUC 381	S1	C	ELECTENG 203	S1	C	ENGGEN 797B	S2	C
EDPROF 697B	S2	C	EDUC 383	S2	C M	ELECTENG 204	S2	C	ENGLISH 91WA	S1	C
EDPROF 726A	S1	C	EDUC 384	S2	C	ELECTENG 205	S2	C	ENGLISH 91WB	S2	C
EDPROF 726B	S2	C	EDUC 601	S1	C	ELECTENG 206	S2	C	ENGLISH 100	S2	C
EDPROF 731A	S1	C	EDUC 601A	S1	C	ELECTENG 207	S1	C	ENGLISH 101	S1	C
EDPROF 731B	S2	C	EDUC 601B	S2	C	ELECTENG 301A	S1	C	ENGLISH 103	S1	C
EDPROF 733	S1	C	EDUC 701A	S1	C	ELECTENG 301B	S2	C	ENGLISH 107	S1	C
EDPROF 734	S2	C	EDUC 701B	S2	C	ELECTENG 302	S1	C	ENGLISH 108	S2	C M
EDPROF 735A	S1	C	EDUC 703	S1	C	ELECTENG 303	S2	C	ENGLISH 109	S2	C
EDPROF 735B	S2	C	EDUC 704	S1	C	ELECTENG 304	S2	C	ENGLISH 110	S1	M
EDPROF 736A	S1	C	EDUC 705	S2	C	ELECTENG 305	S2	C	ENGLISH 111	S1	C
EDPROF 736B	S2	C	EDUC 707A	S1	C	ELECTENG 306	S1	C	ENGLISH 121	S1	C M
EDPROF 744	S1	C	EDUC 707B	S2	C	ELECTENG 401A	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	C	EDUC 708	S2	C	ELECTENG 401B	S2	C	ENGLISH 155	SS	C
EDPROF 745	S1	C	EDUC 709	S1	C	ELECTENG 411	S1	C	ENGLISH 200	S1	C
EDPROF 746	S1	C	EDUC 709A	S1	C	ELECTENG 412	S1	C	ENGLISH 202	S2	C
EDPROF 747A	S1	C	EDUC 709B	S2	C	ELECTENG 413	S1	C	ENGLISH 210	S2	C
EDPROF 747B	S2	C	EDUC 710A	S1	C	ELECTENG 414	S1	C	ENGLISH 213	S1	C
EDPROF 749	S2	C	EDUC 710B	S2	C	ELECTENG 415	S1	C	ENGLISH 220	S1	C
EDPROF 750	S1	C	EDUC 712	S2	C	ELECTENG 421	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	EDUC 717	S2	C	ELECTENG 422	S2	C	ENGLISH 221	S1	C
EDPROF 764	S1	C	EDUC 717A	S1	C	ELECTENG 423	S2	C	ENGLISH 222	S2	C
EDPROF 770	S1	C	EDUC 717B	S2	C	ELECTENG 424	S2	C	ENGLISH 230	S1	C
EDPROF 771	S2	C	EDUC 718	S2	C	ELECTENG 701	S1	C	ENGLISH 255	S2	C
EDPROF 772A	S1	C	EDUC 719	S1	C N	ELECTENG 703	S2	C		SS	C
EDPROF 772B	S2	C	EDUC 720A	S1	C	ELECTENG 704	S1	C	ENGLISH 256	SS	C
EDPROF 773	S1	C	EDUC 720B	S2	C	ELECTENG 705	S1	C	ENGLISH 310	S2	C
	S2	C	EDUC 722A	S1	C	ELECTENG 706	S1	C	ENGLISH 314	S1	C
EDPROF 773A	S1	C	EDUC 722B	S2	C	ELECTENG 707	S1	C	ENGLISH 320	S2	C
EDPROF 773B	S2	C	EDUC 723	S2	C	ELECTENG 709	S2	C	ENGLISH 323	S1	C
EDPROF 790	S1	C	EDUC 729	S1	C	ELECTENG 710	S2	C	ENGLISH 326	S1	C
	S2	C	EDUC 741	S1	C	ELECTENG 713	S1	C	ENGLISH 327	S1	C
EDPROF 790A	S1	C	EDUC 742A	S1	C	ELECTENG 714	S1	C	ENGLISH 328A	S1	C
	S2	C	EDUC 742B	S2	C	ELECTENG 715	S1	C	ENGLISH 328B	S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ENGLISH 331A	S1	C	ENGSCI 462	S2	C		S2	C T	FOODSCI 708	S2	C
ENGLISH 331B	S2	C	ENGSCI 463	S2	C		SS	C	FORENSIC 701	S2	C
ENGLISH 332	S1	C	ENGSCI 464	S2	C	ESOL 200	S1	C	FORENSIC 702	S1	C
ENGLISH 333	S2	C	ENGSCI 701	S2	C		S2	C	FORENSIC 703	S1	C
ENGLISH 335	S2	C	ENGSCI 711	S1	C		SS	C	FORENSIC 704	S2	C
ENGLISH 336	S1	C		S2	C	ESOL 201	S1	C	FORENSIC 705A	S1	C
ENGLISH 337	S1	C	ENGSCI 720	S1	C		S2	C	FORENSIC 705B	S2	C
ENGLISH 338	S1	C	ENGSCI 721	S1	C		SS	C	FORENSIC 706	S2	C
ENGLISH 340	S2	C	ENGSCI 741	S1	C	ESOL 202	S1	C	FRENCH 100	S1	C
ENGLISH 705A	S1	C	ENGSCI 742	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 705B	S2	C	ENGSCI 743	S2	C	EURLANG 100	S1	C	FRENCH 129	S2	C
ENGLISH 713B	S1	C	ENGSCI 744	S2	C	EURLANG 211	S2	C	FRENCH 151	S1	C
ENGLISH 714A	S1	C	ENGSCI 751	S1	C	EURLANG 303	S1	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 714B	S2	C	ENGSCI 752	S2	C	EURLANG 700	S2	C		SS	C
ENGLISH 715A	S1	C	ENGSCI 787	S1	C	FINANCE 251	S1	C	FRENCH 152	S1	C
ENGLISH 715B	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 716A	S1	C	ENGSCI 788A	S1	C	FINANCE 261	S1	C	FRENCH 159	S1	C
ENGLISH 716B	S2	C	ENGSCI 788B	S2	C		S2	C	FRENCH 161	S1	K
ENGLISH 717A	S1	C	ENGSCI 789	S1	C	FINANCE 351	S1	C		S2	K
ENGLISH 717B	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C	FRENCH 162	S2	K
ENGLISH 732A	S1	C	ENGSCI 790	S1	C	FINANCE 361	S1	C	FRENCH 200	S1	C
ENGLISH 732B	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 733A	S1	C	ENGSCI 791	S1	C	FINANCE 362	S1	C	FRENCH 214	S1	C
ENGLISH 733B	S2	C	ENGSCI 792	S2	C		S2	C	FRENCH 218	S2	C
ENGLISH 736A	S1	C	ENGSCI 795	S2	C	FINANCE 701	S1	C	FRENCH 230	S2	C
ENGLISH 736B	S2	C	ENGWRIT 101	S1	C		S2	C	FRENCH 231	S2	C
ENGLISH 739A	S1	C		S2	C	FINANCE 702A	S1	C	FRENCH 241	S1	C
ENGLISH 739B	S2	C		SS	C	FINANCE 702B	S2	C	FRENCH 277	S1	V
ENGLISH 741	S2	C	ENVLAW 708	S1	C	FINANCE 751	S2	C		S2	V
ENGLISH 744	S1	C	ENVLAW 712	S2	C	FINANCE 761	S1	C		SS	V
ENGLISH 746	S2	C	ENVLAW 723	S1	C	FINANCE 762	S1	C	FRENCH 278	S1	V
ENGLISH 752	S1	C	ENVLAW 790	S2	C	FINANCE 782	S2	C		S2	V
ENGLISH 755	S1	C	ENVLAW 797A	S1	C	FINANCE 785	S2	C		SS	V
ENGLISH 757	S2	C		S2	C	FINANCE 789	S1	C	FRENCH 300	S1	C
ENGLISH 758	S2	C	ENVLAW 797B	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 759	S1	C		S2	C	FINEARTS 100A	S1	C	FRENCH 306	S1	C
ENGLISH 760	S1	C	ENVMGT 601	S1	T	FINEARTS 100B	S2	C	FRENCH 320	S2	C
ENGLISH 794A	S1	C	ENVMGT 602	S1	T	FINEARTS 200A	S1	C	FRENCH 322	S1	C
ENGLISH 794B	S2	C	ENVMGT 603	S2	T	FINEARTS 200B	S2	C		S2	C
ENGLISH 797A	S1	C	ENVMGT 604	S2	T	FINEARTS 300A	S1	C	FRENCH 329	S2	C
ENGLISH 797B	S2	C	ENVMGT 662	S1	T	FINEARTS 300B	S2	C	FRENCH 330	S1	C
ENGSCI 111	S1	C	ENVMGT 665	S2	T	FINEARTS 400A	S1	C		S2	C
	SS	C	ENVMGT 690	S2	T	FINEARTS 400B	S2	C	FRENCH 339	S1	C
ENGSCI 131	S1	C	ENVSCI 201	S1	C	FINEARTS 401A	S1	C	FRENCH 341	S2	C
	S2	C	ENVSCI 301	S2	T	FINEARTS 401B	S2	C	FRENCH 377	S1	V
ENGSCI 211	S1	C	ENVSCI 310	S2	C	FINEARTS 651A	S1	C K		S2	C
ENGSCI 212	S1	C	ENVSCI 696A	S1	C	FINEARTS 651B	S2	C K		SS	V
ENGSCI 231	S2	C	ENVSCI 696B	S2	C	FINEARTS 652A	S1	C K	FRENCH 378	S1	V
ENGSCI 232	S2	C	ENVSCI 697	S2	C	FINEARTS 652B	S2	C K		S2	V
ENGSCI 255	S1	C	ENVSCI 697A	S1	T	FINEARTS 690A	S1	C K		SS	V
ENGSCI 261	S1	C	ENVSCI 697B	S2	T	FINEARTS 690B	S2	C K	FRENCH 700	S2	C
ENGSCI 262	S2	C	ENVSCI 701	S2	T	FINEARTS 753A	S1	C K	FRENCH 700A	S1	C
ENGSCI 272	S2	C	ENVSCI 702	S1	T	FINEARTS 753B	S2	C K	FRENCH 700B	S2	C
ENGSCI 274	S2	C	ENVSCI 703	S2	T	FINEARTS 754A	S1	C K	FRENCH 701	S1	C
ENGSCI 311	S1	C	ENVSCI 704	S2	T		S2	C	FRENCH 712	S1	C
	S2	C	ENVSCI 710	S1	T	FINEARTS 754B	S2	C K	FRENCH 717	S2	C
ENGSCI 312	S1	C	ENVSCI 711	S1	T	FINEARTS 762A	S1	C	FRENCH 720	S2	C
ENGSCI 321	S1	C	ENVSCI 712	S2	T	FINEARTS 762B	S2	C	FRENCH 720A	S1	C
ENGSCI 331	S2	C	ENVSCI 713	S2	T	FINEARTS 763A	S1	C	FRENCH 720B	S2	C
ENGSCI 332	S2	C	ENVSCI 714	S2	T	FINEARTS 763B	S2	C	FRENCH 723	S2	C
ENGSCI 341	S1	C	ENVSCI 715	S1	T	FINEARTS 764A	S1	C	FRENCH 724	S2	C
ENGSCI 342	S2	C	ENVSCI 716	S1	T	FINEARTS 764B	S2	C	FRENCH 727	S1	C
ENGSCI 361	S2	C	ENVSCI 717	S2	T	FINEARTS 791A	S1	C	FRENCH 728	S1	C
ENGSCI 391	S1	C	ENVSCI 722	S2	T	FINEARTS 791B	S2	C	FRENCH 729	S2	C
ENGSCI 400A	S1	C	ENVSCI 726	S2	T	FINEARTS 797A	S1	C	FRENCH 739	S1	C
ENGSCI 414	S1	C	ENVSCI 731	S1	T	FINEARTS 797B	S2	C	FRENCH 741	S2	C
ENGSCI 415	S1	C	ENVSCI 732A	S1	T	FOODSCI 201	S2	C	FRENCH 750	S1	C
ENGSCI 416	S2	C	ENVSCI 732B	S2	T	FOODSCI 301	S1	C		S2	C
ENGSCI 440	S1	C	ENVSCI 733	S1	T	FOODSCI 302	S2	C	FRENCH 750A	S1	C
ENGSCI 441	S2	C	ENVSCI 734	S2	T	FOODSCI 691A	S1	C	FRENCH 750B	S2	C
ENGSCI 442	S2	C	ENVSCI 735	S2	T		S2	C	FRENCH 785	S1	C
ENGSCI 443	S2	C	ENVSCI 736	S2	T	FOODSCI 691B	S2	C		S2	C
ENGSCI 450	S1	C	ESOL 10E	S1	C	FOODSCI 703	S1	C	FRENCH 785A	S1	C
ENGSCI 451	S1	C	ESOL 20E	S2	C	FOODSCI 704	S2	C	FRENCH 785B	S2	C
ENGSCI 452	S2	C	ESOL 101	S1	C T	FOODSCI 705A	S1	C	FRENCH 790	S1	C
ENGSCI 453	S2	C		S2	C T	FOODSCI 705B	S2	C		S2	C
ENGSCI 460	S1	C		SS	C	FOODSCI 706	S2	C	FRENCH 790A	S1	C
ENGSCI 461	S2	C	ESOL 102	S1	C T	FOODSCI 707	S1	C	FRENCH 790B	S2	C

2002 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
FRENCH 792	S1	C	GENPRAC 730	S2	H K	GEOLOGY 110	S2	C		S2	V
	S2	C	GENPRAC 735	S1	H	GEOLOGY 111	S1	C		SS	V
FRENCH 792A	S1	C	GENPRAC 736	S2	H	GEOLOGY 112	S2	C	GERMAN 278	S1	V
FRENCH 792B	S2	C	GENPRAC 751	S2	H K	GEOLOGY 201	S1	C		S2	V
FRENCH 797A	S1	C	GENPRAC 752	S1	H K	GEOLOGY 202	S1	C		SS	V
FRENCH 797B	S2	C	GENPRAC 757	S2	H K	GEOLOGY 203	S1	C	GERMAN 301	S1	C
FTVMS 100	S1	C	GENPRAC 758	S1	H K	GEOLOGY 204	S2	C	GERMAN 302	S2	C
FTVMS 101	S2	C	GENPRAC 760	S1	K	GEOLOGY 205	S2	C	GERMAN 305	S1	C
FTVMS 110	SS	C	GENPRAC 761	S2	H	GEOLOGY 301	SS	C	GERMAN 310	S2	C
FTVMS 112	SS	C	GENPRAC 762	S1	H K	GEOLOGY 302	S2	C	GERMAN 311	S1	C
FTVMS 200	S1	C	GENPRAC 763	S2	K	GEOLOGY 303	S1	C	GERMAN 377	S1	V
FTVMS 201	S1	C	GENPRAC 772	S1	H K	GEOLOGY 304	S1	C		S2	V
	S2	C	GENPRAC 773	S2	H K	GEOLOGY 305	S2	C		SS	V
FTVMS 202	S2	C	GENPRAC 776	S1	H K	GEOLOGY 340	S1	C	GERMAN 378	S1	V
FTVMS 203	S1	C	GENPRAC 777	S2	H	GEOLOGY 361	S1	C		S2	V
FTVMS 300	S1	C	GENPRAC 778	S1	H K	GEOLOGY 372	S2	C		SS	V
FTVMS 301A	S1	C	GEOG 91WA	S1	C	GEOLOGY 690A	S1	C	GERMAN 390	S2	C
FTVMS 301B	S2	C	GEOG 91WB	S2	C	GEOLOGY 690B	S2	C	GERMAN 391	S1	C
FTVMS 302	S2	C	GEOG 101	S1	C	GEOLOGY 691A	S1	C	GERMAN 392	S1	C
FTVMS 303	S1	C		S2	C	GEOLOGY 691B	S2	C		S2	C
FTVMS 304	S2	C		SS	C	GEOLOGY 693A	S1	C	GERMAN 393	S1	C
FTVMS 310	S2	C	GEOG 102	S1	C	GEOLOGY 693B	S2	C		S2	C
FTVMS 311	S2	C		S2	C	GEOLOGY 701	SS	C	GERMAN 701A	S1	C
FTVMS 312	S1	C		SS	C	GEOLOGY 705	S2	C	GERMAN 701B	S2	C
FTVMS 702A	S1	C	GEOG 201	S2	C	GEOLOGY 708	S1	C	GERMAN 702	S1	C
FTVMS 702B	S2	C	GEOG 202	S1	C	GEOLOGY 709	S2	C	GERMAN 711	S2	C
FTVMS 703A	S1	C	GEOG 204A	S1	C	GEOLOGY 712	S2	C	GERMAN 714	S1	C
FTVMS 703B	S1	C	GEOG 204B	S2	C	GEOLOGY 721	S1	C		S2	C
	S2	C	GEOG 205	S1	C	GEOLOGY 731	S1	C	GERMAN 716	S2	C
FTVMS 705	S1	C		S2	C	GEOLOGY 732	S1	C	GERMAN 717	S2	C
FTVMS 710A	S1	C	GEOG 255	SS	C	GEOLOGY 741	S1	C	GERMAN 720	S1	C
FTVMS 710B	S2	C	GEOG 302	S1	C	GEOLOGY 742	S2	C	GERMAN 721	S1	C
FTVMS 721	S1	C	GEOG 305	S2	C	GEOLOGY 751	S1	C	GERMAN 722	S2	C
FTVMS 722	S1	C	GEOG 315	S2	C	GEOLOGY 752	S1	C	GERMAN 724	S1	C
FTVMS 730	S1	C	GEOG 317	S2	C	GEOLOGY 753	S2	C	GERMAN 725	S1	C
FTVMS 732	S2	C	GEOG 318	S1	C	GEOLOGY 754	S1	C	GERMAN 726	S1	C
FTVMS 735	S2	C		SS	C	GEOLOGY 771	S2	C	GERMAN 728	S1	C
FTVMS 750	S1	C	GEOG 319	S2	C	GEOLOGY 772	S2	C		S2	C
FTVMS 752	S2	C	GEOG 320	S2	C	GEOLOGY 773	S2	C	GERMAN 729	S1	C
FTVMS 753	S2	C	GEOG 322	S1	C	GEOLOGY 789	S1	C		S2	C
FTVMS 754	S1	C	GEOG 330	S2	C		S2	C	GERMAN 735	S2	C
FTVMS 758	S1	C	GEOG 331	S1	C	GEOLOGY 789A	S1	C	GERMAN 740	S2	C
FTVMS 759	S2	C	GEOG 332	S1	C	GEOLOGY 789B	S2	C	GERMAN 780	S1	C
FTVMS 760A	S1	C	GEOG 351	S2	C	GEOLOGY 795A	S1	C		S2	C
FTVMS 760B	S2	C	GEOG 352	S1	C	GEOLOGY 795B	S2	C	GERMAN 780A	S1	C
FTVMS 761A	S1	C	GEOG 353	S1	C	GEOPHYS 330	S2	C	GERMAN 780B	S2	C
FTVMS 761B	S2	C	GEOG 690A	S1	C	GEOPHYS 331	S1	C	GERMAN 792A	S1	C
FTVMS 762	S1	C	GEOG 690B	S2	C	GEOPHYS 332	S2	C	GERMAN 792B	S2	C
	S2	C	GEOG 691	S1	C	GEOPHYS 690A	S1	CT	GERMAN 794A	S1	C
FTVMS 762A	S1	C	GEOG 691A	S1	C	GEOPHYS 690B	S2	CT	GERMAN 794B	S2	C
FTVMS 762B	S2	C	GEOG 691B	S2	C	GEOPHYS 691A	S1	CT	GERMAN 797A	S1	C
FTVMS 790	S1	C	GEOG 701A	S1	C	GEOPHYS 691B	S2	CT	GERMAN 797B	S2	C
FTVMS 790A	S1	C	GEOG 701B	S2	C	GEOPHYS 761	S1	C	GREEK 100	S1	C
FTVMS 790B	S2	C	GEOG 719	S1	C	GEOPHYS 762	S2	C	GREEK 101	S2	C
FTVMS 794A	S1	C	GEOG 721	S1	C	GEOPHYS 763A	S1	C	GREEK 200	S1	C
FTVMS 794B	S2	C	GEOG 722	S2	C	GEOPHYS 763B	S2	C	GREEK 201	S1	C
FTVMS 797A	S1	C	GEOG 723	S2	C	GEO THERM 601	S1	C	GREEK 202	S2	C
FTVMS 797B	S2	C	GEOG 724	S1	C	GEO THERM 602	S1	C	GREEK 203	S1	C
GENADMIN XCAA	S1	V	GEOG 725	S2	C	GEO THERM 603	S1	C	GREEK 204	S2	C
GENADMIN XCAB	S2	V	GEOG 726	S2	C	GEO THERM 611	S2	C	GREEK 300	S2	C
GENADMIN XCAB	S1	V	GEOG 727	S1	C	GEO THERM 612	S2	C	GREEK 301	S1	C
	S2	V	GEOG 732	S2	C	GEO THERM 613	S2	C	GREEK 302	S2	C
GENPRAC 603A	S1	K	GEOG 742	S1	C	GEO THERM 620	S1	C	GREEK 305	S1	C
GENPRAC 603B	S2	K	GEOG 743	S2	C	GEO THERM 621	S2	C		S2	C
GENPRAC 604	S1	H K	GEOG 744	S2	C	GEO THERM 622	S2	C	GREEK 700A	S1	C
GENPRAC 605	S1	H K	GEOG 745	S1	C	GEO THERM 623	S2	C	GREEK 700B	S2	C
	S2	H K	GEOG 746	S2	C	GEO THERM 689	S2	C	GREEK 702A	S1	C
GENPRAC 606	S1	H	GEOG 747	S1	C	GERMAN 101	S1	C	GREEK 702B	S2	C
GENPRAC 609A	S1	K	GEOG 748	S1	C		SS	C	GREEK 703A	S1	C
GENPRAC 609B	S2	K	GEOG 751	S2	C	GERMAN 102	S2	C	GREEK 703B	S2	C
GENPRAC 610	S2	H K	GEOG 752	S2	C	GERMAN 103	S2	C	GREEK 705A	S1	C
GENPRAC 611	S1	H K	GEOG 753	S1	C	GERMAN 104	S1	C	GREEK 705B	S2	C
GENPRAC 702	S1	K	GEOG 771	S2	C	GERMAN 120	S1	C	GREEK 713A	S1	C
GENPRAC 703	S2	H K	GEOG 772	S1	C	GERMAN 201	S1	C	GREEK 713B	S2	C
GENPRAC 704	S1	K	GEOG 773	S1	C		S2	C	GREEK 790A	S1	C
GENPRAC 705	S1	H K	GEOG 774	S2	C	GERMAN 210	S1	C	GREEK 790B	S2	C
GENPRAC 706	S2	H K	GEOG 789A	S1	C	GERMAN 211	S2	C	GREEK 797A	S1	C
GENPRAC 708	S2	H	GEOG 789B	S2	C	GERMAN 277	S1	V	GREEK 797B	S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
HERITAGE 200	S1	C	HLTHPSYC 744	S2	H	INDO 760B	S2	C		S2	C
HISTORY 91WA	S1	C	HLTHPSYC 745A	S1	H	INDO 770	S1	C		SS	C
HISTORY 91WB	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 745B	S2	H		S2	C	INTBUS 211	S1	C
HISTORY 101	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 756	S1	H	INDO 780A	S1	C		S2	C
HISTORY 102	S2	C	HLTHPSYC 757	S2	H	INDO 780B	S2	C	INTBUS 301	S2	C
HISTORY 103	S2	C	HLTHSCI 790A	S1	H	INDO 785	S1	C	INTBUS 302	S1	C
HISTORY 105	S1	C		S2	C	INDO 785A	S1	C	INTBUS 303	S2	C
HISTORY 109	S2	C	HLTHSCI 790B	S1	C	INDO 785B	S2	C	INTBUS 304	S1	C
HISTORY 122	S1	C M		S2	H	INDO 794A	S1	C	INTBUS 310	S2	C
HISTORY 123	S2	C	HLTHSOC 200	S2	C	INDO 794B	S2	C	INTBUS 312	S1	C
HISTORY 124	S1	C	HLTHSOC 300	S1	C	INDO 797A	S1	C	INTBUS 701	S1	C
HISTORY 140	S1	C	HPST 100	SS	C	INDO 797B	S2	C	INTBUS 702	S2	C
HISTORY 210	S2	C	HUMANBIO 99H	S1	H	INFOMGMT 191	S1	M S T	INTBUS 703	S1	C
HISTORY 218	S2	C	HUMANBIO 111	S1	C H		S2	M S T	INTBUS 704	S2	C
HISTORY 219	S1	C	HUMANBIO 122	S2	C	INFOMGMT 192	S1	M S T	INTBUS 705	S2	C
HISTORY 221	S1	C	HUMANBIO 142	S2	C H		S2	M S T	INTBUS 706	S1	C
HISTORY 222	S2	C	HUMANBIO 251	S1	H	INFOMGMT 291	S1	M S T	INTBUS 707	S1	C
HISTORY 226	S1	C	HUMANBIO 252	S2	H	INFOMGMT 292	S1	M S T	INTBUS 751	S1	C
HISTORY 227	S1	C	HUMANBIO 253	S1	H		S2	S T	INTBUS 752	S2	C
HISTORY 230	S2	C	HUMANBIO 254	S2	H	INFOMGMT 293	S1	S T	INTBUS 753	S1	C
HISTORY 231	S1	C	HUMANBIO 255	S1	H		S2	M S T	INTBUS 754	S2	C
HISTORY 235	S1	C	HUMANBIO 256	S2	H	INFOMGMT 294	S2	M S T	INTBUS 755	S1	C
HISTORY 240	S1	C	HUMANBIO 257	S1	H	INFOSYS 110	S1	C T	INTBUS 756	S2	C
HISTORY 241	S2	C	HUMANBIO 258	S2	H		S2	C T	INTBUS 757	S1	C
HISTORY 265	S2	C	HUMANBIO 351	S1	H		SS	C	INTBUS 758	S2	C
HISTORY 300	S2	C	HUMANBIO 352	S1	H	INFOSYS 220	S1	C	INTBUS 765A	S1	C
HISTORY 305	S1	C	HUMANBIO 353	S1	H		S2	C		S2	C
HISTORY 310	S2	C	HUMANBIO 354	S1	H	INFOSYS 222	S1	C	INTBUS 765B	S2	C
HISTORY 312	S1	C	HUMANBIO 355	S2	H		S2	C T	INTBUS 766	S2	C
HISTORY 315	S1	C	HUMANBIO 356	S2	H		SS	C	INTBUS 767A	S1	C
HISTORY 317	S1	C	HUMANBIO 357	S2	H	INFOSYS 223	S2	C	INTBUS 767B	S2	C
HISTORY 337	S2	C	HUMANBIO 358	S1	H	INFOSYS 224	S1	C T	INTBUS 768A	S1	C
HISTORY 346	S1	C	HUMANBIO 359	S2	H		S2	C	INTBUS 768B	S1	C
HISTORY 347	S2	C	HUMANBIO 360	S2	H	INFOSYS 320	S1	C		S2	C
HISTORY 348	S2	C	HUMANBIO 790A	S1	H		S2	C	INTBUS 789	S1	C
HISTORY 361	SS	C	HUMANBIO 790B	S2	H	INFOSYS 323	S1	C		S2	C
HISTORY 363	S2	C	INDO 135	S2	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 106	S1	C
HISTORY 364	S1	C	INDO 136	S1	C	INFOSYS 327	S1	C		SS	C
HISTORY 365	S2	C	INDO 138	S2	C	INFOSYS 328	S1	C	ITALIAN 107	S2	C
HISTORY 701A	S1	C	INDO 233	S2	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 111	S2	C
HISTORY 701B	S2	C	INDO 265	S2	C	INFOSYS 329	S1	C	ITALIAN 166	S1	K
HISTORY 705A	S1	C	INDO 277	S1	V		S2	C		S2	K
HISTORY 705B	S2	C		S2	V	INFOSYS 330	S1	C	ITALIAN 167	S1	K
HISTORY 708A	S1	C		SS	V		S2	C		S2	K
HISTORY 708B	S2	C	INDO 278	S1	V	INFOSYS 332	S1	C	ITALIAN 200	S1	C
HISTORY 710	S1	C		S2	V		S2	C	ITALIAN 201	S2	C
HISTORY 714A	S1	C		SS	V	INFOSYS 338	S1	C	ITALIAN 204	S1	C
HISTORY 714B	S2	C	INDO 299	S1	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 205	S2	C
HISTORY 720A	S1	C		S2	C	INFOSYS 339	S1	C	ITALIAN 232	S1	C
HISTORY 720B	S2	C	INDO 377	S1	V	INFOSYS 340A	S1	C	ITALIAN 277	S1	V
HISTORY 726A	S1	C		S2	V	INFOSYS 340B	S2	C		S2	V
HISTORY 726B	S2	C		SS	V	INFOSYS 720	S1	C		SS	V
HISTORY 733A	S1	C	INDO 378	S1	V	INFOSYS 722	S2	C	ITALIAN 278	S1	V
HISTORY 733B	S2	C		S2	V	INFOSYS 724	S1	C		S2	V
HISTORY 734A	S1	C		SS	V	INFOSYS 725	S2	C		SS	V
HISTORY 734B	S2	C	INDO 397	S1	C	INFOSYS 726	S1	C	ITALIAN 300	S1	C
HISTORY 760	S2	C		S2	C	INFOSYS 728	S2	C	ITALIAN 302	S2	C
HISTORY 760A	S1	C	INDO 398	S1	C	INFOSYS 730	S2	C	ITALIAN 331	S1	C
HISTORY 760B	S2	C		S2	C	INFOSYS 731	S1	C	ITALIAN 333	S2	C
HISTORY 761A	S1	C	INDO 399	S1	C	INFOSYS 732	S1	C	ITALIAN 377	S1	V
HISTORY 761B	S2	C		S2	C		S2	C		S2	V
HISTORY 780A	S1	C	INDO 700A	S1	C	INFOSYS 734	S2	C		SS	V
	S2	C	INDO 700B	S2	C	INFOSYS 735	S2	C	ITALIAN 378	S1	V
HISTORY 780B	S1	C	INDO 720A	S1	C	INFOSYS 736	S2	C		S2	V
	S2	C	INDO 720B	S2	C	INFOSYS 737	S1	C		SS	V
HISTORY 792A	S1	C	INDO 729A	S1	C	INFOSYS 750	S1	C	ITALIAN 700A	S1	C
HISTORY 792B	S2	C	INDO 729B	S2	C	INFOSYS 751	S2	C	ITALIAN 700B	S2	C
HISTORY 797A	S1	C	INDO 740A	S1	C	INFOSYS 789	S1	C	ITALIAN 701	S2	C
HISTORY 797B	S2	C	INDO 740B	S2	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 702	S2	C
HLTHMGT 790A	S1	H	INDO 745A	S1	C	INFOSYS 794A	S1	C	ITALIAN 705	S1	C
HLTHMGT 790B	S2	H	INDO 745B	S2	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 707	S2	C
HLTHPSYC 102	S1	C H	INDO 749A	S1	C	INFOSYS 794B	S1	C	ITALIAN 711	S2	C
HLTHPSYC 714	S1	H	INDO 749B	S2	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 712	S1	C
HLTHPSYC 715	S2	H	INDO 750A	S1	C	INFOSYS 795	S1	C	ITALIAN 713	S2	C
HLTHPSYC 716	S1	H	INDO 750B	S2	C	INTBUS 202	S1	C	ITALIAN 732	S2	C
HLTHPSYC 742A	S1	H	INDO 759A	S1	C		S2	C	ITALIAN 780	S2	C
HLTHPSYC 742B	S2	H	INDO 759B	S2	C		SS	C	ITALIAN 780A	S1	C
HLTHPSYC 743	S1	H	INDO 760A	S1	C	INTBUS 210	S1	C	ITALIAN 780B	S2	C

2002 Course Availability  
 Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change.  
 For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
ITALIAN 792A	S1	C	KOREAN 278	S1	V		S2	C	LAW 434	S2	C
ITALIAN 792B	S2	C		S2	V	LATIN 300	S1	C	LAW 435	S1	C
ITALIAN 794A	S1	C		SS	V	LATIN 301	S2	C	LAW 438	S1	C
ITALIAN 794B	S2	C	KOREAN 300A	S1	C	LATIN 302	S1	C	LAW 441	S2	C
ITALIAN 797A	S1	C	KOREAN 300B	S2	C	LATIN 305	S2	C	LAW 444	S1	C
ITALIAN 797B	S2	C	KOREAN 301A	S1	C	LATIN 700A	S1	C	LAW 445	S2	C
JAPANESE 130	S1	C	KOREAN 301B	S2	C	LATIN 700B	S2	C	LAW 446	S1	C
JAPANESE 131	S2	C	KOREAN 302A	S1	C	LATIN 701A	S1	C	LAW 447	S1	C
	SS	C	KOREAN 302B	S2	C	LATIN 701B	S2	C		S2	C
JAPANESE 131A	S1	C	KOREAN 304	S2	C	LATIN 702A	S1	C	LAW 448	S2	C
JAPANESE 131B	S2	C	KOREAN 340	S2	C	LATIN 702B	S2	C	LAW 450	S1	C
JAPANESE 150	S2	C	KOREAN 377	S1	V	LATIN 703A	S1	C	LAW 451	S2	C
JAPANESE 222A	S1	C		S2	V	LATIN 703B	S2	C	LAW 452	S2	C
JAPANESE 222B	S2	C		SS	V	LATIN 705A	S1	C	LAW 454	S2	C
JAPANESE 231	S1	C	KOREAN 378	S1	V	LATIN 705B	S2	C	LAW 456	S1	C
JAPANESE 232	S2	C		S2	V	LATIN 712A	S1	C		S2	C
JAPANESE 240	S2	C		SS	V	LATIN 712B	S2	C		SS	C
JAPANESE 270	S1	C	KOREAN 708	S1	C	LATIN 790A	S1	C	LAW 457	S1	C
JAPANESE 277	S1	V	KOREAN 709	S2	C	LATIN 790B	S2	C	LAW 458	S1	C
	S2	V	KOREAN 710A	S1	C	LATIN 797A	S1	C		S2	C
	SS	V	KOREAN 710B	S2	C	LATIN 797B	S2	C	LAW 459	S1	C
JAPANESE 278	S1	V	KOREAN 797A	S1	C	LATINAM 201	S2	C	LAW 480	S1	C
JAPANESE 307	S2	C	KOREAN 797B	S2	C	LAW 101A	S1	C	LAW 482	S2	C
JAPANESE 322	S2	C	LANGLIT 797A	S1	C	LAW 101B	S2	C	LAW 483	S1	C
JAPANESE 331	S1	C	LANGLIT 797B	S2	C	LAW 201A	S1	C	LAW 484	S2	C
JAPANESE 332	S2	C	LANGTCHG 202	S1	C	LAW 201B	S2	C	LAW 499	S1	C
JAPANESE 341	S1	C	LANGTCHG 300	S1	C	LAW 211A	S1	C		S2	C
JAPANESE 377	S1	V	LANGTCHG 301	S2	C	LAW 211B	S2	C	LAW 499A	S1	C
	S2	V	LANGTCHG 302	S2	C	LAW 221A	S1	C	LAW 499B	S2	C
	SS	V	LANGTCHG 704	S1	C	LAW 221B	S2	C	LAW 690A	S1	C
JAPANESE 378	S1	V		S2	C	LAW 231A	S1	C	LAW 690B	S2	C
	S2	V	LANGTCHG 706	S2	C	LAW 231B	S2	C	LAW 715	S1	C
	SS	V	LANGTCHG 709	S1	C	LAW 241A	S1	C	LAW 722	S2	C
JAPANESE 381	S1	C	LANGTCHG 710	S1	C	LAW 241B	S2	C	LAW 725	S2	C
JAPANESE 390	S2	C		S2	C	LAW 251A	S1	C	LAW 727	S2	C
JAPANESE 704	S1	C	LANGTCHG 711	S2	C	LAW 251B	S2	C	LAW 728	S1	C
JAPANESE 705	S2	C	LANGTCHG 712	S1	C	LAW 301A	S1	C	LAW 729	S2	C
JAPANESE 720A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 713	S1	C	LAW 301B	S2	C	LAW 730	S1	C
JAPANESE 720B	S2	C		S2	C	LAW 306A	S1	C	LAW 732	S1	C
JAPANESE 721A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 714	S1	C	LAW 306B	S2	C	LAW 735	S2	C
JAPANESE 721B	S2	C		S2	C	LAW 311	S1	C	LAW 739	S2	C
JAPANESE 722A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 720	S1	C		S2	C	LAW 756	S2	C
JAPANESE 722B	S2	C		S2	C	LAW 316A	S1	C	LAW 776	S1	C
JAPANESE 723A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 721	S1	C	LAW 316B	S2	C	LAW 777	S1	C
JAPANESE 723B	S2	C		S2	C	LAW 346A	S1	C	LAW 779	S1	C
JAPANESE 742	S1	C	LANGTCHG 722	S1	C	LAW 346B	S2	C	LAW 788	S1	C
JAPANESE 742A	S1	C		S2	C	LAW 361A	S1	C	LAW 789	S1	C
JAPANESE 742B	S2	C	LANGTCHG 723	S2	C	LAW 361B	S2	C		S2	C
JAPANESE 743	S1	C	LANGTCHG 724	S2	C	LAW 368B	S2	C		SS	C
	S2	C		SS	C	LAW 383A	S1	C	LAW 790	S1	C
JAPANESE 744A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 726	S1	C	LAW 383B	S2	C		S2	C
JAPANESE 744B	S2	C	LANGTCHG 727	S2	C	LAW 384A	S1	C		SS	C
JAPANESE 745	S1	C	LANGTCHG 728	S1	C	LAW 384B	S2	C	LAW 795	S1	C
	S2	C	LANGTCHG 729	S2	C	LAW 402	S2	C	LAW 797A	S1	C
JAPANESE 746A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 730	S1	C	LAW 406	S2	C		S2	C
JAPANESE 746B	S2	C		S2	C	LAW 410	S1	C	LAW 797B	S2	C
JAPANESE 747A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 790A	S1	C	LAW 413	S2	C	LINGUIST 100	S2	C
JAPANESE 747B	S2	C		S2	C	LAW 414	S2	C	LINGUIST 101	S1	C
JAPANESE 751	S1	C	LANGTCHG 790B	S1	C	LAW 415	S1	C	LINGUIST 102	S1	C
JAPANESE 790A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 103	S1	C
JAPANESE 790B	S2	C	LANGTCHG 792A	S1	C	LAW 417	S1	C	LINGUIST 200	S1	C
JAPANESE 794A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 201	S2	C
JAPANESE 794B	S2	C	LANGTCHG 792B	S1	C	LAW 419	S2	C	LINGUIST 202	S2	C
JAPANESE 797A	S1	C		S2	C	LAW 420	S2	C	LINGUIST 203	S2	C
JAPANESE 797B	S2	C	LANGTCHG 794A	S1	C	LAW 421	S2	C	LINGUIST 205	S1	C
KOREAN 100A	S1	C		S2	C	LAW 422	S1	C	LINGUIST 300	S2	C
KOREAN 100B	S2	C	LANGTCHG 794B	S1	C	LAW 423	S1	C	LINGUIST 301	S1	C
KOREAN 103	SS	V		S2	C	LAW 425	S1	C	LINGUIST 302	S1	C
KOREAN 120	S1	C	LANGTCHG 797A	S1	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 303	S1	C
KOREAN 200A	S1	C	LANGTCHG 797B	S2	C	LAW 426	S1	C	LINGUIST 305	S2	C
KOREAN 200B	S2	C	LATIN 100	S1	C	LAW 427	S2	C	LINGUIST 306	S2	C
KOREAN 201A	S1	C	LATIN 101	S2	C	LAW 428	S1	C	LINGUIST 307	S2	C
KOREAN 201B	S2	C	LATIN 200	S1	C	LAW 429	S1	C	LINGUIST 308	S2	C
KOREAN 230	S2	C	LATIN 201	S2	C	LAW 430	S1	C	LINGUIST 310	S1	C
KOREAN 240	S1	C	LATIN 202	S1	C	LAW 431	S1	C		S2	C
KOREAN 277	S1	V	LATIN 203	S2	C		S2	C	LINGUIST 310A	S1	C
	S2	V	LATIN 204	S1	C	LAW 432	S2	C	LINGUIST 310B	S2	C
	SS	V	LATIN 205	S1	C	LAW 433	S1	C	LINGUIST 708A	S1	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
LINGUIST 708B	S2	C	MATHS 91WB	S2	C	MATHS 692A	S1	CT	MECHENG 413	S2	C
LINGUIST 709	S1	C	MATHS 92WA	S1	C	MATHS 692B	S2	CT	MECHENG 421	S1	C
LINGUIST 720	S1	C	MATHS 92WB	S2	C	MATHS 693	S1	CT	MECHENG 423	S2	C
LINGUIST 722	S1	C	MATHS 101	S1	C		S2	CT	MECHENG 431A	S1	C
LINGUIST 724	S2	C		S2	C M	MATHS 693A	S1	CT	MECHENG 431B	S2	C
LINGUIST 726	S1	C	MATHS 102	S1	C	MATHS 693B	S2	CT	MECHENG 441	S1	C
LINGUIST 729	S2	C		S2	C	MATHS 701	S2	C	MECHENG 443	S2	C
LINGUIST 731	S2	C		SS	C	MATHS 703	S1	C	MECHENG 451	S1	C
LINGUIST 734	S2	C	MATHS 108	S1	CT	MATHS 705	S2	C	MECHENG 461A	S1	C
LINGUIST 740	S1	C		S2	CT	MATHS 707	S1	C	MECHENG 461B	S2	C
LINGUIST 741	S1	C		SS	C		SS	C	MECHENG 701	S1	C
	S2	C	MATHS 109	S2	T	MATHS 708	S1	C	MECHENG 702	S2	C
LINGUIST 790	S1	C	MATHS 130	S1	C		SS	C	MECHENG 711	S1	C
	S2	C	MATHS 151	S1	C	MATHS 709	S2	C	MECHENG 714	S1	C
LINGUIST 790A	S1	C		S2	C		SS	C	MECHENG 716	S2	C
	S2	C	MATHS 152	S1	C	MATHS 710	S2	C	MECHENG 718	S1	C
LINGUIST 790B	S1	C		S2	C		SS	C	MECHENG 721	S1	C
	S2	C	MATHS 153B	S1	C	MATHS 711A	S1	C	MECHENG 723	S2	C
LINGUIST 794A	S1	C		S2	C	MATHS 711B	S2	C	MECHENG 729	S2	C
	S2	C	MATHS 162	S1	C	MATHS 712	S1	C	MECHENG 732	S2	C
LINGUIST 794B	S1	C		S2	CT	MATHS 713	S1	C	MECHENG 741	S1	C
	S2	C	MATHS 202	S1	C	MATHS 714	S1	C	MECHENG 742	S2	C
LINGUIST 797A	S1	C	MATHS 208	S1	CT	MATHS 715	S2	C	MECHENG 751	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	C	MATHS 720	S1	C	MECHENG 753	S2	C
LINGUIST 797B	S1	C		SS	C	MATHS 721	S2	C	MECHENG 758	S1	C
	S2	C	MATHS 210A	S1	C	MATHS 730	S1	C	MECHENG 759	S2	C
LOGICOMP 701	S1	C	MATHS 210B	S2	C	MATHS 731	S2	C	MECHENG 787	S1	C
	S2	C	MATHS 230	S2	C	MATHS 735	S1	C		S2	C
LOGICOMP 780	S1	C	MATHS 253	S1	C	MATHS 737	S2	C	MECHENG 788A	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	CT	MATHS 740	S1	C	MECHENG 788B	S2	C
LOGICOMP 780A	S1	C	MATHS 255	S1	C	MATHS 745	S2	C	MECHENG 789	S1	C
LOGICOMP 780B	S2	C		S2	C	MATHS 747	S2	C		S2	C
MANAGEMENT 712A	S1	C	MATHS 260	S1	C	MATHS 750	S1	C	MECHENG 790	S1	C
MANAGEMENT 712B	S2	C		S2	C	MATHS 757	S2	C		S2	C
MANAGEMENT 713A	S1	C	MATHS 267	S2	T	MATHS 761	S2	C	MEDEMS 700	S1	C
MANAGEMENT 713B	S2	C	MATHS 270	S1	C	MATHS 763	S1	C	MEDEMS 780	S1	C
MAORI 101	S1	C	MATHS 302	S1	C	MATHS 770	S2	C		S2	C
	S2	C	MATHS 307	S1	C	MATHS 775	S1	C	MEDEMS 780A	S1	C
MAORI 103	S1	C	MATHS 308	S2	C	MATHS 781	S1	C	MEDEMS 780B	S2	C
MAORI 106	S1	C	MATHS 310	S2	C	MATHS 782	S1	C	MEDEMS 797A	S1	C
MAORI 130	S1	C	MATHS 315	S2	C	MATHS 783	S2	C	MEDEMS 797B	S2	C
MAORI 190	S1	C	MATHS 320	S2	C	MATHS 784	S2	C	MEDICINE 601	S1	H
MAORI 191	S2	C	MATHS 322	S1	C	MATHS 786	S1	C	MEDICINE 602	S1	H
MAORI 201	S2	C	MATHS 326	S1	C	MATHS 787	S2	C	MEDICINE 603	S2	H
MAORI 203	S2	C	MATHS 328	S1	C	MATHS 788	S1	T	MEDICINE 604A	S1	H
MAORI 206	S2	C	MATHS 330	S1	C	MATHS 789	S2	T	MEDICINE 604B	S2	H
MAORI 230	S2	C	MATHS 331	S2	C	MATHS 791	S1	CT	MEDICINE 605A	S1	H
MAORI 240	S1	C	MATHS 335	S2	C	MATHS 792	S1	CT	MEDICINE 605B	S2	H
	SS	C	MATHS 340	S1	C	MATHS 793	S2	CT	MEDICINE 606A	S1	H
	S2	C		S2	C	MATHS 794	S2	CT	MEDICINE 606B	S2	H
MAORI 292	S2	C	MATHS 345	S2	C	MATHS 795A	S1	CT	MEDICINE 607A	S1	H
MAORI 301	S2	C	MATHS 347	S1	T	MATHS 795B	S2	CT	MEDICINE 607B	S2	H
MAORI 302	S1	C	MATHS 353	S1	C	MATHS 797A	S1	CT	MEDICINE 703	S1	H
MAORI 310	S1	C	MATHS 361	S1	C	MATHS 797B	S2	CT		S2	H
MAORI 330	S1	C	MATHS 362	S2	C	MBCHB 401A	S1	H	MEDICINE 713	S1	H
	S2	C	MATHS 367	S2	T	MBCHB 401B	S2	H	MEDSCI 691A	S1	H
MAORI 335	S1	C	MATHS 370	S2	C	MBCHB 501A	S1	H	MEDSCI 691B	S2	H
MAORI 340	S1	C	MATHS 372A	S1	T	MBCHB 501B	S2	H	MEDSCI 790A	S1	H
MAORI 342	S2	C	MATHS 372A	S1	T	MBCHB 551A	S1	H	MEDSCI 790B	S2	H
MAORI 393	S1	C	MATHS 372B	S2	T	MBCHB 551B	S2	H	MGCARE 701A	S1	H
MAORI 700	S2	C	MATHS 381	S1	T				MGCARE 701B	S2	H
MAORI 711	S1	C	MATHS 382	S1	C	MECHENG 211	S2	C	MGCARE 702A	S1	H
MAORI 712	S2	C		S2	C	MECHENG 222	S2	C	MGCARE 702B	S2	H
MAORI 713	S2	C	MATHS 383	S2	C	MECHENG 232	S1	C	MGCARE 703A	S1	H
MAORI 731	S1	C	MATHS 384	S2	C	MECHENG 233	S1	C	MGCARE 703B	S2	H
MAORI 741A	S1	C	MATHS 386	S1	C	MECHENG 242	S1	C	MGCARE 704A	S1	H
MAORI 741B	S2	C	MATHS 387	S1	C	MECHENG 311	S1	C	MGCARE 704B	S2	H
MAORI 743	S1	C	MATHS 388	S2	C	MECHENG 322	S2	C	MGCARE 705A	S1	H
MAORI 785	S1	C	MATHS 389	S2	C	MECHENG 324	S1	C	MGCARE 705B	S2	H
	S2	C	MATHS 690	S1	CT	MECHENG 332	S1	C	MGCARE 706A	S1	H
	S1	C		S2	CT	MECHENG 333	S2	C	MGCARE 706B	S2	H
MAORI 785A	S1	C		S2	CT	MECHENG 341	S1	C	MGMT 101	S1	C
MAORI 785B	S2	C	MATHS 690A	S1	CT	MECHENG 342	S2	C		S2	C
MAORI 792A	S1	C	MATHS 690B	S2	CT	MECHENG 351	S2	C		SS	C
MAORI 792B	S2	C	MATHS 691	S1	CT	MECHENG 402	S2	C	MGMT 191	S1	M ST
MAORI 797A	S1	C		S2	CT	MECHENG 411	S1	C		S2	M ST
MAORI 797B	S2	C	MATHS 691A	S1	CT	MECHENG 412	S2	C		S1	M ST
MARINE 202	S1	C	MATHS 691B	S2	CT						
MARKET 713	S2	C	MATHS 692	S1	CT						
MATHS 91WA	S1	C		S2	CT						

2002 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
MGMT 201	S2	M S T	MKTG 710	S1	C	MUSED 160	S1	C	MUSIC 225B	S2	C
	S1	C	MKTG 716	S1	C	MUSED 164A	S1	C	MUSIC 227A	S1	C
	S2	C	MKTG 718	S1	C	MUSED 164B	S2	C	MUSIC 227B	S2	C
MGMT 211	SS	C	MKTG 719	S1	C	MUSED 260	S1	C	MUSIC 232	S1	C
	S1	C		S2	C	MUSED 264A	S1	C	MUSIC 233	S2	C
	S2	C	MKTG 789	S1	C	MUSED 264B	S2	C	MUSIC 234	S1	C
MGMT 212	SS	C		S2	C	MUSED 267	S1	C	MUSIC 235	S2	C
	S1	C	MKTG 790A	S1	C	MUSED 360	S2	C	MUSIC 236	S1	C
	S2	C	MKTG 790B	S2	C	MUSED 366	S1	C	MUSIC 237	S2	C
MGMT 223	S1	C	MOLMED 201	S1	H	MUSED 367	S1	C	MUSIC 238	S1	C
	S2	C	MOLMED 701	S1	H	MUSED 466	S1	C	MUSIC 239	S2	C
MGMT 231	S1	C	MOLMED 707	S1	H	MUSIC 100	S1	C	MUSIC 242	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	H		SS	C	MUSIC 244	S2	C
MGMT 232	S2	C	MOLMED 708	S2	H	MUSIC 102A	S1	C	MUSIC 245	S2	C
MGMT 291	S1	M S T	MOLMED 710	S2	H	MUSIC 102B	S2	C	MUSIC 246	S2	C
MGMT 301	S1	C	MOLMED 711	S1	H	MUSIC 103A	S1	C	MUSIC 250	S1	C
	S2	C	MOLMED 712	S1	H	MUSIC 103B	S2	C	MUSIC 251	S1	C
MGMT 302	S1	C	MPHEALTH 10H	S1	H	MUSIC 106A	S1	C	MUSIC 272	S2	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 11H	S1	H	MUSIC 106B	S2	C	MUSIC 273	S1	C
MGMT 303	S2	C	MPHEALTH 11HA	S1	C	MUSIC 109	S2	C	MUSIC 280A	S1	C
MGMT 310A	S1	C		S2	H	MUSIC 110A	S1	C	MUSIC 280B	S2	C
MGMT 310B	S2	C	MPHEALTH 11HB	S2	C	MUSIC 110B	S2	C	MUSIC 284A	S1	C
MGMT 311	S1	C	MPHEALTH 12H	S1	C H	MUSIC 120A	S1	C	MUSIC 284B	S2	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 13H	S2	H	MUSIC 120B	S2	C	MUSIC 286A	S1	C
MGMT 313	S1	C	MPHEALTH 14H	S2	H	MUSIC 121A	S1	C	MUSIC 286B	S2	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 15H	S1	C	MUSIC 121B	S2	C	MUSIC 288A	S1	C
MGMT 315	S1	C	MPHEALTH 16H	S2	C	MUSIC 123	S1	C	MUSIC 288B	S2	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 17H	S1	H	MUSIC 124	S2	C	MUSIC 290A	S1	C
MGMT 316	S2	C	MPHEALTH 201	S2	H	MUSIC 125A	S1	C	MUSIC 290B	S2	C
MGMT 321	S1	C	MPHEALTH 710	S1	H	MUSIC 125B	S2	C	MUSIC 301A	S1	C
MGMT 322	S2	C	MPHEALTH 711	S2	H	MUSIC 127A	S1	C	MUSIC 301B	S2	C
MGMT 323	S1	C	MPHEALTH 712	S1	H	MUSIC 127B	S2	C	MUSIC 302A	S1	C
	S2	C	MPHEALTH 713	S2	H	MUSIC 132	S1	C	MUSIC 302B	S2	C
MGMT 326	S2	C	MPHEALTH 715	S1	H	MUSIC 133	S2	C	MUSIC 306A	S1	C
	S1	C	MPHEALTH 716	S1	H	MUSIC 134	S1	C	MUSIC 306B	S2	C
MGMT 331	S2	C	MPHEALTH 717	S1	H	MUSIC 135	S2	C	MUSIC 310	S1	C
MGMT 332	S2	C	MPHEALTH 720	S2	H	MUSIC 136	S1	C	MUSIC 311	S2	C
MGMT 335	S1	C	MPHEALTH 721	S2	H	MUSIC 137	S2	C	MUSIC 316A	S1	C
MGMT 337	S1	C	MPHEALTH 722	S2	H	MUSIC 141	S1	C	MUSIC 316B	S2	C
MGMT 338	S1	C	MPHEALTH 723	S2	H	MUSIC 144	S2	C	MUSIC 320A	S1	C
	SS	C	MPHEALTH 726	S2	H	MUSIC 145	S1	C	MUSIC 320B	S2	C
MGMT 339	S2	C	MPTHEO 101	S1	B	MUSIC 154	S2	C	MUSIC 321A	S1	C
	S1	C	MPTHEO 102	S2	C	MUSIC 180A	S1	C	MUSIC 321B	S2	C
MGMT 740	S2	C	MPTHEO 103	S1	J	MUSIC 180B	S2	C	MUSIC 323	S1	C
MGMT 741	S1	C	MPTHEO 171	S1	J	MUSIC 182A	S1	C	MUSIC 324	S2	C
MGMT 789	S2	C	MPTHEO 172	S1	J	MUSIC 182B	S2	C	MUSIC 325A	S1	C
	S1	C	MPTHEO 173	S1	J	MUSIC 184A	S1	C	MUSIC 325B	S2	C
MGMT 790A	S2	C	MPTHEO 176	S1	J	MUSIC 184B	S2	C	MUSIC 327A	S1	C
MGMT 790B	S1	C	MPTHEO 201	S2	B	MUSIC 186A	S1	C	MUSIC 327B	S2	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 203	S1	J	MUSIC 186B	S2	C	MUSIC 332	S1	C
MKTG 201	SS	C	MPTHEO 204	S1	T	MUSIC 187A	S1	C	MUSIC 333	S2	C
MKTG 202	S1	C		S2	T	MUSIC 187B	S2	C	MUSIC 334	S1	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 206	S2	J	MUSIC 188	S1	C	MUSIC 335	S2	C
MKTG 291	SS	C	MPTHEO 243	S2	C	MUSIC 189	S2	C	MUSIC 336	S1	C
	S1	S T	MPTHEO 272	S2	J	MUSIC 190A	S1	C	MUSIC 337	S2	C
MKTG 292	S2	M S T	MPTHEO 273	S1	J	MUSIC 190B	S2	C	MUSIC 338	S1	C
	S2	M S T		S2	J	MUSIC 201A	S1	C	MUSIC 339	S2	C
MKTG 293	S2	M S T	MPTHEO 274	S1	B	MUSIC 201B	S2	C	MUSIC 342	S1	C
MKTG 301	S1	C	MPTHEO 277	S1	J	MUSIC 202A	S1	C	MUSIC 344	S2	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 281	S1	C	MUSIC 202B	S2	C	MUSIC 346	S2	C
MKTG 302	S2	C	MPTHEO 301	S2	J	MUSIC 203A	S1	C	MUSIC 348	S1	C
MKTG 303	S1	C	MPTHEO 302	S1	J	MUSIC 203B	S2	C	MUSIC 350	S2	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 306	S1	J	MUSIC 206A	S1	C	MUSIC 351	S1	C
MKTG 305	S1	C	MPTHEO 341	S2	C	MUSIC 206B	S2	C	MUSIC 357	S1	C
MKTG 306	S1	C	MPTHEO 371	S2	J	MUSIC 210	S1	C	MUSIC 358	S1	C
	S2	C	MPTHEO 372	S2	J	MUSIC 211	S2	C	MUSIC 380A	S1	C
MKTG 307	S2	C	MPTHEO 383	S2	T	MUSIC 214A	S1	C	MUSIC 380B	S2	C
MKTG 311	S2	C	MPTHEO 386	S1	C	MUSIC 214B	S2	C	MUSIC 381A	S1	C
MKTG 312	S1	C	MPTHEO 387	S1	C	MUSIC 216A	S1	C	MUSIC 381B	S2	C
MKTG 701	S1	C	MPTHEO 701	S2	J	MUSIC 216B	S2	C	MUSIC 385A	S1	C
MKTG 702	S2	C	MPTHEO 702	S2	T	MUSIC 220A	S1	C	MUSIC 385B	S2	C
MKTG 703	S1	C	MPTHEO 703	S1	J	MUSIC 220B	S2	C	MUSIC 386A	S1	C
MKTG 704	S2	C	MPTHEO 704	S1	J	MUSIC 221A	S1	C	MUSIC 386B	S2	C
MKTG 705	S1	C	MPTHEO 781	S1	J	MUSIC 221B	S2	C	MUSIC 388A	S1	C
MKTG 706	S2	C	MPTHEO 795A	S1	T	MUSIC 223	S1	C	MUSIC 388B	S2	C
MKTG 708	S2	C		S2	T	MUSIC 224	S2	C	MUSIC 390A	S1	C
MKTG 709	S2	C	MPTHEO 795B	S2	T	MUSIC 225A	S1	C	MUSIC 390B	S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
MUSIC 396A	S1	C	NURSING 725	S2	H	OPTOM 330A	S1	H	PERFORM 700	S2	C
MUSIC 396B	S2	C	NURSING 797A	S1	H	OPTOM 330B	S2	H	PERFORM 720A	S1	C
MUSIC 625A	S1	C				OPTOM 340A	S1	H	PERFORM 720B	S2	C
MUSIC 625B	S2	C	NURSING 797B	S1	H	OPTOM 340B	S2	H	PERFORM 721A	S1	C
MUSIC 626A	S1	C				OPTOM 350A	S1	H	PERFORM 721B	S2	C
MUSIC 626B	S2	C	NUTRN 700	S1	H	OPTOM 350B	S2	H	PERFORM 725	S1	C
MUSIC 627A	S1	C	NUTRN 701	S2	H	OPTOM 360A	S1	H	PERFORM 726	S2	C
MUSIC 627B	S2	C	NUTRN 702	S1	H	OPTOM 360B	S2	H	PHARMACY 101	S2	H
MUSIC 701	S1	C	NUTRN 703	S1	H	OPTOM 370A	S1	H	PHARMACY 201	S2	H
MUSIC 702	S2	C				OPTOM 370B	S2	H	PHARMACY 202	S1	H
MUSIC 710A	S1	C	NUTRN 704	S2	H	OPTOM 410A	S1	H			
MUSIC 710B	S2	C	OBSTGYN 351	S1	H	OPTOM 410B	S2	H	PHARMACY 301	S2	H
MUSIC 714A	S1	C	OBSTGYN 601A	S1	K	OPTOM 420A	S1	H	PHARMACY 302A	S1	H
MUSIC 714B	S2	C				OPTOM 420B	S2	H	PHARMACY 302B	S2	H
MUSIC 715A	S1	C	OBSTGYN 601B	S1	H	OPTOM 461A	S1	H	PHARMACY 303	S1	H
MUSIC 715B	S2	C				OPTOM 461B	S2	H	PHARMACY 700	S2	H
MUSIC 722	S1	C	OBSTGYN 705	S1	H	OPTOM 470A	S1	H	PHARMACY 710	S1	H
MUSIC 723	S2	C				OPTOM 470B	S2	H	PHARMACY 711	S2	H
MUSIC 738	S1	C	OBSTGYN 706	S1	H	OPTOM 480A	S1	H	PHARMACY 730	S1	H
MUSIC 739	S2	C	OBSTGYN 707	S2	H	OPTOM 480B	S2	H	PHARMACY 731	S2	H
MUSIC 744A	S1	C	OPSMAN 613	SS	C	OPTOM 680	S2	H	PHARMACY 740	S2	H
MUSIC 744B	S2	C	OPSMGT 255	S1	C	OPTOM 691A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 201	S2	H
MUSIC 745A	S1	C				OPTOM 691B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 301	S1	H
MUSIC 745B	S2	C				OPTOM 711A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 302	S1	H
MUSIC 746	S1	C	OPSMGT 256	S1	C	OPTOM 711B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 303	S2	H
MUSIC 747	S2	C				OPTOM 750A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 304	S2	H
MUSIC 750A	S1	C	OPSMGT 257	S1	C	OPTOM 750B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 305	S2	H
MUSIC 750B	S2	C				OPTOM 754A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 306	S1	H
MUSIC 751A	S1	C	OPSMGT 333	S2	C	OPTOM 754B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 690A	S1	H
			OPSMGT 370	S1	C	OPTOM 756A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 690B	S2	H
MUSIC 751B	S1	C				OPTOM 756B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 691A	S1	H
			OPSMGT 371	S2	C	OPTOM 757A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 691B	S2	H
MUSIC 752	S1	C	OPSMGT 382	S1	C	OPTOM 757B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 710	S1	H
MUSIC 757A	S1	C	OPSMGT 740	S1	C	OPTOM 758A	S1	H			
MUSIC 757B	S2	C				OPTOM 758B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 711	S1	H
MUSIC 758	S1	C	OPSMGT 752	S2	C	OPTOM 770A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 712	S1	H
MUSIC 759	S2	C	OPSMGT 760	S1	C	OPTOM 770B	S2	H	PHARMCOL 713	S1	H
MUSIC 760	S1	C	OPSMGT 761	S1	C	PACIFIC 103	S2	C	PHARMCOL 716	S1	H
MUSIC 767	S2	C	OPSMGT 762	S2	C	PACIFIC 201	S1	C	PHARMCOL 717	S1	H
MUSIC 789A	S1	C	OPSMGT 763	S2	C	PACIFIC 203	S1	C	PHARMCOL 719	S1	H
MUSIC 789B	S2	C	OPSMGT 765	S2	C	PACIFIC 204	S2	C	PHARMCOL 721	S2	H
MUSIC 792A	S1	C	OPSMGT 780	S1	C	PACIFIC 300	S1	C	PHARMCOL 722	S2	H
MUSIC 792B	S2	C	OPSMGT 781	S2	C	PACIFIC 700	S2	C	PHARMCOL 723	S2	H
MUSIC 795A	S1	C	OPSMGT 782	S1	C	PACIFIC 701	S1	C	PHARMCOL 726	S2	H
MUSIC 795B	S2	C	OPSMGT 783	S2	C	PACIFIC 702	S2	C	PHARMCOL 727	S2	H
MUSIC 797A	S1	C	OPSMGT 789	S1	C	PACIFIC 792A	S1	C	PHARMCOL 728	S2	H
MUSIC 797B	S2	C				PACIFIC 792B	S2	C	PHARMCOL 729	S2	H
NEWVENT 604	S1	C	OPSMGT 794A	S1	C	PACIFIC 797A	S1	C	PHARMCOL 789	S2	H
NURSING 101	S2	H				PACIFIC 797B	S2	C	PHARMCOL 789A	S1	H
NURSING 102	S2	H	OPSMGT 794B	S1	C	PAEDS 601A	S1	H	PHARMCOL 789B	S2	C
NURSING 104	S1	H				PAEDS 601B	S2	H	PHIL 100	S2	C
NURSING 201	S1	H	OPSMGT 795	S1	C	PAEDS 704	S2	H	PHIL 101	S1	CT
NURSING 202	S2	H	OPSRES 385	S2	C	PAEDS 711A	S1	K			
NURSING 301	S1	H	OPSRES 392	S1	C	PAEDS 711B	S2	K	PHIL 102	S1	CMT
NURSING 302	S2	H	OPSRES 784	S1	C	PAEDS 712	S1	K			
NURSING 701	S1	K	OPSRES 785	S2	C	PAEDS 713	S1	H K	PHIL 103	S2	C
			OPSRES 786	S2	C	PAEDS 714	S2	H K	PHIL 105	S1	C
NURSING 704	S1	H	OPSRES 789	S1	C	PAEDS 715	S2	H K			
						PAEDS 718	S2	H K			
NURSING 705	S1	Z	OPSRES 794A	S1	C	PAEDS 719	S1	H	PHIL 152	S1	C
			OPSRES 794B	S1	C				PHIL 200	S1	C
NURSING 706	S1	H				PATHOL 251	S1	C H	PHIL 201	S2	C
NURSING 708	S1	H	OPTOM 110	S2	C	PATHOL 301	S2	C	PHIL 204	S1	C
NURSING 709	S2	H	OPTOM 150A	S1	C	PATHOL 302	S2	H	PHIL 205	S2	C
NURSING 710	S2	H	OPTOM 150B	S2	H	PATHOL 303	S2	H	PHIL 207	S1	C
NURSING 711	S1	H	OPTOM 160	S1	C	PATHOL 703	S2	H	PHIL 208	S2	C
NURSING 712	S1	H	OPTOM 170	S1	C	PATHOL 704	S2	H	PHIL 209	S2	C
NURSING 713	S2	H	OPTOM 211A	S1	H	PATHOL 705	S1	H	PHIL 210	S2	C
NURSING 714	S1	H	OPTOM 211B	S2	H	PERFORM 601A	S1	C	PHIL 211	S1	C
			OPTOM 231	S1	C	PERFORM 601B	S2	C	PHIL 212	S1	C
NURSING 719	S1	H	OPTOM 251A	S1	H	PERFORM 651A	S1	C	PHIL 213	S1	C
			OPTOM 251B	S2	H	PERFORM 651B	S2	C	PHIL 214	S2	C
NURSING 720	S1	Z	OPTOM 260A	S1	H	PERFORM 652	S1	C	PHIL 215	S2	C
			OPTOM 260B	S2	H	PERFORM 653	S2	C	PHIL 216	S1	C
NURSING 722	S2	H	OPTOM 270	S2	C	PERFORM 660	S1	C	PHIL 219	S2	C
NURSING 723	S2	H	OPTOM 311A	S1	H	PERFORM 662	S1	C	PHIL 250	S1	C
NURSING 724	S1	H	OPTOM 311B	S2	H	PERFORM 663	S2	C			

2002 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/n/Deva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
PHIL 260	S2	C	PHYSICS 240	S1	C				PLANNING 730	S1	C
PHIL 261	S2	C	PHYSICS 243	S1	T				PLANNING 732	S2	C
PHIL 263	S1	C	PHYSICS 250	S2	C	PLANNING 137	S1	C	PLANNING 733	S2	C
PHIL 302	S1	C	PHYSICS 270	S2	C				PLANNING 734	S2	C
PHIL 304	S2	C	PHYSICS 315A	S1	C	PLANNING 138	S1	C	PLANNING 735	S1	C
PHIL 306	S2	C	PHYSICS 315B	S2	C						
PHIL 314	S1	C	PHYSICS 325	S1	C	PLANNING 139	S1	C	PLANNING 736	S2	C
PHIL 315	S2	C	PHYSICS 326	S2	C				PLANNING 738	S2	C
PHIL 317	S2	C	PHYSICS 340	S1	C	PLANNING 200	S1	C	PLANNING 739	S2	C
PHIL 318	S1	C	PHYSICS 350A	S1	C	PLANNING 201	S1	C	PLANNING 740A	S1	C
PHIL 320	S1	C	PHYSICS 350B	S2	C	PLANNING 202	S1	C	PLANNING 740B	S2	C
PHIL 327	S1	C	PHYSICS 355	S2	C	PLANNING 203	S2	C	PLANNING 741A	S1	C
PHIL 328	S2	C	PHYSICS 390	S1	C	PLANNING 210	S2	C	PLANNING 741B	S2	C
PHIL 329	S2	C	PHYSICS 391	S2	C	PLANNING 220	S2	C	PLANNING 750A	S1	C
PHIL 332	S1	C	PHYSICS 395	S1	C	PLANNING 230	S1	C	PLANNING 750B	S2	C
PHIL 335	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 231	S1	C	PLANNING 751A	S1	C
PHIL 361	S2	C	PHYSICS 396	S1	C	PLANNING 234	S1	C	PLANNING 751B	S2	C
PHIL 363	S1	C		S2	C	PLANNING 235	S1	C	PLANNING 752A	S1	C
PHIL 610A	S1	C	PHYSICS 690A	S1	CT				PLANNING 752B	S2	C
	S2	C	PHYSICS 690B	S2	CT	PLANNING 236	S1	C	PLANNING 753A	S1	C
PHIL 610B	S1	C	PHYSICS 691A	S1	CT				PLANNING 753B	S2	C
	S2	C	PHYSICS 691B	S2	CT	PLANNING 237	S1	C	PLANNING 754A	S1	C
PHIL 620	S2	C	PHYSICS 701	S1	C				PLANNING 754B	S2	C
PHIL 620A	S1	C	PHYSICS 703	S1	C	PLANNING 238	S1	C	PLANNING 755	S2	C
	S2	C	PHYSICS 704	S1	C				PLANNING 755A	S1	C
PHIL 620B	S1	C	PHYSICS 705	S2	C	PLANNING 239	S1	C	PLANNING 755B	S2	C
	S2	C	PHYSICS 706	S2	C				PLANNING 756A	S1	C
PHIL 720A	S1	C	PHYSICS 707	S2	C	PLANNING 300	S2	C	PLANNING 756B	S2	C
PHIL 720B	S2	C	PHYSICS 708	S1	C	PLANNING 301	S2	C	PLANNING 757A	S1	C
PHIL 727	S1	C	PHYSICS 726	S1	C	PLANNING 302	S2	C	PLANNING 757B	S2	C
PHIL 729	S1	C	PHYSICS 727	S2	C	PLANNING 303	S1	C	PLANNING 758A	S1	C
PHIL 731	S2	C	PHYSICS 730	S2	C	PLANNING 310	S1	C	PLANNING 758B	S2	C
PHIL 732	S2	C	PHYSICS 750	S1	C	PLANNING 320	S1	C	PLANNING 759A	S1	C
PHIL 734	S2	C	PHYSICS 760	S2	C	PLANNING 321	S2	C	PLANNING 759B	S2	C
PHIL 740	S2	C	PHYSICS 791	S1	C	PLANNING 330	S1	C	PLANNING 760A	S1	C
PHIL 741	S1	C	PHYSICS 792	S2	C	PLANNING 331	S1	C	PLANNING 760B	S2	C
PHIL 742	S2	C	PHYSIOL 210	S1	CH				PLANNING 761A	S1	C
PHIL 746	S2	C	PHYSIOL 220	S2	CH	PLANNING 332	S1	C	PLANNING 761B	S2	C
PHIL 752	S1	C	PHYSIOL 301	S1	H				PLANNING 762A	S1	C
PHIL 754	S1	C	PHYSIOL 302	S1	H	PLANNING 335	S1	C	PLANNING 762B	S2	C
PHIL 755	S1	C	PHYSIOL 303	S2	H				PLANNING 762C	S1	C
PHIL 762	S2	C	PHYSIOL 304	S2	H	PLANNING 336	S1	C	PLANNING 763A	S1	C
PHIL 764	S1	C	PHYSIOL 690A	S1	H				PLANNING 763B	S2	C
PHIL 765	S1	C	PHYSIOL 690B	S2	H	PLANNING 337	S1	C	PLANNING 764A	S1	C
PHIL 769	S1	C	PHYSIOL 691A	S1	H				PLANNING 764B	S2	C
	S2	C	PHYSIOL 691B	S2	H	PLANNING 338	S2	C	PLANNING 765A	S1	C
PHIL 780	S2	C	PHYSIOL 701	S2	H	PLANNING 339	S2	C	PLANNING 765B	S2	C
PHIL 780A	S1	C	PHYSIOL 702	S1	H	PLANNING 400	S2	C	PLANNING 766A	S1	C
PHIL 780B	S2	C	PHYSIOL 703	S1	H	PLANNING 401	S1	C	PLANNING 766B	S2	C
PHIL 792A	S1	C	PHYSIOL 704	S2	H	PLANNING 402	S1	C	PLANNING 767A	S1	C
PHIL 792B	S2	C	PHYSIOL 705	S1	H	PLANNING 403	S1	C	PLANNING 767B	S2	C
PHIL 797A	S1	C	PHYSIOL 706	S2	T	PLANNING 420	S2	C	PLANNING 768A	S1	C
PHIL 797B	S2	C	PHYSIOL 707	S1	H	PLANNING 430	S1	C	PLANNING 768B	S2	C
PHSOCSCI 700	S1	H	PHYSIOL 708	S1	H	PLANNING 433	S2	C	PLANNING 769A	S1	C
	S2	H	PHYSIOL 789	S1	H	PLANNING 434	S1	C	PLANNING 769B	S2	C
PHSOCSCI 701	S2	H		S2	H	PLANNING 435	S1	C	PLANNING 770A	S1	C
PHYSICS 102	S1	C	PLANNING 100	S1	C				PLANNING 770B	S2	C
	S2	C	PLANNING 101	S2	C	PLANNING 436	S1	C	PLANNING 780	S2	C
PHYSICS 107	S2	C	PLANNING 102	S1	C				PLANNING 780A	S1	C
PHYSICS 111	S1	C	PLANNING 103	S2	C	PLANNING 437	S1	C			
PHYSICS 112	S2	C	PLANNING 110	S1	C				PLANNING 780B	S2	C
PHYSICS 120	S1	C	PLANNING 111	S2	C	PLANNING 438	S1	C	PLANNING 797A	S1	C
	S2	T	PLANNING 120	S1	C	PLANNING 700	S1	C	PLANNING 797B	S2	C
PHYSICS 130	S2	C	PLANNING 121	S2	C	PLANNING 701	S2	C	POLISH 102	S1	C
PHYSICS 150	S1	T	PLANNING 130	S1	C	PLANNING 702	S1	C	POLITICS 106	S1	C
	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 703	S1	C	POLITICS 107	S1	C
PHYSICS 160	S1	C	PLANNING 131	S1	C	PLANNING 704	S2	C	POLITICS 109	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 705	S2	C	POLITICS 110	SS	C
PHYSICS 200A	S1	C	PLANNING 132	S1	C	PLANNING 706	S1	C	POLITICS 113	S2	C
PHYSICS 200B	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 707	S1	C	POLITICS 204	S2	C
PHYSICS 211A	S1	C	PLANNING 133	S1	C	PLANNING 708	S1	C	POLITICS 209	S2	C
PHYSICS 211B	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 709	S2	C	POLITICS 213	S2	C
PHYSICS 213	S1	C	PLANNING 134	S1	C	PLANNING 710	S2	C	POLITICS 214	S1	C
PHYSICS 219A	S1	C		S2	C	PLANNING 711	S1	C	POLITICS 215	S2	C
PHYSICS 219B	S2	C	PLANNING 135	S1	C	PLANNING 720	S1	C	POLITICS 218	S2	C
PHYSICS 220	S2	C		S2	C	PLANNING 721	S2	C	POLITICS 222	S1	C
PHYSICS 230	S1	C	PLANNING 136	S1	C	PLANNING 722	S2	C	POLITICS 226	S2	C

Course Code	Semester	Location									
POLITICS 229	S1	C	PROPERTY 321	S1	C	PSYCH 603B	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 766	S1	H
POLITICS 231	S1	C	PROPERTY 331	S1	C	PSYCH 650A	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 767	S2	H
POLITICS 232	SS	C	PROPERTY 342	S1	C	PSYCH 650B	S2	C	RESOURCE 201	S2	C
POLITICS 233	S1	C	PROPERTY 344	S1	C	PSYCH 690A	S1	CT	RESOURCE 210	S1	C
POLITICS 234	S2	C	PROPERTY 351	S2	C	PSYCH 690B	S2	T	RESOURCE 243	S2	C
POLITICS 236	S1	C	PROPERTY 363	S2	C	PSYCH 691A	S1	C	RESOURCE 244	S2	C
	S2	C	PROPERTY 371	S1	C	PSYCH 691B	S2	C	RESOURCE 324	S2	C
POLITICS 237	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 701A	S1	T	RESOURCE 333	S1	C
	S2	C	PROPERTY 372	S1	C	PSYCH 701B	S2	T	RESOURCE 341	S2	C
POLITICS 238	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 702A	S1	T	RESOURCE 342A	S1	C
	S2	C	PROPERTY 382	S1	C	PSYCH 702B	S2	T	RESOURCE 342B	S2	C
POLITICS 318	S2	C	PROPERTY 671	S1	C	PSYCH 705	S2	C	RESOURCE 401A	S1	C
POLITICS 320	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 707	S1	C	RESOURCE 401B	S2	C
POLITICS 325	S1	C	PROPERTY 691	S1	C	PSYCH 708A	S1	C	RESOURCE 404	S1	C
POLITICS 327	S2	C		S2	C	PSYCH 708B	S2	C	RESOURCE 405	S1	C
POLITICS 328	S2	C	PROPERTY 713	S1	C	PSYCH 709A	S1	C	RESOURCE 441	S2	C
POLITICS 334	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 709B	S2	C	RESOURCE 442	S2	C
POLITICS 335	S2	V	PROPERTY 714	S1	C	PSYCH 711A	S1	C	RESOURCE 444	S2	C
POLITICS 336	S2	C		S2	C	PSYCH 711B	S2	C	RESOURCE 471	S1	C
POLITICS 339	S1	C	PROPERTY 723	S1	C	PSYCH 714	S1	C	RESOURCE 480	S2	C
	S2	C		S2	C	PSYCH 716	S1	C	RESOURCE 701	S1	C
POLITICS 340	S2	C	PROPERTY 733	S1	C	PSYCH 717	S1	C	RESOURCE 702	S2	C
POLITICS 341	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 720A	S1	CT	RESOURCE 703	S1	C
	S2	C	PROPERTY 734	S1	C	PSYCH 720B	S2	CT	RESOURCE 723	S2	C
POLITICS 703A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 721	S2	C	RESOURCE 741	S1	C
POLITICS 703B	S2	C	PROPERTY 743	S1	C	PSYCH 735A	S1	T	RESOURCE 742	S1	C
POLITICS 720A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 735B	S2	T	RESOURCE 777	S2	C
POLITICS 720B	S2	C	PROPERTY 753	S1	C	PSYCH 737	S1	T	RESOURCE 778	S1	C
POLITICS 723A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 738	S2	T	RESOURCE 779	S1	C
POLITICS 723B	S2	C	PROPERTY 763	S1	C	PSYCH 741	S2	C	RESOURCE 780	S2	C
POLITICS 728A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 743	S1	C	RESOURCE 787	S1	C
POLITICS 728B	S2	C	PROPERTY 764	S1	C	PSYCH 744	S2	C			
POLITICS 732A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 745	S1	T	RESOURCE 788A	S1	C
POLITICS 732B	S2	C	PROPERTY 783	S1	C	PSYCH 789A	S1	CT	RESOURCE 788B	S2	C
POLITICS 735A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	CT	RESOURCE 789	S1	C
POLITICS 735B	S2	C	PROPERTY 784	S1	C	PSYCH 789B	S1	C		S2	C
POLITICS 736A	S1	C		S2	C		S2	CT	RESOURCE 790	S1	C
POLITICS 736B	S2	C	PROPERTY 788	S1	C	PSYCH 811A	S1	C		S2	C
POLITICS 737A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 811B	S2	C	RUSSIAN 100	S1	C
POLITICS 737B	S2	C	PROPERTY 789	S1	C	PSYCH 812A	S1	C	RUSSIAN 101	S2	C
POLITICS 740A	S1	C		S2	C	PSYCH 812B	S2	C	RUSSIAN 112	SS	C
POLITICS 740B	S2	C	PROPERTY 793A	S1	C	PSYCH 813A	S1	C	RUSSIAN 210A	S1	C
POLITICS 741A	S1	C	PROPERTY 793B	S1	C	PSYCH 813B	S2	C	RUSSIAN 210B	S2	C
POLITICS 741B	S2	C		S2	C	PSYCH 814A	S1	C	RUSSIAN 214	S2	C
POLITICS 742	S1	C	PSYCH 108	S1	C	PSYCH 814B	S2	C	RUSSIAN 277	S1	V
POLITICS 750A	S1	C	PSYCH 109	S2	C	PSYCH 821A	S1	C		S2	V
POLITICS 750B	S2	C	PSYCH 128	S2	T	PSYCH 821B	S2	C		SS	V
POLITICS 753A	S1	C	PSYCH 129	S1	T	PSYCHIAT 713A	S1	H	RUSSIAN 278	S1	V
POLITICS 753B	S2	C	PSYCH 201	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 713B	S2	H		S2	V
POLITICS 755	S2	C	PSYCH 202	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 718	S1	H		SS	V
POLITICS 757	S2	C	PSYCH 203	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 720	S1	H	RUSSIAN 310	S1	C
POLITICS 758	S2	C	PSYCH 204	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 731	S1	H	RUSSIAN 311	S1	C
POLITICS 780A	S1	C	PSYCH 206	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 732	S2	H	RUSSIAN 312	S2	C
POLITICS 780B	S2	C	PSYCH 261	S1	T	PSYCHIAT 740A	S1	H	RUSSIAN 350	S2	C
POLITICS 790A	S1	C	PSYCH 262	S2	T	PSYCHIAT 740B	S2	H	RUSSIAN 377	S1	V
POLITICS 790B	S2	C	PSYCH 301	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 745	S2	H		S2	V
POLITICS 797A	S1	C	PSYCH 305	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 746	S2	H		SS	V
POLITICS 797B	S2	C	PSYCH 306A	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 747A	S1	H	RUSSIAN 378	S1	V
POLYMER 691A	S1	C	PSYCH 306B	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 747B	S2	H		S2	V
POLYMER 691B	S2	C	PSYCH 307	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 748A	S1	H		SS	V
POLYMER 701	S1	C	PSYCH 308A	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 748B	S2	H	RUSSIAN 711	S1	C
POLYMER 702	S1	C	PSYCH 308B	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 749A	S1	H	RUSSIAN 723	S2	C
POLYMER 703	S1	C	PSYCH 310	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 749B	S2	H	RUSSIAN 724A	S1	C
POLYMER 711	S2	C	PSYCH 311	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 750	S1	H	RUSSIAN 724B	S2	C
POLYMER 713	S2	C	PSYCH 312	S2	C		S2	H	RUSSIAN 733	S1	C
PROPERTY 101	S1	C	PSYCH 314	S1	T	PSYCHIAT 751	S1	H	RUSSIAN 790	S1	C
PROPERTY 111	S2	C	PSYCH 316	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 752A	S1	H		S2	C
PROPERTY 141	S1	C	PSYCH 317	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 752B	S2	H	RUSSIAN 797A	S1	C
PROPERTY 211	S1	C	PSYCH 319	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 753A	S1	H	RUSSIAN 797B	S2	C
PROPERTY 221	S1	C	PSYCH 361	S2	T	PSYCHIAT 753B	S2	H	SAMOAN 101	S1	C
PROPERTY 231	S2	C	PSYCH 362	S1	T	PSYCHIAT 754	S1	H		SS	C
PROPERTY 241	S2	C	PSYCH 364	S1	T		S2	H	SAMOAN 102	S1	C
PROPERTY 251	S1	C	PSYCH 601A	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 755	S2	H		S2	C
PROPERTY 261	S2	C	PSYCH 601B	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 760	S1	H	SAMOAN 103	S1	C
PROPERTY 271	S1	C	PSYCH 602A	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 761	S1	H	SAMOAN 201	S1	C
PROPERTY 311	S2	C	PSYCH 602B	S2	C	PSYCHIAT 762	S2	H	SAMOAN 202	S2	C
PROPERTY 312	S2	C	PSYCH 603A	S1	C	PSYCHIAT 764	S2	H	SAMOAN 301	S1	C

2002 Course Availability

Courses not listed are not available in 2002. Availability details are subject to change. For the latest information visit [www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/nDeva)

Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location	Course Code	Semester	Location
SAMOAN 302	S2	C	SPANISH 277	SS	V	STATS 201	S1	CT	STATS 795	S1	C
SCIGEN 100	S2	C M	SPANISH 278	S1	V		S2	CT		S2	T
SCIGEN 101	S2	C		S2	V	STATS 208	S1	CT	STATS 797A	S1	CT
	SS	C		SS	V		S2	CT	STATS 797B	S2	CT
SCIGEN 201	S1	CT	SPANISH 300	S1	C		SS	C	THEATRE 201A	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 100	S1	C	SPANISH 305	S1	C	STATS 210	S1	C	THEATRE 201B	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 101	S2	C	SPANISH 310	S1	C		S2	C	THEATRE 301	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 102	S1	C	SPANISH 314	S2	C	STATS 220	S2	C	THEATRE 710A	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 103	S2	C	SPANISH 317	S2	C	STATS 255	S1	C	THEATRE 710B	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 105	S2	C	SPANISH 377	SS	V		S2	CT	THEATRE 720A	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 200	S2	C	SPANISH 378	S1	V	STATS 301	S1	T	THEATRE 720B	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 201	S1	C		SS	V		S2	C	THEATRE 770A	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 208	S2	C	SPANISH 700A	S1	C	STATS 302	S1	C	THEATRE 770B	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 210	S1	C	SPANISH 700B	S2	C	STATS 310	S1	C	THEATRE 791A	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 211	S1	C	SPANISH 709	S1	C	STATS 320	S1	C	THEATRE 791B	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 212	S1	C	SPANISH 712	S1	C		S2	T	THEATRE 793A	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 213	S2	C	SPANISH 718	S2	C	STATS 325	S2	C	THEATRE 793B	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 214	SS	C	SPANISH 723	S2	C	STATS 330	S2	C	TONGAN 101	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 215	S2	C	SPANISH 750	S2	C	STATS 340	S1	C	TONGAN 102	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 216	S1	C	SPANISH 750A	S1	C		S2	T	TONGAN 103	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 220	S2	C	SPANISH 750B	S2	C	STATS 350A	S1	T	TONGAN 201	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 222	S2	C	SPANISH 792A	S1	C	STATS 350B	S2	T	TONGAN 202	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 224	S1	C	SPANISH 792B	S2	C	STATS 370	S2	C	TONGAN 301	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 303	S2	C	SPANISH 794A	S1	C	STATS 390	S1	C	TONGAN 302	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 310	S2	C	SPANISH 794B	S2	C		S2	C	TRANSLAT 601	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 311	S1	C	SPANISH 797A	S1	C	STATS 391	S1	C	TRANSLAT 602	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 314	S2	C	SPANISH 797B	S2	C		S2	T	TRANSLAT 605	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 317	S1	C	SPORTSCI 102	S1	T	STATS 690A	S1	CT	TRANSLAT 702	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 318	S1	C	SPORTSCI 103	S1	T	STATS 690B	S2	CT	TRANSLAT 703	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 323	SS	C	SPORTSCI 104	S2	T	STATS 691A	S1	CT	TRANSLAT 704	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 324	S2	C	SPORTSCI 201	S2	T		S2	C	TRANSLAT 710	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 331	S1	C	SPORTSCI 202	S2	T	STATS 691B	S2	CT	TRANSLAT 721	S1	C
SOCIOLOG 333	S2	C	SPORTSCI 203	S1	T	STATS 692A	S1	CT	TRANSLAT 722	S2	C
SOCIOLOG 700	S2	C	SPORTSCI 204	S1	T	STATS 692B	S2	CT	VISARTS 150A	S1	M
SOCIOLOG 718	S1	C	SPORTSCI 205	S2	T	STATS 693A	S1	CT	VISARTS 150B	S2	M
SOCIOLOG 719	S1	C	SPORTSCI 206	S1	T	STATS 693B	S2	CT	VISARTS 160A	S1	M
SOCIOLOG 722	S1	C	SPORTSCI 301	S1	T	STATS 708	S1	C	VISARTS 160B	S2	M
SOCIOLOG 729	S1	C	SPORTSCI 302	S2	T	STATS 720	S2	C	VISARTS 170A	S1	M
SOCIOLOG 730	S2	C	SPORTSCI 303	S1	T	STATS 724	S1	C	VISARTS 170B	S2	M
SOCIOLOG 731	S1	C	SPORTSCI 304	S1	T	STATS 727	S1	C	VISARTS 250A	S1	M
SOCIOLOG 733	S2	C	SPORTSCI 305	S2	T	STATS 730	S1	C	VISARTS 250B	S2	M
SOCIOLOG 734	S2	C	SPORTSCI 306	S2	T	STATS 731	S1	C	VISARTS 260A	S1	M
SOCIOLOG 735	S2	C	SPORTSCI 307	S1	T	STATS 732	S2	C	VISARTS 260B	S2	M
SOCIOLOG 792	S1	C	SPORTSCI 308	S2	T	STATS 740	S2	T	VISARTS 270A	S1	M
	S2	C	SPORTSCI 309A	S1	T	STATS 741	S1	C	VISARTS 270B	S2	M
SOCIOLOG 792A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 309B	S2	T	STATS 750	S1	C	VISARTS 271	S1	M
SOCIOLOG 792B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 690A	S1	T	STATS 752	S1	C	VISARTS 272	S2	M
SOCIOLOG 797A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 690B	S2	B	STATS 760	S2	C	VISARTS 350A	S1	M
SOCIOLOG 797B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 691A	S1	T	STATS 764	S2	C	VISARTS 350B	S2	M
SOFTENG 206A	S1	C	SPORTSCI 691B	S2	T	STATS 766	S2	C	VISARTS 360A	S1	M
SOFTENG 206B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 702	S1	T	STATS 767	S1	C	VISARTS 360B	S2	M
SOFTENG 211	S1	C		S2	T		S2	C	VISARTS 370A	S1	M
SOFTENG 250	S1	C	SPORTSCI 703	S1	T	STATS 771	S2	C	VISARTS 370B	S2	M
SOFTENG 251	S2	C	SPORTSCI 705	S1	T	STATS 773	S2	C	VISARTS 470A	S1	M
SOFTENG 252	S1	C	SPORTSCI 706	S2	T	STATS 775	S2	C	VISARTS 470B	S2	M
SOFTENG 253	S2	C	SPORTSCI 707	S1	T	STATS 780	S2	C	WOMEN 100	S1	C
SOFTENG 306A	S1	C		S2	T	STATS 782	S1	T	WOMEN 101	S2	C
SOFTENG 306B	S2	C	SPORTSCI 708	S2	T		S2	T	WOMEN 200	S1	C
SOFTENG 325	S2	C	SPORTSCI 710	S2	T	STATS 783	S1	C	WOMEN 202	SS	C
SOFTENG 350	S1	C	SPORTSCI 711	S1	T		S2	C	WOMEN 203	S2	C
SOFTENG 363	S1	C	SPORTSCI 789A	S1	T	STATS 788A	S1	CT	WOMEN 204	S1	C
SOFTENG 364	S2	C	SPORTSCI 789B	S2	T	STATS 788B	S2	CT	WOMEN 205	SS	C
SOFTENG 370	S2	C	SPORTSCI 791A	S1	T	STATS 789	S1	CT	WOMEN 303	S1	C
SPANISH 103	S1	C	SPORTSCI 791B	S2	T		S2	CT	WOMEN 304	S1	C
SPANISH 104	S1	C	SPORTSCI 797A	S1	T	STATS 789A	S1	CT	WOMEN 306	S2	C
	S2	C	SPORTSCI 797B	S2	T	STATS 789B	S2	CT	WOMEN 700A	S1	C
	SS	C	STATS 101	S1	C	STATS 790	S1	CT	WOMEN 700B	S2	C
SPANISH 105	S1	C		S2	C		S2	CT	WOMEN 703A	S1	C
	S2	C	STATS 102	S1	C	STATS 790A	S1	CT	WOMEN 703B	S2	C
	SS	C		S2	C	STATS 790B	S2	CT	WOMEN 785A	S1	C
SPANISH 109	S1	V	STATS 107	S1	T	STATS 791	S1	CT	WOMEN 785B	S2	C
	S2	V		S2	T		S2	CT	WOMEN 792	S1	C
SPANISH 200	S1	C	STATS 108	S1	CT	STATS 791A	S1	CT		S2	C
	SS	C		S2	CT	STATS 791B	S2	CT	WOMEN 792A	S1	C
SPANISH 201	S2	C		SS	C	STATS 792	S1	C	WOMEN 792B	S2	C
SPANISH 204	S2	C	STATS 120	S2	C	STATS 793	S2	C	WOMEN 797A	S1	C
SPANISH 211	S1	C	STATS 191	S1	M S T	STATS 794	S2	C	WOMEN 797B	S2	C

---

## Acts of Parliament and University Statutes

### Acts of Parliament

Education Act 1989	598
The University of Auckland Act 1961	598

### University Statutes

The Disciplinary Statute 1998	599
Membership of Associations of Students Referenda and Elections of Student Representatives on Council Statute 1999	602
Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990	609
The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990	610

# ACTS OF PARLIAMENT

## Education Act 1989

The University, like all tertiary education institutions, is subject to the provisions of the Education Act 1989 (as amended by the Education Amendment Act 1990). This Act specifies the constitution and powers of the Council and various other matters relating to the administration of tertiary institutions. Copies of the Act are available from the Government Bookshop.

## The University of Auckland Act 1961

### Analysis

#### Title

- 1 Short Title and Commencement
- 2 Interpretation
- 3 Constitution of the University
- 4 University District and Court of Convocation

#### Powers of the Council

- 20 Award of certificates, etc.
- 21 Lectures to members of the public

### An Act to consolidate and amend certain enactments of the General Assembly relating to the University of Auckland

Be it enacted by the General Assembly of New Zealand in Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:

#### 1 Short Title and Commencement

- (1) This Act may be cited as the University of Auckland Act 1961.
- (2) This Act shall come into force on the first day of January, nineteen hundred and sixty two.

#### 2 Interpretation

In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires:

**'The Council'** means the Council of the University of Auckland constituted in accordance with Part XV of the Education Act 1989:

**'Lecturer'** means a member of the staff of the University of Auckland who is in terms of his appointment an associate professor, a reader, a senior lecturer, or a lecturer of the University; and includes such other persons and classes of persons as the Council from time to time determines:

**'Minister'** means the Minister of the Crown for the time being responsible for the administration of this Act: **'Professor'** means a professor of the University of Auckland; but does not include an associate professor:

**'The Registrar'** means the Registrar of the University of Auckland:

**'The University'** means the University of Auckland constituted under this Act.

#### 3 Constitution of the University

- (1) For the advancement of knowledge and the dissemination and maintenance thereof by teaching and research there shall be a University to be called the University of Auckland.
- (2) The University shall consist of the Council, the professors emeriti, the

professors, lecturers, junior lecturers, Registrar, and librarian of the University for the time being in office, the graduates and undergraduates of the University of New Zealand whose names are for the time being on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland, and such other persons and classes of persons as the Council may from time to time determine.

- (3) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and a common seal, and may hold real and personal property, and sue and be sued, and do and suffer all that bodies corporate may do and suffer.
- (4) The University established under this Act is hereby declared to be the same institution as the institution of that name existing immediately before the commencement of this Act under the University of Auckland Act 1954 (as amended by the University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957), which institution was originally established under the name of the Auckland University College under the Auckland University College Act 1882.

#### 4 Court of Convocation

- (1) – repealed
- (2) – repealed
- (3) There shall be a Court of Convocation of the University.
- (4) The said Court of Convocation shall consist of the persons whose names are enrolled on a register to be kept by the Registrar.
- (5) Every person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation who
  - (a) is a graduate of the University; or
  - (b) being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reasons of having been admitted ad eundem gradum before the first day of January, nineteen hundred and forty-three, is not by reason of that qualification, enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University, and is otherwise qualified in accordance with statutes made by the

- Council to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University; or
- (c) not being such a graduate, is a professor or graduate full-time member of the staff of the University or a graduate member, approved by the Council as being of University status, of the staff of an institution affiliated to the University; or
- (d) is otherwise entitled in accordance with statutes made by the Council to have his name enrolled on the said register.
- (6) The power of the Council under Section 194 of the Education Act 1989 to make statutes extends to making statutes for the keeping of the register of the Court of Convocation, which statutes may include provisions prescribing the persons and classes of persons who are eligible under paragraph (b) or paragraph (d) of subsection (5) of this section for membership of the said Court of Convocation and the conditions (whether as to payment of fee or otherwise) on which persons are entitled to have their

- names enrolled in the register of the said Court; and, subject to this Act and to the said statutes, if any, the said Court shall have power to make such rules for the conduct of its business as it thinks fit as the Council may determine.
- (7) The said Court may make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

#### Sections 5 to 19 - repealed

- 20 **Awards of Certificates, etc.**  
The Council shall have power, under such conditions as it thinks fit, to award certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries and prizes, and to make other awards.
- 21 **Lectures to Members of the Public**  
The Council shall have power to provide such lectures and instruction for any persons, whether or not they are members of the University, as it thinks fit, and on such conditions as it thinks fit, and may award certificates to any of them.

#### Sections 22 to 53 - repealed

---

## UNIVERSITY STATUTES

---

### The Disciplinary Statute 1998

- 1 **Title and Commencement**  
This Statute may be cited as The Disciplinary Statute 1998 and comes into force on 1 March 1998.
- 2 **Interpretation**  
**'Appeals Committee'** means the Committee constituted by the Council with delegated authority to exercise the powers conferred on it by Statute.  
**'Authorised Person'** means the Vice Chancellor, the Registrar, any Staff Member, a Warden or a member of the staff of the Students' Association.  
**'Class'** means any lecture, tutorial, seminar, laboratory, or other assembly of Students at which tuition is being given and includes any lecture or address within the University at which Students are present.  
**'Council'** means the Council of the University.  
**'Discipline Committee'** means the committee constituted by the Council with delegated authority to exercise the powers conferred on it by Statute.  
**'Enrolment'** means enrolment in a course of study or training at the University and 'enrol' has a corresponding meaning.  
**'Facility'** means premises and equipment made available by the University for the recreation of Students and Staff Members as, for example:  
Common Rooms  
Physical Fitness Facilities

- Playing Fields  
Student Union  
The Maidment Theatre.  
**'Field Trip'** means a trip beyond University Premises undertaken by Students and conducted by the University for the purposes of study or research.  
**'Hall'** means any hostel or hall of residence or other student accommodation under the control of the University and intended for the occupation of students.  
**'Registrar'** means the person for the time being holding office as the Registrar of the University.  
**'Rule'** means any rule of conduct made by the Council, the Senate, or any Authorised Person of which notice has been given:  
(i) by publication in the University Calendar;  
or  
(ii) by other means; or  
(iii) to the person charged with misconduct before the alleged misconduct has occurred.  
**'Senate'** means the Senate of the University.  
**'Specified Statutes'** means the Examination Regulations, the Fees Regulations, the Computer System Regulations, the Library Regulations as published in the most recent University Calendar and includes any other Regulations or Statutes so published which prescribe offences for misconduct (whether or not penalties are also prescribed for those offences).

**'Staff Member'** means a member of the Staff of the University.

**'Statute'** means a Statute made by the Council and includes this Statute, a Specified Statute and all Regulations of the University made before 1 January 1991 and not since revoked.

**'Student'** means a duly enrolled student of the University and includes, for the purposes of section 3 of this Statute, a person applying to enrol.

**'Students' Association'** means the Auckland University Students' Association Incorporated.

**'Student Union'** means University Premises that are for the time being administered by the Students' Association.

**'University'** means the University of Auckland.

**'University Premises'** means land and buildings owned by the University or of which the University has possession or control; and includes any Hall and (for the avoidance of doubt) the Student Union.

**'Vice Chancellor'** means the person holding office for the time being as the Chief Executive of the University; and includes any person for the time being:

- a acting in that capacity; or
- b acting as a Deputy of the Chief Executive.

**'Warden'** means the person for the time being in charge of any Hall; and includes a deputy of that person.

### Good Government and Discipline

#### 3 Observance of Statutes and Rules

- a Every Student shall observe and comply with the provisions of the Statutes and Rules of the University.
- b Students who, on Enrolment or in the course of their attendance at the University, are subject to conditions imposed on their attendance to prevent disturbance or to maintain good order and discipline shall comply with those conditions.

#### 4 Prohibitions and Directions

a No Student or Staff Member shall:

- (i) Wilfully act (on University Premises or elsewhere) in a manner contrary to the good government of the University or so as to bring the University into disrepute.
- (ii) Wilfully damage, deface or destroy University Premises, any property on University Premises or any property of a Student, a Staff Member, or the Students' Association.
- (iii) Wilfully impede the activities of the University, whether in teaching, research or otherwise.
- (iv) Wilfully obstruct any Authorised Person in the due performance of the functions or duties of that Authorised Person.
- (v) Wilfully create any nuisance in or on University Premises.

- (vi) Wilfully interfere with the pursuit of work or study by any Student or Staff Member or his or her proper enjoyment of the amenities of the University.
  - (vii) Be in University Premises when the Student knows or ought to know that he or she is not entitled to be there at that time.
  - (viii) Smoke in any place where smoking is prohibited in terms of the Smoke Free policy of the University for the time being.
  - (ix) Cause any unnecessary disturbance or annoyance to persons living in residential quarters on University Premises or to residents in the immediate neighbourhood of University Premises.
  - (x) Ride, drive or park a cycle or motor vehicle in the University grounds except in compliance with the directions notified from time to time regulating the entry, exit and speed of cycles and vehicles and the places where they may be parked.
  - (xi) Be accompanied by a dog (other than a guide dog) or any other pet on University Premises.
  - (xii) Refuse any reasonable request to identify himself or herself by an Authorised Person who has reason to suspect that the Student is involved in a breach of any Statute or Rule.
  - (xiii) Post notices elsewhere than on the permanent notice boards provided for the purpose and except in compliance with the conditions prescribed by the Executive of the Students' Association in that regard.
  - (xiv) Bring or consume alcoholic liquor on University Premises other than:
    - (a) on licensed premises; or
    - (b) any other premises where permission has been given to consume alcohol and then only in accordance with any conditions imposed.
  - (xv) Use the Personal Identification Card of another Student (so as to impersonate that other Student) or permit his or her Personal Identification Card to be used by another Student.
- b All Students shall comply with:
- (i) Such directions as may reasonably be given by an Authorised Person to maintain good order and discipline.
  - (ii) (While in a Class); any requirements as to behaviour or attire made for the orderly conduct of the Class or the safety of persons or property.
  - (iii) (While using any Facility); the Rules applicable to its use and any directions by the person in charge to preserve the safety of the persons using the Facility.
  - (iv) (While resident or present in a Hall); the Rules governing the maintenance of good order and discipline in the Hall and any directions given by the Warden of the Hall for that purpose;

- (v) (While on a Field Trip); any Rules by the person in charge of the Field Trip to preserve the safety of the persons engaged on the Field Trip or to prevent misconduct during the Field Trip.
- (vi) (While present in the Student Union); requests made by an Authorised Person to prevent unruly behaviour or to cause it to cease.

#### 5 **Members of the Security Intelligence Service**

- a No member of the Security Intelligence Service enrolled as a Student at the University shall carry out any inquiries into security matters within the University Premises.
- b The proposed attendance of a member of the Security Intelligence Service at the University shall be discussed between the Security Intelligence Service and the Registrar before his or her enrolment.
- c After those discussions have been held, the Senate shall determine each year what special conditions (if any) as to attendance at Classes shall apply to students who are members of the Security Intelligence Service in order to maintain discipline among the students of the University by preventing any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal teaching activities.
- d In this Section 5 'Member of the Security Intelligence Service' means an officer or employee engaged in the Security Intelligence Service established under the New Zealand Security Intelligence Service Act 1969.

#### **Imposition of Penalties on Students**

##### 6 **Misbehaviour in Classes or Facilities**

- a Where a Student commits a breach of any Statute or Rule:
  - (i) In any Class: the person in charge of the Class; or
  - (ii) In any Facility: the person in charge of the Facility; may
    - (a) Exclude the Student from the Class (and up to 3 subsequent sessions of the Class) or the Facility (for such period as the person in charge may determine); and
    - (b) Refer the breach to the Discipline Committee.

##### 7 **Misbehaviour in Halls**

- a Where a Student commits a breach of any Statute or Rule in any Hall, the Warden of that Hall may:
  - (i) Impose a fine not exceeding \$1,000 on the Student; and/or
  - (ii) Suspend or terminate the Student's right to reside in the Hall; and/or
  - (iii) Refer the breach to the Discipline Committee.

##### 8 **Misbehaviour in the Student Union Building or its Precincts**

- a Where a Student commits a breach of any

Statute or Rule in the Student Union the Executive of the Students' Association may:

- (i) Impose a fine not exceeding \$500; and/or
- (ii) Refer the breach to the Discipline Committee.

#### 9 **Other Penalties**

- a The Discipline Committee may of its own motion or on reference to it pursuant to:
  - (i) This Statute; or
  - (ii) Any other Statute or Rule;
 impose on a Student who commits a breach of any Statute or Rule, any one or more of the penalties prescribed in clauses 9b, 9c or 9d or require any such Student to pay an amount by way of restitution pursuant to clause 9e.
- b For a breach of Examination Regulations the Discipline Committee may:
  - (i) As provided in those Regulations:
    - (a) Suspend for such time as it may prescribe the release to the candidate of the results of any examination;
    - (b) Decline to credit to the candidate's course any subject or subjects;
    - (c) Cancel any pass with which that candidate may have been credited in the subject or examination in respect of which the breach occurred;
    - (d) Disqualify the candidate from sitting any examination for such period as it may prescribe;
    - (e) Impose any one or more of those penalties; and/or
  - (ii) Impose any of the penalties prescribed in clause 9d.
- c For breach of any other Specified Statute the Discipline Committee may impose:
  - (i) The penalties prescribed in that Specified Statute; and/or
  - (ii) The penalties prescribed in section 9d.
- d For a breach of any Statute (not being a Specified Statute) or any Rule, the Discipline Committee may impose:
  - (i) A fine not exceeding \$1,000.
  - (ii) A limitation or prohibition on attendance at any Class or Classes or the use and enjoyment of any of the Facilities.
  - (iii) A suspension from attendance at the University or any Class or Classes for such period as it thinks fit.
  - (iv) Cancellation of Enrolment of a Student at the University or in a course of study or training at the University.
  - (v) A penalty in the form of requiring the offender to remove any defacement to University Premises or property or to render services to the benefit of the University or its students.
  - (vi) Any one or more of those penalties.
- e In determining any allegation of a breach of paragraph (ii) of clause 4a of this Statute (damage to property) the Discipline Committee may, with or without imposing a penalty, require an offending Student to

pay such amount by way of restitution as the Discipline Committee thinks fit.

f On default of payment, within the time prescribed, of:

(i) A fine; or

(ii) Any amount to be paid by way of restitution pursuant to clause 9e of this Statute;

the Discipline Committee may suspend the Student in default from attendance at the University or any Class or Classes until that fine or that amount is paid.

#### 10 Reprimands

a Where the Discipline Committee has investigated a complaint that a Student has committed an offence under any Specified Statute it may:

(i) Through its Chairperson or any Authorised Person it has nominated for the purpose; and

(ii) Whether or not it has imposed any penalty for the offence;

issue a reprimand orally or in writing to the Student charged with the offence in terms that it considers appropriate in all the circumstances.

#### 11 Review of Penalties

a Any Student:

(i) Upon whom a penalty is imposed under any Statute or any Rule; or

(ii) Who is required to pay any amount by way of restitution;

may by giving written notice to the

Registrar within 14 days of the penalty having been imposed apply to the Appeals Committee of the Council to review:

(i) The amount of that penalty; or

(ii) The imposition of that penalty; or

(iii) Both those matters; or

(iv) Any amount required to be paid by way of restitution.

b The decision of the Appeal Committee on any such review is final.

#### 12 Saving

a Nothing in this or any other Statute prejudices the rights and remedies of the University at law in respect of the misconduct or negligence of any Student or Staff Member.

#### 13 Transitional Provisions

a Notwithstanding the revocation of the Disciplinary Regulations 1972:

(i) Proceedings may be commenced in respect of any offence under those Regulations alleged to have been committed before their revocation; and

(ii) Proceedings previously commenced under those Regulations may be continued;

as if those Regulations remained in force.

b Where any proceedings that are commenced or continued pursuant to clause 13a relate to an offence under the Examination Regulations, those Regulations will be deemed not to have been amended for the purpose of those proceedings.

## Membership of Associations of Students Referenda and Elections of Student Representatives on Council Statute 1999

### 1 Title and Commencement

This Statute may be cited as the Membership of Associations of Students Referenda and Elections of Student Representatives on Council Statute 1999 and comes into force on 1 January 1999.

### 2 Interpretation

'Academic Year' means a period of 12 months commencing on 1 January.

'Act' means the Education Act 1989.

'Association of Students' means an incorporated body of students enrolled at the University, whether membership of that association is compulsory or voluntary.

'AUSA' means the Auckland University Students' Association.

'Candidate' means a candidate for election under this Statute as a student representative on the Council.

'Complainant' means any student who lodges a complaint of undue influence under this Statute.

'Complaints Committee' means the committee constituted by Council with

delegated authority to exercise the powers conferred on it by this Statute.

'Council' means the Council of the University.

'Election' means an election of student representatives on the Council conducted under this Statute.

'Equalisation Funding' means money paid to the Council by an association of students (membership of which is compulsory) pursuant to section 229I(2) or section 229I(3) of the Act.

'Nomination Day' means the day appointed for the closing of nominations of candidates for election as student representatives on the Council.

'Referendum' means a referendum held to determine whether membership of associations of students at the University should be voluntary or compulsory.

'Respondent' means any person or persons against whom a complaint of undue influence is made under this Statute.

'Student' means a duly enrolled student of the University.

'University' means The University of Auckland.

**'Vice-Chancellor'** means the person holding office for the time being as the Chief Executive Officer of the University; and includes any person for the time being:

- a Acting in that capacity; or
- b Acting as a Deputy of the Chief Executive.

**'VSM Sub-Committee'** means the committee constituted by Council with delegated authority to exercise the powers conferred on it by this Statute.

**Conduct of Referenda**

**3 Returning Officer**

- 3.1 The Council shall appoint a Returning Officer to conduct referenda under this Statute.
- 3.2 The Returning Officer for referenda conducted under this Statute shall hold office until his or her removal by the Council, or his or her resignation, incapacity or death, in any of which events the Council shall appoint a Returning Officer in his or her place.
- 3.3 Every referendum conducted under this Statute shall be conducted by the Returning Officer, but, if for any reason he or she is unable to fulfil the duties of his or her office at any referendum, the Council shall appoint a substitute, who, for the purposes of that referendum, shall be deemed to be the Returning Officer.

**4 Request for Referendum**

- 4.1 Where the Council receives a request from 10% of students enrolled at the University to conduct a referendum, the Council shall conduct a referendum on whether membership of associations of students should be voluntary or compulsory.
- 4.2 A request for a referendum in accordance with section 4.1 above must provide sufficient details of each student who requests a referendum so that the Returning Officer may determine whether each student is enrolled at the University.
- 4.3 The Returning Officer shall, upon receiving a request for a referendum, determine whether 10% of students enrolled in the University have requested a referendum.
- 4.4 A determination made by the Returning Officer in accordance with section 4.3 above shall be final.
- 4.5 Not more than one referendum shall be held in any year.

**5 Date of Referendum**

- 5.1 Where a request for a referendum is received by the Council and the Returning Officer has determined that the request was made by 10% of students enrolled at the University in accordance with section 4.3 above, a referendum shall be held at a time determined by the Council in accordance with section 229D of the Act.
- 5.2 The Returning Officer shall give advance notice of the commencement date and closing date of a referendum by a notice in form 1, which shall be published in such University publications as the Returning Officer sees fit.

**6 Transitional Provisions Relating to a Referendum Held in 1999**

- 6.1 A referendum shall be held in 1999 in accordance with section 229D of the Act.
- 6.2 The result of the referendum held in 1999 shall be declared no later than 1 May 1999.

**7 Referendum to be Held Over One Month Period**

- 7.1 The closing date of a referendum shall be one month from the opening date of that referendum.

**8 Students Eligible to Vote**

- 8.1 The Returning Officer shall compile a list of students eligible to vote in a referendum, which will include all students enrolled at the University at a date to be determined by the Returning Officer.

**9 Applications for Equalisation Funding**

- 9.1 The Returning Officer shall, when he or she gives advance notice of the date of a referendum, invite groups of students who wish to campaign for voluntary membership of associations of students to apply in writing for any equalisation funding paid to the Council pursuant to s 229I(2) or s 229I(3) of the Act.
- 9.2 The Council shall appoint a VSM Sub-Committee of two members of the Council which shall consider applications for equalisation funding.
- 9.3 To be eligible to apply for equalisation funding in accordance with section 9.1 above, groups:
  - a Must be comprised of students; and
  - b Should constitute a body corporate, incorporated society, charitable trust or have a written constitution, trust deed or rules, which ensures that the group can be made accountable for any funding which it may receive.
- 9.4 To be eligible for equalisation funding, groups of students must apply in writing within 14 days of the advance notice given by the Returning Officer of the date of a referendum and must include in their application:
  - a The names of all members of the group;
  - b A statutory declaration that all members of the group are students;
  - c Details as to which members of the group are students of the University; and
  - d An outline of the group's campaign and the estimated cost of that campaign to enable the VSM Sub-Committee to determine whether that group is able most effectively to campaign for voluntary membership of associations of students.
- 9.5 The VSM Sub-Committee shall determine which group or groups of students will most effectively campaign for voluntary membership of associations of students and where the Council receives equalisation funding from an association of students (membership of which is compulsory), it shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after the receipt of that money, pay to the group or groups which the VSM

Sub-Committee has determined will most effectively campaign for voluntary membership of associations of students, the amount paid to it by the association of students (membership of which is compulsory).

- 9.6 The determination of the VSM Sub-Committee in accordance with section 9.5 above shall be final.
- 9.7 Where the VSM Sub-Committee is not satisfied that there is any group of students which will most effectively campaign for voluntary membership of associations of students, it shall refund to the association of students (membership of which is compulsory) the amount of equalisation funding paid to it by that group.
- 9.8 A group which receives equalisation funding from the VSM Sub-Committee pursuant to section 9.5 above shall, no later than one month after the closing date of the referendum, present to the VSM Sub-Committee a written account and supporting evidence showing how the equalisation funding was used.
- 9.9 If, upon receiving the evidence referred to in section 9.8 above, the VSM Sub-Committee is dissatisfied with how money paid to a group of students to campaign for voluntary membership of associations of students was spent, it may resolve to exclude that group from receiving funding in the future to campaign for voluntary membership of associations of students.
- 10 Referendum to be Conducted by Postal Vote**
- 10.1 The Returning Officer shall conduct referenda under this Statute by postal vote.
- 11 Issue of Voting Slip**
- 11.1 The Returning Officer shall, not later than the date on which the referendum is to be held, forward by post an envelope addressed to each student containing a voting slip which:
- a States that the slip is a voting paper for a referendum;
  - b States that the referendum is for the purpose of establishing whether membership of associations of students at that institution is to be voluntary or compulsory;
  - c Gives instructions for voting in that referendum;
  - d States the commencement date and closing date of the referendum;
  - e Discloses the fee that will be payable if, as a result of a referendum, membership of an association of students is compulsory; and
  - f Where membership of an association of students is compulsory, the likely amount of a refund which will be payable if membership of associations of students becomes voluntary.
- 11.2 The voting slip shall be in a form prescribed by the Returning Officer.
- 12 Method of Voting**
- 12.1 On receipt of the voting slip forwarded by the Returning Officer, the student shall alone

exercise his or her vote in accordance with the instructions on the voting slip.

- 12.2 Where any student
- a Is wholly or partially blind; or
  - b Suffers from any other disability which makes it difficult to cast his or her vote in the prescribed manner,
- that student's vote may be recorded by another person in accordance with the instructions of the student.
- 12.3 After the student has exercised his or her vote, the student shall enclose the voting slip in the envelope addressed to the Returning Officer and shall by post deliver that envelope to the Returning Officer.
- 13 Invalid Votes**
- 13.1 A vote shall only be valid if:
- a The student exercises his or her vote in accordance with the instructions on the voting slip;
  - b The student has not yet exercised his or her vote; and
  - c The student's voting slip is received by the Returning Officer on or after the commencement date of the referendum and on or before the closing date of the referendum.
- 14 Counting of Votes**
- 14.1 Votes shall be counted by such means as are prescribed by the Returning Officer.
- 14.2 The Returning Officer shall make arrangements for votes to be counted as soon as reasonably practicable after the close of voting.
- 15 Declaration of Result**
- 15.1 No later than one month after the closing date of the referendum, the Returning Officer shall declare, by means of notices in such University publications as the Returning Officer sees fit:
- a The number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary;
  - b The number of votes in favour of membership of an association of students being compulsory; and
  - c Whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory.
- 16 Recount**
- 16.1 Where any student, officer of an association of students or member of the Council has reason to believe that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the referendum, namely whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory, might be found to be different, he or she may within 7 days after the declaration, apply to the Returning Officer for a recount of the votes.

- 16.2 Every application for a recount in accordance with section 16.1 above shall:
- a Be accompanied by a deposit of \$100, which shall be refunded if, following a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory proves to be incorrect;
  - b State the grounds upon which the applicant believes that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the referendum, namely whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory, might be found to be different; and
  - c State the name of the applicant and whether he or she is a student, officer of an association of students or member of the Council.
- 16.3 If the Returning Officer is satisfied that an applicant for a recount has reasonable cause to believe that the Returning Officer's declaration of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect and that on a recount the result of the referendum, namely whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory, might be found to be different, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after receiving the application and deposit as aforesaid, arrange for a recount of the votes to be made by such means as he or she thinks fit.
- 16.4 Where the Returning Officer arranges for a recount of the votes in accordance with section 16.3 above, he or she shall:
- a Notify the applicant in writing of the result of the recount; and
  - b Where the result of a recount is that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory is incorrect, declare, by means of notices in such University publications as he or she sees fit:
    - (i) That upon a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or the number of votes in favour of membership of an association of students being compulsory was found to be incorrect; and
    - (ii) The number of votes in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary;
    - (iii) The number of votes in favour of membership of an association of students being compulsory; and
- (iv) Whether the majority of votes are in favour of membership of associations of students being voluntary or compulsory.
- 17 Destruction of Votes**
- 17.1 The Returning Officer shall, no earlier than one month after the declaration of the result of a referendum, and if an application for a recount is made, not before the declaration of the result of the recount, arrange for all records of students' votes to be destroyed.
- 18 Complaints of Undue Influence**
- 18.1 No student, officer of an association of students, member of the Council, member of staff of the University, or member of staff of an association of students may exert undue influence, directly or indirectly, on any student with intent to force or induce that student:
- a Where membership of associations of students is voluntary:
    - (i) To become or remain a member of an association of students; or
    - (ii) To cease to be a member of an association of students; or
    - (iii) Not to become a member of an association of students; or
  - b Where membership of an association of students is compulsory, to apply or not to apply for exemption from membership.
- 18.2 For the purposes of section 18.1 above, undue influence is any improper persuasion, pressure or influence including but not limited to threats of physical violence, that so overpowers a person's free will that he or she cannot act voluntarily, but acts instead, subject to the will of the other person or persons.
- 18.3 The Council shall appoint a Complaints Committee of two members of Council, which will consider and make a determination on complaints of undue influence.
- 18.4 Where a student considers that any person has exerted undue influence in breach of section 18.1 above, he or she may, within one month of the closing date of a referendum, lodge a written complaint with the Returning Officer.
- 18.5 A complaint of undue influence lodged in accordance with section 18.4 above must state the following:
- a The name of the complainant and such other details as may reasonably allow the Returning Officer to identify and contact the complainant;
  - b The name of the respondent and such other details as may reasonably allow the Returning Officer to identify and contact the respondent;
  - c The grounds of the complaint;
  - d Full particulars of the date and time when the incident or action complained of took place and the location where it took place; and
  - e Whether the complainant requests a hearing in respect of the complaint.

- 18.6 The Complaints Committee may, at any stage and after making such enquiries as it sees fit, decline to hear a complaint:
- a Which does not comply with the requirements of section 18.5 above; or
  - b Where it is not satisfied that reasonable grounds exist for a complaint of undue influence to be made.
- 18.7 Where the Complaints Committee declines to hear a complaint pursuant to section 18.6 above, it shall notify the complainant in writing that it declines to hear the complaint and set out its reasons for declining to hear the complaint.
- 18.8 If the Complaints Committee considers it appropriate, it may provide a copy of the complaint to the respondent and may request the respondent's response.
- 18.9 Where the Complaints Committee requests a response from the respondent in accordance with section 18.8 above, it shall, if the complainant has requested a hearing, advise the respondent that a hearing will be conducted in respect of the complaint.
- 18.10 The respondent may request a hearing in respect of a complaint of undue influence.
- 18.11 Having received a complaint and a response (if any), the Complaints Committee may make such further enquiries as it sees fit.
- 18.12 The complainant and the respondent are entitled to seek, at their own expense, the assistance of a representative in drafting a complaint or a response in accordance with sections 18.4 and 18.8 above.
- 18.13 Where either the complainant or the respondent requests a hearing in respect of a complaint of undue influence and the Complaints Committee has not declined to hear the complaint pursuant to section 18.6 above, the Complaints Committee shall conduct a hearing in respect of the complaint and shall determine what procedure the hearing will follow.
- 18.14 Where a hearing is conducted in respect of a complaint of undue influence, the complainant and the respondent may represent themselves, or, at their own expense, be represented by an advocate or representative of their choice.
- 18.15 The Complaints Committee may uphold, reject or otherwise decide upon a complaint as it considers appropriate in the circumstances.
- 18.16 The Complaints Committee shall notify the complainant and the respondent in writing of its decision in respect of a complaint and shall set out the reasons for its decision.
- 18.17 Where the Complaints Committee upholds a complaint in accordance with section 18.15 above, it may issue a warning to the respondent not to exert undue influence in breach of section 18.1 above and that, if a further complaint of undue influence against that person or those persons is upheld by the Complaints Committee, further action may be taken.
- 18.18 If the Complaints Committee upholds a complaint and considers that, in addition to a

warning under section 18.17 above, further action should be taken or where the respondent has previously received a warning pursuant to section 18.17 above, it shall refer the complaint:

- a In the case of staff, to the Vice-Chancellor or his or her delegate for such action to be taken as he or she considers appropriate; and
- b In the case of students, to the Disciplinary Committee for such action to be taken as it considers appropriate.

## 19 Recognition of Associations of Students

- 19.1 Where the result of a referendum is that membership of associations of students is to be voluntary, the Council may decide whether it wishes to recognise one or more associations of students and if so, what form that recognition will take.

## The Election of Student Representatives on the Council

### 20 Student Representatives on the Council

- 20.1 Student representatives serving as members of the Council at the time of a referendum in 1999 shall remain on the Council until the completion of their term of membership.
- 20.2 Where the result of a referendum is that membership of associations of students is to be voluntary, the Council shall conduct an election in accordance with this Statute and the Constitution of the Council, subject to section 20.1 above.

## Conduct of Elections

### 21 Returning Officer

- 21.1 The Council shall appoint a Returning Officer to conduct elections under this Statute.
- 21.2 The Returning Officer for elections conducted under this Statute shall hold office until his or her removal by the Council, or his or her resignation, incapacity or death, in any of which events the Council shall appoint a Returning Officer in his or her place.
- 21.3 Every election conducted under this Statute shall be conducted by the Returning Officer, but, if for any reason he or she is unable to fulfil the duties of his or her office at any referendum, the Council shall appoint a substitute, who, for the purposes of that referendum, shall be deemed to be the Returning Officer.

### 22 Date of Election and Term of Office

- 22.1 Elections conducted under this Statute shall be held at a time in the second semester in each Academic Year determined by the Returning Officer.
- 22.2 Successful candidates shall hold office during the Academic Year immediately following their election.

### 23 Students Eligible to Vote

- 23.1 The Returning Officer shall compile a list of students eligible to vote in an election, which will include all students enrolled in the

University at a date to be determined by the Returning Officer.

- 24 Notice of Election, Nomination of Candidates, and Closing Date for Nominations**
- 24.1 No less than 30 days and no more than 60 days before the day or days fixed by the Returning Officer for an election, the Returning Officer shall give advance notice thereof in such University publications as he or she sees fit and shall in that notice state the number of positions to be filled on the Council and request the nomination of candidates in writing and a closing date for the receipt of such nominations.
- 25 Nomination of Candidates**
- 25.1 To be eligible for election a nominee must:
- a be enrolled as a Student at the time when nominations close; save that a nominee who is a sitting Student member seeking re-election need not be enrolled as a Student at that time; and
  - b neither be employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University nor have been so employed at any time during the two years preceding the date of the election.
- 25.2 Nomination of candidates for election under this Statute must:
- a be in the form scheduled to this Statute; and
  - b be signed by not less than 2 Students as the nominators; and
  - c carry the written consent of the nominee and a declaration of eligibility; and
  - d contain a declaration by the nominee as to whether the nominee has or has not ever been employed (as described in sub-section 25.1b) by the University and an undertaking to include such information in all material circulated in connection with the nominee's nomination.
- 25.3 Every nomination paper shall be lodged with or given to the Returning Officer not later than noon on nomination day. The Returning Officer shall acknowledge receipt of every nomination paper on that nomination paper.
- 25.4 Every candidate shall be nominated by a separate nomination paper.
- 26 Rejection of Nominations**
- 26.1 The Returning Officer shall reject the nomination of a nominee who does not qualify for election under sub-section 25.1
- 26.2 Where a nomination is rejected the Returning Officer will notify the nominee in writing giving the reasons for the rejection.
- 27 Withdrawal of Nomination**
- 27.1 Any candidate may withdraw his or her nomination at any time before noon on nomination day, by notice in writing to the Returning Officer, signed by him or her.
- 28 Death of Candidate Before Close of Nominations**
- 28.1 Where before the close of nominations the Returning Officer receives advice that a candidate who has been nominated and has not withdrawn his or her nomination has died or has become incapable of holding the position for which he or she is a candidate, his or her nomination shall be treated as if it had not been made.
- 29 If Number of Candidates does not Exceed Number of Vacancies, Candidates to be Declared Elected**
- 29.1 If the number of the candidates does not exceed the number of vacancies to be filled, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as practicable after the close of nominations, by notice in such University publications as he or she sees fit, declare the candidate or candidates so nominated to be duly elected to the Council.
- 30 Notice of Nominations and Election**
- 30.1 If the number of candidates exceeds the number of positions on the Council to be filled, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as practicable after the close of nominations, give notice in such University publications as he or she sees fit of the day or days on which the election is to be held and of the names of the candidates.
- 31 Candidate May Retire**
- 31.1 A candidate at an election may retire after the close of nominations at any time before a declaration has been made pursuant to section 29 of this Statute, or, where an election is required to be held, at any time before the day or days of the election, by notice in writing to the Returning Officer, signed by that candidate.
- 31.2 Where the Returning Officer receives notice pursuant to section 31.1 above:
- a Where practicable, the Returning Officer shall before the day or days of the election give notice of the retirement in such University publications as he or she sees fit;
  - b If a candidate retires after the voting slips have been printed, the Returning Officer shall take such steps as are practicable to strike out the name of the retiring candidate from the voting slips;
  - c Any vote cast for that candidate shall be void.
- 31.3 If, by the retirement of a candidate in accordance with section 31.1 above the number of candidates is reduced to or below the number of positions to be filled on the Council:
- a The Returning Officer shall, by notice in such University publications as he or she sees fit, before the day or days of the election, declare the remaining candidates to be duly elected; or
  - b If the candidate retires at such a time that it is not possible to give such a notice before

the day or days of the election, the election shall not be held and the declaration shall be made on the day or days of the election or as soon thereafter as possible.

**32 Death or Incapacity of Candidate After Close of Nominations**

**32.1 Where:**

- a After the close of nominations and before the day or days of the election, any candidate dies or becomes incapable of holding the position for which he or she is a candidate; or
- b Any such candidate dies or becomes incapable as aforesaid before the close of nominations but advice of his or her death or incapacity is received by the Returning Officer after the close of nominations, the provisions of section 31 of this Statute, so far as they are applicable and with the necessary modifications, shall apply as if the deceased or incapacitated candidate had retired on the date of his or her death or incapacity, or, as the case may be, on the date on which advice of his or her death or incapacity is received by the Returning Officer.

**33 Election to be Conducted by Telephone Vote**

- 33.1** Unless sections 29.1 or 31.3 of this Statute apply, the Returning Officer shall conduct an election by means of a telephone voting system.

**34 Issue of Voting Slip**

- 34.1** The Returning Officer shall, not later than the day or days on which the election is to be held, forward by post addressed to each student, a voting slip which:
- a States that the slip is a voting paper for an election of student representatives on the Council;
  - b Gives instructions for voting in that election;
  - c States the day or days of the election;
  - d States the name of the candidates for the election; and
  - e States the number of student representative positions on the Council.

**35 Method of Voting**

- 35.1** On receipt of the voting slip forwarded by the Returning Officer, the student shall alone exercise his or her vote by telephone in accordance with the instructions on the voting slip.
- 35.2** Where any student
- a Is wholly or partially blind; or
  - b Is wholly or partially deaf; or
  - c Suffers from any other disability which makes it difficult to cast his or her vote in the prescribed manner,
- that student's vote may be recorded by

another person in accordance with the instructions of the student.

**36 Invalid Votes**

- 36.1** A vote shall only be valid if:
- a The student's identification number is entered into the telephone voting system;
  - b The student's duly chosen pin number is entered into the telephone voting system;
  - c The student has not yet recorded his or her vote; and
  - d The student's vote is recorded on the day or days of the election.

**37 Counting of Votes**

- 37.1** Votes shall be counted by such means as are prescribed by the Returning Officer.
- 37.2** The Returning Officer shall make arrangements for votes to be counted as soon as reasonably practicable after the close of voting.

**38 Declaration of Result**

- 38.1** No later than one month after all the votes have been counted, the Returning Officer shall declare, by means of notices in such University publications as the Returning Officer sees fit, the result of the election, being the name or names of the candidates elected as student representatives on the Council.

**39 Recount**

- 39.1** Where any student or member of the Council has reason to believe that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the election is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the election might be found to be different, he or she may within 7 days after the declaration, apply to the Returning Officer for a recount of the votes.
- 39.2** Every application for a recount in accordance with section 39.1 above shall:
- a Be accompanied by a deposit of \$100, which shall be refunded if, following a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the election proves to be incorrect;
  - b State the grounds upon which the applicant believes that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the election is incorrect, and that on a recount thereof the result of the election might be found to be different; and
  - c State the name of the applicant and whether he or she is a student or member of the Council.
- 39.3** If the Returning Officer is satisfied that an applicant for a recount has reasonable cause to believe that the Returning Officer's declaration of the result of the election is incorrect and that on a recount the result of the election might be found to be different, the Returning Officer shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after receiving the

application and deposit as aforesaid, arrange for a recount of the votes to be made by such means as he or she thinks fit.

- 39.4 Where the Returning Officer arranges for a recount of the votes in accordance with section 39.3 above, he or she shall:
- a Notify the applicant in writing of the result of the recount; and
  - b Where the result of a recount is that the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the election is incorrect, declare, by means of notices in such University publications as he or she sees fit:
    - (i) That upon a recount of the votes, the declaration by the Returning Officer of the result of the election was found to be incorrect; and
    - (ii) The candidates elected as student representatives on the Council.

**40 Destruction of Votes**

40.1 The Returning Officer shall, no earlier than one month after the declaration of the result of an election, and if an application for a recount is made, not before the declaration of the result of the election, arrange for all records of students' votes to be destroyed.

**41 Vacation of Office**

41.1 A member of the Council elected under this Statute ceases to hold office as a member if that member becomes employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University. The casual vacancy occurring for that reason shall be filled in accordance with section 176 of the Act.

**The Schedule Nomination Form  
University of Auckland**

Election to be held on the ... day of .....20.....  
of two Members of the Council by the Students of the University of Auckland.  
The successful candidates will hold office during the following Academic Year.

We .....

and .....

(print names in full)

being duly enrolled students of the University nominate:

.....

(print name in full)

for election to the Council  
Dated ....day of .....20.....

**Signatures of Nominees**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

As the above-named nominee I consent to this nomination and declare that:

(a) either

- I am duly enrolled as a Student of the University (or will be so enrolled before nominations close)
- or
- I am a sitting member of the Council elected by the Students and seek re-election
- and

(b) I am not now employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University and have not been so employed at any time during the two years preceding the date of the elections.

I further

(a) declare that I have/have not ever been employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University

(b) Undertake to include such declaration in all material circulated about me in connection with my nomination

\_\_\_\_\_

**Signature of Nominee**

**Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990**

Pursuant to section 4 of the University of Auckland Act 1961 as amended by the Education Act 1989.

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Court of Convocation Register Statute 1990.
- 2 The Registrar of the University shall prepare and maintain a register to be known as the Register of the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland and shall (subject to section 5) enter on the register the names and addresses (so far as such addresses are known) of all persons entitled to be enrolled under section 4 of the University of Auckland Act and under section 3 of this Statute.
- 3 Under and for the purposes of subsection 5 of section 4 of the University of Auckland Act each person shall be entitled to have his or her name enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation (without fee) who being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted ad eundem gradum before the

1st day of January, 1943, is not by reason of that qualification enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation for any other University in New Zealand, and

- (i) under section 23A of the New Zealand University Act 1908 was enrolled or entitled to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, or
  - (ii) was an undergraduate member of the University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, and became a graduate of the University of New Zealand after that date, or
  - (iii) at a date after the 31st day of December, 1961, and immediately before had resided in the Auckland University District for a period of not less than three calendar months.
- 4 Except as provided in section 5 of this Statute it shall not be necessary for any person entitled to be so enrolled on the register to apply for enrolment.

- 5 Every person who is entitled to be enrolled on the register under paragraph (iii) of section 3 of this Statute may apply to the Registrar for enrolment and upon making that application and producing such evidence of the facts and matters entitling him or her to enrolment as the Registrar may reasonably require shall be enrolled on the register.
- 6 A member of the Court may, by notifying the Registrar in writing, elect not to receive voting papers for the purpose of conducting elections to the Council by the Court, but may at any subsequent time advise the Registrar by notice under his or her hand that they wish to receive voting papers for an election.
- 7 Any enrolled member of the Court may, by notice under his or her hand delivered to the Registrar, object to the register on the grounds that any person whose name is on the register does not possess the necessary qualifications.
- 8 The Registrar shall enquire into and decide whether to uphold or dismiss any such objection forthwith after receiving it.
- 9 Any person aggrieved by any decision or act of the Registrar relating to the register may appeal therefrom to the Council by notice under his or her hand, addressed to the Chancellor, and delivered at the University not later than 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the seventh day after the day on which the register is to be closed for the purposes of an impending election.
- 10 Every such appeal shall be heard and determined by the Council or a Committee appointed by the Council and the Registrar shall amend the register in such manner as the Council or the Committee when deciding the appeal directs.
- 11 (a) Any member of the Court having changed his or her address shown on the register may request the Registrar to amend the register in respect of that address and the Registrar shall make such amendment accordingly.
- (b) The Registrar being satisfied (otherwise than under the preceding paragraph (a) of this section) that the address of a member of the Court has been changed may amend the register in respect of that address provided that the Registrar shall forthwith post notices of that amendment to the member at both the old and the new address.
- 12 The Registrar shall expunge from the register the name of any person who has died or has ceased to be entitled to be enrolled thereon, and shall be entitled to make on request any amendment of name made necessary by marriage, deed poll or other lawful reason.
- 13 The Court of Convocation Statute 1962 is hereby repealed.

## The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990

Pursuant to section 4 of the University of Auckland Act 1961 as amended by the Education Act 1989:

- 1 This Statute may be cited as the Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Statute 1990.
- 2 For the purpose of conducting the elections to the Council by the Court of Convocation an electoral roll containing the names of those members of the Court who are eligible to vote shall be prepared and revised from time to time in accordance with this Statute.
- 3 The members of the Court who are eligible to vote at an election by the Court are those members (but no other members) who
- a voted at the last two preceding elections
  - b (having had their names entered on the Court register since the penultimate election) voted at the last preceding election
  - c have had their name entered on the Court register since the last preceding election
  - d (not being in any of the foregoing categories) apply for a voting paper by letter delivered or posted to the Returning Officer so as to be received by that officer on or before 5 o'clock
- in the afternoon of the 21st day preceding the day on which the election is to be held.
- 4 In this Statute and the forms contained herein: **'the Act'** means the Education Act 1989 **'the roll'** means the electoral roll prepared in accordance with this Statute **'elector'** and **'voter'** respectively refer to those members of the Court whose names are for the time being entered on the electoral roll **'the Returning Officer'** shall be the Registrar of the University.
- 5 The date of election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
- 6 Whenever any election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than 35 days before the election) by notice in at least two newspapers, published in the City of Auckland, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with the Returning Officer on or before a day, to be fixed by the Returning Officer, being not less than ten days from the date of the first advertisement, which notice shall be in the following form (or form to the like effect):

**The University of Auckland**

Election of Member(s) of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland.  
 An election of member(s) will be held at 5.00 pm. on the ..... day of .....20..... at the office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.  
 No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this election unless he or she shall have been previously nominated in a document signed by two electors, and unless such nomination paper shall have been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm. on the .....day of ..... 20.....  
 The roll of electors will remain open for inspection and additions until 5.00 pm. on the twenty-first day before the election and will then be closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer will issue the voting paper to such voters as are shown on the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge).  
 ..... Returning Officer

- 7 The roll shall be closed at 5 o'clock in the afternoon of the 21st day immediately preceding the day on which an election is to be held and shall continue to be closed until the election is completed; and no name shall be entered on the roll while it is closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer shall issue the voting papers simultaneously to such voters as are shown in the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge); nor shall any voting paper be sent to any person whose address is not within New Zealand.
- 8 Notwithstanding anything above set out, the Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector whose name appears on the roll and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his or her voting paper has been issued to that elector.
- 9 The votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by this Statute, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or posted to the Returning Officer in a sealed envelope on or before that day.
- 10.1 To be eligible for election and to remain in office if elected, a nominee must:
  - a Be enrolled as a member of the Court of Convocation or be entitled to be and become enrolled as a member; and
  - b Neither be employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University nor have been so employed at anytime during the 5 years preceding the date of the election; and
  - c Not be enrolled as a full-time student (as the term applies under current University enrolment policies).

- 10.2 The Returning Officer shall reject the nomination of a nominee who:
  - a Does not qualify for election under sub-section 10.1; or
  - b Not being enrolled as a member of the Court of Convocation does not become enrolled within the time notified to the nominee by the Returning Officer.
- 10.3 Where a nomination is rejected the Returning Officer will notify the nominee in writing giving the reasons for the rejection.
- 10.4 A member of the Council elected under this Statute ceases to hold office as a member if that member ceases to be eligible for election in terms of sub-section 10.1. The casual vacancy occurring for that reason shall be filled in accordance with section 176 of the Act.
- 10.5 Nomination of candidates for election under this Statute must:
  - a Be in the form prescribed in section 11; and
  - b Be signed by 2 persons eligible to vote in terms of Section 3 as the nominators; and
  - c Carry the written consent of the nominee and a statement of eligibility.
- 11 Nominations shall be in the following form or a form to the like effect:

**The University of Auckland**

Election to be held on the ... day of .....20..... of Members of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland.  
 We .....  
 and .....  
 (print full names)  
 being duly qualified voters, hereby nominate .....  
 (print full names)  
 for election to the Council by the Court of Convocation for the University of Auckland.  
 Dated ....day of .....20.....  
**Signatures of Nominators**

---

As nominee I consent to this nomination and declare that:  
 (a) either  
 I am enrolled as a member of the Court of Convocation;  
 or  
 I am entitled to be enrolled as a member of that court and will become so enrolled before the Election Date (failing which my candidacy will be deemed to be withdrawn)  
 and  
 (b) I am not now employed for a continuous period of more than 6 months on a full-time basis by the University or under terms and conditions of full-time employment set by the University and have not been so employed at any time during the 5 years preceding the date of the election; and  
 (c) I am not enrolled as a full-time student of the University

---

**Signature of Nominee**

- 12 Each candidate for election may submit to the Registrar with his or her nomination papers a short statement about the candidate:

- (i) The statement shall not exceed 250 words.
- (ii) The statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications and any other relevant information about the candidate.
- (iii) The Returning Officer shall ensure that the information in each statement is forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.
- 13 If the nominations received do not exceed the number of vacancies, the Returning Officer shall declare the candidate(s) duly elected.
- 14 Every voting paper shall be in the form following or to the like effect, that is to say:

**Voting Paper**  
**Council of the University of Auckland**  
**Election of Members**  
 By the Court of Convocation  
 for the University of Auckland  
**Directions**

There are.....vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.  
 The voter is to put a cross (x) in the square beside the name of each candidate for whom he or she desires to vote.

- 15 Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the voter accompanied by an envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer. The voter must complete the panel on the back of envelope:

**The Voter must sign his/her name and complete the address panel below.**

I .....

(Full name in block letters)  
 declare that I am not, by reason of my being a graduate of the University of New Zealand (either by examination at any time or by admission ad eundem gradum before 1 January, 1943), enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of any University in New Zealand other than the University of Auckland.  
 Signature of Voter .....

Address .....

(I request the Registrar to record my address on the roll as above.)  
 If recorded on University records under another name, e.g. maiden name, please state .....

- 16 The poll shall close at 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the day of the election; but all voting papers shall be included and counted which are received by the Returning Officer in due course by post before the close of the sixth day after the day of the election, provided the Returning Officer is satisfied that the paper was posted in accordance with the provisions of Section 9. On the seventh day after the day of the election the Returning Officer shall open and count the votes. As soon as the voting papers have been checked with the Roll the name and address shall be removed from each voting paper before the votes are counted.
- 17 Each candidate shall be entitled to nominate a scrutineer, who shall have the same rights and duties as those vested at the date of the poll in a scrutineer at any poll of the Auckland City Council.
- 18 Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.
- 19 The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.
- 20 The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.
- 21 The Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations are hereby repealed.

---

## Scholarships and Prizes

National Scholarship (NZVCC) 2001	614
University of Auckland Scholarships, 2001	614
University of Auckland Prizes, 2000	618

---

## SCHOLARSHIPS AND PRIZES

---

### National Scholarship (NZVCC) 2001

<b>Bank of New Zealand Undergraduate Scholarship</b>	Dhamidhu Eratne
<b>Claude McCarthy Fellowships</b>	Angelika Anderson Helen Mavoia
<b>Commonwealth Scholarship to Britain</b>	Fiona Jordan
<b>Commonwealth Scholarship to Canada</b>	Donna Addis
<b>Family Planning Association Alice Bush Scholarship</b>	Victoria Inch
<b>Frank Knox Fellowship</b>	Stephen Carden
<b>French Teaching Assistantships</b>	Anna Bassett Tania Laird Lisa Perry
<b>Freyberg Scholarship</b>	Markus Binder
<b>Gerald Agnew Graduate Scholarship</b>	Darren Parsons

**New Zealand Law Foundation Ethel Benjamin Prize**  
(for Women) Misty Bailey

**Rhodes Scholarships** Emily Baragwanath  
Jennifer Quilter  
(Nominee) Sarah Healy

### Todd Foundation Awards for Excellence

Campbell Murray  
James Russell

**Tower Corporation Undergraduate Scholarships**  
Ka Yan Choi  
Lydia Philpott

### Tranz Rail Undergraduate Scholarships

Jason Myers  
Halafili Tevita

### William Georgetti Scholarships (PhD)

Maree Burns  
Miriam Harris

---

### University of Auckland Scholarships, 2001

**ABB Limited Scholarship in Electrical & Electronic Engineering** Bun Ung

**ABN AMRO Scholarship in Finance** Daniel Huggins

**AG Davis Scholarship in Law** Stefan Corbett

**Alma Logan Scholarship in Italian Language** Rebecca Rishworth

**Alstom Scholarships** Anton Bruell  
Daniel Robertson

**Ann Turner Fellowship** Shelley Yip

**Anne Bellam Scholarship** Alisa Willis

**Anthony Jennings Memorial Scholarship** Michael Bell

**Armstrong Jones Scholarships in Property** Peter Dufaur

**Arthur Andersen Scholarships in Accounting**  
[BCom(Hons)] Lara Cheyne

James Cooney  
James Gutry  
Han Ho

**Arthur Thomas Paterson Scholarship in Ophthalmology** Yvonne Ng

**ASB Bank Scholarship in Information Technology** Sarah Henderson

**Auckland Centennial Music Festival Scholarships** Simeon Broom

**Auckland Chinese Medical Society Elective Scholarships** Antonia Hughes  
Henry Liu

**Auckland City Council 1990 Commemoration Scholarships for Maori Students** Ebony Duff  
Lillian Fraser  
Ratanui Fraser  
Memory Haddon

Amber Logan-Riley  
Rachel Rapira  
Eleanor Regeling  
Myra Ruka  
Inia Tomas  
Erin Wharemate

**Auckland City Council Bursaries in Planning** Ian Munro  
Mark Stevenson

### Auckland City Council Queen Elizabeth II Scholarships

Vance Bentley  
Natalie Fa'amatuainu  
Vicky Letele  
Karena Lyons  
Joanna Minster  
Monica Nua  
Georgina Pora  
Elizabeth Seuseu  
Mariota Smutz  
Meleane Valu

### Auckland City Council Scholarships for University Education

Phillip Anderson  
Angela Key  
Harriette Kimiora  
Fathima Sheik Muhammed Ali  
Chi-Che Tai  
Richmond Tan  
Emily Viskovic

**Bart Baker Memorial Scholarship in Vertebrate Pest Management** Kevin Parker

**Bates Scholarship in Computer Forensics** Che Young

### Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Engineering In Society Scholarships

Richard Beal  
Robert Frost  
Daniel McLean  
Sue McLean

- Louisa Tse  
Arvind Vinjimoore
- Beca Carter Hollings & Ferner Engineering Scholarships**  
Bryn Harrison  
Rashmi Raghu  
Casey Smith  
Matthew Smith
- Bishop Music Scholarships**  
(Junior) Victoria Simonsen  
(Senior) Yuri Unkovich
- Broadcast Communications Ltd (BCL) Scholarship in Communications Engineering** Liang Dai
- Brookfields Lawyers Scholarship** Jane Norton
- Charlotte Emily Lubeck Scholarship**  
Inge Rademeyer
- Comalco Undergraduate Bursaries in Chemical & Materials Engineering** Blaine Morch
- Constance Herbert Memorial Music Scholarship**  
Julia Dibley
- Credit Suisse First Boston Scholarship in Finance**  
Daniel Huggins
- Croatian World Congress Scholarship**  
Dijana Erceg
- David R Mummery Memorial Scholarships in Law**  
Ronelle Barnes  
Katie Dow
- Denise Gerard Scholarships** Fiona Gillmore  
Jeremy O'Sullivan  
Alexandra Segrove  
Eimi Tamua  
Ruth Thomas-Edmond
- Dow AgroSciences Bursaries in Chemical & Materials Engineering**  
Audrey Sam  
Casey Smith
- Dr Marklena Milojkovic Memorial Scholarship**  
Chi Yan Wong
- Elam Art Scholarships** Fiona Gillmore  
Susanne Lawrence
- Electricity Engineers' Association Scholarships**  
Tommy Lee  
Damon Tahu
- Elizabeth Mary Phillips Scholarships**  
Stephen Charters  
Andrea Jutson  
Ann Livesey  
Kamla Mahony  
Kathy Ooi  
Emma Whitehead
- Ernest William File Scholarship** Craig Bovaird
- Europian Industries Limited Scholarship in Engineering** Shane Windsor
- Evan Gibb Hudson Scholarship in Engineering**  
Gavin Smith
- Evelyn M Harrison Scholarship** Jessica Smith
- F/O Alfred P Fogerty Memorial Scholarships**  
(1) Andy Fung  
(2) Daniel Meikle
- Faculty of Arts Masters/Honours Scholarships**  
Anthony Byrt  
Cecilia Johnson  
Emma Sinclair
- Gregory Stevens  
Sara Wagstaff  
Keri Whaitiri
- Frances Briggs Memorial Bursary in Plant Sciences (Junior)** Katrina Megget
- Frances Briggs Memorial Bursary in Plant Sciences (Senior)** James McKelvie
- Frederick Ost Scholarship in Architecture**  
Kirk Wooller
- Fundsource/New Zealand Funds Management BCom (Hons) Scholarship** Sasa Mandic
- Fundsource/New Zealand Funds Management Masters Scholarship** Linda Cai
- Fundsource/New Zealand Funds Management Scholarship in Finance** Fraser Maingay
- Geology Centennial Awards** Keri Ann Devine  
Wendy Hampton  
Ross Paterson  
Marie Slako
- George Mason Scholarship in Biological Sciences**  
Raechel Milich
- George Turner Wilson Music Trust Scholarships (Junior)**  
Rachel Alexander  
Lisa Chou  
Zhen Zhen Li  
Loata Mahe
- George Turner Wilson Music Trust Scholarship (Senior)** Harriet Moir
- GHD Bursary in Civil Engineering or Resource Engineering** Greer Lees
- Goodfellow Diploma Scholarship in Medicine & Health Science** Jemma Kuklinski
- Grace Kay Awards** Andrea Jutson  
Emma McKeown
- Hollinrake Memorial Scholarship**  
Roderick Skipp
- IPENZ Craven Scholarship for Postgraduate Research in Engineering** Heikki Hansen
- James G Goodfellow Memorial Scholarships**  
Susan Brownlie  
Daniel Heinrich  
Nicholas Williamson  
Liam Wotherspoon
- Janet Bain Mackay Memorial Scholarship**  
April Drummond
- Janet Schmidt Memorial Scholarship in Commercial Law** Misty Bailey
- Joe Raynes Scholarships** Sara Hughes  
Kiran Mckinnon
- John Baros Music Scholarship** Jenny Mandeno
- John Court Scholarship** Asha Chhagan
- John Hamel MacGregor Awards in Medical Science**  
Jackie Chau
- Kathleen Mary Reardon Memorial Music Scholarships**  
Simeon Broom  
Jia-Xin Cheng
- Kathleen Mary Reardon Travelling Scholarships in Music** Anna Maitland  
Katherine Wiles

- Kiwiplan Scholarship (2000)** Gareth Cronin
- Les & Sonia Andrews Scholarship**  
Chun Kuan Chiang
- Lissie Rathbone Additional Scholarship**  
Grace Bateman
- Lissie Rathbone Scholarships** Sally Morris  
Jesse Wilson
- Martyn Finlay Memorial Scholarship**  
To be Advised
- Macquarie New Zealand Ltd Scholarship in Finance**  
James Gutry
- Marie D'Albini Scholarship** Woo Young Choi
- Maurice & Phyllis Paykel Trust Research Scholarships**  
Sarah Beilby  
Qi Ding  
Stephen Jamieson  
Adam McGechan
- Maurice Paykel Graduate Scholarship**  
Yong Xiang Xu
- Maurice Paykel Undergraduate Scholarships (2000)**  
David Biggs  
Sarah Carmichael  
Aneela Lala  
Steven Sam  
Shane Rehm  
Gregory Wong
- Maxwell Walker Memorial Scholarship**  
Justin Graham
- McConnell Dowell Postgraduate Scholarship**  
Benjamin Wright
- Mercury Theatre Arts Management Scholarships**  
Catherine Cornish  
Karien Mannering  
Karen Yates
- Mervin Walter Stoddart Scholarship in Electrical & Electronic Engineering**  
Christopher Quill
- Methanex New Zealand Limited Scholarship in Engineering**  
Jason Law
- Methanex New Zealand Limited Scholarship in Marketing**  
Jane Chua
- Michael Joseph Savage Memorial Scholarship**  
Victoria Simonsen
- Mitsubishi Research Fellowship in Geothermal Technology**  
Fereydoun Ghazban
- New Zealand Association of Optometrists Undergraduate Awards**  
Catherine Heeney  
Shirley Ip  
Lynden Mason  
Divya Perumal  
Ian Russell  
Frances Ryan  
Kerensa Watson
- NZ Association of Rationalists and Humanists Scholarship**  
Claire Thoms
- NZSTI Scholarship**  
Leilani Whiting
- Orion Award For Excellence in Computer Science (2000)**  
David Maplesden
- Orion Scholarship in Engineering Science**  
Faramroze Engineer
- Paramount Scholarship in Property Management**  
Blair Franklin
- Pears-Britten Scholarship in Singing**  
Na Young Kim
- Peter John Butler Memorial Awards**  
Sandra Duncan  
Dejana Manic
- Professor Sally Harvey Memorial Scholarship in Spanish**  
Elly Sharp
- R J Mowat Memorial Scholarship in Geology**  
Rina Zuraida
- R N Brothers Memorial Award**  
Katie List
- Reardon Postgraduate/Honours Scholarships in Music**  
Simeon Broom  
Jia-Xin Cheng
- Rive Memorial Scholarship**  
Erin Atchison
- Robert Horton Engineering Scholarship**  
Jason Grant
- Russia-New Zealand Business Council Russian Language Scholarships**  
Joanna Greenland  
Karena Lyons  
Benjamin Whale
- Sagar Scholarship for String Players**  
Victoria Simonsen
- Sanders Memorial Scholarship**  
Philip Adamson
- School of European Languages & Literatures Scholarships**  
Judith Neale  
Stephen Resch
- Senior Scholarships**
- |                                                |                     |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Accounting &amp; Finance</i>                | Sandra-Lea Fox      |
| <i>Ancient History</i>                         | Robert Kirkness     |
| <i>Anthropology</i>                            | Portia Richmond     |
| <i>Architectural Studies</i>                   | Eu Chua             |
| <i>Architecture</i>                            | Sean Flanagan       |
| <i>Art History</i>                             | Robert Heald        |
| <i>Asian Politics</i>                          | Alyssa Phillips     |
| <i>Biological Sciences</i>                     | Andrew Dopheide     |
|                                                | James McKelvie      |
|                                                | Adrienne Meys       |
|                                                | Joanne Peace        |
| <i>Chemical &amp; Materials Engineering</i>    |                     |
|                                                | Narik Basmajian     |
| <i>Chemistry</i>                               | Kelly Fairweather   |
| <i>Chinese</i>                                 | Hi Chong Ko         |
| <i>Civil Engineering</i>                       | Wing Yin Law        |
| <i>Classical Studies</i>                       | Robert Kirkness     |
| <i>Commercial Law (Commerce)</i>               | Simone Hawke        |
| <i>Computer Science</i>                        | Lucja Kot           |
| <i>Economics</i>                               | Adithi Pandit       |
| <i>Education</i>                               | Bronwyn Bell        |
|                                                | Howard Rickman      |
| <i>Electrical &amp; Electronic Engineering</i> |                     |
|                                                | Arun Gopalakrishnan |
| <i>Engineering Science</i>                     | Sarah Healy         |
| <i>English</i>                                 | Jennifer Quilter    |
| <i>Film &amp; Television Studies</i>           | Eu Chua             |
| <i>Fine Arts</i>                               | Megan Church        |
|                                                | Fiona Gillmore      |
|                                                | Rochelle Mahon      |
| <i>French</i>                                  | Emma Sinclair       |
|                                                | Maria Vendetti      |
| <i>Geography</i>                               | Jody Grinter        |

- Geology Jennifer Eccles  
 German Tristram Collett  
 History Lindsay Diggleman  
 Indonesian Henning Borchers  
 International Business Adithi Pandit  
 Italian Katy Cameron  
 Japanese Jennifer Wilton  
 Korean Hoi Ming Wong  
 Latin Philip Allfrey  
 Law Lucy Barker  
 Kelly Moses  
 Linguistics Hilario de Sousa  
 Management & Employment Relations Catherine Munn  
 Management Science & Information Systems Stephen Witherden  
 Maori Studies Katherine Smith  
 Marketing Satish Ranchod  
 Mathematics (Applied) Kelsey Grant  
 Mathematics (Pure) Kevin Bleakley  
 Richard Vale  
 Mechanical Engineering Kenneth Kar  
 Music Alisa Willis  
 Optometry Nicola Bosma  
 Pharmacology Nai-Wei Shih  
 Philosophy Katherine Withy  
 Physics Joe Mok  
 Physiology Harriet St Clair Brown  
 Annie Reynolds  
 Fraser Gemmell  
 Planning Alyssa Phillips  
 Political Studies Megan Somerville-Ryan  
 Property Tracey Lochhead  
 Psychology Alexander Whitworth  
 Resource Engineering Anna Beltowski  
 Russian Nina Khouri  
 Scandinavian Studies Kathleen Gorringe  
 Sociology David Rawson  
 Spanish Emma Smith  
 Harriet St Clair Brown  
 Sport & Exercise Science Derek Law  
 Statistics Reena Mehta  
 Women's Studies
- Shirley Barker Calderwood Memorial Scholarship** Daniel Huggins  
**Siemens Audiology Scholarship** Anna McFedries  
**Sir Alexander Johnstone Scholarship in Law** James Blick  
**Sir James Gunson Scholarship** Asha Chhagan  
**Spring Scholarship for String Players** Julia Dibley  
**Steve Britton Scholarship** Edgar Bennett  
**Swedlund Music Bursary** Sarah McDowall  
**T R Johnston Scholarship** Ling Cai  
**Town Planning Silver Jubilee Scholarship** Justin Wilsher  
**UBS Warburg New Zealand Equities Ltd Scholarships in Finance** Stephen Ellis  
 Daniel Huggins  
 Sasa Mandic
- Uniservices Doctoral Scholarships** Juliet Newson  
**University of Auckland Alumni Association Undergraduate Scholarships** Shona Clarke  
 Marissa Gordon
- Talai Misi  
 Julia Moore  
 Stephen Ridgewell  
 Amanda Turner
- University of Auckland Doctoral Scholarships**  
 Christopher Allison  
 Boris Bizumic  
 Ludmila Botcheva  
 Antje Braren  
 Matthew Brown  
 Sarah Burke  
 Rachel Cameron  
 Stephen Collie  
 Beryl Fabian  
 Gwyn Fox  
 Andrew Gibbons  
 Soraya Gollop  
 Stephen Greenwood  
 Megan Heaney  
 Ben Howe  
 Victoria Inch  
 Masayoshi Ito  
 Amir Kaviani  
 Stephen Kurzeja  
 Mei San Loh  
 Ralph Maddison  
 Sally McAra  
 Sarah McDonald  
 Michelle Meiklejohn  
 Alexandra Monteith  
 Sarah Munro  
 Eugene Rees  
 Nicholas Reid  
 Geoffrey Roche  
 Bryony Sinclair  
 Victoria Smith  
 Karin Speedy  
 Megan Spence  
 Julie Thompson  
 Sarah Weakley  
 Christina Webb  
 Kevin Webb  
 Alex Wong  
 Liyun Wu  
 Agnieszka Zabicka
- University of Auckland International Doctoral Scholarships**  
 Carlos Barrera  
 Joern Nielsen
- University of Auckland Maori & Polynesian Graduate Scholarships (for Masters/Honours)**  
 James Aoina  
 Tia Dawes  
 Steven Gardiner  
 Michelle Jahnke  
 Irene Kereama-Royal  
 Sikimeti Ma'u  
 Marama Muru-Lanning  
 Sally Simpson  
 Hone Whatarau
- University of Auckland Maori & Polynesian Graduate Scholarships (for PhD)**  
 Edmund King  
 Justine Saunders
- University of Auckland Masters/Honours Scholarships**  
 Phillip Allfrey  
 Mladen Bizumic  
 Yuri Cath  
 Bonnie Chan  
 Eu Chua

Jan Cumming  
 Craig Davidson  
 Verite Davidson  
 Lindsay Diggelman  
 Andrew Douglas  
 Jennifer Eccles  
 Kelsey Grant  
 Maryann Green  
 Jennifer Hauraki  
 Glen Hazelton  
 Robert Heald  
 Sarah Henderson  
 Emma Herbert  
 Stephanie Hill  
 Anthony Hordern  
 Daniel Huggins  
 Brendan Kayes  
 Aaron Lloyd  
 Michael Loretz  
 Craig MacKinlay  
 Luke Nicklin  
 Adithi Pandit  
 Stephen Penk  
 Tracey Petley-Hibbs  
 Elizabeth Sherpa  
 Min Yau Teo

Jennifer Wilton  
 Stephen Witherden  
 Siew Fern Wong  
 Winnie Wong

**University of Auckland School of Engineering Undergraduate Scholarships**

Simon Freeman  
 Tae Soo Kim  
 Calvin Li  
 Bharathi Ponnampalm  
 Elisa Tan

**University of Auckland School of Engineering Masters Scholarships**

Nina Van Essen  
 Boaz Habib

**Vista Linda Graduate Scholarship**

Lara Anderson

**Westpac Institutional Bank Scholarship**

Ling Cai

**Wilhelm Penseler Scholarships in Music**

Woo-Sug Kang  
 Chia-En Lee

**Woolworths (NZ) Ltd Scholarships in Management & Employment Relations**

Petricia Alach  
 Christopher Marsh

**University of Auckland Prizes, 2000**

**A C Keys Memorial Prize** Emma Smith

**Agfa Awards in Photography** Kiri Schumacher  
 Shigero Takato

**A J Park & Son Intellectual Property Law Prize**  
 Lucy Boys

**A L Titchener Prize** Sally Butcher

**AIBF Prize in Financial Management** Karl Laird

**Alcon Prize** Kerensa Watson

**AmTrust Pacific Ltd Award** John Holmes

**Anne Webb Prize in Contract Law**  
 Christopher Tuckwell

**APC Marketing Prizes**  
 Jenny Ash  
 Maria Gregory  
 Vivianne Lintott

**Arnold Lillie Prize in Geology** Meredith Hill

**Arthur Sewell Prize in English** Jennifer Quilter

**Asian History Awards**  
 Cherry Worger  
 Geoffrey Worger

**Auckland Brick Manufacturers' Prize**  
 (First) Sik Chi Tse

**Auckland Classical Association Prizes**  
 (Greek) Christina Robertson  
 (Latin) Emilie Preston

**Auckland Pushkin Society Prize in the Russian Language** Rebecca Williams

**Auckland Women Lawyers Association Essay Prize**  
 Jane Norton

**Baldwin Shelston Waters Law and Information Technology Prize** Erica Brown

**Bartrum Memorial Prizes in Geology**  
 (Masters/Honours) Justin Franklin  
 (Stage III) Jennifer Eccles

**BDO Spicers Prize in Business Communication**  
 Roslyn Palmer

**BHP New Zealand Steel Prizes**  
 (Civil) (Shared) Meredith Langdon  
 Sjoerd van Ballegooy  
 (Mechanical) Yi Wui Yeo

**Boston Consulting Group Prize in Strategy**  
 Brendon Connolly

**Brandworks Design Prize** Sam Brodie

**Brookers' Employment Law Prizes**  
 Timothy Buckley  
 Anna Smith

**Brookers' Prize for Civil Procedure** Tania Laird

**Brookers' Prizes in Torts & Contract** Nina Khouri  
 Bevan Peachey

**BT-Pacific Prize in Radio Communications**  
 Alex Wong

**Butland Prize** Sarah Talbot

**Carl & Alberta Rosenfeldt Prizes in Chamber Music**  
 Yu-Hsin Chan  
 Amelia Giles  
 Siobhan Stubbs

**Carrick Robertson Prizes in Surgery** Tanya Selak  
 Simon Talbot

**Cecil M Segedin Prize in Engineering Science**  
 Sarah Healy

**Christine Roigard Memorial Prize**  
 Abigail Dawson

**CIMA Prize in Management Accounting**  
 Janine Martell

**Cogeneration Association Of New Zealand Prize**  
 Kenneth Kar

**Community Health Prize in Public Health**  
 Dale Bramley

**Concrete Prizes**

(Architecture) Richard Wang  
(Engineering) William Treymayne

**Da Vinci Brushes 1st Year Prize** Marie Ringrose

**Dalton Fine Papers Award** Nadia Hunt

**David W Pullar Prize** Nicholas Gow

**Davies-Sproule Memorial Prize** Susan Sheffield

**Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Prize in Taxation**  
Anna Moore

**Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Prizes in Advanced  
Financial Accounting**

(First) Michael Hawkins

(Second) Sandra-Lea Fox

**Dennis Brown Prize in Experimental Physics**

Phillip Allfrey

**Desmond Lewis Memorial Prize in International Law**

Belinda Bagge

**Derivan-Art Spectrum Painting Prize**

Julian Dyne

**Devon Industries Award** Martin Duhovic

**Douglas Mews Composition Prize**

Anthony Young

**Douglas Pharmaceuticals Prize in Clinical  
Communication Skills**

Nicola Smith

**Douglas Robb Prize** Sarah Talbot

**Dr R G McElroy Prize in Administrative Law**

Deborah Taylor

**Ernst & Young Prize in Cost & Management  
Accounting**

Roslyn Palmer

**Ernst & Young Prize in Financial Accounting**

Vicky Naiker

**Ernst & Young Property Project Award**

Aneliese Wolcke

**ESR Prize** John Wilson

**European Union Prizes** Judy Taso

Mable Yeung

**F A de la Mare Memorial Prizes** Justin Graham

Andreas Kistler

**F E R Noble Memorial Prize**

Megan Somerville-Ryan

**Fertility Associates Prize in Health Psychology**

Tiare Tolks

**Fowlds Memorial Prizes**

Architecture, Property, Planning & Fine Arts

Richard Cooper

Business & Economics

Nikola Dvornak

**Gary Davies Memorial Prizes** Robin Arthur

Paul O'Neil

**Gaze Burt Prize in Franchise Law**

Jonathan Cain

**Gaze Burt Prize for Master of Commercial Law**

Sandra Plummer

**George Hopkins Prize** Alisa Willis

**George S Holmes Memorial Prize**

Jason Shoebridge

**Gordon Harris Art Supplies Award**

Ruban Nielson

**Graham Ford Dawson Prize** Kathy Waghorn

**Hahnemule Printmaking Prize**

Siulolovao Moeakiola

**Harrison Grierson Prize for Technical Advances in  
the Water Industry** Thomas Haarhoff

**Hawkins Construction Ltd Construction Management  
Prizes** Richard Donnelly  
Tiffany Lester

**Haydon Prize** Tiopira McDowell

**ICANZ Prizes**

ACCTG 101 & ACCTG 102 Charlotte Doer

ACCTG 211 & ACCTG 222 Vicky Naiker

ACCTG 311, ACCTG 312 & ACCTG 321

(First) Sandra-Lea Fox

ACCTG 311, ACCTG 312 & ACCTG 321

(Second) Karrie Sampson

ACCTG 311, ACCTG 312 & ACCTG 321

(Third) Fiona Hii

**IEE Prizes**

(Electrical & Electronic) Adrian Pais

(Mechanical) Luke Baxter

**Iford Photography Prizes**

Katsu Ando

Christa Robertson

**Institute of Chartered Secretaries & Administrators  
Prize**

Richard O'Brien

**IRHACE Undergraduate Prizes**

(Shared) Rohit Bassi

Anupam Gupta

**J D K North Prize in Clinical Medicine**

Daniel Faulke

**J P Campbell Bursary** Kelly Moses

**J S Werry Prize in Psychiatry**

Simone Arden-Holmes

**James Gordon Goodfellow Memorial Prize**

Arun Gopalakrishnan

**Janetta McStay Prize for Pianists** Chia-En Lee

**Jeff Allen Memorial Prize in Geology**

Bridget Smith

**John Asher Prizes in German Literature**

(Stage I) Hannah Woolnough

(Stage II) David Hope

**John McLeod Prize in Public Health**

Harriet Patterson

**John Mulgan Memorial Prize** Hyun Kim

**John Tinline Prize in English**

Anderina McKinney

**Kenneth B Cumberland Prize in Geography**

Burnetta Van Stipriaan

**Kodak Photography Prizes**

(Studio V) Susannah McKenzie

(Studio IV) Asha Munn

Chisato Norioka

**KPMG Prizes in Auditing**

(First Prize) Natalia Somikova

(Second Prize) Evangelia Ling

**L H Briggs Memorial Prize** Claudette Weir

**Lailu Ram Sharma Prizes in Pacific Legal Studies**

Sarah Coster

Sisilia Eteuati

**Lamson Prize in Child Language and Literacy**

Hellen Inyega

- LEADR Prizes in Negotiation, Mediation & Dispute Resolution** Jennifer Logan  
Astrid Sandberg
- Les & Sonia Andrews Woodwind Prize**  
Alisa Willis
- Llewelyn Jones Prize in Music for Piano**  
Rohan King
- Loundes Jordan Prize in Corporate Legal Studies**  
Timothy Mitchelson
- Mainzeal Group Studies Prize** Shelley Christian
- Marian Cranwell Prize** Karen Denyer
- Michael Hirschfeld Award in Archaeology**  
Jonathan Carpenter
- Monier Prizes**  
(First Prize) Aaron Paterson
- Montgomery Memorial Prize** Lucja Kot
- Mosonyi Prize** Richard Donnelly
- New Zealand Aluminium Smelters Prize in Statistics** Carina Chan
- New Zealand Aluminium Smelters Undergraduate Prizes in Engineering** Ian Ho  
Yiu Wing Chan
- New Zealand Automobile Association Prize in Transportation Engineering** Bradley Rudtsits
- NZIOB Mechanical Engineering Prize**  
Ivan Milivojevic
- NZIOB Structural Mechanical Engineering Prize**  
William Tremayne
- New Zealand Law Review Prizes** Nina Khouri  
Bevan Peachey  
Alyssa Phillips
- New Zealand Property Institute Student of the Year Award** Megan Somerville-Ryan
- New Zealand Stock Exchange Prize**  
Seung Hun Yoon
- Nicholas Tarling Prize in History**  
Christopher Lucas
- Norman Thom Award** Javier Blanco
- Norman Thom Prize for Environmental Management**  
Jacquiline Rua
- Orion Award For Excellence in Computer Science**  
David Maplesden
- Paul Turtill Memorial Awards in Geology**  
Siaosi Kei  
Joanna Van Den Bergen
- Peg Wood Award** Lynden Mason
- Personnel Solutions Prize in Personnel Management**  
Wendy Thorpe
- PHD3 Prize** Jacinta Mauga
- Philip Graham Crabbe Memorial Prize**  
Narik Basmajian
- Philip Sidney Ardern Memorial Prize**  
Andrea Jutson
- Potter Interior Systems Prizes in Architecture**  
(B Arch Part I) Frank Wang  
(BAS Part III) Mabel Chan  
Alexandra Freyer
- PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Concepts** Kimberly Webb
- PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Information** Charlotte Doer
- PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Accounting Information Systems** Chun-Kit Fung
- PricewaterhouseCoopers Prize in Financial Management** Aimee Comer
- R E F Matthews Prize in Cellular & Molecular Biology** Claire Goldsbury
- R Morrison Cassie Memorial Prize**  
Rachel Wong-Chiu
- Rachael Award** Laura Ashton
- Raymond Harry Hawkins Prize in Undergraduate Optometry Research** Steven Hanson
- Real Estate Institute of New Zealand Prize**  
Aubrey Cheng
- Richards Prize in Primary Health Care**  
David Jensen
- Robert Chapman Prize in Political Studies**  
Joanna Hickey
- Roger Oppenheim Memorial Prize in Sociological Research** Sue Copas  
Stephen Garlick
- Roland Marleyn Prize in German Literature**  
Kelly Bolton
- Rosemary Grice Memorial Prize**  
Samuel Ostermann
- Royal NZ College of General Practitioners' Prize**  
Sarah Talbot
- RS Components Prize**  
(Electrical & Electronic) Christopher O'Brien  
(Mechanical) Kenneth Kar
- Sagar Geophysics Prize** Nicola Miller
- Schmincke Painting Prize** Natchez Hudson
- SETMA Timber Engineering Prize** Karl Jones
- Squire Speedy Prize in Property** Peter Dufaur
- Statistics New Zealand Prize** Lisa Madgwick
- Te Raukawhena Gretha Winiata Memorial Prize**  
Noeline Reeder
- T L Lancaster Memorial Prize in Botany**  
Mathew Von Konrat
- Teloman Award** Anton Petrov
- Tim Bailey Design Prize** Peter Henwood
- Tonkin and Taylor Prize in Geomechanics**  
Wing Yin Law
- Tonkin and Taylor Prize Limited Environmental Management Research Project Prize**  
Vanessa Clark
- Tony Cotton Memorial Prizes (Undergraduate)**  
Caroline Reid
- Traffic Design Group Prize in Traffic Engineering**  
Simon Cleaver
- Vernon Brown Memorial Award**  
Jane Hill
- Vice-Chancellor's Prize for the Best Doctoral Thesis in Each Faculty**  
APPFA Peter Diprose  
Arts Kuni Jenkins  
Bridget McPhail

<i>Business &amp; Economics</i>	Rhema Vaithianathan
<i>Engineering</i>	Darius Singh
<i>Law</i>	Adam Mikkelsen
<i>Medical &amp; Health Sciences</i>	Francis Bloomfield
<i>Science</i>	David Hewson Aimin Xu

**Vibrations Association of New Zealand Prizes**  
 Robert Butcher  
 Matthew Towers

**W E Henley Prize in Clinical Medicine**

Judy Yu-Fen

**Werner Droescher Prize In German Linguistics**

Anne Morrell

**William Jebson Memorial Award**

Kenneth Kar

**Yvonne Sogno Prizes in Finance**

(FINANCE 251)

Karl Laird

(FINANCE 361)

Dan Che

---

## Staff and Student Information

- 623 Accommodation Service
- 623 Campus Recreation
- 623 Careers and Employment Office
- 624 Chaplaincy
- 624 Childcare
- 624 Maidment Arts Centre
- 624 Parking
- 625 Rest Spaces
- 625 Room Bookings
- 625 Student Counselling
- 625 Student Learning Centre
- 625 University Health Service

### 625 **Student Loans and Allowances**

#### 626 **Associations**

- 626 The New Zealand University Students' Association
- 626 Auckland University Students' Association

#### 627 **University Policy**

- 627 Anti-Harassment Policy and Procedures
- 627 Equal Opportunity Programme
- 628 Intellectual Property Including Inventions and Patents
- 628 Public Comment
- 628 Smoke Free Policy
- 629 Student Learning and Research Grievances

---

## STAFF AND STUDENT INFORMATION

---

### Accommodation Service

The Accommodation and Conference Centre offers various accommodation options.

These are:

- Halls of Residence
- The Railway Campus
- Single Occupancy Self-catering
- Group Occupancy Self-catering
- Private Sector Accommodation

The office is located at 14-16 Mount Street. Information packs containing a common application form are available mid-August of each year, with the closing date of 31 October each year. Late applications are accepted for a waiting list. Noticeboards are maintained giving detail of accommodation available within private flats and houses. With the regularity of change, information from these noticeboards is unable to be given by telephone, facsimile or letter.

### Halls of Residence

There are three halls of residence available to full-time University students, with two-thirds of each hall allocated to new entrant applicants. Each offers three meals a day and each hall is available to both men and women. Pastoral care is provided by Residential Manager/Head of Hall personnel.

**Grafton Hall**, 40 Seafield View Road, Grafton, administered by the Presbyterian Methodist Congregational Foundation Inc., is within fifteen minutes' walk of the City Campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 204 students in single or twin rooms.

**International House**, 27 Whitaker Place, administered by the University, is within eight minutes' walk of the City Campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 172 students in single or twin rooms.

**O'Rorke Hall**, 16 Mount Street, administered by the University, is within three minutes' walk of the City Campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 352 students in single rooms.

**The Railway Campus**, 26-48 Te Taou Crescent, administered by Uni-Accommodation Limited, is within 12 minutes' walk of the City Campus. An accommodation option for 600 students that offers independence by way of the apartment-style living, combined with the pastoral care aspect provided by residential management personnel. Students are responsible for their own cooking and a state-of-the-art kitchen is available for use. Meal plans are available however, at @railcafe - the licensed cafe/bar located on-site.

---

### Campus Recreation

#### City Campus

The Centre has been designed to meet a comprehensive range of sporting and recreational needs. The facilities include: a Health and Fitness Studio, equipped with the latest Life-Fitness cardio equipment, an extensive range of machine and free

weights and qualified staff available to design personalised training programmes; a sports hall which is used for indoor soccer, basketball, badminton, volleyball etc.; an aerobics studio offering a diverse range of classes; a dance studio; four squash courts; and a state-of-the-art climbing wall.

Each semester, the Centre runs a recreation programme which offers tuition in a host of different activities including: ceroc dance, yoga, tai chi, massage, squash and many more. The social team sports programme is also run on a semester basis and provides the opportunity for participation in sports such as basketball, touch and indoor soccer.

Centre hours are:

Monday-Thursday	6.00am-10.00pm
Friday	6.00am-9.00pm
Saturday	9.00am-6.00pm
Sunday	9.00am-7.00pm

For further information visit the Centre at 17 Symonds Street or phone 373-7599 ext. 7888.

### Tamaki Campus

The facilities include a Health and Fitness Studio and a court space used for basketball, badminton, etc.

Centre hours are:

Monday-Friday	11.00am-6.00pm
Saturday/Sunday	CLOSED

For further information visit the Centre (next to the Student Common Room) or phone 373-7599 ext. 6889.

### Colin Maiden Park

Colin Maiden Park is an 18-hectare sports complex situated in Merton Road, Glen Innes, opposite the Tamaki Campus. Sports facilities provide for soccer, rugby, Australian Rules, and cricket, and are available for use by students and staff of the University.

For further information phone Mike Weaver on 373-7599 ext. 3942.

---

### Careers and Employment Office

The Careers and Employment Office offers advice and information to assist currently enrolled students to plan and achieve their career and employment goals. The services include: information resources, CV appraisal, advice about interview and job-seeking strategies, computer-based guidance, interview preparation and job-seeking workshops, as well as CV preparation seminars. These services are free to currently enrolled students of the University.

Students can talk with a Careers Adviser from 8.30am to 5.00pm Monday to Friday. No appointment is required.

Careers and Employment Offices are located at the City Campus and the Tamaki Campus. The City Campus office is in room 123 of the Clock Tower, phone 373-7599 ext. 8727. The Tamaki Campus

office is in the Student Centre, phone 373-7599 ext. 5241.

### Jobs4grads.net

www.jobs4grads.net is the official Graduate Recruitment website for the University. Updated daily and operating all year, this site provides ready access to a wide range of career opportunities. Jobs4grads.net also runs a series of Career Fairs, arranges on-campus employer presentations and produces a hard copy edition of the website advertisements.

---

## Chaplaincy

There is a team of chaplains who work together within the University providing pastoral care and support for students and staff.

### Chaplains

The Catholic Chaplains can be contacted through Newman Hall, and the Maclaurin Chaplains through Maclaurin Chapel.

### Newman Hall

Newman Hall is the centre for Catholic Chaplaincy and is situated at 16 Waterloo Quadrant. Mass is celebrated each weekday in the Newman Hall Chapel and the sacrament of reconciliation is available on request. Newman Hall is also a place for prayer, recreation, study and activities organised by the Catholic Students Society (Cathsoc).

### Maclaurin Chapel

Maclaurin Chapel complex is situated on the corner of Princes Street and Waterloo Quadrant and consists of a Chapel, study hall and offices. The Chapel is open 8.30am-4.30pm weekdays and may be used as a place of prayer for students and staff. The hall may be used by students for study and relaxation. A theological library is situated in the hall and books may be borrowed. The Chapel complex may be used by student and staff groups and hired for meetings or services of worship.

---

## Childcare

The University operates five centres for children of students and staff. The three creches in Wynyard Street are primarily available for the children of students. Based on hourly use up to a maximum of four hours at any one time, the creches are open from 8.00am-5.00pm, Monday-Friday. Casual use and holiday care is available.

Full-time places for the children of staff and students are available at Park Avenue Childcare Centre, adjacent to the School of Medicine. This centre is open from 7.45am-5.15pm, Monday-Friday.

Hinetaiwaiwa Te Kohanga Reo also offers full-time care within a Maori immersion programme. Te Kohanga Reo is situated behind the Maori Studies Department and the Marae. It is open from 8.30am-5.00pm.

All centres are licensed for children aged from three months to five years, and meet Ministry of

Education requirements for staffing. The University policy is to employ staff trained in early childhood care and education.

Early enrolment for places at all centres is advised.

---

## Maidment Arts Centre

The Maidment Theatre, opposite the University Library, Alfred Street, provides a venue for University and community performance events. The mainstage auditorium seats 450 and the Studio theatre 104.

Tickets for Maidment performances are available from the Foyer Box Office: Monday-Friday 10.00am-6.00pm, Saturday 1.00pm-6.00pm and one hour before each performance. Student and staff concessions are offered. Bookings: phone 308-2383 or 373-7599 ext. 4183.

---

## Parking

Street parking is available for two-wheel vehicles in Symonds Street between Alfred and Wellesley Streets, in Alfred Street, in Symonds Street between Grafton Road and the Human Sciences building, in Princes Street outside the Maidment Arts Centre, and in Park Road outside the Grafton Campus.

Provision has been made for bicycles in the following areas: Alfred Street - Concourse, Library; Princes Street - Physics Building; Symonds Street - Faculty of Architecture, Property Planning and Fine Arts and Faculty of Engineering, (Goods Entrance) and Lower Lecture Theatre, Thomas Building, UniServices, 58 Symonds Street, City Campus, Upper and Lower Concourses, Recreation Centre; Park Road - Grafton Campus. The above space allocation for bicycles may vary from time to time as various major projects are initiated; as a result of the current library expansion, for example, the bike racks have been relocated to an area opposite the pharmacy, behind Registry.

The Transit NZ land in lower Grafton Road has been available for student parking for some years pending redevelopment of the motorway exit and entry system. At the time of publication of this Calendar, Transit NZ has given notice that only part of this land will be available in 2002 and it will be progressively taken over as roading construction proceeds down Grafton Gully. Transit NZ will be demolishing buildings on the University side of Stanley Street and it is expected that some of this land will be developed for car parking during 2002. The option of providing a park and ride service between commercially operated car parks in the vicinity and the centre of the City Campus is also being investigated. Students may use the parking facilities in Wynyard Street (between Grafton and Alten Roads) without charge after 5.45pm any day of the week and at any time during weekends.

The parking building at 36 Princes Street is available for general parking after 5.45pm each evening and weekends.

---

## Rest Spaces

The University has a number of rest spaces which students and staff with disabilities are welcome to use. Enquiries should be made in the first instance to the Disability Coordinator.

---

## Room Bookings

University pool lecture theatres may be booked by departments, AUSA clubs and by outside organisations, on a casual or regular basis. For bookings phone 373-7599 ext. 7475. Bookings for the University Conference Centre in the School of Architecture are taken on 373-7599 ext. 4064.

All outside organisations are required to submit a room booking application form for approval. This form, together with a procedure guide, can be obtained from the room booking office (email: [roombookings@auckland.ac.nz](mailto:roombookings@auckland.ac.nz)). All bookings are confirmed in writing and include details of charges, where applicable.

---

## Student Counselling

Student Counselling is a free confidential service, providing counselling on a wide range of issues including: stress, anxiety, depression, relationship issues, and the impact of personal difficulties on academic performance. The service also provides students and staff with support in the event of an emergency on campus.

The members of the team are all well-qualified, experienced counsellors and psychologists. Where possible, culturally or gender appropriate counsellors are available.

All new clients are seen for an initial half-hour session, after which further counselling is arranged as required. These sessions can either be booked ahead or are available on the day.

If you need to be seen urgently, it is important to let reception know.

Location: Upper Floor East Wing, ClockTower Building (above Pharmacy), phone 373-7599 ext. 7895.

Hours: Monday-Friday 9.00am-5.00pm (and some evenings). Limited hours are available at Tamaki Campus, Student Affairs Building.

---

## Student Learning Centre

The Student Learning Centre (SLC) is staffed by academic tutors who help students develop effective learning and performance skills and/or overcome difficulties in their University study. Students at all levels, from first year undergraduate to PhD, are catered for.

A wide range of topics are dealt with including time management and study organisation, writing skills, test and exam skills, reading and note-taking,

critical thinking, memory and concentration, and motivation. Maths and statistics workshops are offered for students who have not studied these subjects for some years or who do not have the assumed background for first year courses in these subjects.

The Centre caters for the academic needs of Maori students through its Te Puni Wananga Programme, and for the needs of Pacific Islands students through the Fale Pasifika Programme.

The Centre has a comprehensive postgraduate skills development and support programme offering courses on topics such as thesis writing, research and data analysis. The Computer Skills Development programme provides courses and one-to-one tutorials to upskill students on computer and software use at all levels.

The Language Exchange Programme assists students to help each other with their language learning. In addition, a number of tutors at the Centre can evaluate the needs of students who may experience specific learning difficulties.

The SLC offers individual consultations by appointment, skills development courses, and daily drop-in times (Monday-Friday 11.00am-2.00pm) for urgent problems and quick questions.

The Centre office is Room G15 in the Old Choral Hall at the City Campus, and in the Student Resource Centre, Room 710.110, at the Tamaki Campus. There is a small registration fee for use of the Centre. Check out the SLC website: <http://www.slc.auckland.ac.nz>

---

## University Health Service

The University Health Service is free for Community Services Card holders, offering General Practice together with specialised advice for family planning, psychiatric and psychological problems, S.T.D., gynaecology, immunisation and travel advice, and minor surgery.

The staff consists of: five General Practitioners available for general and urgent consultations throughout the day; three Nurse Practitioners; and administrative staff.

**City Campus:** Upper Floor, East Wing, ClockTower Building (above Pharmacy). Phone 373-7599 ext. 7681/7682. Open Monday-Thursday 8.00am-7.00pm; Friday 8.00am-5.00pm (semester time only); and Monday-Friday 9.00am-5.00pm (semester breaks).

**Tamaki Campus:** Building 701.5 (located alongside Cafeteria). Open Monday-Friday 10.30am-1.30pm (semester time only).

**Medical & Health Science Campus:** 'Pink Cottage', 107 Park Road, Grafton. Open Monday-Friday 11.30am-2.30pm.

---

# STUDENT LOANS AND ALLOWANCES

From 1 January 1999, the responsibility for the processing of all Student Allowances was taken over by the Student Services Unit of the Department of

Work and Income New Zealand (formerly known as Income Support Service).

From 10 December 1999, the responsibility of processing all student loans was taken over by the Student Services Unit of the Department of Work and Income New Zealand.

Further information and publications may be obtained from the Student Services Unit of the Department of Work and Income New Zealand by contacting them on 0800-88-99-00 (or free fax on 0800-88-33-88).

## ASSOCIATIONS

### The New Zealand University Students' Association

NZUSA is a federation of five of the eight university students' associations (Auckland, Massey Palmerston North, Massey Albany, Victoria and Lincoln). In partnership with Te Mana Akonga, the national Maori university students' association, NZUSA represents university students nationally.

NZUSA has an office in Wellington which houses the two full-time Co-Presidents, a Research Officer and the NZUSA Women's Network Coordinator, in conjunction with Te Mana Akonga, the Aotearoa Polytechnics Students' Union and Student Job Search, with whom the building is shared.

NZUSA was established to represent the common and collective concerns of students. It is a political body, which works for change for students. Government, media and other national bodies look to NZUSA as the voice for students. As such, NZUSA gives Auckland University Students Association political clout, as well as providing a vehicle for student unity.

### Auckland University Students' Association

The Association is an Incorporated Society which was founded in 1891. For more than 100 years the Students Association (AUSA) has acted for the benefit of students both within and outside the University. The student body is an integral part of the University community and the members of AUSA are involved not only in the control of the University but also in fostering social, political, cultural and sporting activities within the University. AUSA is a society which is concerned with the problems and needs of students in their widest context.

In 1999, a referendum was held and voluntary membership of Associations of Students was adopted. The Education Act provides that from time to time a further referendum may be held and specifies the conditions under which Council may conduct such a referendum.

Students interested in the issue of compulsory versus voluntary membership are encouraged to enquire at AUSA reception or at the Clock Tower Student Information Centre. Students may now choose to pay the fee set by the AUSA in order to access the many benefits it provides.

#### Activities

There are over 100 clubs and societies affiliated to the Association covering many spheres of student interest. The sports clubs cater for almost all sporting interests and most participate in the local Auckland inter-club competitions and in national tournaments. The cultural societies cater for a wide range of religious, academic, social, cultural and political interests.

#### Administration

The control of the business and affairs of AUSA lies with the Executive Committee which is elected annually. It comprises a full-time President, four part-time Officers and 13 portfolio holders.

AUSA Representation Services is the link between individual students and the academic and administrative staff of the University. Students elect representatives to Senate, the University Council, departmental and faculty committees.

#### AUSA Services

The Students' Association provides a number of services at various locations in the Student Union, 3 Alfred Street, and the Tamaki Campus. These include: a typing and CV service, discounted movie tickets and bus tickets, insurance and drycleaning.

#### Advocacy and Representation Services

AUSA also provides representation and advocacy services to support students. These include: the Class Representative System (we provide training and support to Class Representatives), Student Committee Representatives (Class Representatives who are elected to sit on central University committees), the Student Advocacy Network (skilled student volunteers who can help with University or other problems), Student Law (free legal advice), and a Student Parent Resource Officer (SPRO - assisting parents on campus).

We believe that it is crucial that students have a voice within the University and encourage you to support us by becoming involved and by using our services. We are here to help you!

#### Cafeterias and Tavern

Seven campus cafeterias (Main Cafe, Engineering, HSB, Law School, Medical School and Tamaki Cafeterias, and the Jakarta Lounge coffee bar), the City Campus tavern Shadows, Bar None licensed cafe and the Cap and Gown Functions Lounge are operated by AUSA.

#### Campus Radio 95bFM

Campus Radio 95bFM provides an alternative

programme radio station on campus, based in the Student Union.

### University Book Shop

AUSA has a half interest in the University Book

Shop which stocks university texts and other books, stationery, Alumni memorabilia, etc. AUSA members are entitled to a 10% discount.

For further information contact AUSA Reception, AUSA House, 4 Alfred St. Phone 309-0789.

## UNIVERSITY POLICY

### Anti-Harassment Policy and Procedures

The University is committed to providing an environment within the University and all its facilities which is free from harassment and discrimination.

Harassment may be offensive behaviour or unwanted attention. It may involve an abuse of power to disadvantage, dominate, discriminate or insult. Whatever kind of harassment – sexual, racial, academic, religious or on other discriminatory grounds – it is totally unacceptable. The University's Council endorsed the above policy in 1984.

The University has set in place:

- procedures to investigate and/or resolve harassment complaints
- programmes to prevent the occurrence of harassment.

Procedures available for the *informal, confidential and expeditious* resolution of harassment complaints involve:

- The Resolve Network, drawn from staff and students throughout the University to listen to and discuss options for dealing with the harassment. Lists of Resolve Network members are available from all Departmental Offices or from posters on public noticeboards.
- The Mediator, who is also a part of the informal procedures. When mediation is required, the complaint is referred to the Mediator.

A complainant may approach the Mediator directly and may request a mediator of the same gender (for sexual harassment complaints). The Mediator coordinates the University procedures for dealing with harassment and provides educative activities relating to harassment.

The Mediator's Office is situated in Room 8 of the Lower Lecture Theatre Building. The Mediator can be contacted on ext. 7478 or 8905.

### Disputes, Mediation Service

The Mediator also functions as a disputes mediator. Any staff member or student may request the assistance of the Mediator in resolving a dispute.

Students or staff using the University's facilities should not hesitate in using these procedures if they feel they are being harassed.

### Equal Opportunity Programme

The University of Auckland is committed to creating a diverse, collegial, scholarly community in which individuals are valued, respected, and provided with equal opportunities. Its status as a university of international standing, recognised for excellence in teaching and research, and its service to local,

national and international communities, requires an academic environment in which talented staff and students from a wide range of backgrounds can flourish.

The University's EO Programme is conducted in compliance with statutory obligations under the State Sector Amendment Act 1989 and the Education Act 1990. It also acknowledges our special responsibilities under the Treaty of Waitangi. The University's academic and cultural life benefits from a strong core of Maori students and staff, and the contributions they make to Maori intellectual and social advancement. The production of high quality research on Maori issues, and of Maori staff and students with advanced academic and professional qualifications are a significant aspect of our service to New Zealand.

The EO Programme also aims to deliver equal opportunities to Pacific Islands people and other ethnic minorities, to those from low socio-economic backgrounds, to those with disabilities, to women in areas where they are under-represented, and to general staff. A university serving a small country must draw upon the widest possible pool of gifted people for its students and staff, in order to fulfil its academic potential. A diverse and high calibre student body contributes to a rich teaching and research environment, producing leaders for all sectors of New Zealand society. A diverse and high calibre staff can best cater for an increasingly cosmopolitan, multi-ethnic student body, linking the University with its regional and global communities.

The University opposes unfair discrimination on the grounds of gender, race or colour, ethnic or national origins, employment status, disability, family status, marital status, sexual orientation, age, religious or ethical belief, political opinion, or any other grounds. The EO Programme thus requires that all selection, appointment, promotion and evaluation processes should be based on impartial assessment of merit and the definition of merit is inclusive of diverse skills and contributions. Where necessary, procedures will be reviewed, training provided and assistance given in achieving the successful delivery of equal opportunities.

The development and monitoring of the EO Programme (see the EO Triennial Strategic Plan 2000-2002) are the responsibility of the Pro Vice Chancellor (EO), together with the EEO Advisor, the EEO Office, and the EO Committee. Faculty EO committees and a university-wide EO network also contribute to EO planning, reporting and consultation. Responsibility for disseminating and

implementing the programme is widely shared i.e. among Council, Senate, and their committees, and the Vice-Chancellor, Registrar, Deans and heads of Departments. The University has appointed Equity Advisors (including the EEO Advisor, Maori, Pacific Islands and Women in Science and Engineering, and the Advisors for Staff and Students with Disabilities), who are available to offer advice on all EO matters.

---

## Intellectual Property Including Inventions and Patents

*(Subject to review)*

When staff or students consider that during the course of their University activities a discovery or innovation has occurred which may have possibilities for commercial exploitation, the University requires them to disclose such a discovery to the University by informing the Auckland UniServices Limited. The Board of Directors of Auckland UniServices Limited would, in due course, make a decision as to its assignment to UniServices, its protection and its course of commercialisation. An agreement between the discoverer(s) and UniServices would then be entered into, such an agreement describing the obligations of the parties and the division of any income and expenditure.

Members of staff and students should know that prior to the granting of a provisional patent, publication is likely to render any research result unpatentable. It is not the wish of the University, however, that this circumstance should inhibit the free publication of research work.

Copyright of journal articles and books is not included in the above requirements and the copyright will remain with the author(s).

Where research contract agreements are being negotiated on behalf of the University with clauses regarding the ownership of data or results, or any future inventions or patents arising from the proposed research, then the University requires that Auckland UniServices Limited be consulted at an early stage of these negotiations to ensure that no commitments regarding such ownership are made to funding agencies which are in conflict with University policy.

Staff or students are not to use for commercial purposes any University resources, invention or development or computer program to which they have had access while at the University without the specific approval of the University obtained through the Head of Department concerned.

---

## Public Comment

Staff should ensure that their university title or association with the University is used in the media or in press correspondence only when they are commenting on a subject in which they have special competence and when there are no commercial or legal implications arising. For academic staff such subjects would normally be those within their area of academic competence. Students may refer to their links with the University in matters of general concern.

Staff commenting on matters of public interest outside their particular areas of expertise or responsibility should do so in a purely private capacity unless they have first obtained the specific approval of the University through the appropriate head of department or section.

Further details of University policy on this matter are set out in 'Statements to the News Media' on the University's website ([www.auckland.ac.nz/austaff/staff\\_guide.ptml](http://www.auckland.ac.nz/austaff/staff_guide.ptml)).

Subject to the above, staff and students should ensure that, in general, their correspondence or statements are not printed on University letterhead unless that correspondence or statement arises from a task the individual has been appointed by the University to undertake. Otherwise the use of University letterhead can give undue weight to the opinion of the author.

---

## Smoke Free Policy

### Introduction

The University of Auckland has adopted a 'smoke free' policy, in accordance with the provisions of the Smoke Free Environments Act 1990, for the following reasons:

- research indicates tobacco smoke affects an individual's well being and health;
- everyone is entitled to a smoke free environment in all public areas and their place of study or work.

The University recognises that the implementation of the 'smoke free' policy requires the cooperation of all members of the University and visitors.

### Policy

- 1 Smoking is not permitted in any building controlled by the University Council. This includes personal offices, public areas, lifts and stairways.
- 2 Smoking is not permitted in any vehicle controlled by the University Council at any time.
- 3 Smoking is not permitted in designated areas around air conditioning or ventilation system intakes. Such areas will be clearly marked.
- 4 Staff who wish to smoke should try to do so only during lunch or tea breaks and out of doors.
- 5 The international no smoking symbol will be displayed in all university controlled buildings, vehicles and other designated areas to remind University members and visitors of the 'smoke free' policy.
- 6 Members may complain to their supervisor or Head of Department if a person continues to smoke in any designated 'smoke free' area. The supervisor or Head of Department shall, within twenty days of the receipt of the complaint, investigate that complaint and, if it appears a contravention has occurred, shall try to resolve the complaint. In the event that a member of the University will not give an assurance that there will be no repetition of the cause of the

complaint the University will notify the Director General of Health at the Ministry of Health who is responsible for enforcing the provisions of the Smoke Free Environments Act.

- 7 At its first meeting each year the University Council shall review the 'smoke free' policy and shall, before making changes to the policy in accordance with the provision of the Smoke Free Environments Act 1990, consider any submissions received from members of the University or their representatives by the Registrar during the previous year.
- 8 Copies of the 'smoke free' policy are available from the Registrar on request and reminders

will be printed in Next Week at the commencement of each semester and from time to time in other University publications.

---

## **Student Learning and Research Grievances**

The University has put in place guidelines to address policy and procedures to resolve learning and research grievances as they may affect undergraduate students.

The policy and procedures document is available from the ClockTower Student Information Centre. Alternatively, you can contact an AUSA Student Advocate or the University Mediator for information.

---

## University Personnel

- 631 Officers of the University
- 631 The Council of the University
- 631 The Senate of the University
- 631 Deans
- 633 Tamaki Campus
- 633 New Zealand Asia Institute
- 633 Honorary Graduates
- 633 Honorary Fellows
- 633 The University of Auckland Distinguished Alumni Awards
- 633 Emeritus University Librarian
- 634 Professores Emeriti

### University Staff

- 635 Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts
- 636 Faculty of Arts
- 641 Faculty of Business and Economics
- 644 Faculty of Engineering
- 647 Faculty of Law
- 647 Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences
- 660 Faculty of Science
- 667 Joint Board of Studies in Theology
- 667 Auckland UniServices Limited
- 667 Centre for Professional Development
- 667 Centre for Continuing Education
- 668 Equal Opportunities
- 668 Finance Registry
- 668 Foundation Studies Programme
- 668 Human Resources Registry
- 668 Information Technology Systems and Services
- 668 Office of the Vice-Chancellor
- 669 Property Services
- 669 Student Administration
- 670 Student Learning Centre
- 670 University Library

---

## UNIVERSITY PERSONNEL

---

### Officers of the University

#### Chancellor

D. John Graham, MA (*Term ends 16.10.01*)

#### Pro-Chancellor

Lynton L. Stevens, QC, BCL Oxf., BA LLB  
(*Term ends 19.8.02*)

#### Vice-Chancellor

John A. Hood, MPhil Oxf., BE PhD

#### Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)

Raewyn Dalziel, BA PhD Well.

#### Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research)

Thomas H. Barnes, MSc, PhD UMIST, FRSNZ

#### Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor, and Registrar

Warwick B. Nicoll, BCom

#### Director of Administration

Jonathan W. Blakeman, MPP Well., BCom, DipLGA,  
FNZIM, CA

Pro Vice-Chancellor (International)

Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori)

Pro Vice-Chancellor (Tāmaki)

Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

All Professors (*and their equivalents*)

Heads of Departments and Acting Heads of Departments  
(*Sub-Professorial*)

Deans (*not being members of the Professorial staff*)

Librarian

Elected Members of the Sub-Professorial Staff (*four from the Faculty of Arts; two from the Faculty of Science; two from the Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts; one each from the Faculties of Business and Economics, Engineering, Law, Medical and Health Sciences; and six from the Sub-Professorial staff at large*)

#### Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

Mike Linzey (*Retires 31.1.03*)

Rosemary Scofield (*Retires 31.1.03*)

#### Faculty of Arts

Franco Manai (*Retires 31.1.03*)

Ken Larsen (*Retires 31.1.03*)

Claudia Marquis (*Retires 31.1.04*)

Mike Hanne (*Retires 31.1.04*)

#### Faculty of Business and Economics

Susan Laursen (*Retires 31.1.04*)

#### Faculty of Engineering

Pradeep Bonsal (*Retires 31.1.04*)

#### Faculty of Law

Rosemary Tobin (*Retires 31.1.03*)

#### Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences

Margaret Horsburgh (*Retires 31.1.04*)

#### Faculty of Science

Ruth Lyons (*Retires 31.1.03*)

David Alcorn (*Retires 31.1.04*)

#### Sub-Professorial Staff at Large

Paul McKechnie (*Retires 31.1.03*)

Margaret Goldstone (*Retires 31.1.03*)

Louise Nicholson (*Retires 31.1.03*)

Penny Brothers (*Retires 31.1.04*)

Noel Dawson (*Retires 31.1.04*)

Michael Townsend (*Retires 31.1.04*)

#### President, Auckland University Students' Association

Kane Stanford

Pam Skadiang

Five Student Members (*nominated by Auckland University Students' Association*)

Suarce Borell

Freya Johnstone

Stephanie Thompson

Maui Tate

Mark Van Zon

#### President, Auckland Consortium for Theological Education

Chief Executive Officer, Manukau Institute of Technology

Chief Executive Officer, Auckland University of Technology

---

### The Council of the University

#### Ex officio

#### Vice-Chancellor

John A. Hood, MPhil Oxf., BE PhD

#### Appointed by the Minister of Education

Hugh A. Fletcher, MBA Stanford, BSc MCom  
(*Term ends 1.2.03*)

D. John Graham, MA (*Term ends 31.12.01*)

G. Gregory Taylor, MA (*Term ends 1.2.05*)

...

#### Court of Convocation

Lynton L. Stevens, QC, BCL Oxf., BA LLB  
(*Term ends 19.7.03*)

The Hon. Justice Susan Glazebrook, MA LLB DPhil  
Oxf., DipBus (*Term ends 20.10.05*)

John Morris, MA (*Term ends 19.7.03*)

#### Appointed by Council

G. Roger W. France, BCom, CA (*Term ends 19.8.05*)

Jennifer B. Gibbs, MA (*Term ends 14.12.03*)

Peter F. Menzies, ME (*Term ends 13.4.03*)

#### Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)

Raewyn Dalziel, BA PhD Well. (*Term ends 19.7.05*)

#### Elected by Students

...

...

#### Elected by Academic Staff

Richard L.M. Faull, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD DSc,  
FRSNZ (*Term ends 31.3.05*)

#### Elected by General Staff

Kim Hope, MEd (*Term ends 31.3.03*)

#### Elected by Lecturers

Kenneth J. Larsen, PhL Rome, MA PhD Camb.  
(*Term ends 31.3.03*)

#### Professor Elected by Senate

Warren Moran, MA NZ, PhD, FRSNZ.  
(*Term ends 31.3.05*)

---

### The Senate of the University

Chairman: The Vice-Chancellor

Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)

Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research)

---

### Deans

#### Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

##### Dean

Michael H. Pritchard, BSc Wales, DipTP, MNZPI

##### Associate Dean

...

**Faculty of Arts****Dean**

Douglas G. Sutton, MA PhD *Otago*

**Associate Deans**

W. R. Barnes, BA *Syd.*, MA PhD *Camb.*

Wim Hüsken, DrPhil *Nijmegen*

T. L. Sturm, CBE, PhD *Leeds*, MA

...

**Assistant Deans**

Melani Anae, MA PhD

Kuni Jenkins, MA PhD

Frank Lichtenberk, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Hawaii*

Fiona E. C. McAlpine, MA *Well.*, DèS *L Paris*

Heather Worth, MA, PhD

**Faculty of Business and Economics****Dean**

Barry H. Spicer, BCom *Qld.*, PhD *Wash.*

**Deputy Dean**

Michael Powell, PhD *Chic.*, MA

**Executive Director (Executive Programmes)**

Philippa Reed, MA, DPhil

**Associate Dean (Research)**

Basil M. H. Sharp, BAgCom *Cant.*, MS PhD *Wis.*,  
DipAg DipVFM *Lincoln*

**Associate Dean (Undergraduate Programmes)**

Susan S. Laurenson, MCom MA

**Associate Dean (Postgraduate Programmes), Acting**

John S. Deeks, MA *Camb.*, DipPM L.S.E

**Associate Dean (Development and Communications)**

Geoffrey Lorigan, MSc LBS, PhD *Cal.Coast*, MBA

**Faculty of Engineering****Dean**

Peter W. Brothers, PhD *Colorado State*, BSc, BE,  
MASME, MASHRAE, FIPENZ

**Associate Dean (Undergraduate)**

J. Elizabeth Godfrey, MSc

**Associate Dean (Postgraduate)**

Richard G. J. Flay, BE PhD *Cant.*, CEng, FIMechE,  
MASME, MSNAME, FIPENZ

**Associate Dean (Continuing Education)**

J. Des Tedford, BSc(Eng), PhD *Belf.*, CEng, MIEE

**Associate Dean (Research)**

Allan G. Williamson, BE PhD, CEng, FIEE, FIERE,  
Sen.Mem.IEEE, FIPENZ

**Associate Dean (International)**

Ian F. Collins, MA PhD *Camb.*, FIMA, CMath, FIPENZ,  
MASME, MASCE

**Faculty of Law****Dean**

Julie K. Maxton, LLB *Lond.*, LL.M *Cant.*, PhD

**Deputy Dean**

Neil Campbell, LL.M *Camb.*, BCom LLB

**Deans of Students**

P. Devonshire, LLB *Birm.*, LL.M *Alta. (to 28.2.02)*

Rosemary Tobin, DipEd *Massey*, BA LLB *Mjur*  
(from 1.3.02)

**Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences****Dean**

Peter J. Smith, MBBS, BSc, MD, *Qld.* FRACP, FRCPA

**Associate Dean (Planning) and Deputy Dean**

Murray D. Mitchell, DPhil *Oxon*, DSc *L'Pool*, CChem,  
FRSC, FRSNZ

**Associate Dean (Research)**

Ingrid M. Winship, MBChB MD *Capetown*

**Head of School of Medicine**

D. Norman Sharpe, MBChB MD *Otago*, Dip ABIM, Dip  
ABCVDIs, FRACP, FACC

**Head of School of Biomedical and Health Sciences**

Robert R. Kydd, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRANZCP

**Tumuaki****Associate Dean – Maori**

Colin Mantell BMedSci *Otago*, MBChB *Otago*, PhD,  
FRCOG, FRNZCOG

**Assistant Deans****Academic and Admissions**

Noel J. Dawson, BSc PhD, *N.E.*

**Bioinformatics and Biotechnology**

John Fraser, BSc *Well.*, PhD

**Biomedical Sciences**

Bruce Smail, BE BSc *Cant.*, DIC PhD *Lond.*

**Flexible Learning and Information Technology**

Ross McCormick, MBChB, MSc, PhD, FRNZCGP

**Foundation and Equity Programmes**

Lorna Dyall, MSocSci, MPublicPolicy, DipComH

**Health Sciences and Public Health**

John Raeburn, MA, PhD, *Queens, Ont.*

**Nursing**

...

**Pharmacy**

John P. Shaw, BSc, PhD *Brighton*, DipClinPharm  
*Aston*, FNZCP, FRPharmS, MPS

**Postgraduate and Continuing Medical Education**

John Windsor, BSc *Otago*, MBChB, DipObst, MD,  
FRACS, FACS

**Student Affairs**

...

**Teaching and Learning**

Margaret Horsburgh, DipEd, MA EdD *C. Sturt*,  
FCNA(NZ), RGON, RM

**Undergraduate Medicine**

Phillippa Poole, BSc, MBChB, FRACP

**Faculty of Science****Dean**

A. Richard Bellamy, BSc *NZ*, MSc PhD, FRSNZ

**Deputy Dean (Research)**

John C. Montgomery, BSc *Otago*, PhD DSc *Brist.*,  
FRSNZ

**Associate Dean (Academic Programmes)**

Margaret Goldstone, MSc, DipBus, DipTching

**Associate Dean (Finance and Planning)**

Peter L. Hosking, BA *NZ*, MA *Cant.*, PhD *S.Ill.*

**Associate Dean (Students)**

Duncan J. McLennan, BSc *NZ*, MSc PhD *Well.*, DSc

**Associate Dean (HR)**

George R. Clark, PhD DSc, FNZIC

**Assistant Dean (International)**

Thomas Brittain, BSc PhD *ScD E.Anglia*, CChem,  
FRSChem, FNZIC

**Assistant Dean (Tamaki)**Robert Marshall, BPE, MSc, *Alta.*, PhD *W.Aust***Assistant Dean (Postgraduate)**Corinne A. Locke, BSc PhD *Liv.* FGS**Joint Board of Studies in Theology****Honorary Acting Dean**David E. Richmond, MBChB, BD, MPHEd, MD FRACP  
FRCP  *Lond.*, DipABIMed**Tamaki Campus****Pro Vice-Chancellor (Tamaki)**Ralph P. Cooney, BSc PhD DSc  *Qld.*, FRSNZ, FRACI,  
FNZIC**Registrar**

Philip N. Rama, MA

**Division of Science and Technology****Head of Division**Robert Marshall, BPE, MSc *Alta.*, PhD *W. Aust***New Zealand Asia Institute****Director**2001 James L. Kember, BA *Well.*, PhD *Lond.***Fellow and Emeritus Professor**Nicholas Tarling, MNZM LittD *Camb.*, Hon LittD,  
FRAS, FRHistS**Fellow**Bryce Harland, MA *NZ***China Studies Centre****Director**Paul Clark, MA AM PhD *Harv.***Associate Director**Wei Gao, BE *Northeastern*, MSc BCRI DPhil *Oxf.*,  
MASM MAIME MTSM**Japan Studies Centre****Director**

...

**Associate Director**T. H. Barnes, MSc PhD *UMIST*, MSPIE *MjpnSocApplPhys***Korea Studies Centre****Director**Young Hee Lee, MA PhD *Hawaii***Research Associates**1997 Xin Chen, MA *Peking*, PhD *Hawaii*1997 Ahmad Habir, MA *Ohio*, DipIntBus, MBA  
*Georgetown*, PhD *ANU*1997 Yuanfei Kang, MA *Peking*William Tai Yuen, BA *Nanyang*, MPhil *Hong Kong***Honorary Graduates**Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth,  
the Queen Mother

LLD 1966

Sir Ian Barker

LLD 1999

George Samuel Beca

DEng 2001

Edward George Bollard

DSc 1983

Judge Michael John Albert Brown

LLD 1992

Sir Ron Carter

DEng 2001

Anastasios Christodoulou

LLD 1992

Dame Sian Elias

LLD 1999

Richard Henry Lindo Ferguson

LLD 1986

Sir Raymond William Firth

DLitt 1978

David Fulton Fowlds

ME 1987

Maurice Gee

DLitt 1999

Douglas Goodfellow

LLD 1999

Paakariki Harrison

DLitt 1991

Vaughan Frederick Randal Jones

DSc 1992

Dame Kiri Te Kanawa

MusD 1983

Richard Dennis McEldowney

DLitt 1986

Sir Donald McIntyre

MusD 1992

Janetta Mary McStay

MusD 1992

Sir Colin Maiden

LLD 1994

Sadako Ogata

LLD 1996

Bridget Margaret Ogilvie

DSC 1998

Maurice Paykel

LLD 1992

Merimeri Penfold

DLitt 1999

Walter Scheel

LLD 1978

Thomas W. Schnackenberg

DEng 2001

Maurice Francis Richard Shadbolt

DLitt 1997

William Kendrick Smithyman

DLitt 1986

Sir Graham Davis Speight

LLD 1983

Peter Nicholas Tarling

DLitt 1996

Dame Catherine Tizard

LLD 1992

Takutai (Doc) Wikiriwhi

D(UoA) 1999

Lorna Alva Wilson

MA 1995

Dame Dorothy Gertrude Winstone

LLD 1983

Leslie Colin Woods

DSc 1983

**Honorary Fellows**

Jennifer Barbara Gibbs

1995

Gaewyn Elizabeth Griffiths

2001

Sir John Ingram

1997

Brian Hall Picot

1998

Ian Brampton Reynolds

1995

**The University of Auckland****Distinguished Alumni Awards**

Gretchen Albrecht

1999

Ian Athfield

1997

Emeritus Professor Bruce Biggs

2001

Dr Alan Bollard

1998

Dorothy Butler

2001

Dr Penelope Brook Cowen

1998

Rt. Hon Dame Sian Elias

2001

Cyril Firth

1998

Hugh Fletcher

1996

Maurice Gee

1998

Bruce Harland

2000

Michael Jones

1997

John La Roche

1999

Emeritus Professor Sir Graham Liggins

1998

Elsie Locke

1996

Dr Sidney Mead

1999

Dr Claudia Orange

1997

Brian Peace

2001

Hon. Justice Judith Potter

1997

Trevor Richards

1996

Mary Schnackenberg

1996

George E Smith

2000

Alan Smythe

1999

Dame Cheryll Sotheran

1999

Sir Laurence Stevens

2001

Dr James Watson

2001

Sir Wilson Whineray

1997

Richard Yan

1996

**Emeritus University Librarian**1998 Peter B. Durey, BA *Durh.*, FLA, ALAA, FNZLA

## Professores Emeriti

- Colin James Alexander, MBChB NZ, MD *Otago*, HonFRSCR, FRACR, HonFACR (Anatomy) (Retired 1986)
- Peter Bartlett, BArch, NZ, PhD, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA (Architecture) (Retired 1993)
- Dame Patricia R. Bergquist, DBE, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FRSNZ (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1999)
- Peter L. Bergquist, MSc, PhD NZ, DSc, FRSNZ (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1994)
- Conrad Blyth, MA NZ, PhD, *Camb.* (Economics) (Retired 1995)
- Archibald Gordon Bogle, BE NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, CEng, FIEE, FIPENZ (Electrical Engineering) (Retired 1978)
- Geoffrey Peter Braae, MCom NZ, DPhil *Oxf.* (Economics) (Retired 1987)
- Frederic Morris Brookfield, BA, LLB, NZ, DPhil *Oxf.* (Law) (Retired 1996)
- Dennis Brown, DSc *Brist.*, FInstP, FRSNZ (Physics) (Retired 1967)
- Stanley Bullivant, PhD, DSc *Lond.*, FRSNZ, FAAAS (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1993)
- John C. Butcher, MSc NZ, PhD DSc *Syd.*, FRSNZ, CMath, FIMA (Mathematics) (Retired 1999)
- Richard Conrad Cambie, MSc, PhD NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC (Chemistry) (Retired 1996)
- Allan John Lewis Catt, MCom NZ (Economics) (Retired 1990)
- John B. Carman, BMedSc, MBChB NZ, DPhil *Oxf.* (Anatomy) (Retired 1998)
- Robert MacDonald Chapman, CMG, MA NZ, (Political Studies) (Retired 1988)
- Dame Marie Mildred Clay, DBE, MA, DipEd, PhD NZ, Hon DHL *Ohio State & Lesley Univ.* FRSNZ, FNZPsS, HonFNZEI (Education) (Retired 1990)
- David Simpson Cole, CBE, BMedSc MBChB NZ, FRCS, FRACS (Medicine) (Retired 1989)
- Edwin Richard Collins, OBE, MSc NZ, PhD *Birm.*, FIP, FRSNZ (Physics) (Retired 1982)
- Brian Coote, CBE, LLM NZ, PhD *Camb.*, (Law) (Retired 1994)
- Kenneth Brailey Cumberland, CBE, MA *Lond.*, DSc NZ, FRSNZ (Geography) (Retired 1978)
- Brian Reeve Davis, MSc PhD NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc, FNZIC (Chemistry) (Retired 1995)
- Robert W. Doran, BSc *Cant.*, MSc *Stan.*, FNZCS (Computer Science) (Retired 1998)
- John Charles Dower, AB MD *Johns H.*, FRACP (Paediatrics) (Retired 1987)
- John L. Duncan, BMedEng *Melb.*, MSc PhD *Manc.*, FASM, FIDENZ (Mechanical Engineering) (Retired 1998)
- Robert Ellis, ARCA, RBA, MFIM, FRSA, MDINZ (Fine Arts), ONZM (Retired 1994)
- Robert B. Elliott, MBBS MD *Adel.*, FRACP (Paediatrics) (Retired 1999)
- John B Gavin, BDS NZ, PhD DDS DSc *Otago*, FRCPath, FRCPA, FFOP (Pathology) (Retired 2001)
- A. S. G. Green, MA *Camb.*, PhD *Edin.*, DipHistArt *Lond.* (Art History) (Retired 1997)
- Roger Curtis Green, BA BSc *New Mexico*, PhD *Harv.*, FRSNZ, MANAS (Anthropology) (Retired 1991)
- David Hall, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) (Retired 1984)
- Stuart W. Heap, MBBS *Lond.*, FRACR, FRCP (Anatomy with Radiology) (Retired 2001)
- Brian Dutton Henshall, BSc PhD DSc *Brist.*, CEng, FRAeS, FNZIM (Management Studies) (Retired 1987)
- Peter David Hensman Godfrey, CBE, MA MusB *Camb.*, HonFRSCM, FRCO, ARCM (Music) (Retired 1983)
- Peter Barrie Herdson, BMedSc MBChB NZ, PhD Northwestern, FRCPA (Pathology) (Retired 1986)
- Graham L. Hill, MBChM *Otago*, MD *Leeds*, FRACS, FRCS, FACS (Surgery) (Retired 2000)
- George William Hinde, LLM NZ, LLD (Law) (Retired 1987)
- Kenneth James Hollyman, MA NZ, DU *Paris* (French) (Retired 1987)
- Anthony B. Hooper, MA NZ, PhD *Harv.* (Anthropology) (Retired 1992)
- David John Hooton, MSc NZ, PhD *Edin.*, FInstP, FNZIP, CPhys (Physics) (Retired 1987)
- Henry Kaye Ibbertson, MBChB NZ, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (Retired 1991)
- R. J. Irwin, MA NZ, PhD Tufts., FAPS, FNZPsS (Psychology) (Retired 1999)
- John Kalman, MA NZ, AM PhD *Harvard* (Mathematics) (Retired 1993)
- Sir Hugh Kawharu, Kt, BSc NZ, MA *Camb.*, MLitt DPhil *Oxf.* (Maori Studies) (Retired 1993)
- Alick Charles Kibblewhite, MSc NZ, DIC PhD *Lond.*, FInstP *Lond.*, FNZIP, FASA CPhys (Physics) (Retired 1989)
- Walter Kirkpatrick Lacey, MA *Camb.* (Classics and Ancient History) (Retired 1987)
- Sir Graham Collingwood Liggins, CBE, KB, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRCS *Edin.*, FRACS, FRCOG, FRNZCOG, FRS, FRSNZ (Obstetrics and Gynaecology) (Retired 1987)
- Peter J. Lortmer, MSc NZ, PhD *McG.*, FRSNZ (Mathematics) (Retired 1998)
- Peter G. Lowe, BE NZ, MA *Camb.*, MEngSc *Syd.*, PhD *Lond.*, CEng, FIPENZ, MICE, FIEAust (Civil and Resource Engineering) (Retired 2001)
- Peter H. Lovell, BSc PhD *Sheff.* (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1999)
- John Marbrook, MSc PhD (Molecular Medicine) (Retired 1996)
- Arthur Harold Marshall, BArch BSc NZ, PhD *Stanton.*, FNZIA, FRAIA, FASA (Architecture) (Retired 1996)
- Raymond Francis Meyer, BE NZ, PhD *Manc.*, FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ, FRAeS (Mechanical Engineering) (Retired 1996)
- John Edward Morton, QSO, MSc NZ, PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSNZ, HonFLS (Zoology) (Retired 1989)
- Charles Nalden, CBE, BMus *Durh. & Lond.*, DMus *Lond.*, (Music) (Retired 1974)
- John Derek Kingsley North, CBE, MBChB NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (Retired 1991)
- David Murray Paton, MBChB *Cape T.*, MD DSc *Witw.*, FRCPCan, FRACP, CBiol, FIBiol (Pharmacology) (Retired 1988)
- Alan R. Poletti, MSc NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, FInstP, FAPS, FNZIP, FRSNZ, CPhys (Physics) (Retired 1999)
- Raymond K. Ralph, MSc NZ, PhD DSc *NSW.* (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1993)
- Arved Jaan Raudkivi, Diplng (Civil) *Tallinn & T.H. Braunschweig*, DRIngEh *Braunschweig*, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ (Civil Engineering) (Retired 1986)
- Alistair G. C. Renwick, MA, MD, PhD, CChem, FRSC, FRCPath, FRCPE (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1993)
- D. E. Richmond, MBChB NZ, MD *Otago*, MHPEd *NSW.*, DipABIM, DipABNeph, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (Retired 1998)
- Robert B. Riddell, MA *Camb.*, PhD *N'cle. (U.K.)*, DipTP *NZ*, ARICS, MNZPI, MNZIS (Planning) (Retired 2000)

- John F. Rimmer, BA NZ, MusD *Tor.*, MA (Music) (Retired 1999)
- W. R. Roper, MSc NZ, PhD *Cant.*, FRS, FRSNZ, FNZIC (Chemistry) (Retired 1999)
- Jolyon D. Saunders, DipFA NZ, DipIndDes, NDD, FDINZ (Fine Arts) (Retired 1997)
- Forrest Smyth Scott, MA MLitt *Camb.* (English) (Retired 1985)
- George A. F. Seber, MSc NZ, PhD *Manc.* (Statistics) (Retired 1999)
- Cecil Marin Segedin, MSc NZ, PhD *Camb.*, C.Math, FIMA, FIPENZ (Theoretical & Applied Mechanics) (Retired 1981)
- K. Krister Segerberg, BA *Col.*, Fil Dok *Uppsala*, PhD *Stan.* (Philosophy) (Retired 1992)
- Sir John Scott, KBE, BMedSc MBChB NZ, MD *Birm.*, FRSNZ, FRCP, FRACP (Medicine) (Retired 1996)
- John Desmond Sinclair, MD BMedSc, FRACP (Physiology) (Retired 1993)
- D. I. B. Smith, MA NZ, DPhil *Oxf.* (English) (Retired 2000)
- M. P. K. Sorrenson, MA NZ, DPhil *Oxf.* (History) (Retired 1996)
- Christian Karlson Stead, CBE, MA NZ, PhD *Brist.*, LittD *FRSL* (English) (Retired 1986)
- Russell Cyril James Stone, MA NZ, PhD (History) (Retired 1989)
- James Bruce Tabb, BCom NZ, PhD *Sheff.*, MCom, FCA, (Accounting and Finance) (Retired 1990)
- Peter Nicholas Tarling, MNZM MA PhD LittD *Camb.*, Hon LittD, FRAS, FRHistS (History) (Retired 1996)
- Peter Whitaker Taylor, BSc BE NZ, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ, FASCE (Civil Engineering) (Retired 1986)
- Gillian M. Turner, MBBS *Lond.*, FRCOG FRNZCOG (Obstetrics and Gynaecology) (Retired 1999)
- R. J. I. Walker, MA PhD (Maori Studies) (Retired 1998)
- Thomas Neil Morris Waters, MSc PhD NZ, DSc, FNZIC, FANZAAS (Chemistry) (Retired 1983)
- Philip Richard Hylton Webb, MA LLB *Camb.*, LLD (Law) (Retired 1987)
- Barry J. Welch, MSc NZ, PhD DSc, FRSNZ, FICHEM, FRACI, FNZIC, MNorskATS, MAIME, CEng, CChem (Chemical and Materials Engineering) (Retired 1998)
- John Scott Werry, BMedSc, MBChB NZ, MD *Otago*, DipPsych McG., FRCPCan, FRANZCP (Psychiatry and Behavioural Science) (Retired 1991)
- Henry Arthur Whale, MSc NZ, PhD *Camb.*, FIP, Sen.Mem.IEEE (Electrical Engineering) (Retired 1983)
- Allan A. Wild, BArch NZ, RIBA, Life Member NZIA, FRSA (Architecture) (Retired 1993)
- Jack Lionel Woodward, BE NZ MAsc *Tor.*, CEng, FIEE, FIEAust, FIPENZ (Electrical and Electronic Engineering) (Retired 1991)
- Euan C. Young, MSc NZ, DIC PhD *Lond.* (Biological Sciences) (Retired 1995)

## UNIVERSITY STAFF

Dates given are dates of taking up full-time employment. Where Degrees and Diplomas are shown without the name of the awarding university, the university is Auckland. ♦ Denotes a part-time permanent appointment.

### Faculty of Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts

#### Dean

Michael H. Pritchard, BSc *Wales*, DipTP, MNZPI

#### Associate Dean

...

#### Faculty Registrar

Gretchen A. Lutz-Spalinger, BA *Calif.*

#### IT Manager

Matiu Carr, BArch

#### Senior Research Fellow

Robert J. D. Vale, MA DipArch *Camb.*, PhD *Nott.*

### ARCHITECTURE

#### Head of School

John G. Hunt, BArch NZ, PhD, FNZIA

#### School Manager

Carol Murray

#### Professors

1993 Errol J. Haarhoff, BArch PhD *Natal*, MSc *H-W.*, DipUD, ISAA *Colleague*, NZIA

1979 John G. Hunt, BArch NZ, PhD, FNZIA

1996 Brenda A. Vale, MA DipArch *Camb.*, PhD *Sheff.*, RIBA

#### Associate Professors

1979 Clinton A. Bird, MA DipUD *Oxf.* *Brookes*, BArch, NZIA *Colleague*

1979 Hayden B. Willey, MA PhD *Camb.*, BArch MSc, MIES (Aust&NZ)

#### Senior Lecturers

1994 Diane J. Brand, BArch, MArch(UD) *Harv.*, RAIA, ANZIA

1999 Christopher Cuttle, MA *Manc.*, FCIBSE, FIESANZ, FIESNA

1970 John D. Dickson, BArch PhD

1974 George Dodd, BSc *R'dg.*, MSc PhD DipAud *S'ton.*

1981 Ross Jenner, BA *Otago*, BArch

1979 Michael P. T. Linzey, BE *Cant.*, PhD *Melb.*, ME

♦1998 Gary Mason, BArch

1995 Jules C. Moloney, BArch MA (UD) *Westminster*

1979 Kerry J. Morrow, DipArch *Melb.*, FRMIT, ANZIA

♦1993 Spencer F. Nicholls, BE NZ, MICE, FIPENZ

1993 Koung Nyunt, BArch *Rangoon*, ME DEng *Kyoto*

1991 Rosemary Lee Scofield, MArch, ANZIM, RegArch

1990 Peter L. Sheppard, BArch, DipTP, ANZIA

♦1988 Nick J. Stanish, BArch, ANZIA

1993 Brian Taggart, DipArch *Liv.*, FCSD, RIBA, ANZIA

1991 Garry M. Tonks, BArch PhD, ANZIA

1981 Sarah Treadwell, BArch PhD

♦2000 Robert J. D. Vale, MA DipArch *Camb.*, PhD *Nott.*

1995 Charles Walker, BArch, PGDip, *H.-W.*, MSc

(UrbDev) *Strath.*, ARIAS

1982 Anthony Ward, DipArch *Birm.*, PhD, RIBA

#### Lecturers

1995 John B. Chapman, BE DipEd, MIPENZ, MACENZ

1994 Srdja Hrisafovic, BArch *Sarajevo*, DipArch *Copenhagen*, MBS *Los Angeles*

1992 P. Michael Milojevic, BArch *Tor.*, MArch, *Ill.*

#### Senior Tutor

1998 Judy Cockeram, BArch

**PROPERTY****Head of Department**

...

**Departmental Manager**Myriam Benito, BSc *St. Louis*, MM *Philippines***Professor**

...

**Senior Lecturers**

2001 Sandy G. Bond, MBS *Massey*, PhD *Curtin*  
 1993 Ivan M. Johnstone, BSc *Otago*, BArch PhD  
 1986 Deborah S. Levy, BLE *Aberd.*, MPA, MRICS, FNZPI  
 1996 Gregory M. Schwann, BA *Qu.*, MA PhD *Br.Col.*

**PLANNING****Head of Department**Jennifer E. Dixon, MSc *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*, MNZPI**Departmental Manager**✦ Emilia Kabzamalova, DipArch *Softa*, MPlanPrac**Professor**2000 Jennifer E. Dixon, MSc *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*, MNZPI**Associate Professor**1993 Thomas W. Fookes, MA *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*, DipTP, MNZPI**Senior Lecturers**

1987 Patricia M. Austin, BSc *Sus.*, BPhil *N'cle. (U.K.)*  
 1994 R. J. Michael Gunder, MA *Br.Col.*, PhD, MCIP, MNZPI, MRAPI  
 1994 Bruce Hucker, BD *Otago*, PhD *Princeton*  
 Theological Seminary, MA  
 1995 Prudence Taylor, LLM *Well.*, LLM *Tulsa*  
 ✦ 1986 L. Anthony Watkins, BArch *NZ*, MArch DipTP, FNZIA, RIBA

**Lecturers**

2000 Hana T. A. Crengle, LLB, LLM *Well.*  
 1989 James D. Lunday, BA *Glas.*, MA *Oxf. Brookes*,  
 DipUrbDesign, MRTPI  
 ✦ 2000 Hugh Lusk, BHortSci *Massey*, DipLA  
*Lincoln(NZ)*, ANZILA  
 ✦ 1995 Marjorie van Roon, MSc  
 1999 Craig Whitehead, BSc *E.Anglia*, FRGS

**Senior Tutors**

1997 Elizabeth Aitken Rose, BA *Well.*, MTP  
 1998 Colleen H. Pendergrast, BTP

**Tutor**

1995 Catherine A. Edmeades, BA BPlan

**FINE ARTS****Head of School**Michael R. Dunn, MA *Melb.*, DipFA *Cant. & Auck.*, PhD**Deputy Head**

Carole M. Shephard, DipFA, MPhil

**Department Manager**Gita Prasad, BA., PGDipBA., MBA (*Fiji*)**Professor**1979 Michael R. Dunn, MA *Melb.*, DipFA *Cant. & Auck.*, PhD**Associate Professor**

1989 Carole M. Shephard, DipFA, MPhil

**Lecturers**

1997 Derrick Cherrie, MFA  
 1977 P. E. Dadson, DipFA  
 1990 John Fairclough, MA *Middx P.*, Dip AD ATD *Liv.*

1995 Rodney Fumpston, ASP *Lond.*, MFA1997 Brett D. Graham, MFA *Hawaii*1997 Nuala Gregory, BA FA PGDipFA *U. of Ulster Belfast*

1985 Megan L. Jenkinson, BFA

1994 Peter Shand, MA PhD

1978 R. Mel Simpson, MFA *Ill.*1980 Bret G. de Thier, DipFA *Cant.*, MDINZ

1971 John B. Turner

1980 Denys C. Watkins, DipRCA *Lond.*, DipGD *Well P.*1994 Robyn Hughes, ASP *Lond.*, BFA, DipTchg *Auck.*

1997 Judy Miller, BFA MFA

1994 John Nicol, DipFA, MA

1998 Michael Parekowitz, BFA DipTchg

1994 Julainne Sumich, BA DipTchg MPhilFA

**Tutors**

Mathew Browne, MFA

James Cousins, BFA

Lisa Crowley, BFA, MFA

Josephine Do, BFA, MFA

Luise Fong, BFA

Lucy Holmes, MFA *Otago*Vicki Kerrm, BFA *Chelsea (Lond.)*, MFA

Leigh Martin, BA

James Moore, BFA

Ani O'Neill, BFA

Fiona Pardington, BFA

Caroline Rothwell, BA *Lond.*, MFA

Simon Shephard, BFA

Jim Speers, BFA

**Faculty of Arts****Dean**Douglas G. Sutton, MA PhD *Otago***Associate Deans**W. R. Barnes, BA *Syd.*, MA PhD *Camb.*Wim Hüskén, DrPhil *Nijmegen*T. L. Sturm, CBE, PhD *Leeds*, MA**Assistant Deans**

Melani Anae, MA PhD

Kuni Jenkins, MA PhD

Frank Lichtenberk, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Hawai*Fiona E. C. McAlpine, MA *Well.*, *Dèsl Paris*

Heather Worth, MA, PhD

**Faculty Registrar**Billie Harbidge, BA *Waik.*, MBA, DipTchg**RESEARCH UNITS, CENTRES AND INSTITUTES****Centre for Archaeological Research****Director**Simon Holdaway, MA *Otago*, PhD *Penn.***International Research Institute for Maori and Indigenous Education****Director**

Linda T. Smith, MA PhD

**Eru Pomare Research Fellow**Fiona Cram, MA, PhD *Otago***Institute for Research on Gender****Director**Alison Jones, BSc *Massey*, MPhil, PhD**Senior Research Fellow/Deputy Director**

Heather Worth, MA, PhD

**Assistant Research Fellow**

Karen McMillan, BA, MA

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**Louisa Allen, PhD *Camb.*, BA, MA

Rhonda Shaw, BA, MA, PhD

**The James Henare Maori Research Centre****Director**Richard Benton, MA PhD *Hawaii***Peace Studies****Director**

Robert E. White, PhD DSc

**Centre for Child and Family Policy Research****Director**

Vivienne A. Adair, MA PhD

**Professional Ethics****Directors**Jan Crosthwaite, MA *La Trobe.*, PhD *Melb.*Tim Dare, PhD *Alta.*, BA LLB *Mjur***Research Centre for Germanic Connections with New Zealand and the Pacific****Director**James J. D. N. Bade, MA *Well.*, DrPhil *Zür.***Research Centre for Interventions in Teaching and Learning****Directors**Dennis Moore, PhD *P&NG.*, MA DipEdPsychRichard Hamilton, MA PhD *Chic.***ANTHROPOLOGY****Head of Department**Geoffrey J. Irwin, PhD *ANU*, FRSNZ**Distinguished University Professor**1973 Dame M. Anne Salmond, DBE, CBE, PhD *Penn.*,MA, FRSNZ (*jointly with Maori Studies*)**Professors of Archaeology/Prehistory**1975 Geoffrey J. Irwin, PhD *ANU*, MA FRSNZ1982 Douglas G. Sutton, MA PhD *Otago***Professor of Social Anthropology**Roger Neich, BSc MA *Well.*, PhD *Berk.***Emeritus Professor of Prehistory**1961-66, 1973 Roger C. Green, BA BSc *New Mexico*,PhD *Harv.*, FRSNZ, MANAS**Associate Professor in Ethnomusicology**

1989 Richard M. Moyle, JP, MA PhD, LTCL

**Associate Professor in Prehistory**1973 Harry R. Allen, BA *Syd.*, PhD *ANU***Senior Lecturer in Anthropology**Paul Tapsell, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA**Senior Lecturers in Archaeology**1996 Melinda S. Allen, BA *Arizona*, MA *Hawaii*, PhD *Wash.*1999 Simon Holdaway, MA *Otago*, PhD *Penn.*1993 Thegn N. Ladefoged, MA PhD *Hawaii*1991 Peter J. Sheppard, BA *Wat.*, MA PhD *Tor.***Senior Lecturer in Ethnomusicology**1993 Gregory D. Booth, BMusEd *Temple*, MMus PhD *Kent State***Senior Lecturers in Social Anthropology**1995 Christine Dureau, MA *Monash*, PhD *Macq.*1994 Okusitino Mahina, PhD *ANU*1993 Karen L. Nero, BA *Wash.*, MA PhD *Berk.*1993 Juliet K. Park, MA PhD *Otago***Lecturers in Biological Anthropology**2000 Bruce Floyd, PhD *Oregon*1998 Judith H. Littleton, MA PhD *ANU*1998 Elizabeth A. Matisoo-Smith, BA *Berk.*, PhD**Lecturer in Ethnomusicology**

2000 Kirsten Zemke-White, MA, PhD

**Research Fellows**

Dilys A. Johns, MA

Martin Jones, BSc, BA

**Honorary Professorial Research Fellow**Judith W. Huntsman, ABPnd *Bryn Mawr*, MA *Brown***ARCHIVE OF MAORI AND PACIFIC MUSIC****Director**

Richard M. Moyle, JP, MA, PhD, LTCL

**APPLIED LANGUAGE STUDIES AND LINGUISTICS****Head of Department**Rod Ellis, MA *Leeds*, MEd *Bristol*, PhD *Lond.***Head of Linguistics and Deputy Head of Department**W. Scott Allan, MA PhD *Edin.***Professors of Applied Language Studies**1998 Rod Ellis, MA *Leeds*, MEd *Bristol*, PhD *Lond.*1966-72, 1986 Alan Kirkness, BA, NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA**Associate Professor in Applied Language Studies**2000 Cathie Elder, MA *Melb.*, PhD**Senior Lecturers in Linguistics**1985 W. Scott Allan, MA PhD *Edin.*1973 D. Ross Clark, BA *Br.Col.*, PhD *Calif.*1980 Frank Lichtenberk, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Hawaii*1992 Donna Starks, BA MPhil *Nfld.*, PhD *Manit.***Senior Lecturers in Applied Language Studies**2001 Gary Barkhuizen, BA, HDE Rhodes, MA *Essex*,EdD *Columbia*

1991 Marilyn Lewis, Licence ès Lettres Besançon, MA

*Melb.*, DipTchg**Lecturers in Linguistics**2000 Elaine Ballard, MA *Prin.*, PhD *C'nell*1991 Fay Wouk, MA *Mich.*, CPhil PhD *UCLA***Lecturer in Applied Language Studies**1998 Helen Basturkmen, BA *Lond.*, MSc *Metu*, DipTefla, PhD *Aston***Senior Tutor in Linguistics**1997 A. Helen Charters, MA DipLing *ANU***Senior Tutors in Applied Language Studies**

1987 Jackie Greenwood, MA, DipTchg

2000 Rosemary Wette, DipTchg, DipSLT *Massey*, MA2001 John Tomlins, BA *New University of South West England*, MEd(TESOL) *Manc.***ART HISTORY****Head of Department**Elizabeth A. Rankin, BA PhD HDipLib *Witw.***Professor of Art History**1998 Elizabeth A. Rankin, BA PhD HDipLib *Witw.***Associate Professors**1973 Leonard B. Bell, DipArtHist *Edin.*, BA PhD1974 Iain B. Buchanan, BA *Manc.*, MA *Essex***Senior Lecturers**1969-71, 1975 Elizabeth E. Eastmond, MA *Edin.*

1992 Francis N. Pound, MFA PhD

1971 Alan J. Wright, MA *Edin.***Lecturers**

1997 Ngarino Ellis, MA LLB

1997 Rangihiroa Panoho, MA

1997 Caroline Vercoe, MA

1977 Robin L. Woodward, PhD *Edin.*, MA**Senior Tutor**1985 Donald J. D. Bassett, PhD *Edin.*, MA, DipNZLS

**SCHOOL OF ASIAN STUDIES****Head of School**Richard T. Phillips, MA PhD *Camb.***Professor of Chinese**1993 Paul Clark, AM PhD *Harv.*, MA**Professor of Japanese**

...

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1994 Matthew Allen, BA PhD *Syd.*  
 1994 Greg Bankoff, BA *Portsmouth*, DipEd PhD *Murd.*  
 1994 Timothy E. Behrend, BA *Brigham Young*, MA *Wis.*,  
 PhD *ANU.*  
 1984 Manying Ip, BA *HK*, MA PhD  
 1987 Wayne P. Lawrence, MA *Tokyo U.F.S.*, PhD *Tsukuba*  
 1976 Richard T. Phillips, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 1974 Eric O. van Reijn, Drs *Ley*  
 1999 Grace Qiao Zhang, MA *Liaoning and Zhongshan*,  
 PhD *Edin.*

**Lecturers**

- 1999 Hilary Chung, MA *Camb.*, MA PhD *Durham*  
 1996 Young Hee Lee, MA PhD *Hawaii*  
 1995 Minru Li, MA *Sichuan*, MA PhD *Ohio State*  
 1998 Rumi Sakamoto, MA PhD *Essex*  
 1993 Tomoko Shimoda, BA *Jissen*, MA *Syd.*, DipEd  
*Tamagawa*  
 1999 Yukako Sunaoshi, BA *ICU Tokyo*, MA, PhD  
*University of Texas at Austin*  
 1989 Inshil Choe Yoon, MA *Seoul National University*,  
 PhD

**Senior Tutors**

- 1992 Chako Amano, BA *Waseda*  
 1988 Nora Yao Xu, BA *Shanghai*, MA

**CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY****Head of Department**Marcus J. Wilson, BA LLB *Tas.*, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Monash***Administrative Staff**

Pauline E. Brill, BA

**Professor**1974 Vivienne J. Gray, PhD *Camb.*, MA**Associate Professors**

- 2001 E. A. Mackay, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Well.*  
 1981 A. J. Spalinger, BA *C.U.N.Y.*, MPhil PhD *Yale*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1971 W. R. Barnes, BA *Syd.*, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 1991 P. R. McKechnie, MA *Camb.*, DPhil. *Oxf.*  
 1987 Marcus J. Wilson, BA LLB *Tas.*, MA *Tor.*, PhD  
*Monash*

**Lecturers**

- 1990 D. J. Blyth, BA *Otago*, PhD *Northwestern*, MA  
 1993 T. R. Stevenson, BEc BA PhD *Syd.*

**Honorary Research Fellow**W. F. Richardson, MA *Camb.*, BA *Otago* PhD**CREATIVE AND PERFORMING ARTS, School of****Director**

2001 Alan Smythe, MA

**Director – Arts Management**1997 Tara Werner, BA *BMus Well.*, DipBus**Deputy Director**1993 Gregory Booth, *BMusEd Temple*, MA, PhD *Kent State***Technical Director**

Larry Elliott

**Senior Lecturer**1999 David Lines, *BMus Well.*, *MEd Massey*, DipTchg**Lecturers**

- 1999 Christopher Naughton, *LRAM*, *GBSM*, DipMusEd,  
 MA *York*  
 2001 Mary-Jane O'Reilly  
 2001 Jennifer Shennan, MA, ARAD  
 1997 Tara Werner, BA *BMus Well.*, DipBus.

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Roger Donaldson  
 Professor Barbara Kirshenblatt-Gimblett, MA, PhD *Berk.*

**DEVELOPMENT STUDIES, Centre for****Director**

...

**Acting Director**Maureen A. Molloy, BEd MA *Br. Col.*, PhD**Honorary Professor**Frederic C. Deyo, BA *Yale*, MA *Calif.*, PhD *Chic.***EDUCATION, School of****Heads of School**

- John A. Hattie, MA *Otago*, PhD *Tor.*, DipEd PGDipArts  
*Otago*, DipTchg  
 Tom Nicholson, MA *Syd.*, PhD *Minn.*

**Director Primary Teacher Education**

1996 John K. Hope, MA DipTchg

**Director Secondary Teacher Education**

1996 Graeme V. Aitken, MA DipTchg

**Professors**

- 1989 I. Roger Dale, BA *Leeds*, PhD *Brist.*, PGCE *Lond.*  
 1998 John A. Hattie, MA *Otago*, PhD *Tor.*, DipEd  
 PGDipArts *Otago*, DipTchg  
 1976 Stuart S. McNaughton, MA PhD  
 1973 James D. Marshall, BA PhD *Brist.*  
 1990 Tom Nicholson, MA *Syd.*, PhD *Minn.*  
 1993 Michael A. Peters, BA *Well.*, MA PhD  
 1988 Graham H. Smith, MA PhD  
 1988 Linda T. Smith, MA PhD

**Associate Professors**

- 1987 Alison Jones, BSc *Massey*, MPhil PhD  
 1985 Dennis W. Moore, PhD P&NG., MA DipEdPsych  
 1978 Roger A. Peddie, MA, DipD'EtSup *Pottiers*, PhD,  
 DipTchg  
 1976 Viviane M. J. Robinson, PhD *Harv.*, MA  
 1981 Michael A. R. Townsend, MA *Cant.*, PhD *Ill.*  
 1980 Keri M. Wilton, FIASSID, PhD *Alta.*, MA

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1994 Lydia B. Austin, BSc *Wat.*, MSc PhD *McG.*  
 1995 John Benseman, MEd *Massey*, DipTchg  
 1991 Eve I. Coxon, MA, PhD, DipTchg  
 1993 Robyn S. Dixon, MA PhD  
 1971 Johannes F. Everts, MA DipClinPsych *Cant.*,  
 PhD DipEdPsych  
 1996 Richard Hamilton, MA PhD *Chic.*  
 1992 Margie K. Hohepa MA PhD  
 1979 Kathryn C. Irwin, BA *Minn.*, MEd *Harv.*, PhD  
 1991 Judith M. Parr, BSc PhD *ANU*, MA  
 1995 Peter Roberts, MA DPhil *Waik.*  
 1997 Helen S. Timperley, MA PhD DipEdPsych DipTchg

**Lecturers**

- 1990 Margaret N. Agee, MA, DipGuid  
 1991 Kuni E. H. Jenkins, MA, PhD

2000 Jenny Lee, MA  
 1997 Leonie Pihama, MA  
 1997 David M. Salter, MSc PhD  
*(joint appointment with Chemistry)*

### ENGLISH

#### Head of Department

K. J. Larsen, PhL, STL Rome, MA PhD Camb.

#### Distinguished University Professor

1980 Brian D. Boyd, MA Cant., PhD Tor.

#### Professors

1972 Stephanie J. Hollis, BA Adel., PhD ANU  
 1964 M. P. Jackson, BLitt Oxf., MA NZ  
 1967 M. A. F. Neill, MA Otago, PhD Camb.  
 1980 T. L. Sturm, CBE, PhD Leeds, MA  
 1988 Albert Wendt, CNZOM, MA Well., Hon. Doct Dijon

#### Associate Professors

1970 W. T. L. Curnow, BA NZ, PhD Penn., MA  
 1973 K. J. Larsen, PhL, STL Rome, MA PhD Camb.  
 1992 Peter Simpson, MA Cant., PhD Tor.

#### Distinguished Creative Fellow in Maori Literature

1993 Witi Ihimaera, QSM, BA Well.

#### Senior Lecturers

1988 A. J. Calder, MA PhD  
 1991 Murray Edmond, BA, PhD  
 ♦1991 Michelle Leggott, MA Cant., PhD Br.Col.  
 1968 Aorewa P. McLeod, MA Well., BPhil Oxf., BA  
 1977 R. H. Nicholson, MA Well.  
 1987 Joanne C. Wilkes, BA Syd., DPhil Oxf.  
 1979 D. G. Wright, MA Cant., PhD Tor.  
 1981 M. J. Wright, MA Oxf., PhD N.E.  
 1993 Stuart B. Young, MA Well., PhD Camb.

#### Lecturer

1991 Sophie E. Tomlinson, BA Well., PhD Camb.

#### Senior Tutors

1971 Margaret A. Edgcumbe, MA  
 1994 Rosemary Lovell-Smith, BPhil Oxf., MA  
*Penn. & Cant., PhD Well.*  
 1991 Claudia Marquis, BA Ley., MA McM.  
 1991 Reina Whaitiri, MA  
 1991 Elizabeth Wilson, MA

#### Honorary Research Fellows

1971 Riemke Ensing, MA  
 1993 I. A. Gordon, CBE, MA PhD Edin., LLD Brist.,  
 DLitt NZ, DUniv Stir.  
 1986 Robin E. Hooper, MA PhD  
 1954 W. H. Pearson, MA NZ, PhD Lond.  
 1964 F. S. Scott, MA MLitt Camb.

### EUROPEAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES, School of

#### Head of School

Ian K. Lilly, MA Cant. & Monash, PhD Wash.

### COMPARATIVE LITERATURE

#### Coordinator of Comparative Literature

Michael D. Hanne, BA Oxf.

### FRENCH

#### Head of Department

Raylene Ramsay, MA Otago, DU Poitiers, DipLing Camb.

#### Professor

1994 Raylene Ramsay, MA Otago, DU Poitiers, DipLing  
 Camb.

#### Senior Lecturers

1992 R. Arnoux, DU Paris, MA DipHons, DipTchg

1972 G. Y. Ekambi, Dipd'EtSup Besançon, MA  
 1996 J. C. Pleau, BA Montr., MA MPhil PhD Yale

#### Lecturer

2000 T. M. Adams, BA Minn., MA Texas, PhD Johns H.

#### Honorary Research Fellows

J. Grant, MA NZ, PhD Tor., LLB, Dipd'EtSup Paris,  
 DipTchg, DipELT  
 K. J. Hollyman, MA NZ, DU Paris  
 B. D. McKay, DU Paris, MA DipTchg

### GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE AND SLAVONIC STUDIES

#### Head of Department

Friedrich Voit, DrPhil Saarbrücken, DrPhil habil, Siegen

#### Associate Professors of German

1978 Friedrich Voit, DrPhil Saarbrücken, DrPhil habil,  
 Siegen  
 1976 James J. D. N. Bade, MA Well., Dr Phil Zür.

#### Associate Professor of Russian

1975 Ian K. Lilly, MA Cant. & Monash, PhD Wash.

#### Senior Lecturer

1998 Wim Hüskens, DrPhil Nijmegen

#### DAAD Lecturer in German

2001 Sabine Fischer-Kania, MA Münster, DrPhil Münster

#### Lecturer in Russian

1997 Mark S. Swift, BA Iowa, PhD Bryn Mawr

#### Senior Tutor in German

1971 Uta Hagen, MA Freib.

#### Senior Tutor in Russian

1981 Hannah Brodsky-Pevsner, DipPhil Latvian State

#### Polish Heritage Trust Lecturer

1997 Sarah Cozens, MA PhD

#### Croatian World Congress Tutor

...

#### Honorary Research Fellows

James Braund, MA, PhD  
 Kathryn Smits, MA NZ, DrPhil Freib.  
 Gertraut Stoffel, MA

### ITALIAN

#### Head of Department

Bernadette Luciano, MA Stan., PhD, Col.

#### Associate Professor

1990 Bruno G. R. Ferraro, BA Syd., PhD Flin.,  
 DipScStLettIt Urbino

#### Senior Lecturers

1994 Bernadette Luciano, MA Stan., PhD Col.  
 1980 Laurence E. Simmons, MA, PhD Well.

#### Lecturers

1997 Daniela Cavallaro, Laurea Rome, DipFilHis  
 Salamanca, MA Ohio, PhD Nthwest  
 1993 Franco C. A. Manai, Laurea Pisa, PhD Brown

#### Senior Tutor

1993 Gabriella Brussino, MA

### LATIN AMERICAN STUDIES PROGRAMME

#### Programme Coordinator

Matthew O'Meagher, BA Otago, PhD Duke

### SPANISH

#### Head of Department

...

**Prince of Asturias Professor**

...

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1987 Christine R. Arkininstall, MA *Oviedo*, BA PhD  
 1997 Roberto J. Gonzalez-Casanovas, BA MA MTS  
 PhD *Harvard*  
 1994 Kathryn Lehman, BA *Ill.*, PhD *Pitt.*  
 1995 Mercedes Maroto Camino, PhD

**Lecturer**

- 1996 Walescka Pino-Ojeda, PhD *Wash.*

**Senior Tutor**

- 1994 Wendy-Llyn Zaza, MA, PhD

**TRANSLATION STUDIES****Director**

- 1999 Sabine R. Fenton, MA *Maryland*, PhD *Syd.*,  
 DipEd *Geneva*

**FILM, TELEVISION AND MEDIA STUDIES****Head of Department**

- Roger Horrocks, BA *NZ*, MA PhD

**Professor**

- 1966 Roger Horrocks, BA *NZ*, MA PhD

**Associate Professors**

- 1993 Annie Goldson, BA *Otago*, MFA *New York*  
 1999 Nick Perry, BScSoc *Lond.*, BA *Strath.*

**Senior Lecturer**

- 1992 Laurence Simmons, MA, PhD *Well.*

**Lecturers**

- 1999 Stephen Crofts, BA *Camb.*, PdipFilmStudies *West.*,  
 MPhil *RCA*  
 2001 Luke Goode, BA, PhD *Notts Trent*  
 2001 Misha Kavka, BA *Prin.*, MA *Sus.*, PhD *C'nell*  
 1998 Shuchi Kothari, MA *Pune.*, PhD *Texas*  
 2001 Sarina Pearson, BA *Calif.*, MAVA *S.Calif.*,  
 1997 Nabeel Zuberi, BA *Nott.*, MA *Mich.*, PhD *Texas*

**Senior Tutor**

- 1995 Margaret Henley, MA, DipBrC, DipTchg

**HISTORY****Head of Department**

- 1982 Barry G. Reay, BA *Adel.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

**Professors**

- 1997 James C. Belich, MA *Well.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1966 Judith M. C. Binney, FRSNZ, CNZOM, BA *NZ*, MA  
 1982 Barry G. Reay, BA *Adel.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

**Associate Professors**

- 1993 Ruth Barton, MSc *Well.*, PhD *Penn.*  
 1970 H. M. Larcy, SIM, MA *Well.*, PhD *ANU*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1974 Judith O. Bassett, QSO, LLB MA  
 1988 Linda Bryder, DPhil *Oxf.*, MA  
 1992 Malcolm Campbell, BA PhD *NSW*  
 1993 Caroline Daley, BA PhD *Well.*  
 1997 Christian M. Leitz, BA *W.England*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1994 Deborah Montgomerie, PhD *Duke*, MA

**Lecturers**

- 1993 Matthew O'Meagher, BA *Otago*, PhD *Duke*  
 1997 Kim Phillips, BA *Melb.*, DPhil *York*  
 1999 Paul Taillon, BA *Northwestern*, PhD *Wisc.*  
 1998 Rawiri Taonui, MA DipBus  
 1999 Joseph Zizek, BSc BA *Alta.*, MA CPhil PhD *Berk.*

**MAORI STUDIES****Head of Department**

- Margaret S. Mutu, BSc MPhil PhD

**Distinguished University Professor**

- 1973 Dame M. Anne Salmond, DBE, CBE, PhD *Penn.*,  
 MA, FRSNZ (*jointly with Anthropology*)

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1994 Maureen Lander, BA MFA  
 1988 Margaret S. Mutu, BSc MPhil PhD

**Lecturers**

- 1993 Jane McRae, MA PhD  
 1998 Miki Roderick, BA *Waik.*  
 1998 Deanne Wilson, MA  
 1995 Kingi R. J. Wiri, MA  
 1995 Hineira Woodward, MA

**Senior Tutor**

- 1999 Dante Bonica

**MUSIC, School of****Head of School**

- Karen Grylls, BA *Otago*, MM PhD *Wash.*, MMus, LRSM,  
 LTCL, ONZM

**Deputy Head of School**

- James Tibbles, MMus

**Professor**

- 1983 Heath Lees, BMus MA *Glas.*, FTCL, HonFTCL

**Associate Professors**

- 1977 G. Warren J. Drake, BA *NZ*, PhD *Ill.*, MA  
 1990 Uwe A. Grödd, MMus *Mainz*  
 1991 Karen Grylls, BA *Otago*, MM PhD *Wash.*, MMus,  
 LRSM, LTCL, ONZM  
 1983 Tamas Vesmas

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1979 Coral Bognuda, 1er Prix (Violoncello) 1er Prix  
 (Musique de Chambre) *Paris*, ACM *Melb.*  
 1984 John A. Elmsly, BMus BSc *Well.*, 1er Prix (Comp)  
*Brussels*, LTCL  
 1980 Fiona E. C. McAlpine, MA *Well.*, DèS *Paris*  
 1974 David Nalden, BA *NZ*, 1er Prix (Violin) 1er Prix  
 (Musique de Chambre) *Brussels*  
 1975 Bryan A. Sayer, BA, DipMus, LRSM, ARCM, LTCL  
 2000 James Tibbles, MMus

**Lecturers**

- 2000 Glenese Blake  
 ♦1995 Eve K. de Castro-Robinson, DMus

**PACIFIC STUDIES, Centre for****Director**

...

**Acting Director**

- Melenaite Taumoeolau, BA GCE *S.Pac.*, MA *Wales*, PhD

**Lecturer, Cook Islands Maori**

- 1995 Rangī Moeka'a, BA, DipTchg

**Lecturer, Pacific Studies**

- 2000 Melani Anae, MA PhD

**Lecturer, Samoan Language**

...

**Lecturer, Tongan Language**

- 1996 Melenaite Taumoeolau, BA GCE *S.Pac.*, MA  
*Wales*, PhD

**Senior Tutor, Samoan Language**

- 1995 Vavao Fetui, MA, Dip TESL *Well.*

**PHILOSOPHY****Head of Department**

- Rosalind Hursthouse, MA, BPhil DPhil *Oxf.*

**Professors**

1981 John C. Bishop, BA ANU, PhD Camb.  
2002 Rosalind Hursthouse, MA, BPhil DPhil Oxf.

**Associate Professors**

1983 Stephen J. Davies, MA Monash, PhD Lond.  
1994 Roderic A. Girle, MA Dip.Div. Qld, PhD St.And.  
1974 Frederick W. Kroon, MA Prin. & Auck., PhD Prin.  
1969 Robert Nola, BSc NZ, PhD ANU, MA MSc

**Senior Lecturers**

1993 Gillian Brock, BSc BA Cape Town, MA PhD.Duke  
1989 Jan Crosthwaite, MA LaTrobe., PhD Melb.  
1993 Tim Dare, PhD Alta., BA LLB MJur  
1994 Christopher J. Martin, BA Sus.  
1999 Timothy P. Mulgan, BA Otago, DPhil Oxf.  
1985 Denis J. Robinson, BA Melb., BPhil Oxf., PhD Monash  
1978 Christine H. M. Swanton, DPhil Oxf., MA  
1995 Robert L. Wicks, BA Mich. State, MA PhD Wis.

**Lecturers**

2000 Stefano Franchi, Laurea in Filosofia Bologna, PhD Stan.  
1999 Jeremy M. Seligman, BA Oxf., PhD Edin.

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Hinne Hetteema, MSc, MA Groningen, PhD Nijmegen  
Jeffrey M. Masson, PhD Harv.  
Liberato Santoro-Brienza, PhD Gregoriana, Dottorato in Filosofia  
Stanislaw J. Surma, PhD, DSc Cracow  
Julian P. Young, MA Camb. & Wayne State, PhD Pitt.

**POLITICAL STUDIES****Head of Department**

Barry S. Gustafson, MA NZ, DipEd Massey,  
DipSovStud Glas., PhD

**Professors**

1968 Barry S. Gustafson, MA NZ, DipEd Massey,  
DipSovStud Glas., PhD  
1971 R. Andrew Sharp, BA NZ, MA Cant., PhD Camb.

**Associate Professor**

1972 J. Stephen Hoadley, BSc Purdue, MA Calif. State,  
PhD Calif.

**Senior Lecturers**

1979 Joseph B. Atkinson, MA Cant., PhD Yale  
1994 Rouben M. Azizian, MA Moscow Institute of  
International Relations, PhD Diplomatic Academy  
Moscow  
1997 Paul G. Buchanan, BA St Michael's, MA Georgetown,  
PhD Chic.  
1990 Helena D. Catt, MA Edin., PhD Lond.  
1984 Raymond K. Miller, BA McM., MA PhD, DipEd  
1993 T. Martin Wilkinson, BA DPhil Oxf.  
1993 Yongjin Zhang, BA Anhui, MA Amoy, DPhil Oxf.

**Lecturers**

1997 Timothy G. T. Tenbensel, PhD ANU  
1999 Jian Yang, BA Luoyang, MA Henan, MA PhD ANU

**Visiting Lecturer**

1997 Alan R. Cocker, MA, PhD

**Honorary Research Fellows**

E. Peter Aimer, MA NZ, PhD ANU.  
Graham W. A. Bush, MA NZ, PhD Brist., DipEd  
Kyung-Ho Park, MA Hankuk, DPA Georgia  
Elizabeth Rata, MA, PhD, DipEd Massey, DipTchg

**SOCIOLOGY****Head of Department**

Maureen Baker, MA Tor., PhD Alta.

**Professors**

1982 Ian R. Carter, BSc Bath, MA Essex, PhD Aberd.,  
FRSA  
1998 Maureen Baker, MA Tor., PhD Alta.

**Associate Professors**

1973 Cluny Macpherson, MA DPhil Waik.  
1977 Nick H. Perry, BA Strath., BSc(Soc) Lond.

**Senior Lecturers**

1972 David R. Bedgood, MA Cant., DPhil Waik.  
1986 Claudia Bell, BA Massey, MA PhD  
1997 Wendy Larnar, BSocSci Waik., MA Cant., PhD Car.  
1980-82, 1984 Lane Catherine West-Newman, MA  
Lond. & Auck., PhD

**Lecturers**

2000 David Craig, MA, PhD ANU  
1998 Bruce Curtis, BCom BA PhD Cant., DipTchg  
2000 Vivienne Elizabeth, BA PhD Cant.  
1999 Tracey McIntosh, MA  
2000 Steve Matthewman, MA PhD

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Ruth Habgood, MA, PhD  
Kitsiri Malalgoda, BA Ceyl., DPhil Oxf.  
David Tippin, MSc L.S.E., BA PhD Tor.  
Ivanica Vodanovich, DipHS Otago, DipSocAnthrop PhD  
Lond., BA

**WOMEN'S STUDIES****Director**

Maureen A. Molloy, BEEd MA Br.Col., PhD

**Professor**

1993 Maureen A. Molloy, BEEd MA Br.Col., PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

1998 Phyllis Herda, BA Arizona, PhD ANU, MA  
1996 Lee Wallace, BA Well., MA S'ton., PhD

**Lecturer**

1994 Eluned Summers-Bremner, BA Waik., MA Otago,  
PhD Cant.

**Faculty of Business and Economics****Dean**

Barry H. Spicer, BCom Qld., PhD Wash.

**Deputy Dean**

Michael Powell, PhD Chic., MA

**Associate Dean (Undergraduate Programmes)**

Susan S. Laurensen, MCom MA

**Associate Dean (Postgraduate Programmes), Acting**

John S. Deeks, MA Camb., DipPM L.S.E

**Associate Dean (Research)**

Basil M. H. Sharp, BAgCom Cant., MS PhD Wis.,  
DipAg DipVFM Lincoln

**Associate Dean (Development and Communications)**

Geoffrey Lorigan, MSc LBS, PhD Cal.Coast, MBA

**Executive Director (Executive Programmes)**

Philippa Reed, MA, DPhil

**ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE****City Campus****Head of Department**

Robert Wilton, BCom NSW, MCom, CA

**Departmental Administrator**

Herena Newall

**Professors**

2000 Charles Corrado, BA, PhD SUNY, PhD Arizona

1968-71, 1975 D. M. Emanuel, MCom PhD, FCA  
 2000 Shane Moriarity, BS, MA, PhD *Ill.*  
 1989 Barry H. Spicer, BCom *Qld.*, PhD *Wash.*  
 ♦1981-1988, 1992 Jilnaught Wong, MCom PhD, CA

#### Professor of Finance

1987 R. G. Bowman, BA *Pomona*, MS *San Diego State*,  
 PhD *Stan.*, CPA *Calif.*

#### Associate Professors

1993 Henk Berkman, MEcon PhD *Rotterdam*  
 2000 Rebel Cole, BA, PhD *N.Carolina*

#### Visiting Professor of Accounting

1999 Dan Dhaliwal, BS, MS, MA, PhD *Arizona*

#### Research Professor of Accounting

1999 W. Robert Knechel, BS, PhD *N.Carolina*

#### Senior Lecturers

1989 Lloyd M. M. Austin, MCom, CA  
 2000 Joe Cheung, BA, MSc *Missouri*  
 1987 C. Cliffe, BA MCom *Cant.*, CA  
 2000 David Hay, PhD, CA  
 1992 Desmond J. A. Heath, BSc *Rhodes*, MBA *Pret.*,  
 BCompt S.A., CA(SA), ACMA  
 1984 Michael G. Keenan, PhD *St.And.*, BCom MA, DipVal  
 1988 William A. A. Maguire, BCom *Natal*, MBL S.A.,  
 PhD *Cape Town*, CA S.A.  
 1991 A. D. E. Marsden, MCom, PhD, CA  
 1991 Farshid Navissi, BCom *Tehran*, MCom *Oklahoma*,  
 PhD  
 1971 Martin A. Perkinson, MCom, CA  
 1987 A. P. B. Rouse, MCom PhD CA  
 1985 Alan M. Teixeira, MCom CA PhD  
 1996 Robert Wilton, BCom *NSW*, MCom, CA  
 1992 N. Wong, MCom PhD

#### Lecturers

2000 Chris Akroyd, MCom *UNSW*, MCom *Kobe*  
 1999 Rachel F. Baskerville, MA, PhD *Otago*, MCA  
*Victoria*, CA  
 1995 Graeme C. Camp, MCom PhD  
 1996 Jeffrey R. Casterella, BS *Clarkson*, PhD *Colorado*  
 1989 Anne R. Davy, MCom CA, ACIS  
 2000 Julie Harrison, MCom, MTaxS, CA  
 1997 Jennifer McCartney BCom BSc  
 2001 Robyn Moroney MCom *Melb.*  
 2000 Winnie O'Grady, MCom  
 2001 Glenn Rechtschaffen, MA *Virg.Poly*, JD *UCLA*  
 1984 Derek M. Speer, MCom, CA  
 2000 V. G. (Sridar) Sridharan, BCom, ACA, AICWA,  
 Lic.CS *India*

#### Senior Tutors

1979 Kathryn Caird, BSc *Otago*, BCom  
 1991 Lilian J. P. Viitakangas, BBS *Massey*, MSc,  
 MNZIC

### COMMERCIAL LAW

#### City Campus

##### Head of Department

Ross B. Grantham, BCL *Oxf.*, LL.M

##### Departmental Administrator

Vonne Carmichael, BA Dip Arts Admin

##### Professors

1971 Ian Eagles, BA LLB *Qld.*, LL.M PhD *Camb.*  
 1994 Charles E. F. Rickett, LLB *Camb.*, BD *Melb.*, MA  
*Camb. & Oxf.*  
 1989 Ross B. Grantham, BCL *Oxf.*, LL.M

##### Senior Lecturers

1991 Michael Gedye, BCom LLB MComLaw

1985 M. Louise Longdin, BA LLB *MJur*  
 1996 Owen J. Morgan, BEd *Stud Qld.*, BA LLB *MJur*,  
 SJD *Melb.*

1995 Christopher M. Ohms, BCom LL.M PhD  
 1985 Michael J. Ross, BCom LL.M  
 1987 Kerrin Vautier, CMG, BA *Well.*  
 1991 Susan M. Watson, LLB *MJur*

#### Lecturers

♦1999 Bradley Botting, LLB MComLaw  
 2000 Charmaine Edward, BCom LLB  
 1999 Christopher Noonan, LLB  
 1995 Mark R. Keating, LLB, MTaxS

#### Senior Tutors

1999 Christopher Cornwell, LLB MComLaw  
 1992 Madeleine McFadden, LLB  
 1992 R. Marnie Prasad, LLB  
 1990 Barbara Rainsford, BA LLB MComLaw  
 2000 Audrey Sharp, MA MTaxS

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Senior Lecturer

1990 Christopher Nicoll, LLB

##### Lecturer

1991 Gehan Gunasekara, BA, LLB *Well.*, LL.M

##### Senior Tutors

1993 Philip A. Cook, BA LLB *MPhil*  
 1995 Paul Shenkin, LL.M *Lond.*

### ECONOMICS

#### Head of Department

Bryce Hool, BSc, MCom *Cant.*, PhD *Calif.*

#### Departmental Administrator

Trish Marsters

#### Professors

1996 Bryce Hool, BSc, MCom *Cant.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1992 Tim Hazledine, MA *Cant. & Otago*, PhD *Warw.*

#### Distinguished Alumnus Professor

1992 Peter C. B. Phillips, MA *Yale*, PhD *Lond.* MA

#### Emeritus Professor

Conrad A. Blyth, MA *NZ*, PhD *Camb.*

#### Associate Professors

1983 Anthony M. Endres, MSocSc *Waik.*, PhD *W'gong*.  
 1999 Ian P. King, BA *C'dia.*, MA PhD *Qu.*  
 1984 Sholeh A. Maani, MS PhD *Ill.*  
 1991 Tim J. Maloney, BA MS PhD *Wis.*  
 1990 Basil M. H. Sharp, BAgCom *Cant.*, MS PhD *Wis.*,  
 DipAg DipVFM *Lincoln*  
 1998 Julian K. D. Wright, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *Stanford*

#### Senior Lecturers

1997 Reiko Aoki, BS *Tokyo*, MA *Tsukuba*, MS PhD  
*Stanford*  
 1993 Debasis Bandyopadhyay, BSc *Cal.*, MA *Flor.*,  
 PhD *Minn.*  
 1999 Kathrin M. Boardman, BSc MCom *Cant.*  
 1997 John B. Hillas, BA *BEcon Qld.*, PhD *Stanford*  
 1972 Kenneth E. Jackson, BA PhD *Kent*  
 1988 Mia Mikic, MS MSc *St.M.*, PhD *Zagreb*  
 1986 Alan J. Rogers, AM PhD *Prin.*, MA  
 1979 Robert D. J. Scollay, MA *Camb. & Well.*, BCom  
 1994 John P. Small, BSc BA PhD *Cant.*  
 1981 Susan M. St John, BSc MA  
 2000 Donggyu Sul, BS *Korea*, PhD *Ohio State*

#### Lecturers

1998 Jun Yu, BSc BA *Wuhan*, MA PhD *W.Ont.*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1991 Michael D. G. Anstis, BA  
 1999 Graeme B. Jones, BCom  
 1987 Susan S. Laurenson, MCom MA

**EXECUTIVE PROGRAMMES****Executive Director**

- 1999 Philippa Reed, MA, DPhil

**Director, Executive Development**

- 1989 Michael C. Groves, MA Otago, MPhil

**Director, Graduate Programmes**

- 2000 Garry Clayton, MA, DPhil, DipTchg

**INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS****Head of Department**

- Doren D. Chadee, BA MSc PhD *Manit.*

**Departmental Administrator**

- Marianne Hill

**Professors**

- 1986 R. Wayne Cartwright, MAgSc *Massey*, PhD  
*Purdue*  
 1988 Nigel A. F. Haworth, BA BPhil PhD *Liv.*

**Associate Professor**

- 1993 Doren D. Chadee, BA MSc PhD *Manit.*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1993 David M. Brock, BCom S.A., MBA *Cape Town*, EdD  
*N.Carolina*  
 1992 Valerie J. Lindsay, MSc *Otago*, MBA *Well.* PhD  
*Warw.*  
 1997 Elizabeth L. Rose, BSE *Princeton*, MSE AM PhD  
*Mich.*

**Lecturers**

- 1994 Maureen Benson-Rea, BA *Lanc.*, MBA *Brun.*  
 1992 Brent Burmester, MCom LLB  
 1999 Andre A. Pekerti, MA *Can.* PhD  
 1994 Heather Wilson, BA PhD *H-W*  
 1994 Mark Domney, BA MBA MCom

**Master of International Business Programme****Director**

- Maureen Benson-Rea, BA *Lanc.*, MBA *Brun.*

**Placement Coordinator**

- Stephen Rawlinson, BEd *Notts*, MEd *Queen's Ont.*, MA  
*Webster*

**Programme Administrator**

- Barbara Bradbury

**MANAGEMENT AND EMPLOYMENT RELATIONS****Head of Department**

- Marie G. Wilson, MS *Florida State*, MS JD PhD *Arizona*

**Departmental Administrator**

- Judy Bonny, DipTchg

**Professor**

- 1972 John S. Deeks, MA *Camb.*, DipPM *L.S.E*

**Professor of Health Management**

- 1988 Michael Powell, PhD *Chic.*, MA

**Associate Professors**

- 1993 David Barry, BA PhD *Maryland*  
 1987 Peter F. Boxall, PhD *Monash*, MCom  
 1991 Marie G. Wilson, MS *Florida State*, JD PhD *Arizona*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1992 Catherine J. Casey, MA *Waik.*, PhD *Roch.*  
 1996 Manuka A. Henare, BA PhD *Well.*  
 1987 J. Richard Higham, MA *Oxf.*, DipArch *Lond.*, MPhil

- 1992 Darl G. Kolb, MA *Colorado*, PhD *C'nell.*  
 1990 Felicity Lamm, BA MPhil, PhD *NSW*  
 1996 Ross A. McDonald, BSc *Stirling*, MA PhD *Nebraska*  
 1973 Judith C. I. McMorland, BA *Leeds*, MA DipEd  
*Massey*, DipYthWk *Manc.*, PhD  
 2000 Suchi Mouly, MA PhD *IISc.*  
 1990 Judith Pringle, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 1993 Erling J. Rasmussen, Cand Mag *Odense*, PhD  
*EUI, Florence*  
 1996 Barbara McG. Simpson, PGDipGroundwater  
 Hydrology, BSc MSc PhD

**Lecturers**

- 1999 Liliana Erakovic, MSc *Zagreb*, PhD  
 2000 Brigid Carroll, MBA *Fordham*, MA  
 2001 Joseph Beer, MCom  
 1993 Joline Francoeur, BSc *Maine*, MA *Colorado*  
 2001 Peter Haynes, BCom MPhil  
 1996 Ella Y. Henry, BA MPhil  
 2000 Monica Leon, BSc *Wilson*, MBA *Antwerp*  
 2000 Bhakta Naiker, BSc *Delhi*, MSc *Nott. Trent*  
 1999 Polly Parker, MPhil PhD DipPE  
 1999 Deborah Shepherd, LTCL MA PhD  
 2000 Gay Simpkin, BA MPhil  
 1998 Peter Smith, BSc, MBA, PGDipCom  
 2000 Rachel Wolfgram, MCom  
 2000 Christine Woods, MA PhD

**Senior Tutors**

- 1999 Meryle Hawkins, MA  
 1990 Lynne Lindberg, DipEd *Massey*, MA  
 1999 Irene Ryan, BA, MPhil

**MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS****City Campus****Head of Department**

...

**Departmental Administrator**

- Gabrielle Murphy, BA

**Professors**

- 1989 Michael Myers, MA PhD  
 1992 David M. Ryan, MSc *Otago*, PhD *ANU*, C Math,  
 FIMA, FIPENZ (*jointly with Engineering Science*)  
 1992 Ananth Srinivasan, BEng *Madr.*, MBA *Ill.*, PhD  
*Pitt.*

**Associate Professors**

- 2001 Stephen Chu, BappSc *La Trobe*, MB *RMIT*, PhD  
*Monash*, FACS  
 1984 Kambiz E. Maani, MSc *Teheran*, MS PhD *Ill.*  
 2000 Anthony C. Norris, MSc *Hull*, PhD *DIC Imperial*  
 FRSC, CChem, FIMA, CMath  
 1993 Victor M. Portougal, PhD *Gorky*  
 1996 Jayaram K. Sankaran, BTech *Madr.*, MS *Iowa*,  
 PhD *Chic.*  
 1995 Donald Sheridan, PhD *Atla.*  
 2001 Arthanari Tiru, MStat, DipOR, PhDISI *Calif.*  
 1996 Dan Trietsch, BSME MBA PhD, *Tel Aviv*

**Visiting Professor**

- 1991 Brent Gallupe, BMath *Wat.*, MBA *Tor.*, PhD  
*Minn.*, ISP, CMA, FLMI

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1991 Susan Byrne, BSc *Well.*, PhD *Lond.*  
 1996 Lesley A. Gardner, MSc PhD *Lon Sch Econ*  
 1995 Jairo Gutierrez, BE *Andes Bogota*, MS *Texas*  
*A&M*, PhD  
 1996 Gretchen Irwin, PhD *Colorado*  
 1986 Lech J. Janczewski, MAsc *Tor.*, DEng *Warsaw*

- 1991 Hans Lehmann, BA *Vienna*, MA *Natal*, PhD  
 1995 Elaine Palmer, BE *Cant.*, MBA, PhD  
 1991 John Paynter, BCom MSc  
 1974 Donald H. Peters, BA *Wash. & Jefferson*, MBA  
*Stan.*  
 1994 David J. Robb, MBA PhD *Calg.*, BE  
 1996 David M. Sundaram, BE, PGDiplE, *Madr.*, PhD  
 1982 James Sheffield, MBA *Wis.*, PhD *Arizona*, MSc  
 2001 Cathy Urquhart, PhD *Tas.*

**Lecturers**

- ◆2000 Gay Costain, BSc, MPhil  
 ◆1996 William English, BA *Wash.*, MMSc *Waik.*  
 ◆1992 David Gardiner, BSc *Cant.*, DipBIA  
 ◆1989 David White, BE *Cant.*

**Senior Tutors**

- 1985 Moeroa Butland, BCom  
 2001 Angela Liew, BCom, BSc, DipCom  
 1998 Gabrielle M. Peko, MCom  
 1999 Amitha Peiris, BSc *Sur.*, MPhil

**Tamaki Campus****Senior Lecturer**

- 1993 Saulan L. (Grace) Loo, BSc, DipEd *Malaya*, MSc  
 MPhil *Lond.*, PhD *La Trobe*, MBCS, MACM,  
 MIEEE

**Lecturer**

- 1991 Felix Tan, BEcon *Monash*, MPhil, PhD, MNZCS,  
 ANZIM

**MARKETING****City Campus****Head of Department**

- Peter J. Danaher, MS *Purdue*, PhD *Flor.*, BSc

**Departmental Administrator**

- Ashoka Abeysekera

**Professors**

- 1988 Roderick J. Brodie, BSc PhD *Cant.*, MA *Otago*  
 1993 Peter J. Danaher, MS *Purdue*, PhD *Flor.*, BSc

**Associate Professor**

- 1988 Richard Brookes, BCA *Well.*, MSc *Lond.*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1995 Margo Buchanan-Oliver, MA, PhD  
 1995 Douglas G. Carrie, BCom *BrCol.*, MIM *Thunderbird*,  
 PhD *Lond.*  
 1996 Mark R. Colgate, BSc PhD *Ulster*  
 1990 Christina Lee, MCom, PhD  
 1998 Brett Martin, MCom PhD *Otago*  
 2000 Judy Motion, PhD *Waik.*  
 2001 Bilijana Juric, MS *Sarajevo*, MS *Northwestern*, PhD  
*Sarajevo*  
 1995 Richard Starr, BBA *Roeh.*, MBA *Col.*  
 1997 Anne Stewart, MBA MSc PhD

**Lecturers**

- 2001 Andrew Bhimy, MCom  
 1999 Denise Conroy, MCom  
 1999 Bodo Lang, Kommunikationswitt *N.A.M.K.*, MCom  
 1993 Victoria J. Little, BCom MBA *Otago*  
 1993 Andrew Parsons, MCom  
 2000 Joel Van Durme, MCom

**Tamaki Campus****Senior Lecturer**

...

**Lecturer**

...

**Faculty of Engineering****Dean**

- Peter W. Brothers, PhD *Colorado State*, BSc, BE,  
 MASME, MASHRAE, FIPENZ

**Associate Dean (Undergraduate)**

- J. Elizabeth Godfrey, MSc

**Associate Dean (Postgraduate)**

- Richard G. J. Flay, BE PhD *Cant.*, CEng, FIMechE,  
 MASME, MSNAME, FIPENZ

**Associate Dean (Continuing Education)**

- J. Des Tedford, BSc(Eng), PhD *Belf.*, CEng, MIEE

**Associate Dean (Research)**

- Allan G. Williamson, BE PhD, CEng, FIEE, FIERE,  
 Sen.Mem.IEEE, FIPENZ

**Associate Dean (International)**

- Ian F. Collins, MA PhD *Camb.*, FIMA, CMath, FIPENZ,  
 MASME, MASCE

**Faculty Registrar**

- Keith M. Willson

**CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING****Head of Department**

- John J. J. Chen, BE PhD, FRSNZ, CEng, FIChemE,  
 FIPENZ

**Departmental Manager**

- Rita Nicol

**Professors**

- 1984 John J. J. Chen, BE PhD, FRSNZ, CEng,  
 FIChemE, FIPENZ  
 1993 Xiao Dong Chen, BE *Tsinghua*, PhD *Cant.*,  
 FRSNZ, MAIE  
 1969 Geoffrey G. Duffy, ASTC, BSc NSW, PhD DEng,  
 FRSNZ, FIChemE, CEng

**Honorary Professors**

- Jack R. MacDonald, BAsc, PhD *Br.Col.*  
 Peter A. Munro, BE PhD *Lond.*, FRSNZ, FIChemE,  
 CEng

**Associate Professors**

- 1994 Neil D. Broom, BE *Melb.*, PhD  
 1998 Mohammed M. Farid, BSc *Baghdad*, MSc PhD  
*Wales*  
 1968 W. George Ferguson, BSc BE NZ, PhD, CEng,  
 MIPENZ, FIEAust, FIM  
 1992 Wei Gao, BE *NE Univ. China*, ME *B.C.R.I. (China)*,  
 DPhil *Oxf.*, MIPENZ, MASM, MAIME, MTMS,  
 MMRS, MACA

**Comalco Senior Lecturer in Materials Science and Engineering**

- 1991 Margaret M. Hyland, BSc *Guelph*, PhD *W. Ont.*,  
 MAIME, MRSNZ, MMRS

**Senior Lecturer**

- 1970 Joseph T. Gregory, BSc *Idaho*, PhD *Wis.*, MASM,  
 MAWS, MIEAust, MNZIW

**Lecturers**

- 2001 Matthew J. Hardin, BSc BE, PhD *UQ.*, AMIChemE  
 1993 Michael A. Hodgson, BE PhD  
 1998 Bryony J. James, BEng *Bath*, PhD  
 1997 Necati Özkan, BE *Istanbul*, MSc *Stanford*, DIC  
*Imperial College*, PhD *Lond.*  
 2001 Simon Oakley, BE

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

- Zhan Wen Chen, BE *CSut*, ME PhD, MIMEA

Andrew B. Russell, BTech *Massey*, PhD *Lond.*, CEng, MIChemE

#### Research Fellows

Abdulghani Abdul GAA MSc, *Baghdad*, PhD  
 Vladimir Ivanov, DipKandidat *Nank USSR*  
 Xue Mei Li, BE PhD *Zhejiang, Univ. China*  
 Zhengwei Li, BE PhD *USTB China*  
 Zhenyu Liu, ME PhD *NE Univ. China*  
 Frank Qin, BE PhD *Sth China Univ.*  
 Sharon Yang, ME PhD *Tsinghua China*  
 Juhyun Yoo, ME *Yonsei Univ. Korea*, PhD  
 Kai Zhang, BE *Xi'an Univ China*  
 Jianchao Zhao, ME *Zhejiang Univ. China*, PhD

### CIVIL AND RESOURCE ENGINEERING

#### Head of Department

Bruce W. Melville, BE PhD, FIPENZ, MASCE

#### Departmental Manager

Magdalene Woo

#### Professor of Geotechnical Engineering

1977 Michael J. Pender, BE PhD *Cant.*, FIPENZ, MASCE

#### Associate Professors

1975 Richard C. Fenwick, BE NZ, PhD *Cant.*, FIPENZ  
 1980 Bruce W. Melville, BE PhD, FIPENZ, MASCE

#### Senior Lecturers

1996 Carol A. Boyle, BSc ME Des *Calg.*, PhD *McM.*, Ceng, MIPENZ  
 1969 Anthony H. Bryant, BE PhD *Cant.*  
 1980 John W. Butterworth, BE PhD *Sur.*, FIPENZ  
 1979 Colin D. Christian, BSc PhD *S'ton.*, CEng, MICE, MASCE  
 1993 Stephen E. Coleman, BE PhD, MIPENZ  
 1979 Barry J. Davidson, BE PhD, FIPENZ  
 1972 Roger C. M. Dunn, BE NZ, BSc *Well.*, MEngSc *NSW*, DipTP, FITE, MIHT, FIPENZ  
 1999 Takis Elefsiniotis, BE *National Technical Univ. (Greece)*, M.A. *Sc Tor.*, PhD *Br.Col.*  
 1980 Thomas J. Larkin, BE PhD  
 1997 Ron L. McDowall, BBS *Massey*, FIPENZ, FIE *Aust.*, MASCE, MRSNZ  
 ♦1979-85, 1990 Norman Lawgun, ME PhD  
 1986 Leslie M. Megget, ME *Cant.*, DipIIEE *Tokyo*, FIPENZ  
 1977 John D. St George, BSc *Lond.*, MSc *N'cle (U.K.)*, PhD CEng, ARSM, MIMM, FAusiMM  
 1996 Naresh Singhal, BTech *I.I.T.Bombay.*, MS *Louisiana State*, MA PhD *Prin.*  
 1986 Laurence D. Wesley, MSc DIC PhD *Lond.*, ME, MASCE  
 1996 Suzanne J. Wilkinson, BEng *Oxford Poly.*, PhD *Oxford Brookes*

#### Cement and Concrete Association Senior Lecturer

1995 Jason M. Ingham, PhD *Calif.*, ME

#### Senior Lecturer in Timber Engineering

1988, 1992 Richard D. Hunt, BE PhD

#### Lecturers

2000 Kip (Kepa) B. Morgan, BE, GradDipMgt *Deakin*, MBA *Deakin*, MIPENZ  
 2000 Douglas J. Wilson, NZCE, BE, REAAA, MIPENZ

#### Senior Tutor

1989 Hugh W. Morris, ME, MIPENZ

#### Honorary Research Fellows

Ian W. Gunn, BE NZ, DipPHE *Ncle (U.K.)*, CEng, MICE, FIPENZ, FIWEM  
 Peter L. Johnson, PhD *Imperial*, BE, DIC, MIPENZ  
 Philip Warbrick, BSc ME, MIPENZ

#### Honorary Visiting Academic

Peter G. Lowe, BE NZ, MA *Camb.*, MEngSc *Syd.*, PhD *Lond.*, CEng, FIPENZ, MICE, FIEAust

#### International Centre for Sustainability Engineering and Research (ICSER)

#### Director

2001 Ron L. McDowall, BBS *Massey*, FIPENZ, FIE *Aust.*, MASCE, MRSNZ

### ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING

#### Head of Department

John T. Boys, ME PhD, FRSNZ, FIPENZ

#### Departmental Manager

Sook Ling Vun, MA

#### Professor of Electronics

1977 John T. Boys, ME PhD, FRSNZ, FIPENZ

#### Professor of Telecommunications

1975 Allan G. Williamson, BE PhD, CEng, FIEE, FIERE, Sen.Mem. IEEE, FIPENZ

#### Associate Professors

1990 Nalin C. Pahalawaththa, BSc *S. Lanka*, PhD *Calg.*, Mem. IEEE, CEng, MIEE  
 2001 Moshe Porat, BSc *Technion*, DSc *Technion*, Sen.Mem. IEEE  
 1994 Zoran A. Salcic, ME PhD *Sarajevo*, Sen.Mem. IEEE  
 1990 Kevin W. Sowerby, BE PhD, Mem. IEEE

#### Senior Lecturers

1990 Mark Andrews, BE PhD, Mem. IEEE  
 1986 Lawrence J. Carter, BSc *Kent*, MPhil PNGUT, CEng, MIEE  
 1996 Norman J. Castle, BE *Cant.*, PhD, FIEE, FIPENZ, CEng  
 1987 George G. Coghill, BSc H-W, BA *Open*, PhD *Kent*, CEng, MIEE, Mem. IEEE  
 1992 Grant Covic, BE PhD, Mem. IEEE  
 1985 Bernard J. Guillemin, NZCS, BE PhD  
 1995 Bruce MacDonald, BE PhD *Cant.*, Mem. IEEE  
 1995 Michael Neve, BE PhD, Mem. IEEE, AMIEE  
 1995 Sing Kiong Nguang, BE PhD *Newcastle(NSW)*, Sen.Mem. IEEE  
 1984 Gerard B. Rowe, ME PhD, Mem. IEEE, MIPENZ

#### Lecturers

1994 Stevan Berber, ME *Belgrade*  
 2001 Morteza Biglari-Abhari, MSc PhD *Adel.*  
 2000 Abbas Bigdeli, BE  
 1999 Paul Calverley NZCE, BE  
 2000 Aiguo (Patrick) Hu, ME, IPENZ, Mem. IEEE  
 2001 Stephen Hubmann, Dr.-Ing *Siegen*  
 2001 Dariusz Kacprzak, MSc PhD *Kanazawa*  
 1996 Udaya Madawala, BSc *S.Lanka*, PhD  
 1990 Nitish Patel, BE *M'lore*  
 2000 Partha S Roop, BE M.Tech PhD

#### Senior Tutors

2000 Colin Cogill, BSc  
 2001 Rowan Grünlund, AssDip BAppSc  
 2001 Su Tang, ME, UESTC

#### Honorary Research Fellow

Narayan Gehlot, BE MSc PhD, Sen.Mem. IEEE

### ENGINEERING SCIENCE

#### Head of Department

Michael J. O'Sullivan, BE NZ, PhD *Cal.Tech.*, BSc ME, FIPENZ

#### Departmental Manager

Rakesh Ishwarlal, BSc *Massey*

**Distinguished University Professor**1978 Peter J. Hunter, DPhil *Oxf.*, ME, FRSNZ**Professor**1969 Michael J. O'Sullivan, BE NZ, PhD *Cal.Tech.*, BSc ME, FIPENZ**Professor of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics**1981 Ian F. Collins, MA PhD *Camb.*, FIMA, CMath, FIPENZ, MASME, MASCE**Professor of Operations Research**1975 David M. Ryan, MSc *Otago*, PhD *ANU*, C Math, FIMA, FIPENZ (*jointly with Management Science and Information Systems*)**Associate Professors**◆1962 Donald A. Nield, MA *Camb.*, MSc *NZ*, BD *Otago*, PhD, C Math, FIMA1986 Andrew B. Philpott, BA BSc *Well.*, MPhil PhD *Camb.*

1990 Andrew J. Pullan, PhD

**Senior Lecturers**1992 Andrew J. Mason, PhD *Camb.*, BE

1993 Poul Nilesen, PhD

1997 Murray H. Smith, BSc PhD *Cant.*1999 Piaras A. Kelley, BSc, UCD, DPhil *Oxf.*

2000 Iain Anderson, PhD

**Lecturers**

◆1999 Mark Trew, PhD

1999 Cameron G. Walker, PhD

2000 Dr Matthias Ehrigott, PhD *Kaiserslautern*2000 Golbon Zakeri, BSc *Iowa*, PhD *Wis.***Senior Tutors**1991 James B. Greenslade, BSc *Cant.*, NZCE, REA, TM,IPENZ

1998 Stuart R. Laird, MSc

**Research Fellows**

Shane Blackett, ME

David P. Bullivant, PhD

Richard Christie, PhD

Philip Neame, BSc *W.Aust.*, PhD *Melb.*

Gregory B. Sands, PhD

Andrew J. Taberner, MSc PhD *Waik.*

James Williams, ME

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Dr Tiru Arthanari

Dr Vitali Babakov

**MECHANICAL ENGINEERING****Head of Department**Debes Bhattacharyya, ME *Calc.*, PhD *Jad.*, FIPENZ, FRSNZ, MASME, MASM**Departmental Manager**

Edith Sharp

**Professors**1981 Debes Bhattacharyya, ME *Calc.*, PhD *Jad.*, FRSNZ, FIPENZ, MASME, MASM1984 Richard G. J. Flay, BE PhD *Cant.*, CEng, FIMechE, MASME, MSNAME, FIPENZ1977 Peter S. Jackson, PhD *Camb.*, ME CEng, FIPENZ, FRAES**Associate Professors**1988 Pradeep K. Bansal, BSc Meerut, MSc *Roor.*, PhD *I.I.T. Delhi*, MIIR, MASHRAE1995 Vojislav Kecman, Dip.Eng., MSc PhD *Zagreb*1982 Gordon D. Mallinson, BSc *Well.*, PhD *NSW*, MIEAust, CPENG1977 Robert R. Raine, BSc PhD *Ston.*, MSAE, MASME1981 Peter J. Richards, BSc *R'dg.*, PhD *C.N.A.A.*, AMRAES1975 J. Des Tedford, BSc PhD *Belf.*, CEng, MIEE1997 Arnold Watson, BSc *Leeds*, PhD *Lond.*, CEng MIMechE, MIPENZ (*jointly with Geothermal Institute*)**Senior Lecturers**1970 George W. Blanchard, MSc *Manc.*, MIMC1988 Joseph Deans, BSc PhD *Strath.*, CEng, FIMechE, MIPENZ1992 Michael G. Dunstall, BE PhD (*jointly with Geothermal Institute*)

1998 C. Roger Halkyard, BSc BE PhD

1994 Enrico Hämmerle, Dipl.-Ing F.H. *Offenburg*, Dipl.-Ing *Bochum*, Dr.-Ing *Bremen*, VDI *Germany*1995 Krishnan Jayaraman, BE *Madras*, ME *Howard*, PhD *VPI & SU*◆1991 Keng Choon Lee, MBA *Well.*, ME, DipGeothermTech, MIPENZ (*jointly with Geothermal Institute*)1973 George Moltschaniwskij, MSc *Lond.*1986 Rainer H. A. Seidel, Dipl.-Wirtsch.-Ing *Karlsruhe*, PhD1992 Heather Silyn-Roberts, BSc *Wales*, PhD1996 Xun Xu, BSc *Shenyang*, MSc *Dalian*, PhD *UMIST***Lecturer**1999 Simon Bickerton, BE PhD *Univ. of Delaware***Senior Tutor**2001 Martin McCarthy, MEng *Mang***Tutor**

1997 Elizabeth M. Pascal, MA

**Senior Research Fellow**◆Neil D. Broom, BE *Melb.*, PhD**FRST Research Fellow**Richard J. T. Lin, ME *Nat. Sun Yat-Sen*, PhD**FRST Postdoctoral Fellow**1999 Zhenquan Li, BSc *Hebei*, PhD *S.Qld.***Honorary Research Fellows**

Rene Flachsmann, ME

Shamil Galiyev, MSc *Kezan***GEOHERMAL INSTITUTE,****within the Faculty of Engineering****Director of Geothermal Institute**Arnold Watson, BSc *Leeds*, PhD *Lond.*, CEng, MIMechE, MIPENZ (*jointly with Mechanical Engineering*)**Departmental Manager**

Elizabeth Biddle

**Associate Professors**1978 P. R. L. Browne, BSc *Cape Town*, MSc *Leeds*, PhD *Well.* (*jointly with Geology*)1997 Arnold Watson, BSc *Leeds*, PhD *Lond.*, CEng, MIMechE, MIPENZ (*jointly with Mechanical Engineering*)**Senior Lecturers**1991 Keng Choon Lee, MBA *Well.*, ME, DipGeothermTech, MIPENZ (*jointly with Mechanical Engineering*)1991 S. F. Simmons, BA *Macclester*, MS PhD *Minn.* (*jointly with Geology*)**Lecturers**1992 Michael G. Dunstall, BE PhD (*jointly with Mechanical Engineering*)1990 S. Soengkono BSc *Bandung*, MSc PhD DipGeothermTech

**Honorary Research Fellows**Peter Blattner, DrPhil *Basel*

Kevin L. Brown, MSc PhD

Derek H. Freeston, BSc *Lond.*, CEng MRAeS, FIMechE,  
MIPENZM. P. Hochstein, DipGeophys *T.U. Clausthal*, DrRerNat  
*Mün.*, FRSNZ (*jointly with Geology*)**Faculty of Law****Dean**Julie K. Maxton, LLB *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*, PhD**Deputy Dean**Neil Campbell, LLM *Camb.*, BCom LLB**Dean of Students**P. Devonshire, LLB *Birm.*, LLM *Alta. (to 28.2.02)*Rosemary Tobin, DipEd *Massey*, BA LLB MJur  
(*from 1.3.02*)**Faculty Registrar**

Ann Shields

**LAW****Head of Department**Julie K. Maxton, LLB *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*, PhD**Professors**1971 Ian G. Eagles, BA LLB *Qld.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM1969 P. J. Evans, BA LLB *Otago*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM1994 Bruce V. Harris, LLB *Otago*, LLM *Harv.*1979 Jane Kelsey, LLB *Well.*, BCL *Oxf.*, MPhil *Camb.*, PhD1985 Julie K. Maxton, LLB *Lond.*, LLM *Cant.*, PhD1994 C. E. F. Rickett, LLB *Camb.*, BD *Melb.*, MA  
*Camb. & Oxf.*1982 M. B. Taggart, LLM *Harv.*, LLB1985 P. G. Watts, LLB *Cant.*, LLM *Camb.***Associate Professors**1988 K. Bosselmann, DrIur *F.U. Berlin*

1983 W. J. Brookbanks, LLM

1972 W. C. Hodge, AB *Harv.*, JD *Stan.*1969 K. A. Palmer, LLM *Harv. & Auck.*, SJD *Virginia*

1987 P. T. Rishworth, LLB MJur

1974 Pauline Tapp, LLB MJur

**Senior Lecturers**1995 Graeme Austin, BA, LLB, LLM *Well.*, LLM  
*Columbia*1995 R. A. Bigwood, PhD *ANU*, LLB1995 Neil Campbell, LLM *Camb.*, BCom LLB1992 P. Devonshire, LLB *Birm.*, LLM *Alta.*1991 D. P. Grinlinton, BA *Massey*, LLM *W. Aust.*, LLB1986 Joanna M. Manning, LLM *George Wash.*, BA LLB1980 T. J. McBride, LLB *Well.*, LLM *Dal.*1999 J. M. McLean, LLB *Well.*, LLM *Michigan*2001 Georgos Mousourakis, LLB *Athens*, MSc *Manc.*,  
PhD *Edin.*1995 Paul A. Myburgh, BA, BLC, LLM *Pret.*1992 S. L. Optican, BA *Calif.*, MPhil *Camb.*, JD *Harv.*1991 Rosemary Tobin, DipEd *Massey*, BA LLB MJur1999 Julia R. Tolmie, LLM *Harv.*, LLB**Lecturers**2000 Allan Beever, MSc *Tor.*, PhD

2000 Kate Buchanan, BCom, LLM

1999 Treasa Dunworth, LLM *Harv.*, LLB

1997 Khylee E. Quince, BA LLB

2001 Peter Sankoff, BA *Concordia Alta.*, JD *Tor.*

1992 V. C. Tomas, LLB

1983 G. L. Williams, BCom LLM, ACA

◆1962-65, 1969 B. J. Brown, ONZM, LLB *Leeds*, LLM  
*Sing.*◆2000 Margaret Casey, LLM *Lond.*, BA LLB◆1995 D. Clapshaw, BA *Otago*, LLM *Camb.*, LLB

◆1999 Judge G. L. Colgan

◆1993 R. P. G. Haines, QC, BA LLB

◆2000 Judge David Harvey, LLB, MJur *Waik.*◆1994 Judge R. Joyce QC, LLB *Cant.*◆1968 D. W. McMorland, PhD *Camb.*, LLM

◆2000 Anthony P. Molloy QC, LLB

◆1999 F. J. Thorp, LLB *Well.*, MPhil *Nott.*

◆1999 Judge B. S. Travis

◆1999 John Turner, LLM *Dal.*, PhD *Lond.*, LLB, MJur◆1974 David V. Williams, BA LLB *Well.*, BCL DipTheol  
*Oxf.*, PhD *Dar.***Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences****Dean**Peter J. Smith, MBBS, BSc, MD, *Qld.* FRACP, FRCPA**Executive Assistant to the Dean**

Jan Bowman

**Director of Administration**Paul R. Heeney, DipBusAdmin *Massey*, BA,  
GradDipBus**Deputy Dean**

...

**Associate Dean (Research)**Ingrid M. Winship, MBChB, MD *Cape Town***Head of School of Biomedical and Health Sciences**Robert R. Kydd, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRANZCP**Head of School of Medicine**D. Norman Sharpe, MBChB MD *Otago*, Dip ABIM, Dip  
ABCVDis, FRACP, FACC**Tumuaki/Associate Dean - Maori**Colin Mantell BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRCOG,  
FRNZCOG**ASSISTANT DEANS****Academic and Admissions**

Noel J. Dawson, BSc PhD, N.E.

**Bioinformatics and Biotechnology**John Fraser, BSc *Well.*, PhD**Biomedical Sciences**Bruce Smaill, BE BSc *Cant.*, DIC-PhD *Lond.***Flexible Learning and Information Technology**

Ross McCormick, MBChB, MSc, PhD, FRNZCGP

**Foundation and Equity Programmes**Lorna Dyal, MSocSci *Waik.*, MPP *Well.*, DipComH *Otago***Health Sciences and Public Health**John Raeburn, PhD, *Queens. Ont.*, MA**Nursing**

...

**Pharmacy**John P. Shaw, BSc, PhD *Brighton*, DipClinPharm *Aston*,  
FNZCP, FRPharmS, MPS**Postgraduate and Continuing Medical Education**John Windsor, BSc *Otago*, MBChB, DipObst, MD,  
FRACS, FACS**Student Affairs**

...

**Teaching and Learning**Margaret Horsburgh, MA EdD DipEd C. *Sturt*,  
FCNA(NZ), RGON, RM**Undergraduate Medicine**

Phillippa Poole, BSc, MBChB, FRACP

**ANAESTHESIOLOGY****Acting Head of Division**

Michael J. Harrison, MB BS *Newcastle Upon Tyne*,  
FRCA, FANZCA

**Professor**

2001 James Sleight, MBChB, FANZCA

**Honorary Professor**

Stephen A. Schug, MD, *Cologne*, FANZCA, FFPMANZCA

**Clinical Associate Professors**

Michael J. Harrison, MB BS *Newcastle Upon Tyne, U.K.*  
FRCA, FANZCA

Robert A. Boas, MBChB, NZ, FANZCA, FRCA

Alan Merry, MBChB, *Zbwe.*, MRC DipObs, FANZCA,  
FFPMANZCA

**Clinical Reader**

David Sage, MBChB, *Otago*, DipObs, FRANZCA

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Alan McLintic, MBChB *Glas.*, MRCP UK, FRCA

Timothy Short, MBChB, *Otago*, DipObs, FANZCA

James Sleight, MBChB, FANZCA

Doug Campbell, BM, *Southampton*, FRCA, FANZCA

Michal Kluger, MBChB, *Edin.*, FRCA, FANZCA, DA, DipDHM

M. E. Futter, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, FFARCS, FRANZCA

B. P. Hodgkinson, BSc MBBS *Newcastle(UK)*, FFARCS

S. E. Kaye, MBChB *Cape Town*, FFARCS *Lond.*

A. H. Mark, MBChB, FANZCA

J. G. Walker, MBChB *Otago*, FANZCA, FFARCSI

**Clinical Senior Tutor**

D. Bunbury, BSc, MACRN

**ANATOMY WITH RADIOLOGY****Head of Division**

Mervyn J. Merrilees, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Tor.*

**Administrator**

Valerie McMurtry

**Professor of Anatomy**

1978 Richard L. M. Faull, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD  
DSc, FRSNZ

**Professor of Radiology**

...

**Emeritus Professors**

Colin J. Alexander, MBChB NZ, MD *Otago*, HonFRCR,  
FRACR, HonFACR

John B. Carman, BMedS, MBChB NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*

Stuart W. Heap, MBBS *Lond.*, FRACR, FRCR

**Honorary Professors**

Dame Patricia R. Bergquist, DBE, MSc PhD NZ, DSc,  
FRSNZ

Rita L. Teele, BA MD *Boselen*

**Associate Professors in Anatomy**

1993 Colin R. Green, MSc PhD DSc

1973 Cynthia G. Jensen, AB *Brown*, PhD *Minn.*

1976 Mervyn J. Merrilees, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Tor.*

1991 C. Anthony Poole, BSc, PhD *Otago*

1984 J. Martin Wild, MA *Cant.*, PhD

**Senior Lecturers in Anatomy**

1995 Saad Y. Al-Ali, MBChB *Mosul*, PhD *Lond.*

1989 Louise F. B. Nicholson, MSc PhD

**Senior Lecturer in Radiology**

...

**Senior Lecturer in Biomedical Imaging**

1996 Alistair A. Young, BE ME PhD  
(jointly with *Physiology*)

**Senior Tutor**

1982 Colin G. Quilter, PhD *Otago*, BSc

**Tutor**

2000 Peter Riordan, MSc *Waik.*

**Research Fellows**

1998 Alison F. Sherwin, BSc PhD *Kent*

2001 Deborah A. Stuart, PhD *Otago*

2001 Henry J. Waldvogel, MSc PhD

**Clinical Senior Lecturers in Radiology**

Colleen J. Bergin, MBChB, BSc, FRCAR

Mary Louise Herdson, MBChB, FRACR

Barbara S. Hochstein, BSc MBChB, FRACR

**APPLIED BEHAVIOURAL SCIENCE****Head of Discipline**

Peter Adams, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

**Adminstrator**

Amor Hirao, MA *Phil.*

**Associate Professor in Applied Behavioural Science**

1972 John M. Raeburn, MA PhD *Qu.* (jointly with  
*Community Health*)

**Senior Lecturers in Behavioural Science**

1990 Peter J. Adams, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

1999 Helen Warren, MA, RCN

**Lecturer**

2000 Wiremu Manaia, MASocSci *Waik.*

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

Francis Agnew, MSc *Well.*, MBChB, FRANZCP

Sean Sullivan, DipSocSci *Massey*, MA, LLB, PhD,  
MNZPsP

**Senior Tutors**

1969 Raymond Nairn, MSc DipTch

2001 Ingrid Huygens, MA, DipPsych *Waik.*

2001 Bernd Strüder, ClinPsych, NZCCP, DipPsych  
*Munich*

**Hohua Tutengaehe Postdoctorate Research Fellow**

2000 Marewa Glover, BA *NSW*, MASocSci, DipPsych  
*Waik.*, PhD

**Honorary Research Associates**

Malcolm W. Stewart, BSc *Well.*, DipMgt NZIM, DipSc  
*Otago*

Ian Hodges, PhD *Otago*

Robert Brown, MA, PhD, DipClinPsych

**AUCKLAND CANCER SOCIETY RESEARCH CENTRE****Director**

William A. Denny, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

**Co-Director**

Bruce C. Baguley, PhD, FRSNZ

**Administrator**

Ellen Semb

**Professors**

1968 Bruce C. Baguley, PhD, FRSNZ

1972 William A. Denny, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

1988 Lynnette R. Ferguson, DPhil *Oxon*, DSc

**Associate Professors**

1980 Gordon W. Rewcastle, PhD, FNZIC

1980 William R. Wilson, BSc *Well.*, PhD

**Senior Research Fellows**

1993 Robert F. Anderson, PhD, CChem, FRSC

1963 Graham J. Atwell, MSc

1987 Lai-Ming Ching, PhD

1980 Graeme J. Finlay, BTh *S.Af.*, PhD

1987 Philip Kestell, BSc *Herts.*, PhD *Birm.*

1987 Ho H. Lee, BSc *Sing.*, MSc *Waik.*, PhD  
 1984 Brian D. Palmer, DIC *Lon.*, PhD, FNZIC  
 1988 David C. Ware, BS *Berkeley*, PhD *Stan.*

#### Research Fellows

1986 Maruta Boyd, PhD  
 1992 Swarna A. Gamage, BSc *Kelaniya*, PhD *Otago*  
 1991 Michael P. Hay, PhD, *Cant.*  
 1998 Nuala Helsby, BSc *Staff.*, PhD *Liv.*  
 1999 Kevin O. Hicks, BSc, BVSc *Massey*, PhD  
 1999 Angela Kriste, MSc *Natal*, PhD *Qu.*  
 1999 Alicia A. Monteith, PhD *W'gong.*  
 2001 Florence O. McCarthy, PhD *Sund.*  
 2001 Adam V. Patterson, MA *Oxf.*, PhD *Oxf. Brookes*  
 1992 Frederik Pruijn, PhD *Vrije University*, Amsterdam  
 2000 Martin Philpott, PhD  
 1996 Bronwyn Siim, PhD  
 1994 Jeffrey B. Smaill, PhD *Otago*  
 1995 Julie A. Spicer, PhD *Massey*  
 2000 Ralph Stevenson, PhD  
 2000 Mark S. Stribbling, BSc *Manc.*, PhD *Leeds*  
 2001 Hamish Sutherland, PhD  
 2001 Leesa M. Swan, PhD *Griff.*  
 1991 Moana Tercel, PhD *Camb.*  
 1991 Andrew M. Thompson, PhD *Cant.*  
 2001 Claudette Weir, PhD  
 1998 Shangjin Yang, PhD *T.U. Graz Austria*

### AUDIOLOGY

#### Head of Discipline

Peter Thorne, BSc DipSc *Otago*, PhD

#### Administrator

Jan Pecsí

#### Associate Professor

1990 Peter Thorne, BSc DipSc *Otago*, PhD

#### Lecturers

2000 Andrea Kelly, BSc MAud  
 2000 Grant Searchfield, BSc MAud

#### Clinical Lecturers

Oriole Wilson, MAud, *Melb.*  
 Louise Dickinson, MA, MAud  
 Julie Hill, BA, MHSc  
 Wayne Wilson, BSc PGDipAud, *Old*  
 Ellen Giles, MSc

#### Research Fellows

1995 Chris Jerram, MSc  
 1986 David Muñoz, BSc MBChB MD *San Andrés, Bolivia*

#### Senior Tutors

2000 Caroline Johnstone, BSc MAud  
 2001 Jo Mackie, BSc MAud  
 2001 Ngaire Kay, MSc

#### Senior Clinical Tutor

Sharon Mein Smith, BSc *Massey*, Dip Aud *Melb.*

### BIOCHEMISTRY SECTION (School of Biological Sciences)

#### Professor in Biochemistry and Clinical Biochemistry, Coordinator of Biochemistry for Medicine

1993 Garth J. S. Cooper, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc MBChB, Dip  
 Obst, FRCPA, FRSNZ (*jointly with Faculty of  
 Science*)

#### Administrator

Cynthia Tse, BSc *Massey*

#### Associate Professors

1977 Thomas Brittain, BSc PhD ScD *E. Anglia*, CChem,  
 FRSCHEM, FNZIC

1982 David L. Christie, MSc PhD  
 1969 Anthony M. Robertson, BSc *Otago*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1993 Donald R. Love, BSc PhD *Adel.*

#### Senior Lecturers

1974 Peter M. Barling, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Lon.*  
 1991 Nigel P. Birch, BSc *Massey*, MSc PhD  
 1976 G. Kenneth Scott, BSc *Manc.*, PhD *Edin.*

#### Lecturer

1991 Kerry M. Loomes, BSc PhD *Massey*

#### Honorary Senior Research Fellow

Yee Soon Choong, MSc PhD *Otago*

#### Honorary Research Fellows

Shaoping Zhang, BSc *Jinan*, PhD *Stockholm*  
 Christina Buchanan, MSc *Waik.*, PhD

### COMMUNITY HEALTH

#### Head of Division

Rodney T. Jackson, DipComH *Otago*, BSc MBChB  
 MMedSc PhD, DipObst, FAFPHM

#### Administrator

Pam Andrew BA

#### Professor of Alcohol and Public Health Research

1974 Sally Casswell, BA *Sheff.*, PhD *Otago*

#### Professor of Community Health

1979 Robert Beaglehole, MBChB MD *Otago*, MSc  
*Lon.*, DSc *Otago*, FRSNZ, FRACP, FAFPHM,  
 MRCP

#### Professor of Epidemiology

1990 Rodney T. Jackson, DipComH *Otago*, BSc  
 MBChB MMedSc PhD, DipObst, FAFPHM

#### Professor of Environmental Health

1998 Tord Kjellström, DSc MMed.Eng PMed *Stockholm*

#### Honorary Professor of Health Management

Michael J. Powell, DipTchg, PhD *Chic.*, MA

#### Honorary Professor of Medical Sociology

Peter B. Davis, BA *S'ton.*, MSc *Lon.*, PhD

#### Honorary Professor of Epidemiology

Robyn Norton, MA *Cant.*, MPH PhD *Syd.*

#### Associate Professor, Behavioural Science

1996 John M. Raeburn, MA PhD *Qu.*  
*(jointly with Applied Behavioural Science)*

#### Senior Lecturer in Biostatistics

1986 Roger J. Marshall, MSc *S'ton.*, PhD *Brist.*

#### Senior Lecturer in Environmental Health

1992 Virginia Hope, MBChB DipComH *Otago*, FAFPHM

#### Senior Lecturer in Epidemiology

1983 Robert K. R. Scragg, MBBS *Adel.*, PhD *Flin.*,  
 FAFPHM

#### Senior Lecturers in Health Economics

1992 Toni Ashton, MA, PhD  
 1999 Paul Brown, MS, PhD *Wis.*

#### Senior Lecturer in Health Promotion

✦ Jennifer E. Hand, BA *Well. & Auck.*, PhD *New School  
 for Social Research (NY)*

#### Senior Lecturer in Pacific Health

1997 Sitaleki A. Finau, MBBS *Old.*, PCDipComH  
*Otago*, FACTM, FAFPHM  
*(jointly with Maori & Pacific Health)*

#### Senior Lecturer in Public Health

1997 Lorna C. Dyall, MSocSci *Waik.*, MPP *Well.*,  
 DipComH *Otago*  
*(jointly with Maori & Pacific Health)*

**Senior Lecturer in Health Management**1995 Rod Perkins, BDS MHA, *Georgia State***Lecturer in Community Health**2000 Jennie Connor, BSc, MBChB *Otago*, MPH**Research Fellow**1980 Alistair W. Stewart, BSc, DipSc *Otago***Director Health Research Methods Advisory Service**

1997 David R. Thomas, MA PhD, FNZPsS

**Director Injury Prevention Research Unit**

1996 Carolyn Coggan, MA PhD, DipTchg

**Senior Research Fellow and Senior Lecturer**1996 Patricia A. Metcalf, MSc PhD  
(jointly with *Statistics*)**GENERAL PRACTICE AND PRIMARY HEALTH CARE****Head of Division**Gregor Coster, MSc *Well.*, MBChB *Otago*, FRNZCGP**Administrator**

Diane Nicholson

**Elaine Gurr Professor of General Practice**1995 Gregor Coster, MSc *Well.*, MBChB *Otago*,  
FRNZCGP**Associate Professor of General Practice**1991 Bruce Arroll, MHS *Br.Col.*, BSc MBChB PhD Dip  
Obst, FAFPHM, FRNZCGP**Clinical Associate Professor in General Practice**Jocelyn Tracey, MBChB MMedSc DipObst PhD,  
FRNZCGP**Senior Lecturer in Community Based Teaching**1999 Allan Adair, MBChB *Otago*, FRNZCGP**Senior Lecturers**1997 Henry Doerr, MD *Minn.*, DipObst, DHSM,  
FRNZCGP1990 David Hoadley, BSc MBChB, DRCOG, MRCPG,  
FRNZCGP1999 Trudy Honore, MBChB *Otago*, FRNZCGP1999 Ngairé Kerse, BHB MBChB *Otago*, PhD *Melb.*,  
FRACGP, FRNZCGP**Senior Lecturer in Women's Health**1991 Helen Roberts, BA BAO MBChB DipObst *Dublin*,  
MPH *Yale* (jointly with *Obstetrics & Gynaecology*)**Clinical Senior Lecturers**P. Appanna, MBChB, *Natal*R. Baxter, MD *W.Ont.*, FRNZCGP

J. Carter, MBChB, FRNZCGP

P. Cotton-Barker, MBChB

Jonathan Fox, MB BS *Lond.*, MCS *Eng.*, LRCP *Lond.*,  
FRNZCGPJudith Fox, BM *Soton*, DRCOG, FRNZCGP

D. Henry, MBChB, FRNZCGP

E. Horne, MBChB *Glas.*, FRNZCGP

S. Kara, MBChB

W. Landmann, MBChB *Pret.*, MFGP *S.Af.*, FRNZCGP

A. Leggat, MBChB DipObst, FRNZCGP

I. MacLean, MBChB DipObst, DA, FRNZCGP

A. Singh, MBChB *Leeds*

J. Te Whare, MBChB DipObst

K. Tong, MB BS *Tas.*, FRNZCGPJ. Tseung, MBBS *H.K.*, FRNZCGP

P. Vincent, MBChB

A. Webster, MBChB DipObst *Otago*, FRNZCGP

C. Wong, MBChB DipObst, FRNZCGP

T. Birch, MBChB DipObst, RCOG, FRNZCGP, FRNZCGP

P. Botica, MBChB

E. Brosnan, MBChB DipObst, FRNZCGP

W. Ferguson, MBChB DipObs, FRNZCGP

T. Hay, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRNZCGP

H. Hillebrand, MBChB DipObst, MRNZCGP

N. Hutchinson, MBChB DipObst, FRNZCGP

M. Karetai, MBChB DipObst, FRNZCGP

M. Koelmeyer, MBBS *Ceyl.*, FRNZCGP

J. Lello, MBChB DipPaed, FRNZCGP

T. Marshall, OBE, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRNZCGPJ. Miller, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRNZCGP

W. Palmer, MBChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP

A. Patel, MBChB, MRNZCGP

G. Wardrope, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRNZCGP.

A. Wiles, MBChB DipObst, RCOG, FRNZCGP

**Clinical Reader**Thomas Marshall, OBE, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst,  
FRNZCGP**Senior Research Fellow**

1994 Barry Gribben, BA MBChB MMedSci

**Research Fellows**

1999 Stephen Buetow, MA PhD

Ann Pearl, MBChB MA DipTchg DipObst

Melanie Whitehorn

**Assistant Research Fellow**1999 T. Kenealy, MBChB DipObst *Otago*, FRNZCGP**Honorary Research Fellows**Derek Dow, MA DipEd PhD *Edin.*Michael Lamont, MPP *Vic.*, DipPhy DipOccHealth  
*Otago*, MNZSP, FSMNZ, MCSF**Goodfellow Unit****Director**

Ross McCormick, MBChB MSc PhD, FRNZCGP

**Administrator**

Corrinne Renton, BSc

**Goodfellow Postgraduate Chair in General Practice**

1994 Ross McCormick, MBChB MSc PhD, FRNZCGP

**Senior Lecturers**♦Anthony Edwards, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst  
DipSportsMed *Lond.*, FRSCP

♦Richard Fox, MB BChir DOBs, FRNZCGP

♦Christopher Hanna, MBChB DipSportsMed

♦John A. Hanne, MB BS MRCS *Eng.*, LRCP *Lond.*,  
DipObst, FRNZCGP♦Timothy Rumball, MBChB, BMedSci *Otago*2000 Mary Tucker, MBBS *Lond.*, LRCP, MRCS *Eng.*,  
DObst, RCOG, DCH, DipGeriatricMed1995 Nicola Turner, MBChB DipObst DCH *Lond.*2000 John Van Der Post, MBChB *Cape Town*, FRCS  
*Edin.*2000 Phil Wood, MBChB *Otago*, FRCP**Senior Tutors**

Barbara Docherty, RGON

Stella McFarlane, RGON

**HEALTH PSYCHOLOGY****Head of Discipline**Keith J. Petrie, MA *Calif.*, PhD *Massey*, DipClinPsych**Administrator**

Sioban Correa

**Honorary Professor**Glynn Owens, BTEch *Brunel*, DPhil *Oxf.*, DipPsych  
BPS, AFBPsS**Associate Professor**1990 Keith J. Petrie, MA *Calif.*, PhD *Massey*, DipClinPsych

**Senior Lecturers**

- 2000 Roger J. Booth, MSc, PhD  
*(jointly with Molecular Medicine)*  
1994 Susan J. Hawken, BHB, BMChB, DipObst, FRNZCGP  
2001 Malcolm N. Johnson, MA, DipClinPsych, MNZCCP  
1993 Rona Moss-Morris, MHS, PhD  
2001 Geoffrey V. Ruthe MA *Keefe*, DipClinPsych  
*Massey*, MNZCCP

**Honorary Senior Lecturer**

- Linda D. Cameron, BSc *Calif.*, MSc, PhD *Wis.*

**Lecturers**

- 1980 Valerie J. Grant, MA, PhD  
2000 Vanya Kovach, PhD  
1990 Trecia Wouldes, MA

**HEALTH PROFESSIONAL EDUCATION UNIT****Director**

- M. P. Horsburgh, DipEd, MA, EdD *C.Sturt*, FCNA(NZ),  
RGON, RM

**Associate Professor**

- ◆ John Buchanan, BMedSc, MBChB, FRCP *Edin.*, FRCPA,  
FRCPath  *Lond.*, MA *Mich. State*

**Senior Lecturer**

- Rain Lamdin, BSc, MBChB, GradDipEd

**LIGGINS INSTITUTE****Director**

- Peter D. Gluckman, CNZM, MBChB *Otago*, MmedSc, DSc,  
FRACP, FRCPC, FRSNZ, FRS

**Administrator**

- Pandora C. Evans, BSc *Well.*, MSc *Massey*

**Deputy Director**

- R. Stewart Gilmour, MSc PhD *Glas.*

**Associate Director (Research)**

- Murray D. Mitchell, DPhil *Oxon*, DSc *Liv.*, CChem,  
FRSC, FRSNZ

**Associate Director (Academic)**

- Jane E. Harding, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc, MBChB, FRACP

**University Distinguished Professor**

- 1988 Peter D. Gluckman, CNZM, MBChB *Otago*, MMedSc,  
DSc, FRACP, FRCPC, FRSNZ, FRS

**Professors**

- 1986 R. Stewart Gilmour, BSc, PhD *Glas.*  
1989 Jane E. Harding, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc, MBChB,  
FRACP *(jointly with Paediatrics and Obstetrics  
& Gynaecology)*  
Dianne C. McCarthy, BA, MSc, PhD *(jointly with  
Psychology)*  
Murray D. Mitchell, DPhil *Oxon*, DSc *Liv.*, CChem,  
FRSC, FRSNZ

**Associate Professors**

- 1987 Bernhard H. Breier, DipIng *Gott.*, PhD  
Wayne Cutfield, DCH *Otago*, MBChB, FRACP  
Marie Dziadek, BSc *S. Aust.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
1994 Jenny A. Westgate, MBChB, MD, MRCP,  
FRANZCOG  
1984 Chris Williams, MSc *Waik.*, PhD

**Senior Research Fellows**

- 1996 Laura Bennet, MA, PhD  
Mhoyra Fraser, BSc MPhil, PhD DipSci  
1997 Jian Guan, MBChB *Hubei Medical College China*,  
PhD  
1994 Alistair Gunn, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, PhD  
Paul Hofman, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP  
1995 Jeffery A. Keelan, BSc *Liv.*, MSc, PhD

**Research Fellows**

- 1998 Marion Blumenstein, Dr.rer.nat *Hamburg*

- Rachel Helliwell, BSc *Hull*, PhD *Aberd.*  
1995 Keith W. Marvin, PhD *Calif.*  
1997 Mark Oliver, MSc *Waik.*, PhD  
Cathy Pinal, PhD *Calif.*  
Mark Vickers, MSc, PhD  
Markus Winter, PhD *Edin.*

**MAORI AND PACIFIC HEALTH****Head of Division**

- Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc, MBChB *Otago*, PhD  
DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG

**Administrator**

- Julie Wade

**Professor of Maori Health**

- 1981 Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc, MBChB *Otago*, PhD  
DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG *(jointly with  
Obstetrics & Gynaecology and South Auckland  
Clinical School)*

**Senior Lecturers in Maori Health**

- 1999 Suzanne M. Crengle, MBChB, MPH, FRNZCGP  
◆ David C. Tipene-Leach, DipComH *Otago*, MBChB,  
MCCM *NZ*  
◆ Lorna C. Dyall, MSocSci *Waik.*, MPP *Well.*, DipComH  
*Otago (jointly with Community Health)*

**Senior Lecturers in Pacific Health**

- 1997 Sitaleki A. Finau, MBBS *Qld.*, DipComH *Otago*,  
FACTM, FAFPHM, *(jointly with Community Health)*  
◆ Colin F. Tukuitonga, MPH *Syd.*, DipSurgMed *USP*

**Lecturers**

- 1999 Robyn Manuel, MSc, PhD  
1999 Malakai 'Ofanoa, ADHE *Ivandan, Nigeria*,  
DLSHTM *Carb.*, MScHPS *Lond.*

**Tutor in Maori and Pacific Health**

- 1999 Janfrie Wakim, MSc DipEd

**MEDICINE****Head of Division**

- Ian. R. Reid, BSc MBChB MD, FRACP, FRSNZ

**Professors**

- 1993 Ruth Bonita, BA DipEd *NSW*, MPH *N.Carolina*,  
PhD  
◆ Garth J. S. Cooper, BSc MBChB DPhil *Oxf.*, DipObst,  
FRCPA, FRSNZ *(jointly with Biological Sciences)*  
Ian M. Holdaway, BMedSci, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
1996 Harry H. Rea, MD, FRACP, FRCPE  
*(jointly with South Auckland Clinical School)*  
1987 Ian R. Reid, BSc MBChB MD, FRACP, FRSNZ  
1978 D. Norman Sharpe, MBChB MD *Otago*, DipABIM,  
DipABCVD, FRACP, FACC  
1978 Ian J. Simpson, MBChB *Otago*, MD, FRACP

**Masonic Professor of Geriatric Medicine**

- 1996 C. S. Anderson, BMedSci MBBS *Tas.*, PhD  
*W.Aust.*, FRACP, FAFPHM  
*(jointly with South Auckland Clinical School)*

**Honorary Professor**

- S. MacMahon, BSc, MA *Cant.*, MPH *Syd.*, PhD *NSW*, FACC

**Associate Professors**

- 1990 P. N. Black, MBChB, FRACP  
1996 N. E. Anderson, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
J. V. Conaglen, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
*(jointly with Waikato Clinical School)*  
1993 J. Cornish, MSc PhD  
1988 T. F. Cundy, MA MBBChir MD *Camb.*, FRCP *UK*,  
FRACP  
1987 J. Kolbe, MBBS *Qld.*, FRACP

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1996 W. Bagg, MBCh *Witw.*, FRACP

1994 G. D. Braatvedt, MBChB *Cape Town*, MD *Brist.*,  
FRACP, MRCP UK  
1996 R. Doughty, MB BS, MRCP UK, FRACP, MD  
1996 C. J. Ellis, BM *Soton*, MRCP UK, FRACP  
1992 A. Fraser, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP  
A. B. Grey, MBChB, FRACP  
S. Parry, MBChB, FRACP  
(jointly with *South Auckland Clinical School*)  
◆B. Peat, MBChB, DTM&H, RCP UK, MSc(Med) *London*,  
FRACP (jointly with *South Auckland Clinical School*)  
◆P. Poole, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
1997 S. D. Poppitt, BSc, PhD *Aberd.*  
C. Wong, MBChB, Dip Obs *Otago*, FRACP, CCST UK,  
(jointly with *South Auckland Clinical School*)  
1996 R. Young, BmedSci, MBChB., DPhil *Oxon*, MRCP,  
FHKCP

#### Senior Research Fellows

V. Feigin, MD PhD *Moscow*  
1992 T. E. Miller, PhD DSc  
C. Ni Mhurchu, BSc, PhD *Dublin*  
1995 A. Rodgers, MBChB, DPH, FAFPHM

#### Research Fellows

D. Bennett, MSc PhD *Manc.*  
K. Callon, BSc  
B. Cowan, BE, MBChB  
G. Gamble, MSc  
M. Hackett, MA  
Y. L. Huang, BMed *China*, MMedSc, Neurosurgery *China*  
N. Latham, MSc *McG*  
C. Lawes, MBChB, MPH  
D. Naot, PhD  
H. Oxenham, MBChB, MRCP UK  
S. Sharpe, MSc  
P. Sivakumaran, MBBS *S.Lanka*, MRCP UK, FRACP  
(jointly with *South Auckland Clinical School*)  
N. Walker, MSc DPH, PhD  
G. A. Whalley, BAppSci, MHSc  
S. Wright, MBChB MMedSci

#### Clinical Professor

H. White, MBChB DSc *Otago*, FRACP, FACC, FESC

#### Clinical Associate Professors

J. F. Collins, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
M. S. Croxson, BA, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA  
J. K. French, BMedSc, MBChB, PhD, FRACP, FESC  
P. L. Drury, MA, MB, B Chir, MRCP UK, FRCP *London*.  
R. W. Frith, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
E. J. Gane, MBChB, MD *Otago*, FRACP  
J. E. Garrett, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
J. Henley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
M. R. Lane, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
J. G. Parry, MBChB, FRACP  
J. B. Rosman, MD, PhD *Heidelberg*, FRACP  
W. M. Smith, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
M. L. Wilsher, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
B. J. Snow, MBChB, FRACP, FRCP *Can.*  
K. F. Whyte, MBChB, MD, MRCP, FRCPs *Glas.*

#### Clinical Readers

J. J. Baskett, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
E. W. Willoughby, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

P. S. Bergin, MBChB, MD *Otago*, FRACP  
H. P. Birch, MBChB *Sheff.*, MRCP UK  
D. Black, (Occ Med), BHB MBChB *DIH Otago*, FAFOM  
M. J. Butler, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRCP, FRACP  
A. Charleston, MBChB, FRACP  
S. Child, MD, FRACP, FRCP *Can.*

T. I. Christmas, MBChB, MD *Otago*, FRACP  
H. A. Coverdale, MBChB *Otago*, MRACP, FRACP  
J. G. Davison, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
R. J. Eason, MBBChir *Cant.*, DipObst, FRACP  
G. Devlin, MBChB, FRACP  
(jointly with *Waikato Clinical School*)  
A. Drewry (Occ Med), BHB MBChB *DIH Otago*, GCM  
*Old.*, FAFOM  
T. E. Eaton, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
P. D. Frankish, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
A. G. Gazis, BMedSci, BM, BS, MRCP, DM  
G. Gordon, MBChB, FCP, FRACP  
P. G. Gow, MBChB, BMedSci *Otago*, FRACP, FACRM  
D. Grieg, BSc, MBChB, MMedSci, DipOccMed, MBA,  
FRACP  
R. G. Harris, MBChB, FRACP, Dip Obs, MBA  
A. C. Harrison, MBBS *Adel.*, FRACP  
D. O. Hutchinson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
J. Ingram, MBChB, FRACP  
P. Jones, MBChB, BMedSci, PhD *Sheff.*, MRCP UK,  
FRACP (jointly with *Waikato Clinical School*)  
C. T. C. Kenny, (Occ Med), BSc MBChB Dip *DHM Adel.*,  
MRNZCGP, AFOM UK, FAFOM  
M. E. Legget, MBChB, FRACP  
N. Lynch, MBChB, MMed *Melb.*, FRACP  
D. L. McAuley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
P. Matheson, MBChB *Otago*  
A. Oakley, MBChB, FRACP  
J. C. Okpala, MBBS PNG., MRCP  
G. F. Oliver, MBChB, FRACP  
B. Orr-Walker, MBChB, FRACP  
D. C. Patel, MBChB, FRACP  
H. L. Pilmore, MBChB, MD *Otago*, FRACP  
M. Rademaker, DM *FRCP Edin.*, FRACP  
R. M. Reynolds, BSc, MBChB, *Otago*, FRACP (jointly  
with *South Auckland Clinical School*)  
M. D. J. Robertson, MBChB, FRCP, FRACP  
T. Rose, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
D. S. Rowbotham, MB BS, MRCP UK  
P. N. Ruygrok, BSc, MBChB, MD, FRACP, FESC  
P. J. Say, MBBS, DipVen *London*, FRCPPath, FAC Ven  
M. A. Scott, MBChB, FRACP  
J. P. Simcock, VRD MBChB, BMedSc, FRACP, FRCP  
G. P. Singh, MBChB *Natal*, FRACP  
J. L. Snow, MBChB, Dip *ABDer*, FRACP  
D. A. Spriggs, BSc MBChB *Manc.*, MRCP UK  
J. T. Stewart, MBChB, MD *Otago*, MRCP UK, FESC, FRCP  
P. Stokes, MD, FRACP (jointly with *Waikato Clinical School*)  
M. Todd, MBChB, FRACP  
W. M. Van der Merwe, MBChB *Cape Town*, FRACP  
A. G. Veale, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, DipDHM  
E. Walker, MBBS *Tas.*, FRACP  
I. Wallace, MB; BCh, FCP *S.Af.*, FRACP  
R. S. Walmsley, MBChB, MD *Bristol*, MRCP  
J. Waters, MBChB, FRACP  
M. Webster, MBChB, FRACP  
L. Wilkinson, MBChB, FRACP  
L. C. Williams, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
J. M. Wishart, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
P.Y.N. Wong, MBChB, FRACP  
S. C. J. Young, MBChB, FRACP

## MOLECULAR MEDICINE

#### Head of Division

Kathryn E. Crosier, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRACP, FRCPA

#### Administrator

Kristina E. Maconaghie, MA

#### Professors of Molecular Medicine

1991 K. E. Crosier, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRACP, FRCPA

◆M. J. During, BSc, MBChB, FRACP, FACP  
1989 J. D. Fraser, BSc *Well.*, PhD

#### Professor of Pharmacology

1988 M. Draganow, MSc, PhD *Otago*  
(jointly with *Pharmacology*)

#### Honorary Professor of Molecular Medicine

P. L. Bergquist, MSc NZ, PhD, DSc, FRSNZ

#### Associate Professor of Human Genetics

1994 I. M. Winship, MBChB MD *Cape Town*

#### Associate Professor of Infectious Diseases

1988 M. G. Thomas, MBChB, MD, DipObst, FRACP

#### Associate Professors of Molecular Medicine

1987 P. S. Crosier, BSc PhD *Otago*, MSc

1988 G. W. Krissansen, BSc PhD DipSc *Otago*

#### Clinical Associate Professors

H. A. Blacklock, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA

R. B. Ellis-Pegler, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA,  
DTM&H *Lond.*

J. K. French, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, MSc *Lond.*, PhD  
*Adel.*, FRACP, FESC

P. A. Ockelford, BSc, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

B. J. Snow, MBChB, FRACP, FRCP(C)

D. G. Woodfield, MBChB NZ, PhD *Edin.*, FRCP, FRCPA

#### Senior Lecturer in Human Genetics

1999 J. M. McGaughan, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCP

#### Senior Lecturer in Immunology

1984 R. J. Booth, MSc, PhD

(jointly with *Health Psychology*)

#### Senior Lecturers in Microbiology/Infectious Diseases

1998 D. J. Holland, PhD *Syd.*, MBChB, MHB, FRACP,  
FRCPA

2001 S. Swift, PhD *Nott.*

#### Senior Lecturer in Reproductive Science

1995 A. N. Shelling, BPHed, BSc, PhD

(jointly with *Obstetrics and Gynaecology*)

#### Senior Lecturer in Rheumatology

1992 F. M. McQueen, MBChB *Otago*, MD, FRACP

#### Senior Research Fellows

1993 K. G. Mountjoy, BSc *Massey*, PhD

(jointly with *Physiology*)

1995 T. K. Proft, Dr rer nat *Heidel.*

1997 D. Young, MSc *Otago*, PhD

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

R. Ameratunga, MBChB, PhD

L. C. Berkahn, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA

G. T. C. Chan, MBChB, FRCP, FRCPA, FHKCP

M. C. Croxson, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA

M. B. Empson, MMed *Syd.*, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

R. A. Franklin, MBChB *Otago*, Dip Venereology *Lond.*,  
BSc, DipObst, FACSHP

T. E. Hawkins, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

R. Henderson, MBChB, PhD, FRACP, FRCPA

S. R. Jackson, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

S. D. R. Lang, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA

C. V. Kyle, PhD *Utah*, MBChB, MMedSci, DipObst,  
FRACP

A. J. Morris, BSc MBChB *Otago*, MD, DipABMM,  
FRCPA

D. Nicholls, DipSportsMed, MBChB, FRACP

S. J. Palmer, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

S. Roberts, BSc, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

G. A. Royle, MBChB, MMedSc, FMGEMS, FRCPA

D. R. Simpson, MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

S. L. Taylor, MBChB, FRCPA

E. P. Theakston, MBChB, FRCPA

A. R. Varcoe, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPA

A. Woodhouse, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, FRACP,  
DTM&H *Lond.*

#### Honorary Senior Research Fellows in Molecular Medicine

R. G. Snell, MSc *Otago*, PhD *Cardiff*

N. S. Van de Water, BSc *Massey*, PhD *Lond.*, DipSc  
*Massey*

#### Research Fellows

1999 J. Z. Bai, BSc *Shanxi*, PhD, DipBiochem *Wuhan*

2000 P. B. Daniel, PhD (jointly with *Physiology*)

2000 M. V. Flores, BSc *Philippines*, PhD NSW

1999 J. A. Horsfield, BSc *Well.*, PhD *Otago*, DipAppSci  
*Well.*

1997 J. Kanwar, BSc *Shimla*, MSc *Ludhiana*, PhD  
*Chandigarh*

1998 R. Kanwar, BSc *Punjab*, MSc *Ludhiana*, PhD  
*Chandigarh*

2000 M. Klugmann, PhD *Heidel.*

1995 E. Leung, MSc *Western Kentucky*, PhD

1997 A. I. Muravlev, PhD *Novosibirsk*

1999 M. Rees, PhD *Cardiff*

1999 D. Schuhbauer, PhD *Berlin*

1998 X. Sun, MMed, MD *Shandong*

#### Honorary Research Fellows

K. Baer, DipBio *Bielefeld*, PhD *Zurich*

L. Petreska, BPharm *Skopje*, Dr Sci *Zagreb*

#### Senior Tutor

2001 H. Brooks, BSc *Sur.*, PhD *Lond.*

## NURSING

#### Head of Division

Judy A. Kilpatrick, CNZM, BA, FCNA(NZ), RGON

#### Administrator

Teresa Campbell

#### Associate Professors

1999 Margaret Horsburgh, DipEd MA EdD *C Sturt*,  
FCNA(NZ) RGON RM

1999 Judy Kilpatrick, CNZM BA FCNA(NZ) RGON  
Nicola North, MA PhD *Massey*

#### Senior Lecturers

H. Baker, Dip SocSci *Massey*, MA, RGON, RM

J. C. Christensen, BA MSc *McG*, PhD *Massey*, FCNA(NZ),  
RCpN

L. C. Dyson, MA *Massey*, RGON

H. Hamer, MN, RPN, RGN

A. McKillop, MA, RGON

M. J. G. Parsons, MSc *Lond.*, RN

N. Sheridan, MPH, RGON

Jan Nicolls, RGON

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

S. J. Cuthbertson, RGON

J. Bebbington, BHSc *Auck. IT*, RCpN

#### Lecturers

S. J. Heath, BSc *Manc.*, MA PGDipEd *Wolv.*, RGN, RSCN

M. Honey, BA, MPhil, RGON

J. Benipal, RCpN, BHSc, MBS

Barbara Daly, RCpN, BSc, MHSc

#### Honorary Lecturers

Carol Boustead, MSc ADipHSc *Newcastle*, CRM *Durham*,  
RGN

Mia Carroll, BA *Massey*, DPH FCNA(NZ) RGON

Frances Hughes, BA *Massey*, MA *Well.*, RCpN

Susan Waterworth, MSc *DANS Manc.*, RGN

Gudrun Dannenfeldt, BSocSc, MSc

#### Clinical Lecturers

Merrilyn Beken, BHSc, RGON

Pip Brown, MA RGON

Cheyne Chalmers, BHSc *MIT*, RCpN  
 Nicola Gini, BHSc *Auck. IT*  
 Elizabeth Glen, DipMH, RPN, RCpN  
 Andrew B Jull, MA Dip Bus Studies *Massey*, RCpN  
 Sue King, MA *Well.*, RGON  
 Elaine McCall, MN *Massey*, RCpN, BA *Edin.*  
 Sue Mann, MBus *Massey*, RGON  
 Annette Mortensen, BA *Otago*, RCpN, MPhil *Massey*  
 Judith Moselen, BHSc *MIT*, RCpN  
 Jan Nicholls, RGON  
 Ann O'Loughlin, PGDipSocSci *Massey*, RGON  
 Lesley Powell, BHSc *AUT*, RGON  
 Di Roud, BHSc *Auck. IT*, RCpN  
 Denise Singer, RCpN  
 Leigh Smith, GradDip, RGON  
 Victoria Smith, DipPH, BN, MNS, DipAppSci, *Deakin*,  
 DPH, CIC, RN  
 Catherine Tracy, BN *Massey*, RGON  
 Catherine Western, BN *Massey*, RGON  
 Bronwyn Ward, BHSc *AUT*, RGON  
 Kim Williams, RCpN  
 Pam Williams, BHSc *AUT*, RGN  
 Nicola Young, MPH, RCpN

### NUTRITION

#### Professor

1988 Lynnette R. Ferguson, DPhil *Oxon*, DSc

#### Research Fellows

Martin Philpott, MSc PhD  
 Nishi Karunasinghe, BSc MPhil PhD *Macq.*

### OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY

#### Head of Division

Peter R. Stone, MD *Brist.*, BSc MBChB DipObst,  
 FRANZCOG, FRCOG, DDU, CMFM

#### Secretary

Robyri Lynch

#### Postgraduate Professor of Obstetrics and Gynaecology

...

#### Emeritus Professor of Obstetrics and Gynaecology

Sir G. C. Liggins, CBE, MBChB *Otago*, MD(Lund),  
 PhD, FRCS(Ed), FRACS, FRCOG(Hon),  
 FRACOG(Hon), FRNZCOG(Hon), FACOG(Hon),  
 FRSNZ, FRS

#### Professor of Maternal Fetal Medicine

P. R. Stone, MD *Brist.*, BSc MBChB DipObst,  
 FRANZCOG, FRCOG, DDU, CMFM

#### Professor of Neonatology

1995 Jane E. Harding, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc MBChB,  
 FRACP (*jointly with Paediatrics*)

#### Professor of Obstetrics and Gynaecology

1973 Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD,  
 DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG (*jointly with South  
 Auckland Clinical School and Maori & Pacific  
 Health*)

#### Associate Professor of Steroid Biochemistry, Director, Research Centre in Reproductive Medicine

...

#### Associate Professor in Obstetric Medicine

1991 R. A. North, PhD *Melb.*, BSc MBChB, FRACP

#### Associate Professors

◆ C. M. Farquhar, MBChB MD, DipObst, MRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG, CREI  
 ◆ L. M. E. McCowan, BSc MBChB, DipObst, FRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG, CMFM  
 1985 N. W. Pattison, BSc MBChB MD, DipObst, FRCOG,

CMFM (*jointly with South Auckland Clinical  
 School*)

1982 A. B. Roberts, MBChB MD *Aberd.*, FRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG, DDU, COGUS

1994 J. Westgate, MBChB MD, MRCOG

#### Senior Lecturers in Obstetrics and Gynaecology

1996 A. Ekeroma, MBBS, DipObs, FRANZCOG,  
 MRCOG (*jointly with South Auckland Clinical  
 School*)

V. Bhoola, MBBS *Mangalore*, FCOGASA, FRANZCOG

N. Johnson MBBS BmedSci DCH MRCP MRCOG  
 FRANZCOG

#### Senior Lecturer in Women's Health

1991 Helen E. Roberts, BA BAO MBChB DipObst  
*Dublin*, MPH *Yale* (*jointly with General Practice &  
 Primary Health Care*)

#### Senior Lecturers in Neonatal Paediatrics

1997 Malcolm Battin, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCP  
 (*jointly with Paediatrics*)

2000 Sneha Sood MD (*jointly with Paediatrics*)

#### Senior Lecturer in Reproductive Science

1995 A. N. Shelling, BPhEd BSc PhD  
 (*jointly with Molecular Medicine*)

#### Lecturers

1996 L. Chamley, MSc, PhD

E. Parry, MBBS, MRCOG, MRANZCOG

#### Epidemiologist in Women's Health

L. Sadler, MBChB, FRANZCOG, MPH *Yale*

#### Honorary Senior Lecturers

P. J. Casey, BVSc *Massey*, PhD *Calif.*

D. Webster PhD

#### Honorary Research Associate

D. M. O. Becroft, MBChB NZ, MD NZ, FRACAA,  
 FRCPA, FRACP, FRCP, GRANZCOG

#### Senior Tutor in Ultrasound

J. Mitchell, MSc

#### Research Midwife

R. Taylor, BScN, MHSc

#### Clinical Readers

M. A. H. Baird, MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG, FRANZCOG

R. W. Jones, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

P. J. Casey, BVSc *Massey*, PhD *Calif.*

G. S. Gudex, MBChB, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

S. R. Milsom, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP

D. A. Ansell, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG, FRANZCOG

S. L. Belgrave, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG

I. M. Brown, MBBS, FRCOG

R. G. Buist, BSc MBChB, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

M. E. Carter, MBChB, MRCOG

K. F. Clark, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCOG

P. J. Dempsey, MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG, FRANZCOG

W. G. L. Ferguson, MBChB

W. Hadden, MBChB, FRANZCR

D. E. Hardie, BSc MBChB, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

A. J. Haslam, MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

S. J. Hastie, MBChB, DipObst DipChHealth *Otago*,  
 MRCOG, MRANZCOG

K. W. Hill, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG

P. N. Jennings, MBChB *Otago*, FRCOG, FRANZCOG

Y. Lake, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCOG

P. M. MacPherson, MBChB *Otago*, MRNZCOG

N. Meher-Homji, MBBS MD *India*, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

R. Naden, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP

E. Ozumba, BMBCh *Nigeria*, MOBstetGynae *Liv.*,

MRCOG, FRANZCOG

S. Pillay, DSM *Fiji*, DipObst, MRCOG, FRANZCOG  
 R. Raj, FRANZCOG  
 R. Reid, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCOG, FRANZCOG  
 J. D. Roman, MRCOG  
 J. Rowan, MBChB *Liv.*, DipObst, FRACP  
 J. Smallbridge, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCOG  
 W. S. J. Tongue, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRCOG,  
 FRANZCOG  
 J. R. Whittaker, MBChB *Otago*, MRCOG, FRANZCOG

### OCCUPATIONAL MEDICINE

#### Professor

1995 D. F. Gorman, BSc MBChB, FACOM, FAFOM,  
 DipDHM, PhD

#### Lecturer

A. Culpan, NZRGON

#### Research Fellow

Y. L. Huang, BMed, MMedSc, Neurosurgery *China*

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

D. Black, BHB MBChB DIH *Otago*, FAFOM  
 A. Drewry, BHB MBChB DIH *Otago*, GCM *Gld.*, FAFOM  
 E. W. Dryson, MBChB DIH *Otago*, FAFPM, FAFPHM,  
 MFOM *UK*  
 C. T. C. Kenny, BSc MBChB Dip DHM *Adel.*,  
 MRNZCGE, AFOM *UK*, FAFOM  
 D. McIndoe, BA  
 J. R. Monigatti, BSc, MBChB, MFOM *UK*, MRCP *UK*  
 T. Moore, BSW *Massey*, MS, RhD *Sth.Ill.*  
 M. Robb, BSc, MBChB, DOHP *Otago*  
 P. H. Robinson, LVO MBChB *Otago*, FAFPHM (RACP),  
 MCCM, AFOM (RCP), MSc *Lond.*, DipDHM

### OPHTHALMOLOGY

#### Head of Discipline

Charles N. J. McGhee, MBChB BSc *Glas.*, PhD *Dund.*,  
 FRCS *Glas.*, FRCOphth *UK*, FRANZCO, FRSA

#### Administrator

Alison O'Connor

#### The Maurice Paykel Foundation Professor in Ophthalmology

1999 Charles N. J. McGhee, MBChB BSc *Glas.*, PhD  
*Dund.*, FRCS *Glas.*, FRCOphth *UK*, FRANZCO,  
 FRSA

#### Sir William and Lady Stevenson Associate Professor in Ophthalmology (Honorary)

1984 M. M. Gillian Clover, MBChB *Otago*, PhD *Lond.*,  
 FRCOphth *UK*, FRACO

#### Associate Professor in Ophthalmology

2000 Helen Danesh-Meyer, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO

#### Clinical Associate Professor in Ophthalmology

Brian Joondeph, BA *Cornell*, MD *Chic.*

#### Clinical Senior Lecturer

Dr Mark Donaldson MBChB, FRANZCO

#### Lecturer in Ophthalmology

1998 Trevor Sherwin, BSc PhD *Kent*

#### Desmond Hadden Lecturer

1999 Jennifer Craig, BSc PhD *Glas.*, MCOptom *UK*,  
 FFAO *USA*

#### Desmond Hadden Research Fellow

Andreas Muller, PhD *Glas.*

#### Senior Research Fellow

Christina Grupcheva, MD *Varna*, DO *Softa*

#### Fellows

Gerry Cairns, BSc *Glas.*, MCOptom *UK*

Simon Dean, MBChB  
 Ivan Grupchev, MD *Varna*, DO *Softa*  
 Christina Klais, BSc, MD *Bonn*, DM *Frankfurt*  
 Susan Ormonde, MBChB *Brist.*, FRCOphth *UK*  
 Brendan Vote, MBBS *Gld.*, FRANZCO  
 Tracey Wong MBChB

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

Stephen Best, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO  
 Trevor Gray MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Carolyn Hope, MBChB *Dund.*, FRANZCO  
 Justin Mora MBChB, FRANZCO  
 David Pendergrast, MBChB, FRACS, FRANZCO  
 Paul Rosser, MBChB, FRANZCO  
 Dianne Sharpe MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCO

### ORTHOPAEDICS

#### Head of Discipline

Susan Stott, PhD *Calif.*, MBChB FRACS

#### Administrative Secretary

Christine Ganly

#### Associate Professors

1997 Susan Stott, PhD *Calif.*, MBChB FRACS  
 Rocco Pitto MD *Rome* PhD *Nuremberg*

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

T. M. Astley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 M. Barnes, MBChB, FRACS  
 H. Blackley, MBChB, FRACS  
 C. Brown, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. Campbell, MBChB, DipObst FRACS  
 M. Caughey, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 M. Clatworthy, MBChB, FRACS  
 G. Coldham, MBChB, FRACS  
 H. Crawford, MBChB, FRACS  
 P. Eaton, MBChB, FRACS  
 G. Farr, MBChB, FRACS  
 G. French, MBChB, FRACS  
 T. Geddes, MBChB, FRACS Orth  
 A. Hadlow, MBChB, FRACS  
 M. Hanlon, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. E. Hardy, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 K. Karpik, MBChB, FRACS  
 G. F. Lamb, MBChB NZ, FRCS, FRACS  
 A. McAuslan, MBChB, FRACS  
 S. McCowan, MBChB, FRACS  
 R. O. Nicol, MBChB *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 B. Otto, MBChB, FRACS  
 P. Robertson, MBChB, FRACS  
 K. Smith, MBChB, FRACS  
 R. Street, MBChB, FRACS  
 T. Tasman-Jones, MBChB, FRACS  
 C. Taylor, MBChB, FRACS  
 M. Tomlinson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 J. Tonkin, MBChB, FRACS  
 B. Twaddle, MBChB, FRACS  
 S. Walsh, MBChB, FRACS  
 M. Wright, MBChB, FRACS

#### Research Fellow

A. Mackey, BHSc, MSc

#### Lecturer

P. Blyth, MBChB

#### Clinical Readers

J. C. Cullen, MBChB NZ, MSc *Oxf.*, FRCS  
 G. Tregonning, MBChB, FRACS FRCS

### PAEDIATRICS

#### Head of Division

Edwin A. Mitchell, BSc, MBBS *Lond.*, DCH, DSc,  
 FRACP, FRCPC

**Administrator**

Margaret Parker

**Professor of Paediatrics**

...

**Professor of Child Health Research**1984 Edwin A. Mitchell, BSc, MBBS *Lond.*, DCH, DSc, FRACP, FRCPCH**Professor of Community Paediatrics**1982 Diana R. Lennon, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
(jointly with South Auckland Clinical School)**Honorary Professor**Gail E. Richards, BA *C'Nell*, MD MM *Northwestern*, FRACP**Associate Professors**1981 M. Innes Asher, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
1990 Wayne Cutfield, DCH *Otago*, MBChB, FRACP  
1997 Ingrid Winship, MBChB MD *Cape Town*  
(jointly with Molecular Medicine)**Clinical Reader**

...

**Senior Lecturers**2001 Andrews John, MD *Wisc.*, FAAP  
1997 Catherine Byrnes, MBChB, MRCA  
1993 Cameron Grant, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FAAP  
1997 Paul Hofman, MBChB, DipObst  
1976 Maxwell C. Morris, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP, FRCPCan  
2001 Alan Simpson, MBChB, DipPaed, MSc Comm Paeds, FRACP  
1996 Peter Watson, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst&Gyn, FRACP  
(jointly with South Auckland Clinical School)  
1994 Alison Vogel, MBChB, DipObst, DCH *Otago*, MPH, MD, FRACP  
1977 Alison Wesley, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, DCH, FRACP  
2000 Callum Wilson, MBChB *Otago*, Dip Paeds Dip Obst, FRACP  
1997 Elizabeth Wilson, BSc, MBBS *Lond.*, RCP**Senior Lecturer in Paediatric Surgery**1993 R. Stuart Ferguson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS**Honorary Clinical Senior Lecturer**Carolyn Dakin MB, BS *Syd.*, MPH, PhD, *UNSW*, FRACP**Research Fellows**1998 Phillipa Clark, BM DM DCH MRCP *UK*, MRCPCH FRACP  
2000 Howie Stephen, MBChB, DipObst, DipPaed  
2000 Craig Jefferies, MBChB, Dip Paed, FRACP  
1995 John M. D. Thompson, MSc PhD**Clinical Senior Lecturers**R. P. Aickin, BMedSc MBChB DCH *Otago*, FRACP  
S. Campanella, MBChB *S.Af.*, FCP  
S. Chin, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, DCH, FRACP  
P. M. Clarkson, MBChB NZ, FRACP  
Raewyn Gavin, MBChB, FRACP  
T. L. Gentles, DipCH *Otago*, MBChB, FRACP  
D. L. Jamison, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
N. P. Kelly, BDW *Melb.*, DipCH *Otago*, MBChB, DipO&G, FRACP, DSAC, MACTM  
A. Kolbe, MB, BS, FRACS  
A. Leversha, BHB, MBChB, DipObst, FRACP, EMRST, MPH, APLS  
A. Y. L. Liang, MBBS *H.K.*, FRACP  
Scott Macfarlane, BSc MBChB FRACP  
N. Manikkam, BSc S.Af., MBChB S.Af., MMed S.Af., FRACP (jointly with Health Waik.)R. E. Marks, MBChB *Brist.*, BSc, DRCOG, FRACP  
D. Mauger, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
C. D. Moyes, BA BChir MAMB *Can.*, MD, MRCP, FRCPCH  
Wayne Nicholls, MBChB *Otago*, DCH *Otago*, DipObst, FRACPP. W. B. Pease, MBChB *Witw.*, FRCS  
Ralph Pinnock, BSc MBChB *Cape Town*, DCH S.A., FRACP  
D. Rothwell, MChB *Otago*, FRACP, MMS  
Jan P. Sinclair, MBChB, FRACP  
Sue Rudge, MB BS *Lond.*, Dip(Obs)RCOG, MRCP *UK.*, DM *Nottingham*, FRCP  
J. R. Skinner, MBChB, MRCPK *UK*  
V. Upadhyay, MBBS *Ahmedabad*, MBBS, MS, FRACS  
L. M. Voss, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
Michael Watt, MBChB *Otago*, MRACP, FRACP  
Nigel J. Wilson, MBChB *Otago.*, DipObst, DCH *Lond.*, MRCP *UK*,  
W. Wong, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP**Honorary Research Fellow**John V. Conaglen, MBChB, MD *Otago*, FRACP**Neonatology****Professor of Neonatology**1989 Jane E. Harding, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc MBChB, FRACP  
(jointly with Paediatrics, Obstetrics & Gynaecology and Liggins Institute)**Senior Lecturers**1997 Malcolm Battin, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCP (jointly with Paediatrics and Obstetrics and Gynaecology)  
2000 Sneha Sood, MD (jointly with Paediatrics and Obstetrics and Gynaecology)**Clinical Senior Lecturers**G. Bloomfield, MBChB, MBA, FRACP  
D. Knight, BA *Can.*, BM BCh *Oxon*, MRCP *UK*, FRACP  
C. A. Kuschel, MBChB, FRACP  
Michael P. Meyer, MBChB *Rhodesia*, DCH, MD, MRCP  
P. T. Nobbs, BSc MBChB, FRCP *Can.*  
R. S. H. Rowley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
M. C. Wong, MBChB, MRCP *UK.*, FRACP**PATHOLOGY****Head of Division**

...

**Administrator**

Kathryn Siow

**Associate Professor**

1990 Linda Maxwell, BSc MCSP Sur., MPhil PhD

**Emeritus Professor**John Gavin, DDS PhD DSc, *Otago*, FRCPath(Hon), FRCPA, FFOP**Honorary Associate Professor of Forensic Medicine**T. D. Koelmeyer, MBBS *Ceyl.*, FRACS, FRCPA**Honorary Associate Professors**Barry D. Evans, MD *Lond.*, MRCP, FRACP  
Vernon J. Harvey, MD *Lond.*, MRCP, FRACP  
W. R. Wilson, MSc PhD**Senior Lecturers in Anatomical Pathology**2000 W. G. Elmsly, BSc MBChB FRCPA  
1991 L. J. Zwi, BSc MBChB *Wits.*, PhD, FRCPA**Senior Lecturer in General Pathology**

2001 G. J. Finlay, MSc, PhD, BTh

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**C. S. Benjamin, MD *Madr.*, FRACP  
W. J. Childs, MBChB, FRACP, FRACP  
Alison D. Cluroe, BMedSc, BMBS *Nott.*, FRCPA

J. H. L. Matthews, MBChB, FRACR  
 Simon R. Stables, MBBS *Otago*, FRCPA  
 Beth J. L. Synek, MBChB, FRCPA  
 P. Thompson, MD, FRACP  
 Jane C. Vuletic, MBChB, FRACS, FRCPA  
 J. Baranyai, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPath  
 K. Y. Chau, MBBS *H.K.*, MRCPath  
 M. L. Christie, MBChB, FRCPA  
 C. Jose, MD *Madr.*, FRACR  
 A. R. King, MBChB *Otago*, FRCPA  
 J. Kirker, BSc, MBChB, FRCPA  
 C. Kyle, PhD *Utah*, MBChB, MMedSci, DipObst, FRCPA  
 A. McCann, MBChB, FRACR  
 M. V. Miller, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, FRCPA  
 P. J. Symmans, MBChB, FRCPA

**Lecturer**

1996 Bronwyn G. Siim, BSc MSc PhD

**Honorary Senior Research Fellows**

Lois C. Armiger, BSc NZ, MSc PhD  
 F. H. Sims, MSc MD *Otago*, PhD *Edin.*, FRCPA, FAACB

**PHARMACY****Head of Division**

John P. Shaw, BSc PhD *Brighton*, DipClinPharm *Aston*,  
 FNZCP, FRPharmS, MPS

**Administrator**

Kay Wong

**Professor of Pharmacy**

John P. Shaw, BSc PhD *Brighton*, DipClinPharm *Aston*,  
 FNZCP, FRPharmS, MPS

**Associate Professor**

2001 Patrick A. Ball, BSc, PhD *Wales*, MSc, MCPP,  
 ANZCP, MRPharmS, MPS

**Senior Lecturers**

1998 Simon S. Hurley, BSc *Brighton*, MSc *Aberd.*,  
 DipPH *Otago*, MPS, MRPharmS  
 2000 Douglas Hancox, BPharm *Lond.*, DipEdStud  
*Well.*, MRPharmS, MPS

**Lecturers**

2001 Raid Alany, BPharm, MSc *Baghdad*  
 2001 Paul Croucher, BSc, PhD *Otago*

**PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY****Head of Division**

James W. Paxton, BSc PhD *Glas.*

**Administrator**

Anna Evans

**Professors**

1988 Michael Dragnonow, MSc PhD *Otago*  
 1994 Murray D. Mitchell, DPhil *Oxon*, DSc *Liv.*,  
 CChem, FRSC

**Associate Professors**

1983 Nicholas H. G. Holford, MSc MBChB *Manc.*,  
 MRCP, FRACP  
 1996 Mark J. McKeage, MBChB *Otago*, PhD *Lond.*,  
 MMedSc, FRACP  
 1976 James W. Paxton, BSc PhD *Glas.*

**Honorary Associate Professor**

Richard Milne, MSc *Cant.*, PhD *Otago*

**Senior Lecturer in Pharmacology**

1995 Jeffery A. Keelan, BSc *Liv.*, MSc, PhD

**Senior Lecturer in Toxicology**

1997 Malcolm Tingle, BSc PhD *Liv.*

**Lecturers**

2000 Bronwyn Connor, PhD  
 2000 Michelle Glass, PhD

**Research Fellows**

2000 Jeffery Greenwood, PhD *UBC*  
 2001 Shufeng Zhou, PhD

**PHYSIOLOGY****Head of Division**

Mark Cannell, BSc PhD *Lond.*

**Administrator**

P. C. Dunga

**Professor**

1998 Mark Cannell, BSc PhD *Lond.*

**Professor of Neurophysiology**

1986 Janusz Lipski, MD PhD DSc *Warsaw*

**Associate Professors**

1977 Bruce Small, BE BSc *Cant.*, DIC PhD *Lond.*  
 1989 Gary Housley, MSc, PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

1972 Noel J. Dawson, BSc PhD, *N.E.*  
 1990 Paul Donaldson, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 1995 Greg Funk, BSc PhD *Br.Col.*  
 1982 Denis Loisselle, MSc *Alta.*, PhD *Dal.*, DipPhEd *Otago*  
 1996 Simon Malpas, BSc *Well.*, PhD *Otago*  
 1984 Stewart Robinson, MBChB *Otago*, MSc *Adel.*,  
 FFARACS  
*(jointly with Sport and Exercise Science)*  
 1996 A. A. Young, ME, PhD  
*(jointly with Anatomy with Radiology)*

**Lecturers**

1995 Ian Le Grice, BE DipTP MBChB PhD  
 1998 Christian Soeller, DipPhys., PhD *Goettingen*

**Research and Postdoctoral Fellows**

1999 Carolyn J. Barret, BSc, DipSc, PhD *Otago*  
 1999 Marc Jacobs, MS *Itum Starford*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1996 Lucille D Burton, BSc PhD  
 1999 Dan Jagger, BSc *Newcastle (UK)*, PhD *Brist.*  
 1998 Michael Navakatikyan, PhD *Moscow*, SR *USSR*  
 1999 Andrew Taberner, MSc (Tech) PhD *Waik.*  
 2001 Paul O'Callaghan, MSc PhD *Cardiff*

**Senior Tutors**

1994 Marie Ward, MSc  
 1995 Kim Dirks, BSc *Mcg*, MSc

**Tutors**

1998 Nicole Hodgetts, MSc  
 1997 David Newstead, BSc

**PSYCHIATRY****Head of Division**

...

**Administrator**

Sarah Turbott, BSc *Cant.*

**Professor**

1981 Robert R. Kydd, MBChB *Otago*, PhD, FRANZCP

**Honorary Professors**

Ian R. H. Falloon, MBChB *Otago*, DPM *Lond.*, DSc  
*Otago*, MRCPsych  
 J. J. Wright, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

**Honorary Associate Professor**

M. Oakley-Browne, BSc, MBChB PhD *Otago*, FRANZCP

**Clinical Associate Professors**

J. H. Coverdale, BSc, MBChB *Otago*, Dip Obst, ABPN,  
 FRANZCP  
 B. Barraclough, DM *Otago*, FRACP, FRCFpsych, FRCP  
*Lond.*, DPM *Lond.*

R. G. Large MBChB, DPM *Cape Town*, PhD FFPsych  
S.Af., FRANZCP

#### Senior Lecturers

1999 M. Abas, MBChB *Birm*, MRCP MRCPsych UK,  
MPhil MSc *Lond*.

L. Andrews, MBChB, FRANZCP

A. T. Fernando III, MD *Philippines*

1987 S. N. Merry, MBChB, FRANZCP

1995 A. I. F. Simpson, BMedSci MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

1988 M. L. Webster, MBChB, FRACP, FRANZCP

#### Clinical Readers

D. Chaplow, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

S. W. Miles, BDChB MD *Otago*, DipPsych, FRANZCP

G. J. Turbott, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS, FRANZCP

#### Clinical Senior Lecturers

N. Argyle, MA MBBS *Camb.*, MRCPsych *Lond*.

A. R. Fraser, MBChB MPM *Otago*, MRCPsych,  
FRANZCP

C. Gale, BHB MBChB, FRANZCP

S. Hatcher, BSc MBBS *Lond.*, MRCPsych MMedSc  
*Leeds*

V. Humberstone, MBChB, FRANZCP

P. S. Melding, MBChB *Liv.*, DipHSM *Massey*, FFARCS,  
FRANZCP

L. Abel, MD *Germany*

M. L. Aimer, MBChB, FRANZCP

D. Antcliffe, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

K. Appleton, MBChB *Leeds UK*

M. K. Au, MBBS *H.K.*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

M. Bacon, MBBS, MRCPsych UK, FRANZCP

N. Baba-Milkic, MS MD *Nis*.

B. Banjac, MD *Belgrade*, FFPsych *Witw*.

C. Been, MBBCh MMed *Rand.*, DCH S.A.

C. Bensemann, MBChB *Otago*, MRCGP, FRANZCP

P. Bennett, MBChB FRANZCP

J. Broadhead, MA *Oxf.*, MBBS MPhil *Lond.*, MRCPsych

J. Casey, MBChB, FRANZCP

C. G. Cumming, MBChB *Otago*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

W. De Beer, MBBCh *Witw*, FRACP

D. Drysdale, BMedSc MBChB PhD *Otago*, FRANZCP

S. Duff, MBChB *Liv.*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

E. Felgate, MBBCh DPM *Rand*.

P. Fernandez, MBBS *Madr.*, FRANZCP

G. Finucane, MBChB FRANZCP

I. Goodwin, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

S. Heed, Med.LicHons *Goteborg*, Steg-I-Komp psterapi,  
*Led SyPsyk foren*

B. Hipner, MBChB *Neuvo Leon*, Psychiatric Training  
*Baylor*

M. Israel, MBChB FRANZCP

S. Kumar, MBBS, MRCPsych, MPhil *Lond.*, DPM

M. Langdon, MD *St Louis*

P. Leatham, BSc MBChB, FRANZCP

L. Matthews, MBChB

G. McCormick, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

B. McIvor, MBChB, FRANZCP

R. Mendel, MBChB MD *Brazil*

L. J. Moore, AB *Calif.*, MD *Oregon*, ABPM

E. Nikolou, MBChB *Otago*

M. Patton, MBChB, *Otago*, FRANZCP

G. Pilkington, MBChB, FRANZCP

F. Plunkett, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

G. Robinson, MBBCh *Witw.*, FFPsych S.Af.

D. Rooke, BM, MSc, MRCPsych, MRCGP

T. Rudegar, MD, PhD

H. Seth, MBBCh *Aberd.*, MRCPsych DipFM *Glas.*,  
DipObstMedGyn

R. Shieff, MBChB, FRANZCP

A. S. Sumaru, DSM S.Pac., DPM *Otago*, BSc, FRANZCP

R. Tapsell, MBChB *Otago*

T. Van Kralingen, MBChB *Otago*, FRANZCP

V. Weatherley, BA *Brist.*, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCGP FRANZCP

S. Weeks, MBChB, FRANZCP

S. Wong, MBBS *H.K.*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP

R. Worrall, MBChB, FRANZCP

R. Wyness, MBChB *Johannes.*, FRANZCP

Z. Vuletic-Korac, PhD *Bel*

#### Lecturers

1989 L. Chard, BA (Psych), MSc CI Psych *Calg*.

1999 I. Ford, RCOMAN BN MA *Amst*.

1991 H. McDowell, MA, PGDipClinPsych, PhD

1997 A. J. O'Brien, BA *Massey*, RGN, RPN,

#### Assistant Research Fellow

1997 N. Khin, MA

#### Clinical Tutors

A. Cox, MBChB, DipObst, MRNZCGP

C. Immelman, MBChB

L. Matthews, MBChB

M. Mitchell-Lowe, MBChB

### SOUTH AUCKLAND CLINICAL SCHOOL

#### Head of Clinical School

Graham Mellsoy, MBChB *Otago*, DPM MD *Melb.*,  
FRANZCP, MRCPsych

#### Administrator

Peter Slocum, BA ANU

#### Professors

1999 Craig Anderson, BS BMedSci, MBBS *Tas.*, PhD  
*W.Aust.*, FRACP, FAFPHM (*jointly with Medicine*)

1982 Diana Lennon, MBChB *Otago*, FRACP  
(*jointly with Paediatrics*)

1981 Colin D. Mantell, BMedSc, MBChB *Otago*, PhD  
DipObst, FRCOG, FRANZCOG (*jointly with  
Obstetrics & Gynaecology and Maori & Pacific  
Health*)

Iain Martin, MD FRCS (*jointly with Surgery*)

2000 Graham Mellsoy, MBChB *Otago*, DPM MD *Melb.*,  
FRANZCP, MRCPsych

1996 Harry Rea, MD, FRACP, FRCPE (*jointly with  
Medicine*)

#### Clinical Professor

2001 Randall Morton M.B., B.S. *Adel.*, FRACS MSc  
*Cape Town*

#### Associate Professor

Rocco Pitto, MD *Rome*, PhD *Nuremberg*

#### Senior Lecturers

1996 Alec Ekeroma, Senior Lecturer MBBS, DipObs,  
FRNZCOG, MRCOG (*jointly with Obstetrics  
& Gynaecology*)

2001 Andrew Kerr, MA, MBChB *Otago*

2001 Mark R. Marshall, MBChB FRACP

1999 Susan Parry, MBChB, FRACP

1997 Neil Pattison, BSc MBChB MD, DipObst, FRCOG  
(*jointly with Obstetrics & Gynaecology*)

Briar Peat, MBChB, DipTropicalMed RCP UK,

MZc(Med) *Lond.*, FRACP (*jointly with Medicine*)

Mary Seddon, MBChB *Otago*, MPH FRACP

2000 Sneha Sood, BA, MD  
(*jointly with Paediatrics*)

1996 Peter Watson, MBChB *Otago*, DipObst&Gyn,  
FRACP (*jointly with Paediatrics*)

Anthony Williams, BMedSc *Otago* MBChB *Otago*,  
FANZCA, FFICANZCA

1999 Conroy Wong, MBChB, DipObst, *Otago*, FRACP,  
CCST UK (*jointly with Medicine*)

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

Christopher K. Gale BHB MBChB FRANZCP  
 Hazell, MBBS, DipObst, FRACEM  
 Verity Humberstone, MBChB FRANZCP  
 Peter Jansen  
 Alan McLintic, MBChB, MRCP, UK, FRCA  
 Roger Reynolds, MBChB *Otago*, BSc, FRACP  
 Debbie Ryan, MBChB, BSc *Otago*  
 Stephen Scott, BHB, MBChB, FRACS, EMST  
 Alan Simpson, MBChB, FRACP, MSc, CommPaeds *Lond.*  
 Pathmanathan Sivakumaran, MBBS *S.Lanka*, MRCP  
 UK, FRACP (*jointly with Medicine*)

**Clinical Reader**

Garnett Tregonning (Surgery), MBChB, FRACS, FRCS

**SURGERY****Head of Division**

Bryan R. Parry, MD *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS

**Administrator**

Denise Hyde

**Professors**

Iain Martin, MD *Leeds*, FRCS  
*(jointly with South Auckland Clinical School)*  
 Bryan R. Parry, MD *Otago*, FRCSEd FRACS

**Honorary Professor**

Erik Heineman, MD *Groningen*, PhD *Rotterdam*  
*(jointly with Paediatrics and Research Centre*  
*for Developmental Medicine & Biology)*

**Emeritus Professor**

Graham L. Hill, MD ChM FRCS FRACS FACS

**Sir William Stevenson Associate Professor of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery**

Donald F. Liggins, MBMS *Syd.*, FRACS  
*(retired)*

**Clinical Professors**

Stephen Munn, FRACS, FACS  
 Allan Kerr, MBChB, FRACS

**Associate Professors**

1997 Susan Stott, PhD *Calif.*, MBChB FRACS  
 1998 John A. Windsor, BSc *Otago*, MBChB MD,  
 DipObst, FRACS

**Clinical Associate Professors**

♠ P. G. Alley, MBChB *Otago*, DipProfEthics FRACS  
 J. P. Collins, MBChB, MD *N.U.I.*, FRCS, FRSEd, FRACS  
 John L. McCall, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACS  
 Randall P. Morton, MBBS *Adel.*, MSc(Med) *Cape Town*,  
 FRACS  
 James H. F. Shaw, BMedSc MD DSc *Otago*, FRACS  
 Stephen Streat, MBChB, FRACP

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

D. Adams, MBChB, FRACS  
 T. M. Astley, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 W. Baber, MBChB, FRCS, FRACS  
 C. S. Barber, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 M. Barnes, MBChB, FRACS  
 J. B. Bartley, MBChB, FRACS  
 Jack Bergman, MBChB *Cape Town*, DipObst, FACEM  
 M. Booth, MBChB, MBA, FRACS  
 J. B. Boulton, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS *Eng.*, FRACS  
 R. Bouchier, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. Campbell, MBChB, DipObst FRACS  
 J. F. Carter, MBChB NZ, FRCS, FRACS  
 M. Caughey, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 Peter M. Christie, MBChB MD, FRACS  
 ♠ Ian D. S. Civil, MBE, ED, BSc MBChB, FRACS  
 M. Clatworthy, MBChB, FRACS

J. Collins, MBChB, MD *N.U.I.*, FRCS, FRSEd, FRACS  
 A. Connolly, MBChB, FRACS  
 H. Crawford, MBChB, FRACS  
 T. de Chalain, MSc, FCSSA, FRCS, FRACS  
 E. B. Dorman, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 P. Eaton, MBChB, FRACS  
 W. Farmilo, MBChB, DipObs, FRACS  
 G. Farr, MBChB, FRACS  
 S. Ferguson, MBChB, FRACS  
 B. Foley, MBChB, FACEM  
 C. Peter Freeman, MBChB *Birm.*, FRCS *Edin.*, FFAEM  
*Lond.*, FACEM  
 G. French, MBChB, FRACS  
 C. Furneaux, MBBS *NSU*, FRACS  
 Les Galler, MBChB, FANZCA, FFICANZCA  
 T. Geddes, MBChB, FRACS Orth  
 A. Gordon, MBChB, FRACS  
 R. G. Gunn, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. Hadlow, MBChB, FRACS  
 M. Hanlon, MBChB, FRACS  
 A. E. Hardy, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 R. Harman, BSc, MBChB, FRACS  
 Wayne C. Hazell, MBBS DipObst, FACEM  
 A. Hill, MBChB, FRACS  
 M. Harrison, MBBS, FFARCS *Eng.*  
 Gillian Hood, MBChB, FRACPW, Jones, MBChB,  
 FRACS  
 J. Judson, MBChB, FFARACS, FFICANZCA  
 E. Juhasz, MBChB, FRACS  
 K. Karpik, MBChB, FRACS  
 G. F. Lamb, MBChB NZ, FRCS, FRACS  
 Colin McArthur, MBChB, FFARACS, FFICANZCA  
 A. McAuslan, MBChB, FRACS  
 M. MacCormick, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 S. McCowan, MBChB, FRACS  
 G. McDonald, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS *Eng.*  
 R. F. McIlroy, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS *Eng.*, FRACS  
 A. McLintic, MBChB, FFARACS  
 N. P. McIvor, MBChB *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 E. W. Mee, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS *Eng.*  
 C. Mellow, MBChB, FRACS  
 D. Mills, MBChB, FRACS  
 R. H. Morbey, MBChB FRACS  
 R. O. Nicol, MBChB *Otago*, FRCSEd, FRACS  
 N. M. F. Officer, MBE, MBChB *Otago*, FRCS, FRACS  
 B. Otto, MBChB, FRACS  
 J. Pearson, MBChB, FFARACS  
 B. Peat, MBChB, FRACS  
 D. Pendergrast, MBChB, FRACO  
 G. Poole, MBChB, FRACS  
 M. L. Rice, MBBS *Adel.*, FRACS  
 P. R. Robertson, MBChB, FRACS  
 D. L. Rothwell, MBChB *Otago*, MMedSc, FRACS  
 H. Sillars, MBChB, FRACS  
 I. D. Stewart, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 R. Street, MBChB, FRACS  
 T. Tasman-Jones, MBChB, FRACS  
 C Taylor, MBChB, FRACS  
 David R. Theobald, MBBS *Lond.*, FRCS *Eng.*  
 M. Tomlinson, MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 J. Tonkin, MBChB, FRACS  
 J. Tuckey, MBChB, MMeds, FRACS  
 P. Vanniasingham, MBBS, FRACS (gen.), FRACS (vasc.),  
 FRCS *Edin.*, FRCS *Eng.*  
 J. Walker, MBChB, FFARACS  
 S. Walsh, MBChB, FRACS  
 B. J. Williams, BSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 D. Williams, MBChB *Otago* FRCS *Eng.*, FRACS  
 M. Wright, MBChB, FRACS

**Senior Research Fellow**

Lindsay Plank, DPhil *Waik.*, MSc

**Research Fellow**

Anthony Phillips, MBChB

**Clinical Tutor**

Janek S. Januszkiewicz, MBChB, FRACS

**Clinical Readers**

J. C. Cullen, MBChB NZ, MSc *Oxf.*, FRCS,  
 R. J. Goodey, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, FRACS  
 G. Tregonning, MBChB, FRACS FRCS

**Lecturers**

Andrew MacCormick, MBChB  
 Alex Macmillan, MBChB

**WAIKATO CLINICAL SCHOOL****Head of Clinical School**

2001 Jack H. Havill, BSc, MBChB, FFARCS, FANZCA, FICANZCA

**Administrator**

Raewyn Wooderson

**Professor**J. Sleight, MBChB *Cape Town*, FFARCS UK, FANZCA**Associate Professors**

J. Bass, BSc PhD FRS NZ  
 J. V. Conaglen, MBChB MD *Otago*, FRACP

**Clinical Associate Professors**

T. Gregor, MBChB, FRCS, FACS *Edin.*, PhD SA  
 J. H. Havill, BSc MBChB, FFARCS, FANZCA,  
 FICANZCA  
 M. Rademaker, DM FRCP *Edin.*, FRACP

**Senior Lecturers**

R. Blakelock, MBChB, FRACS  
 C. Buchanan, MBChB, Dip Obstet., FANZCA  
 I. Campbell, BHB MBChB, FRACS  
 R. Cursons, BSc, MSc, PhD  
 G. Devlin, MBChB, FRACP  
 T. Honore, MBChB, MRNZCGP  
 N. Meher-Homji, MD, MRCOG FRNZCOG

**Clinical Senior Lecturers**

D. Clews, MBChB, FRACS  
 W. de Beer, MBChB, FRANZCP  
 P. Jones, B.Med.Sci, MBChB, PhD MRCP, FRACP  
 N. Karalus, BSc, MBChB, FRACP  
 N. Manikkam, MBChB MMed *S.Af.*, FRACP  
 F. Mayall, MBChB, MD, MRCPPath  
 E. Nikolau, MBChB, FRNZCP  
 P. Stokes, MBChB, MD, FRACP  
 C. Straker, MBChB, FCS SA, FRCS *Edin.*, FRACO

**Clinical Lecturers**

D. Balog, MBBS, FRACR  
 A. Barrett, BSc, MD, FRCS *Canada*, FRANZCOG  
 D. Bouchier, MBChB, MRCP UK, FRACP  
 P. Daborn, MBBS *Lond.*, MRCPsych  
 A. Doube, MBChB, FRACP  
 M. Duffill, MBChB, FRCP *Edin.*, MRCP Dip Derm *Lond.*  
 R. Fisher, MBChB, FRACP  
 D. Graham, MBChB, DCH, FRACP  
 M. Jameson, MBChB, MRCP UK., FRACP  
 I. Kennedy, MBChB, MD, FRACP  
 J. Long, MBChB, FCP SA., FRACP  
 K. Majeed, MBChB, MRCPsych, FRANZCP  
 F. Maxwell, MBChB, DCH, FRACP  
 J. McLachlan, MBChB *Cape Town*, FCP SA, FRACP  
 J. Meher-Homji, MBBS, DPM, MD, MRCPsych  
 A. Oakley, MBChB, FRACP  
 S. Safih, MBChB, FACEM  
 U. Samarakkody, FRACS, FRCS *Edin.*, DCH, MS,  
 MBBS *Col.*

J. Strachan, MBChB *Edin.*, MRCPsych, FRANZCP  
 R. Subramaniam, MBBS, BMedSci *Melb.*, MD *Sri Lanka*  
 S. Waymouth, MBChB, FRANZCOG  
 L. Wolmarans, MBChB UOFS, FCP SA

**Faculty of Science****City Campus****Dean**

A. Richard Bellamy, BSc NZ, MSc PhD, FRSNZ

**Deputy Dean (Research)**John C. Montgomery, BSc *Otago*, PhD DSc *Brist.*, FRSNZ**Associate Dean (Academic Programmes)**

Margaret Goldstone, MSc, DipBus, DipTchg

**Associate Dean (Finance & Planning)**Peter L. Hosking, BA NZ, MA *Cant.*, PhD *S.Ill.***Associate Dean (Students)**Duncan J. McLennan, BSc NZ, MSc PhD *Well.*, DSc**Associate Dean (HR)**

George R. Clark, PhD DSc, FNZIC

**Assistant Dean (International)**Thomas Brittain, BSc PhD ScD *E.Anglia*, CChem,  
FRSChem, FNZIC**Assistant Dean (Postgraduate)**Corinne A. Locke, BSc PhD *Liv.*, FGS**Maori in Science Lecturer**Jason Turuwhenua, BSc MSc *Waik.***Faculty Manager**

Jillian M. Reid, BA, LLB, DipCrim, DipTchg

**SCHOOL OF BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES****City Campus****Director**Joerg Kistler, DipNat *ETHZür.*, PhD *Basle*, FRSNZ**Deputy Director (Academic)**Judith A. O'Brien, BSc *Otago*, MSc PhD**Deputy Director (Research)**

Richard C. Gardner, BA MSc PhD, FRSNZ

**Director, First Year Teaching**

Amanda A. Harper, MSc

**School Registrar**Sandra Jones, BA *Gld.*, DipBusStuds *Massey***Technical Coordinator**

Lynnette McMillan

**Distinguished University Professor**1997 Edward N. Baker, MSc PhD, FNZIC, FRSNZ  
(jointly with Department of Chemistry)**Professors**

1993 Garth J. S. Cooper, DPhil *Oxf.*, BSc MBChB,  
 DipObst, FRCPA, FRSNZ (jointly with School of  
 Medicine)  
 1985 Richard C. Gardner, BA MSc PhD, DSc, FRSNZ  
 1983 Joerg Kistler, DipNat *ETHZür.*, PhD *Basle*, FRSNZ  
 1978 John C. Montgomery, BSc *Otago*, PhD DSc  
*Brist.*, FRSNZ  
 1976 Rufus M. G. Wells, PhD DSc *Lond.*, MSc, FRSNZ

**Associate Professors**

1977 Thomas Brittain, BSc PhD ScD *E.Anglia*, CChem,  
 FRSChem, FNZIC  
 1982 David L. Christie, MSc PhD  
 1987 Clive W. Evans, BSc PhD  
 1987 Philip J. Harris, MA PhD *Camb.*  
 1993 Donald R. Love, BSc PhD *Adel.*

1998 Peter Metcalf, BSc *Cant.*, PhD  
 1984 Brian G. Murray, BSc PhD *R'dg.*, FLS  
 1969 Anthony M. Robertson, BSc *Otago*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1990 Michael M. Walker, PhD *Hawaii*

#### Honorary Associate Professor

Stephen R. Davis, MSc PhD *Nott.*

#### Senior Lecturers

1993 C. Scott Baker, BA *Sth Florida*, PhD *Hawaii*  
 1974 Peter M. Barling, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Lond.*  
 1991 Nigel P. Birch, BSc *Massey*, MSc PhD  
 1995 Kendall D. Clements, BSc *Well.*, PhD *James Cook*, MSc  
 1988 Kevin S. Gould, BSc *Bath*, PhD *Manc.*  
 1991 Gillian Lewis, BSc PhD *Otago*  
 1972 John A. Macdonald, AB *Stan.*, PhD *Texas*  
 1981 Judith A. O'Brien BSc *Otago*, MSc, PhD  
 1983 Michael N. Pearson, BSc C.N.A.A., PhD *Exe.*  
 1994 Joanna J. Putterill, MSc PhD  
 1990 Allen G. Rodrigo, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
 1976 G. Kenneth Scott, BSc *Manc.*, PhD *Edin.*  
 1997 Clyde A. Smith, BSc PhD *Massey*

#### Lecturers

1991 Dianne H. Brunton, PhD *Mich.*, MSc  
 1991 Kerry Loomes, BSc PhD *Massey*  
 1995 Kim M. Plummer, DipEd BSc *U.N.E.*, PhD *Melb.*  
 1984, 1987 David J. Saul, BSc PhD *Sheff.*  
 1999 Mary A. Sewell, PhD *Alta.*, MSc  
 2000 John A. Taylor, BSc *Aberd.*, PhD *Edin.*  
 1996 Susan J. Turner, BSc *Massey*, PhD  
 1993 Shane D. T. Wright, BSc *Cant.*, PhD

#### Honorary Lecturers

Nigel Barlow, BSc *Edin.*, PhD *E.Anglia*  
 Roderick L. Bielecki, MSc *NZ*, PhD *Syd.*, FRSNZ  
 A. Ross Ferguson, MSc *Well.*, PhD  
 Dianne M. Gleeson, PhD *ANU*, BSc  
 Richard D. Newcomb, PhD *ANU*, MSc

#### Senior Tutors

1996 Caroline J. Aspden, MSc  
 1994 Amanda A. Harper, MSc  
 1987 Elizabeth Hitchings (Mrs), BSc  
 1993 Craig D. Millar, MSc PhD  
 2001 Stuart Parsons, BSc PhD *Otago*

#### Senior Research Fellows

Bryan F. Anderson, BSc *NZ*, PhD  
 Shiva Reddy, MSc DipSc *Otago*, PhD DipTchg

#### Research and Postdoctoral Fellows

Vickery L. Arcus, MSc *Waik.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 Kristina A. M. Backbro, MSc *Lund.*, PhD *Uppsala*  
 Heather M. Baker, MPhil *Massey*, BSc  
 Graeme L. Card, BSc *N.Lond.*, PhD *Lond.*  
 Alexander Guy Carton, MSc PhD  
 Choong Yee Soon, MSc PhD *Otago*  
 Karine David, BSc DEA PhD *Paris*  
 Todd E. Dennis, ScB *College of William & Mary* in  
*Virginia*, MS PhD *Virginia*  
 Taru Deva, MSc *Pune*  
 Weihong Ji, BSc *Lanzhou*, MSc *NorthWest*, PhD  
 Shane Lavery MSc, PhD *Qld.*  
 Bridget L. Leonard, BSc *Otago*, PhD  
 J. Shaun Lott, BSc *Sur.*, PhD *Leeds*  
 Andrew McCarthy, BSc PhD *Univ. College, Galway*  
 Anthony R. J. Phillips, BSc *Well.*, MBChB *Otago*  
 Howard A. Ross, BSc *York (Can.)*, MSc *Brock.*, PhD *Dal*  
 Salam G. Salih, MBChB MSc *Mosul*  
 Xiaolin Sun, MSc *Inner Mongolia*, PhD *Massey*  
 Nicholas Tolimieri, BA *Colby Coll.*, *Waterville*, MSc *New*  
*Hampshire*, PhD *Windsor*

Aimin Xu, BMed *Anhui*, MBIomedSci *Third Military*  
*University*, PhD

#### Honorary Research Fellows

John E. Braggins, MSc *Well.*, PhD  
 Christina M. Buchanan, MSc *Waik.*, PhD  
 Ramesh R. Chavan, MSc *B'lore*, PhD *S.P.*  
 James M. J. Dickson, BSc *Massey*  
 Carol E. Diebel, BA *Humboldt State*, PhD *M.I.T.*  
 Lena G. Fraser, MSc PhD  
 Andrew G. Jeffs, MSc PhD  
 Lawrence C. W. Jensen, AB *Brown*, MSc PhD *Mirr.*  
 Marshall Laird, PhD DSc *NZ*, FAAAS  
 Gina M. Lento, BA *Calif.*, PhD *Well.*  
 Robert D. Lewis, BSc PhD *Wales*  
 Michael C. Miller, BSc *PhD Liv.*  
 Carolyn W. Poortenaar, PhD *Tas.*, MSc  
 John A. Rattenbury, MA *Br.Col.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 Christopher Squire, MSc, PhD  
 Mirjana Stojkovic, BSc MSc *Belgrade*, PhD  
 Shaoping Zhang, MSc *Jinan*, PhD *Stockholm*

#### Honorary Research Officer

Tom Mulvey, DipBusStuds *Massey*

#### Assistant Research Fellows

Leigh C. Coates, BSc *Cant.*  
 B. Rachelle Merriman-Smith, MSc  
 Sarah L. Nixon, BSc  
 Yu Wang, MB *Anhui*, MSc

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Associate Professor

1993 Michael N. Clout, BSc *Edin.*, PhD (*jointly with*  
*School of Environmental and Marine Sciences*)

## CHEMISTRY

#### Head of Department

Douglas K. Russell, MA *Camb.*, PhD *S'ton.*, FNZIC,  
 CChem, FRSC

#### Departmental Manager

Stephen Rothman, MAgSc *Hebrew University of Jerusalem*

#### Distinguished University Professor

1997 Edward N. Baker, MSc PhD, FRSNZ, FNZIC  
 (*jointly with School of Biological Sciences*)

#### Professors

1968 Graham A. Bowmaker, BSc PhD *Syd.*, FNZIC,  
 MRACI, CChem, FRSC  
 1998 Margaret A. Brimble, MSc PhD *S'ton.*, FRACI,  
 FNZIC, MRSC, CChem  
 1970 George R. Clark, PhD DSc, FNZIC  
 1958 Charmian J. O'Connor, CBE, JP, MSc *NZ*, PhD  
 DSc, FRSNZ, CChem FRSC, FNZIC  
 1966 W. R. Roper, MSc *NZ*, PhD DSc *Cant.*, FRS,  
 FRSNZ, FNZIC  
 1994 Douglas K. Russell, MA *Camb.*, PhD *S'ton.*,  
 FNZIC, CChem, FRSC  
 1991 Peter Schwerdtfeger, CEng *Aalen*, BMat MSc PhD  
*Stuttgart*, Habil Privatdozent *Marburg*, MACS,  
 MGDCh, MAPS, FRSNZ, FNZIC

#### Honorary Professor

William A. Denny, PhD DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

#### Associate Professors

1978 Peter D. W. Boyd, BSc *Tas.*, PhD *Monash*, FNZIC,  
 MRACI  
 1988 Penelope J. Brothers, PhD *Stan.*, MSc, FNZIC  
 1966 Allan J. Easteal, MSc *NZ*, PhD *Tas.*, MNZIC  
 1985 James B. Metson, BSc PhD *Well.*, FNZIC, MTMS  
 1968 C. E. F. Rickard, BSc *NZ*, MSc PhD, FNZIC

1971 Paul D. Woodgate, PhD DSc, FNZIC  
1984 L. James Wright, MSc PhD, FNZIC, MACS

**Senior Lecturers**

1993 Brent R. Copp, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
1995 Hicham Idriss, PhD *Strasbourg*, Habil *Strasbourg*  
1995 Gordon M. Miskelly, BSc PhD *Otago*, MACS,  
MNZIC, ANZFSS

**Lecturer**

1997 David Salter, MSc PhD; MNZIC  
(jointly with *Education*)

**Honorary Lecturer**

Vittorio Caprio, BSc, PhD *Reading*, MRSC CChem

**Senior Tutors**

1982 Judith M. Brittain, BSc PhD *E. Anglia*, MNZIC  
2001 Bianca Kuipers, MSc, PhD *Br.Col.*  
2001 Birgit Rahm, BSc *Witw.*, PhD *Cape Town*  
2001 Bridget M. Sykes, BSc, PhD  
1982 Sheila D. Woodgate, BS *Arizona*, PhD *Stan.*

**Marsden Postdoctoral Fellows**

1998 Ralf Wesendrup, MSc PhD *Berlin*  
2001 Stephen M.F. Kennedy, BSc, PhD *Massey*  
2001 Guo-Liang Lu, MSc *Hebei Normal*, PhD *Nankai*

**Senior Honorary Research Fellows**

Robert F. Anderson, MSc PhD, FRSC, CChem  
B. A. Grigor, MSc NZ, PhD *Leic.*  
Duncan J. McLennan, BSc NZ, MSc PhD *Well.*, DSc  
John E. Packer, MSc NZ, PhD *Lond.*, FNZIC, CChem,  
FRSC  
Michael J. Taylor, MA DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIC, FRSC,  
CChem

David C. Ware, BS *Berkeley*, PhD *Stan.*, MNZIC  
Graham A. Wright, MSc NZ, DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIC

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Maruta Boyd, BSc *W.Ont.*, PhD *McM.*  
Diana C. W. Lim, MSc PhD

**FOOD SCIENCE****Director**

1996 Laurence D. Melton, PhD *Simon Fraser*, MSc,  
CChem FRSC, FAIC, FNZIFST, FNZIC

**Lecturers**

1997 Paul A. Kilmartin, BA BSc *Well.*, STB *Rome*, MTh  
*Syd.*, PhD, MNZIC, MNZIFST  
1997 Bronwen G. Smith, MSc PhD, MNZIFST

**Research Fellow**

...

**Honorary Lecturers**

Robert F. Anderson, MSc, PhD, CChem, FRSC  
Richard Beyer, BSc *Strathclyde*, PhD *Otago*, DipMus  
*Tas.*, FNZIFST  
Graham C. Fletcher, BSc, BCom, MNZMS, MNZIFST  
Grant A. MacDonald, MTech *Massey*, PhD *North*  
*Carolina State*, FZNIFST  
Conrad O. Perera, BSc *Ceylon*, MSc *Mys.*  
Roger A. Stanley, BSc *Cant.*, PhD  
Ralph J. Stevenson, MSc, PhD  
Ronald J. Wong, MSc, PhD, MNZIC, MNZIFST

**FORENSIC SCIENCE****Director**

1996 Douglas Elliot, BSc *Edin.*, PhD *Lond.*, ANZFSS

**Deputy Director**

1995 Gordon M. Miskelly, BSc PhD *Otago*, MACS  
MNZIC, ANZFSS

**Honorary Lecturers**

Sally Coulson, BSc PhD, ANZFSS  
Anne Coxon, BSc *Sunderland Polytechnic*, MSc PhD  
*Strathclyde*, MRPharmS, ANZFSS  
Sally Ann Harbison, BSc PhD *Liv.*, ANZFSS

**POLYMERS AND COATINGS****Director**

1998 Neil Edmonds, MSc NZ, MNZIC

**COMPUTER SCIENCE****City Campus****Head of Department**

John G. Hosking, BSc PhD, Mem.IEEE

**Deputy Heads of Department**

Reinhard Klette, DipMaths Dr.rer.nat., Dr.sc.nat.  
*Jena University*  
Hans W. Guesgen, Dipl.-Inform. *Bonn.*, Dr.rer.nat.  
*Kaiserslautern*, Dr.habil. *Hamburg*

**Departmental Manager**

Penny Barry

**Computer Manager**

Rob Burrowes, BSc

**Professors**

1992 Cristian S. Calude, BA PhD *Bucharest*  
1982 Robert W. Doran, BSc *Cant.*, MS *Stan.*, FNZCS  
(retired 1998)  
1985 John G. Hosking, BSc PhD, Mem.IEEE  
1996 Clark Thornborson, BS MS/ME *Stanford*, PhD  
*Carnegie-Mellon*, MACM, Sen.Mem.IEEE, MRSNZ

**Honorary Visiting Professor**

Hermann Maurer, DrPhil *Vienna*, DrTech h.c.  
*St. Petersburg*

**Associate Professors**

1980 Peter B. Gibbons, MSc *Massey*, PhD *Tor.*,  
MNZCS, FTICA  
1992 Hans W. Guesgen, Dipl.-Inform. *Bonn.*,  
Dr.rer.nat. *Kaiserslautern*, Dr.habil. *Hamburg*  
1984 Warwick B. Mugridge, BA BSc *Massey*, MSc  
PhD, Mem.IEEE, MACM  
1999 John Grundy, MSc, PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

2000 Robert W. Amor, MSc *VUW*, PhD, Mem.IEEE,  
MACM, MNZCS  
1996 Michael J. Dinneen, BSc *Idaho*, MSc PhD *Vict.B.C.*  
2001 Gillian Dobbie, MTech *Massey*, PhD *Melb.*  
1972 Peter M. Fenwick, MSc PhD, Mem IEEE  
1996 Bakhadyr M. Khousainov, DipMaths PhD  
*Novosibirsk*  
1985 Jennifer A. Lennon, MSc, PhD  
1979 Richard J. E. Lobb, MSc PhD  
2001 Kevin Novins, AB *Harv.*, MSc PhD *Cornell U.*  
1996 Patricia J. Riddle, BS *Penn.*, PhD *Rutgers*  
2000 Ian Watson, MSc Essex, MPhil *Plym.*, PhD *Liv.*  
1992 Xinfeng Ye, BSc *Hua Qiao*, MSc PhD *Manc.*

**Lecturers**

1996 Michael W. Barley, BA *Calif.*, MSc *Brun.*, PhD  
*Rutgers*  
1990 John Hamer, BSc *Well.*, PhD, MACM, MNZCS  
1981 Bruce Hutton, PhD *Warw.*, MSc  
2001 Ute W. Loerch, Diplom Mathematikerin *Stuttgart*  
1999 Emilia Mendes, BSc *Catholic Univ. of Rio de*  
*Janeiro*, MSc *Federal Univ. of Rio de Janeiro*,  
PhD *Ston.*

**Honorary Lecturer**

J. Nevil Brownlee, MSc PhD, MemIEEE, MNZIP

**Senior Tutors**

2001 Myra Cohen, BS Cornell, MS Vermont  
 1999 Paul Denny, MSc  
 1993 Adriana Ferraro, BA, DipEd, DipCompSci  
*University of New England*  
 1995 Andrew Luxton, BSc, MA  
 1996 Andrew MacGibbon, BCom, MSc  
 1988 Robert Sheehan, BA, DipCompSci, DipTchg MACM

**Honorary Research Fellows**

G. Alan Creak, BA Camb., PhD Leeds  
 Peter Guttman, MSc PhD  
 Jenny Shearer, BA DipJourn Cant., MACommsPol City  
*University London*, PhD

**Tamaki Campus****Professor of Information Technology**

1996 Reinhard Klette, DipMaths Dr.rer.nat., Dr.sc.nat.  
*Jena University*

**Associate Professor**

1997 Georgy Gimel'farb, MSc PhD Kiev, ScD Moscow

**Senior Lecturers**

1994 S. Manoharan, BTech I.I.T., PhD Edin.  
 1994 Radu Nicolescu, PhD Bucharest, MACM, MemIEEE  
 ♦1996 Hansjorg Baltes, BS PhD Calg.

**Lecturers**

2001 Patrice J. Delmas, PhD Polytechnical National  
*Institute of Grenoble*  
 2000 Ulrich Guenther, MSc, PhD Mem. IEEE  
 1993 Mark Titchener, BSc PhD MS Arizona  
 2001 Mark C. Wilson, BSc Cant., PhD Wisconsin-Madison

**Tutor**

1999 Angela Chang, MSc

**Computer Manager**

1999 James Harper, BSc

**ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE****Tamaki Campus****Head of Department**

John L. Craig, BSc Otago, PhD Massey

**Professor**

1976 John L. Craig, BSc Otago, PhD Massey

**Honorary Visiting Professor**

John E. Hay, BSc Cant., PhD Lond.

**Associate Professors**

1993 Michael N. Clout, BSc Edin., PhD  
*(jointly with Biological Sciences)*  
 1979 John Ogden, MSc PhD DSc Wales

**Senior Lecturers**

1977 Neil D. Mitchell, MA Oxf., MSc Wales, PhD  
*Newcastle(UK)*  
 1972 R. Mere Roberts, BSc Cant., MSc PhD  
 1969 David Shooter, MSc PhD MNZIC  
 ♦1997 Jenny Webster-Brown, BSc Otago, PhD WAust.

**Lecturers**

1999 Robin Hankin, MA Trinity College Camb., PhD Camb.  
 ♦1995 Lesley J. Stone, MSc Witw.

**Honorary Senior Lecturers**

Norman G. Thom, BSc, DipHealthAdmin Massey,  
 FNZIC, MIPENZ  
 J. Morgan Williams, MSc Cant., PhD Bath

**Honorary Lecturer**

Carol Stewart, BSc PhD Cant.

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**

Gretel Boswijk, PhD Sheffield  
 Karen Tricklebank, MSc PhD Syd.  
 Hima Madhavaram, MSc PhD

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Alan Hemmings, BSc Coventry, PhD  
 Simon Hooker, MSc PhD  
 Andrew Jeffs, MSc PhD

**GEOGRAPHY****City Campus****Acting Head of Department**

William Smith, MA Aberd., MSc PhD McG.

**Academic Manager**

Frances Fernandez, BA Bom.

**Financial Manager**

Gael Arnold

**Professors**

1995 Philip C. Forer, MA Oxf., PhD Brist.  
 1994 Richard B. Le Heron, MA Massey, PhD Wash.  
 1968 Warren Moran, MA NZ, PhD, FRSNZ  
 1972 Paul W. Williams, BA Durh., MA Dub., PhD ScD  
*Camb.*

**Associate Professors**

1977 Christopher R. de Freitas, MA Tor., PhD Qld.  
 1976 Hong-Key Yoon, BA Seoul, MS Brigham Young,  
 PhD Berkeley  
 1989 Robin A. Kearns, PhD McM., MA

**Honorary Associate Professor**

Terry Hume, MSc PhD Waik., BSc

**Senior Lecturers**

1995 Paul Augustinus, BSc Melb. and Tas., DPhil  
*Waik. (jointly with Geology)*  
 1993 Anthony M. Fowler, MA PhD  
 1991 Wardlow D. Friesen, BA Calg. and Car., PhD  
 1992 Jay Gao, BE Wuhan, MSc Tor., PhD Georgia.  
 1992 David J. Hayward, BA Lanc., MSc PhD Penn. State  
 1992 Laurence Murphy, BA PhD Dub.  
 1993 Scott L. Nichol, BA ANU, PhD Syd.  
 1986 Kevin E. Parnell, MA PhD James Cook  
 1993 William Smith, MA Aberd., MSc PhD McG.  
 1995 Gordon M. Winder, PhD Tor., MA

**Lecturers**

1999 Brad Coombes, BA PhD Otago  
 1997 Judith K. Haschenburger, BS Nebraska, MA  
*Arizona State*, PhD Br.Col.

**Senior Tutors**

1991 Lyndsay Blue, BSc Cant., MSc Lond. MPhil  
 1997 Janine Elley, MSc  
 1994 Melanie A. Milicich, MA  
 1999 Christina Stringer, BSc, MSc Brigham Young, PhD

**GEOLOGY****Head of Department**

Philippa M. Black, BSc NZ, MSc PhD, FMSAm, FRSNZ

**Departmental Manager**

Daniela Rovere, BSc Zbw

**Professor**

1970 Philippa M. Black, BSc NZ, MSc PhD, FMSAm,  
 FRSNZ

**Honorary Visiting Professor**

J. Malpas, MA Oxf., MSc PhD Nfld., FGSAm, FGSC,  
 FGLS

**Associate Professors**

♦1995 Kevin L. Brown, MSc PhD

- 1978 P. R. L. Browne, BSc *Cape Town*, MSc *Leeds*, PhD *Well.*, FMSAm (*jointly with Geothermal Institute*)  
 1964 K. A. Rodgers, MSc PhD, FRNSNZ, FNZIC, FMinSoc, JP  
 1980 I. E. M. Smith, BSc *Well.*, PhD ANU

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1995 Paul Augustinus, BSc *Melb.*, DPhil *Waik.* (*jointly with Geography*)  
 1997 Kathleen A. Campbell, BSc *Calif.*, MSc *Wash.*, PhD *S. Calif.*  
 ♦1981 John Cassidy, BSc PhD *Liv.*  
 ♦1988 Corinne A. Locke, BSc PhD *Liv.*, FGS  
 1993 Jeffrey L. Mauk, BSc *N.Carolina*, MSc *Montana*, PhD *Mich.*, SEG, SME  
 ♦1981 R. J. Parker, MSc *Cape Town*, PhD *Lond.*  
 1975 Warwick M. Prebble, BSc MSc *Well.*, PhD  
 1991 S. F. Simmons, BA *Macalester*, MSc PhD *Minn.* (*jointly with Geothermal Institute*)

**Honorary Senior Lecturer**

- J. S. Buckeridge, BSc *Cant.*, MSc PhD

**Lecturers**

- 1997 Phil Shane, MSc PhD *Well.*  
 2001 B. D. Ricketts, BSc, MSc, PhD *Car.*, SEPM, Associate Editor NZ Geological Society

**Honorary Research Associates**

- Noel C. White, BSc *Newcastle(NSW)*, PhD *Tas.*  
 John Allen, BSc *Otago*, MSc PhD *Qu.*  
 Peter F. Ballance, BSc PhD DSc *Lond.*  
 J. A. Grant-Mackie, MSc *NZ*, PhD  
 M. R. Gregory, BSc *NZ*, PhD *Dal.*, MSc  
 Hugh Grenfell, MSc PhD *Syd.*  
 Bruce Hayward, BSc PhD  
 M. P. Hochstein, DipGeophys T.U. *Clausthal*, DrRerNat *Mün.*, FRSNZ (*jointly with Geothermal Institute*)  
 H. W. Kobe, DrPhil *Zür.*  
 K. B. Spörl, DipIngGeol DrScNat *ETHZür.*, FGSAm, FRSNZ

**LEIGH LABORATORY****Associate Professor**

- 1992 Russell C. Babcock, BSc, PhD *James Cook*

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1965 W. J. Ballantine, MA *Camb.*, PhD *Lond.*, MIBiol  
 1987 T. Alwyn V. Rees, BSc *Liv.*, PhD *Wales*, MIBiol

**Business & Operations Manager**

- Arthur Cozens, Dip Agr, DipBusStuds *Massey*, DipBus *Auck.*

**MATHEMATICS****City Campus****Head of Department**

- David B. Gauld, PhD *Calif.*, MSc, FNZMS

**Deputy Head of Department**

- David P. Alcorn, BSc *NZ*

**Departmental Manager**

- Ross McCallum, BSc DipBus

**Professors**

- 1983 Marston D. E. Conder, MSocSc *Waik.*, MSc DPhil *DSc Oxf.*, FNZMS, FRSNZ  
 1969 David B. Gauld, PhD *Calif.*, MSc, FNZMS  
 1988 Gaven J. Martin, PhD *Mich.*, MSc, FRSNZ  
 1994 Boris Pavlov, PhD DSc *Leningrad*  
 1970 Ivan L. Reilly, BA MSc DSc *Well.*, AM PhD *Ill.*, CMath, FIMA

**Distinguished Alumni Professor**

- ♦1992 Vaughan F. R. Jones, DesSc *Geneva*, DSc *Wales & Auck.*, FRS, FRSNZ

**Honorary Research Professor**

- John C. Butcher, MSc *NZ*, PhD DSc *Syd.*, FRSNZ

**Associate Professor**

- 1992 Norman Levenberg, BSc *Case Western Reserve*, MS PhD *Mich.*

**Honorary Associate Professor**

- Mavina K. Vamanamurthy, MSc *Mys.*, MS PhD *Mich.*, FNZMS

**Senior Lecturers**

- 1969 David P. Alcorn, BSc *NZ*  
 1992 Jianbei An, BSc *Harbin*, PhD *Ill.*  
 1993 William D. Barton, MPhil *Massey*, MSc PhD, DipTchg (*joint Head of Mathematics Education Unit*)  
 1994 Paul Bonnington, BSc PhD *Massey*  
 1971 Bruce D. Calvert, MS PhD *Chic.*, BSc  
 1968 Ganesh D. Dixit, BA *Agra*, MA DPhil *Alld.*  
 1990 Colin Fox, PhD *Camb.*, MSc  
 1999 A. Rod Gover, MSc *Cant.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1970 Paul R. Hafner, DipMath DrPhil *Zür.*  
 1969 Christopher C. King, MSc *Well. and Warw.*  
 1997 Eamonn A. O'Brien, BSc *Galway*, PhD ANU  
 1994 Maxine J. Pfannkuch, MSc PhD DipTchg (*jointly with Statistics*)  
 1971 Joel L. Schiff, AM PhD *Calif.*  
 1993 Philip W. Sharp, BSc PhD *Cant.*  
 1993 Arkadii M. Slinko, MA *Novosibirsk*, PhD DSc *USSR Academy of Sciences*  
 1970 David J. Smith, BA *Portland State*, MA PhD *Wash.*  
 1993 Michael O. J. Thomas, MSc PhD *Warw.*, C.Math, FIMA (*Joint Head of Mathematics Education Unit*)  
 1971 Wayne J. Walker, PhD *Ill.*, MSc

**Lecturers**

- 2001 Alona Ben-Tal, MSc (MechEng) *Technion Israel Institute of Technology*, PhD  
 1992 Vivien Kirk, PhD *Camb.*, MSc  
 1993 David W. McIntyre, BA DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1995 Geoffrey K. Nicholls, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1986 Wiremu Solomon, PhD *Wis.*, MSc (*jointly with Statistics*)  
 2000 David B. Thomson, Dip Psychotherapy *Auck.UT.*, MSc DipTchg  
 1997 Shayne F. D. Waldron, BSc *Cant.*, MA PhD *Wis.*

**Senior Tutors**

- ♦1993 Allison Heard, PhD  
 1993 Pamela Hurst, BSc, DipTchg  
 ♦1999 Gregory N. Oates, BSc, MEd, DipTchg  
 1990 Moira Statham, BSc, DipTchg  
 1969 R. E. Swenson, MSc

**Research Fellow**

- Sina R. Greenwood, MSc, PhD

**Honorary Research Fellow**

- Garry J. Tee, MSc *NZ*, CMath, FIMA

**Tamaki Campus****Professor of Industrial and Applied Mathematics**

...

**Senior Lecturer**

- 1980 Robert P. K. Chan, MSc PhD

**Lecturers**

- 1994 Stephen W. Taylor, MSc, PhD *Minneapolis*  
 2001 Mark C. Wilson, BSc *Cant.*, PhD *Wis.* (*jointly with Computer Science*)

**Senior Tutor**

1992 Alastair McNaughton, BA *Otago*, MSc PhD,  
DipEd *Massey*

**OPTOMETRY AND VISION SCIENCE****Head of Department/Clinic Director**

Robert J. Jacobs, MSc PhD *Melb.*, LOsc, FAAO

**Departmental Administrator**

Raewyn Heays

**Professor**

1978 Leon F. Garner, BAppSc *Melb.*, PhD *City*, DipEd  
*Melb.*, LOsc, DCLP, FBCO, FAAO

**Leitl Professor**

2001 Michael Kalloniatis, BSc MSc *Melb.*, PhD  
*Houston*, FBCO, FAAO

**Associate Professor**

1984 Robert J. Jacobs, MSc PhD *Melb.*, LOsc, FAAO

**Senior Lecturer**

2001 Ivan Wood, BSc *Brad.*, MSc *Aston.*, PhD, UMIST,  
FBCO, FAAO

**Lecturers**

1998 Helen Owens, MSc *Cardiff*, PhD *Aston*, MCOptom  
1998 John Phillips, MSc, PhD, MCOptom, FAAO  
2000 Grace P. Soong, BOptom, PhD *Qld.UT*

**Honorary Research Fellow**

Grant Watters, DipOpt, DCLP

**Academic Associate**

◆ Gordon F. Sanderson, BSc, FCOptom

**Senior Tutors**

Melinda Calderwood, BOptom  
Andrew Collins, BSc MSc, BOptom  
Delyth Hughes, MCOptom  
Ann Kautz, OD  
Daniel Markley, OD  
Donald Meckelborg, OD  
Geraint Phillips, BSc, MCOptom, DCLP, OD  
Karen Phillips, BOptom  
Eric Schweihofner, OD

**Senior Clinical Associates**

Alison Chan, BOptom  
◆ Chris R. Earnshaw, BSc, DipOpt  
◆ Tracey Jones, BSc, MCOptom  
◆ Robert F. Kinnear, SDONZ, FAAO  
Grace Lang, BOptom  
◆ Anna Maitland, BOptom  
◆ Peter D. Skeates, BAppSc *Melb.*, LOsc  
◆ Grant Watters, DipOpt, DCLP

**Clinical Associates**

Sarah Augenstein, BOptom  
Selena Phuah, BOptom

**Clinic Manager**

Carolyn Jones

**Assistant Clinic Director**

Geraint Phillips, BSc MCOptom, DCLP, OD

**PHYSICS****City Campus****Head of Department**

G. L. Austin, BA *Camb.*, MSc PhD *Cant.*, FNZIP, FRSNZ

**Departmental Manager**

Francie Norman

**Professors**

1991 G. L. Austin, BA *Camb.*, MSc PhD *Cant.*, FNZIP,  
FRSNZ  
1991 T. H. Barnes, MSc PhD *UMIST*, MSPiE,  
M<sub>Jpn</sub>SocApplPhys  
1975 John D. Harvey, PhD *Sur.*, MSc, Mem.IEEE, FNZIP

**Associate Professors**

1971 Paul H. Barker, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Manc.*  
1989 M. J. Collett, MSc *Waik.*, PhD *Essex*, MNZIP  
1966 Alan P. Stamp, MSc *NZ*, DPhil *Oxf.*, FNZIP  
1969 C. David Stow, BSc PhD *Manc.*, DSc, FInstP  
*Lond.*, FMetS *Japan*, CPhys  
1990 Sze Tan, MSc PhD *Camb.*, Mem.IEEE, MOSA  
1972 C. T. Tindle, PhD *Br. Col.*, MSc, FNZIP, FASA  
1981 Peter R. Wills, BSc PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

1970 Gary E. J. Bold, BSc *NZ*, MSc PhD, MNZIP,  
Mem.IEEE, MASA  
1979 Barry J. Brennan, BSc PhD, MNZIP  
◆ 1970 Murray D. Johns, BSc *NZ*, MSc PhD, MNZIP,  
Mem.IEEE, MASA  
1991 Rainer Leonhardt, DipPhys DrRerNat *Munich*  
1996 Andrew S. Parkins, PhD *Waik.*  
1971 Graeme D. Putt, BSc PhD *Melb.*, FAIP, FNZIP,  
MAAPT  
1996 Lionel R. Watkins, BSc(Eng) MSc *Cape Town*,  
PhD *Wales* MIEEE, MInstP, CPhys, MOSA

**Honorary Research Fellows**

Ross Garrett, BA MSc *NZ*, PhD, MNZIP  
R. F. Keam, BA *Camb.*, MSc DipHons *NZ*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
J. R. Storey, MSc PhD *NZ*, MNZIP, Mem.IEEE, MAAPT  
John E. Titheridge, MSc DipHons *NZ*, PhD *Camb.*,  
Sen.Mem.IEEE, CPhys, FInstP *Lond.*, FNZIP,  
FRSNZ  
Robert E. White, MSc PhD *NZ*, DSc

**Postdoctoral Research Fellows**

Ian Bond, MSc, PhD *Auck.*  
Stephane Coen, Engineer in Physics, PhD *Brussels*  
(*ULB*)  
Vladimir I. Kruglov, *Institute of Physics of Belarus*  
*Academy of Sciences*  
Robert Kruhlak, MSc PhD *Washington State University*

**Senior Tutor**

1992 Bera A. E. MacClement, MA *Camb.*, MSc *Guelph*  
PhD *W.Ont.*

**Tamaki Campus****Associate Professor**

1993 Malcolm Grimson, BSc *E.Anglia*, PhD *Kent*,  
MInstP *Lond.*, CPhys

**Senior Lecturers**

1995 David Krofcheck, BSc *Carnegie Mellon*, MSc PhD  
*Ohio State*, APS-DNP, AAAS  
1993 Ruth Lyons, MSc PhD, MNZIP

**PSYCHOLOGY****City Campus****Head of Department**

Dianne C. McCarthy, BA, MSc, PhD

**Departmental Manager**

Larissa Isted, BA

**Professors**

1978 Michael C. Corballis, BA MSc *NZ*, PhD *McG.*, hon  
LLD *Wat.*, MA, FAAAS, FAPA, FAPS, FNZPsS, FRSNZ  
1969 Michael C. Davison, BSc *Brist.*, PhD *Otago*, DSc.,  
FRSNZ

1986 Dianne C. McCarthy, BA, MSc, PhD  
1968 Graham M. Vaughan, MA NZ, PhD Well., FNZPsS

#### Associate Professor

1986 Jennifer A. Ogden, BSc Massey, DipSocSc N.E.,  
MSc PhD, DipClinPsych, FRSNZ

#### Senior Lecturers

1994 John Duckitt, BA Cape Town, MA Natal, PhD Witw.  
1992 Claire M. Fletcher-Flinn, BPsych W.Aust., PhD LaT.  
1993 Russell D. Gray, BSc PhD  
1965 J. A. Gribben, MA NZ, PhD Well.  
1988 Anthony J. Lambert, BSc Sheff., PhD Leic.  
1994 John Read, BA Wales, MA, PhD Ohio  
1988 Frederick W. Seymour, BA Well., MA W. Aust., PhD  
1994 Lynette J. Tippet, MSc PhD, DipClinPsych

#### Lecturers

1999 Suzanne Barker-Collo, HBA Manit., MA PhD Lake  
2000 Virginia Braun, MA, PhD Lough  
1991 Nicola J. Gavey, MA PhD, DipClinPsych  
1997 Nicole Harre, MA, PhD  
1994 Michael J. Hautus, MSc PhD  
1996 Blake Johnson, BSc Alberta, MA PhD Simon Fraser  
1993 Brent M. Jones, MSocSci Waik., PhD Otago  
1999 Ian J. Kirk, BSc, PhD Otago  
1999 Ian D. Lambie, BA Otago, PGDipClinPsy, PhD  
1991 J. M. McAllister, MA PhD Edin.  
1999 Andrew Moskowitz, BA Temple, DFP Mass., MA  
PhD Boston  
2000 Gina Priestly, BA, DipClinPsy, PhD Otago  
1999 Jackie Summers, BA UVa., PhD MPh Berkley, MSW  
FSU  
2000 Karen E. Waldie, BSc Vic. (BC), MSc, PhD Calg.

#### Honorary Research Fellow

G. L. Mangan, MA NZ, BEd Melb., MA Oxf., PhD Lond.,  
DSc Oxf., FBrPsS, FAPsS

#### Senior Tutors

◆ 1999 Sue J. Cowie, MSc, DipClinPsy Otago  
◆ 1993 Fiona M. Howard, MA, DipClinPsych

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Professor

1995 Glynn Owens, BTech Brunel, DipPsych BPS,  
DPhil Oxf., AFBPsS

##### Senior Lecturers

1997 Linda D. Cameron, BSc Calif., MSc PhD Wis.  
1990 Douglas M. Elliffe, BSc PhD

##### Lecturers

1993 Barry Hughes, DipPE Otago, MSc PhD Wis.  
1996 Brenda Lobb, MA, PhD

##### Honorary Senior Lecturer

Harry Prapavesis, PhD W.Aust

##### Honorary Clinical Associates

Stephanie Allison, MA, PGDipClinPsych  
Pamela Buchanan, MA, PGDipClinPsych  
Linda Chard, MSc Calg.  
Mary Dawson, MA, PhD Nott.  
Sue Dykes, MA, DipClinPsych Otago  
Kris Fernando, MA, PhD, PGDipClinPsych  
Jim Geekie, MA Edin., MSc Manc.  
Justine Harris, MA, DipClinPsych Otago  
Elisa Lavell, MA, PGDipClinPsych  
Timothy Hee Sun Leo, MA, PGDipClinPsych  
David Semp, MA, PGDipClinPsych  
Mark Sinclair, MA, PhD Qu., DipClinPsych  
Tereki Stewart, MA, PGDipClinPsych  
John Thorburn, MA, PGDipClinPsych

Sue Treanor, MA, PGDipClinPsych  
Ronny Zuessman, MEd Antioch, PhD Union, DipCouns  
Hofstra

## SPORT AND EXERCISE SCIENCE

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Head of Department

Robert Marshall, BPE MSc Alta., PhD W. Aust.

##### Departmental Assistant

Janine Perkinson, BSEd Col. State

##### Associate Professor

1994 Robert Marshall, BPE MSc Alta., PhD W. Aust.

##### Senior Lecturers

1997 Winston D. J. Byblow, MSc PhD S.Fraser, BHK  
Windsor  
1995 Harry Prapavesis, MA HBA W.Ont., PhD W.Aust.  
1984 Stewart M. Robinson MBChB Otago, MSc Adel.,  
FANZCA (jointly with Physiology)  
1997 Shona Thompson, BPE, MA Alta., PhD Murd.

##### Lecturers

1998 James C. Baldi, MSc Ithaca, PhD Ohio State  
2001 Uwe Kersting, PhD Cologne  
1998 Bernadette A. Murphy, BA Qu., DC Canadian  
Memorial, MSc PhD  
1996 Heather Smith, MA McG., BPHE PhD Tor.  
1998 Sharon Walt, MASc PhD Wat.

## STATISTICS

#### City Campus

##### Head of Department

Alan J. Lee, PhD N.Carolina, MA

##### Departmental Manager

Katherine Henry

##### Professors

1965-71, 1973 George A. F. Seber, MSc NZ, PhD Manc.,  
FRSNZ  
1979 Christopher J. Wild, PhD Wat., MSc

##### Associate Professors

1974 Alan J. Lee, PhD N.Carolina, MA  
1999 Brian McArdle, DPhil York(UK), BSc Bristol

##### Senior Lecturers

1991 Ross Ihaka, PhD Calif., MSc  
1994 Patricia A. Metcalf, MSc PhD Auck.  
(jointly with Community Health)  
1994 Renate Meyer, DipMaths PhD RWTH Aachen  
1994 Maxine J. Pfannkuch, MSc, DipTchg, PhD  
(jointly with Mathematics)  
1992 Ilze B. Ziedins, BA Waik., PhD Camb.

##### Lecturers

1999 Marti J. Anderson, BA, GradDipSci, PhD, MA  
1993 Arden E. Miller, BSc Vic.(B.C.), MMaths PhD Wat.  
1999 Paul Murrell, MSc, PhD  
1986 Wiremu Solomon, PhD Wis., MSc  
(jointly with Mathematics)

##### Senior Research Fellow

Patricia A. Metcalf, MSc PhD Auck.  
(jointly with Community Health)

##### Senior Tutors

1996 Joss Cumming, BA, DipTchg  
1990 David Smith, BSc, DipStats, DipCompSci

##### Limited Term Tutor

1996 Christine Miller, BCom

#### Tamaki Campus

##### Professor

1972 Alastair J. Scott, MSc NZ, PhD Chic., FRSNZ

**Associate Professors**

1995 David J. Scott, BA PhD ANU, DipCompSci La Trobe  
1990 Christopher M. Triggs, MSc PhD

**Senior Lecturers**

1996 Russell B. Millar, MSc PhD, Wash.  
1985 Peter Mullins, MSc

**Lecturers**

1997 Geoffrey Pritchard, PhD Wis., BSc  
1997 Thomas W. Yee, MSc PhD

**Senior Tutors**

1998 Ross Parsonage, MSc, DipTchg  
1992 Matthew Regan, BSc, DipStats, DipTchg

**Joint Board of Studies in Theology****Chair of Joint Board of Studies**

John C. Bishop, BA ANU, PhD Camb.

**Honorary Acting Dean**

David E. Richmond, MBChB, BD, MPHed, MD FRACP  
FRCP Lond., DipABIMed

**Consortium Registrar**

Claire Morrison, GradDipBus, MMgt

**Honorary Lecturers**

G. A. W. Armstrong, BD, MA, PhD Prin.  
H. F. Bergin, MA Well., BTheol Otago, STL STD C.U.A.  
S. G. T. Bulkeley, BSc Leic., BA Oxf., PhD Glas.  
K. W. Carley, BCom NZ, BD Otago, PhD Lond.  
M. E. Caygill, DipSocialWork Well., LTh DMin San Francisco Theological College  
J. E. Crawford, BA BD DipEd Otago, STM Yale, PhD Well.  
P. L. Culbertson, BMus Washington St. Louis, MDiv General (N.Y.), PhD N.Y.  
N. P. Darragh, STL Urban, MA PhD Otago  
A. K. Davidson, BD MA Otago, PhD Aberd.  
T. Dibble, MTh Maryknoll NY  
J. Dunn, STL Urban, PhD C.U.A.  
A. L. Gilroy, MA Boston College, MA PhD Camb.  
L. D. Guy, MTh ACT, LLB MA  
The Ven W. Halapua, BDiv, A University of the South Pacific  
Canon H. Kaa, LTh BA  
M. A. McLure, BA, MA  
J. L. Plane-Te Paa, BTheol MEd, PhD Berk.  
G. D. Pratt, BD Otago, PhD St And., MA  
I. Salevao, BTh LLB PhD Otago  
J. Salmon, BD MA PhD Otago, ThM Prin.  
A. Sinnott, MTheolStudies Cath Theological Union Chicago, DPhil Oxf., MA  
B. K. Smith, BE NZ, BD M.C.D., MA Birm.  
S. E. Smith, BA Cant., DipHabTheol Pontificium Inst. 'Regina Mundi' Coniunctum Pontificiae Univ. Gregoriana, MTheol Maryknoll  
D. M. Strevens, MTheol M.C.D., BA  
M. P. Sutherland, BA Cant., BTheol PhD Cant.  
H. Tate  
S. Taylor, BTheol, MTheol  
D. M. H. Tovey, BA MA Cant., BD Otago, MA PhD Durh.  
I. S. Tuwere, Lth, MTheol MCD, DTheol MCD  
L. J. Wall, BA Cant., BD Otago, PhD Birm.  
G. Wieland, BA Birm., BA Spurgeons  
P. Windsor, BSc, MDiv Trinity Evangelical Divinity School Chicago  
T. J. Wright, BSc Well., BD Otago, PhD Manc.

**Auckland UniServices Limited****Chief Executive Officer**

John A. Kernohan, PhD Boston, MSc

**General Manager, Technology Development**

Tony Brenton-Rule, BAgSc Massey, MBA, CPAG

**General Manager, Research**

Mark P. D. Burgess, MSc Well.

**Chief Financial Officer**

Anna Chen, BCom, CA, CMA

**Manager, Intellectual Property**

Johanna Stapelberg, MSc Bloemfontein

**Business Manager, Arts**

Jenny A. Alford, BA Otago, DipBusStuds Massey

**Business Manager, Engineering**

Keith Jones, MSc Cran.I.T

**Business Manager, Medical**

James Chal, BSc Wales

**Business Manager, Science**

Gary Putt, BSc Massey, DipTech

**Technology Development Manager**

Robin Ducker, BSc, RMCS Shrivvenham

**Technology Development Manager**

Murdoch Dryden, BMS Waik.

**Management Accountant**

Sandra Hopping, BMS, CA

**Financial Accountant**

Bonita Northmore, ACIBM UNISA

**Centre for Professional Development****Director, Professor**

1997 Reynold J. S. Macpherson, BA Open(UK), MEdAdmin NE, PhD Monash, FACEA, FCCEA, FNZEAS

**Deputy Director**

Kim Hope, MEd, AdvDipTchg

**Departmental Manager**

Anne Lee

**Senior Lecturer**

1995 Cathy Gunn, MSc PhD H-W, DipCP EdinTC., DiplndAdmin, SHND Napier

**Lecturer**

1998 Stanley Frielick, MA HDipEd Witw.

**Senior Tutors**

1990 Ernie Barrington, BSc Cant., BA, DipTchg  
1989 Barbara M. Grant, MA TTC

**Evaluations Manager**

Jenny Brown, MA DipKTU

**Staff Development Advisor**

Roseta Showell, BA, PGHDipEd W.Cape

**Kaitautoko Coordinator**

Mere Forbes

**Computer Courses Coordinator**

Lyn Hood, NZDipBus AUT

**Centre for Continuing Education****Director**

Professor Chris Duke MA Camb., PhD Lond., DLitt Keimyung

**Programme Manager Conferences and Seminars**

Barry Williams, BCA Well.

**Programme Manager Community Studies**

Lynn Lander, BA, MBS Massey

**Programme Manager Educational Travel**

James Lee, DipBusStudies Massey

---

## Equal Opportunities

### Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

Professor Dame Anne Salmond, DBE, CBE, MA, PhD  
*Penn., FRSNZ*

### Deputy Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

Associate Professor Alison Jones, BSc *Massey*, MPhil,  
PhD *Auck.*

### Office Manager and Executive Assistant

Lee Cooper

### Maori Equity Advisors

Margaret Taurere, BA, MEd  
Keri Whaitiri, BArch

### Pacific Islands Equity Advisor

Aaron Marsters, MA

### Women in Science and Engineering Equity Advisor

Lorraine Evening, DipTchg BSc PGDipArts, MPhil

---

## Finance Registry

### Director of Finance

Paul Mullooly

### Director, Financial Operations

Mark Lambert

### Business Services Manager

Lee Merwood

### Manager, Financial Systems Support Group

Milda Chan

### Corporate Group Accountant, Financial Management

Felicity Smith

### Financial Management Controller, Financial Management

Ansem Dole

### Financial Analyst, Financial Management

Robert Taylor

---

## Foundation Studies Programme

### New Start

#### Group Manager New Start Programmes

Cath Henderson, BA, DipCounsTheory

#### Administrative Assistant

Jan Edmonds

#### Pacific Island Programme Manager

Maria Meredith, BA

#### Programme Manager New Start in the Suburbs

Kahu Pou, DipBus

### Wellesley Programme

#### Programme Coordinator

Reina Whaitiri, MA, DipTch

#### Assistant Coordinator

Moira Statham, BSc, DipTchg

#### Secretary

Gill Stringer

#### Course Coordinators

Charmian O'Connor, MSc NZ, PhD, DSc

Mike Pearson, BSc *CNAA*, PhD *Exeter*

#### Tutors

Caroline Aspden, BSc, MSc

Lyndsay Blue, BSc *Cant.*, MSc *Lond.*, DipTchg *Chch*

Pam Hurst, BSc *Otago*, DipTchg *Chch*

Bianco Kuipers, MSc, PhD *Br.Col.*

John Leckie, MA

Bera MacClement, MA *Camb.*, MSc *Guelph*, PhD

*W.Ont.*

---

## Human Resources Registry

### Director of HR

Doug Northey, PhD *Well.*

### Human Resources Manager

Sue Catherstides, BA, DipBus(PMER)

### Payroll Manager

Brenda Davis

### Equal Employment Opportunities Advisor

Prue Toft, MA

---

## Information Technology Systems and Services

### Director, Information Technology Systems and Services

Stephen Whiteside

### Director, Technology Development

J. Nevil Brownlee, MSc PhD, Mem.IEEE

### Manager, Network Engineering

Brian Thrush, NZMRC, CEE

### Manager, Networking and Telecommunications

Michael A. Fann

### Manager, Voice Network Services

Keith A. Ashton

### Manager, Computer Network Operations

Prak N. Bhana

### Manager, Business

Myles J. Ward, BBS

### Senior Microsoft Network Consultant

Dylan Rogers

---

## Office of the Vice-Chancellor

### Vice-Chancellor

John A. Hood, MPhil *Oxf.*, BE PhD

### Executive Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor

Jennifer M. Topliss

### Vice Chancellor's Office, Manager

Anna M. Rees

### Deputy Vice Chancellor (Academic)

Raewyn Dalziel, BA PhD *Well.*

### Personal Assistant to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Academic)

Iris Greenland

### Deputy Vice Chancellor (Research)

Thomas H. Barnes, MSc, PhD *UMIST*, *FRSNZ*

### Executive Assistant to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research)

Lily Jeevaratnam

### Associate Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Research)

James B. Metson, BSc PhD *Well.*, *FNZIC*, *MTMS*

### Director, Research Management

Ellen C. Förch, BSc PhD *Well.*, *DipMusStuds Massey*

### Manager, Research Office

Lyn Clark, DipMgt

### Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

Professor Dame M. Anne Salmond, DBE, CBE, MA,  
PhD *Penn.*, *FRSNZ*

### Deputy Pro Vice-Chancellor (Equal Opportunities)

Alison Jones, BSc *Massey*, MPhil PhD

### Pro Vice-Chancellor (International)

Christopher C. Tremewan, PhD *Cant.*, MA

**Acting Pro Vice-Chancellor (International)**

Barry S. Gustafson, MA NZ, DipEd Massey,  
DipSovStud Glas., PhD

**Director, International**

Alexia Bannikoff, BA DipEd Qld.

**Pro Vice-Chancellor (Maori)**

Graham Smith, MA, PhD

**Pro Vice-Chancellor (Tamaki)**

Ralph P. Cooney, BSc PhD DSc Qld., FRSNZ, FRACI, FNZIC

**Postgraduate Dean**

Peter S. Jackson, PhD Camb., ME CEng, FIPENZ, FRAeS

**Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor, and Registrar**

Warwick B. Nicoll, BCom

**Executive Assistant to the Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor, and Registrar**

Joyce E. Jørgensen

**Director, Administration**

Jonathan W. Blakeman, MPP Well., BCom DipLGA,  
FNZIM, CA

**Personal Assistant to the Director, Administration**

Iris Greenland

**Executive Officer**

Grant Wills, BSc Cant.

**Director, Planning**

Robert G. Felix, BSc MIT, MBA Chicago

**Quality Coordinator**

David Tippin, MSc L.S.E., BA PLD Tor.

**Director, Auckland University Press**

Elizabeth P. Caffin, MA Cant., MS Georgetown

**Alumni Officer**

Christine Keller, BA Massey, MA Cant.

**Internal Auditor**

Peter G. Dormon, FCA Eng and Wales, CA AIIA NZ

**Schools Director**

Colin Prentice, MA

**Mediator**

Matthew Fitzsimons, BA Hull, MA

**Accountant**

Ian Johnson, BCom, CA

---

**Property Services****Administration Planning & Development***Director*

M. B. Matthewson, BE

*Executive Assistant to the Director*

Jinnat Lateef

*Planning Manager*

T. G. Young, BE, PE Sing.

*Property Manager*

W. A. Anderson, ARICS

*Development Manager*

...

*Project Managers*

S. M. Bajallan, MArch, MScArch, ANZIA

C. B. Buller, BE, DBA RegEng

J. F. Light, FRICS, MSc

S. J. Saw, BE DipBusStuds, CEng, MIMechE,  
MIPENZ, RegEng

*Business Services Manager*

C. B. M. Jackson, BA DipLGA

*Information Technology Engineer*

K. G. Prisk, ME

*Management Accountant*

Delwyn J. Arthur, BBS, CA (PP), CMA

**Facilities Management***Facilities Manager*

G. R. Simpson, BE, MBA, MICE

*Maintenance Manager*

E. J. Mackle, GDipBus, NZCE, REA

*Energy Manager*

D. R. Agate, NZCE, DipEnMan, AMNZICW, IRACE

*Plant Manager*

C. P. M. Bakker, BE

*Security Manager*

E. H. Wyatt

*Custodial Contracts Manager*

R. Koosache

*Grounds Superintendent - City & Grafton*

Palmer, NCH, DipHort

*Grounds Superintendent - Tamaki*

M. Weaver, DipTurfCult

---

**Student Administration****Student Administration***Director*

...

**Academic Administration***Group Manager*

Gay Brennan

**Accommodation & Conference Centre***General Manager*

Raymond Wilde, BBS Massey, Dip H&CA

**Admission & Enrolment***Manager*

Kevin Neal

**Calendar & Regulations***Manager*

Sandra Bish, BA Massey

**Call Centre***Supervisor*

Amber McWilliams, MA

**Campus Recreation***Manager, Recreation Services*

Rod Grove, BPhEd Otago

**Careers & Employment Office***Employment Coordinator*

Antony Crane, MA

**Chaplaincy***Maclaurin Chaplain to the University*

Rev. Terry Wall, MA, BSc, STM

*Roman Catholic Chaplain*

Rev.Fr. Peter Murnane, O.P. BA

**Childcare Centres***Manager, Early Childhood Services*

Robin Sigley, BA Massey, DipNZFKU

**Communications***Group Manager*

Amy Malcolm, BA

**Disability Coordinators**

☺Lynne Crabb

Terry O'Neill, MA PhD

**Examinations Coordinator**

Robin Bruce

**Graduation Coordinator**

Kathy Mathers

**Health & Counselling Service***Business Manager*

Gina Waetford

*Head GP*

Patricia Mauger, MBBS Lond., LRCP, MRCS, MRNZCGP

*Head Counsellor*  
Lesley McKay, MA

**Information Systems**  
*Group Manager*

...

**International Students**  
*Adviser to International Students*  
Brian R. Lythe, MA

**Maidment Theatre**  
*Director*  
Paul Minifie

**Postgraduate Centre**  
*Coordinator*  
Christine Berry, MA

**Public Relations**  
*Public Relations Officer*  
Bill Williams, LLB Well., DipJ Cant.

**Records**  
*Records Coordinator*  
Rachel Cranch

**Scholarships & Financial Support**  
*Manager*  
Marcella McCarthy

**Student Activities**  
*Group Manager*  
Bill Crome, DipPE, DipTchg

**Student Affairs**  
*Group Manager*  
Stewart McElwain

**Student Information Centre**  
*Supervisor*  
Emma Jane Hetherington BA

**Student Services**  
*Group Manager*

...

**Tuition Fees**  
*Manager*  
Bruce Rattray

---

## Student Learning Centre

**Director**  
1993 Emmanuel Manalo, PhD *Massey*, MSc

**Departmental Manager**  
Lynette Herrero-Torres, BA *Puerto Rico*

**Senior Tutors**  
1998 Lyn Lavery, MA  
1994 Josta van Rij-Heyligers, DipTeach *Delft*, MA  
◆2001 David Welch, MA  
1994 Ema Wolgramm-Foliaki, MA  
◆1995 Glenis Wong-Toi, MA, PGDipAppPsych

**Tutor and Coordinator of Te Puni Wananga**  
2000 Matthew Tarawa, BA

**Tutors**  
◆2000 Leila Boyle, BSc  
◆2001 Ian Brailsford, MA, PhD  
◆1999 Jenny Buxton, MA  
◆1995 Hazel Chan, BA, DipELT  
◆2001 Nisarg Dey, BA  
◆1998 Jennifer Fan, MA  
◆2000 Fiona Gregory, MA  
◆2001 Andrew Lavery  
◆2000 Helen McKenzie, BSc, DipTchg

◆1997 Myrna O'Shea, BA, DipTchg  
1999 Julie Trafford, MSc

---

## University Library

**University Librarian**  
Janet Copsey, DipNZLS Well., BA, DipBus, FNZLIA

**Library Manager, Access Services**  
Christine I. Wilson, DipNZLS Well., BA, FNZLIA

**Collection Services Librarian**  
Alison Grant, BA, DipNZLS, ANZLA, DipBusStuds

**InterLibrary Services Librarian**  
Jillian Irwin, BA

**Lending Services Librarian**  
Elizabeth McKenzie, DipLibr Well., BA

**Networked Information Librarian**  
Brian Flaherty, BA, DipTchg, DipLibr Well.

**Library Manager, Arts**  
A. Catherine Hutchinson, MA DipNZLS Well., ANZLA

**Arts Information Services Librarian**  
Shelley Taylor, Dip Libr Well., MA

**Asian Languages Librarian**  
Kaaren Hiyama, MLIS Well., MA

**ClockTower Librarian**  
Mary Ann Crick, BA

**Music Librarian**  
Andra Patterson, BMus, DipLibr Well.

**Special Collections Librarian**  
R. Stephen Innes, BA PGDA *Otago*, DipLibr Well.

**Undergraduate Services Librarian**  
Jennifer J. Hart, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

**Library Manager, Business and Economics, Science and Tamaki**  
Inge E. B. Rudolph, BA S.Af.

**Business and Economics Information Services Librarian**  
Rainer Wolcke, Staatsexamen *Hamburg*, DipLibr Well.

**Science Information Services Librarian**  
Hester Mountifield, MA DipHigherEd S.Af.

**Takapuna Campus Librarian**  
Lynne Mitchell, BA *Cant.*, Dip Tchg Dip Libr Well.

**Tamaki Librarian**  
Hayley Schnell, MA *Natal*, HigherDipLibrSci *Natal*

**Library Manager, Engineering, Architecture and Fine Arts**  
Jane Wild, BA DipLibr Well.

**Architecture Librarian**  
Wendy S. Garvey, BA DipNZLS Well.

**Engineering Librarian**  
Patricia D. Hulse, DipNZLS Well., BA, ANZLA, LRSM, LTCL

**Fine Arts Librarian**  
Gail Keefe, BA

**Library Manager, Law**  
Mary-Rose Russell, LLB *Cant.*, LLB *Z'bwé*, B.Bibl. S.Afr.

**Te Kaiwhakahaere Māori, Library Manager, Māori Services**  
Robert Sullivan, DipLibr Well., BA

**Library Manager, Medical and Health Sciences**  
Eileen Tollan, BA, DipLibr

## GLOSSARY OF TERMINOLOGY

*Note: The descriptions below are not intended to be legal definitions. The Regulations in the Calendar should also be referred to when interpreting these terms.*

- Admission:** The process by which a student applies, and is approved, for entry to the University and to a University qualification.
- Bachelor's degree:** A first degree.
- Campus:** A geographical location where University of Auckland qualifications are taught e.g. City Campus, Tamaki, Grafton.
- Certificate:** A coherent programme of one or two semesters.
- Completing student:** A student whose current enrolment is designed to complete a certificate, diploma or degree.
- Corequisite course:** A course which should be taken in the same semester as another unless it has previously been satisfactorily completed.
- Course:** The basic component of all academic programmes. A course is normally taught and assessed over one semester. A double-semester course is taught over the consecutive semesters of the same academic year.
- Course schedule:** A list of the courses prescribed for a programme which forms part of the regulations.
- Coursework:** Assessable work produced by students, normally submitted during teaching weeks e.g. essays, assignments, reports, tests, and practical, tutorial and seminar work.
- Current enrolment:** Courses or other work taken by a student in a particular academic year or semester.
- Degree:** Principal qualification awarded by the University of Auckland i.e. bachelor's, master's and doctoral degrees.
- Diploma:** A University qualification, generally awarded at graduate level.
- Direct entry:** Entry into a higher level of a subject or later part of a degree without the prerequisites.
- Dissertation:** A written research component of a degree or diploma worth between 4 and 9 points.
- Distance education:** Courses or programmes of study which provide content and support services to students who rarely, if ever, attend for face-to-face or for on-campus access to educational facilities.
- Doctoral degree:** A qualification at an advanced level requiring original contribution to knowledge.
- Electives:** A defined set of courses for a diploma or degree from which a student may make a choice.
- End of lectures:** The final day of the final teaching week of a semester. The final lecture for a particular course might occur before this day.
- Enrolment:** The process by which a student, having gained admission to the University and to a qualification, selects and gains entry to courses and classes.
- Examination:** Formal assessment under supervision occurring after the teaching in a course has been completed.
- Extramural students:** Students who have exemption from receiving instruction on campus.
- Flexible learning:** Courses characterised by a mixed mode of delivery and assessment of instructional material.
- Grade Point Average (GPA):** A means of measuring a student's performance at this University. The average grade achieved in the equivalent of a minimum full-time enrolment (12 points) is expressed numerically on a scale between 0 (no passes) and 9 (A+ Average).
- Grade Point Equivalent (GPE):** A means of measuring a student's performance. Grades or marks achieved in various institutions and/or examinations (such as NZUEBS) are translated as being equivalent to a Grade Point Average on the scale 0-9.
- Graduand:** A person who has completed the requirements for a degree or diploma but has not yet had the degree or diploma conferred.
- Graduate:** A person who has had a degree conferred.
- Honours:** Degrees, in some cases completed within prescribed time limits, may be awarded with honours which signify advanced or distinguished study.
- Laboratory:** A teaching session of a practical nature.
- Lecture:** A basic unit of instruction.
- Limited entry:** Applied to a course or programme for which the number of students that can be accepted is limited because of constraints on staffing, space or equipment.
- Major:** A required component of a degree, including a specified number of points in a subject at the most advanced level.
- Master's degree:** A degree programme at a higher level than a bachelor's degree.
- Maximum full-time study:** A student workload of 9 points per semester or 4 points in Summer School.
- Minimum full-time study:** A student workload of 6 points per semester.
- Minor:** A component of a degree including a specified number of points above Stage I in a subject.
- Normal full-time study:** A student workload of 14 points in one year.
- Part:** A defined subdivision specified in the regulations of some degrees.
- Passage:** A method of calculating the final result a student has gained in a course by counting either the final examination grade or a combination of final examination grade plus coursework, whichever is to the student's advantage.
- Point(s):** A value assigned to a course or other work to indicate its weighting within the University of Auckland's certificates, diplomas and degrees.
- Postgraduate programme:** A programme at a higher level than a bachelor's degree.
- Prerequisite course:** A requirement that must be met before commencement of study for a particular course or programme.
- Prescribed texts:** Textbooks which are considered essential to a course.
- Programme:** A prescribed set of one or more courses or other work which on satisfactory completion leads to the award of a University of Auckland certificate, diploma or degree.
- Project:** A piece of investigative written work on a topic approved by the relevant Head of Department and supervisor.
- Reassigned course:** A course satisfactorily completed for one programme which may be transferred to another programme.
- Recognition of Prior Academic Study (ROPAS):** A means of assessment of previous study for students from another institution for admission or credit to the University.
- Regulation:** A rule set down by the University.
- Research essay:** A research-based essay on a topic approved by the relevant Head of Department and supervisor.
- Restriction (restricted course):** A course in which the learning objectives, content and/or assessment are so similar to a second course that a student cannot be credited with both towards a certificate, diploma or degree. In some cases a restricted course may be taken and credited as COP.
- Schedule:** University lists of courses, credits or limitations, often in tabular form.
- Schedule of prescriptions:** A list of courses including course code, title, points value, description of content, prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions.
- Semester:** A period of about 15 weeks which includes about 12 teaching weeks and about three weeks for study and examinations. In addition there is a mid-semester break of up to two weeks.
- Specialisation:** A coherent group of related courses from different subjects.
- Stage:** The academic level of study in a subject.
- Subject:** An area of learning which may be provided by a school or a department, or by departments offering related courses.
- Summer School:** A six-week period during which a select range of courses is taught and assessed.
- Thesis:** A written research component of a postgraduate programme having a value of 10 or more points.
- Trimester:** A 12-week period specified for instruction for Executive Programmes students only for study on a part-time basis.
- Tutorial:** A small group-learning session.
- Undergraduate:** A person studying towards a first degree.

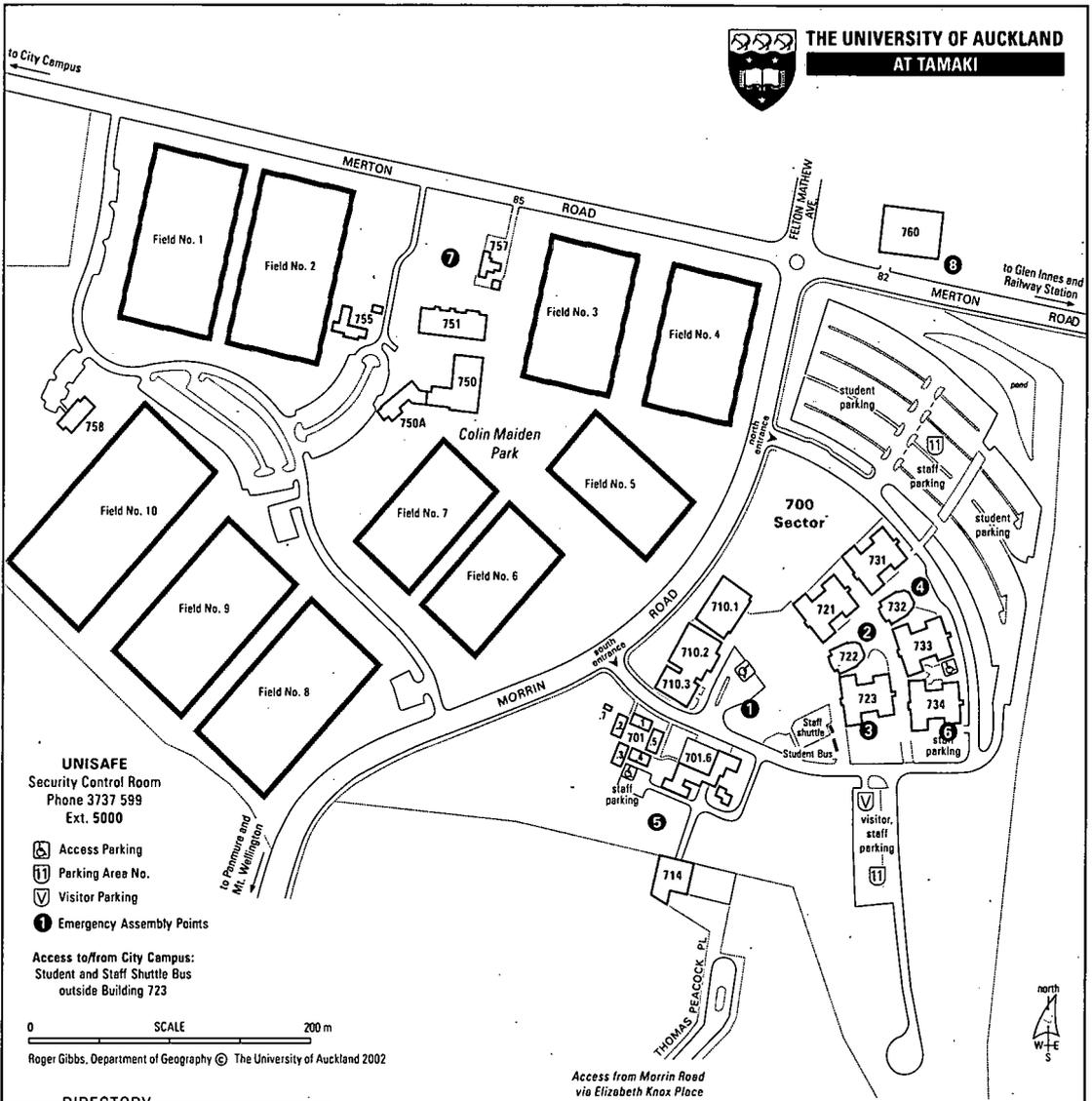
# DIRECTORY

The postal address for all departments is The University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland.

Department/Faculty	Building	Street Address
Accommodation and Conference Centre Office	O'Rorke Hall	14-16 Mount Street
Accounting & Finance	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Building 721	Gate 2 Morrin Road
Acoustics Research & Testing Service	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Alumni Office	Alumni House	3 Symonds Street
Anatomy	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Ancient History – refer Classics		
Anthropology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Architecture	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Architecture, Property, Planning, & Fine Arts Faculty Office	Conference Centre	22 Symonds Street
Art History	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
Arts Faculty Office	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Asian Languages and Literatures	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
Auckland Consortium for Theological Education–refer Theology		
Auckland UniServices Ltd.	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
Auckland University Press		1-11 Short Street
AUSA – Administration		3 Alfred Street
Behavioural Science	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Biological Sciences	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Biological Sciences Student Resource Centre	Biology Building	5 Symonds Street
Cafeteria	Student Union	34 Princes Street
Careers Advisory Service	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Cashier	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Catholic Chaplain	Newman Hall	16 Waterloo Quadrant
Centre for Labour Studies	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Centre for Pacific Studies		22 Wynyard Street
Centre for Professional Development		76 Symonds Street
Chapel and Chaplain	Maclaurin Chapel	18 Princes Street
Chemistry	Chemistry Building	23 Symonds Street
Chemistry – deliveries		40 Wellesley Street E.
Chinese	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
Classics & Ancient History		1-3 Wynyard Street
Clinical Trials Research Unit		3 Ferncroft Street
ClockTower Student Information Centre	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Colin Maiden Park		85 Merton Road
Commerce Faculty Office	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Commerce Student Resource Centre	Commerce B Building	5 Symonds Street
Commercial Law		1-11 Short Street
	Tamaki Building 721	Gate 2 Morrin Road
Community Health		52-54 Grafton Road
Computer Science	Maths/Physics Building	38 Princes Street
Conference Centre		22 Symonds Street
Creche 1, 2, 3		30-34 Wynyard Street
Disability Coordinators	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Drama Theatre	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Dutch	Germanic Languages Building	10 Grafton Road
Economics	Commerce A Building	3A Symonds Street
Educational Media Centre	Science Building	23 Symonds Street
Engineering	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Engineering – deliveries	Engineering Building	3 Grafton Road
English	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
	Tamaki Building 721	Gate 2 Morrin Road
	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Enquiries		Morrin Road
Environmental Science	Tamaki Campus	
Equal Opportunities Office	Lower Lecture Theatre	3A Symonds Street
European Languages	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Executive Programmes		1-11 Short Street
Federation of University Women	Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
Finance Registry		70 Symonds Street
Fine Arts Faculty Office	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
Fine Arts – deliveries	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
Fisher Building		18 Waterloo Quadrant
Foundation Studies	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
French – refer European Languages		

Department/Faculty	Building	Street Address
General Practice	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Geography	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Geology	Chemistry Building	23 Symonds Street
Geothermal Institute	Chemistry Building	23 Symonds Street
German	Germanic Languages Buildings	8 and 10 Grafton Road
Grafton Hall		40 Seafield View Road
Greek – refer Classics		
Grounds – refer Property Services		
Gymnasium	Recreation Centre	17 Symonds Street
Health and Counselling – refer Student Health		
History	History Building	5–7 Wynyard Street
Human Resources Registry	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Human Sciences Building		10 Symonds Street
Indonesian	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
Information Technology Systems and Services (ITSS)	Information Technology Centre	24 Symonds Street
International Business		1–11 Short Street
International House	International House Building	27 Whitaker Place
International Research Institute for Maori and Indigenous Education	Fisher Building	18 Waterloo Quadrant
International Student Advisor	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Italian – refer European Languages		
Japanese	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
Kohanga Reo		23 Alten Road
Korean	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
Language Laboratories Tape Library	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Language Laboratory 2		8 Grafton Road
Language Laboratories 3, 4 and 5	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Latin – refer Classics		
Law	Law Buildings	9–17 Eden Crescent
Lecture Theatres and Rooms:		
Architecture (ALR)	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Biology (BLT)	Biology Building	5 Symonds Street
Cell Biology (CMBioLT)	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Chemistry (Chem)	Chemistry Building	23 Symonds Street
Conference Centre		22 Symonds Street
Engineering (Eng)	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Human Sciences (HSB)	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Library (Lib)	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Mathematics & Statistics (MLT)	Maths/Physics Building	38 Princes Street
Medicine	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Newman Hall (NH)		16 Waterloo Quadrant
ClockTower	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Old Choral Hall (OCH)	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Old Government House		3A Symonds Street
Physics (PLT)	Maths/Physics Building	38 Princes Street
Upper and Lower (ULT & LLT)		3A Symonds Street
Leigh Laboratory	Goat Island Bay Road, Leigh PO Box 349, Warkworth (Phone Warkworth 0–9–422–96111)	North Auckland
Liaison Office – refer Student Administration		
Library:		
Bindery	Tamaki Library Store	82 Merton Road
General	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
General – deliveries	Library Building	26 Princes Street
Architecture	Conference Centre	22 Symonds Street
Asian Languages	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Audio Visual	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Biological Sciences	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Commerce	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Community Education	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Engineering	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Fine Arts	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
Geography	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Law	Law Buildings	15 Eden Crescent
Maori Studies (Te Hukatai)	Rehutai	16 Wynyard Street
Medicine (Philson Library)	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Music	Music Building	6 Symonds Street
Science	Maths/Physics Building	38 Princes Street
Tamaki	Tamaki Campus	11 Morrin Road
Linguistics – refer Anthropology		

Department/Faculty	Building	Street Address
Maidment Theatre	Maidment Arts Centre	8 Alfred Street
Maintenance – refer Property Services		
Management Science and Information Systems	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Management Studies and Employment Relations	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Maori Studies	Whare Kura: Academic Block	16 Wynyard Street
	Whare Whakaira: Meeting House	16 Wynyard Street
		16 Wynyard Street
Marae		
Marketing	Commerce B Building	5 Symonds Street
Mathematics	Maths/Physics Building	38 Princes Street
Medicine	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Music	School of Music	6 Symonds Street
Music – Piano Studies		18 Grafton Road
Newman Hall		16 Waterloo Quadrant
New Zealand Asia Institute	UniServices House	58 Symonds Street
'Number 14' Student Flats		14 Whitaker Place
Obstetrics and Gynaecology	National Women's Hospital	Claude Road, Epsom
ClockTower Building		22 Princes Street
Old Choral Hall		7 Symonds Street
Optometry	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
O'Rorke Hall		16 Mount Street
Paediatrics	Starship Children's Hospital	Park Road
Park Avenue Childcare Centre		28 Park Avenue
Park Road Student Flats		41 Park Road
Pathology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Pharmacology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Pharmacy and Post Office Agency	ClockTower Building – East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Philosophy	Fisher Building	18 Waterloo Quadrant
Photographer – refer Educational Media Centre		
Physico-Chemistry	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Physics	Maths/Physics Building	38 Princes Street
	Tamaki Building 731	Gate 2 Morrin Road
Physics – deliveries	Maths/Physics Building	40 Wellesley Street E.
Physiology	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Planning	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Political Studies	Arts 1 Building	14A Symonds Street
Property	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Property Services:		
Administration and Planning		70 Symonds Street
Facilities Management		11 Wynyard Street
Psychiatry and Behavioural Science	Medical and Health Sciences Building	85 Park Road
Psychology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Public Relations Officer	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Recreation Centre	City Campus	17 Symonds Street
	Tamaki Campus	12 Thomas Peacock Place
Registry		24 Princes Street
Russian	Commerce C Building	18 Symonds Street
Scandinavian Studies	Germanic Languages Building	10 Grafton Road
Scholarships and Financial Support	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Science Faculty Office	Ground Floor, Chemistry Building	23 Symonds Street
Security – refer Property Services		
Staff Common Room	Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
Sociology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Spanish – refer European Languages		
Statistics	Maths/Physics Building	38 Princes Street
Student Accommodation	O'Rorke Hall	16 Mount Street
Student Administration	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Student Cafeteria	Student Union Building	34 Princes Street
Student Counsellors	ClockTower Building – East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Student Health	ClockTower Building – East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Student Information Centre	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Student Learning Centre	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Student Recruitment and Course Advice	ClockTower Building	22 Princes Street
Tamaki Campus		Morrin Road
Theology	ACTE Office, Tamaki Campus	Morrin Road
Thomas Building		3A Symonds Street
Thomas Building – deliveries		3 Symonds Street
University Book Shop	Student Union Building	34 Princes Street
University Press		1–11 Short Street
Women's Studies	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street



**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
AT TAMAKI**

**DIRECTORY**

Adidas Sport Medicine	750A	Landcare (NZ) Ltd.	733	SecuraCopy	710.1
Administration		Lecture Theatres		Student Administration	
Tamaki Registry	721	710.104 721.201 722.201 723.201 731.201		Alternative Print Service	701.2
Office of the Pro-Vice-Chancellor	721	733.201 734.201		Careers Advisers	710.1
Arts		Library	701.2,3	Chaplains	701.2
English as a second language	723	NZ Academy of Sport	750A	Disability Co-ordinators	701.2
Philosophy	723	NZ Quality of Healthcare Study	723	Recreation Centre	714
Auckland Cardiac Rehabilitation Clinic	750A	NZ Sports Drug Agency	750A	Student Counselling	701.2
Auckland Gait Analysis Laboratory	750A	Property Services		Scholarship & Financial Support	710.1
Auckland University Rugby Football Club	758	Unisafe Officers	701.2	University Health	701.5
Business & Economics		Grounds Maintenance	755	Students' Association	
Accounting & Finance	721	Science		AUSA Office & Cafeteria	701.6
Commercial Law	721	Biological Sciences	733	Parent Space	710.1
Economics	721	Chemistry	733	Student Common Rooms	710.3/714
Management & Employment Relations	721	Computer Science	731	Student Learning & Resource Centres	710.1
Management Science & Information Systems	721	Mathematics	731	Theology, ACTE	723
Colin Maiden Park Clubrooms	750	Physics	731	Unisports Centre for Sports Performance	750A
Information Technology Systems & Services	723	Psychology	734	Unisports Training Centre	751
Educational Media Centre (Audio Visual)	701.3,4	School of Environmental & Marine Sciences	733	University Bindery	760
Unisat (Satellite Receiving Station)	701.3	Sport & Exercise Science Department	734	University Bookshop	701.6
IUCN Invasive Species Specialist Group	733	Statistics	723	University of Auckland Developments Ltd.	721

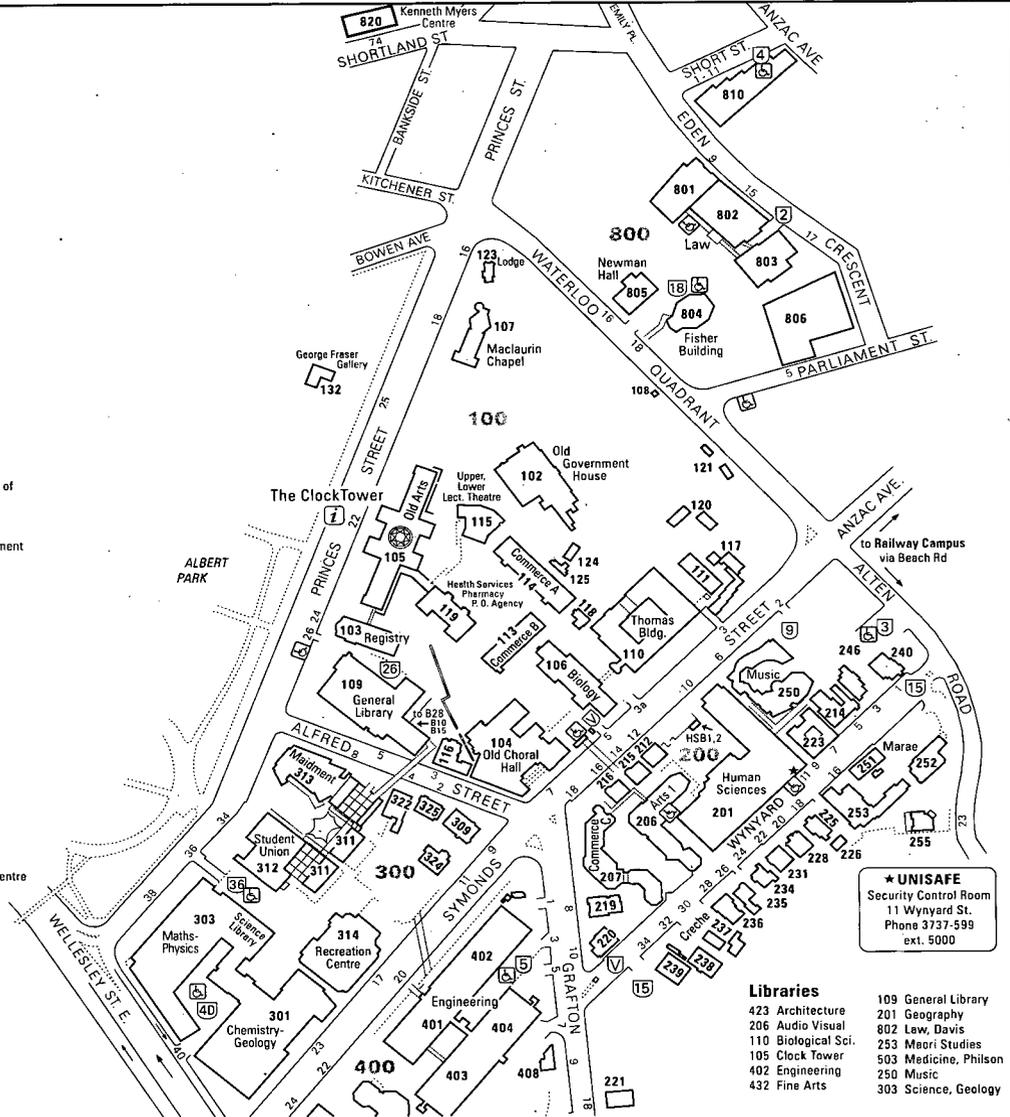


**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
CITY CAMPUS**

**DIRECTORY**

- 614 Accommodation and Conference Centre
- 207 Accounting and Finance, Department of
- 422 Acoustics Research and Testing Service
- 105 Admissions, Enrolment and Fees
- 117 Alumni House
- 201, 408 Anthropology, Department of
- 810 APEC Study Centre
- 421 Architecture, Department of
- 421 - 423 Architecture Property and Planning, School of
- 435 Art History, Department of
- 206 Arts 1 Building
- 105 Arts Students' Centre
- 435 Asian Languages and Literatures, Department of
- 435 Auckland UniServices Ltd
- 810 Auckland University Press
- 322 Auckland University Students Association, AUSA
- 119 Bank of New Zealand
- 110, 106, 118 Biological Sciences, School of
- 106 Biological Sciences Student Resource Centre
- 106 Biology Building
- 113 Business & Economics Students' Centre
- 409 Campus Computers
- 105 Careers Advisory Service
- 105 Cashiers
- 438 Centre for Professional Development, CPD
- 401 Chemical and Materials Engineering, Dept. of
- 119 Chemist, Campus Pharmacy
- 301 Chemistry, Department of
- 401 Civil and Resources Engineering, Dept. of
- 246, 240 Classics and Ancient History, Dept of
- 105 ClockTower Student Information Centre
- 114 Commerce A
- 113 Commerce B
- 207 Commerce C
- 810 Commercial Law, Department of
- 303 Computer Science, Department of
- 423 Conference Centre
- 105 Continuing Education
- 109 Copy Centre, Security
- 237, 238, 239 Creche 1, Creche 2, Creche 3
- 610 CCS Building
- 201 Custodial Services
- 104 Development Office
- 201 Development Studies, Centre for
- 105 Disabilities Co-ordinators
- 206 Drama Theatre
- 114 Economics, Department of
- 804 Education, School of
- 301 Educational Media Centre (Audio Visual)
- 401 Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Dept. of
- 401 - 404 Engineering, School of
- 403 Engineering Science, Dept of
- 206 English, Department of
- 235 English Language Centre
- 105 Equal Education Opportunities Office, EEO
- 115 Equal Employment Opportunities Office, EEO
- 206 European Languages and Literatures, School of
- 810 Executive Programmes
- 206 Film, Television and Media Studies, Centre for
- 439 Financial Services
- 435, 417, 418, 431-434, 610 Fine Arts, Elam School of
- 804 Fisher Building

- 226 Maori Material Culture Workshop
- 253 Maori Studies, Department of
- 251, 252 Marae
- 113 Marketing, Department of
- 303 Mathematics, Department of
- 401 Mechanical Engineering, Dept of
- 115 Mediator
- 250, 221, 207 Music, School of
- 105 New Start, Foundation Studies
- 810 New Zealand Asia Institute
- 201 New Zealand Studies
- 805 Newman Hall Catholic Tertiary Centre
- 436 Number 14' Student Flats
- 105 Old Arts Building
- 104 Old Choral Hall
- 102 Old Government House
- 614 O'Rorke Hall
- 228, 231 Pacific Studies, Centre for
- 116 Philosophy, Department of
- 303 Physics, Department of
- 421 Planning, Department of
- 215, 212, 216 Political Studies, Department of
- 105 Postgraduate and Scholarships Office
- 119 Post Office Agency
- 421 Property, Department of
- 439 Property Services, Planning & Development
- 201 Psychology, Department of
- 104 Public Relations Office
- 314 Recreation Centre
- 105 Recruitment and Course Advice
- 103 Registry
- 207 Russian, Croatian, Polish
- 103 Safety Officer
- 201 Security
- 201 Sociology, Department of
- 206 Spanish, Department of
- 102 Staff Common Room
- 303 Statistics, Department of
- 105, 309 Student Administration
- 512 Student Affairs, Park Road
- 312 Student Cafeteria
- 201 Student Cafeteria, Human Sciences
- 105 Student Finance Advisory Service
- 109 Student Learning Centre
- 105 Student Records and Graduation
- 311, 312 Student Union
- 255 Te Kohanga Reo
- 105 The ClockTower Student Information Centre
- 110 Thomas Building
- 314 Todd Foundation Centre for Students with Disabilities
- 201 Transport Office
- 421 Uniphoto
- 435 UniServices House
- 311 University Book Shop
- 206 Wellesley Programme
- 806 Westminster Court
- 201 Women's Studies



**\*UNISAFE**  
Security Control Room  
11 Wynyard St.  
Phone 3737-599  
ext. 5000

- Libraries**
- 423 Architecture
  - 206 Audio Visual
  - 110 Biological Sci.
  - 105 Clock Tower
  - 402 Engineering
  - 432 Fine Arts
  - 109 General Library
  - 201 Geography
  - 802 Law, Davis
  - 253 Maori Studies
  - 503 Medicine, Philson
  - 250 Music
  - 303 Science, Geology

- 206 French, Department of
- 201 Geography, Department of
- 301 Geology, Department of
- 132 George Fraser Gallery
- 301 Geothermal Institute
- 219, 220 Germanic Languages and Literatures, Dept of
- 120, 121 Grounds Maintenance
- 119, 512 Health and Counselling
- 214, 223 History, Department of
- 103 Human Resources
- 201 Human Sciences Building
- 105 ID Card Centre
- 409 Information Technology Systems & Services, ITSS
- 810 International Business, Department of
- 601-603 International House
- 309 International Office
- 105 International Student Adviser
- 206 Italian, Department of
- 225 James Henare Maori Research Centre
- 201 Key Control, Access Control, 11 Wynyard St.
- 207 Labour Studies, Centre for
- 201 Language Laboratories, HSB Multi-Media Lab
- 206 Language Laboratories, Labs 3, 4, 5
- 219 Language Laboratories, Multi-Media Lab 1, Lab 2
- 109 Language Laboratories, Tape Library, Audio Studio
- 234-236 Language Teaching and Learning, Institute of
- 206 Latin American Studies, Centre for
- 801-803 Law, School of
- 109 Library, General Library
- 236 Linguistics, Institute of
- 118 Lippincott Cottage
- 123 Lodge, Old Government House
- 107 Maclaurin Chapel and Chaplains
- 313 Maidment Arts Centre, Studio Theatre
- 201 Maintenance Administration, Workshops
- 207 Management & Employment Relations, Dept of
- 104 Management Science & Information Systems, Dept. of

**Faculty Offices and Student Centres**

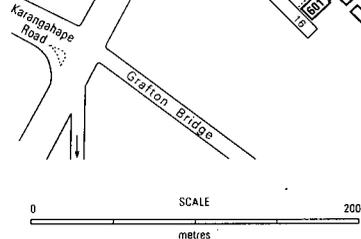
- 423 Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts
- 105, 201 Arts
- 113, 207 Business and Economics
- 402 Engineering
- 801 Law
- 602 Medical and Health Sciences
- 301 Science

**Medical & Health Sciences**

- 531 Alcohol and Public Health Research Unit
- 502 Anatomy with Radiology
- 503 Bio-Medical Engineering Workshop
- 504 Auckland Cancer Research Society
- 518 Childcare, Greche
- 530 Clinical Trials Research Unit
- 438, 531 Community Health
- 531 General Practice
- 526 Grafton Flats and Houses
- 626-629 Grafton Hall of Residence
- 511, 515 Maori and Pacific Health
- 503, 599 Medicine
- 504 Molecular Medicine
- 519 Occupational Medicine
- 598 Oncology (Pathology)
- 502 Optometry and Vision Science
- 597 Paediatrics
- 520, 523 Park Road Flats
- 502 Pathology
- 503 Pharmacology & Clinical Pharmacology
- 503 Philson Library
- 502 Physiology
- 530 Psychiatry and Behavioural Science
- 512 Student Health, Counselling, Financial Adv.
- 503 Student Centre, Cafeteria
- 599 Surgery

**Lecture Theatres**

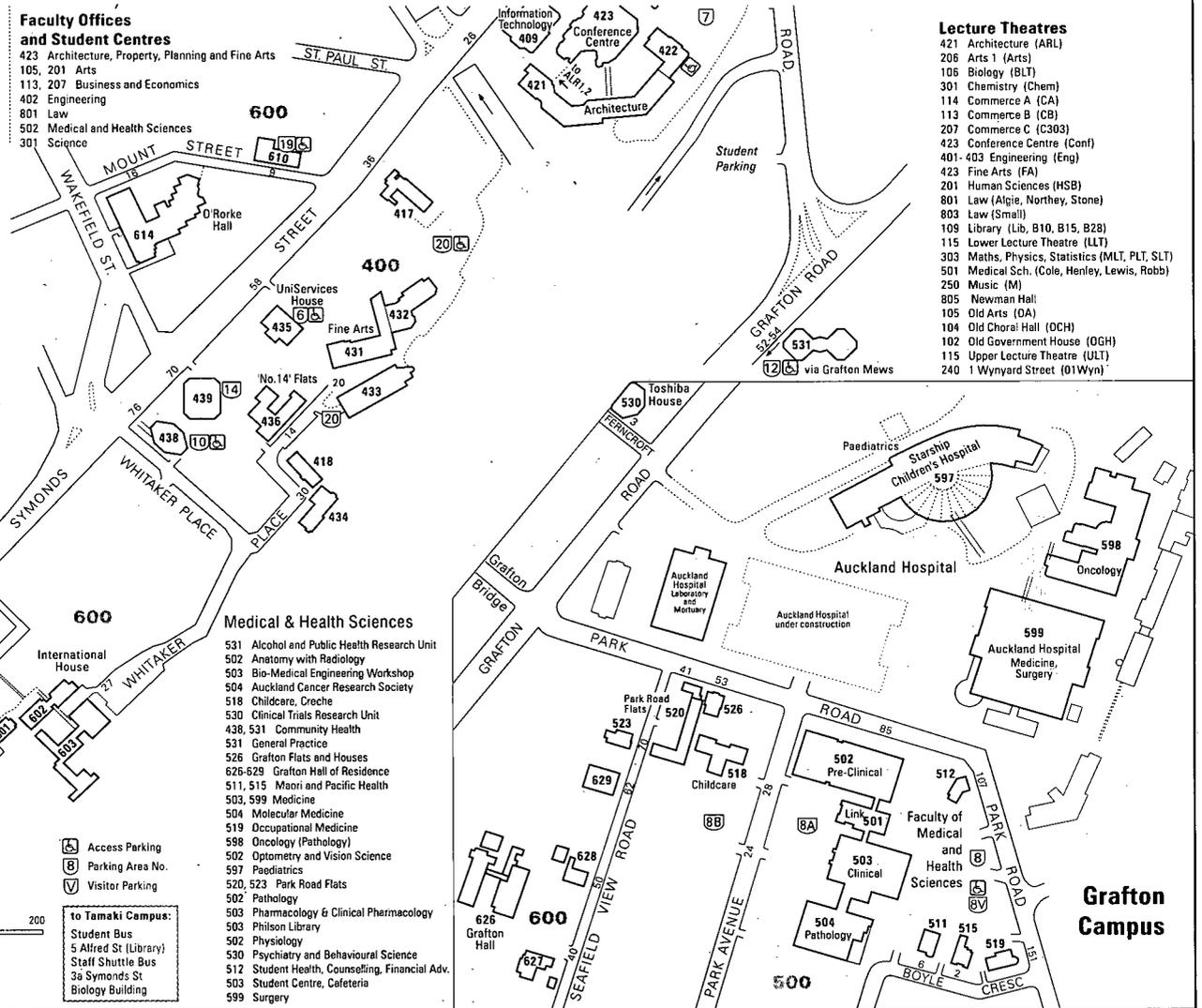
- 421 Architecture (ARL)
- 206 Arts 1 (Arts)
- 106 Biology (BLT)
- 301 Chemistry (Chem)
- 114 Commerce A (CA)
- 113 Commerce B (CB)
- 207 Commerce C (C303)
- 423 Conference Centre (Conf)
- 401-403 Engineering (Eng)
- 423 Fine Arts (FA)
- 201 Human Sciences (HSB)
- 801 Law (Algie, Northey, Stone)
- 803 Law (Small)
- 109 Library (Lib, B10, B15, B28)
- 115 Lower Lecture Theatre (LLT)
- 303 Maths, Physics, Statistics (MLT, PLT, SLT)
- 501 Medical Sch. (Cole, Henley, Lewis, Robb)
- 250 Music (M)
- 805 Newman Hall
- 105 Old Arts (DA)
- 104 Old Choral Hall (OCH)
- 102 Old Government House (OGH)
- 115 Upper Lecture Theatre (ULT)
- 240 1 Wynyard Street (01Wyn)



Roger Gibbs, Department of Geography  
© The University of Auckland 2002

- Access Parking
- Parking Area No.
- Visitor Parking

**to Tamaki Campus:**  
Student Bus  
5 Alfred St (Library)  
Staff Shuttle Bus  
3a Symonds St  
Biology Building



# Index

- A**
- Academic Calendar 15
  - Academic Dress:
    - Availability of 41
    - Conferment of 39
  - Academic Progress 18
  - Academic Qualifications, Conferment of 39
  - Academic Statutes and Regulations 12
  - Academic Year 1
  - Accommodation Service 623
  - Accounting 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 122, 408
  - Accounting and Finance 641
  - Acts of Parliament and University Statutes 597
  - Addition of Courses 17
  - Administration 130
  - Admission:
    - Admission and Enrolment 1, 13
    - Application for 14
    - English Language Competence 15
    - International Students 29
    - Provisional Entrance 14
    - Regulations 14
    - Students Enrolled at Another Institution 15
    - Special Admission 14
  - Advanced Interpreting, Postgraduate Certificate in 96
  - Advisors for Students with Disabilities 628
  - Alliances with other Tertiary Institutions 242
  - Alumni Association 7
  - Anaesthesiology 648
  - Anatomy 189
  - Anatomy with Radiology 165, 168, 485, 648
  - Ancient History 73, 80, 83, 283
  - Animal Technology 214
  - Anthropology 73, 80, 84, 189, 286, 637
  - Anti-Harassment Policy and Procedures 627
  - Applied and Industrial Mathematics 191
  - Applied Behavioural Science 648
  - Applied Geology 193, 198
  - Applied Language Studies and Linguistics 637
  - Applied Mathematics 189, 193, 198
  - Applied Psychology, Postgraduate Diploma in 205
  - Architectural Design 257
  - Architectural Drawing and Computing 258
  - Architectural History, Theory and Criticism 262
  - Architectural Practice and Management 267
  - Architectural Studies:
    - Bachelor of 49
    - Master of 51
  - Architectural Technology 270
  - Architecture:
    - Bachelor of 50
    - Master of 52
  - Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts:
    - Prescriptions 257
    - Regulations 48
    - Staff 635
  - Architecture: General 260
  - Archive of Maori and Pacific Music 637
  - Arms of the University of Auckland 2
  - Art History 74, 80, 84, 293, 637
  - Arts Management 297
    - Graduate Diploma in 94, 221
  - Arts:
    - Certificate in 91
    - Graduate Diploma in 93
    - Master of 82
    - Postgraduate Diploma in 95
    - Prescriptions 283
    - Regulations 72
    - Staff 636
  - Arts: General 296
  - Asian Business Studies 117
  - Asian Studies 78, 84, 297
  - Associations 626
  - Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre 648
  - Auckland Consortium for Theological Education 242
  - Auckland UniServices Limited 7, 667
  - Auckland University of Technology 242
  - Auckland University Students' Association 626
  - Audiology 165, 485, 649
    - Master of 163
- B**
- Bachelor of:
    - Architectural Studies 49
    - Architecture 50
    - Arts 73
    - Arts (Honours) 79
    - Business and Information Management 118
    - Commerce 116
    - Commerce (Honours) 119
    - Education (Teaching) 97
    - Engineering 136
    - Fine Arts 65
    - Health Sciences 157
    - Human Biology 158
    - Human Biology (Honours) 159
    - Laws 149
    - Laws (Honours) 150
    - Medicine and Surgery 159
    - Music 107
    - Music (Honours) 107
    - Music Education 109
    - Nursing 160
    - Nursing (Honours) 161
    - Optometry 195
    - Pharmacy 162
    - Planning 61
    - Property 56
    - Property (Honours) 57
    - Science 189
    - Science (Honours) 192
    - Technology 120, 196, 214
    - Theology 210
    - Visual Arts 66
  - Behavioural Science 165, 168, 174, 486
  - Biblical Studies 569
  - Biochemistry 649
  - Bioinformatics 191, 193
  - Biological Sciences 78, 165, 168, 190, 191, 194, 198, 513, 660
  - Biomedical Engineering 136
  - Biomedical Science 191, 194, 215, 513
  - Biotechnology 215
  - BTech Projects 519
  - Building Science:
    - Master of 54
    - Postgraduate Diploma in 55

Business Administration 412  
 Master of 123  
 Business and Economics:  
 Prescriptions 408  
 Regulations 115  
 Staff 641  
 Business and Information Management:  
 Bachelor of 118  
 Business Taxation 130  
 Business:  
 Graduate Certificate in 133  
 Graduate Diploma in 129

**C**

Cafeterias and Tavern 626  
 Calendar Year 8  
 Campus Radio 95bFM 626  
 Campus:  
 City 5, 623  
 Grafton 6  
 North Shore 6  
 Tamaki 5, 623, 633  
 Careers and Employment Office 623  
 Centre for Continuing Education 667  
 Centre for Professional Development 667  
 Certificate in:  
 Arts 91  
 Foundation Studies 240  
 Geothermal Energy Technology 147  
 Health Sciences 186  
 Ocular Pharmacology 208  
 Certificate of Proficiency 240  
 Changes to Current Enrolment:  
 Additions and Deletions 17  
 Refund of Fees 18  
 Substitutions 17  
 Withdrawals 17  
 Chaplaincy 624  
 Chemical and Materials Engineering 137, 448, 644  
 Chemistry 190, 191, 194, 198, 520, 661  
 Childcare 624  
 China Studies Centre 633  
 Chinese 74, 80, 84, 297  
 Christian Thought and History 573  
 City Campus 5, 623  
 Civil and Resource Engineering 190, 645  
 Civil Engineering 137, 451  
 Classical Studies 74, 301  
 Classics and Ancient History 638  
 Clinical Pharmacology 657  
 Clinical Psychology:  
 Doctor of 205  
 Postgraduate Diploma in 207  
 Closing Dates 13  
 Colin Maiden Park 623  
 Commerce:  
 Bachelor of 116  
 Bachelor of (Honours) 119  
 Graduate Diploma in 132  
 Master of 120  
 Postgraduate Diploma in 133  
 Commercial Law 116, 117, 118, 413, 642  
 Master of 125  
 Community Emergency Medicine:  
 Postgraduate Diploma in 178  
 Community Health 165, 169, 174, 487, 649  
 Comparative Literature 78, 80, 84, 303, 639  
 Computer Science 78, 117, 190, 191, 194, 198,  
 523, 662

Computer Systems Engineering 137, 454  
 Concurrent Enrolment 22  
 Conjoint Degrees, Regulations 227  
 Conjoint Degrees:  
 BA/BCom 229  
 BA/BE 230  
 BA/BEd(Tchg) 229  
 BA/BFA 230  
 BA/BHSc 230  
 BA/BMus 231  
 BA/BProp 231  
 BA/BSc 231  
 BA/BTheol 231  
 BA/LLB 232  
 BA/LLB(Hons) 232  
 BCom/BE 233  
 BCom/BEd(Tchg) 232  
 BCom/BHSc 233  
 BCom/BMus 233  
 BCom/BProp 234  
 BCom/BSc 234  
 BCom/LLB 235  
 BCom/LLB(Hons) 235  
 BE/BProp 236  
 BE/BSc 236  
 BEd(Tchg)/BSc 235  
 BHSc/LLB 236  
 BMus/BSc 236  
 BMus/BTheol 237  
 BProp/BSc 237  
 BProp/LLB 237  
 BProp/LLB(Hons) 237  
 BSc/BTheol 238  
 BSc/LLB 238  
 BSc/LLB(Hons) 238  
 Continuing Education 242  
 Cook Islands Maori 78, 303  
 Copyright 47  
 Council of the University 631  
 Counselling 625  
 Counselling, Diploma in 101  
 Course Availability 581  
 Creative and Performing Arts:  
 Master of 89  
 School of 638  
 Credit, Regulations 21  
 Croatian 78, 304  
 Cross-credits 21, 22  
 Cultural Heritage and Museums 74, 343

**D**

Dance Studies 74, 304  
 Deadlines for Additions and Deletions 17  
 Deans 631  
 Deletion of Courses 17  
 Development Studies 84, 306, 638  
 Diploma in:  
 Counselling 101  
 Engineering 144  
 Engineering (Transportation) 144  
 Environmental Management 129, 145, 154, 201, 222  
 Geothermal Energy Technology 145  
 Mathematics Education 102, 201, 223  
 Music 113  
 Music (Advanced) 114  
 Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology 175  
 Occupational Medicine 176  
 Operations Research 129, 147, 201, 224

Paediatrics 177  
 Performing Arts 91  
 Professional Ethics 92  
 Pulp and Paper Technology 146  
 Science Education 102, 201, 225  
 Teaching (Primary) 102  
 Teaching (Secondary) 103  
 Technology Education 147, 225  
 Directory 672  
 Disabilities Advisors 628  
 Discrete Mathematics and Computing 192, 194  
 Disputes, Mediation Service 627  
 Distinguished Alumni Awards 633  
 Division of Science and Technology 633  
 Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees 244  
 Doctor of:  
   Clinical Psychology 205  
   Education 100  
   Engineering 252  
   Fine Arts 68  
   Laws 251  
   Literature 249  
   Medicine 174  
   Music 111  
   Philosophy 244  
   Science 250  
 Drama 80, 84, 306  
 Dutch 74, 307

**E**

Economics 74, 80, 85, 117, 119, 120, 122, 420, 642  
 Education 74, 80, 85, 317  
   Bachelor of (Teaching) 97  
   Doctor of 100  
   Graduate Diploma in 104  
   Master of 98  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 105  
   Regulations 72, 97  
   Staff 638  
 Education (Curriculum) 308  
 Education (Professional) 313  
 Education Act 598  
 Educational Management, Master of 100, 124, 217  
 Educational Psychology, Postgraduate Diploma in 106  
 Electrical and Electronic Engineering 138, 455, 645  
 Electronic Commerce 117  
 Electronics and Computing 192, 198, 527  
 Emeritus University Librarian 633  
 Employment Relations and Organisation Studies  
   74, 80, 85, 324  
 Energy Technology 463  
 Engineering Management 130, 425  
   Master of 124, 142, 217  
 Engineering Science 138, 459, 645  
 Engineering Studies, Master of 143  
 Engineering:  
   Bachelor of 136  
   Doctor of 252  
   Diploma in 144  
   Diploma in (Transportation) 144  
   Master of 140  
   Prescriptions 448  
   Regulations 135  
   Staff 644  
 Engineering: General 458  
 English 74, 85, 324, 639  
 English as a Second Language 78, 241, 331  
 English Language Competence 15

English Writing 78, 331  
 Enrolment:  
   Academic Calendar 15  
   Admission and Enrolment 1, 13  
   Concurrent Enrolment 22  
   Enrolment and Programme Regulations 15  
   General Programme Provisions 16  
   Late Enrolment 17  
   Limitations 23  
   Not-for-Credit Courses 17  
   Points 16  
   Restrictions 16  
 Entrance Requirements 14  
 Environmental and Marine Science 198  
 Environmental Law 471  
 Environmental Management 528  
   Diploma in 129, 145, 154, 201, 222  
 Environmental Science 190, 192, 198, 528, 663  
 Equal Opportunities 668  
 Equal Opportunity Programme 627  
 Equity Advisors 628  
 Ergonomics 198, 530  
 Ethics 74, 331  
 Ethnomusicology 78, 332  
 European Languages and Literature 78, 332, 639  
 European Studies 74  
 Examinations:  
   Aegrotat and Compassionate Consideration 32  
   Grades and Marks 34  
   Regulations 30  
 Executive Programmes 643  
 Exercise Rehabilitation 198  
 Extramural Study 22

**F**

Faculties 5  
 Faculty of:  
   Architecture, Property, Planning and Fine Arts 257,  
     631, 635  
   Arts 283, 632, 636  
   Business and Economics 408, 632, 641  
   Engineering 448, 632, 644  
   Law 471, 632, 647  
   Medical and Health Sciences 485, 632, 647  
   Science 513, 632, 660  
 Fees:  
   Additional Fees/Charges 26  
   International Students 29  
   Payment of 26  
   Refunds 26  
   Statute 26  
 Film, Television and Media Studies 75, 80, 85,  
   336, 640  
 Finance 117, 120, 122, 123, 130, 425, 426  
 Finance Registry 668  
 Fine Arts:  
   Bachelor of 65  
   Doctor of 68  
   Master of 67  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 70  
   Prescriptions 274  
   Regulations 48, 65  
   Staff 636  
 Food Science 191, 194, 198, 531, 662  
 Forensic Science 198, 532, 662  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 204  
 Foundation Studies 241, 668  
   Certificate in 240

French 75, 80, 85, 332, 639  
Full-time Study 15

**G**

General Practice and Primary Health Care 166, 169, 490, 650  
General Science 190  
General Regulations:  
Diplomas and Certificates 19  
Master's Degrees 19  
General Statutes and Regulations 38  
Geography 75, 80, 85, 190, 191, 194, 198, 532, 663  
Geology 190, 191, 194, 198, 537, 663  
Geophysics 190, 192, 198, 539  
Geothermal Energy Technology:  
Certificate in 147  
Diploma in 145  
Geothermal Institute 646  
Geriatric Medicine, Postgraduate Diploma in 178  
German 75, 80, 85, 339  
Germanic Languages and Literature and Slavonic Studies 639  
Glossary of Terminology 671  
Goodfellow Unit 650  
Grades and Marks 34  
Graduate Certificate in, Business 133  
Graduate Diploma in:  
Arts 93  
Arts Management 94, 221  
Business 129  
Commerce 132  
Education 104  
Science 201  
Theology 212  
Translation Studies 94  
Grafton Campus 6  
Grafton Hall 623  
Greek 75, 81, 85, 341

**H**

Halls of Residence 623  
Health Informatics 131, 133, 427  
Health Management 131, 494  
Master of 124, 164, 218  
Health Professional Education Unit 651  
Health Psychology 166, 169, 198, 494, 650  
Postgraduate Diploma in 205  
Health Sciences 495  
Bachelor of 157  
Certificate in 186  
Master of 164  
Postgraduate Certificate in 183  
Postgraduate Diploma in 179  
Health Service 625  
Health Social Sciences 75, 348  
Hebrew 78  
History 75, 81, 86, 190, 343, 640  
History and Philosophy of Science and Technology 75, 190, 349  
Honorary Fellows 633  
Honorary Graduates 633  
Human Biology 190, 495  
Bachelor of 158  
Bachelor of (Honours) 159  
Human Resource Management 131, 427  
Human Resources Registry 668

**I**

Indonesian 76, 81, 86, 349  
Industrial Mathematics 215  
Information Management 119, 428  
Information Systems 117, 120, 122, 123, 131, 190, 192, 428, 429  
Information Technology 216  
Information Technology Systems and Services 44, 668  
Intellectual Property Including Inventions and Patents 628  
Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas, Regulations 213  
International Business 117, 120, 122, 123, 432, 643  
Master of 127  
International House 623  
International Strategy and Leadership 131, 434  
International Students 29  
International Trade 117  
Italian 76, 81, 86, 352, 639

**J**

Japan Studies Centre 633  
Japanese 76, 81, 86, 355  
Jobs4grads.net 624  
Joint Board of Studies in Theology:  
Regulations 209  
Prescriptions 569  
Staff 633, 667

**K**

Korea Studies Centre 633  
Korean 76, 86, 358

**L**

Language Study Abroad 359  
Language Teaching and Learning 78, 86, 360  
Language Teaching, Postgraduate Diploma in 96  
Languages and Literature 86, 359  
Latin 76, 81, 86, 361  
Latin American Studies 76, 362, 639  
Law:

Regulations 148  
Prescriptions 471  
Staff 647

Law and Economics 117

Laws:

Bachelor of 149  
Bachelor of (Honours) 150  
Doctor of 251  
Environmental Law, Master of 153  
Master of 151

Legal Studies, Postgraduate Diploma in 155

Leigh Laboratory 664

Library 6, 45

Liggins Institute 651

Limitation of Entry Statute 23

Linguistics 76, 81, 87, 190, 363

Linguistics and English Language Teaching 76

Literature:

Doctor of 249  
Master of 90

Logic and Computation 76, 81, 87, 190, 192, 194, 199, 365

**M**

Maclaurin Chapel 624

- Maidment Arts Centre 624  
 Managed Care 166, 498  
 Management and Employment Relations 117, 119, 120, 122, 123, 437, 643  
 Management Science and Information Systems 643  
 Management, Master of 124  
 Manukau Institute of Technology 242  
 Maori and Pacific Health 166, 169, 174, 499, 651  
 Maori Development 131, 436  
 Maori Studies 76, 81, 87, 365, 640  
 Marine Science 190, 192, 199, 540  
 Marketing 117, 119, 120, 122, 123, 131, 437, 442, 644  
 Master of:  
   Architectural Studies 51  
   Architecture 52  
   Arts 82  
   Audiology 163  
   Building Science 54  
   Business Administration 123  
   Commerce 120  
   Commercial Law 125  
   Creative and Performing Arts 89  
   Education 98  
   Educational Management 100, 124, 217  
   Engineering 140  
   Engineering Management 124, 142, 217  
   Engineering Studies 143  
   Fine Arts 67  
   Health Management 124, 164, 218  
   Health Sciences 164  
   International Business 127  
   Laws 151  
   Laws in Environmental Law 153  
   Literature 90  
   Management 124  
   Medical Science 167  
   Music 110  
   Nursing 170  
   Operations Research 128, 144, 196, 218  
   Pharmacy Practice 171  
   Planning 64  
   Planning Practice 62  
   Professional Studies 220  
   Property 58  
   Public Health 173  
   Science 196  
   Science (Health Psychology) 174, 221  
   Speech Language Therapy Practice 200  
   Taxation Studies 128  
   Theology 210  
 Materials 216  
 Mathematics 76, 81, 87, 117, 190, 191, 194, 199, 541, 664  
 Mathematics Education, Diploma in 102, 201, 223  
 MBChB 497  
 Mechanical Engineering 138, 464, 646  
 Mechatronics 139  
 Mediation Service 627  
 Medical and Health Sciences:  
   Prescriptions 485  
   Regulations 156  
   Staff 647  
 Medical Science 199, 498  
   Master of 167  
   Postgraduate Certificate in 184  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 180  
 Medical Statistics 199  
 Medicinal Chemistry 192, 194  
 Medicine 166, 169, 497, 651  
   Doctor of 174  
 Medicine and Surgery, Bachelor of 159  
 Medieval and Early Modern European Studies 78, 81, 87, 368  
 MMgt/GradDipBus 435  
 Molecular Medicine 166, 169, 190, 199, 499, 652  
 Moral and Practical Theology 577  
 Music 77, 81, 87, 369  
   Bachelor of 107  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 107  
   Diploma in 113  
   Diploma in (Advanced) 114  
   Doctor of 111  
   Master of 110  
   Regulations 107  
   Staff 640  
 Music Education 78, 368  
   Bachelor of 109
- N**
- National Scholarship (NZVCC) 614  
 Neonatology 656  
 New Start for Adults 241  
 New Venture Management 132, 445  
 New Zealand Asia Institute 633  
 New Zealand Studies 87, 379  
 Newman Hall 624  
 Northland Polytechnic 242  
 North Shore Campus 6  
 Nursing 166, 501, 653  
   Bachelor of 160  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 161  
   Master of 170  
 Nutrition 166, 169, 174, 503, 654
- O**
- Obstetrics and Gynaecology 166, 169, 503, 654  
 Obstetrics and Medical Gynaecology, Diploma in 175  
 Occupational Medicine 655  
   Diploma in 176  
 Ocular Pharmacology, Certificate in 208  
 Office of the Vice-Chancellor 668  
 Officers of the University 631  
 Operations Management 117, 120, 122, 123, 132, 445  
 Operations Research 117, 118, 120, 122, 123, 192, 447  
   Diploma in 129, 147, 201, 224  
   Master of 128, 144, 196, 218  
 Ophthalmology 655  
 Optoelectronics 216  
 Optometry and Vision Science 199, 547, 665  
 Optometry, Bachelor of 195  
 O'Rorke Hall 623  
 Orthopaedics 655  
 Other Programmes, Regulations 240
- P**
- Pacific Studies 77, 87, 190, 379, 640  
 Paediatrics 167, 169, 504, 655  
   Diploma in 177  
 Parking 624  
 Pathology 167, 169, 190, 504, 656  
 Performing Arts 380  
   Diploma in 91  
 Pharmacology 190, 191, 194, 199, 507, 549, 657

Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology 167, 169  
 Pharmacy 167, 505, 657  
   Bachelor of 162  
 Pharmacy Practice:  
   Master of 171  
   Postgraduate Certificate 185  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 181  
 Philosophy 77, 81, 88, 190, 381, 640  
   Doctor of 244  
 Physics 78, 190, 191, 199, 549, 665  
 Physiology 167, 169, 190, 191, 194, 199, 509,  
   553, 657  
 Planning Practice:  
   Master of 62  
 Planning:  
   Bachelor of 61  
   Master of 64  
   Prescriptions 275  
   Regulations 48, 61  
   Staff 636  
 Points 1, 16  
 Polish 78, 387  
 Political Studies 77, 81, 88, 387, 641  
 Polymers and Coatings 662  
 Polymers and Coatings Science 199, 553  
 Postgraduate Certificate in:  
   Advanced Interpreting 96  
   Health Sciences 183  
   Medical Science 184  
   Pharmacy Practice 185  
   Public Health 185  
 Postgraduate Diploma in:  
   Applied Psychology 205  
   Arts 95  
   Building Science 55  
   Clinical Psychology 207  
   Commerce 133  
   Community Emergency Medicine 178  
   Education 105  
   Educational Psychology 106  
   Fine Arts 70  
   Forensic Science 204  
   Geriatric Medicine 178  
   Health Psychology 205  
   Health Sciences 179  
   Language Teaching 96  
   Legal Studies 155  
   Medical Science 180  
   Pharmacy Practice 181  
   Property 60  
   Public Health 182  
   Science 203  
   Sports Medicine 182  
 Prescriptions, Schedule of 254  
 Professional Ethics, Diploma in 92  
 Professional Studies, Master of 220  
 Professores Emeriti 634  
 Programme Evaluation 174  
 Progress:  
   Academic 18  
   Requirements for 18  
 Property:  
   Bachelor of 56  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 57  
   Master of 58  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 60  
   Prescriptions 280  
   Regulations 48, 56  
   Staff 636

Property Services 669  
 Provisional Entrance 14  
 Psychiatry 167, 170, 511, 657  
 Psychology 77, 82, 88, 117, 190, 191, 194, 199,  
   554, 665  
 Public Comment 628  
 Public Health Social Science 167, 509  
 Public Health:  
   Master of 173  
   Postgraduate Certificate in 185  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 182  
 Pulp and Paper Technology 467  
   Diploma in 146

**Q**

Quality Management 132, 448

**R**

Railway Campus 623  
 Recount of Marks 36  
 Reassignment 21  
 Recreation:  
   City Campus 623  
   Colin Maiden Park 623  
   Tamaki Campus 623  
 Refund of Fees 18  
 Regulations:  
   Admission 14  
   Architecture 48, 49  
   Arts 72  
   Business and Economics 115  
   Conjoint Degrees 227  
   Credit 21  
   Diplomas and Certificates 19  
   Doctor of Philosophy and Higher Degrees 243  
   Education 72, 97  
   Engineering 135  
   Enrolment and Programme 15  
   Examination 30  
   Fine Arts 48, 65  
   General 38  
   Interfaculty Degrees and Diplomas 213  
   Law 148  
   Library 45  
   Master's Degrees 19  
   Medical and Health Sciences 156  
   Music 72, 107  
   Other Programmes 240  
   Planning 48, 61  
   Property 48, 56  
   Science 188  
   Theology 209  
 Research Units, Centres and Institutes 636  
 Resource Engineering 139, 467  
 Rest Spaces 625  
 Restrictions 16  
 Room Bookings 625  
 Russian 77, 82, 88, 393

**S**

Samoan 78, 395  
 Scandinavian Studies 77, 395  
 Schedule:  
   Arts (Honours), Bachelor of 80  
   Arts, Bachelor of 73  
   Arts, Master of 83  
   Business and Information Management, Bachelor of 118

Business, Graduate Certificate in 133  
 Business, Graduate Diploma in 130  
 Commerce (Honours), Bachelor of 120  
 Commerce, Bachelor of 116  
 Commerce, Master of 122  
 Engineering, Bachelor of 136  
 Engineering, Master of 141  
 Fees 27  
 Health Sciences, Master of 165  
 Limitations 24  
 Medical Science, Master of 168  
 Nursing, Master of 171  
 Optometry, Bachelor of 195  
 Pharmacy Practice, Master of 172  
 Prescriptions 254  
 Public Health, Master of 174  
 Science (Honours), Bachelor of 193  
 Science, Bachelor of 189  
 Science, Master of 198  
 Technology, Bachelor of 214  
 Scholarships and Financial Assistance 29  
 Scholarships and Prizes 613  
 School of Asian Studies 638  
 Science Education 190  
   Diploma in 102, 201, 225  
 Science:  
   Bachelor of 189  
   Bachelor of (Honours) 192  
   Doctor of 250  
   General 560  
   Graduate Diploma in 201  
   Master of 196  
   Master of (Health Psychology) 174, 221  
   Postgraduate Diploma in 203  
   Prescriptions 513  
   Regulations 188  
   Staff 660  
 Senate 5, 631  
 Smoke Free Policy 628  
 Sociology 77, 82, 88, 397, 641  
 Software Engineering 139, 470  
 South Auckland Clinical School 658  
 Spanish 77, 82, 88, 401, 639  
 Special Admission 14  
 Speech Language Therapy Practice, Master of 200  
 Speech Science 199, 560  
 Sport and Exercise Science 190, 191, 194, 199,  
   561, 666  
 Sports Medicine, Postgraduate Diploma in 182  
 Staff and Student Information 622  
 Statistics 77, 82, 88, 117, 119, 190, 191, 194,  
   199, 564, 666  
 Statutes:  
   Computer System 44  
   Conferment of Academic Qualifications and  
     Academic Dress 39  
   Council Elections (Court of Convocation  
     Representatives) 610  
   Court of Convocation Register 609  
   Degrees and Diplomas 41  
   Disciplinary 599  
   Doctor of Philosophy 244  
   Fees 26  
   General 38  
   Honorary Degrees and Awards 42  
   Limitation of Entry 23  
   Membership of Associations of Students Referenda  
     and Elections of Student Representatives on  
     Council 602

Student Administration 669  
 Student Counselling 625  
 Student Learning and Research Grievances 629  
 Student Learning Centre 625, 670  
 Student Loans and Allowances 625  
 Students' Association 626  
 Study Skills Workshops 241  
 Subjects and Programmes Index 255  
 Submissions 21  
 Substitution of Courses 17, 21  
 Surgery 659

## T

Takiri Te Ata 241  
 Tamaki Campus 5, 623, 633  
 Taxation 118, 120  
 Taxation Studies, Master of 128  
 Teaching:  
   Diploma in (Primary) 102  
   Diploma in (Secondary) 103  
 Technology, Bachelor of 120, 196, 214  
 Technology Education, Diploma in 104, 147, 225  
 Theatre Studies 77, 405  
 Theology:  
   Bachelor of 210  
   Graduate Diploma in 212  
   Master of 210  
   Prescriptions 569  
   Regulations 209  
   Staff 667  
 Tongan 78, 406  
 Transitional Certificate 240  
 Translation Studies 88, 406, 640  
   Graduate Diploma in 94

## U

UniServices 7  
 University Book Shop 627  
 University Health Service 625  
 University Library 6, 45, 670  
 University of Auckland:  
   Act 598  
   Alumni Association 7  
   Arms of the 2  
   Certificate in Foundation Studies 240  
   Foundation 6  
   History 2  
   Scholarships and Prizes 613  
   Structure 5  
   Staff 630  
   Statutes 597

## V

Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers 19  
 Visual Arts 282  
   Bachelor of 66

## W

Waikato Clinical School 660  
 Wellesley Programme 241  
 Wine Science 200, 568  
 Withdrawals 17  
 Women's Studies 77, 82, 88, 407, 641